

FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header with FM200 Float Module

Operator's Manual

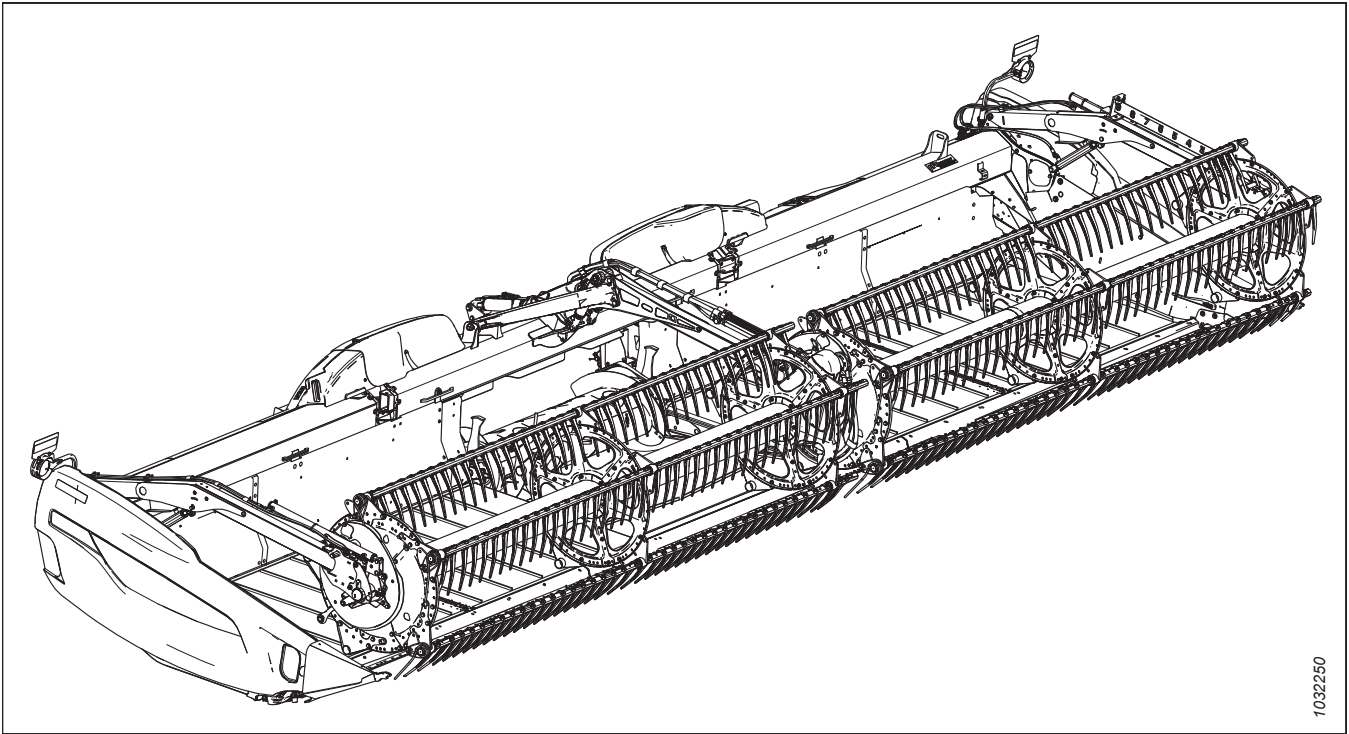
215939 Revision A

Original Instruction

Featuring MacDon FLEX-FLOAT Technology™

The Harvesting Specialists.

FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header



Published: August 2022

© 2022 MacDon Industries, Ltd.

The information in this publication is based on the information available and in effect at the time of printing. MacDon Industries, Ltd. makes no representation or warranty of any kind, whether expressed or implied, with respect to the information in this publication. MacDon Industries, Ltd. reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Declaration of Conformity



EC Declaration of Conformity

[1] **MacDon**

MacDon Industries Ltd.
680 Moray Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
R3J 3S3

[4] As per Shipping Document

[5] June 29, 2022

[2] Combine Header

[3] MacDon FD2 Series

[6] _____
Christoph Martens
Product Integrity

<p>EN</p> <p>We, [1]</p> <p>Declare, that the product:</p> <p>Machine Type: [2]</p> <p>Name & Model: [3]</p> <p>Serial Number(s): [4]</p> <p>fulfils all the relevant provisions of the Directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Harmonized standards used, as referred to in Article 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Place and date of declaration: [5]</p> <p>Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6]</p> <p>Name and address of the person authorized to compile the technical file:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germany) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>BG</p> <p>Ние, [1]</p> <p>декларираме, че следният продукт:</p> <p>Тип машина: [2]</p> <p>Наименование и модел: [3]</p> <p>Сериен номер(а) [4]</p> <p>отговаря на всички приложими разпоредби на директива 2006/42/ЕО.</p> <p>Използвани са следните хармонизирани стандарти според чл. 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Място и дата на декларацията: [5]</p> <p>Име и подпис на лицето, упълномощено да изготви декларацията: [6]</p> <p>Име и адрес на лицето, упълномощено да състави техническия файл:</p> <p>Бенедикт фон Рийдесел Управител, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Германия) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>CZ</p> <p>My, [1]</p> <p>Prohlašujeme, že produkt:</p> <p>Typ zařízení: [2]</p> <p>Název a model: [3]</p> <p>Sériové(á) číslo(a): [4]</p> <p>splňuje všechna relevantní ustanovení směrnice 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Byly použity harmonizované standardy, jak je uvedeno v článku 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Místo a datum prohlášení: [5]</p> <p>Identita a podpis osoby oprávněné k vydání prohlášení: [6]</p> <p>Jméno a adresa osoby oprávněné k vyplnění technického souboru:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel generální ředitel, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Německo) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>DA</p> <p>Vi, [1]</p> <p>erklærer, at produktet:</p> <p>Maskintype [2]</p> <p>Navn og model: [3]</p> <p>Serienummer (-numre): [4]</p> <p>Opfylder alle bestemmelser i direktiv 2006/42/EF.</p> <p>Anvendte harmoniserede standarder, som henviser til i paragraf 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Sted og dato for erklæringen: [5]</p> <p>Identitet på og underskrift fra den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde erklæringen: [6]</p> <p>Navn og adresse på den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde den tekniske fil:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Direktør, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 D-65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>DE</p> <p>Wir, [1]</p> <p>Erklären hiermit, dass das Produkt:</p> <p>Maschinentyp: [2]</p> <p>Name & Modell: [3]</p> <p>Seriennummer (n): [4]</p> <p>alle relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG erfüllt.</p> <p>Harmonisierte Standards wurden, wie in folgenden Artikeln angegeben, verwendet 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Ort und Datum der Erklärung: [5]</p> <p>Name und Unterschrift der Person, die dazu befugt ist, die Erklärung auszustellen: [6]</p> <p>Name und Anschrift der Person, die dazu berechtigt ist, die technischen Unterlagen zu erstellen:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>ES</p> <p>Nosotros [1]</p> <p>declaramos que el producto:</p> <p>Tipo de máquina: [2]</p> <p>Nombre y modelo: [3]</p> <p>Números de serie: [4]</p> <p>cumple con todas las disposiciones pertinentes de la directriz 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Se utilizaron normas armonizadas, según lo dispuesto en el artículo 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lugar y fecha de la declaración: [5]</p> <p>Identidad y firma de la persona facultada para draw redactar la declaración: [6]</p> <p>Nombre y dirección de la persona autorizada para elaborar el expediente técnico:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente general - MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>ET</p> <p>Meie, [1]</p> <p>deklareerime, et toode</p> <p>Seadme tüüp: [2]</p> <p>Nimi ja mudel: [3]</p> <p>Seerianumbrid: [4]</p> <p>vastab kõigile direktiivi 2006/42/EÜ asjakohastele sätetele.</p> <p>Kasutatud on järgnevald harmoniseeritud standardeid, millele on viidatud ka punktis 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koht ja kuupäev: [5]</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja allkiri: [6]</p> <p>Tehnilise dokumendi koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja aadress:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Peadirektor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Saksamaa) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>FR</p> <p>Nous soussignés, [1]</p> <p>Déclarons que le produit :</p> <p>Type de machine : [2]</p> <p>Nom et modèle : [3]</p> <p>Numéro(s) de série : [4]</p> <p>Est conforme à toutes les dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Utilisation des normes harmonisées, comme indiqué dans l'Article 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lieu et date de la déclaration : [5]</p> <p>Identité et signature de la personne ayant reçu le pouvoir de rédiger cette déclaration : [6]</p> <p>Nom et adresse de la personne autorisée à constituer le dossier technique :</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Directeur général, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Allemagne) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>

EC Declaration of Conformity

<p>IT</p> <p>Noi, [1] Dichiariamo che il prodotto: Tipo di macchina: [2] Nome e modello: [3] Numero(i) di serie: [4] soddisfa tutte le disposizioni rilevanti della direttiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Utilizzo degli standard armonizzati, come indicato nell'Articolo 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Luogo e data della dichiarazione: [5] Nome e firma della persona autorizzata a redigere la dichiarazione: [6] Nome e persona autorizzata a compilare il file tecnico: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>HU</p> <p>Mi, [1] Ezennel kijelentjük, hogy a következő termék: Gép típusa: [2] Név és modell: [3] Számszám(ok): [4] teljesíti a következő irányelv összes vonatkozó előírásait: 2006/42/EK.</p> <p>Az alábbi harmonizált szabványok kerültek alkalmazásra a 7(2) cikkely szerint:</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>A nyilatkozattétel ideje és helye: [5] Azon személy kiléte és aláírása, aki jogosult a nyilatkozat elkészítésére: [6] Azon személy neve és aláírása, aki felhatalmazott a műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására: Benedikt von Riedesel Vezérigazgató, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Németország) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>LT</p> <p>Mes, [1] Pareiškiami, kad šis produktas: Mašinos tipas: [2] Pavadinimas ir modelis: [3] Serijos numeris (-iai): [4] atitinka taikomus reikalavimus pagal Direktyvą 2006/42/EB.</p> <p>Naudojami harmonizuoti standartai, kai nurodoma straipsnyje 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaracijos vieta ir data: [5] Asmens tapatybės duomenys ir parašas asmens, įgalioto sudaryti šią deklaraciją: [6] Vardas ir pavardė asmens, kuris įgaliotas sudaryti šį techninį failą: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalinis direktorius, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vokietija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>LV</p> <p>Mēs, [1] Deklarējam, ka produkts: Mašīnas tips: [2] Nosaukums un modelis: [3] Sērijas numurs(-i): [4] Atbilst visām būtiskajām Direktīvas 2006/42/EK prasībām.</p> <p>Piemēroti šādi saskaņotie standarti, kā minēts 7. pantā 2. punktā:</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklarācijas parakstīšanas vieta un datums: [5] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un paraksts, kas ir pilnvarota sagatavot šo deklarāciju: [6] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un adrese, kas ir pilnvarota sastādīt tehnisko dokumentāciju: Benedikts fon Rīdizels Ģenerāldirektors, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vācija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>NL</p> <p>Wij, [1] Verklaren dat het product: Machinetype: [2] Naam en model: [3] Serienummer(s): [4] voldoet aan alle relevante bepalingen van de Richtlijn 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Geharmoniseerde normen toegepast, zoals vermeld in Artikel 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plaats en datum van verklaring: [5] Naam en handtekening van de bevoegde persoon om de verklaring op te stellen: [6] Naam en adres van de geautoriseerde persoon om het technisch dossier samen te stellen: Benedikt von Riedesel Algemeen directeur, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Duitsland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>PO</p> <p>My niżej podpisani, [1] Oświadczamy, że produkt: Typ urządzenia: [2] Nazwa i model: [3] Numer seryjny/numery seryjne: [4] spełnia wszystkie odpowiednie przepisy dyrektywy 2006/42/WE.</p> <p>Zastosowaliśmy następujące (zharmonizowane) normy zgodnie z artykułem 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data i miejsce oświadczenia: [5] Imię i nazwisko oraz podpis osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania deklaracji: [6] Imię i nazwisko oraz adres osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania dokumentacji technicznej: Benedikt von Riedesel Dyrektor generalny, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Niemcy) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>PT</p> <p>Nós, [1] Declaramos, que o produto: Tipo de máquina: [2] Nome e Modelo: [3] Número(s) de Série: [4] cumpre todas as disposições relevantes da Directiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Normas harmonizadas aplicadas, conforme referido no Artigo 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Local e data da declaração: [5] Identidade e assinatura da pessoa autorizada a elaborar a declaração: [6] Nome e endereço da pessoa autorizada a compilar o ficheiro técnico: Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente Geral, MacDon Europa Ltda. Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemanha) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>RO</p> <p>Noi, [1] Declaram, că următorul produs: Tipul mașinii: [2] Denumirea și modelul: [3] Număr (numere) serie: [4] corespunde tuturor dispozițiilor esențiale ale directivei 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Au fost aplicate următoarele standarde armonizate conform articolului 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data și locul declarației: [5] Identitatea și semnătura persoanei împuternicite pentru întocmirea declarației: [6] Numele și semnătura persoanei autorizate pentru întocmirea cărții tehnice: Benedikt von Riedesel Manager General, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>SR</p> <p>Mi, [1] Izjavljujem da proizvod Tip mašine: [2] Naziv i model: [3] Serijski broj(ovi): [4] Ispunjava sve relevantne odredbe direktive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Korišćeni su usklađeni standardi kao što je navedeno u članu 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Datum i mesto izdavanja deklaracije: [5] Identitet i potpis lica ovlašćenog za sastavljanje deklaracije: [6] Ime i adresa osobe ovlašćene za sastavljanje tehničke datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemačka) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>SV</p> <p>Mi, [1] Intygat att produkten: Maskintyp: [2] Namn och modell: [3] Serienummer: [4] uppfyller alla relevanta villkor i direktivet 2006/42/EG.</p> <p>Harmonierade standarder används, såsom anges i artikel 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plats och datum för intyget: [5] Identitet och signatur för person med befogenhet att upprätta intyget: [6] Namn och adress för person behörig att upprätta den tekniska dokumentationen: Benedikt von Riedesel Administrativ chef, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>SL</p> <p>Mi, [1] izjavljamo, da izdelek: Vrsta stroja: [2] Ime in model: [3] Serijska/-e številka/-e: [4] ustreza vsem zadevnim določbam Direktive 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi, kot je navedeno v členu 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Kraj in datum izjave: [5] Istovetnost in podpis osebe, opolnomočene za pripravo izjave: [6] Ime in naslov osebe, pooblaščenca za pripravo tehnične datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemčija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>SK</p> <p>My, [1] týmto prehlasujem, že tento výrobok: Typ zariadenia: [2] Názov a model: [3] Výrobné číslo: [4] splňa príslušné ustanovenia a základné požiadavky smernice č. 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Použité harmonizované normy, ktoré sa uvádzajú v článku č. 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Miesto a dátum prehlásenia: [5] Meno a podpis osoby oprávnenej vypracovať toto prehlásenie: [6] Meno a adresa osoby oprávnenej zostaviť technický súbor: Benedikt von Riedesel Generálny riaditeľ MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemecko) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>



EC Declaration of Conformity

[1] **MacDon**
MacDon Industries Ltd.
680 Moray Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
R3J 3S3

[4] As per Shipping Document

[5] June 29, 2022

[2] Float Module

[6] _____
Christoph Martens
Product Integrity

[3] MacDon FM200

EN	BG	CZ	DA
We, [1] Declare, that the product: Machine Type: [2] Name & Model: [3] Serial Number(s): [4] fulfils all the relevant provisions of the Directive 2006/42/EC. Harmonized standards used, as referred to in Article 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Place and date of declaration: [5] Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6] Name and address of the person authorized to compile the technical file: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germany) bvonriedesel@macdon.com	Ние, [1] декларираме, че следният продукт: Тип машина: [2] Наименование и модел: [3] Серийен номер(а) [4] отговаря на всички приложими разпоредби на директива 2006/42/ЕО. Използвани са следните хармонизирани стандарти според чл. 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Място и дата на декларацията: [5] Име и подпис на лицето, упълномощено да изготви декларацията: [6] Име и адрес на лицето, упълномощено да състави техническия файл: Бенедикт фон Рийдесел Управител, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Германия) bvonriedesel@macdon.com	My, [1] Prohlašujeme, že produkt: Typ zařízení: [2] Název a model: [3] Sériové(á) číslo(a): [4] splňuje všechna relevantní ustanovení směrnice 2006/42/EC. Byly použity harmonizované standardy, jak je uvedeno v článku 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Místo a datum prohlášení: [5] Identita a podpis osoby oprávněné k vydání prohlášení: [6] Jméno a adresa osoby oprávněné k vyplnění technického souboru: Benedikt von Riedesel generální ředitel, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Německo) bvonriedesel@macdon.com	Vi, [1] erklærer, at produktet: Maskintype [2] Navn og model: [3] Serienummer (-numre): [4] Opfylder alle bestemmelser i direktiv 2006/42/EF. Anvendte harmoniserede standarder, som henviser til i paragraf 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Sted og dato for erklæringen: [5] Identitet på og underskrift fra den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde erklæringen: [6] Navn og adresse på den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde den tekniske fil: Benedikt von Riedesel Direktør, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 D-65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com

DE	ES	ET	FR
Wir, [1] Erklären hiermit, dass das Produkt: Maschinentyp: [2] Name & Modell: [3] Seriennummer (n): [4] alle relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG erfüllt. Harmonisierte Standards wurden, wie in folgenden Artikeln angegeben, verwendet 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Ort und Datum der Erklärung: [5] Name und Unterschrift der Person, die dazu befugt ist, die Erklärung auszustellen: [6] Name und Anschrift der Person, die dazu berechtigt ist, die technischen Unterlagen zu erstellen: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden bvonriedesel@macdon.com	Nosotros [1] declaramos que el producto: Tipo de máquina: [2] Nombre y modelo: [3] Números de serie: [4] cumple con todas las disposiciones pertinentes de la directriz 2006/42/EC. Se utilizaron normas armonizadas, según lo dispuesto en el artículo 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Lugar y fecha de la declaración: [5] Identidad y firma de la persona facultada para draw redactar la declaración: [6] Nombre y dirección de la persona autorizada para elaborar el expediente técnico: Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente general - MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com	Meie, [1] deklareerime, et toode Seadme tüüp: [2] Nimi ja mudel: [3] Seerianumbrid: [4] vastab kõigile direktiivi 2006/42/EÜ asjakohastele sätetele. Kasutatud on järgnevald harmoniseeritud standardeid, millele on viidatud ka punktis 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Deklaratsiooni koht ja kuupäev: [5] Deklaratsiooni koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja allkiri: [6] Tehnilise dokumendi koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja aadress: Benedikt von Riedesel Peadirektor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Saksamaa) bvonriedesel@macdon.com	Nous soussignés, [1] Déclarons que le produit : Type de machine : [2] Nom et modèle : [3] Numéro(s) de série : [4] Est conforme à toutes les dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2006/42/EC. Utilisation des normes harmonisées, comme indiqué dans l'Article 7(2): EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009 Lieu et date de la déclaration : [5] Identité et signature de la personne ayant reçu le pouvoir de rédiger cette déclaration : [6] Nom et adresse de la personne autorisée à constituer le dossier technique : Benedikt von Riedesel Directeur général, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Allemagne) bvonriedesel@macdon.com

EC Declaration of Conformity

<p style="text-align: center;">IT</p> <p>Noi, [1] Dichiariamo che il prodotto: Tipo di macchina: [2] Nome e modello: [3] Numero(i) di serie: [4] soddisfa tutte le disposizioni rilevanti della direttiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Utilizzo degli standard armonizzati, come indicato nell'Articolo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Luogo e data della dichiarazione: [5] Nome e firma della persona autorizzata a redigere la dichiarazione: [6] Nome e persona autorizzata a compilare il file tecnico: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">HU</p> <p>Mi, [1] Ezennel kijelentjük, hogy a következő termék: Gép típusa: [2] Név és modell: [3] Számszám(ok): [4] teljesíti a következő irányelv összes vonatkozó előírásait: 2006/42/EK.</p> <p>Az alábbi harmonizált szabványok kerültek alkalmazásra a 7(2) cikkely szerint:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>A nyilatkozattétel ideje és helye: [5] Azon személy kiléte és aláírása, aki jogosult a nyilatkozat elkészítésére: [6] Azon személy neve és aláírása, aki felhatalmazott a műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására: Benedikt von Riedesel Vezérigazgató, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Németország) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">LT</p> <p>Mes, [1] Pareiškiami, kad šis produktas: Mašinos tipas: [2] Pavadinimas ir modelis: [3] Serijos numeris (-iai): [4] atitinka taikomus reikalavimus pagal Direktyvą 2006/42/EB.</p> <p>Naudojami harmonizuoti standartai, kai nurodoma straipsnyje 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaracijos vieta ir data: [5] Asmens tapatybės duomenys ir parašas asmens, įgaliotu sudaryti šią deklaraciją: [6] Vardas ir pavardė asmens, kuris įgaliotas sudaryti šį techninį failą: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalinis direktorius, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vokietija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">LV</p> <p>Mēs, [1] Deklarējam, ka produkts: Mašīnas tips: [2] Nosaukums un modelis: [3] Sērijas numurs(-i): [4] Atbilst visām būtiskajām Direktīvas 2006/42/EK prasībām.</p> <p>Piemēroti šādi saskaņotie standarti, kā minēts 7. pantā 2. punktā:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklarācijas parakstīšanas vieta un datums: [5] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un paraksts, kas ir pilnvarota sagatavot šo deklarāciju: [6] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un adrese, kas ir pilnvarota sastādīt tehnisko dokumentāciju: Benedikts fon Rīdizels Ģenerāldirektors, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vācija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">NL</p> <p>Wij, [1] Verklaren dat het product: Machinetype: [2] Naam en model: [3] Serienummer(s): [4] voldoet aan alle relevante bepalingen van de Richtlijn 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Geharmoniseerde normen toegepast, zoals vermeld in Artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plaats en datum van verklaring: [5] Naam en handtekening van de bevoegde persoon om de verklaring op te stellen: [6] Naam en adres van de geautoriseerde persoon om het technisch dossier samen te stellen: Benedikt von Riedesel Algemeen directeur, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Duitsland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">PO</p> <p>My niżej podpisani, [1] Oświadczamy, że produkt: Typ urządzenia: [2] Nazwa i model: [3] Numer seryjny/numery seryjne: [4] spełnia wszystkie odpowiednie przepisy dyrektywy 2006/42/WE.</p> <p>Zastosowaliśmy następujące (zharmonizowane) normy zgodnie z artykułem 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data i miejsce oświadczenia: [5] Imię i nazwisko oraz podpis osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania deklaracji: [6] Imię i nazwisko oraz adres osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania dokumentacji technicznej: Benedikt von Riedesel Dyrektor generalny, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Niemcy) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">PT</p> <p>Nós, [1] Declaramos, que o produto: Tipo de máquina: [2] Nome e Modelo: [3] Número(s) de Série: [4] cumpre todas as disposições relevantes da Directiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Normas harmonizadas aplicadas, conforme referido no Artigo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Local e data da declaração: [5] Identidade e assinatura da pessoa autorizada a elaborar a declaração: [6] Nome e endereço da pessoa autorizada a compilar o ficheiro técnico: Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente Geral, MacDon Europa Ltda. Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemanha) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">RO</p> <p>Noi, [1] Declaram, că următorul produs: Tipul mașinii: [2] Denumirea și modelul: [3] Număr (numere) serie: [4] corespunde tuturor dispozițiilor esențiale ale directivei 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Au fost aplicate următoarele standarde armonizate conform articolului 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data și locul declarației: [5] Identitatea și semnătura persoanei împuternicite pentru întocmirea declarației: [6] Numele și semnătura persoanei autorizate pentru întocmirea cărții tehnice: Benedikt von Riedesel Manager General, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">SR</p> <p>Mi, [1] Izjavljujem da proizvod Tip mašine: [2] Naziv i model: [3] Serijski broj(ovi): [4] Ispunjava sve relevantne odredbe direktive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Korišćeni su usklađeni standardi kao što je navedeno u članu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Datum i mesto izdavanja deklaracije: [5] Identitet i potpis lica ovlašćenog za sastavljanje deklaracije: [6] Ime i adresa osobe ovlašćene za sastavljanje tehničke datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemačka) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">SV</p> <p>Mi, [1] Intygat att produkten: Maskintyp: [2] Namn och modell: [3] Serienummer: [4] uppfyller alla relevanta villkor i direktivet 2006/42/EG.</p> <p>Harmonierade standarder används, såsom anges i artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plats och datum för intyget: [5] Identitet och signatur för person med befogenhet att upprätta intyget: [6] Namn och adress för person behörig att upprätta den tekniska dokumentationen: Benedikt von Riedesel Administrativ chef, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">SL</p> <p>Mi, [1] izjavljamo, da izdelek: Vrsta stroja: [2] Ime in model: [3] Serijska/-e številka/-e: [4] ustreza vsem zadevnim določbam Direktive 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi, kot je navedeno v členu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Kraj in datum izjave: [5] Istovetnost in podpis osebe, opolnomočene za pripravo izjave: [6] Ime in naslov osebe, pooblaščenca za pripravo tehnične datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemčija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">SK</p> <p>My, [1] týmto prehlasujem, že tento výrobok: Typ zariadenia: [2] Názov a model: [3] Výrobné číslo: [4] splňa príslušné ustanovenia a základné požiadavky smernice č. 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Použité harmonizované normy, ktoré sa uvádzajú v Článku č. 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Miesto a dátum prehlásenia: [5] Meno a podpis osoby oprávnenej vypracovať toto prehlásenie: [6] Meno a adresa osoby oprávnenej zostaviť technický súbor: Benedikt von Riedesel Generálny riaditeľ MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemecko) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>



UK Declaration of Conformity

[1] **MacDon** [4] As per shipping document

MacDon Industries Ltd.
680 Moray Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
R3J 3S3

[5] June 29, 2022

[2] Combine Header

[6] _____

[3] MacDon FD2 Series

Christoph Martens
Product Integrity

We, [1]

Declare, that the product:

Machine Type: [2]

Name & Model: [3]

Serial Number(s): [4]

fulfills all relevant provisions of the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008

Designated standards used are :

EN ISO 4254-1:2015

EN ISO 4254-7:2017

Place and date of declaration: [5]

Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6]



UK Declaration of Conformity

[1] **MacDon** [4] As per Shipping Document

MacDon Industries Ltd.
680 Moray Street,
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
R3J 3S3

[5] June 29, 2022

[2] Float Module

[6] _____

[3] MacDon FM200

Christoph Martens
Product Integrity

We, [1]

Declare, that the product:

Machine Type: [2]

Name & Model: [3]

Serial Number(s): [4]

fulfills all relevant provisions of the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008

Designated standards used are :

EN ISO 4254-1:2015

EN ISO 4254-7:2017

Place and date of declaration: [5]

Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6]

Introduction

Your machine

This instructional manual contains information on the FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and the FM200 Float Module. It must be used in conjunction with your combine operator's manual.

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® is specially designed to work well in all straight cut conditions, whether cutting on or above the ground, using a three-piece flexible frame to closely follow ground contours. The FM200 Float Module is used to attach an FD2 Series FlexDraper® to most makes and models of combines.

Your warranty

MacDon provides warranty for Customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. A copy of the MacDon Industries Limited Warranty Policy, which explains this warranty, should have been provided to you by your Dealer. Damage resulting from any of the following conditions will void the warranty:

- Accident
- Misuse
- Abuse
- Improper maintenance or neglect
- Abnormal or extraordinary use of the machine
- Failure to use the machine, equipment, component, or part in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions

Your manual

Carefully read all the material provided before attempting to use the machine.

Use this manual as your first source of information about the machine. If you follow the instructions provided, your header will work well for many years. Contact your Dealer if you need assistance, information, or additional copies of this manual.

The following conventions are used in this document:

- Right and left are determined from the operator's position. The front of the header faces the crop; the back of the header attaches to the float module and combine.
- Unless otherwise noted, use the standard torque values provided in Chapter [7.1 Torque Specifications, page 727](#).

When setting up the machine or making adjustments, review and follow the recommended machine settings in all relevant MacDon publications. Failure to do so may compromise machine function and machine life and may result in a hazardous situation.

The Table of Contents and Index will guide you to specific areas of this manual. Study the Table of Contents to familiarize yourself with how the information is organized.

Keep this manual handy for frequent reference and to pass on to new Operators or Owners. The manual storage case (A) is located at the rear of the header, beside the right outer leg.

NOTE:

Keep your MacDon publications up-to-date. The most current English version can be downloaded from our website (www.macdon.com) or from our Dealer-only site (<https://portal.macdon.com>) (login required).

Call your MacDon Dealer if you need assistance, information, or additional copies of this manual.

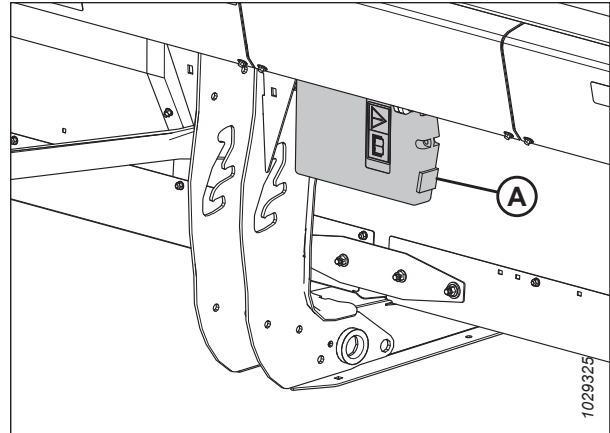


Figure 1: Manual Storage Location

This document is available in the following languages:

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|
| • Czech | • French | • Portuguese |
| • Danish | • German | • Romanian |
| • English | • Latvian | • Russian |
| • Estonian | • Lithuanian | • Spanish |
| | • Polish | |

These manuals can be ordered from MacDon, downloaded from the MacDon Dealer Portal (<https://portal.macdon.com>) (login required), or downloaded from the MacDon website (<http://www.macdon.com>).

Summary of Changes

The following list provides an account of major changes from the previous version of this document.

Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>1.7 Safety Decal Locations, page 8</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Added decal MD #327086. Superseded decal MD #313726 with MD #360541. Added decal MD #360655. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ECN 58694 ECN 63008 ECN 63204
<i>1.8 Understanding Safety Signs, page 13</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Added decal MD #327086. Superseded decal MD #313726 with MD #360541. Added decal MD #360655. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ECN 58694 ECN 63008 ECN 63204
<i>2.2 Product Specifications, page 23</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Added note that specifications are subject to change without notice. Added FD225 specifications. Added skid shoes and wear plates table. Added header flex range table. 	Technical Publications and Product Support ECN 63174
<i>Removing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 45</i>	Edited instructions and illustrations to describe hardware updates.	ECN 62924
<i>Installing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 46</i>	Edited instructions and illustrations to describe hardware updates.	ECN 62924
<i>3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132</i>	Added optional configuration for Case combines to narrow feed auger.	ECN 62723 ECN 62746
<i>Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175</i>	<p>Added IMPORTANTs. Added two WARNING statements.</p> <p>Clarified language. Added “Place the multi-tool...” step. Added “Repeat” steps where appropriate. Revised illustration captions. Removed callout from transport wheels step. Moved “each pair of bolts” note to the relevant step. Broke out compound adjustment bolt steps into simple steps. Added steps for the right side of the float module. Added sub-section headers. Added “Proceed to...” final step.</p>	Product Support Supplier Quality
<i>Changing Float Spring Configuration, page 180</i>	Added float spring configuration for FD225. Removed the topic “Changing Float Spring Configuration – Confirming Type of Float Lever”. New headers use one type of float lever.	Engineering
<i>3.9.9 Knife Speed Information, page 210</i>	Added knife speed information for FD225.	Engineering
<i>Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Single Reel, page 218</i>	Added topic for FD225.	Technical Publications
<i>Removing Crop Dividers, page 236</i>	Corrected terminology: hex shaft was nut.	Technical Publications

Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>Installing Crop Dividers, page 238</i>	Corrected terminology: hex shaft was nut.	Technical Publications
<i>3.10.11 CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series Combines, page 315</i>	Added 5000 and 6000 series combines.	Product Support
<i>3.10.18 John Deere X9 Series Combines, page 402</i>	Added header settings topics for John Deere X9 Series combines.	Product Support
<i>Setting up Reel Speed – New Holland CR Series, page 436</i>	Updated the available options in the reel displacement table.	Product Support
<i>Every 50 Hours, page 484</i>	Updated lubrication specification for reel drive chain, and added note to decrease the interval if chain is dry at next oiling.	Engineering
<i>Every 250 Hours, page 490</i>	Added inner contour wheel assemblies.	ECN 62215
<i>4.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain, page 494</i>	Updated lubrication procedure for reel drive chain.	Engineering
<i>Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 498</i>	Modified instructions to reflect changes to the oil checking procedure.	ECN 63056
<i>Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 499</i>	Modified instructions to reflect changes to the oil filling procedure.	ECN 63056
<i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 499</i>	Modified instructions to reflect changes to the oil changing procedure.	ECN 63056
<i>4.12.3 Adjusting Deck Height, page 610</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>4.15.2 Lubricating Contour Wheel System, page 679</i>	Added 250 hour grease point.	ECN 62215
<i>4.15.3 Zeroing Mechanical Indicator, page 681</i>	Added new topic.	ECN 62724
<i>4.17.1 Replacing Vertical Knife Sections, page 691</i>	Added topic.	Technical Publications
<i>4.17.2 Greasing Vertical Knife, page 694</i>	Added topic.	Technical Publications
<i>5.1.2 Crop Lifter Storage Rack Kit, page 697</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>5.1.5 Full Length Upper Cross Auger, page 699</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>5.1.7 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit, page 700</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>5.2.1 Rock Retarder Kit, page 701</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications
<i>5.2.2 Four-Point Knife Guard, page 701</i>	Added new topic.	ECN 62217
<i>5.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit, page 706</i>	MD #B7324 was superseded by MD #B7335. Added FD225 information.	ECN 62171 Technical Publications
<i>5.4.3 EasyMove™ Transport System, page 708</i>	Added a note that the FD225 is not compatible with the transport system.	Technical Publications
<i>5.4.9 Stubble Light Kit, page 711</i>	Added FD225 information.	Technical Publications

Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>5.4.10 Sunflower Attachment, page 712</i>	Added new topic.	ECN 62663
<i>Recommended Fluids and Lubricants, page</i> – Inside back cover	Updated lubrication specification for reel drive chain.	Engineering

Recording Model and Serial Number

Record the model number, serial number, and model year of the header, float module, and transport/stabilizer wheel option (if installed) in the spaces provided.

FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header

Header Model: _____
Serial Number: _____
Model Year: _____

The header's serial number plate (A) is located on the back of the header, beside the left endsheet.

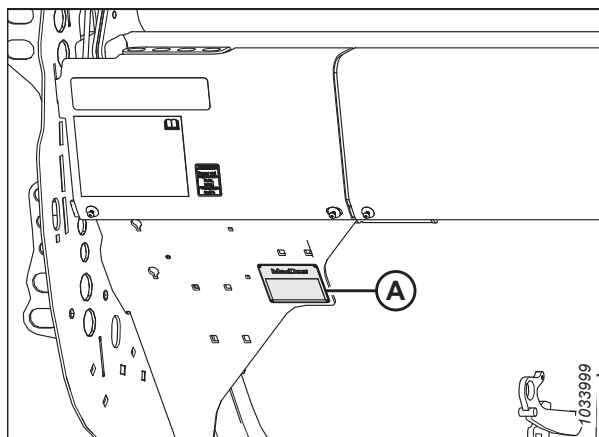


Figure 2: Header Serial Number Plate Location

FM200 Float Module for Combine

Serial Number: _____
Model Year: _____

The float module's serial number plate (A) is located on the top left side of the float module.

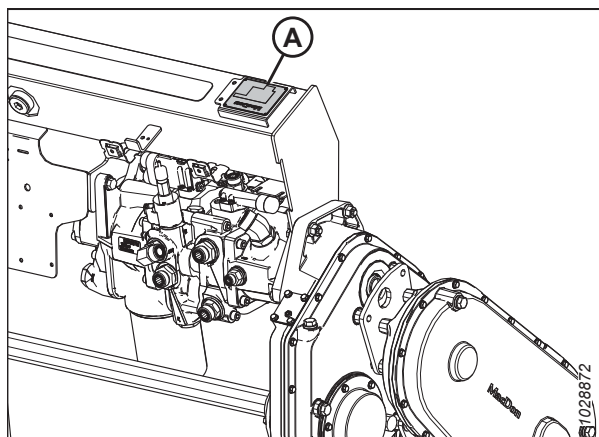


Figure 3: Float Module Serial Number Plate Location

EasyMove™ Transport Option

Serial Number: _____
Model Year: _____

The EasyMove™ transport's serial number plate (A) is located on the right axle assembly.

NOTE:

The transport is an option and may not be installed on this machine.

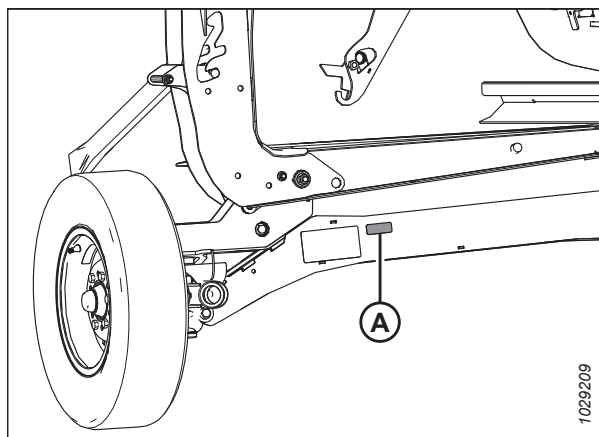


Figure 4: EasyMove™ Transport Option

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Declaration of Conformity	i
Introduction	vii
Summary of Changes.....	ix
Recording Model and Serial Number	xii
Chapter 1: Safety	1
1.1 Safety Alert Symbols	1
1.2 Signal Words	2
1.3 General Safety	3
1.4 Maintenance Safety	5
1.5 Hydraulic Safety	6
1.6 Safety Signs	7
1.6.1 Installing Safety Decals.....	7
1.7 Safety Decal Locations.....	8
1.8 Understanding Safety Signs	13
Chapter 2: Product Overview	21
2.1 Definitions	21
2.2 Product Specifications	23
2.3 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Dimensions.....	26
2.4 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Component Identification.....	27
2.5 FM200 Float Module Component Identification	28
Chapter 3: Operation	31
3.1 Owner/Operator Responsibilities	31
3.2 Operational Safety.....	32
3.2.1 Header Safety Props	32
3.2.2 Reel Safety Props	33
Engaging Reel Safety Props.....	33
Disengaging Reel Safety Props	34
3.2.3 Header Endshields	35
Opening Header Endshields.....	35
Closing Header Endshields.....	36
Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields.....	37
Removing Header Endshields.....	40
Installing Header Endshields	41
3.2.4 Reel Drive Cover	41
Removing Reel Drive Cover	41
Installing Reel Drive Cover.....	43
3.2.5 Flex Linkage Cover	44
Removing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers	44
Installing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers	45
Removing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers.....	45
Installing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers	46
3.2.6 Daily Start-Up Check.....	48

TABLE OF CONTENTS

3.3 Break-in Period	49
3.4 Shutting down the Combine	50
3.5 Cab Controls	51
3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment	52
3.6.1 Challenger®, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson® Combines	52
Attaching Header to Challenger®, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson® Combine	52
Detaching Header from a Challenger®, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson® Combine	56
3.6.2 Case IH Combines	61
Attaching Header to Case IH Combine	61
Detaching Header from Case IH Combine.....	64
3.6.3 CLAAS Combines	67
Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine.....	68
Detaching Header from CLAAS Combine	72
3.6.4 IDEAL™ Series Combines	76
Attaching Header to an IDEAL™ Series Combine.....	76
Detaching Header from IDEAL™ Series Combine	78
3.6.5 John Deere Combines	80
Attaching Header to John Deere Combine.....	81
Detaching Header from John Deere Combine	85
3.6.6 New Holland Combines	89
Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine	89
Detaching Header from New Holland CR/CX Combine	93
Feeder Deflectors – New Holland CR Series Combines.....	98
3.6.7 Rostselmash Series Combines	98
Attaching Header to Rostselmash Combine	98
Detaching Header From Rostselmash Combine	101
3.6.8 Attaching Header to / Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module	104
Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module	104
Attaching Header to FM200 Float Module.....	109
3.7 Header Setup.....	115
3.7.1 Header Attachments.....	115
3.7.2 Header Settings	115
3.7.3 Optimizing Header for Straight-Combining Canola	126
3.7.4 Reel Settings	127
3.7.5 Floating Crop Divider Settings – Optional	129
3.8 Float Module Setup	132
3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations	132
Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting	134
Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting	138
Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting.....	141
Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting	143
Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting	146
Auger Flighting	148
3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers	155
3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers.....	158
3.8.4 Setting Auger Position.....	159
3.8.5 Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs	161
3.8.6 Stripper Bars	162

TABLE OF CONTENTS

3.9 Header Operating Variables.....	163
3.9.1 Cutting off Ground	163
Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels	164
Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels	164
Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch.....	165
Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with CLAAS Integration Kit.....	167
Selecting the Default Function for the Multifunction Lever Toggle Switch (with CLAAS Integration Kit)	168
Leveling ContourMax™ Wheel Height	170
3.9.2 Cutting on Ground	172
Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes	173
Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes.....	174
3.9.3 Header Float	175
Checking and Adjusting Header Float	175
Changing Float Spring Configuration	180
Locking/Unlocking Header Float	186
Locking/Unlocking Header Wings.....	186
Operating in Flex Mode	189
Operating in Rigid Mode	191
Disabling Flex Frown Limiter	192
Enabling Flex Frown Limiter.....	193
3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance.....	194
3.9.5 Header Angle	198
Adjusting Header Angle from Combine	200
3.9.6 Reel Speed.....	206
Optional Reel Drive Sprockets.....	206
3.9.7 Ground Speed	208
3.9.8 Side Draper Speed.....	208
Adjusting Side Draper Speed.....	209
Feed Draper Speed	210
3.9.9 Knife Speed Information.....	210
Checking Knife Speed	211
3.9.10 Reel Height	212
Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor	213
Replacing Reel Height Sensor.....	216
3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position	217
Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position	218
Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Single Reel	218
Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel.....	221
Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel.....	225
Checking and Adjusting Fore-Aft Position Sensor	228
3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch	230
Reel Cam Settings	230
Adjusting Reel Cam	232
3.9.13 Upper Cross Auger	233
Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position.....	233
Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference	235
3.9.14 Crop Dividers.....	236
Removing Crop Dividers.....	236
Installing Crop Dividers	238
Removing Floating Crop Dividers	239

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Installing Floating Crop Dividers	241
Adjusting Floating Crop Dividers	244
3.9.15 Crop Divider Rods	251
Removing Crop Divider Rods	251
Installing Crop Divider Rods	251
Optional Rice Divider Rods	252
3.10 Auto Header Height Control	254
3.10.1 Auto Header Height Control Sensor Operation	255
3.10.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements	257
3.10.3 Manually Checking Voltage Limits	257
3.10.4 Replacing Float Height Sensor	260
3.10.5 10 Volt Adapter – New Holland Combines Only	262
3.10.6 Case IH 130 and 140 Series Mid-Range Combines	262
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140	262
Header Settings Quick Reference – Case IH 130 and 140 Series	265
Setting up Header on Combine Display – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140	265
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140	268
Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140	269
3.10.7 Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines	272
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines	272
Header Settings Quick Reference – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series	274
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines	276
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software	280
Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – Case IH Combines	284
Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines	285
3.10.8 Challenger® and Massey Ferguson® 6 and 7 Series Combines	287
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	287
Engaging Auto Header Height Control – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	290
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	290
Adjusting Header Height – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	292
Adjusting Header Raise/Lower Rate – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	293
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®	294
3.10.9 CLAAS 500 Series Combines	295
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series	295
Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series	297
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 500 Series	299
Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 500 Series	302
3.10.10 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines	304
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	304
Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	307
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	307
Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	309
Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	310
Adjusting Auto Reel Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series	313
3.10.11 CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series Combines	315
Header Settings Quick Reference – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series	315
Setting up Header – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series	315
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series	317
Setting Cut and Reel Height Preset – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series	319
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series	320
Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series	321

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series.....	323
3.10.12 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines.....	325
Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series.....	325
Header Settings Quick Reference – Gleaner S9 Series Combines	327
Engaging Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series.....	328
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series	329
Turning off Accumulator – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series	331
Adjusting Header Raise/Lower Rate – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series	331
Adjusting Ground Pressure – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series	332
Adjusting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series.....	332
Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series.....	333
3.10.13 Gleaner S9 Series Combines	335
Setting up Header – Gleaner S9 Series.....	335
Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – Gleaner S9 Series.....	340
Setting up Automatic Header Controls – Gleaner S9 Series.....	341
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series	343
Operating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series	347
Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – Gleaner S9 Series	349
3.10.14 IDEAL™ Series Combines.....	350
Header Settings Quick Reference – IDEAL™	350
Setting up Header – IDEAL™ Series	351
Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – IDEAL™ Series	356
Setting up Automatic Header Controls – IDEAL™ Series	357
Calibrating Header – IDEAL™ Series	359
Operating Header – IDEAL™ Series	361
Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – IDEAL™ Series	363
3.10.15 John Deere 70 Series Combines.....	364
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere 70 Series.....	364
Calibrating Feeder House Speed – John Deere 70 Series	368
Adjusting Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere 70 Series	368
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series	368
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – John Deere 70 Series.....	370
3.10.16 John Deere S and T Series Combines	371
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series	371
Adjusting Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere S and T Series.....	374
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series.....	376
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – John Deere S and T Series	379
Setting Preset Cutting Height – John Deere S and T Series.....	380
Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range – John Deere S and T Series	382
Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series.....	385
Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – John Deere S and T Series	388
3.10.17 John Deere S7 Series Combines.....	390
Setting up Header – John Deere S7 Series	390
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series.....	394
Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series	397
Calibrating Header – John Deere S7 Series	400
3.10.18 John Deere X9 Series Combines.....	402
Setting up Header in CommandCenter™ Display– John Deere X9 Series	402
Calibrating Header – John Deere X9 Series	404
Checking Sensor Voltages – John Deere X9 Series.....	406

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Assigning Multi-Function Lever Buttons – John Deere X9 Series	408
Assigning Console Buttons – John Deere X9 Series	410
Using Auto Header Height – John Deere X9 Series	412
Checking Error Codes on Header Controller – John Deere X9 Series	417
Checking Software Version on Header Controller – John Deere X9 Series	419
3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior	421
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – New Holland CR/CX Series	421
Header Settings Quick Reference – New Holland CR Series	423
Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series	424
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series	424
Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height – New Holland CR/CX Series	426
Adjusting Header Raise Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series	427
Setting Header Lower Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series	428
Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – New Holland CR/CX Series	428
Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR/CX Series	429
3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later	430
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – New Holland CR Series	431
Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series	433
Setting up Reel Speed – New Holland CR Series	436
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series	438
Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – New Holland CR Series	440
Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – New Holland CR Series	442
Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR Series	443
Setting Maximum Work Height – New Holland CR Series	445
Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type – New Holland CR Series	446
3.11 Leveling Header	449
3.12 Unplugging Cutterbar	452
3.13 Unplugging Float Module Feed Draper	453
3.14 Transport	454
3.14.1 Transporting Header on Combine	454
3.14.2 Towing	454
Attaching Header to Towing Vehicle	455
Precautions for Towing Header	455
3.14.3 Converting from Transport to Field Position (Option)	456
Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Transport to Working Position – ContourMax™ Option	456
Removing Tow-Bar	457
Storing Tow-Bar	460
Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Field Position	461
Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Field Position	463
3.14.4 Converting from Field to Transport Position (Option)	465
Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Working to Transport Position	465
Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Transport Position	466
Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Transport Position	468
Removing Tow-Bar from Storage	470
Attaching Tow-Bar	471
3.15 Storing the Header	474
Chapter 4: Maintenance and Servicing	475
4.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing	475
4.2 Maintenance Requirements	476

TABLE OF CONTENTS

4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record	476
4.2.2 Break-In Inspection	478
4.2.3 Equipment Servicing – Preseason.....	479
4.2.4 Equipment Servicing – End-of-Season	479
4.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines	480
4.3 Lubrication	482
4.3.1 Lubrication Intervals	482
Every 10 Hours.....	482
Every 25 Hours.....	483
Every 50 Hours.....	484
Every 100 Hours	488
Every 250 Hours	490
Every 500 Hours	492
4.3.2 Greasing Procedure	493
4.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain	494
4.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain	495
4.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	496
Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	496
Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	497
Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox	497
4.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox	498
Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox.....	498
Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox.....	499
Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox	499
4.4 Hydraulics	501
4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir	501
4.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir.....	501
4.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir.....	502
4.4.4 Changing Oil Filter.....	503
4.5 Electrical System	504
4.5.1 Replacing Light Bulbs	504
4.6 Header Drive	505
4.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine	505
4.6.2 Installing Driveline.....	507
4.6.3 Removing Driveline Guard	510
4.6.4 Installing Driveline Guard	512
4.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox	514
4.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox.....	515
4.7 Auger	517
4.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance.....	517
4.7.2 Checking Feed Auger Chain Tension	519
Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Quick Method	519
Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Thorough Method.....	521
4.7.3 Removing Auger Drive Chain.....	523
4.7.4 Installing Auger Drive Chain	527
4.7.5 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension.....	530

TABLE OF CONTENTS

4.7.6 Auger Flighting	532
4.7.7 Auger Fingers	533
Removing Feed Auger Fingers	533
Installing Feed Auger Fingers	535
Checking Auger Finger Timing	537
Adjusting Auger Finger Timing	538
4.8 Knife	540
4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section	540
4.8.2 Removing Knife	541
4.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing.....	543
4.8.4 Installing Knifehead Bearing.....	544
4.8.5 Installing Knife.....	544
4.8.6 Spare Knives	546
4.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs.....	547
Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers	548
Pointed Knife Guards on FD235 Double-Knife Header.....	549
Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header.....	550
Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header.....	551
Pointed Knife Guards on FD245 Double-Knife Header.....	552
Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header.....	553
Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar	554
Replacing Pointed Knife Guards.....	556
Checking Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards.....	557
Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	558
Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife	559
Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards.....	562
Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	563
4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs.....	564
Short Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers.....	565
Short Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Sizes Except 12.5 m (41 ft.).....	566
Short Knife Guards on 12.5 m (41 ft.) Double-Knife Header	567
Replacing Short Knife Guards or End Knife Guards.....	568
Checking Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards	570
Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards.....	570
Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife	571
Checking Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards	574
Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards.....	574
4.8.9 Knifehead Shield	575
Installing Knifehead Shield.....	575
4.9 Knife Drive System.....	577
4.9.1 Knife Drive Box.....	577
Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box	577
Checking Mounting Bolts	578
Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box	578
4.10 Feed Deck	580
4.10.1 Replacing Feed Draper	580
4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension	583
4.10.3 Feed Draper Drive Roller	585
Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller	585
Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller.....	587

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing	588
Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing.....	590
4.10.4 Feed Draper Idler Roller	591
Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller	591
Installing Feed Draper Idler Roller.....	593
Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing.....	596
4.10.5 Lowering Feed Deck Pan.....	600
4.10.6 Raising Feed Deck Pan.....	601
4.10.7 Checking Link Holder Hooks	602
4.11 Stripper Bars	605
4.11.1 Removing Stripper Bars	605
4.11.2 Installing Stripper Bars	605
4.11.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines	606
4.12 Header Side Drapers.....	608
4.12.1 Removing Side Drapers	608
4.12.2 Installing Side Drapers.....	609
4.12.3 Adjusting Deck Height	610
4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension	612
4.12.5 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking	614
4.12.6 Inspecting Draper Roller Bearing.....	616
4.12.7 Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller.....	616
4.12.8 Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing.....	618
4.12.9 Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller.....	620
4.12.10 Removing Side Draper Drive Roller	621
4.12.11 Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing.....	623
4.12.12 Installing Side Draper Drive Roller.....	625
4.13 Reel.....	627
4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar	627
Measuring Reel Clearance	627
Adjusting Clearance between Reel and Cutterbar	631
4.13.2 Reel Frown.....	634
Adjusting Reel Frown.....	634
4.13.3 Centering Reel	634
4.13.4 Reel Fingers.....	635
Removing Steel Fingers.....	636
Installing Steel Fingers	636
Removing Plastic Fingers.....	637
Installing Plastic Fingers	638
4.13.5 Tine Tube Bushings.....	639
Removing Bushings from Reels.....	639
Installing Bushings onto Reels	644
4.13.6 Reel Endshields.....	650
Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Cam End	651
Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Cam End	653
Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Tail End	654
Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Tail End.....	656
Replacing Reel Endshield Supports.....	658

TABLE OF CONTENTS

4.14	Reel Drive.....	660
4.14.1	Reel Drive Chain.....	660
	Loosening Reel Drive Chain	660
	Tightening Reel Drive Chain	661
4.14.2	Reel Drive Sprocket	662
	Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket.....	663
	Installing Reel Drive Single Sprocket.....	664
4.14.3	Changing Reel Speed Chain Position with Two Speed Kit Installed	664
4.14.4	Double-Reel or Triple-Reel Drive U-Joint.....	665
	Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint.....	665
	Installing Double-Reel or Triple Reel U-Joint	667
4.14.5	Reel Drive Motor.....	669
	Removing Reel Drive Motor.....	669
	Installing Reel Drive Motor	670
4.14.6	Replacing Drive Chain	672
4.14.7	Reel Speed Sensor	674
	Replacing Challenger®, Gleaner, IDEAL™, or Massey Ferguson™ Reel Speed Sensor	674
	Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor	675
	Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor	676
4.15	Contour Wheels – Option.....	677
4.15.1	Leveling ContourMax™ Wheel Height	677
4.15.2	Lubricating Contour Wheel System.....	679
4.15.3	Zeroing Mechanical Indicator	681
4.16	Transport System – Option	683
4.16.1	Checking Wheel Bolt Torque	683
4.16.2	Checking Transport Assembly Bolt Torque	683
4.16.3	Checking Tire Pressure	685
4.16.4	Changing Tow-Bar Hitch Connection from Pintle to Clevis.....	686
4.16.5	Changing Tow-Bar Hitch Connection from Clevis to Pintle.....	688
4.17	VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife – Option	691
4.17.1	Replacing Vertical Knife Sections.....	691
4.17.2	Greasing Vertical Knife	694
Chapter 5:	Options and Attachments	697
5.1	Crop Delivery Kits	697
5.1.1	Crop Lifter Kit.....	697
5.1.2	Crop Lifter Storage Rack Kit	697
5.1.3	Crop Divider Storage Bracket Kit.....	698
5.1.4	Floating Crop Dividers.....	698
5.1.5	Full Length Upper Cross Auger	699
5.1.6	Rice Divider Rod Kit.....	700
5.1.7	VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit	700
5.2	Cutterbar Kits	701
5.2.1	Rock Retarder Kit	701
5.2.2	Four-Point Knife Guard	701
5.3	FM200 Float Module Kits	702

TABLE OF CONTENTS

5.3.1 10V Sensor Adapter Kit	702
5.3.2 Crop Deflector Kits	702
5.3.3 Extended Center Filler.....	703
5.3.4 Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit.....	703
5.3.5 Full Interface Filler Kit	704
5.3.6 Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit.....	704
5.3.7 Lateral Tilt Plug Kit	705
5.3.8 Stripper Bar Kit.....	705
5.4 Header Kits.....	706
5.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit.....	706
5.4.2 ContourMax™ Foot Switch Kit.....	707
5.4.3 EasyMove™ Transport System.....	708
5.4.4 Inboard Steel End Finger Kit.....	708
5.4.5 Outboard Steel End Finger Kit	709
5.4.6 Side Hill Stabilizer Kit	709
5.4.7 Stabilizer Wheel Kit	710
5.4.8 Steel Skid Shoes Kit	710
5.4.9 Stubble Light Kit	711
5.4.10 Sunflower Attachment	712
Chapter 6: Troubleshooting.....	715
6.1 Crop Loss at Cutterbar	715
6.2 Cutting Action and Knife Components	717
6.3 Reel Delivery	720
6.4 Troubleshooting Header and Drapers.....	722
6.5 Cutting Edible Beans	724
Chapter 7: Reference	727
7.1 Torque Specifications	727
7.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications	727
7.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications – Cast Aluminum	729
7.1.3 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable	730
7.1.4 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable	731
7.1.5 O-Ring Face Seal Hydraulic Fittings.....	732
7.1.6 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings.....	733
7.2 Conversion Chart.....	735
Index.....	737

Chapter 1: Safety

Understanding and consistently following these safety procedures will help to ensure the safety of those operating the machine and of bystanders.

1.1 Safety Alert Symbols

The safety alert symbol indicates important safety messages in this manual and on safety signs on the machine.

This symbol means:

- **ATTENTION!**
- **BECOME ALERT!**
- **YOUR SAFETY IS INVOLVED!**

Carefully read and follow the safety message accompanying this symbol.

Why is safety important to you?

- Accidents disable and kill
- Accidents cost
- Accidents can be avoided



Figure 1.1: Safety Symbol

1.2 Signal Words

Three signal words, **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**, are used to alert you to hazardous situations. Two signal words, **IMPORTANT** and **NOTE**, identify non-safety related information.

Signal words are selected using the following guidelines:



DANGER

Indicates an imminently hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.



CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may be used to alert against unsafe practices.

IMPORTANT:

Indicates a situation that, if not avoided, could result in a malfunction or damage to the machine.

NOTE:

Provides additional information or advice.

1.3 General Safety

Protect yourself when assembling, operating, and servicing machinery.

CAUTION

The following general farm safety precautions should be part of your operating procedure for all types of machinery.

Wear all protective clothing and personal safety devices that could be necessary for the job at hand. Do **NOT** take chances. You may need the following:

- Hard hat
- Protective footwear with slip-resistant soles
- Protective glasses or goggles
- Heavy gloves
- Wet weather gear
- Respirator or filter mask

In addition, take the following precautions:

- Be aware that exposure to loud noises can cause hearing impairment. Wear suitable hearing protection devices such as earmuffs or earplugs to help protect against loud noises.



Figure 1.2: Safety Equipment



Figure 1.3: Safety Equipment

- Provide a first aid kit in case of emergencies.
- Keep a properly maintained fire extinguisher on the machine. Familiarize yourself with its use.
- Keep young children away from machinery at all times.
- Be aware that accidents often happen when Operators are fatigued or in a hurry. Take time to consider the safest way to accomplish a task. **NEVER** ignore the signs of fatigue.

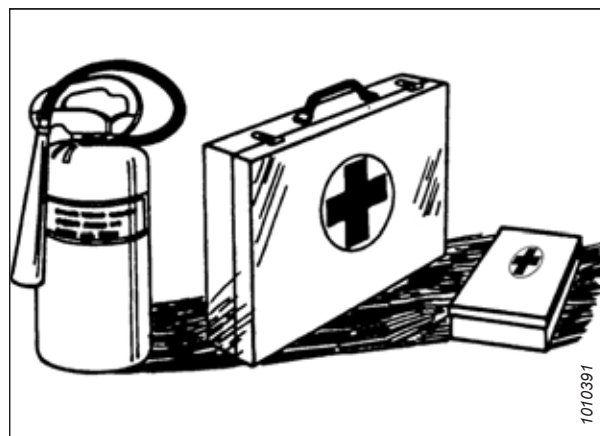


Figure 1.4: Safety Equipment

SAFETY

- Wear close-fitting clothing and cover long hair. **NEVER** wear dangling items such as hoodies, scarves or bracelets.
- Keep all shields in place. **NEVER** alter or remove safety equipment. Ensure that the driveline guards can rotate independently of their shaft, and that they can telescope freely.
- Use only service and repair parts made or approved by the equipment manufacturer. Parts from other manufacturers may not meet the correct strength, design, or safety requirements.



Figure 1.5: Safety around Equipment

- Keep hands, feet, clothing, and hair away from moving parts. **NEVER** attempt to clear obstructions or objects from a machine while the engine is running.
- Do **NOT** modify the machine. Unauthorized modifications may impair the functionality and/or safety of the machine. It may also shorten the machine's service life.
- To avoid injury or death from the unexpected startup of the machine, **ALWAYS** stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

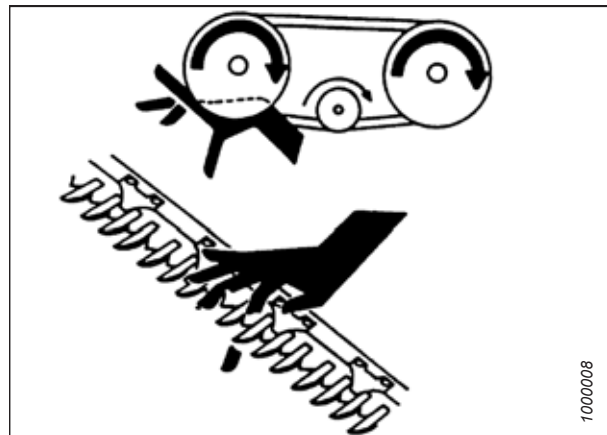


Figure 1.6: Safety around Equipment

- Keep the machine service area clean and dry. Wet and/or oily floors are slippery. Wet spots can be dangerous when working with electrical equipment. Ensure that all electrical outlets and tools are properly grounded.
- Keep the work area well-lit.
- Keep machinery clean. Straw and chaff on a hot engine are fire hazards. Do **NOT** allow oil or grease to accumulate on service platforms, ladders, or controls. Clean machines before they are stored.
- **NEVER** use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.
- When storing machinery, cover any sharp or extending components to prevent injury from accidental contact.



Figure 1.7: Safety around Equipment

1.4 Maintenance Safety

Protect yourself when maintaining machinery.

To ensure your safety while maintaining the machine:

- Review the operator's manual and all safety items before operating or performing maintenance on the machine.
- Place all controls in Neutral, stop the engine, set the parking brake, remove the ignition key, and wait for all moving parts to stop before servicing, adjusting, or repairing the machine.
- Follow good shop practices:
 - Keep service areas clean and dry
 - Ensure that electrical outlets and tools are properly grounded
 - Keep the work area well lit
- Relieve pressure from hydraulic circuits before servicing and/or disconnecting the machine.
- Ensure that all components are tight and that steel lines, hoses, and couplings are in good condition before applying pressure to hydraulic systems.
- Keep hands, feet, clothing, and hair away from all moving and/or rotating parts.
- Clear the area of bystanders, especially children, when carrying out any maintenance, repairs, or adjustments.
- Install the transport lock or place safety stands under the frame before working under the machine.
- If more than one person is servicing the machine at the same time, be aware that rotating a driveline or another mechanically driven component by hand (for example, accessing a lubricant fitting) will cause drive components in other areas (belts, pulleys, and knives) to move. Stay clear of driven components at all times.
- Wear protective gear when working on the machine.
- Wear heavy gloves when working on knife components.



Figure 1.8: Safety around Equipment

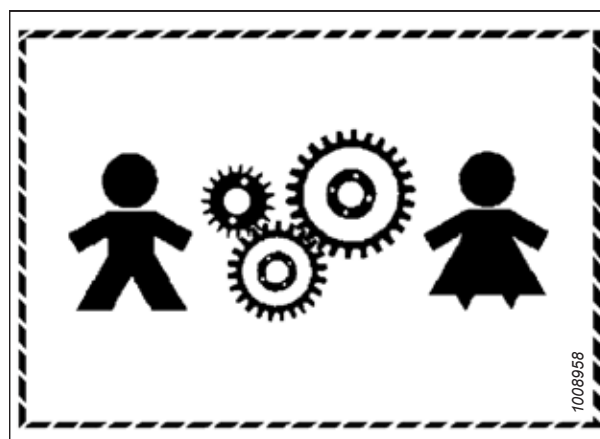


Figure 1.9: Equipment is NOT Safe for Children



Figure 1.10: Safety Equipment

1.5 Hydraulic Safety

Protect yourself when assembling, operating, and servicing hydraulic components.

- Always place all hydraulic controls in Neutral before leaving the operator's seat.
- Ensure that all the components in the hydraulic system are kept clean and in good condition.
- Replace any worn, cut, abraded, flattened, or crimped hoses and steel lines.
- Do **NOT** attempt any makeshift repairs to hydraulic lines, fittings, or hoses by using tapes, clamps, cements, or welding. The hydraulic system operates under extremely high pressure. Makeshift repairs can fail suddenly and create hazardous conditions.

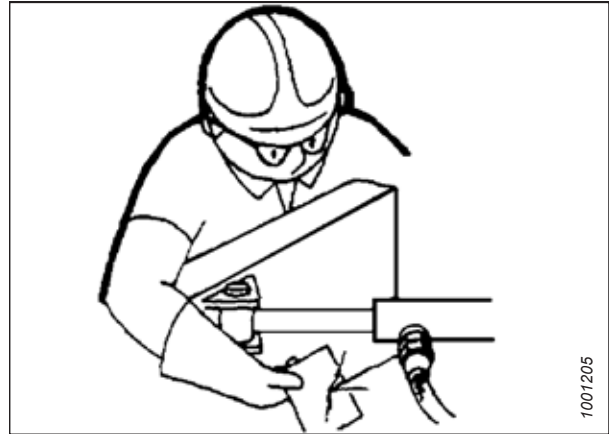


Figure 1.11: Testing for Hydraulic Leaks

- Wear proper hand and eye protection when searching for high-pressure hydraulic fluid leaks. Use a piece of cardboard as a backstop instead of your hands to isolate and identify a leak.
- If injured by a concentrated, high-pressure stream of hydraulic fluid, seek medical attention immediately. Serious infection or toxic reaction can develop from hydraulic fluid piercing the skin.



Figure 1.12: Hydraulic Pressure Hazard

- Ensure that all components are tight and that steel lines, hoses, and couplings are in good condition before applying pressure to a hydraulic system.

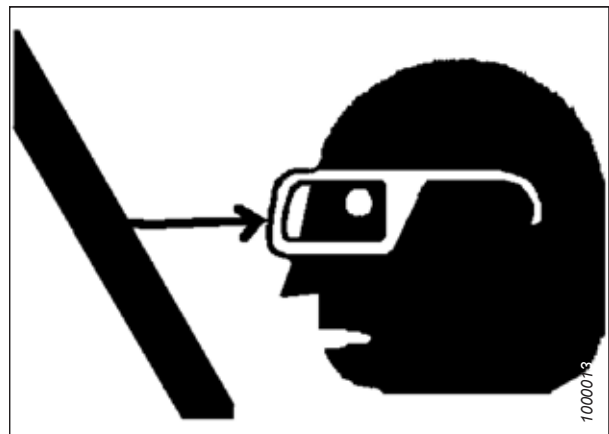


Figure 1.13: Safety around Equipment

1.6 Safety Signs

Safety signs are decals placed on the machine where there is a risk of personal injury, or where the Operator should take extra precautions before operating the controls. They are usually yellow.

- Keep safety signs clean and legible at all times.
- Replace safety signs that are missing or illegible.
- If the original part on which a safety sign was installed is replaced, ensure that the repair part displays the current safety sign.
- Replacement safety signs are available from your Dealer.

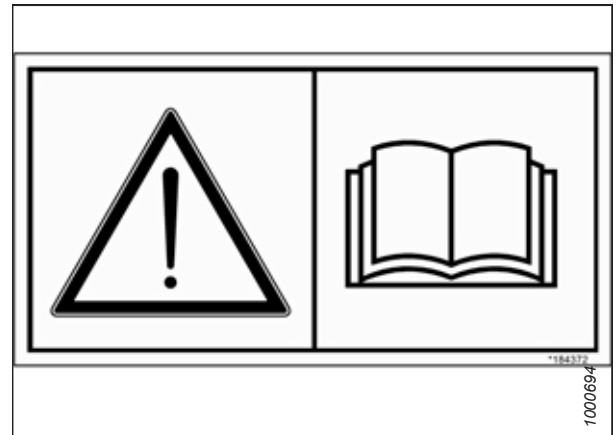


Figure 1.14: Operator's Manual Decal

1.6.1 Installing Safety Decals

Replace any safety decals that are worn or damaged.

1. Decide exactly where you are going to place the decal.
2. Clean and dry the installation area.
3. Remove the smaller portion of the split backing paper.
4. Place the decal in position and slowly peel back the remaining paper, smoothing the decal as it is applied.
5. Prick small air pockets with a pin and smooth them out.

1.7 Safety Decal Locations

Safety signs are usually yellow decals, and are placed on the machine where there is a risk of personal injury, or where the operator has to take extra precaution before operating controls.

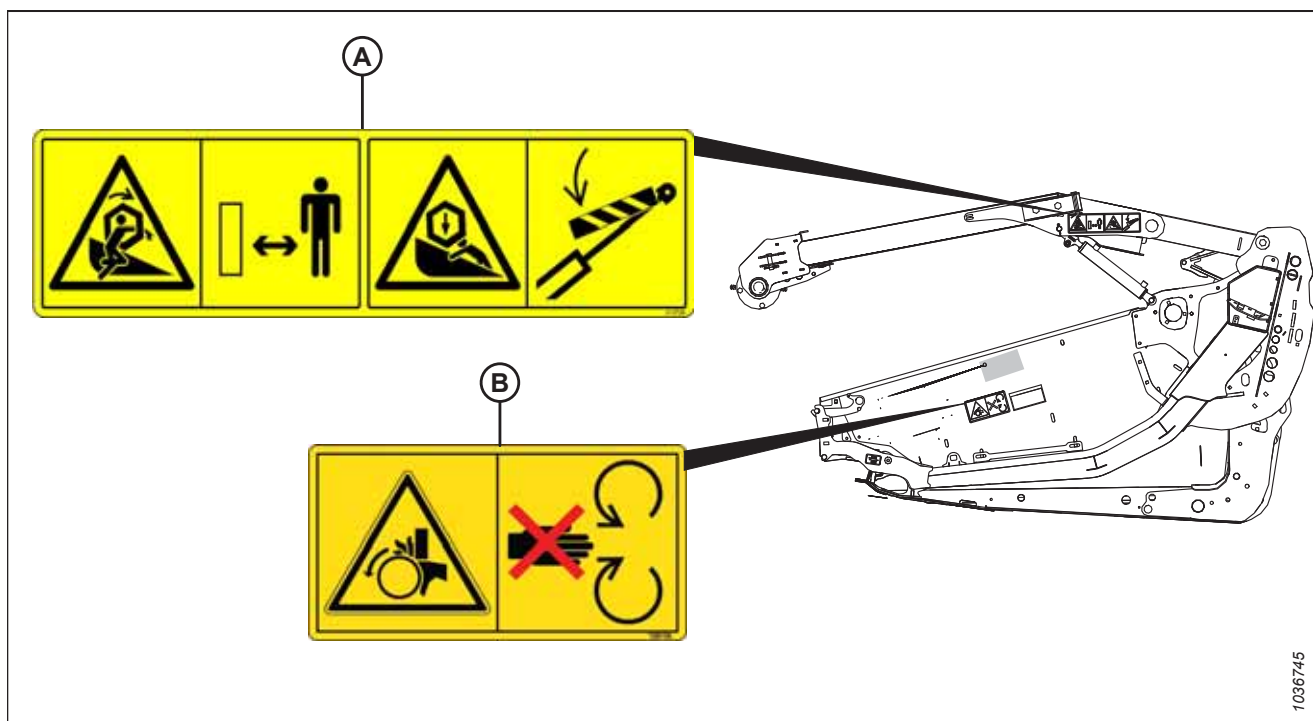


Figure 1.15: Reel Arms and Endsheets

A - MD #360541 – Reel Entanglement/ Hazard (Two Locations)

B - MD #288195 – Danger, Rotating Part (Two Locations)

SAFETY

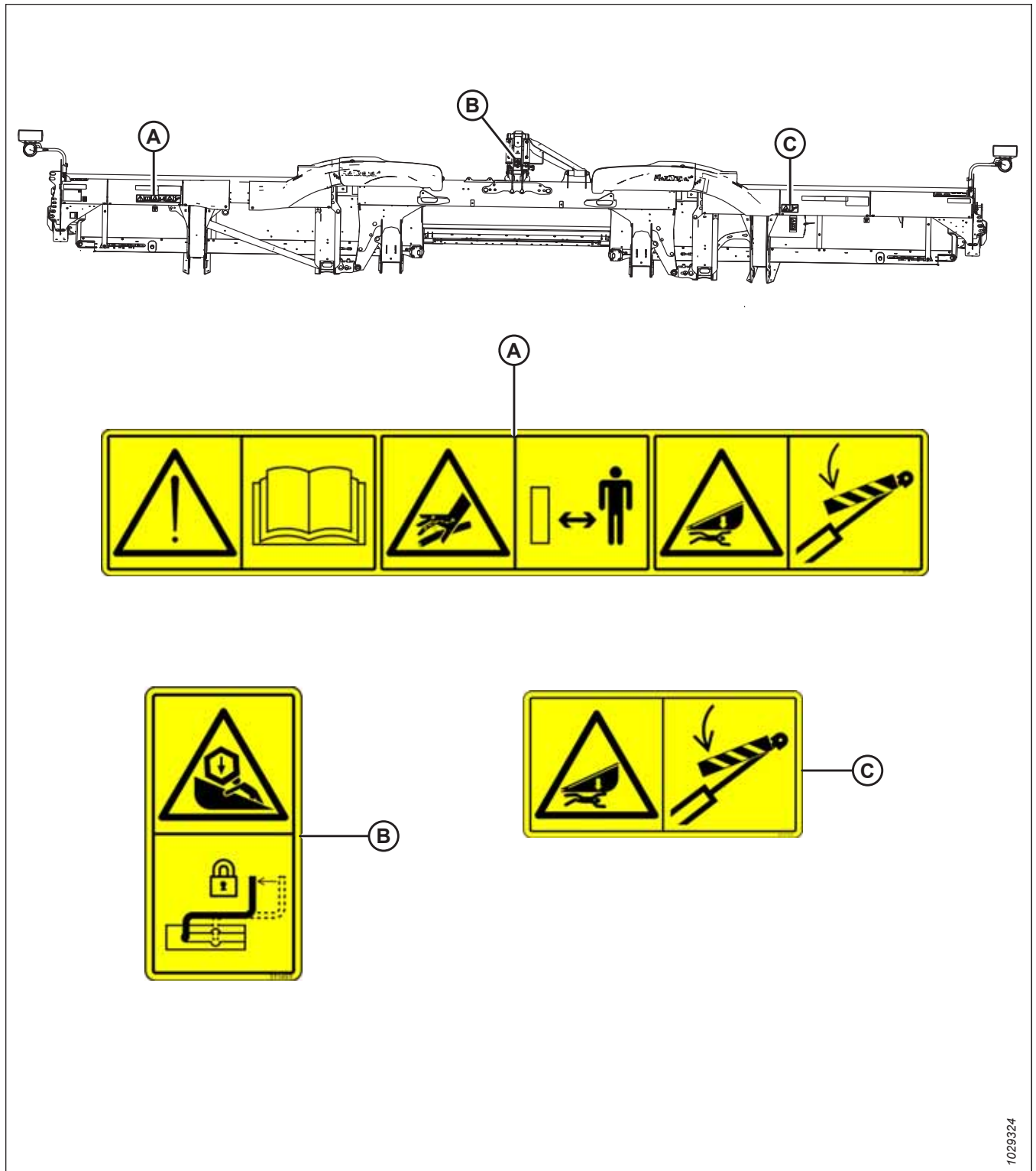
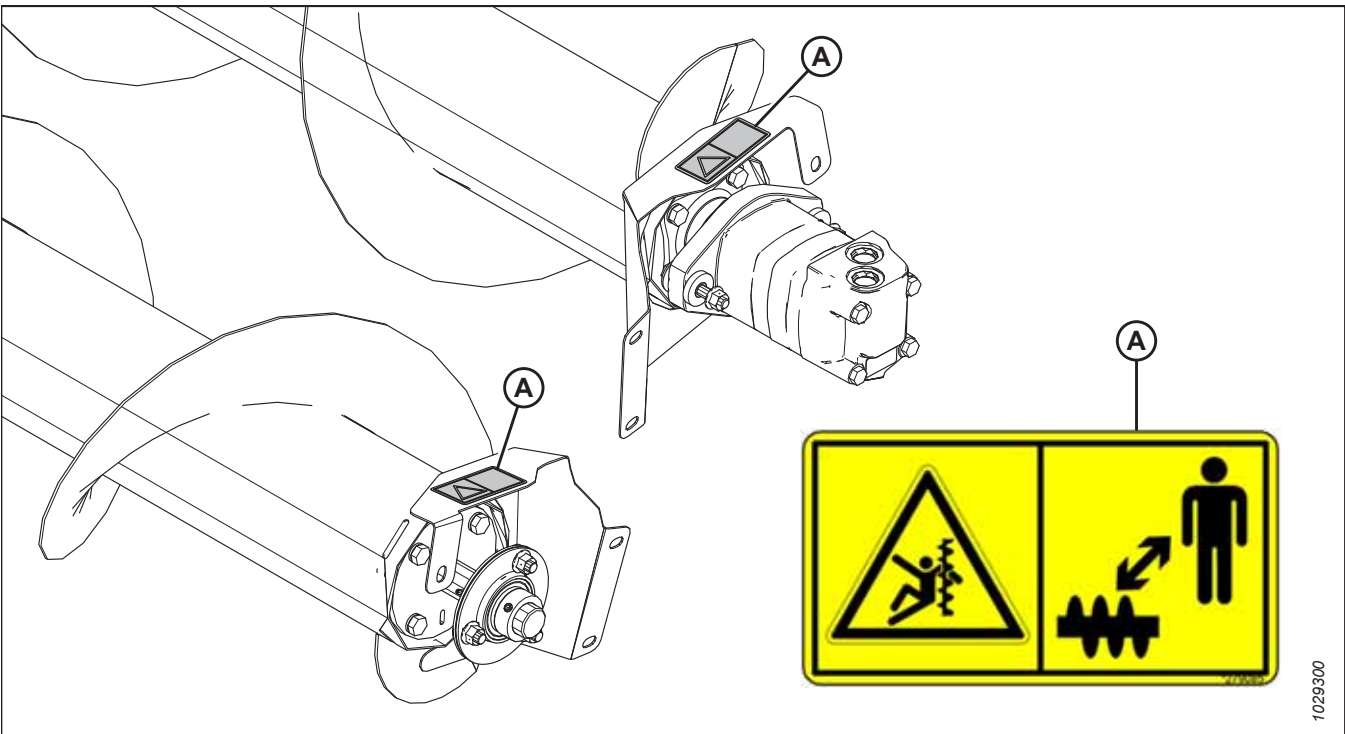
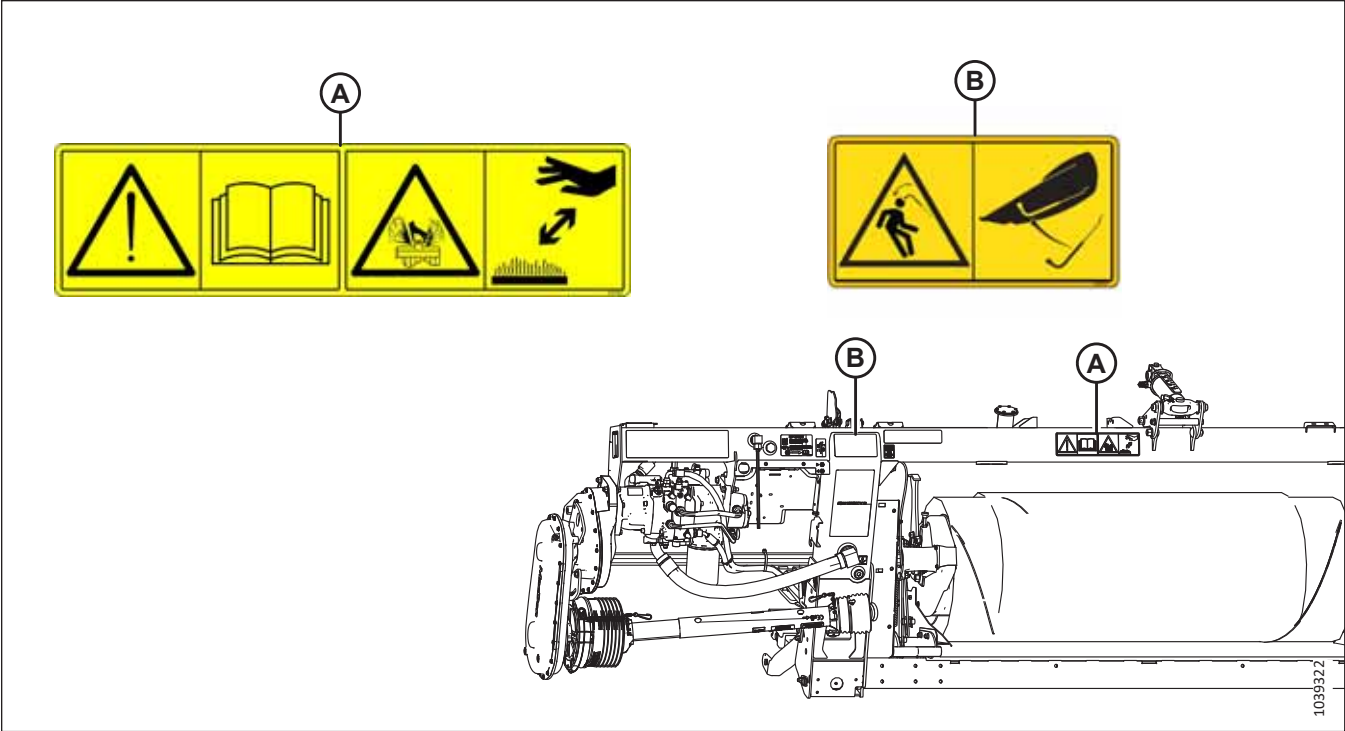


Figure 1.16: Backtube

A - MD #313725 – Read Manual / High Pressure Fluid / Header Hazard
 C - MD #313733 – Header Crushing Hazard

B - MD #311493 – Center Prop Lock

SAFETY



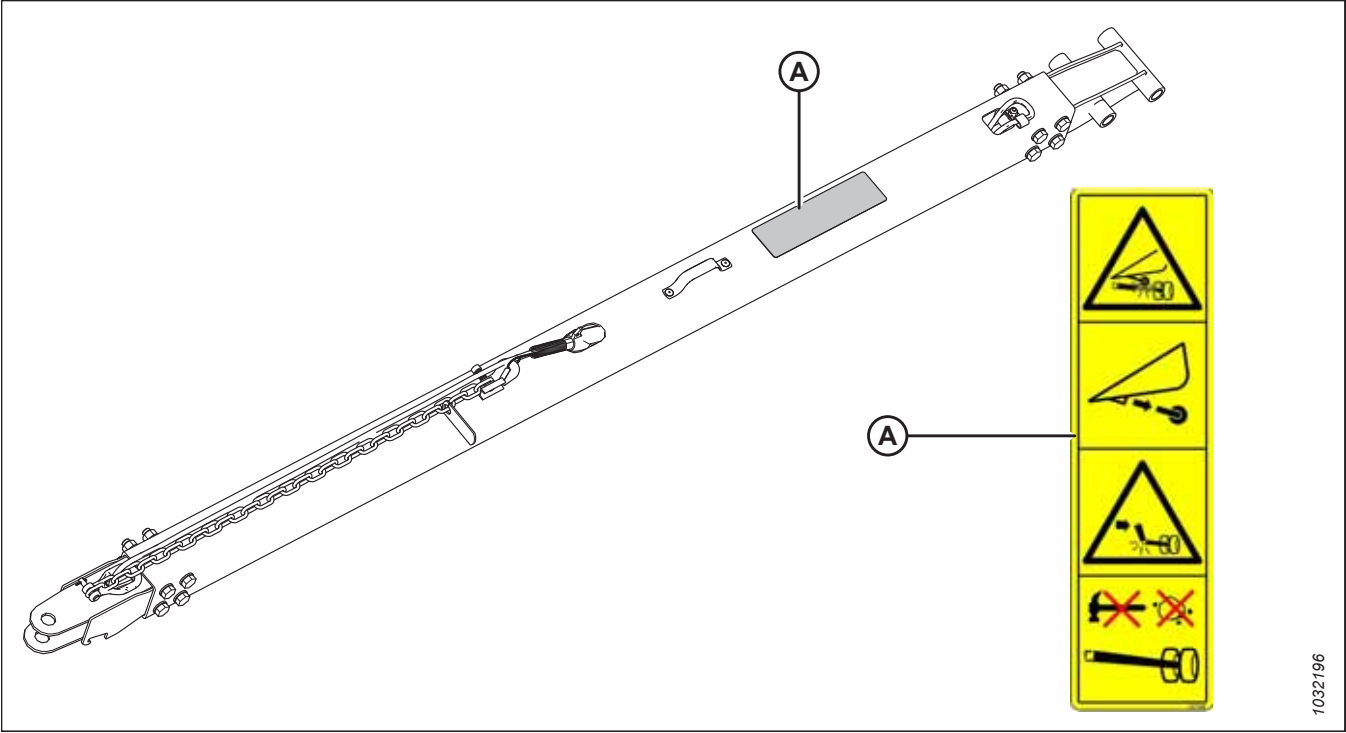


Figure 1.19: EasyMove™ Transport System – Tow-Bar (Short Bar Shown; Long Bar Similar)

A - MD #327588 – Hitch Damage Hazard

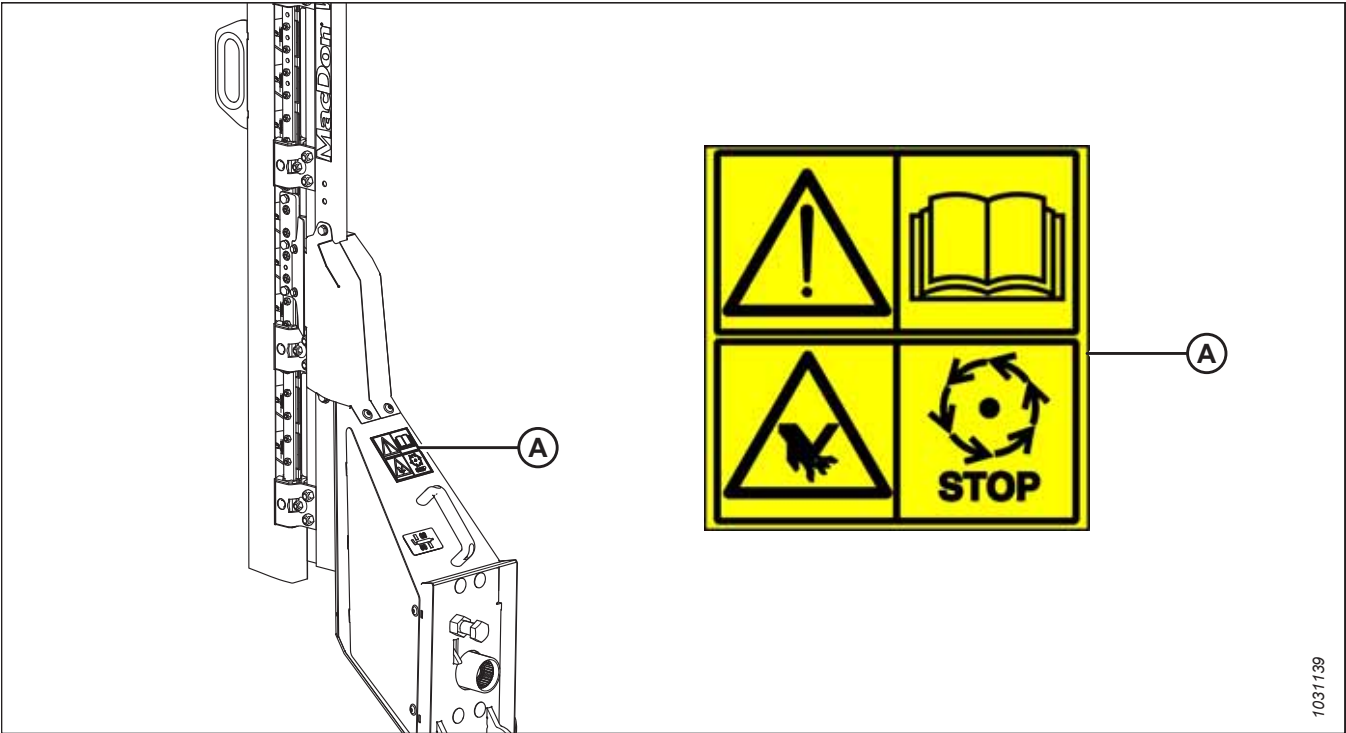


Figure 1.20: Vertical Knife

A - MD #313881 – Knife Hazard

SAFETY

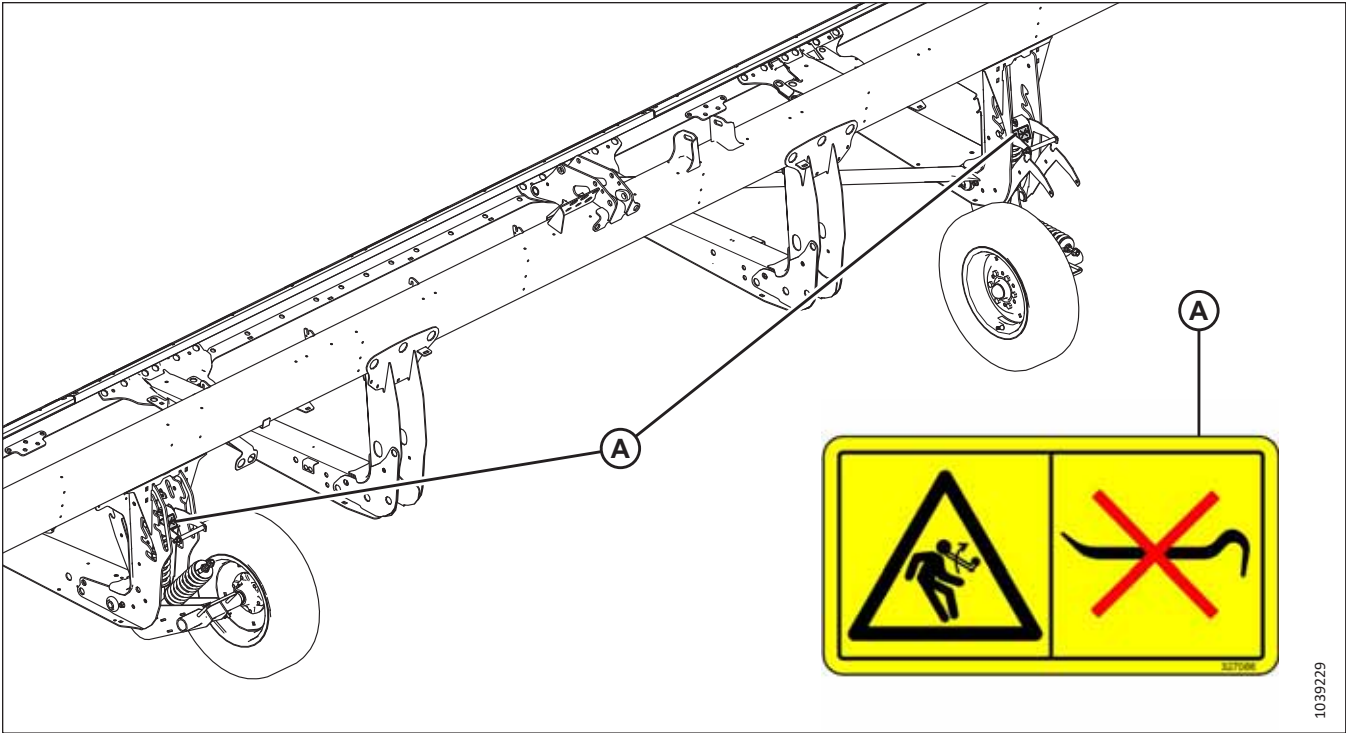


Figure 1.21: Stabilizer Wheels
A - MD #327086 – Released Spring Energy Hazard

1.8 Understanding Safety Signs

Refer to this topic to learn the hazards that each type of safety decal denotes.

MD #174436

High-pressure oil hazard

WARNING

High-pressure hydraulic fluid can penetrate human skin, which can cause serious injury such as gangrene, which can be fatal. To prevent this:

- Do **NOT** go near hydraulic fluid leaks.
- Do **NOT** use a finger or skin to check for hydraulic fluid leaks.
- Lower the load or relieve the pressure in the hydraulic system before loosening any hydraulic fittings.
- If you are injured, seek emergency medical help.
IMMEDIATE surgery is required to remove hydraulic fluid which has penetrated the skin.



Figure 1.22: MD #174436

MD #220799

Loss of control hazard

WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death from loss of control:

- Ensure that the tow-bar lock mechanism is locked.



Figure 1.23: MD #220799

MD #279085

Auger entanglement hazard

DANGER

To prevent injury from the rotating auger:

- Stand clear of the auger while the machine is running.
- Stop the engine and remove the key before servicing the auger.
- Do **NOT** reach into moving parts while the machine is running.



Figure 1.24: MD #279085

SAFETY

MD #288195

Rotating object pinch hazard

CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- Stop the engine and remove the key before opening the shield.
- Do **NOT** operate without shields in place.



Figure 1.25: MD #288195

MD #311493

Reel Crushing Hazard

DANGER

- To prevent injury from the fall of a raised reel, fully raise the reel. Stop the engine and remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety lock on each reel support arm before working on or under the reel.



Figure 1.26: MD #311493

SAFETY

MD #313725

Read manual / high pressure fluid / header crushing hazard

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage the safety locks to prevent lowering of raised unit before servicing in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.

To prevent injury or death from fall of a raised header:

- Fully raise the header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety locks on the combine before going under the header.
- Alternatively, rest the header on the ground, stop the engine, and remove the key before servicing.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury, gangrene, or death:

- Do **NOT** go near leaks.
- Do **NOT** use a finger or skin to check for leaks.
- Lower the load or relieve hydraulic pressure before loosening fittings.
- High-pressure oil can easily puncture skin, and can cause serious injury, gangrene, or death.
- If injured, seek emergency medical help. Immediate surgery is required to remove oil.

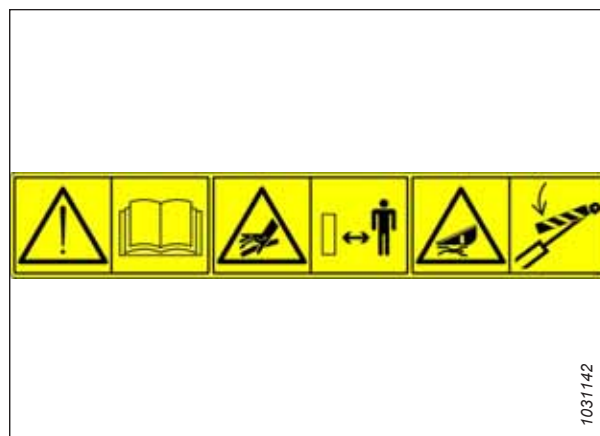


Figure 1.27: MD #313725

SAFETY

MD #360541

Reel entanglement / reel crushing hazard

DANGER

- To prevent injury from entanglement with the rotating reel, stand clear of the header while the machine is running.
- To prevent injury from the fall of the raised reel, fully raise the reel, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety lock on each reel support arm before working on or under the reel.



Figure 1.28: MD #360541

SAFETY

MD #313728

General hazard pertaining to machine operation and servicing /
Hot fluid spray hazard

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage safety locks to prevent the lowering of a raised unit before servicing it in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.

CAUTION

To prevent injury from hot fluids:

- Do **NOT** remove the fluid fill cap when the machine is hot.
- Allow the machine to cool down before opening the fluid fill cap.
- Fluid is under pressure and may be hot.

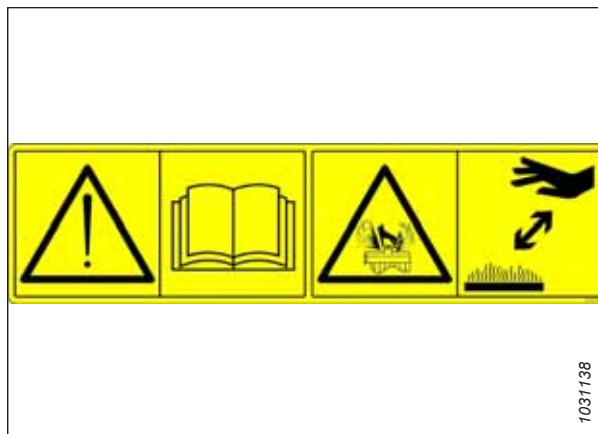


Figure 1.29: MD #313728

SAFETY

MD #313733

Header crushing hazard

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the fall of a raised header:

- Fully raise the header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety locks on the combine before going under the header.
- Alternatively, rest the header on the ground, stop the engine, and remove the key before servicing.



Figure 1.30: MD #313733

SAFETY

MD #313881

General hazard pertaining to machine operation and servicing / knife hazard

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all the safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage the safety locks to prevent lowering of the raised unit before servicing it in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.

WARNING

To prevent injury from sharp cutting knife:

- Wear heavy canvas or leather gloves when working with the knife.
- Be sure no one is near the vertical knife when removing or rotating the knife.



Figure 1.31: MD #313881

SAFETY

MD #327086

Released spring energy hazard

WARNING

To prevent injury:

- When servicing or replacing wheel axle components, the lift-assist spring no longer has counterweight and becomes energized.
- Do **NOT** attempt to pry adjustment handle out of a position slot before releasing tension from the assist springs.



Figure 1.32: MD #327086

MD #327588

Hitch damage hazard

DANGER

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Remove the left contour wheel before transporting the header with transport.
- Do **NOT** tow a header if the transport hitch is damaged.

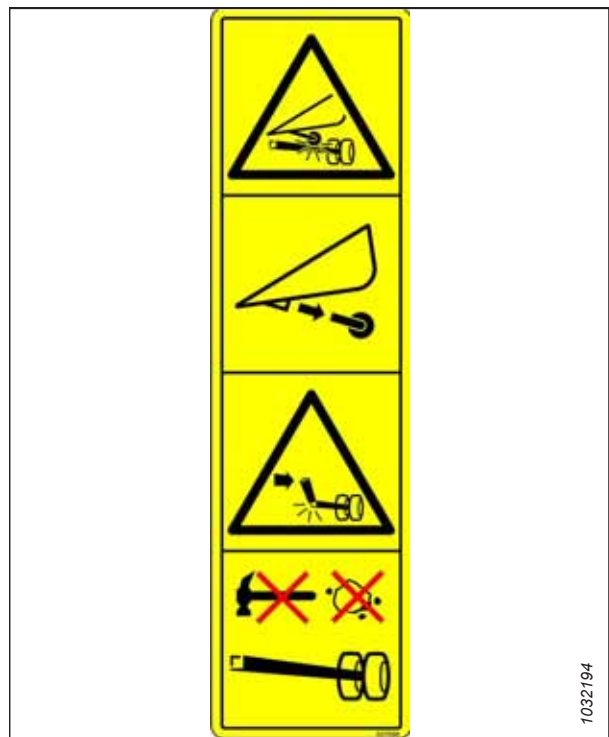


Figure 1.33: MD #327588

Chapter 2: Product Overview

Refer to this section to learn the definitions of the technical terms used in this manual, the machine's specifications, and the locations of key components.

2.1 Definitions

The following terms, abbreviations, and acronyms are used in this manual.

Term	Definition
API	American Petroleum Institute
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
Bolt	A headed and externally threaded fastener designed to be paired with a nut
Center-link	A hydraulic cylinder connection between the header and the vehicle, which is used to change the angle of the header relative to the vehicle
CGVW	Combined gross vehicle weight
Export header	The header configuration typical outside North America
FD2 Series header	MacDon FD225, FD230, FD235, FD240, FD241, FD245, and FD250 FlexDraper® header
FFFT	Flats from finger tight
Finger tight	Finger tight is a reference position in which the given sealing surfaces or components are making contact with each other and the fitting has been tightened by hand to a point where the fitting is no longer loose and cannot be tightened further by hand
FM200	The float module used with an FD2 Series FlexDraper® header for combining
FSI	Float setting indicator
GVW	Gross vehicle weight
Hard joint	A joint made with use of a fastener where joining materials are highly incompressible
Hex key	A tool of hexagonal cross-section used to drive bolts and screws that have a hexagonal socket in the head (internal-wrenching hexagon drive); also known as an Allen key
hp	Horsepower
JIC	Joint Industrial Council: A standards body that developed standard sizing and shape for original 37° flared fitting
n/a	Not applicable
North American header	The header configuration typical in North America
NPT	National Pipe Thread: A style of fitting used for low-pressure port openings. Threads on NPT fittings are uniquely tapered for an interference fit
Nut	An internally threaded fastener designed to be paired with a bolt
ORB	O-ring boss: A style of fitting commonly used in port openings on manifolds, pumps, and motors
ORFS	O-ring face seal: A style of fitting commonly used for connecting hoses and tubes. This style of fitting is also commonly called ORS, which stands for O-Ring Seal
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
Screw	A headed and externally threaded fastener that threads into preformed threads or forms its own thread when inserted into a mating part
Soft joint	A flexible joint made by use of a fastener in which the joining materials compress or relax over a period of time
Tension	An axial load placed on a bolt or screw, usually measured in Newtons (N) or pounds (lb.). This term can also be used to describe the force a belt exerts on a pulley or sprocket

PRODUCT OVERVIEW

Term	Definition
TFFT	Turns from finger tight
Torque	The product of a force * the length of a lever arm, usually measured in Newton-meters (Nm) or foot-pounds (lbf·ft)
Torque angle	A tightening procedure in which a fitting is assembled to a specified tightness (usually finger tight) and then the nut is turned farther by a specified number of degrees until it achieves its final position
Torque-tension	The relationship between the assembly torque applied to a piece of hardware and the axial load it induces in a bolt or screw
UCA	Upper cross auger
Washer	A thin cylinder with a hole or a slot located in the center, used as a spacer, a load distribution element, or a locking mechanism

2.2 Product Specifications

Use the specification table to reference information about a machine's specific configuration. The table lists dimensions, weights, performance ranges, and features.

NOTE:

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

The following symbols and letters are used in specification tables:

– S: standard / O_F: optional (factory installed) / O_D: optional (dealer installed) / –: not available

Cutterbar			
Effective cutting width (distance between crop divider points; cut width plus divider gather)			
FD225		7.7 m (301 in.)	S
FD230		9.2 m (361 in.)	S
FD235		10.7 m (421 in.)	S
FD240		12.2 m (481 in.)	S
FD241		12.5 m (493 in.)	S
FD245		13.7 m (541 in.)	S
FD250		15.3 m (601 in.)	S
Cutterbar lift range		Varies with combine model	S
Knife			
Single-knife drive (FD225–FD240): hydraulic motor mounted to enclosed heavy duty MacDon knife drive box on the left side of header.			O _F
Double knife drive (FD235–FD250): one hydraulic motor, untimed, one mounted to enclosed heavy duty MacDon knife drive box on each side of header.			O _F
Knife stroke		76 mm (3 in.)	S
Single-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD225 and FD235	1200–1400 spm	S
Single-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD230	1200–1500 spm	S
Single-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD240	1200–1300 spm	S
Double-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD235, FD240, FD241, FD245, and FD250	1200–1500 spm	S
Knife Sections			
Over-serrated, Ultra Coarse, ClearCut™, QuickChange, bolted, 1.5 serrations per cm (4 serrations per inch)			O
Over-serrated, Coarse, ClearCut™, QuickChange, bolted, 3.5 serrations per cm (9 serrations per inch)			S
Over-serrated, Fine, ClearCut™, QuickChange, bolted, 5.5 serrations per cm (14 serrations per inch)			O
Knife overlap at center (double-knife headers)		3 mm (1/8 in.)	S
Guards and Hold-Downs			
Guard: ClearCut™ Pointed, forged and double heat treated (DHT) Hold-down: forged, single adjustment bolt			O _F
Guard: ClearCut™ Four Point, forged and double heat treated (DHT) Hold-down: forged, single adjustment bolt			O _F
Guard: ClearCut™ PlugFree™, forged and double heat treated (DHT) Hold-down: forged, dual adjustment bolts			O _F
Cutterbar Wearplates and Standard Skid Shoes			

PRODUCT OVERVIEW

The FD2 Series includes wearplates across the width of the cutterbar				S
FD225			4 Skid Shoes	S
FD230, FD235, FD241, FD245, FD250			6 Skid Shoes	S
Guard Angle (Cutterbar on the Ground)				
Center-link retracted			1.7 degrees	S
Center-link extended			8.9 degrees	S
Draper and Decks				
Draper width			1.27 m (50 in.)	S
Draper drive			Hydraulic	S
Draper speed: FM200 Float Module controlled			209 m/min. (687 fpm)	S
Delivery opening width			1905 mm (75 in.)	S
PR15 Pick-Up Reel				
Quantity of tine tubes			5 or 6	
Center tube diameter			203 mm (8 in.)	S
Finger tip radius	Factory-set		800 mm (31 1/2 in.)	S
Finger tip radius	Adjustment range		766–800 mm (30 3/16–31 1/2 in.)	S
Effective reel diameter (via shaped cam action)			1.650 m (65 in.)	S
Finger length			290 mm (11 in.)	S
Finger spacing (nominal, staggered on alternate bats)			100 mm (4 in.)	S
Reel drive			Hydraulic	S
Reel speed (adjustable from cab, varies with combine model)			0–67 rpm	S
Header Frame Flex Range				
Model	Up - Standard	Down - Standard	Up - Limiter Removed	Down - Limiter Removed ¹
FD225	102 mm (4 in.)	64 mm (2.5 in.)	102 mm (4 in.)	102 mm (4 in.)
FD230	165 mm (6.5 in.)	130 mm (5 in.)	165 mm (6.5 in.)	165 mm (6.5 in.)
FD235	205 mm (8 in.)	130 mm (5 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)
FD240 DR ²	205 mm (8 in.)	130 mm (5 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)
FD240 TR ³	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)
FD241	205 mm (8 in.)	130 mm (5 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)	205 mm (8 in.)
FD245	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)
FD250	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)	216 mm (8.5 in.)
FM200 Float Module				
Feed draper	Width		2 m (78 11/16 in.)	S
Feed draper	Speed		107–122 m/min (350–400 fpm)	S

1. To avoid cutting off reel fingers, a greater cutterbar clearance is required when the header flex range is increased. For more information, refer to [Disabling Flex Frown Limiter](#).
2. Double reel
3. Triple reel

PRODUCT OVERVIEW

Feed auger	Width	1.630 m (64 1/8 in.)	S
Feed auger	Outside diameter	559 mm (22 in.)	S
Feed auger	Tube diameter	356 mm (14 in.)	S
Feed auger	Speed (varies with combine model)	191–195 rpm (varies with combine model)	S
Oil reservoir capacity		95 liters (25 US gallons)	S
Oil type		Single grade transmission/ hydraulic fluid (THF).	—
THF viscosity at 40°C (104°F)		60.1 cSt	—
THF viscosity at 100°C (212°F)		9.5 cSt	—
Upper Cross Auger			O-D
Outside diameter		330 mm (13 in.)	—
Tube diameter		152 mm (6 in.)	—
Stabilizer Wheel / EasyMove™ Transport			O-D
Wheels		38 cm (15 in.)	—
Tires		225/75 R-15	—
Weight			
Estimated weight range – base header with float module – variances are due to different package configurations.			
FD225	North America	3329–3447 kg (7331–7597 lb.)	
FD230	North America	3701–3743 kg (8160–8253 lb.)	
FD235	North America	3901–4036 kg (8600–8898 lb.)	
FD240	North America	4050–4315 kg (8928–9512 lb.)	
FD241	Export	4,287–4,340 kg (9,452–9,569 lb.)	
FD245	North America	4,498–4,555 kg (9,916–10,043 lb.)	
	Export	4,635–4,692 kg (10,218–10,345 lb.)	
FD250	North America	4693–4756 kg (10,346–10,485 lb.)	
	Export	4,853–4,916 kg (10,699–10,838 lb.)	

2.3 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Dimensions

When operating a header it is important to know the dimensions of the machine.

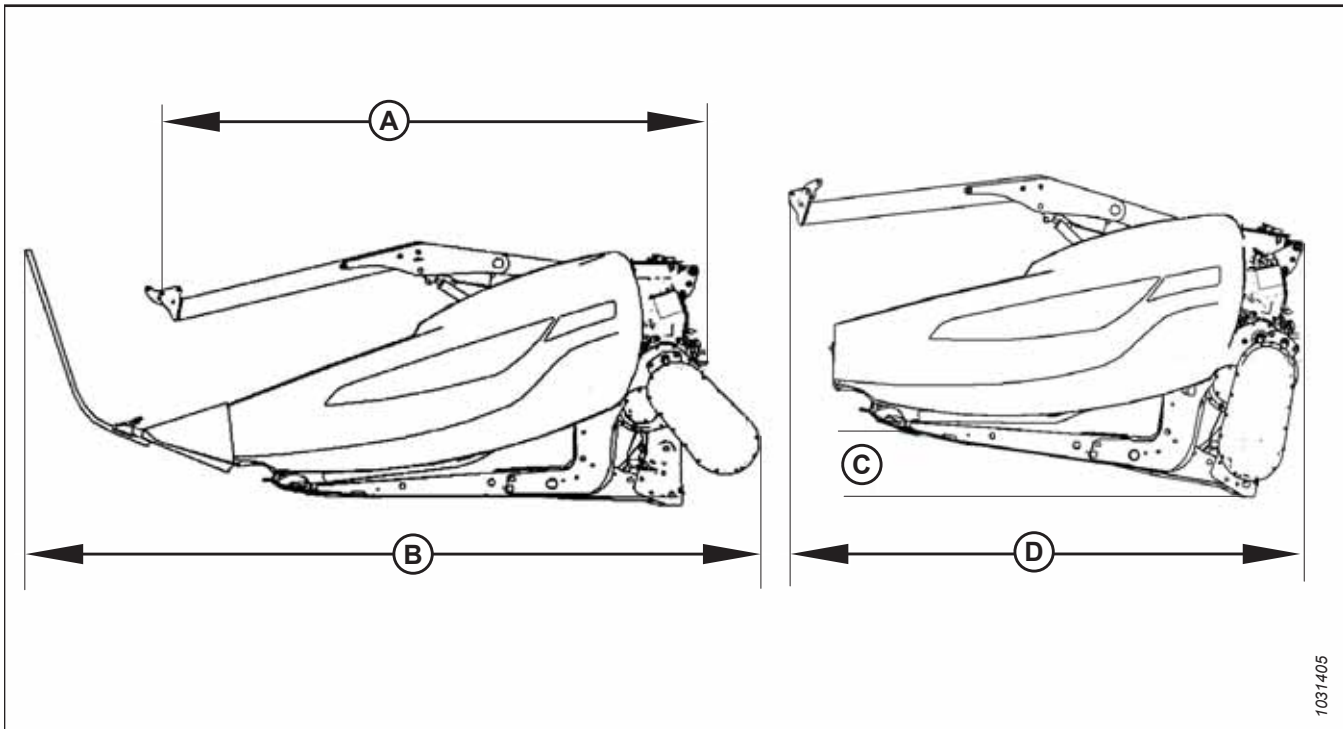


Figure 2.1: Header Dimensions

Table 2.1 Header Dimensions

Frame and Structure		
Feature Being Measured	Reference to Figure 2.1, page 26	Dimension
Header width in field mode	—	Cut width + 500 mm (19 1/5 in.)
Cutterbar width	—	Cut width - 500 mm (19 1/5 in.)
Header width in transport position with FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	(A) Gearbox rotated (storage), dividers removed (refer to 2.1, page 26)	2.6 m (103 in.)
Header width in transport position with FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	(B) Gearbox operational, standard dividers installed (refer to 2.1, page 26)	3.5 m (138 in.)
Header width in transport position with reel fully retracted and FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	Gearbox rotated, dividers removed (refer to 2.1, page 26) Angle (C) required to achieve transport width (D) NOTE: Dimension (D) can be decreased by using a transport trailer with greater angle.	8° 2.591 m (102 in.)

2.4 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Component Identification

Familiarizing yourself with the main components of the header will make it easier to follow the operation and maintenance instructions provided in this manual.

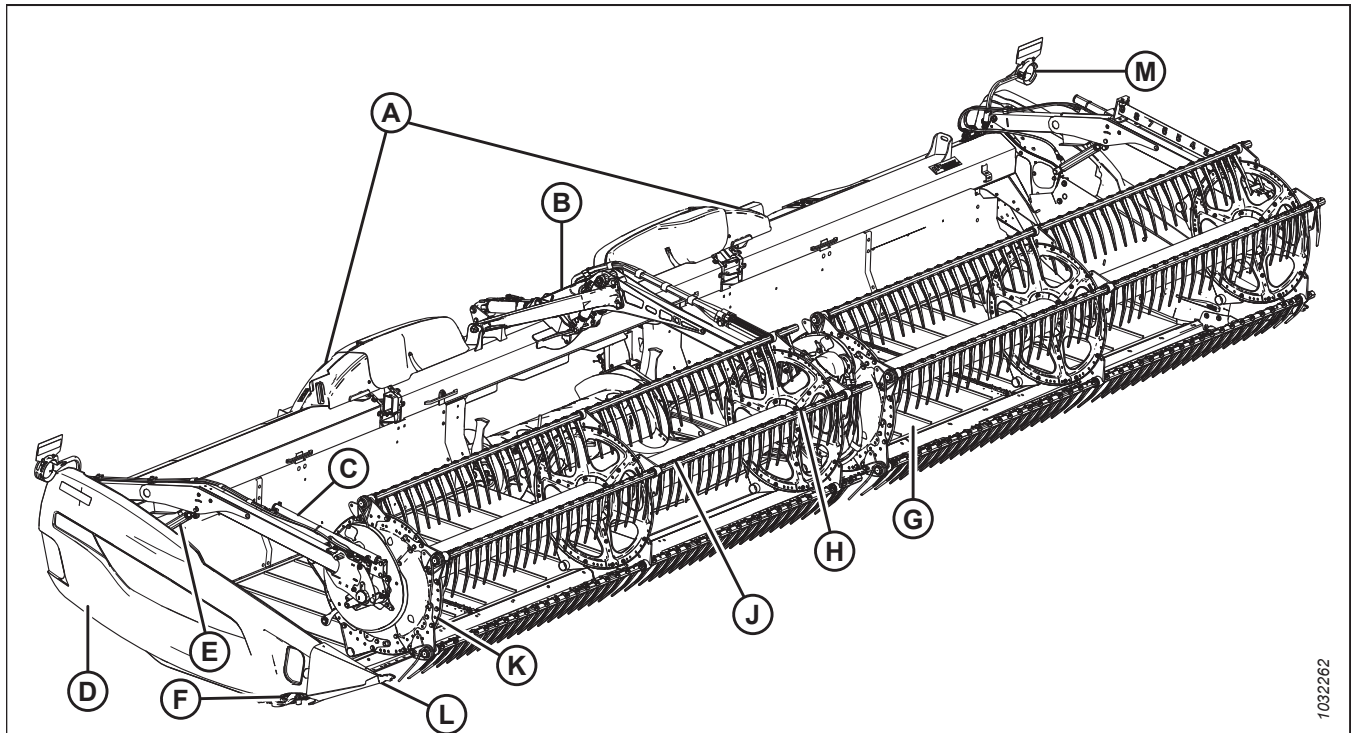


Figure 2.2: FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Components

A - Wing Float Linkage
D - Endshield
G - Side Draper
K - Reel Endshield

B - Center Reel Arm
E - Reel Lift Cylinder
H - Center Reel Drive
L - Crop Divider

C - Reel Fore-Aft Cylinder
F - Knife Drive Box (inside endshield)
J - Pick-up Reel
M - Header Light (except Europe)

2.5 FM200 Float Module Component Identification

Familiarizing yourself with the main components of the float module will make it easier to follow the operation and maintenance instructions provided in this manual.

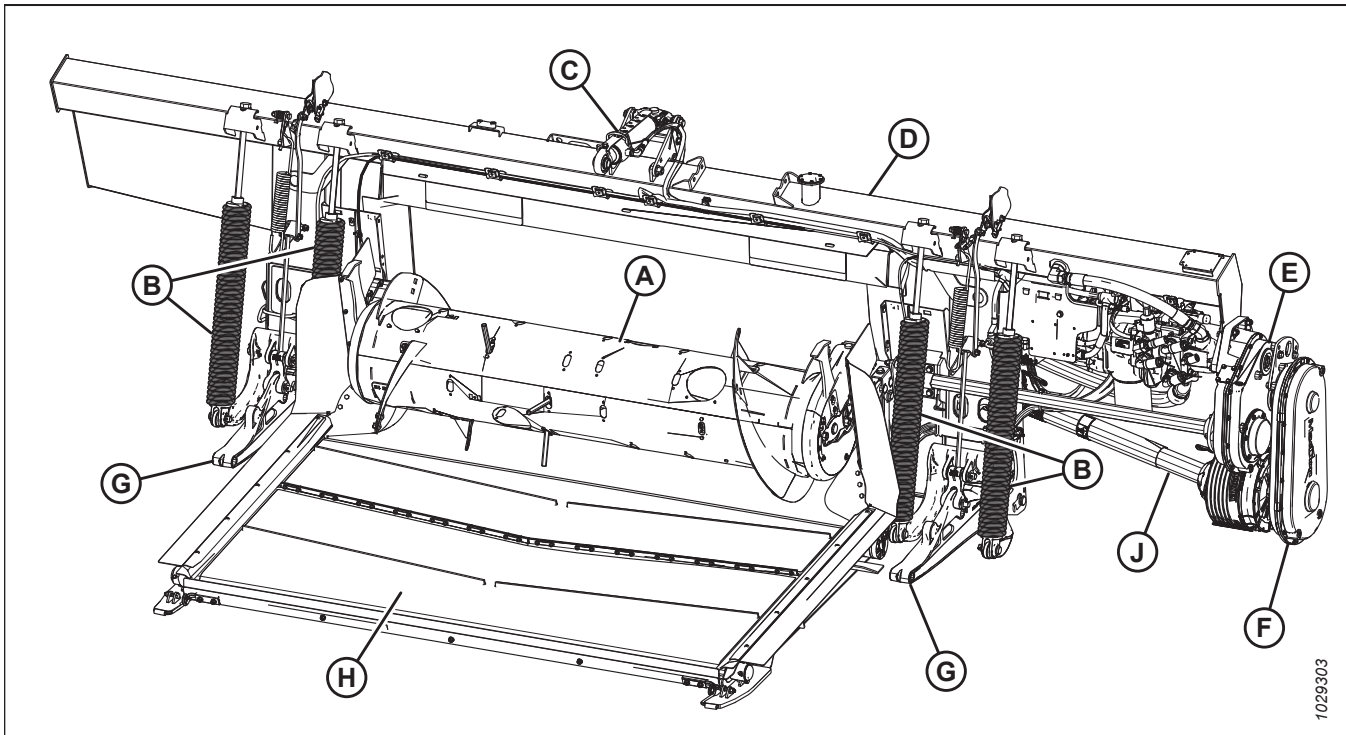


Figure 2.3: Header Side of FM200 Float Module

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| A - Feed Auger | B - Header Float Springs (x4) | C - Center-Link |
| D - Hydraulic Reservoir | E - Main Gearbox | F - Completion Gearbox |
| G - Header Support Arms (x2) | H - Feed Draper | J - Driveline |

PRODUCT OVERVIEW

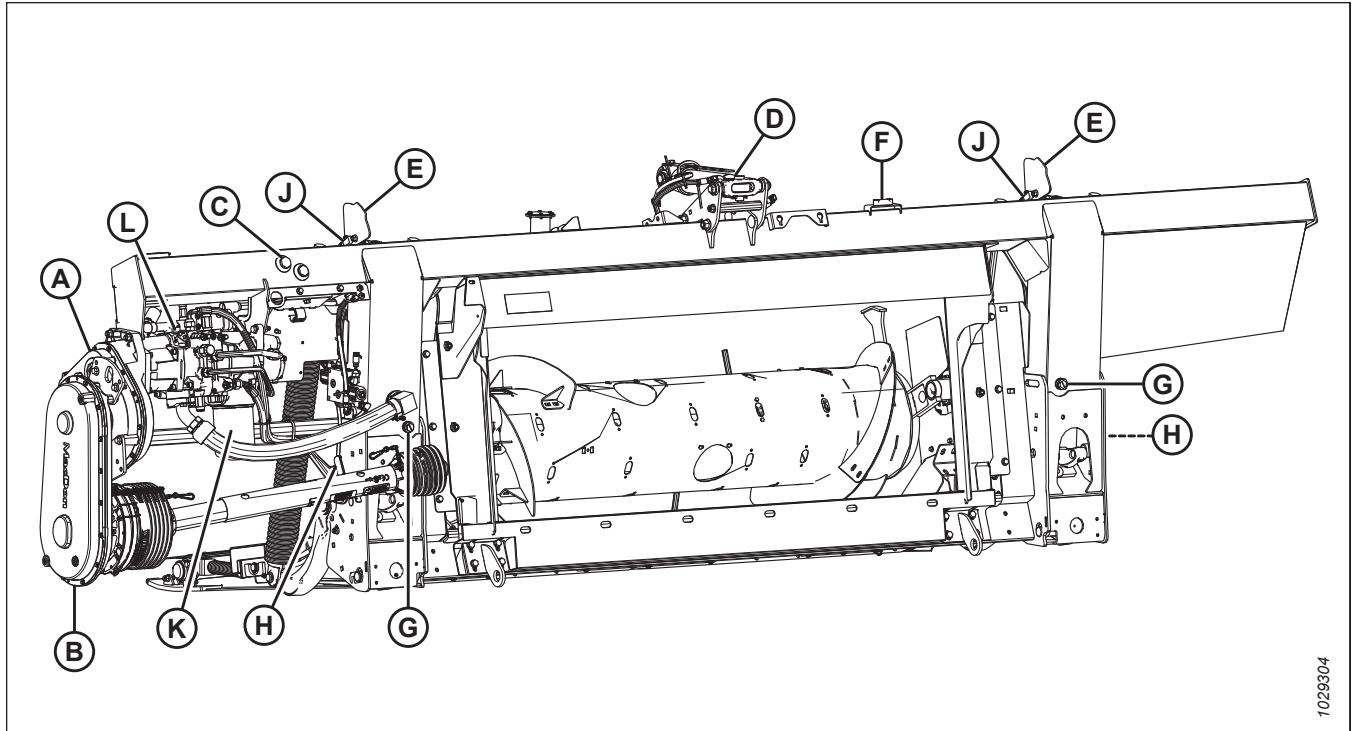


Figure 2.4: Combine Side of FM200 Float Module

A - Main Gearbox
D - Center-Link
G - Drain Plug (x2)
K - Hydraulic Filter

B - Completion Gearbox
E - Header Height Control Indicator (x2)
H - Float Lock Handle (x2)
L - Knife, Side Draper, and Feed Draper Pump

C - Reservoir Oil Level Sight Glass
F - Bubble Level
J - Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) Sensor (x2)

Chapter 3: Operation

Safely operating your machine requires familiarizing yourself with its capabilities.

3.1 Owner/Operator Responsibilities

Owning and operating heavy equipment comes with certain duties.



CAUTION

- It is your responsibility to read and understand this manual completely before operating the header. Contact your MacDon Dealer if an instruction is not clear to you.
- Follow all safety messages in the manual and on safety decals on the machine.
- Remember that YOU are the key to safety. Good safety practices protect you and the people around you.
- Before allowing someone to operate the header, for however short a time or distance, make sure they have been instructed in its safe and proper use.
- Review the manual and all safety related items with all Operators annually.
- Be alert for other Operators not using recommended procedures or not following safety precautions. Correct these mistakes immediately, before an accident occurs.
- Do NOT modify the machine. Unauthorized modifications may impair the function and/or safety of the machine and may reduce the length of service you receive from your machine.
- The safety information given in this manual does not replace safety codes, insurance needs, or laws governing your area. Be sure your machine meets the standards set by these regulations.

3.2 Operational Safety

Follow all the safety and operational instructions given in this manual.

CAUTION

Adhere to the following safety precautions:

- Follow all safety and operational instructions provided in your operator's manuals. If you do not have a combine manual, get one from your Dealer and read it thoroughly.
- Never attempt to start the engine or operate the machine except from the operator's seat.
- Check the operation of all controls in a safe, clear area before starting work.
- Do NOT allow riders on the combine.



Figure 3.1: No Riders

CAUTION

- Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.
- Avoid travelling over loose fill, rocks, ditches, or holes.
- Drive slowly through gates and doorways.
- When working on inclines, travel uphill or downhill whenever possible. Be sure to keep transmission in gear when travelling downhill.
- Never attempt to get on or off a moving machine.
- Do NOT leave the operator's station while the engine is running.
- To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected startup of a machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before adjusting or removing plugged material from the machine.
- Check for excessive vibration and unusual noises. If there is any indication of trouble, shut down and inspect the machine. Follow the proper shutdown procedure. For instructions, refer to [3.4 Shutting down the Combine, page 50](#).
- Operate only in daylight or good artificial light.

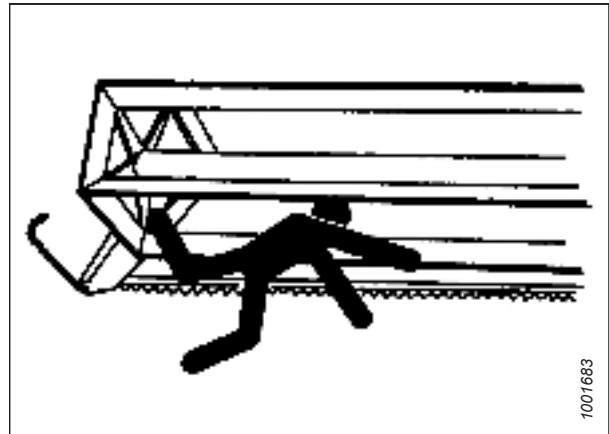


Figure 3.2: Bystander Safety

3.2.1 Header Safety Props

The header safety props located on the header lift cylinders prevent the lift cylinders from unexpectedly retracting and lowering the header. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

3.2.2 Reel Safety Props

The reel safety props are located on the reel support arms and prevent the reel from falling unexpectedly.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to the reel support arms, do **NOT** transport the header when the reel safety props are engaged.

Engaging Reel Safety Props

Engage the reel safety props anytime you need to work around a raised reel. When engaged the reel safety props prevent the reel from unexpectedly lowering.

Outer reel arms

1. Raise reel to the maximum height.
2. Lift up on safety prop (A) and push forward to remove prop from hook (B).
3. Lower safety prop (A) and engage it on the cylinder shaft as shown. Repeat on the opposite arm.

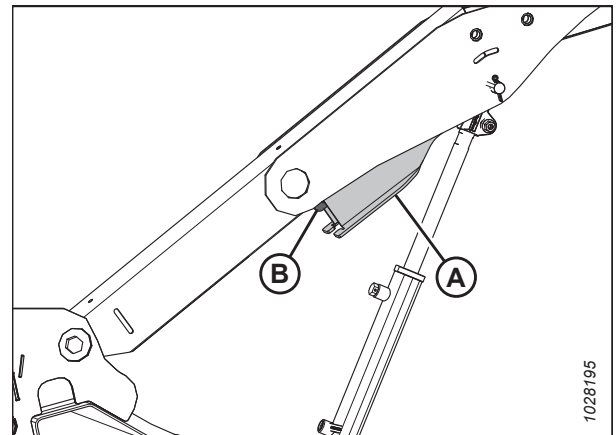


Figure 3.3: Outer Right Arm

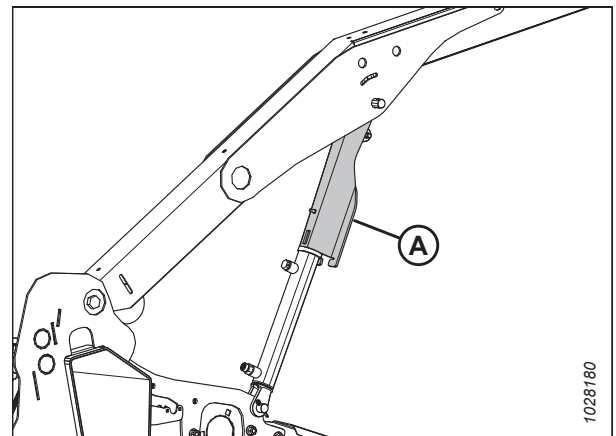


Figure 3.4: Engaged Reel Safety Prop – Outer Right Arm

OPERATION

Center reel arm – double- and triple-reel headers

4. Rotate handle (A) to release the spring tension and allow the spring to guide the pin into the locked position.

NOTE:

For triple-reel headers, the illustration shows the center right arm. The center left arm is opposite.

5. On triple-reel headers, repeat the previous step on the center left arm.
6. Lower the reel until the safety props contact the outer arm cylinder mounts and the center arm pins.

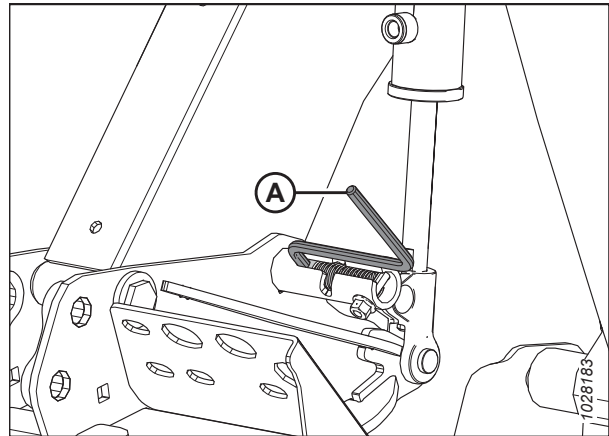


Figure 3.5: Engaged Reel Safety Prop – Center Arm

Disengaging Reel Safety Props

To ensure the proper operation of the reel and header, disengage the reel safety props once you have completed working on or around a raised reel.

Outer reel arms

1. Raise the reel to its maximum height.
2. Move reel safety prop (A) up onto hook (B) under the reel arm. Repeat on the opposite arm.

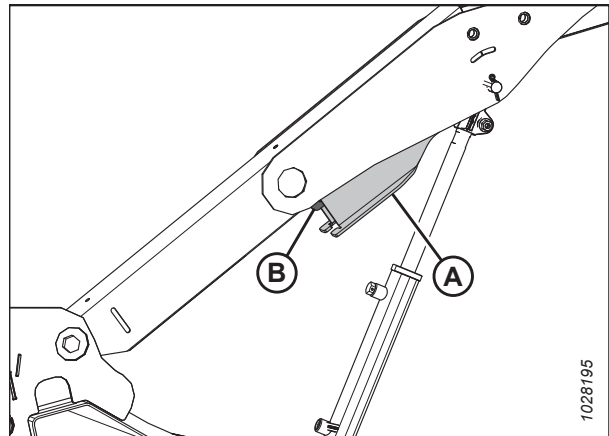


Figure 3.6: Reel Safety Prop – Right Outer Arm

Center reel arm – double- and triple-reel headers

3. Move handle (A) outboard and into slot (B) to put the pin in the unlocked position.

NOTE:

For triple-reel headers, the illustration shows the center right arm. The center left arm is opposite.

4. On triple-reel headers, repeat the previous step on the center left arm.

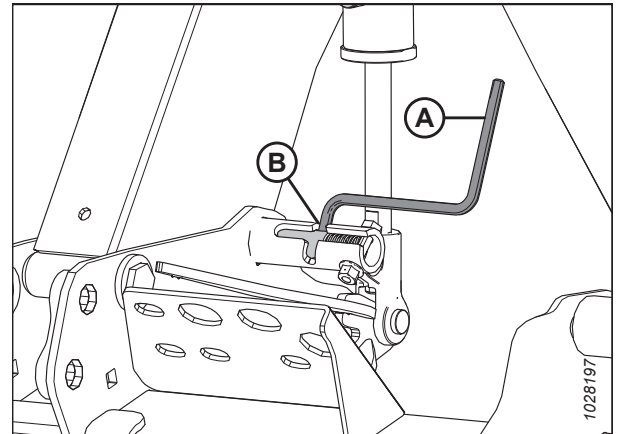


Figure 3.7: Reel Safety Prop – Center Arm

3.2.3 Header Endshields

A hinged, polyethylene endshield is fitted on each end of the header to protect critical drive components.

Opening Header Endshields

The header endshields covers knife drive components, hydraulic hoses, electrical connections, the header wrench, the spare knife, and the optional transport hitch. To access the components you will need to open the endshield.

1. Push release lever (B) using access hole (A) on the backside of the header endshield to unlock the shield.

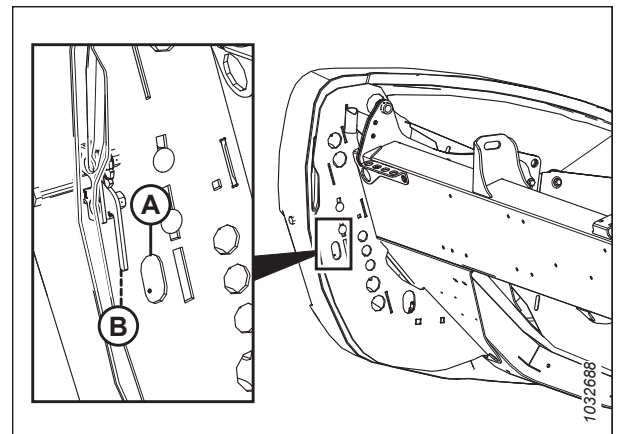


Figure 3.8: Left Header Endshield

OPERATION

2. Pull header endshield (A) open.

NOTE:

The header endshield is retained by tab (B) and will open in direction (C).

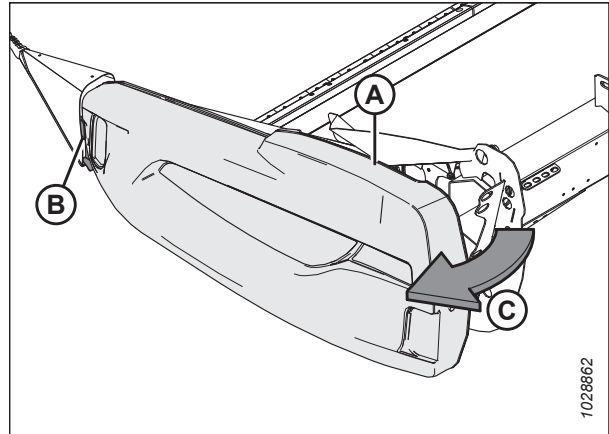


Figure 3.9: Left Header Endshield

3. If additional clearance is required, pull the header endshield free of tab (A) and then swing the shield toward the rear of the header.
4. Engage safety latch (B) on hinge arm (C) to secure the shield in the fully open position.

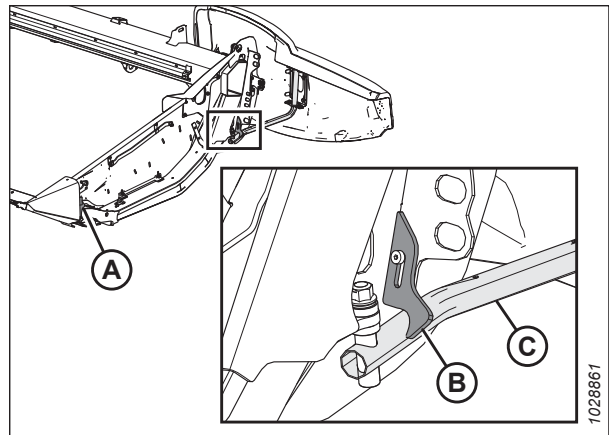


Figure 3.10: Left Header Endshield

Closing Header Endshields

The header endshields covers knife drive components, hydraulic hoses, electrical connections, the header wrench, the spare knife, and the optional transport hitch. After accessing the components you will need to close the endshield.

1. If the endshield is fully opened and secured behind the header, disengage lock (A) to allow header endshield (B) to move.
2. Rotate the header endshield toward the front of the header.

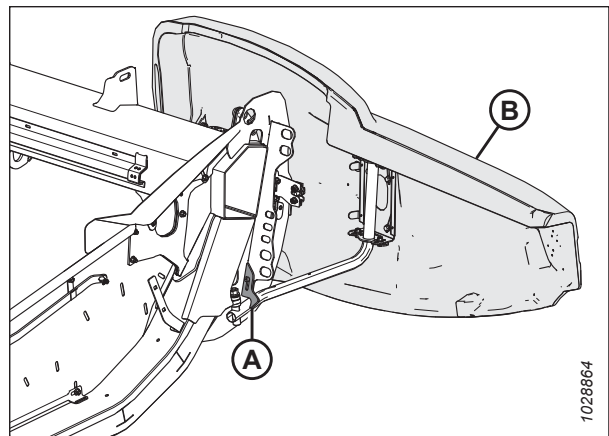


Figure 3.11: Left Header Endshield

OPERATION

3. While closing the endshield, ensure header endshield (A) does not contact the top of endsheet (B). If adjustment is required, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields](#), page 37.

IMPORTANT:

The aluminum endsheet will be damaged if the weight of the plastic endshield rests on it.

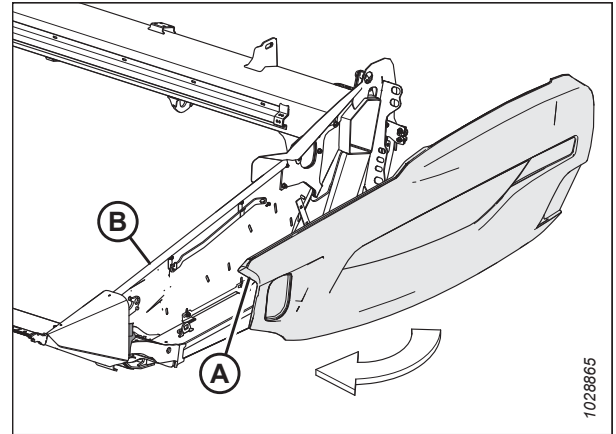


Figure 3.12: Left Header Endshield

4. Insert the front of the header endshield behind hinge tab (B) and into the divider cone.
5. Swing the header endshield in direction (A) into the closed position. Engage two-stage latch (C) with a firm push.

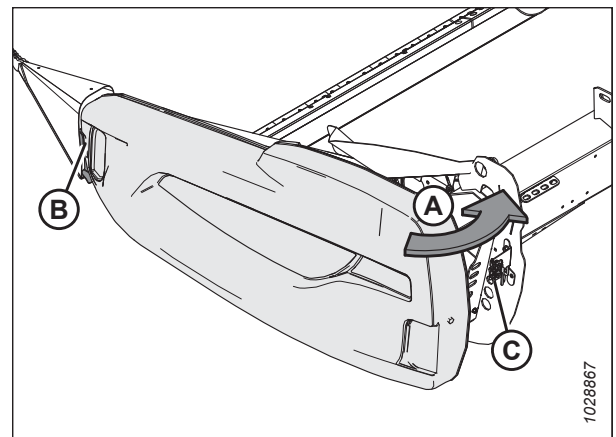


Figure 3.13: Left Header Endshield

IMPORTANT:

Check that the header endshield is locked. Ensure bolt (A) is fully engaged on two-stage latch (B) to prevent the header endshield from opening while operating the header. If adjustment is required, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields](#), page 37.

NOTE:

The header endshield is transparent in the illustration to show the latch.

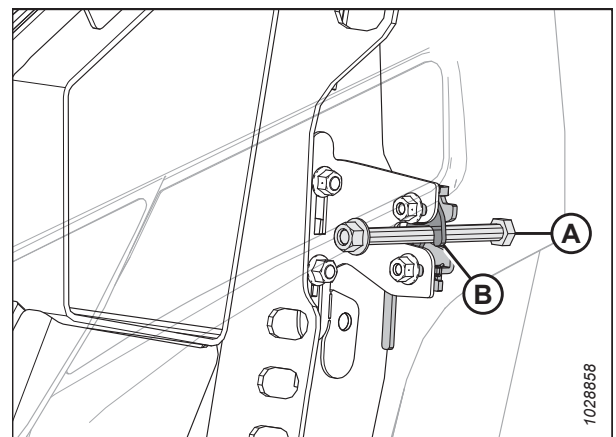


Figure 3.14: Two-Stage Latch

Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields

Header endshields are subject to expansion or contraction caused by large temperature variations. The position of the header endshield can be adjusted to compensate for dimensional changes.

IMPORTANT:

The aluminum endsheet will be damaged if the weight of the plastic header endshield rests on it.

OPERATION

1. Check if gap (A) between header endshield (B) and endsheet (C) is 1–3 mm (0.04–0.12 in.).

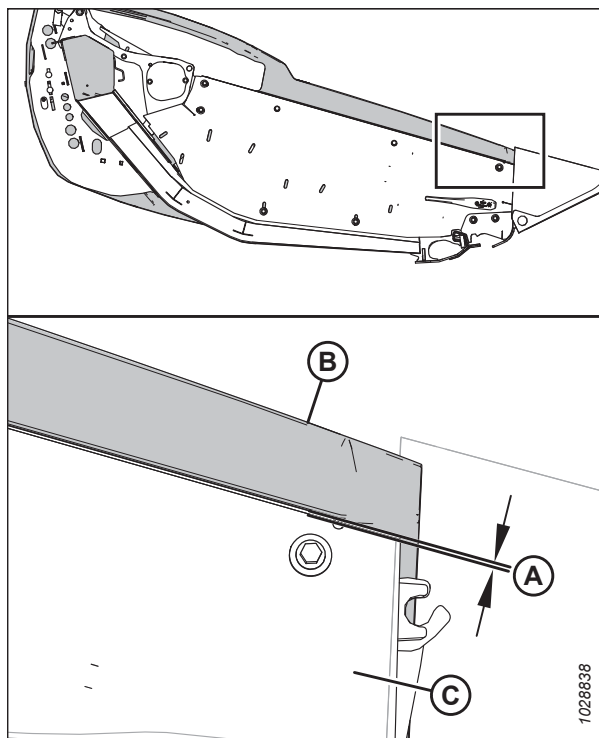


Figure 3.15: Gap between Header Endshield and Endsheets

2. If adjustment is required, adjust support bracket (A) as follows:
 - a. Loosen bolts (B).
 - b. Move support bracket (A) up or down as required to achieve the correct clearance.
 - c. Retighten the hardware.

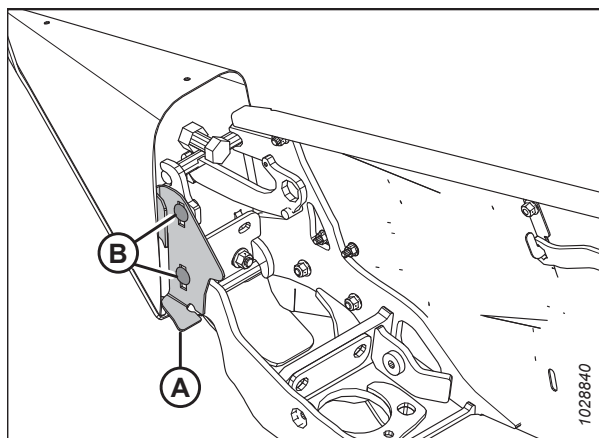


Figure 3.16: Header Endshield Support Bracket

OPERATION

3. Check if gap (A) between the front of the header endshield and support bracket (B) is 8–18 mm (0.3–0.7 in).

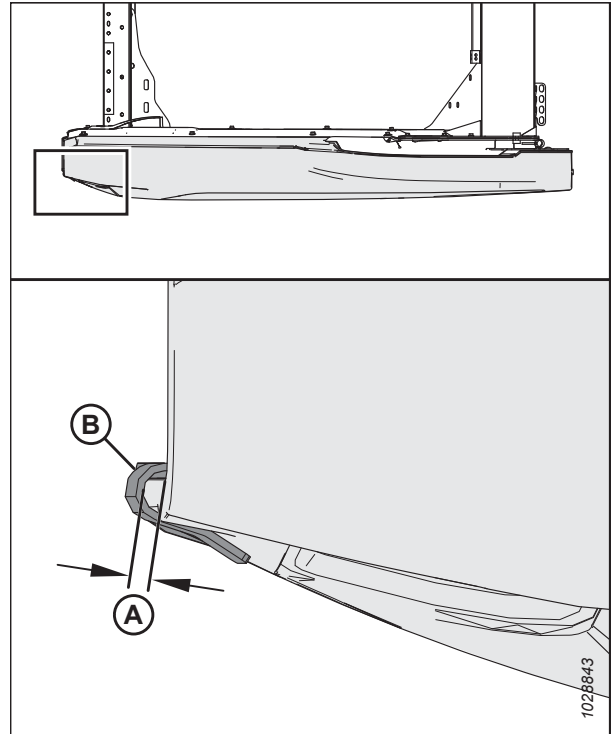


Figure 3.17: Gap between Header Endshield and Support Bracket – View from Above

4. If adjustment is required, adjust the position of hinge arm (A) as follows:
 - a. Loosen four nuts (B).
 - b. Slide brackets (C) and hinge arm (A) fore or aft as required to achieve the correct clearance.
 - c. Retighten the hardware.

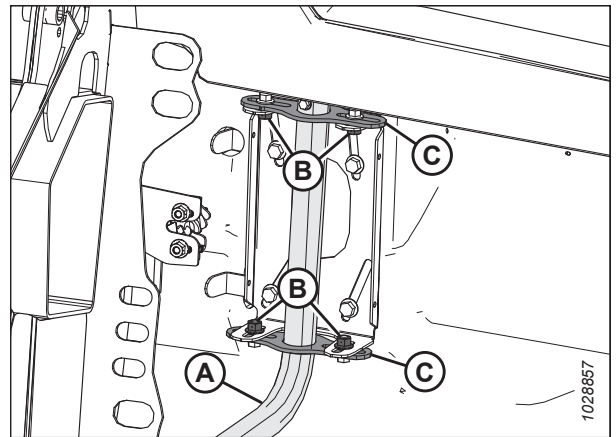


Figure 3.18: Left Header Endshield

OPERATION

5. Check gap (A) at the bottom front of left neck shield (E) to the edge of the end panel. The gap range is 2–4 mm (0.09–0.16 in).
6. Check gap (B) at front of left neck shield (E) to the inside edge of endshield (D). The gap range is 42–52 mm (1.7–2.04 in).
7. Check gap (C) at rear of left neck shield (E) to the inside edge of endshield (D). The gap range is 15–25 mm (0.68–1 in).

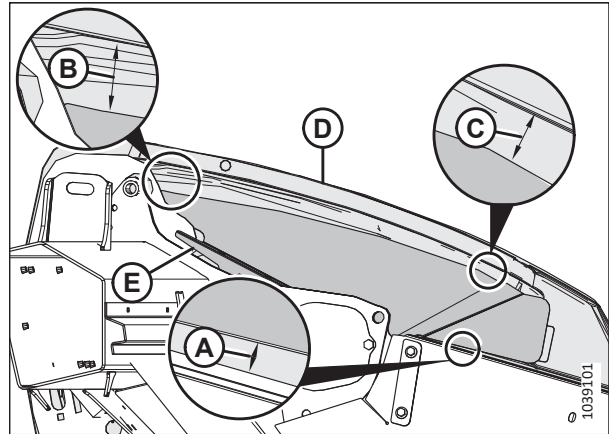


Figure 3.19: Endsield Alignment – View from Inside the Deck

8. Check that bolt (A) is fully engaged on two-stage latch (B) to prevent the header endshield from opening during operation.

NOTE:

The header endshield is shown transparent in the illustration.

9. If adjustment is required, loosen nuts (D) and slide bracket (C) up or down.
10. Once complete, tighten nuts (D) and check Steps 5, page 40 to 7, page 40 again.

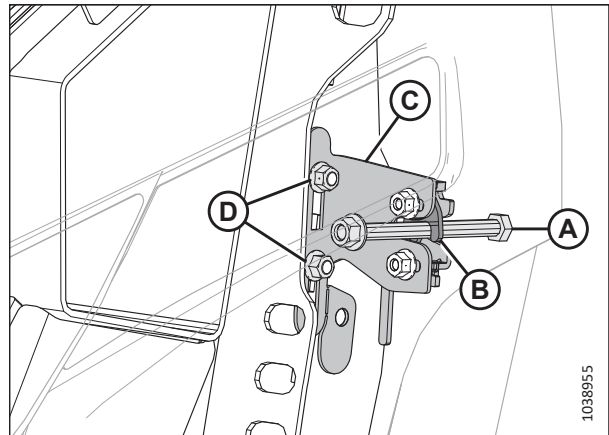


Figure 3.20: Two-Stage Latch

Removing Header Endshields

Remove the endshields when servicing the end shields.

1. Fully open the header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
2. Engage latch (A) to prevent any endshield movement.
3. Remove self-tapping screw (B).
4. Slide the header endshield upwards and remove it from hinge arm (C).
5. Place the header endshield away from the work area.

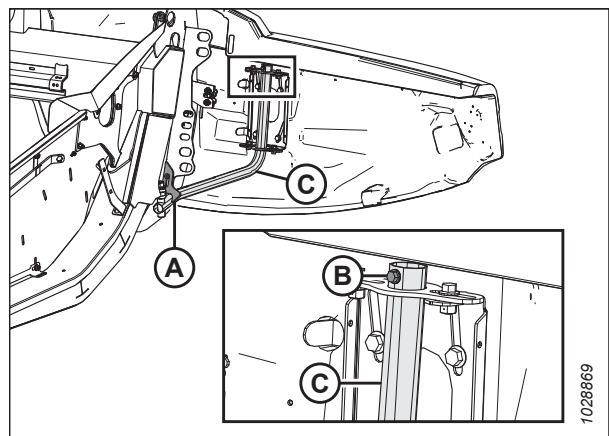


Figure 3.21: Left Header Endshield

Installing Header Endshields

To ensure the endshields are installed correctly, follow the recommended installation procedure provided here.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Be careful not to rest the endshield on the aluminum endsheet while installing.

1. Guide the header endshield onto hinge arm (C) and slowly slide it downwards.
2. Install self-tapping screw (B).
3. Disengage latch (A) to allow the header endshield movement.
4. Close the header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

NOTE:

Header endshields may expand or contract when subjected to large temperature changes. The header endshield position can be adjusted to compensate for dimensional changes. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields, page 37](#).

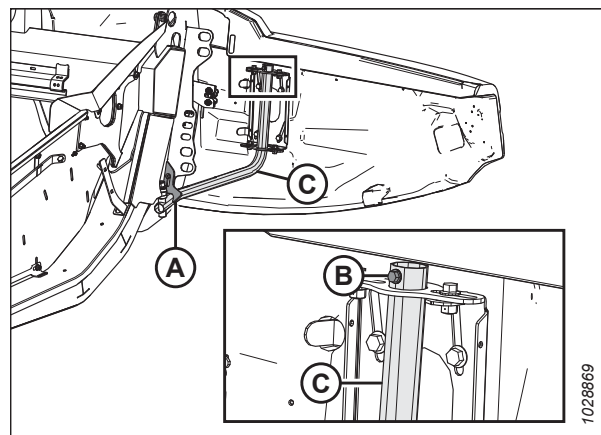


Figure 3.22: Left Header Endshield

3.2.4 Reel Drive Cover

The reel drive cover protects the reel drive components from dirt and debris.

Removing Reel Drive Cover

The reel drive cover can be removed to access the reel drive components for service.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine.
2. Adjust the reel fully forward.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

5. Rotate spring latch (A) up and over the back plate.

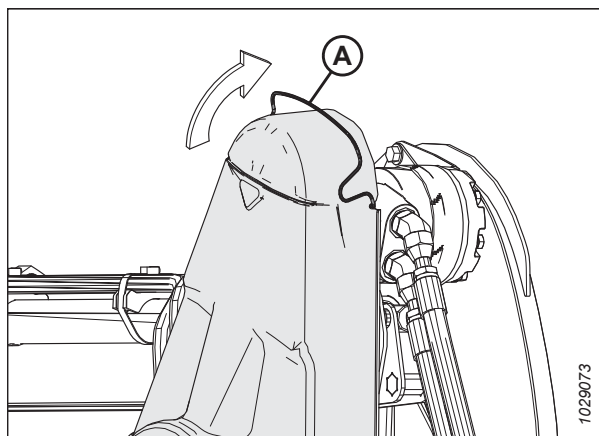


Figure 3.23: Upper Drive Cover

6. Unclip upper cover (A) from the lower cover at locations (B), and remove the upper cover. Keep the two clips engaged on the lower cover.

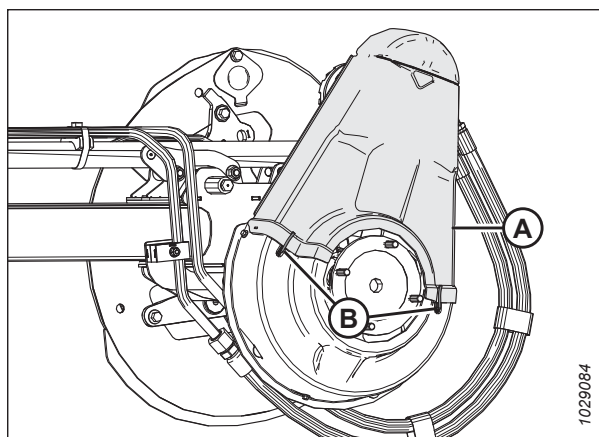


Figure 3.24: Upper Drive Cover

7. If necessary, remove lower cover (B) by removing three bolts (A).

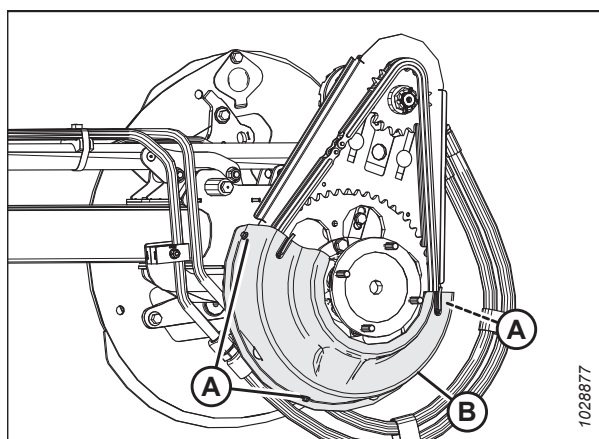


Figure 3.25: Lower Drive Cover

Installing Reel Drive Cover

The reel drive cover protects the drive components from weather and debris. The header should not be operated without the cover.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Position lower drive cover (B) (if previously removed) onto the reel drive, and secure with three bolts (A).

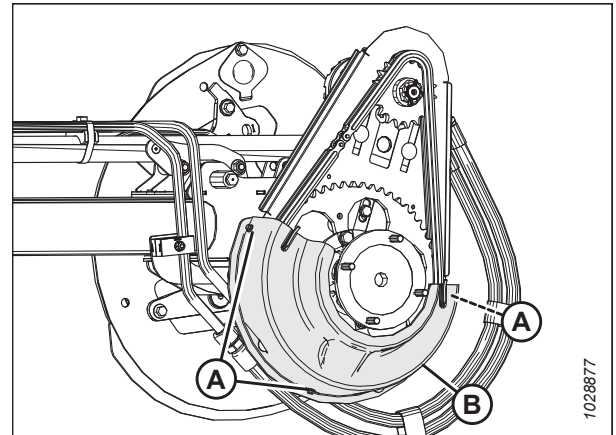


Figure 3.26: Lower Drive Cover

3. Position upper cover (A) onto the reel drive, and secure in place using two clips (B) on the lower cover.

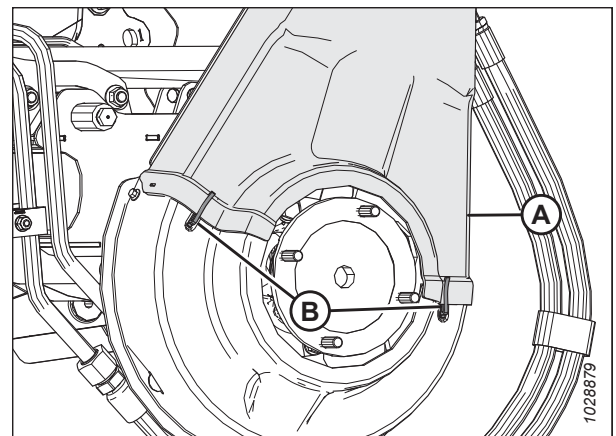


Figure 3.27: Upper Drive Cover

OPERATION

4. Rotate spring latch (A) down to secure the upper cover to the reel drive. Ensure V-shaped loop (C) points down, and the spring end remains inserted into back plate hole (B) on both sides of the reel drive.

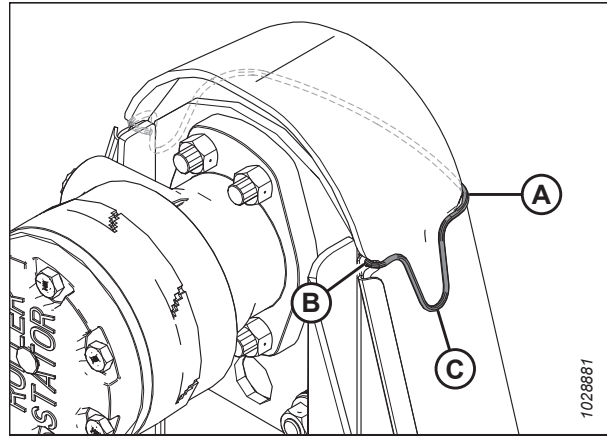


Figure 3.28: Reel Drive

3.2.5 Flex Linkage Cover

Plastic covers are attached to the header frame to protect the header wing balance mechanism from debris and weather.

Removing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers

Remove the flex linkage covers to access the header wing balance mechanism or the hydraulic lines.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove hair pin (A) and lynch pin (B) that secure flex linkage cover (C) to the backtube.
4. Slide flex linkage cover (C) inboard, then lift it upward and remove it.

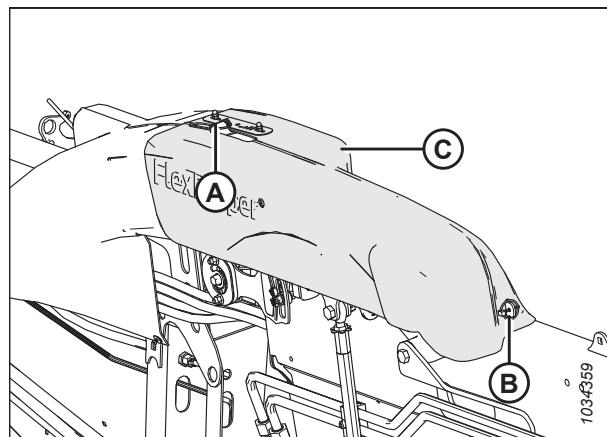


Figure 3.29: Inboard Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

Installing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers

The inboard flex linkage covers protect the header wing balance mechanism from debris and weather. They are secured to the header with pins.

1. Lower flex linkage cover (A) over the linkage. Ensure that slots (B) line up with tabs (C) and (D).
2. Slide the flex linkage cover outboard so that tab (D) extends beyond the slot.

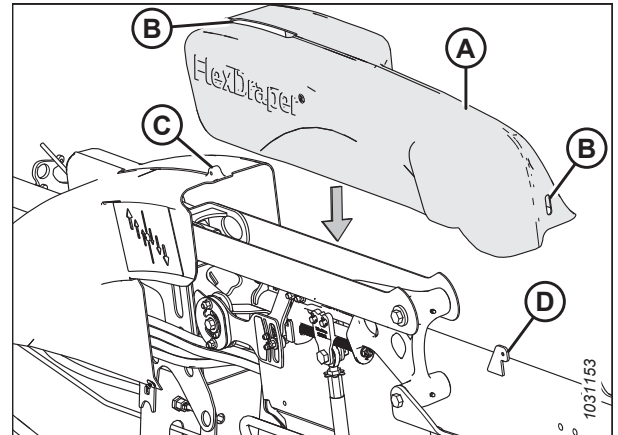


Figure 3.30: Inboard Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

3. Secure flex linkage cover (C) with hair pin (A), and lynch pin (B).

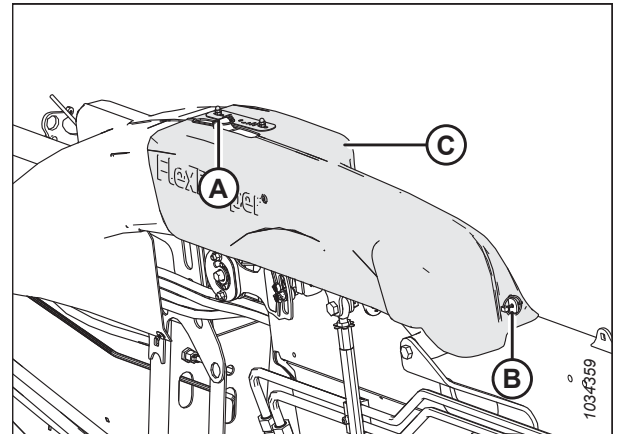


Figure 3.31: Inboard Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

Removing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers

Remove the flex linkage covers to access the header wing balance mechanism or the hydraulic lines.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

3. **FD245 and FD250 headers:** Remove screws (A) and the nuts (not shown) securing middle linkage cover (B) to the bracket (not shown).
4. **FD245 and FD250 headers:** Remove pin (C). Remove the cover by lifting it up and over frame protrusions.

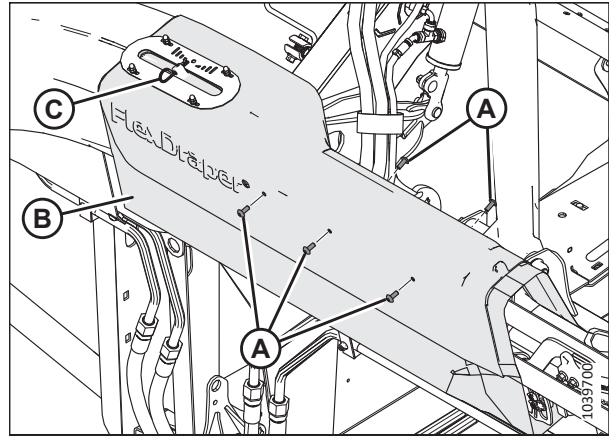


Figure 3.32: Middle Linkage Cover – FD245 and FD250 Headers Only

5. Remove linkage cover as follows:
 - a. Remove screw (A). The nut is integrated into the hydraulic line clamp.
 - b. Remove screw (B) and nut (not shown). The Nyloc nut fits into a hex shape spot in the hydraulic line clamp but it is removable.
 - c. Remove screw (C) and hex nut.
 - d. Lift cover away from wing lock handle.

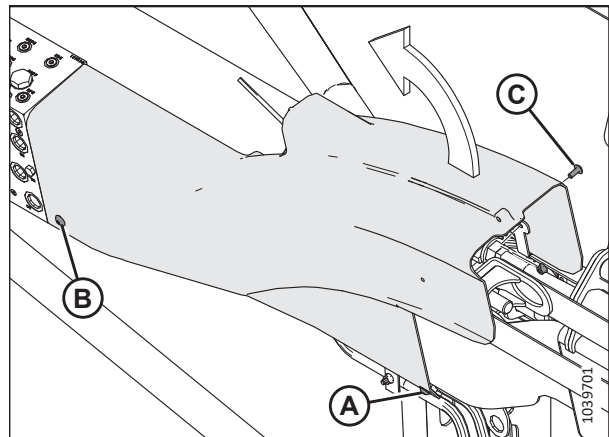


Figure 3.33: Outboard Linkage Cover

Installing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers

Flex linkage covers protect the header wing balance mechanism from debris and weather.

1. Position the left outboard linkage cover so that hole (A) goes over the wing lock.

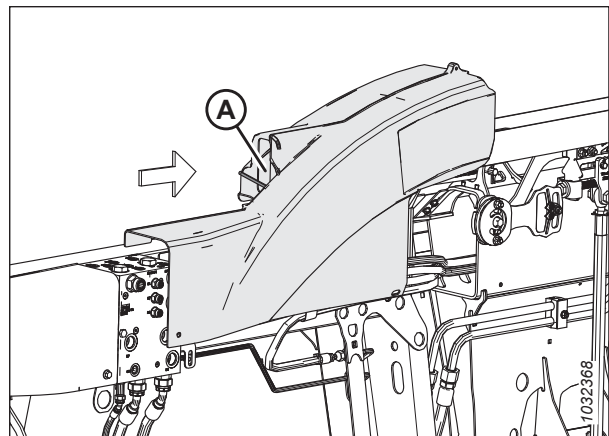


Figure 3.34: Left Linkage Cover – Rear of Header

OPERATION

2. Seat the notch in the cover behind bracket (A) on the backtube, and line up the end so that it is flush with manifold (B).

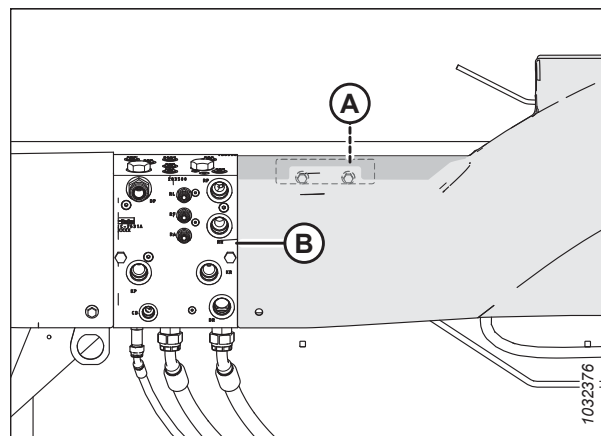


Figure 3.35: Left Linkage Cover – Rear of Header

3. Secure the outboard linkage cover as follows:
 - a. Install screw (A) and Nyloc nut (B). The nut fits into a hex shape indent in the hydraulic line clamp.
 - b. Install screw (C). The nut is integrated into the bracket.
 - c. Install screw (D) and hex nut (E) to secure the front of the cover to the bracket.

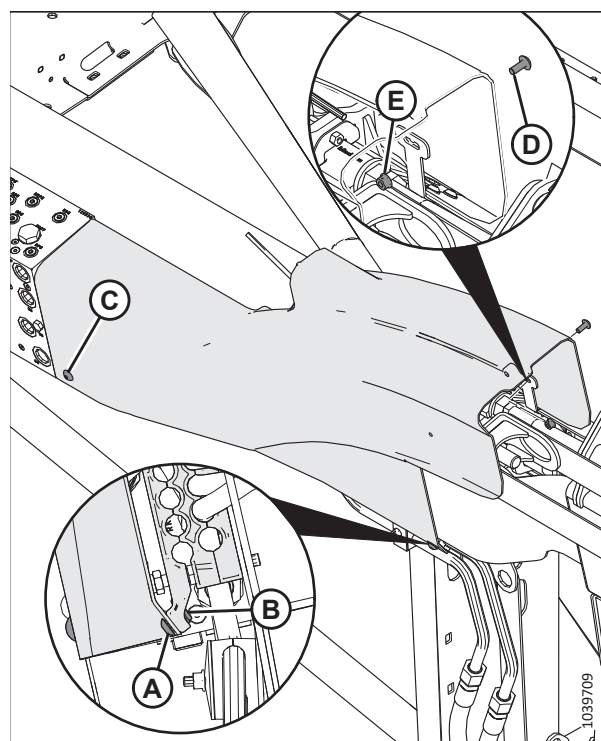


Figure 3.36: Outboard Linkage Cover – Rear of Header

OPERATION

4. **FD245 and FD250 headers:** Place middle linkage cover (B) over flex linkage bracket and outboard linkage cover.
5. **FD245 and FD250 headers:** Install screws (A) and the nuts (not shown) securing middle linkage cover (B) to the bracket.
6. **FD245 and FD250 headers:** Install pin (C) through hole in the tab that protrudes through the flex indicator.

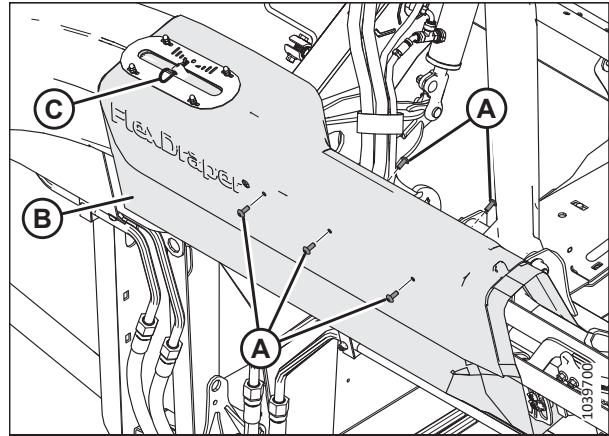


Figure 3.37: Middle Linkage Cover – FD245 and FD250 Headers Only

3.2.6 Daily Start-Up Check

Perform these checks daily before attempting to operate the machine.

CAUTION

- Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.
- Wear close-fitting clothing and protective shoes equipped with slip-resistant soles.
- Remove potentially hazardous objects from the machine and from the surrounding area.
- Carry with you any protective clothing and personal safety devices that could be necessary through the day. Do NOT take chances. Personal safety devices that may be needed include a hard hat, protective glasses or goggles, heavy gloves, a respirator or filter mask, or wet weather gear.
- Protect against noise. Wear a suitable hearing protection device such as ear muffs or ear plugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortably loud noises.



Figure 3.38: Safety Devices

Perform the following checks before starting the machine:

1. Check the machine for leaks and for any parts that are missing, damaged, or nonfunctional.

IMPORTANT:

Use the proper procedure when searching for pressurized fluid leaks. For instructions, refer to [4.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines, page 480](#).

2. Clean all the lights and reflectors on the machine.
3. Perform all daily maintenance. For instructions, refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#).

3.3 Break-in Period

During the first 50 hours of operation, certain systems on the header will require extra attention. Follow this procedure to ensure the service life of the header.

NOTE:

Until you become familiar with the sound and feel of your new header, be extra alert and attentive.



DANGER

Before investigating an unusual sound or attempting to correct a problem, shut off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

After attaching the header to the combine for the first time, follow these steps:

1. Operate the machine with the reels, drapers, and knives running slowly for five minutes. Watch and listen **FROM THE OPERATOR'S SEAT** for binding or interfering parts.

NOTE:

The reels and side drapers will not operate until hydraulic oil fills the lines.

2. Refer to [4.2.2 Break-In Inspection, page 478](#) and perform all specified tasks.

3.4 Shutting down the Combine

Before leaving the operator's seat for any reason, shut down the combine.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

To shut down the combine, do the following:

1. Park on level ground whenever possible.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Place all controls in NEUTRAL or PARK.
4. Disengage the header drive.
5. Lower and fully retract the reel.
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
7. Wait for the machine to stop moving.

3.5 Cab Controls

The header is controlled from the combine cab.



WARNING

Be sure all bystanders are clear of the machine before starting the engine or engaging any header drives.

For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for identification of the following in-cab controls:

- Header engage/disengage control
- Header height
- Header angle
- Ground speed
- Reel speed
- Reel height
- Reel fore-aft position

3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment

This chapter includes instructions for configuring, attaching, and detaching the header.

Combine	Refer to
AGCO (Challenger®, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson®) Combines	3.6.1 Challenger®, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson® Combines, page 52
AGCO IDEAL™ Series	3.6.4 IDEAL™ Series Combines, page 76
Case IH 7010/8010, 120, 130, 230, 240, 250 Series	3.6.2 Case IH Combines, page 61
CLAAS 500 (including R Series), 600, and 700 Series, 7000/8000 Series, and Tucano	3.6.3 CLAAS Combines, page 67
John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series	3.6.5 John Deere Combines, page 80
New Holland CR, CX	3.6.6 New Holland Combines, page 89

NOTE:

Ensure the applicable functions (e.g., Automatic Header Height Control [AHHC], draper header option, hydraulic center-link option, hydraulic reel drive) are enabled on the combine and the combine computer. Failure to do so may result in improper header operation.

3.6.1 Challenger®, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson® Combines

To attach the header to or to detach it from a Challenger®, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson® combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

Attaching Header to Challenger®, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson® Combine

The header will need to be physically connected to the combine's feeder house, and the electrical and hydraulic connections completed.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Use lock handle (B) to retract lugs (A) at the base of the feeder house.

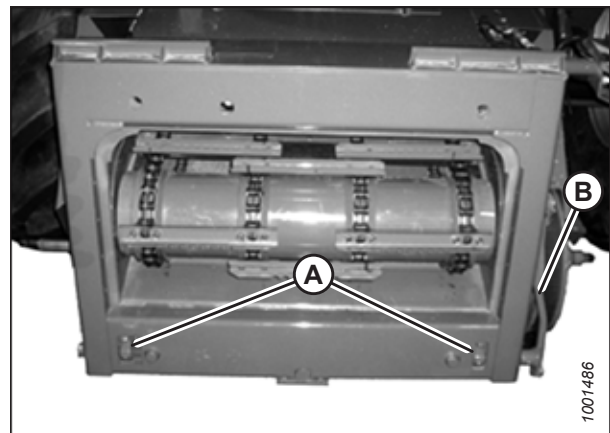


Figure 3.39: AGCO Group Feeder House

⚠ DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly approach the header until the feeder house is directly under float module top cross member (A) and alignment pins (C) (refer to Figure 3.41, page 53) on the feeder house are aligned with holes (B) in the float module frame.

NOTE:

Your combine feeder house may not be exactly as shown.

4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring feeder house saddle (A) is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

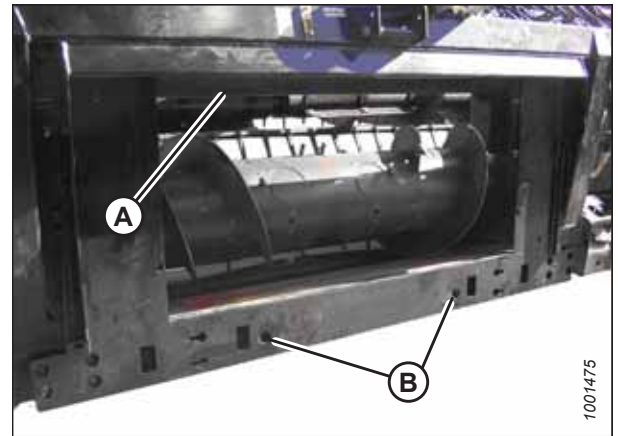


Figure 3.40: Float Module

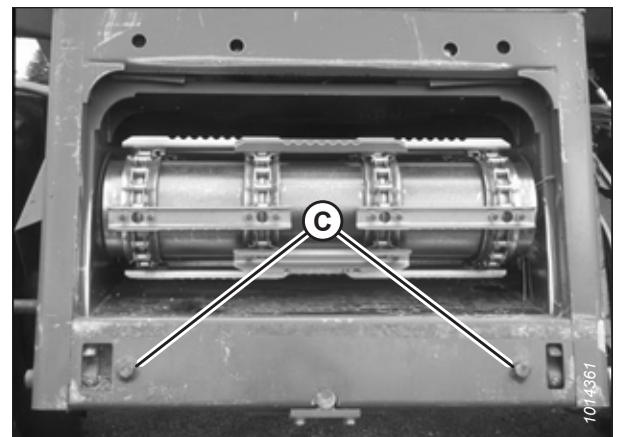


Figure 3.41: AGCO Group Alignment Pins



Figure 3.42: Feeder House and Float Module

OPERATION

6. Use lock handle (B) to engage lugs (A) with the float module.

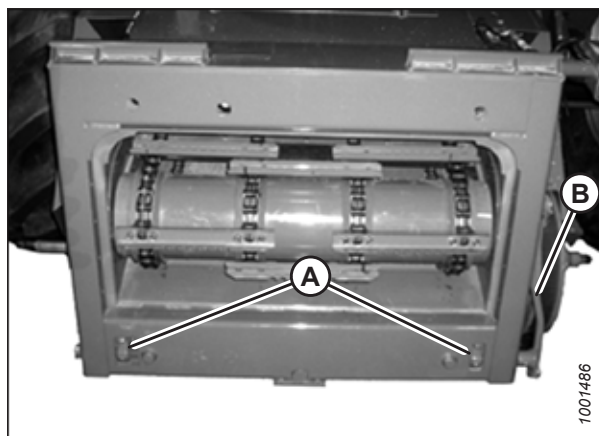


Figure 3.43: AGCO Group Feeder House

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

7. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
8. Lower the header fully.

NOTE:

The float module is equipped with a multicoupler that connects to the combine. If your combine is equipped with individual connectors, a multicoupler kit (single-point connector) must be installed. Refer to Table 3.1, page 54 for a list of kits and installation instructions that are available through your combine Dealer.

Table 3.1 Multicoupler Kits

Combine	AGCO Kit Number
Challenger®	71530662
Gleaner R/S Series	71414706
Massey Ferguson®	71411594

OPERATION

9. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

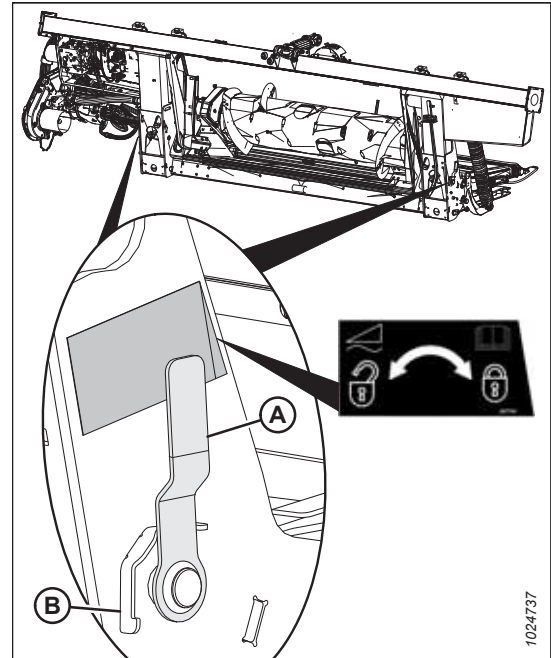


Figure 3.44: Float Lock Handle

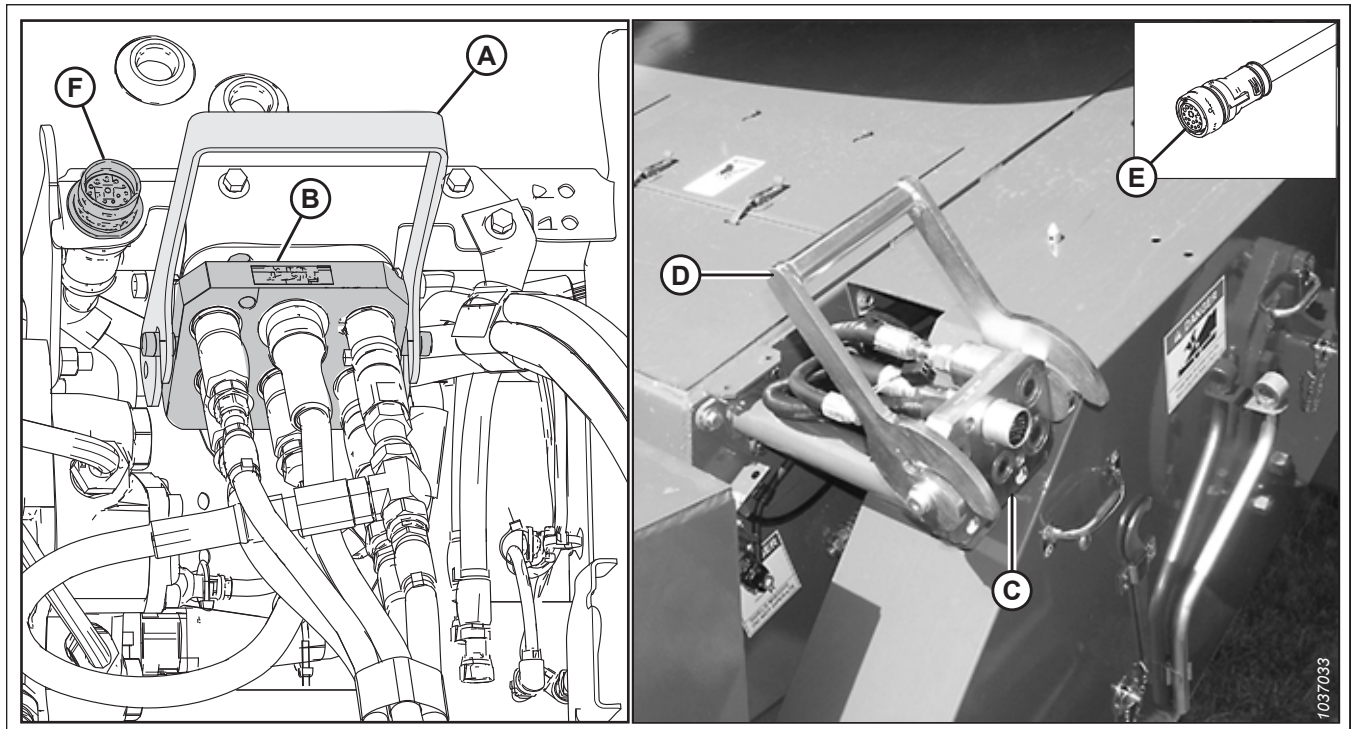


Figure 3.45: Hydraulics and Electrical Multicoupler

10. Raise handle (A) to release multicoupler (B) from float module.
11. Raise handle (D) on the combine to the fully-opened position, and clean the mating surfaces of multicoupler (B) and receptacle (C).
12. Position multicoupler (B) onto the combine receptacle (C), and pull handle (D) to fully engage the multicoupler into the receptacle.

OPERATION

13. Retrieve cab control kit connector C81A (E) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to C81B (F) on the float module. Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.
14. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release driveline from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

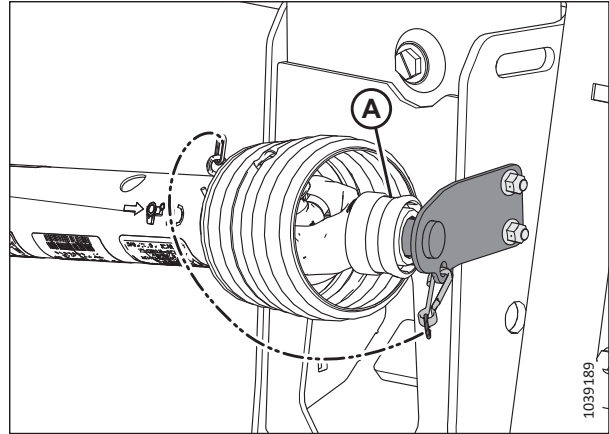


Figure 3.46: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

15. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

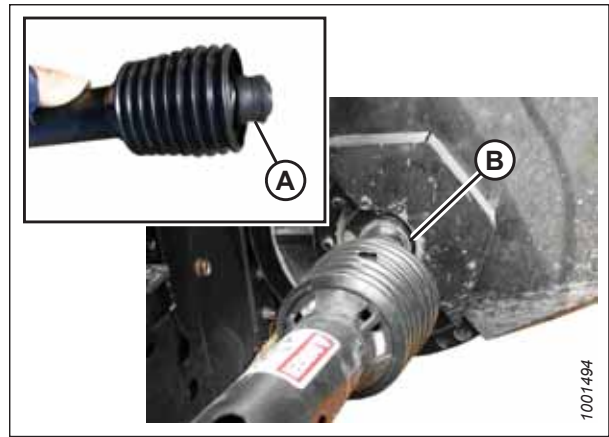


Figure 3.47: Driveline

Detaching Header from a Challenger®, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson® Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to detach the header.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#).

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#).

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

4. Disconnect driveline (A) from combine output shaft (B).

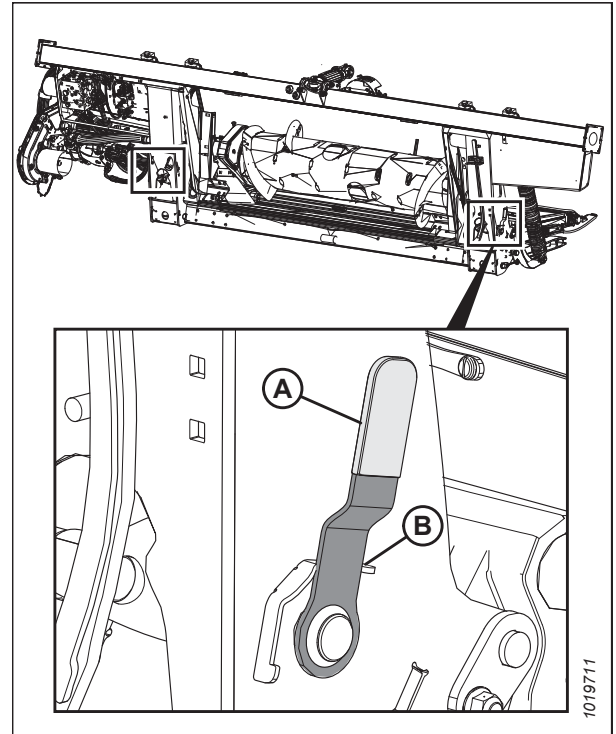


Figure 3.48: Float Lock Handle – Right Shown in Detail, Left Opposite

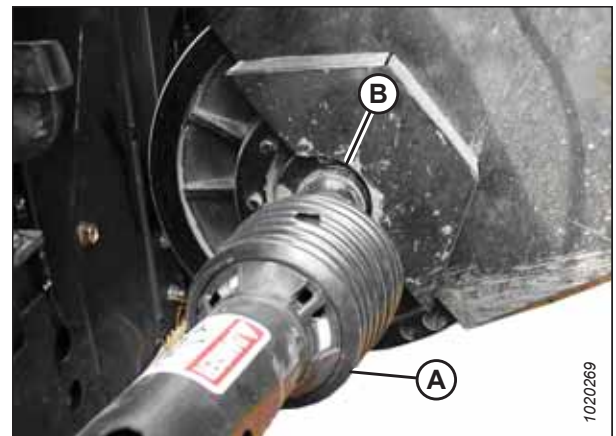


Figure 3.49: Driveline

OPERATION

5. Store driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it over the support bracket body and releasing the collar so it locks into place.

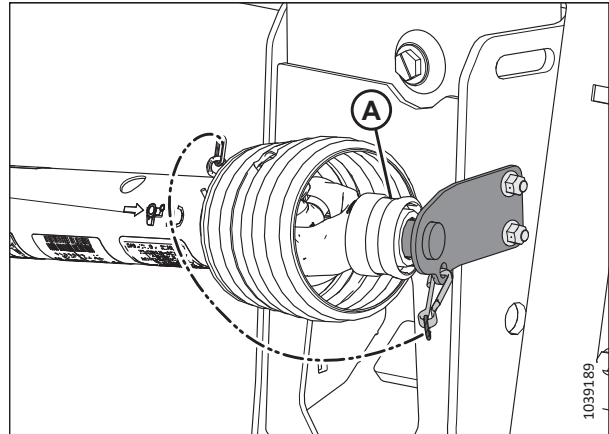


Figure 3.50: Storing the Driveline

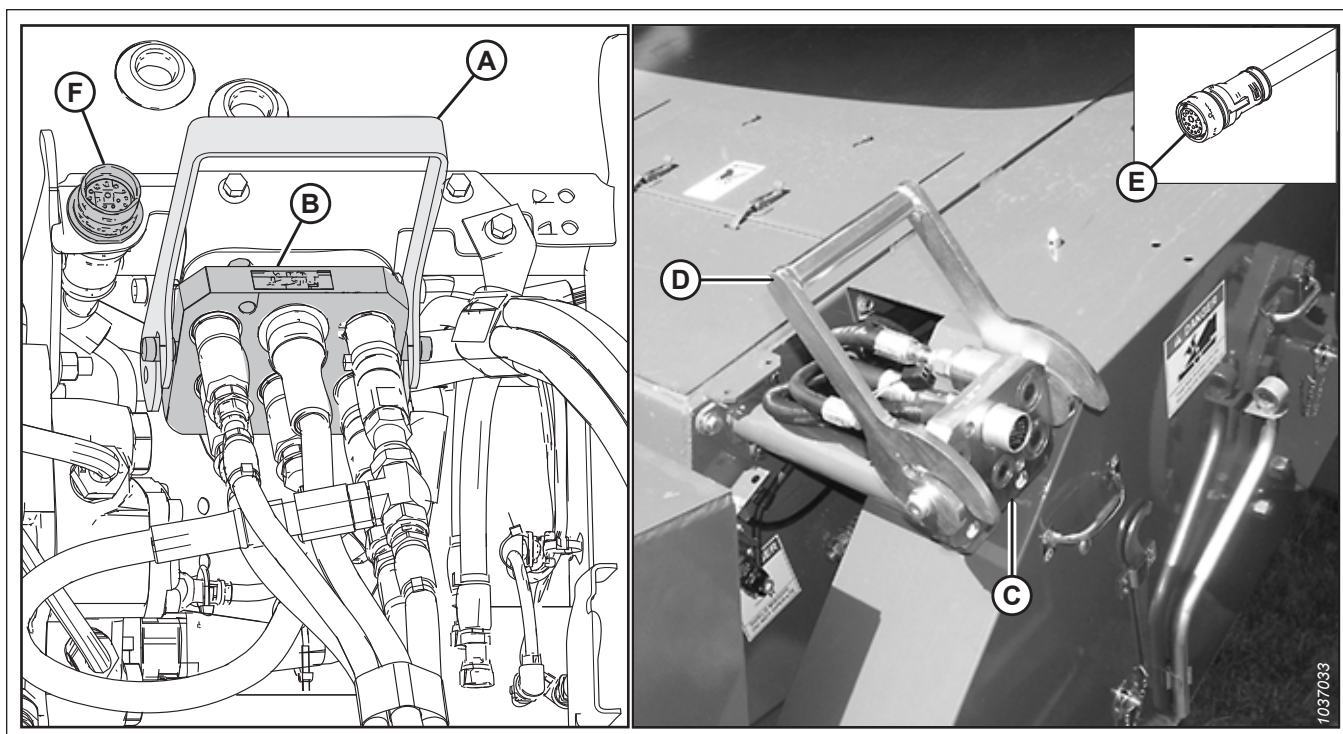


Figure 3.51: Hydraulics and Electrical Multicoupler

6. Turn collar to release cab kit control connector from receptacle C81B (F), and return connector (E) to a storage location on the combine.
7. Raise handle (D) to the fully open position to release the multicoupler from receptacle (C) on the combine.
8. Raise handle (A) on the float module, and place multicoupler (B) on the float module receptacle.
9. Lower handle (A) to lock multicoupler (B).

OPERATION

10. Use lock handle (B) to retract lugs (A) at the base of the feeder house.

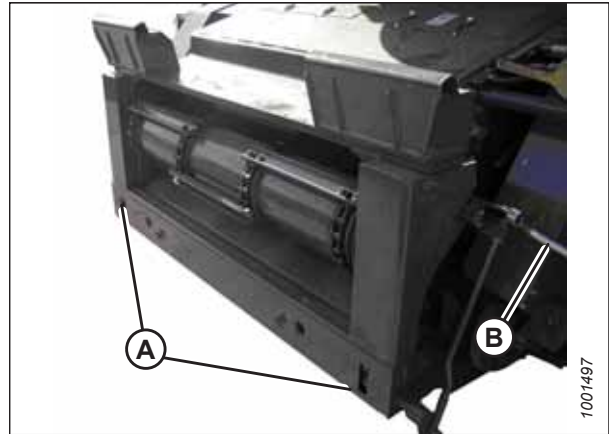


Figure 3.52: Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

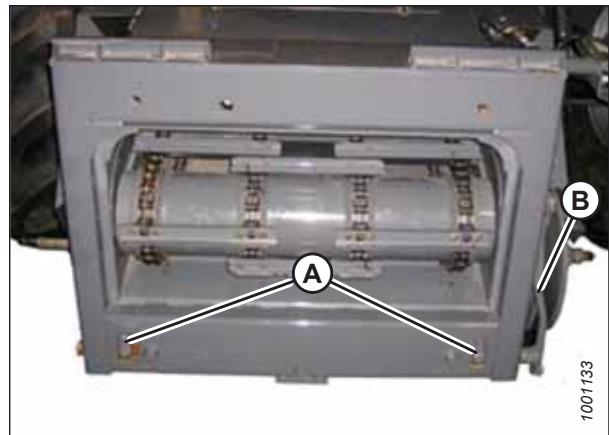


Figure 3.53: Gleaner R and S Series

11. Lower the feeder house until saddle (A) disengages and clears float module support (B).
12. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

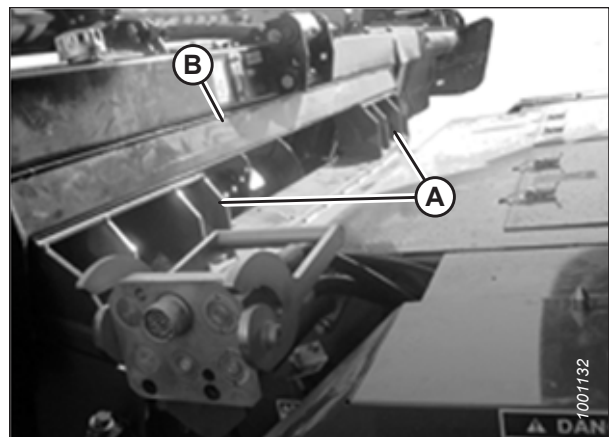


Figure 3.54: Float Module on Combine

3.6.2 Case IH Combines

To attach the header to or detach it from a Case IH combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

Attaching Header to Case IH Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. On the combine, ensure lock handle (A) is positioned so hooks (B) can engage the float module.

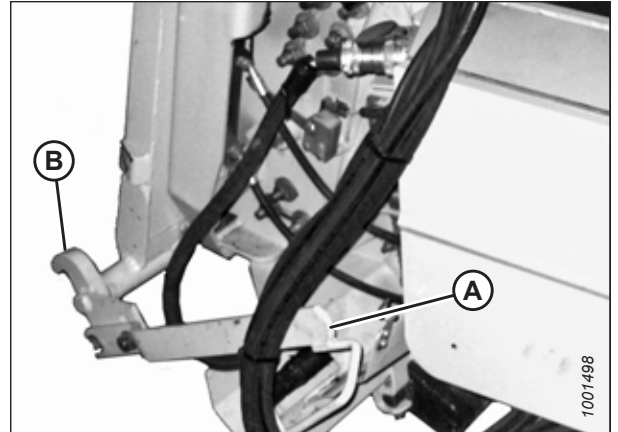


Figure 3.55: Feeder House Locks

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

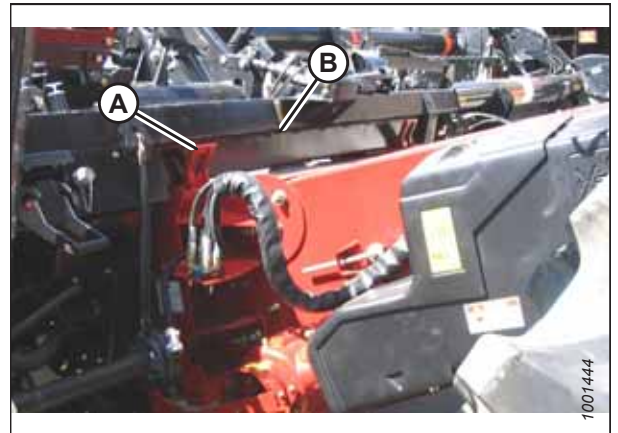


Figure 3.56: Combine and Float Module

OPERATION

5. On the left side of the feeder house, lift lever (A) on the float module and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
6. Push down on lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
7. If lock (C) does not fully engage the pin on the float module, loosen bolts (D) and adjust lock. Retighten the bolts.

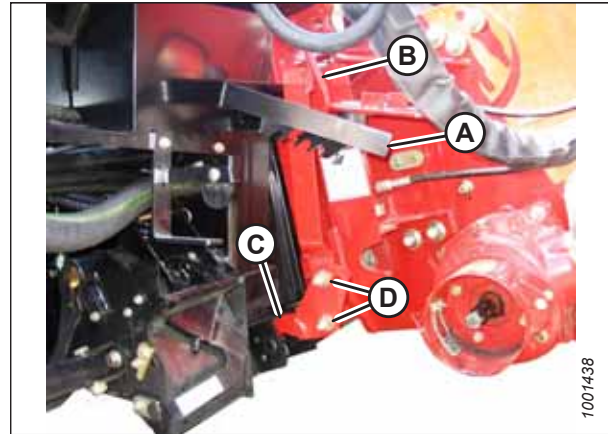


Figure 3.57: Combine and Float Module

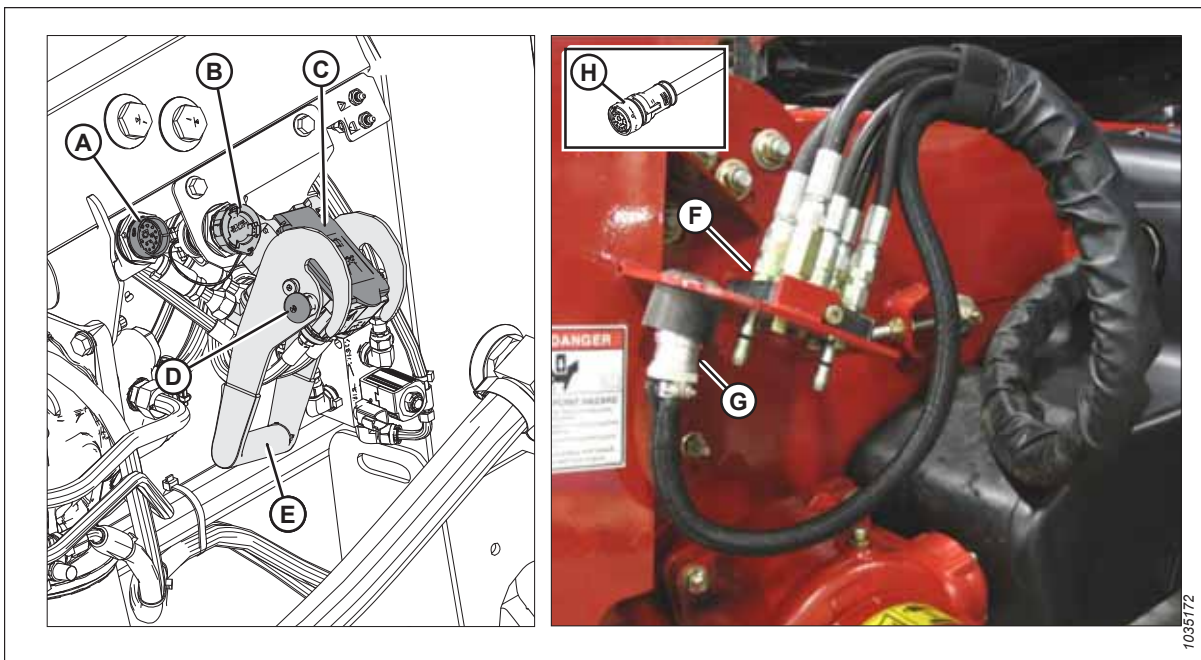


Figure 3.58: Multicoupler and Electrical Connections

8. Remove the caps from connectors C81B (A) and (B).
9. Remove the cover from hydraulic receptacle (C). Clean the receptacle mating surfaces.
10. Push in lock button (D) and pull handle (E) to the fully open position.
11. Remove hydraulic quick coupler (F) from the storage plate on the combine. Clean the mating surface of the coupler.
12. Position coupler (F) onto the float module receptacle (C), and push handle (E) to engage the pins into the receptacle.
13. Push handle (E) to closed position until lock button (D) snaps out.
14. Remove combine connector (G) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to receptacle (B). Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.
15. Remove cab control kit connector C81A (H) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to C81B (A). Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

OPERATION

16. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release the driveline from the support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

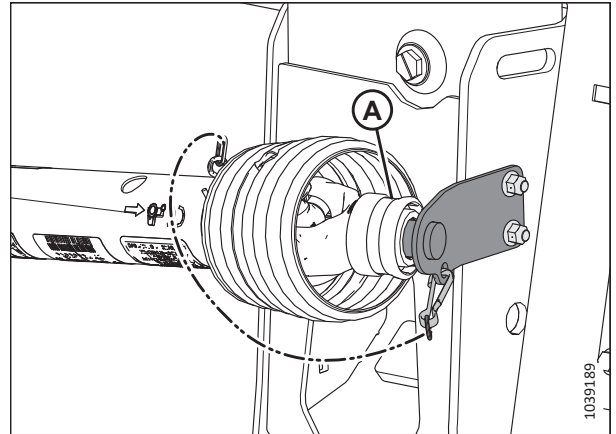


Figure 3.59: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

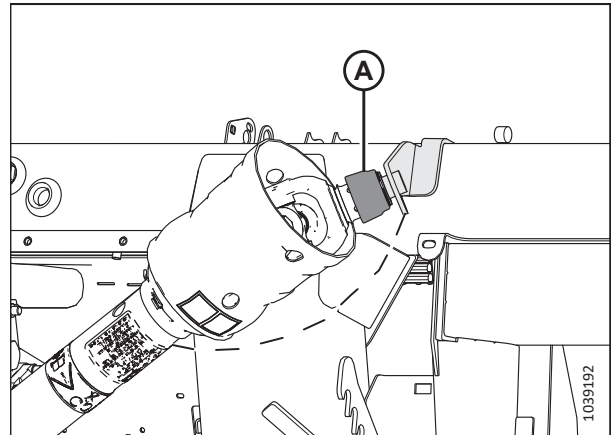


Figure 3.60: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #7180, MD #B7181, or MD #7326

17. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

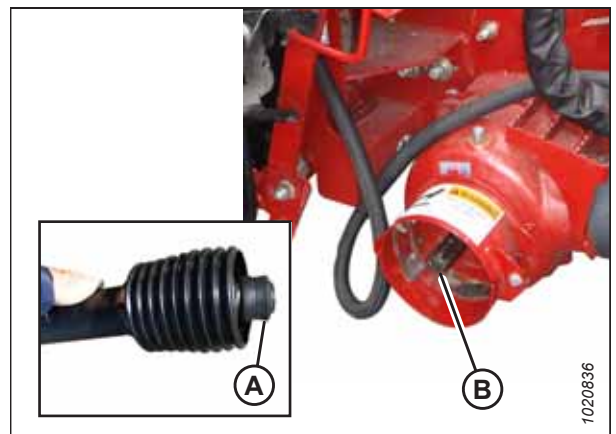


Figure 3.61: Combine Output Shaft

OPERATION

18. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

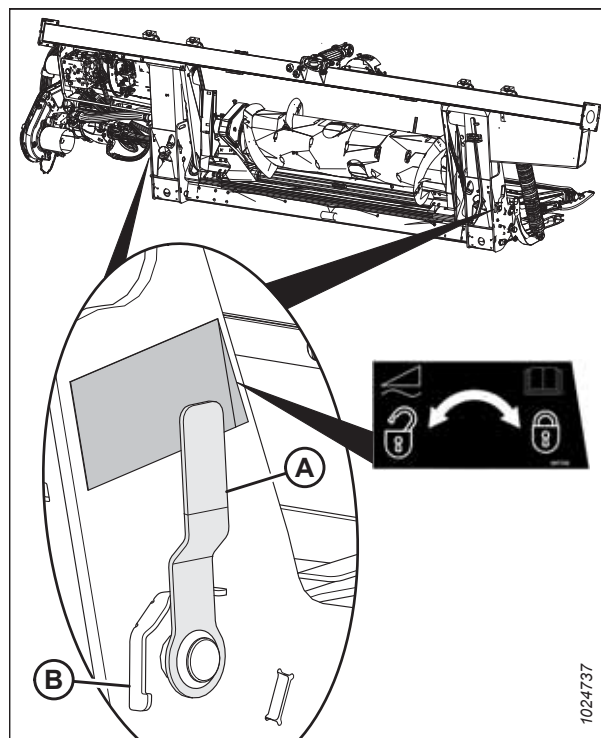


Figure 3.62: Float Lock Handle

Detaching Header from Case IH Combine

The header will need to be physically disconnected from the combine, and the hydraulic and electrical connections removed.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Position the header slightly above the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels](#), page 164.

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels](#), page 164.

4. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

5. Push back collar (A) on the end of the driveline and pull the driveline out of combine output shaft (B) until the collar disengages.

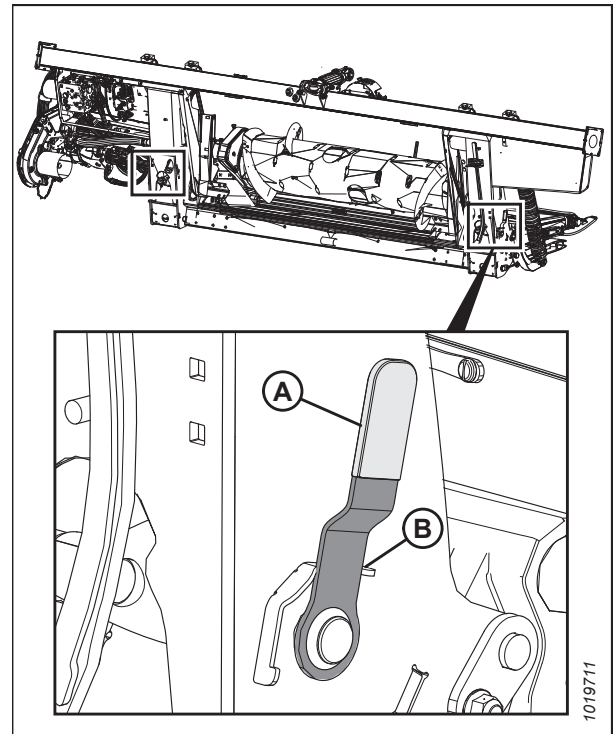


Figure 3.63: Float Lock Handle

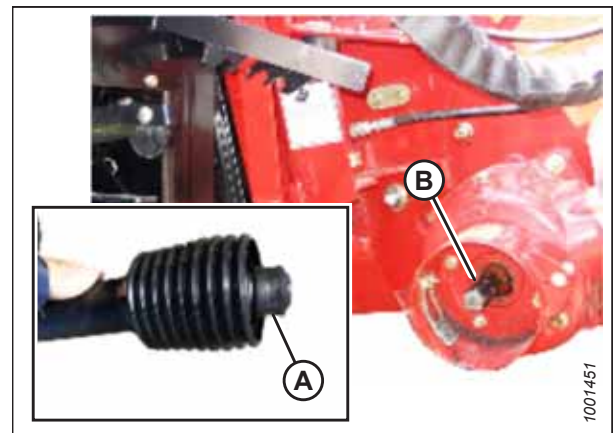


Figure 3.64: Driveline

OPERATION

6. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the support bracket.

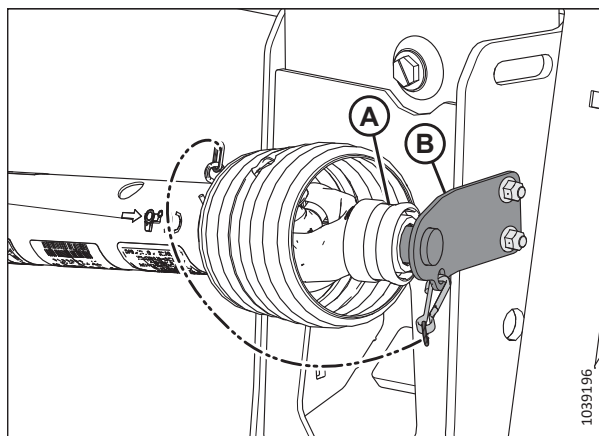


Figure 3.65: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

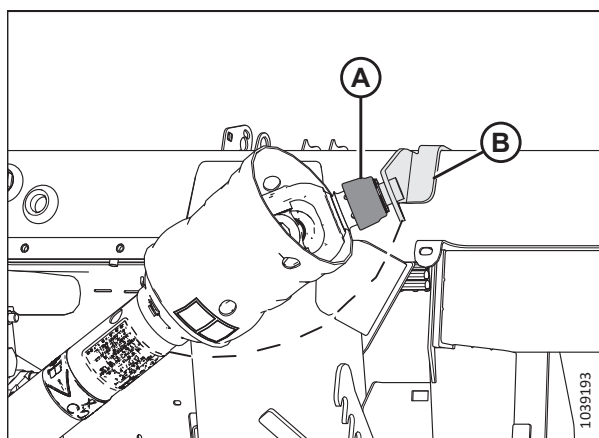


Figure 3.66: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7180, MD #B7181, or MD #B7326

7. Remove electrical connector (A) and replace cover (B).
8. Push in lock button (C) and pull handle (D) to release multicoupler (E).

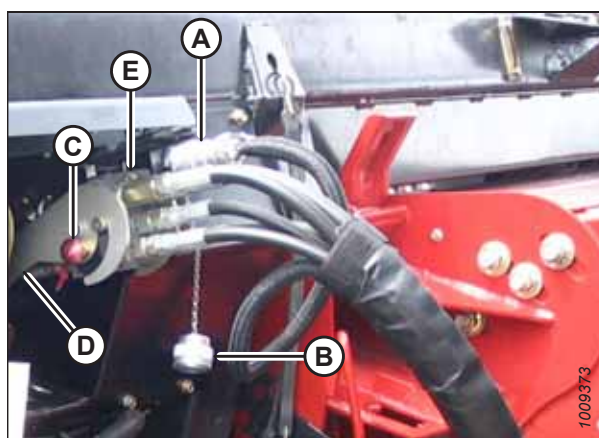


Figure 3.67: Multicoupler

OPERATION

9. Position multicoupler (A) onto storage plate (B) on the combine.
10. Place electrical connector (C) in storage cup (D).

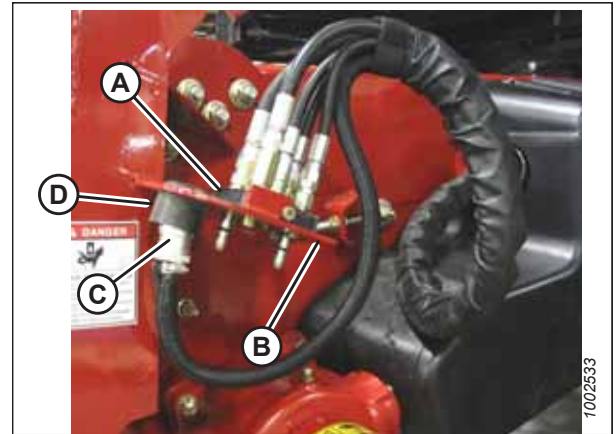


Figure 3.68: Multicoupler Storage

11. Push handle (A) on the float module receptacle to the closed position until lock button (B) snaps out. Close the cover.

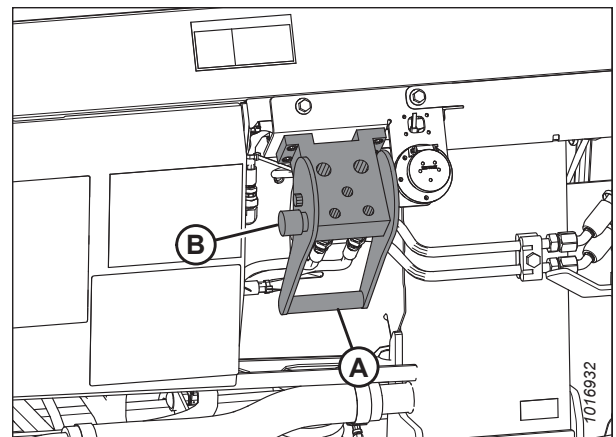


Figure 3.69: Float Module Receptacle

12. Lift lever (A) and pull, and lower handle (B) to disengage feeder house/float module lock (C).



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

13. Lower the feeder house until it disengages the float module support.
14. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

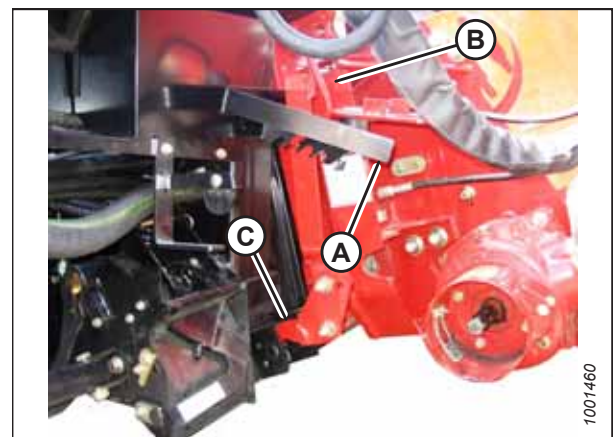


Figure 3.70: Feeder House Locks

3.6.3 CLAAS Combines

To attach the header to or detach it from a CLAAS combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with CLAAS Lexion 500, 600, and 700 series, Tucano series, and 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 series combines.

Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine

Attaching the header to a CLAAS combine involves physically connecting the combine's feeder house to the float module, attaching the combine's electrical and hydraulic multicoupler to the corresponding connector on the float module, and connecting the float module's driveline to the combine's output shaft.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Move handle (A) on the float module into the raised position. Ensure that pins (B) at the bottom corners of the float module are retracted.

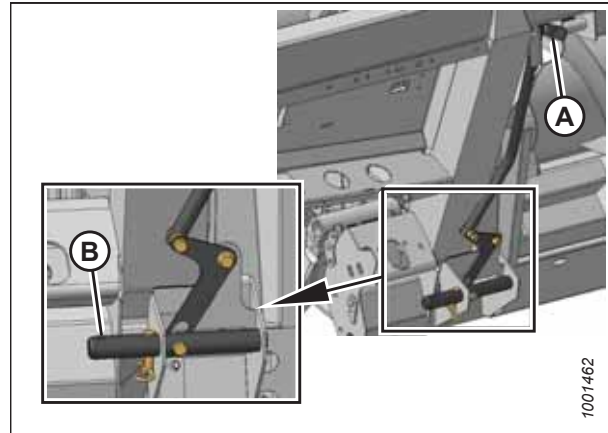


Figure 3.71: Pins Retracted

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine. Slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header. Ensure that the feeder saddle is fully engaged with the float module's frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

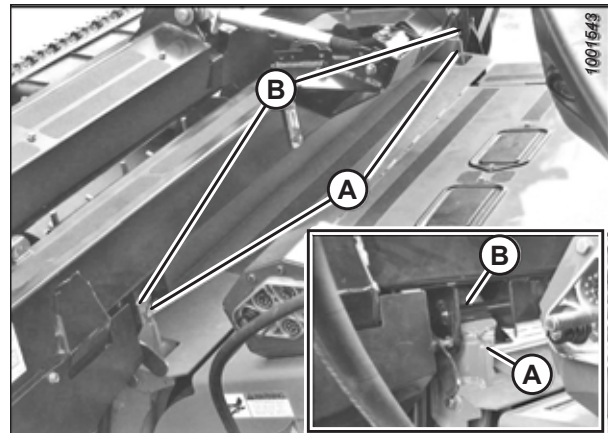


Figure 3.72: Header on Combine

OPERATION

6. Remove locking pin (B) from float module pin (A).

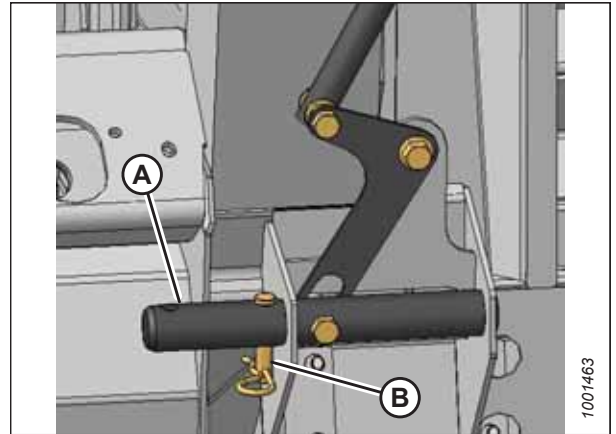


Figure 3.73: Locking Pins

7. Lower handle (A) to engage float module pins (B) into the feeder house. Reinsert locking pin (C) as shown. Secure the locking pin with the hairpin.

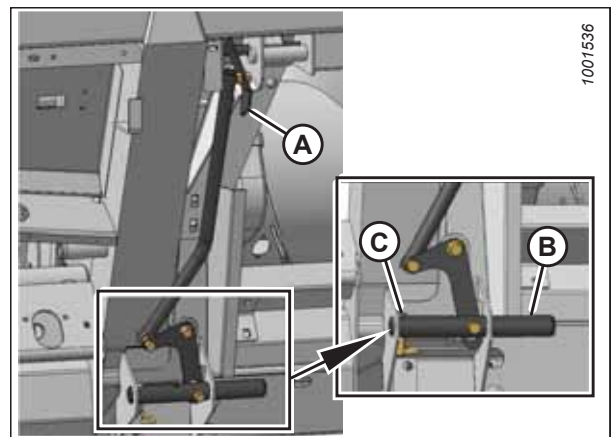


Figure 3.74: Engaging Pins

8. Remove float module receptacle cover (A). Clean the receptacle.

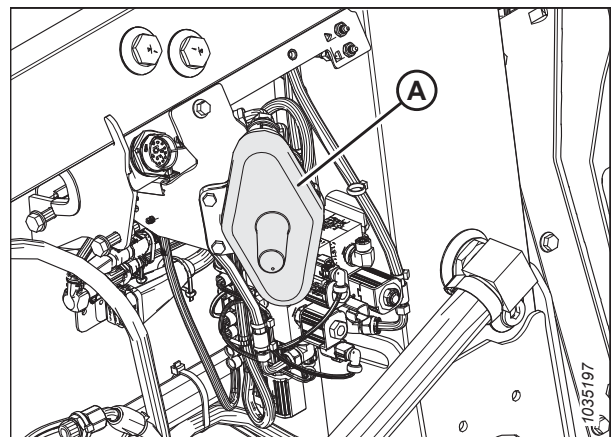
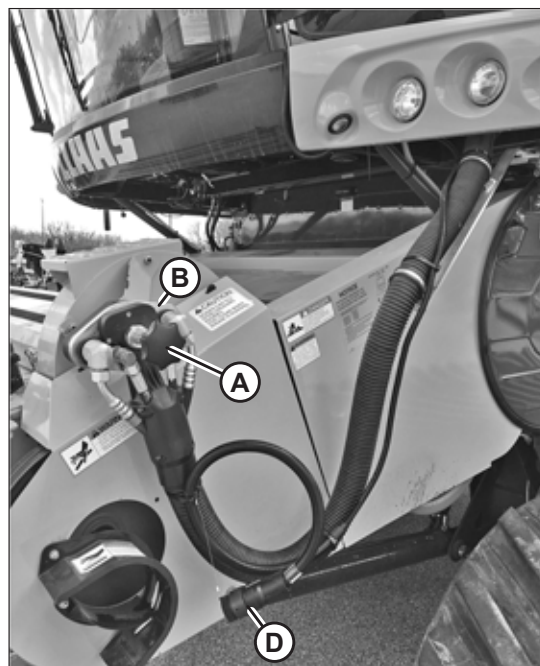
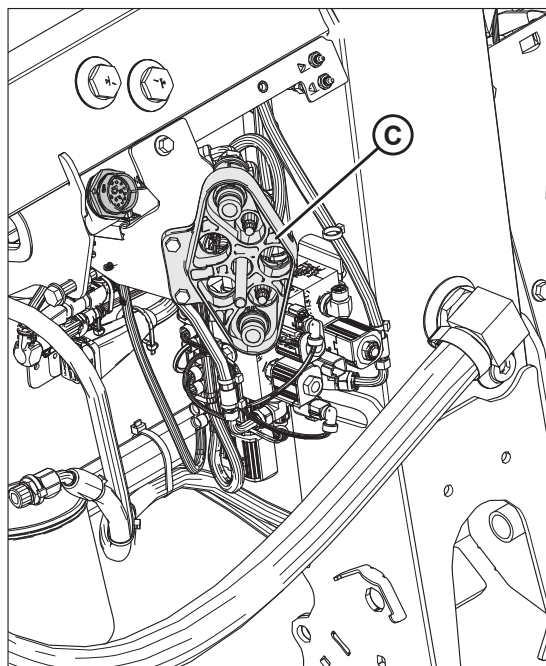


Figure 3.75: Receptacle Cover



1039435

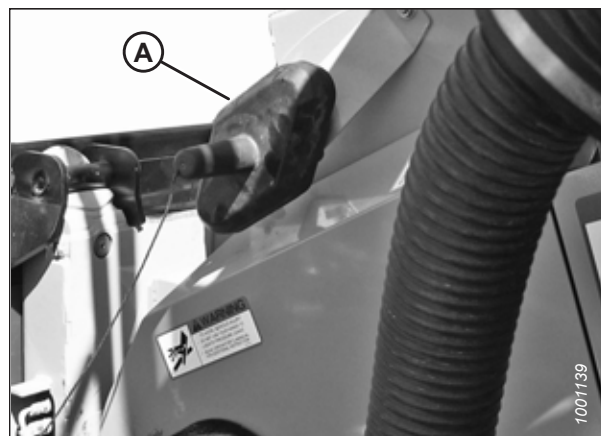
Figure 3.76: Multicoupler and Electrical Connections

9. Unscrew knob (A) on combine coupler (B) to release the coupler from the receptacle.
10. Clean coupler (B) and the receptacle.
11. Install combine coupler (B) onto float module receptacle (C). Secure the coupler by turning knob (A).

NOTE:

Combine electrical connector (D) does not need to be connected to the float module.

12. Place float module receptacle cover (A) onto the combine receptacle.



1007139

Figure 3.77: Receptacle Cover

OPERATION

13. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release driveline from the support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

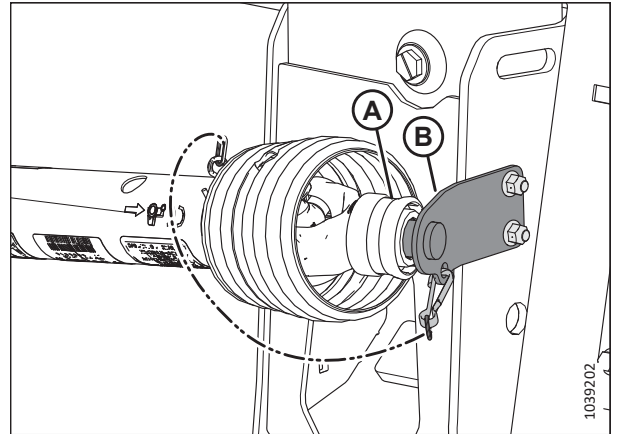


Figure 3.78: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7039

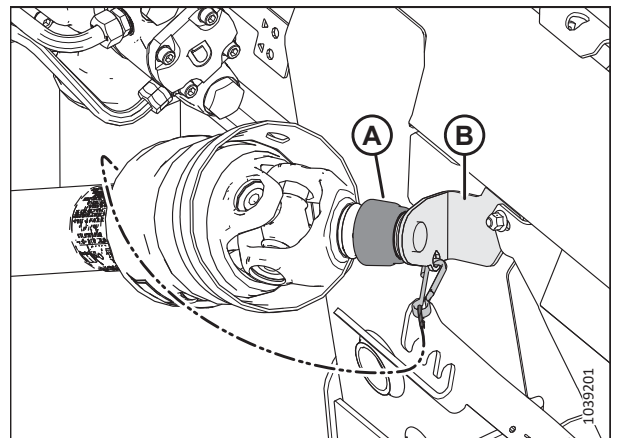


Figure 3.79: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7182

14. Attach driveline (A) to the combine output shaft.

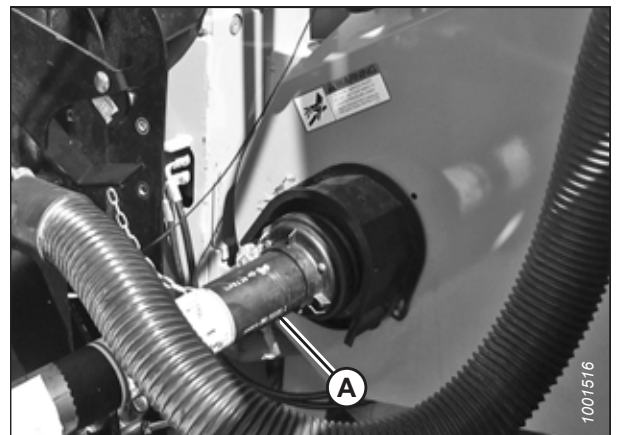


Figure 3.80: Driveline and Output Shaft

OPERATION

15. Disengage both header float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

The magnified portion of the illustration shows the right float lock; the left float lock is similar.

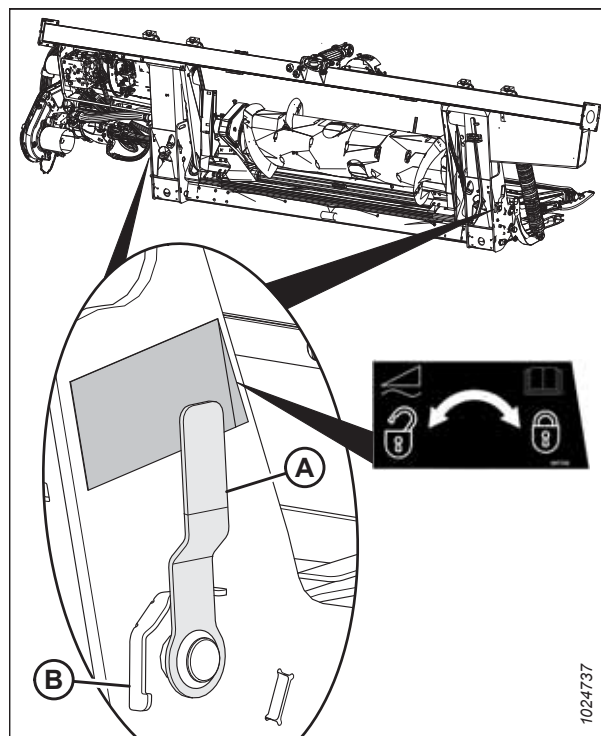


Figure 3.81: Float Lock Handle

Detaching Header from CLAAS Combine

The header will need to be physically disconnected from the combine, and the hydraulic and electrical connections removed.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#).

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#).

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

4. Disconnect driveline (A) from the combine.

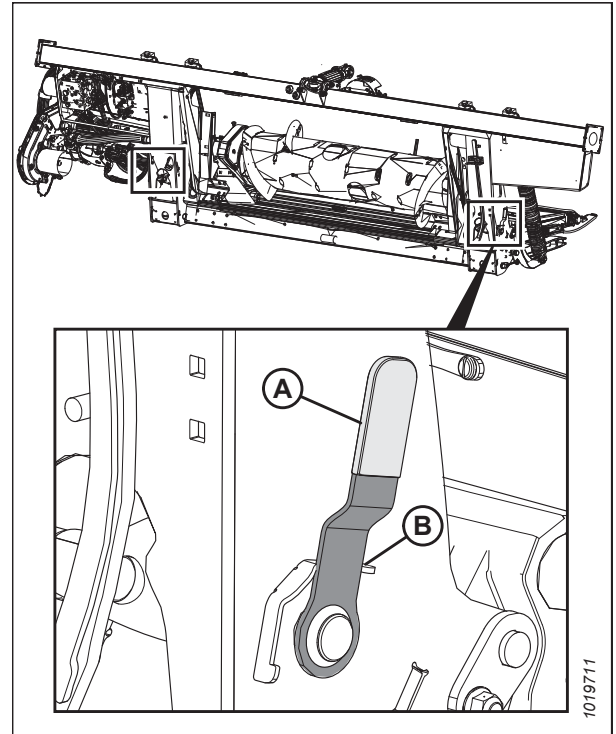


Figure 3.82: Float Lock Handle

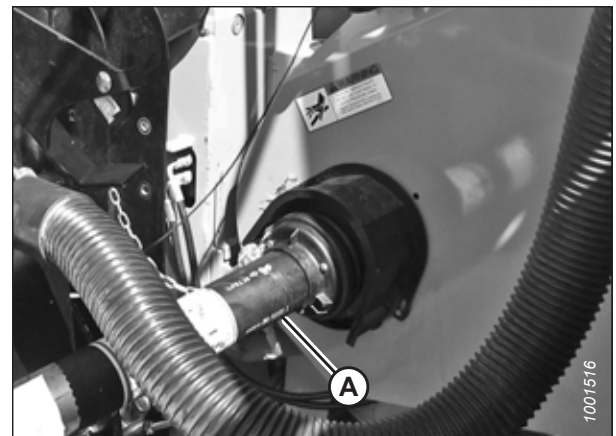


Figure 3.83: Driveline

OPERATION

5. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the bracket.

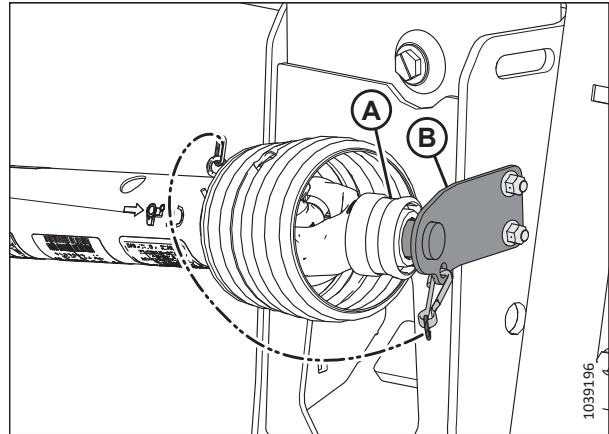


Figure 3.84: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7039

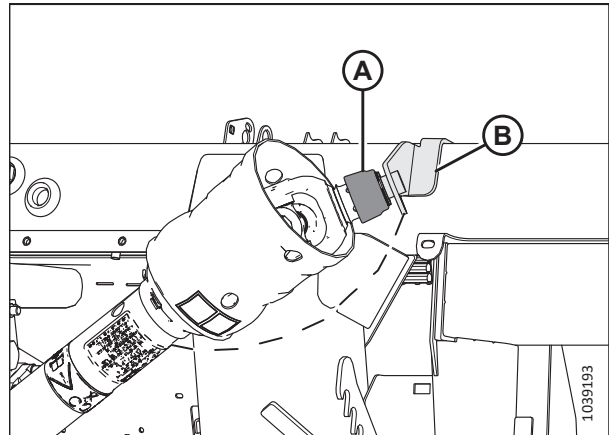


Figure 3.85: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7182

6. Remove cover (A) from the combine receptacle.

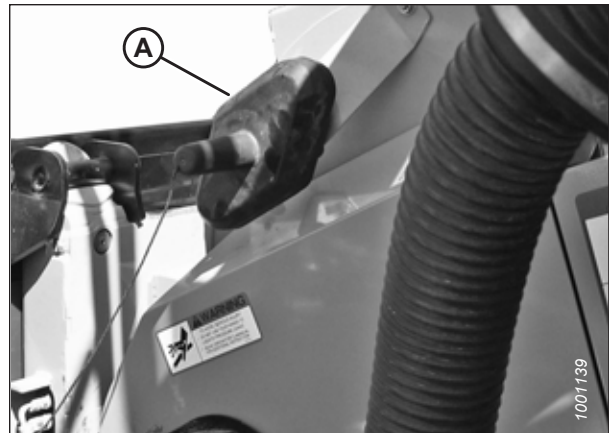


Figure 3.86: Cover

OPERATION

7. Position coupler (A) onto the combine receptacle, and turn knob (B) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

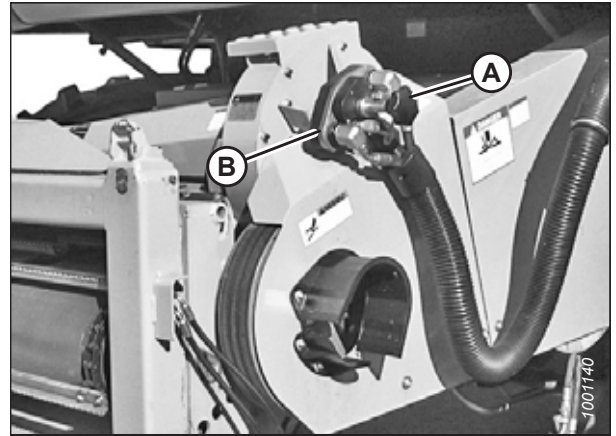


Figure 3.87: Combine Coupler

8. Place cover (A) on the float module receptacle.

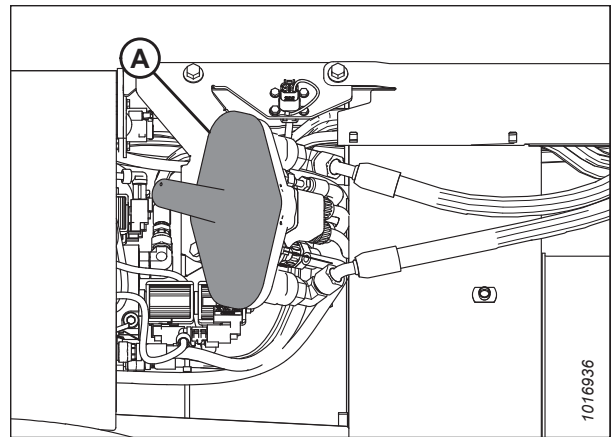


Figure 3.88: Float Module

9. Remove locking pin (A) from float module pin (B).
10. Raise handle (C) to disengage float module pins (B) from the feeder house.
11. Replace locking pin (A) in the float module pin, and secure it with the hairpin.

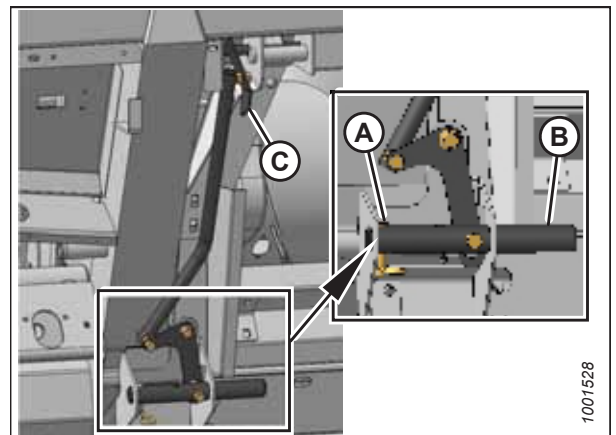


Figure 3.89: Feeder House Locks

12. Lower the feeder house until feeder house posts (A) disengage float module (B).
13. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

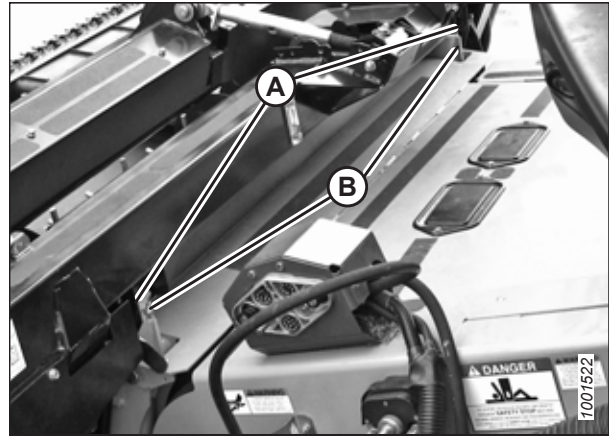


Figure 3.90: Header on Combine

3.6.4 IDEAL™ Series Combines

To attach the header to or detach it from an IDEAL™ combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

Attaching Header to an IDEAL™ Series Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.

! DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Pull lever (A) up to retract pins (B) at the bottom left and right sides of the feeder house.
3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

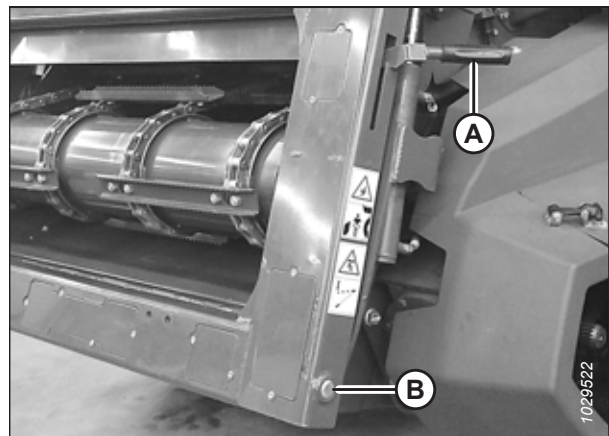


Figure 3.91: Feeder House

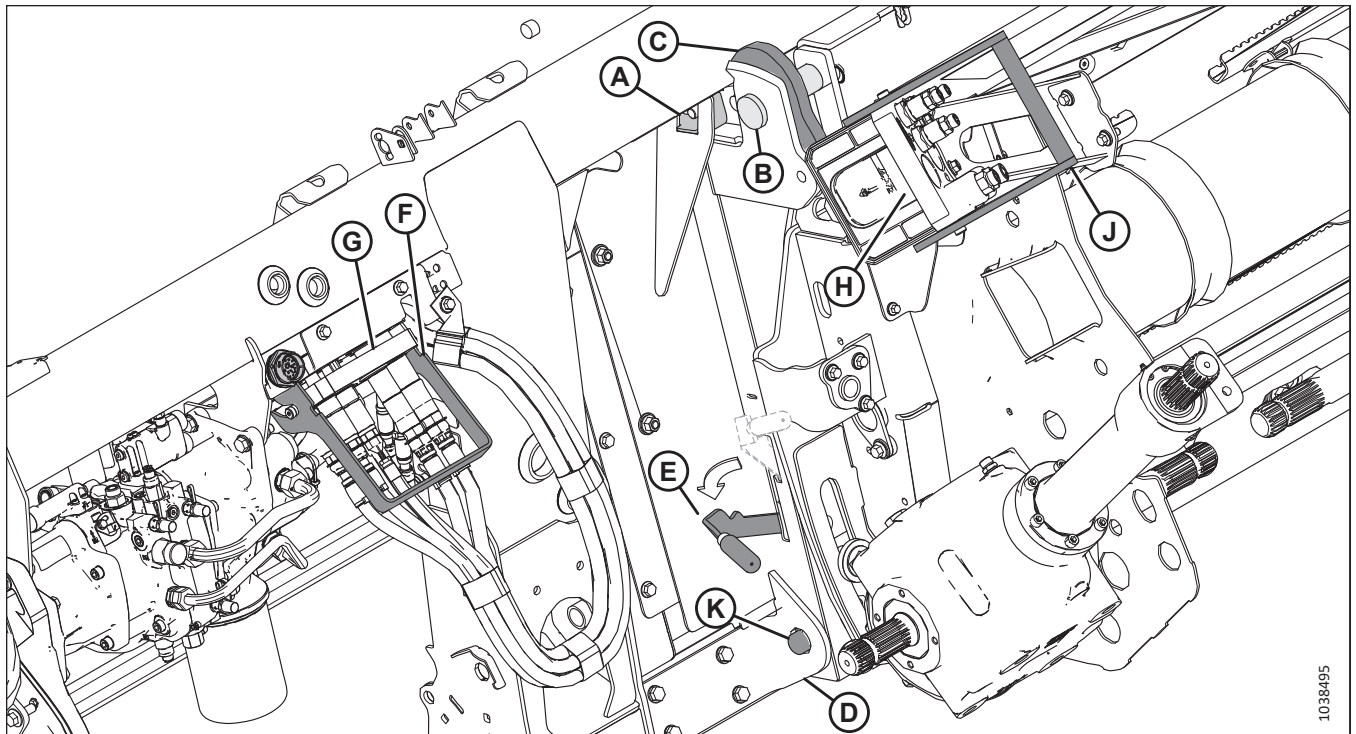


Figure 3.92: Float Module

4. Drive the combine slowly up to the header until the feeder house is directly under top beam (A), and pins (B) are under hooks (C) on the transition frame.
5. Raise the feeder house until transition frame top beam (A) is fully resting on the feeder house. Raise the header slightly off the ground.

IMPORTANT:

The full weight of the header must be on the feeder house, **NOT** on pins (B).

6. Position the bottom of the feeder house so that locking pins (K) align with the holes in mount (D).
7. Push lever (E) down to extend locking pins (K) so they engage in mount (D).
8. Lower handle (F) to release multicoupler (G) from the header.
9. Open the cover on the combine receptacle (H).
10. Push handle (J) to the fully open position.
11. Clean the mating surfaces of the coupler and receptacle if necessary.
12. Position coupler (G) onto combine receptacle (H), and pull handle (J) to fully engage the multicoupler into the receptacle.

OPERATION

13. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release the driveline from the support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

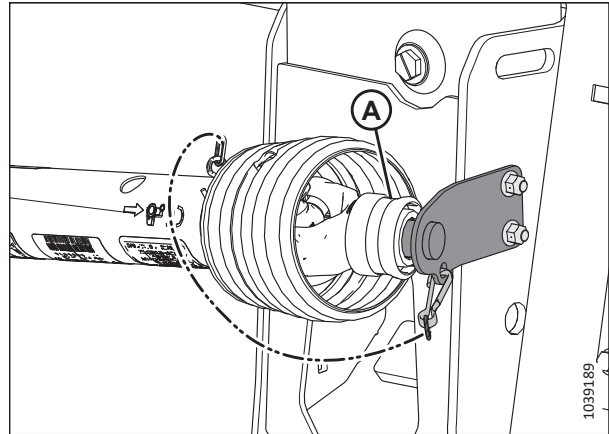


Figure 3.93: Driveline in Storage Position

14. Pull back collar (A) on the end of driveline and push it onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

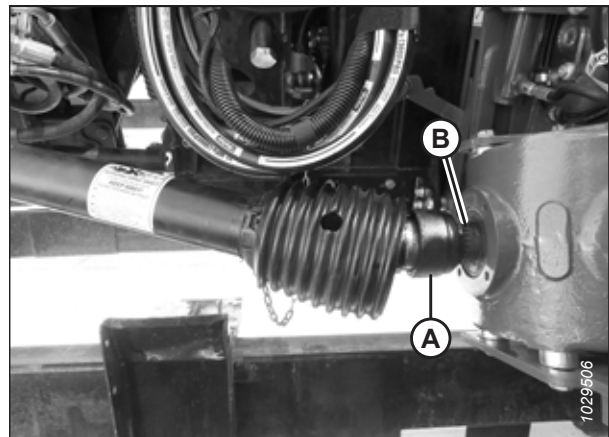


Figure 3.94: Connecting Driveline to Combine

Detaching Header from IDEAL™ Series Combine

The header will need to be physically disconnected from the combine, and the hydraulic and electrical connections removed.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected startup of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

4. Push combine receptacle handle (B) to the fully-open position to release multicoupler (A).

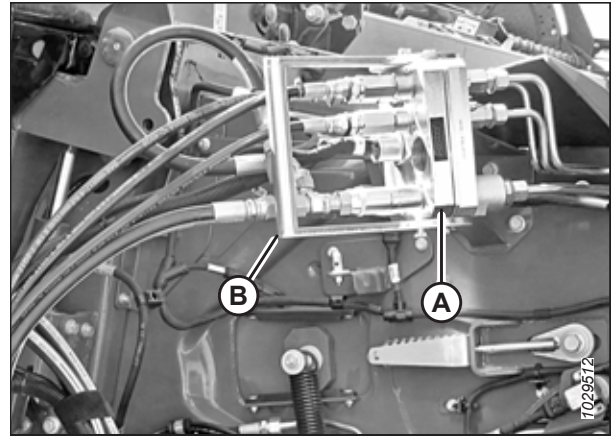


Figure 3.95: Combine Receptacle

5. Position multicoupler (B) onto the header receptacle, and move handle (A) to a vertical position to lock the multicoupler.

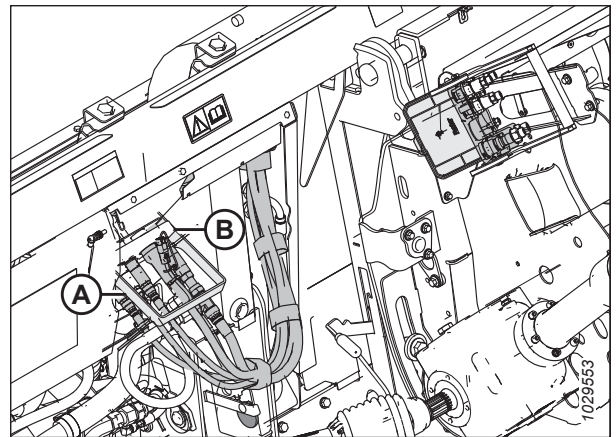


Figure 3.96: Locking Multicoupler

6. Pull back driveline collar (A) and remove the driveline from combine output shaft (B).

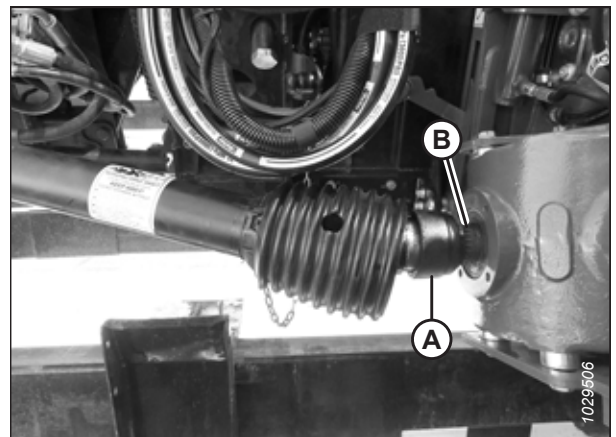


Figure 3.97: Detaching Driveline

OPERATION

7. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the bracket.

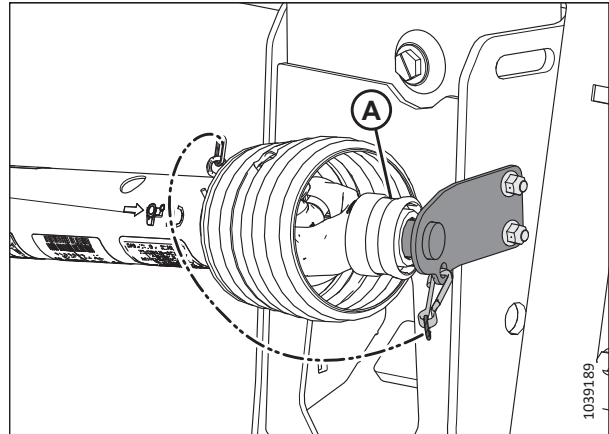


Figure 3.98: Driveline in Storage Position

8. Pull lever (A) up to retract pins (B) at the base of the feeder house.

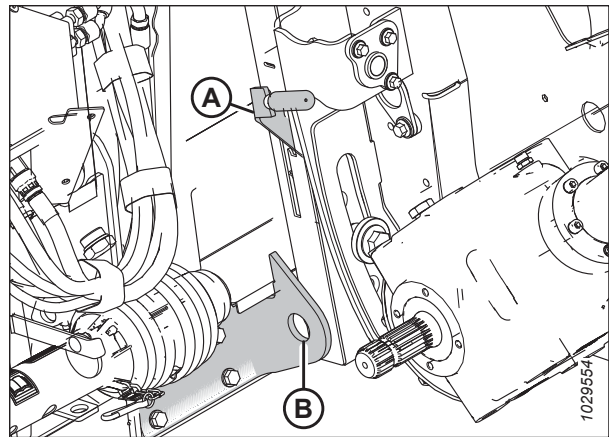


Figure 3.99: Feeder House Locking Pins

9. Start the combine and lower the header to the ground until feeder house pins (A) are clear of hooks (B).
10. Slowly back the combine away from the header.

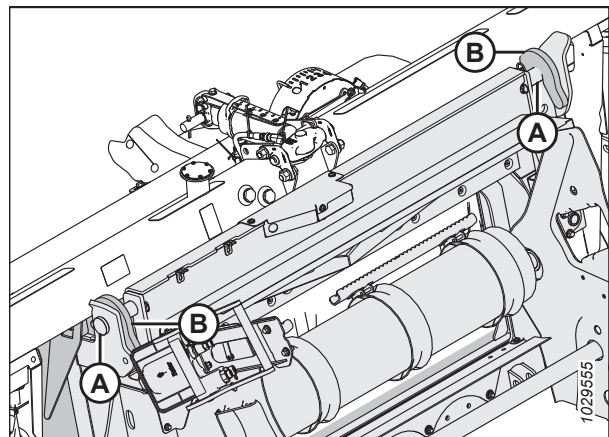


Figure 3.100: Lowering Feeder House

3.6.5 John Deere Combines

To attach the header to or detach it from a John Deere combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with John Deere 60, 70, S, T, and X9 Series combines.

Attaching Header to John Deere Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Push handle (A) on the combine multicoupler receptacle towards the feeder house to retract pins (B) at the bottom corners of the feeder house. Clean the receptacle.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (C) is directly under float module top cross member (D).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header ensuring the feeder house saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Pull handle (A) on the float module to release multicoupler (B) from the storage position. Remove the multicoupler, and push the handle back into the float module to store.

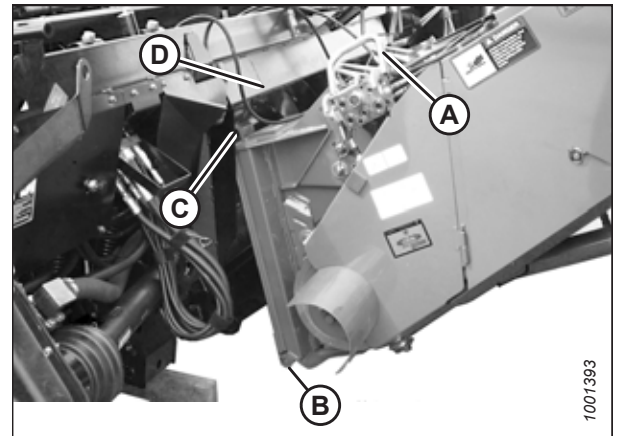


Figure 3.101: Combine and Float Module

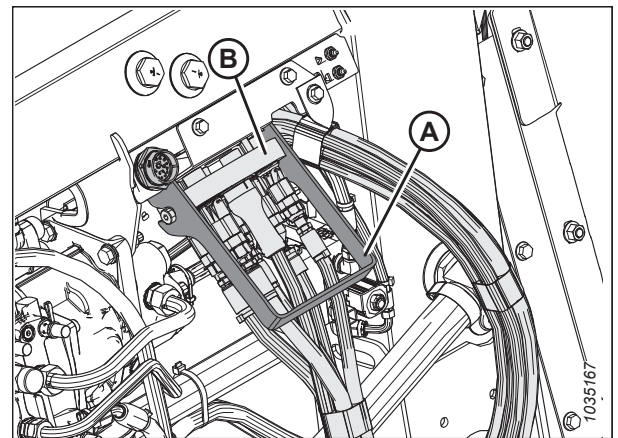


Figure 3.102: Multicoupler Storage

OPERATION

7. Position multicoupler (A) onto the receptacle, and pull handle (B) to engage the lugs on the multicoupler into the handle.
8. Pull handle (B) to a horizontal position and ensure multicoupler (A) is fully engaged into the receptacle.

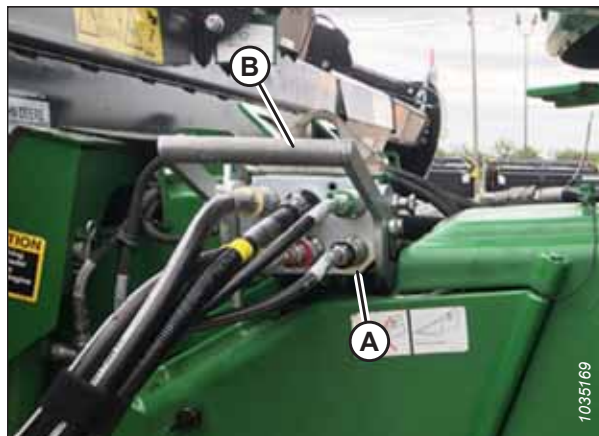


Figure 3.103: Multicoupler

9. Ensure that both feeder house pins (A) are fully engaged into the float module brackets.

NOTE:

If pins (A) do not fully engage the float module brackets, loosen bolts (B) and adjust the bracket as required.

10. Tighten bolts (B).

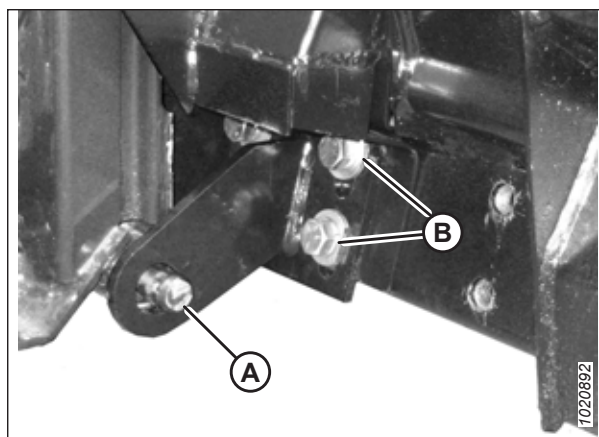


Figure 3.104: Feeder House Pin used on John Deere 60, 70, S, or T Series – X9 Series is Similar

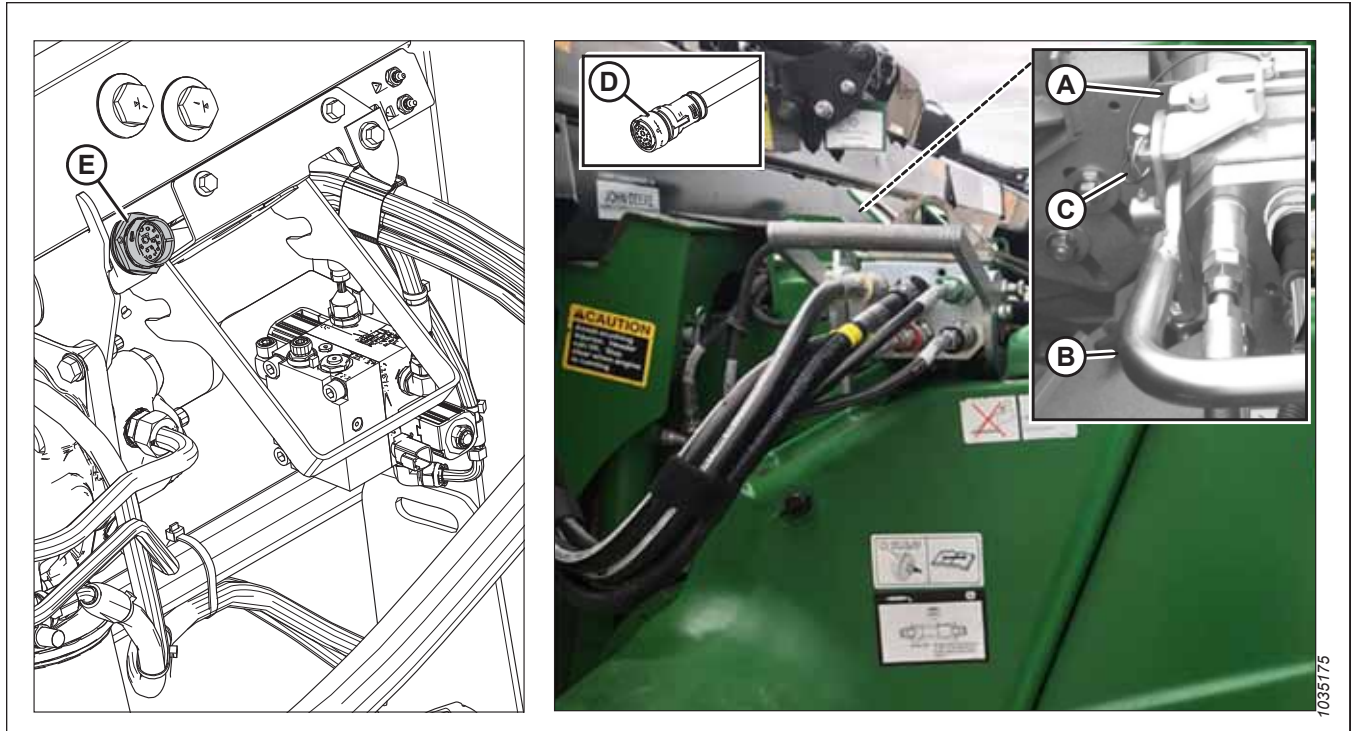


Figure 3.105: Multicoupler Lock, Electrical Connections

11. Slide latch (A) to lock handle (B) in position and secure with lynch pin (C).
12. Remove cab control kit connector C81A (D) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to C81B (E) on the float module. Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

OPERATION

13. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release the driveline from the support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

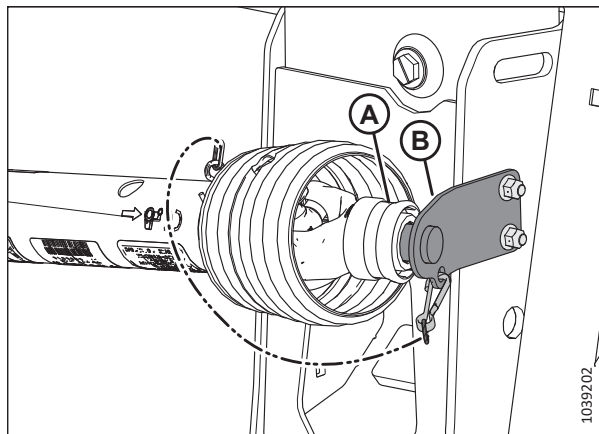


Figure 3.106: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

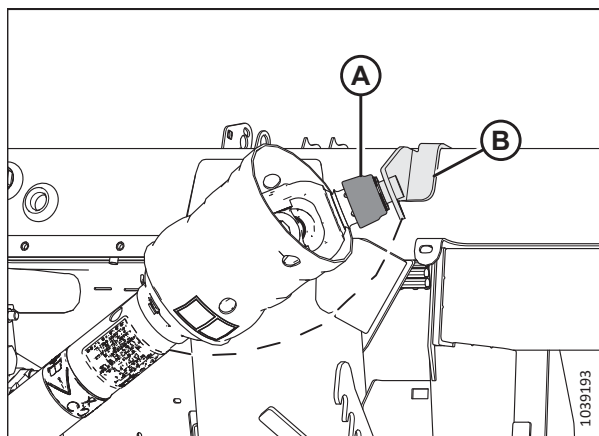


Figure 3.107: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7326, or MD #B7182

14. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

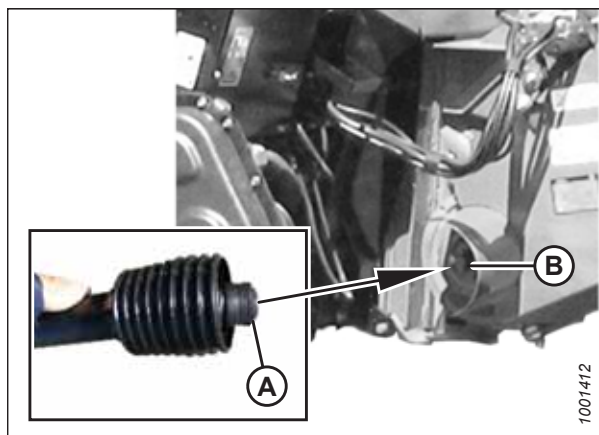


Figure 3.108: Driveline

OPERATION

15. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module, and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

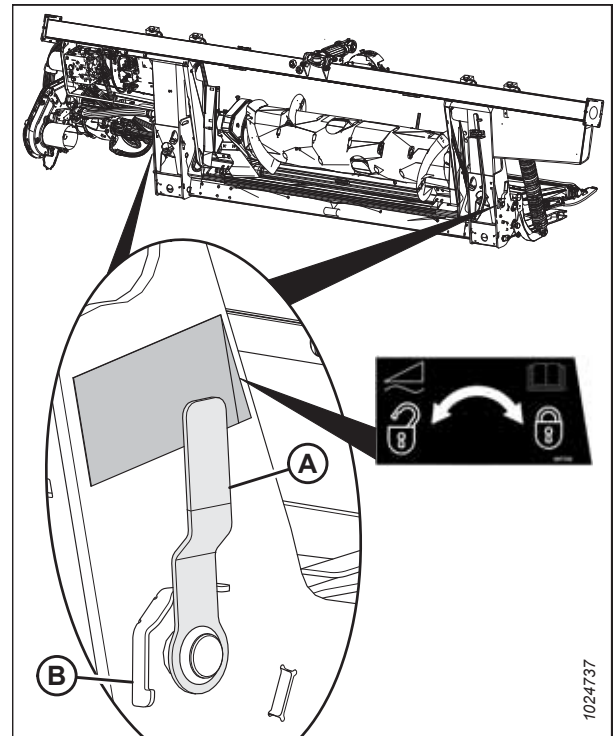


Figure 3.109: Float Lock Handle

Detaching Header from John Deere Combine

The header will need to be physically disconnected from the combine, and the hydraulic and electrical connections removed.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#).

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#).

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

4. Open shield (A) on the combine, pull back the collar on driveline (B), and pull the driveline off the combine output shaft.

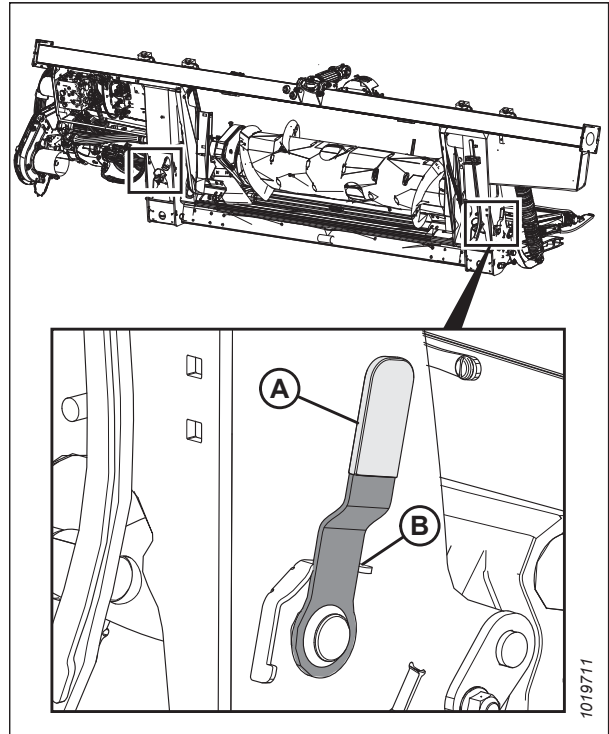


Figure 3.110: Float Lock Handle

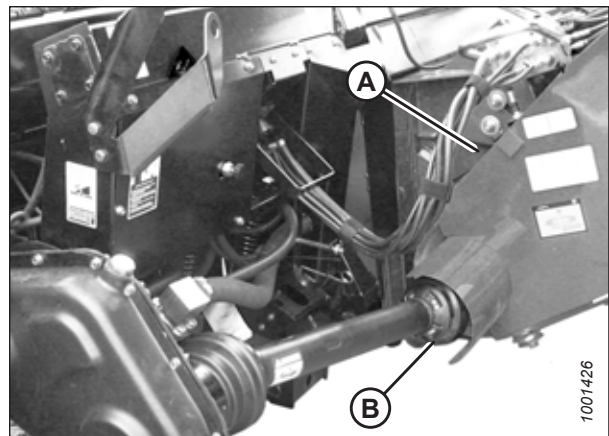


Figure 3.111: Driveline

OPERATION

5. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the support bracket.
6. Attach safety chain (C) to support bracket (B).

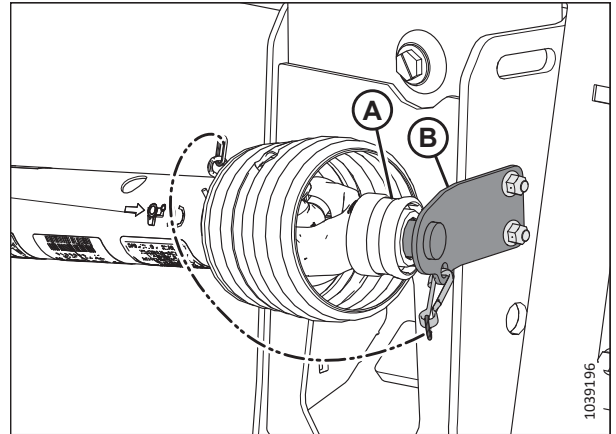


Figure 3.112: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

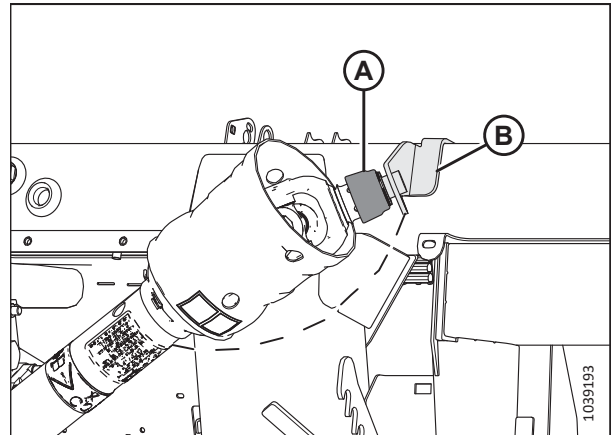


Figure 3.113: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7326, or MD #B7182

7. Lift handle (A) on the float module.

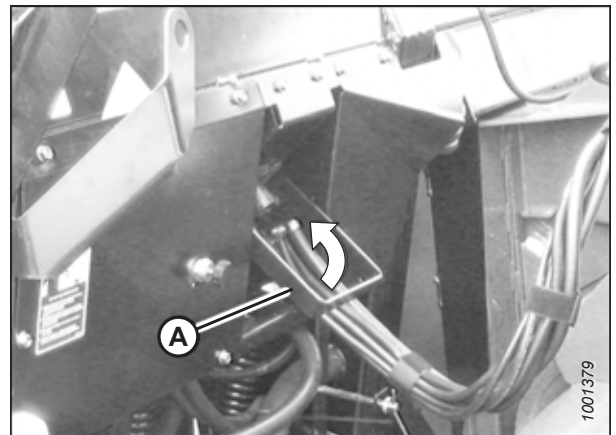


Figure 3.114: Multicoupler Storage

OPERATION

8. Disconnect harness (A) from the combine connector.
9. Remove lynch pin (B) and slide lock (C) to release handle (D).
10. Lift handle (D) to full vertical position to release multicoupler (E) from the combine.

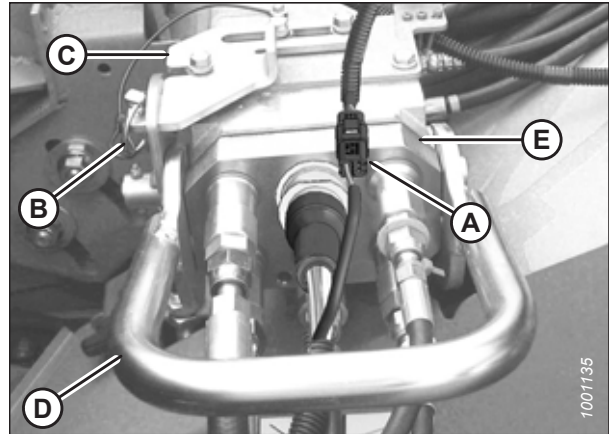


Figure 3.115: Multicoupler

11. Position multicoupler (A) on the float module receptacle and lower handle (B) to lock the multicoupler.

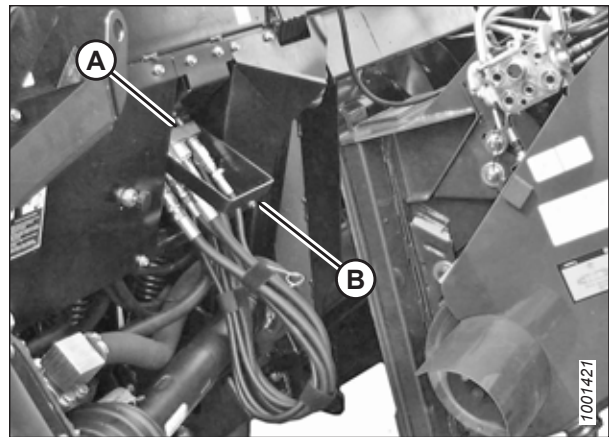


Figure 3.116: Multicoupler Storage

12. Push handle (A) on the combine towards the feeder house to disengage feeder house pin (B) from the float module.

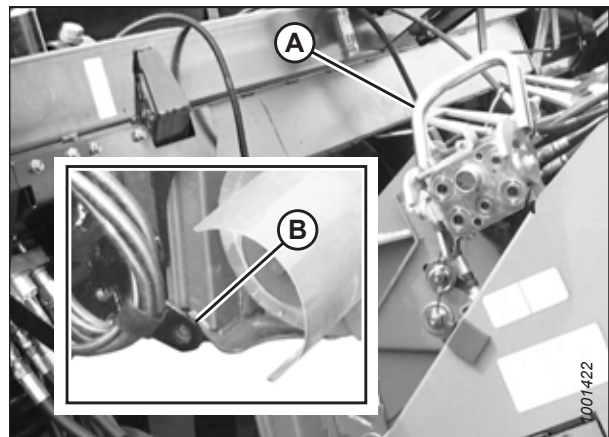


Figure 3.117: Feeder House Locks

OPERATION

13. Lower the feeder house until saddle (A) disengages and clears float module support (B).
14. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

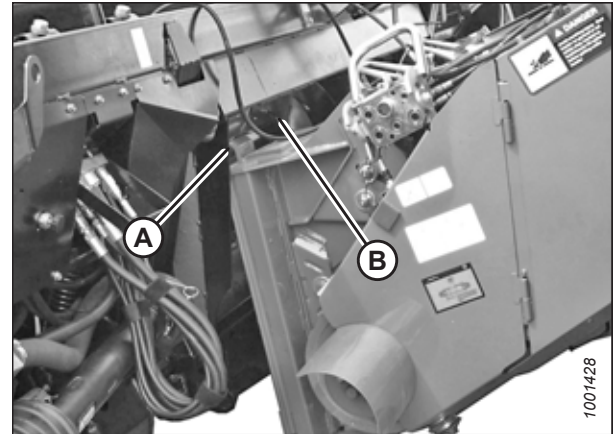


Figure 3.118: Float Module and Feeder House

3.6.6 New Holland Combines

To attach the header to or detach it from a New Holland combine, follow the relevant procedure in this section.

Refer to the table below for information on the New Holland combine models that are compatible with this header.

Table 3.2 New Holland Combine Compatibility

New Holland Combine Series	Combine Model
CR	920, 940, 960, 970, 980
	9020, 9040, 9060, 9065, 9070, 9080
	6090, 7090, 8080, 8090, 9090
	6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, 10.90
CX	840, 860, 870, 880
	8070, 8080, 8090
	8080 Elevation, 8090 Elevation

Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

2. Ensure handle (A) is positioned so locks (B) can engage the float module.

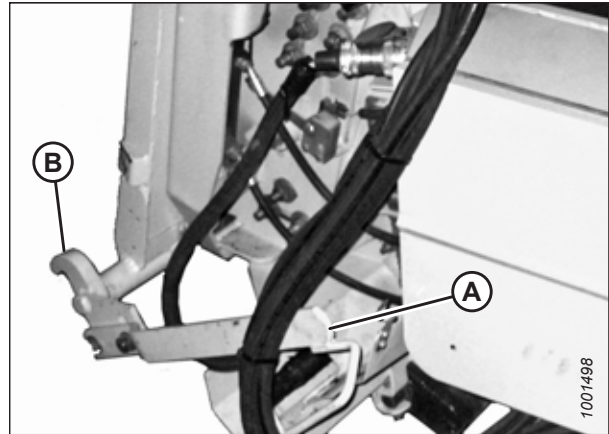


Figure 3.119: Feeder House Locks

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the float module until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Lift lever (A) on the float module on the left side of the feeder house, and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
7. Push down on lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
8. If the lock does not fully engage pin (D) on the float module when lever (A) and handle (B) are engaged, loosen bolts (E) and adjust lock (C). Retighten the bolts.

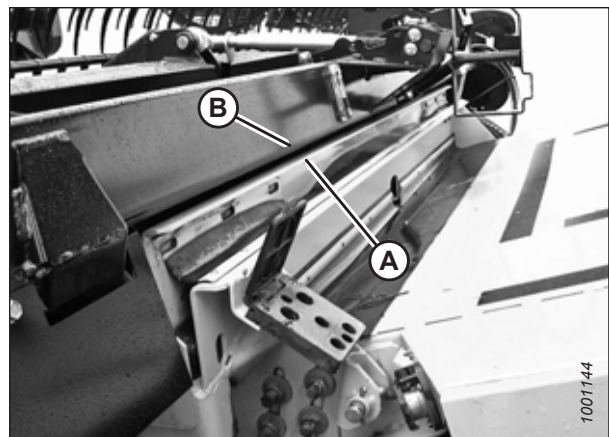


Figure 3.120: Header on Combine

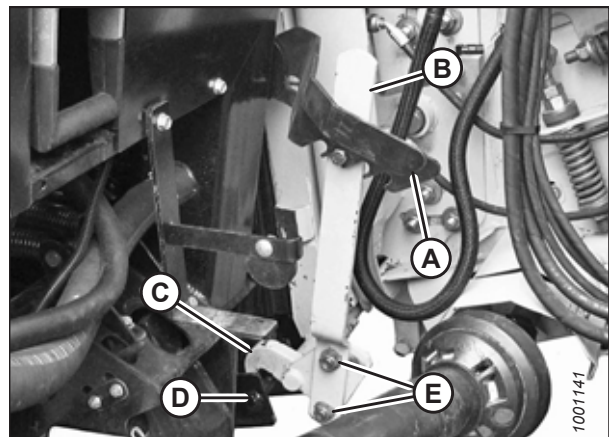


Figure 3.121: Feeder House Locks

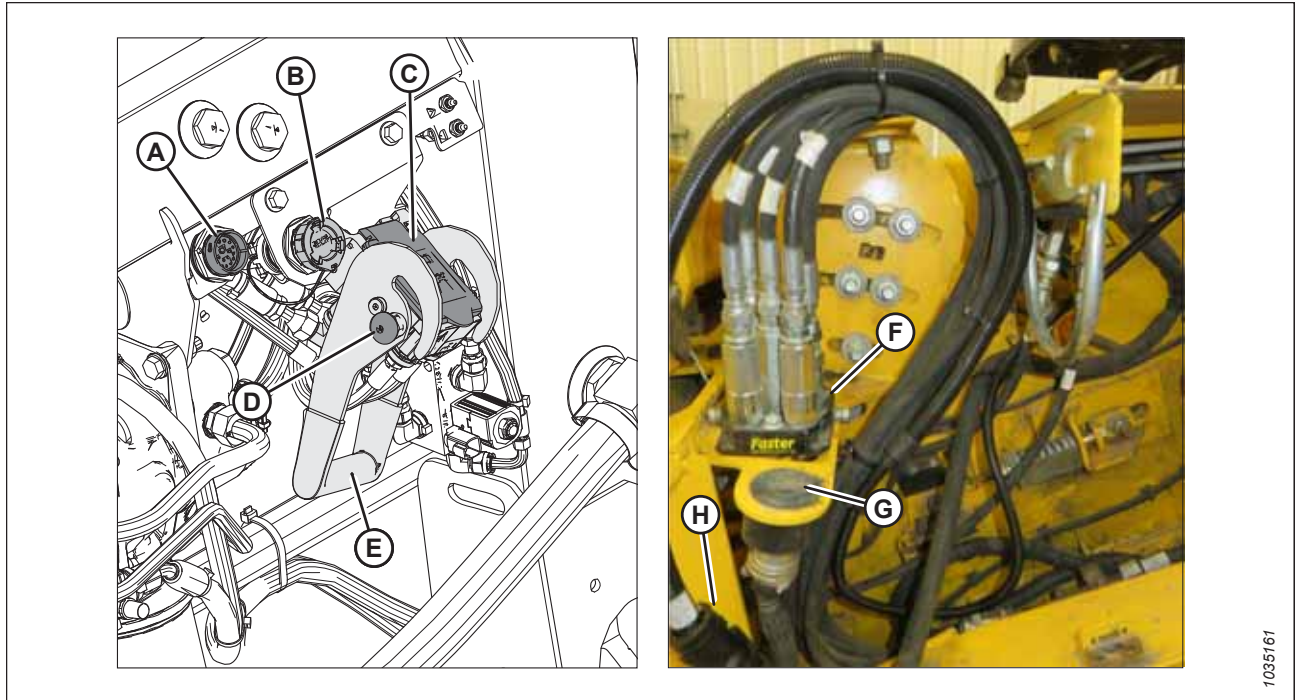


Figure 3.122: Multicoupler and Electrical Connections

9. Remove the caps from connectors C81B (A) and (B).
10. Remove the cover from hydraulic receptacle (C). Clean the receptacle mating surfaces
11. Push in lock button (D) and pull handle (E) to the fully open position.
12. Remove hydraulic quick coupler (F) from the storage plate on the combine. Clean the mating surface of the coupler.
13. Position coupler (F) onto the float module receptacle (C), and push handle (E) to engage the pins into the receptacle.
14. Push handle (E) to closed position until lock button (D) snaps out.
15. Remove combine connector (G) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to receptacle (B). Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.
16. Remove cab control kit connector C81A (H) from the storage location on the combine and connect it to C81B (A). Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

OPERATION

17. Pull driveline collar (A) back to release the driveline from the support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

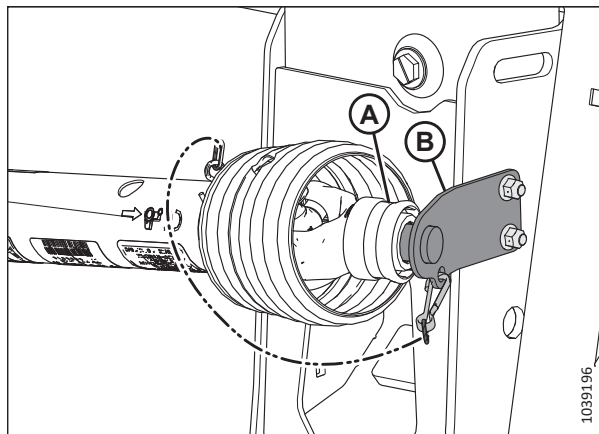


Figure 3.123: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

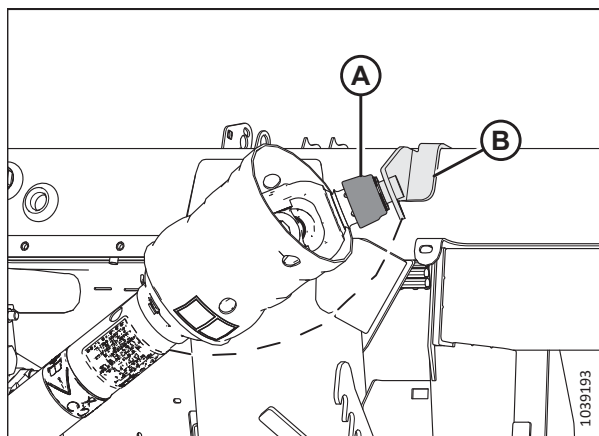


Figure 3.124: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7180, MD #B7181, or MD #B7326

18. Pull back the collar on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (A) until the collar locks.

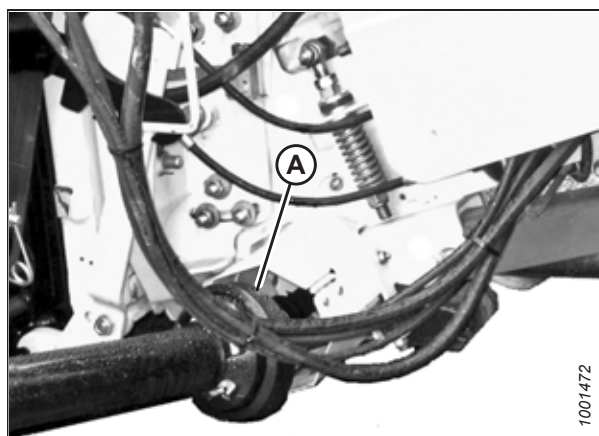


Figure 3.125: Driveline and Output Shaft

OPERATION

19. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

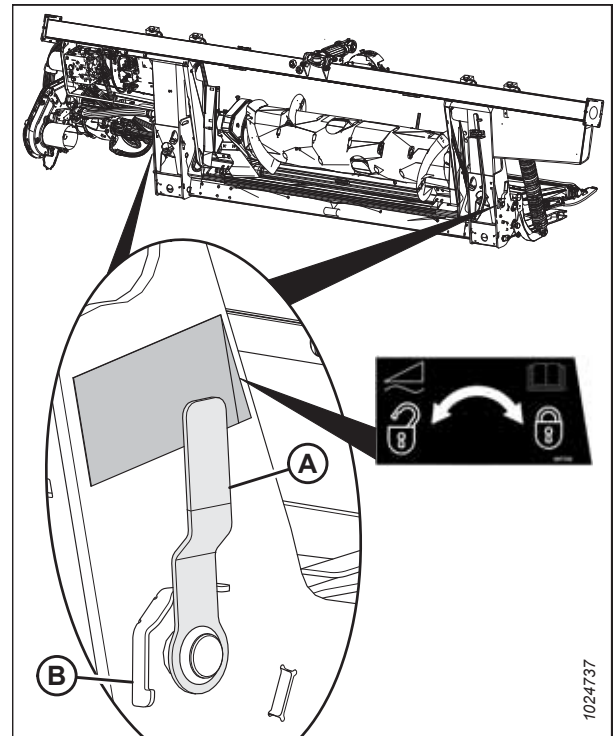


Figure 3.126: Float Lock Handle

Detaching Header from New Holland CR/CX Combine

The header will need to be physically disconnected from the combine, and the hydraulic and electrical connections removed.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#).

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#).

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

4. Disconnect driveline from the combine. Push back collar on the end of the driveline and pull the driveline out of combine output shaft (A) until the collar disengages.

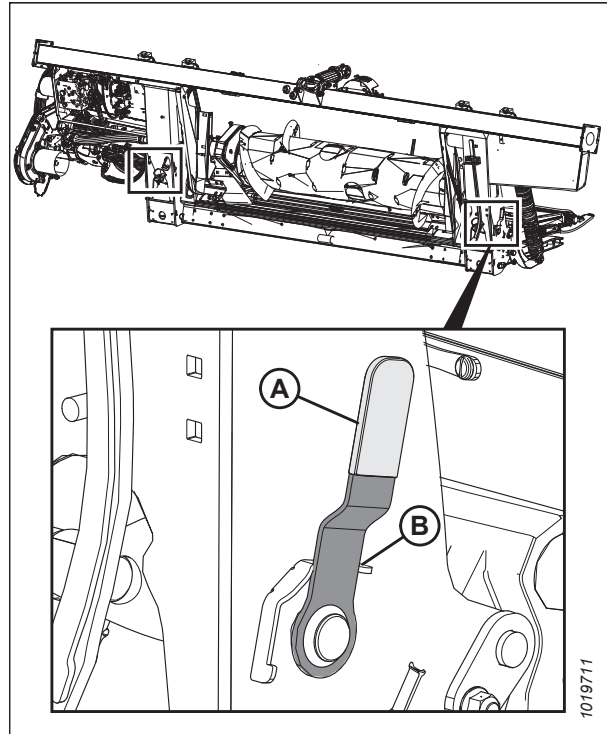


Figure 3.127: Float Lock Handle

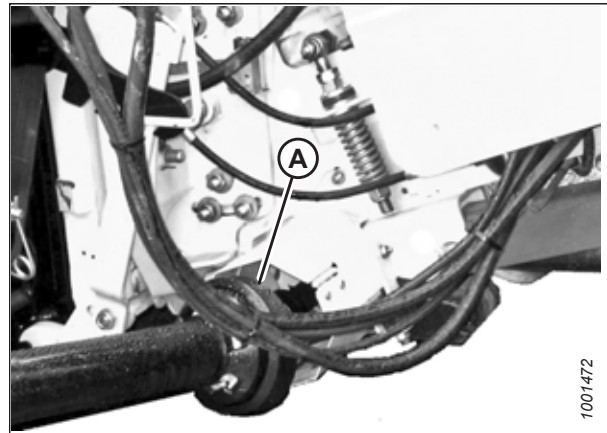


Figure 3.128: Driveline

OPERATION

5. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the bracket.

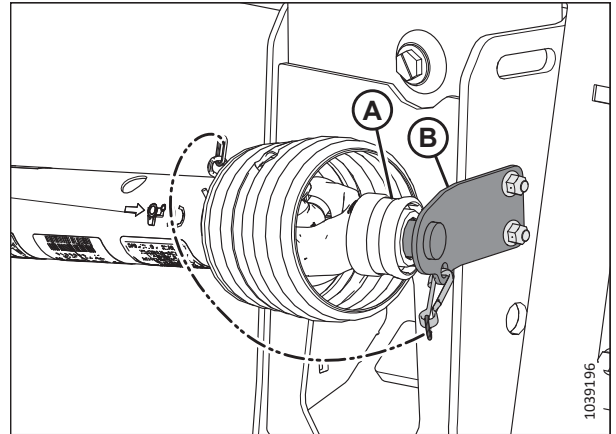


Figure 3.129: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

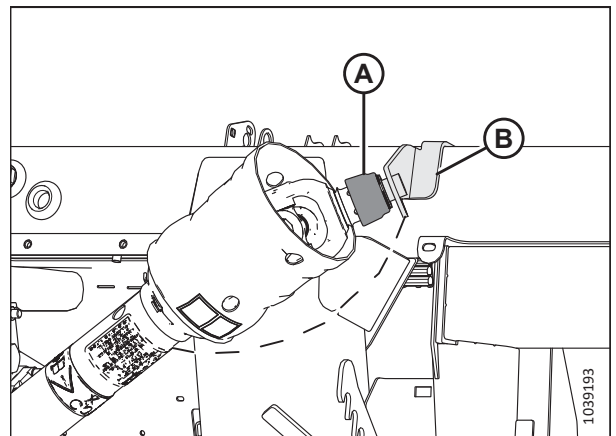


Figure 3.130: Driveline in Storage Position – Sidehill/Hillside Driveline MD #B7180, MD #B7181, or MD #B7326

6. Push in lock button (B), and pull handle (C) to release multicoupler (A).

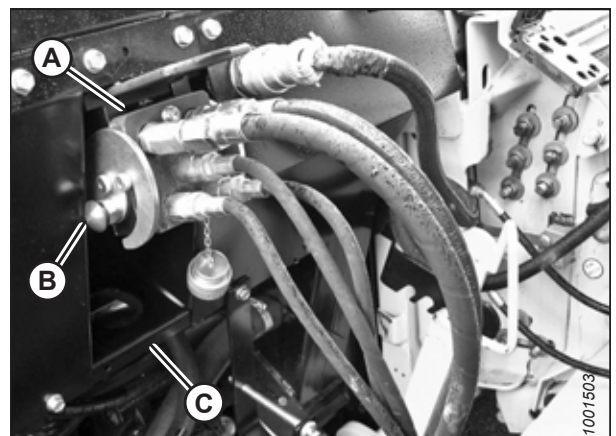


Figure 3.131: Float Module Connections

OPERATION

7. Push handle (A) to the closed position until lock button (B) snaps out. Close the cover.

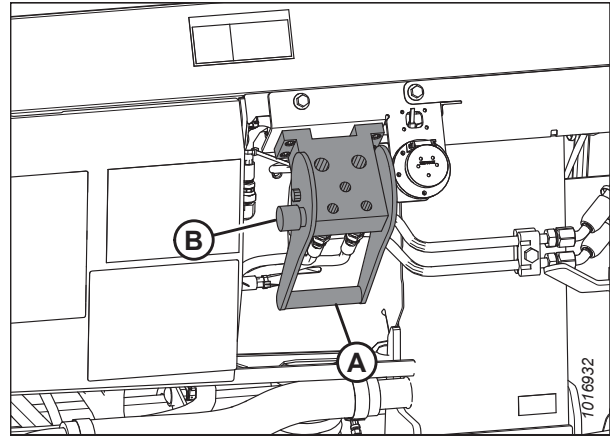


Figure 3.132: Float Module Receptacles

8. Position hydraulic quick coupler (A) onto storage plate (B) on the combine.

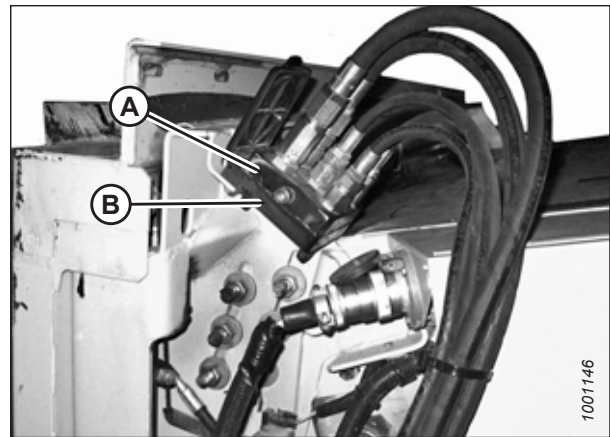


Figure 3.133: Combine Coupler

9. Remove electrical connector (A) from the float module.

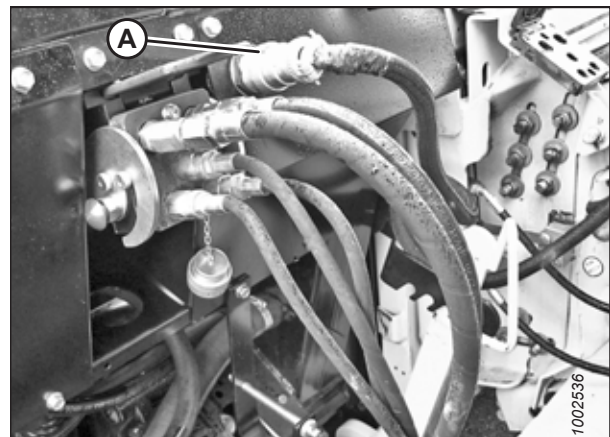


Figure 3.134: Float Module Connections

OPERATION

10. Connect the electrical connector to the combine at location (A).

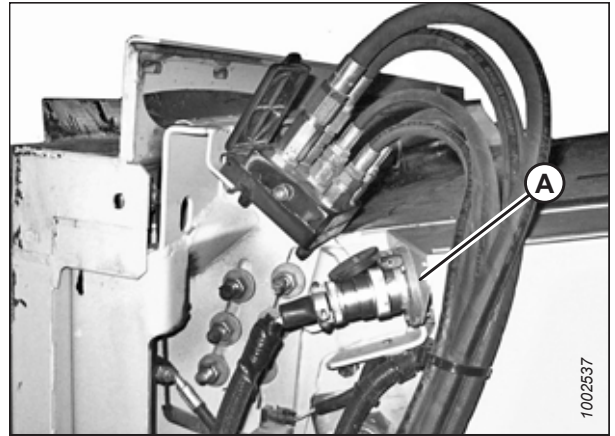


Figure 3.135: Combine Couplers

11. Replace cover (A) on the float module receptacle.

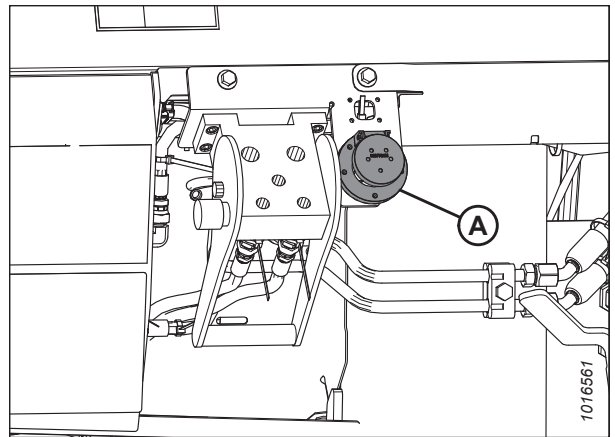


Figure 3.136: Float Module Receptacles

12. Lift lever (A) and pull and lower handle (B) to disengage feeder house/float module lock (C).

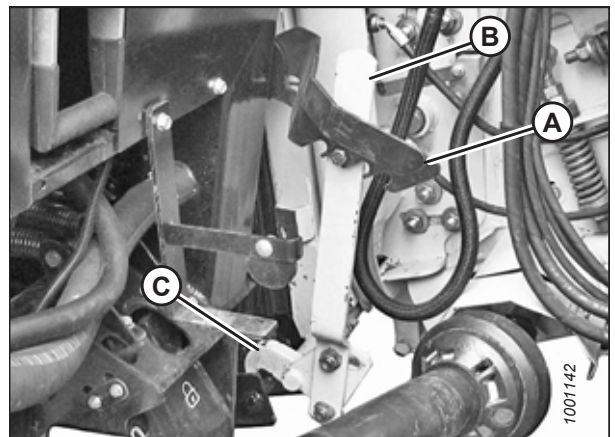


Figure 3.137: Feeder House Locks

OPERATION

13. Lower feeder house (A) until the feeder house disengages float module support (B).
14. Back the combine slowly away from the header.

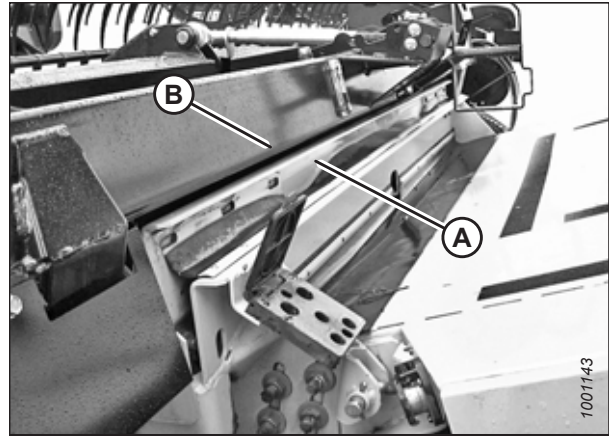


Figure 3.138: Header on Combine

Feeder Deflectors – New Holland CR Series Combines

On New Holland CR Series combines, feeder deflectors may need to be installed. Feeder deflectors are **NOT** necessary on New Holland CX Series combines.

For New Holland CR combines only: Wide feeder deflectors have been factory-installed on the float module to improve feeding into the feeder house. Remove the feeder deflectors if necessary. For instructions, refer to [4.11.3 Replacing Feeder Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines, page 606](#).

Long feeder kits are provided for narrow feeder house combines and can be installed to replace the short feeder deflectors.

Table 3.3 FM200 Feeder Kits for CR Model Combines

Feeder House Size	Feeder Kit Size	Part Number
1250–1350 mm (49–65 in.)	Narrow: 200 mm (7 7/8 in.)	MD #328082, 328083
1100 mm (43 1/2 in.) and below	Wide: 325 mm (12 13/16 in.)	MD #314690, 314691

3.6.7 Rostselmash Series Combines

Attaching Header to Rostselmash Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

1. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
2. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header ensuring the feeder house saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

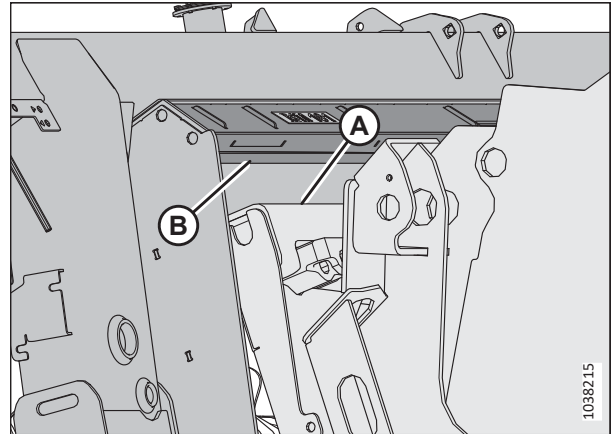


Figure 3.139: Combine and Float Module

4. Pull pin (A) outward and rotate handle (B) until both feeder house pins (C) are fully engaged into float module brackets (D).

NOTE:

If pins (C) do not fully engage the float module brackets, loosen bolts (E) and adjust brackets (D) as required.

5. Tighten nuts (E).

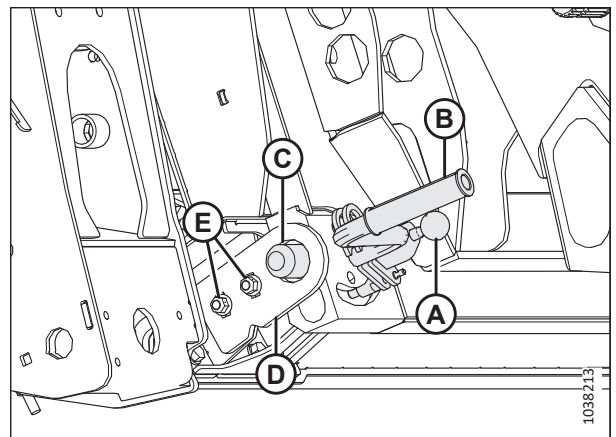


Figure 3.140: Feeder House Pin

OPERATION

-

Figure 3.141: Multicoupler Storage

-

Figure 3.142: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

OPERATION

14. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

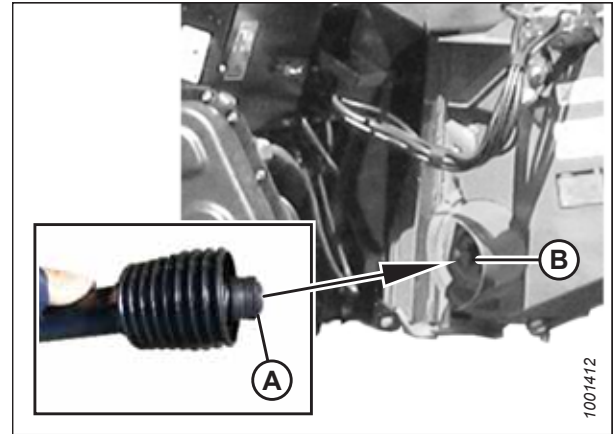


Figure 3.143: Driveline

15. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module, and setting it in unlocked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

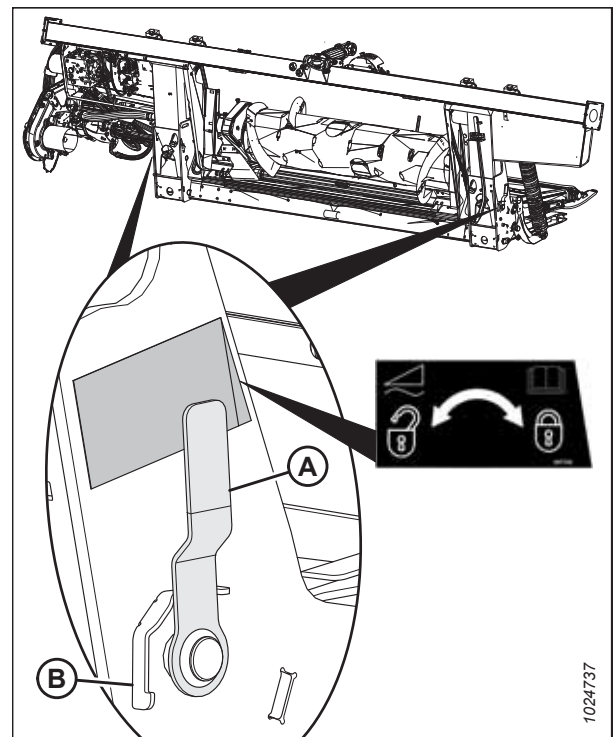


Figure 3.144: Float Lock Handle

Detaching Header From Rostselmash Combine

Each combine model has specific instructions on how to attach the header.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Position the header slightly above the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels](#), page 164.

IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels](#), page 164.

4. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

NOTE:

The illustration at the right shows the right side of the header. The float lock on the left side of the header is opposite.

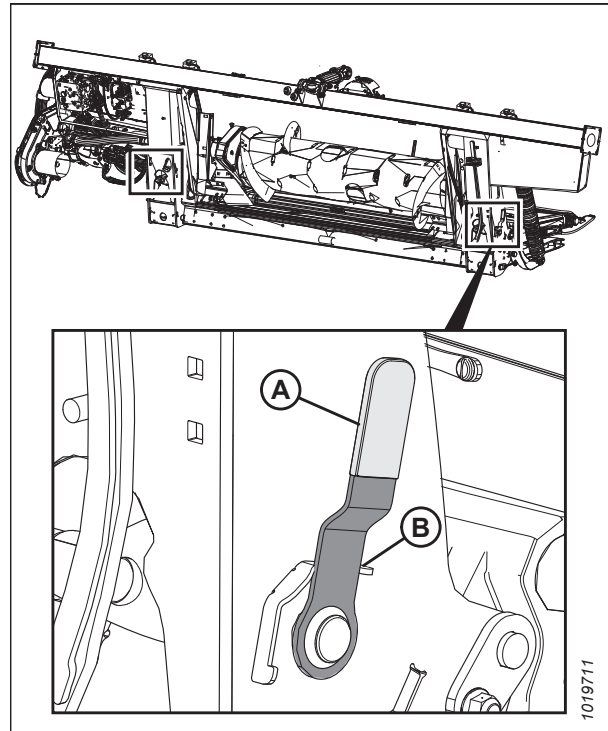


Figure 3.145: Float Lock Handle

5. Disconnect combine cab control harness connector C81A (D) from Connector C81B (D).
6. Disconnect the combine electrical harness from connector (C).
7. Push in lock button (A) and lift handle (B) to release the multicoupler. Remove the hydraulic quick coupler from the combine and return to its storage location on the combine.

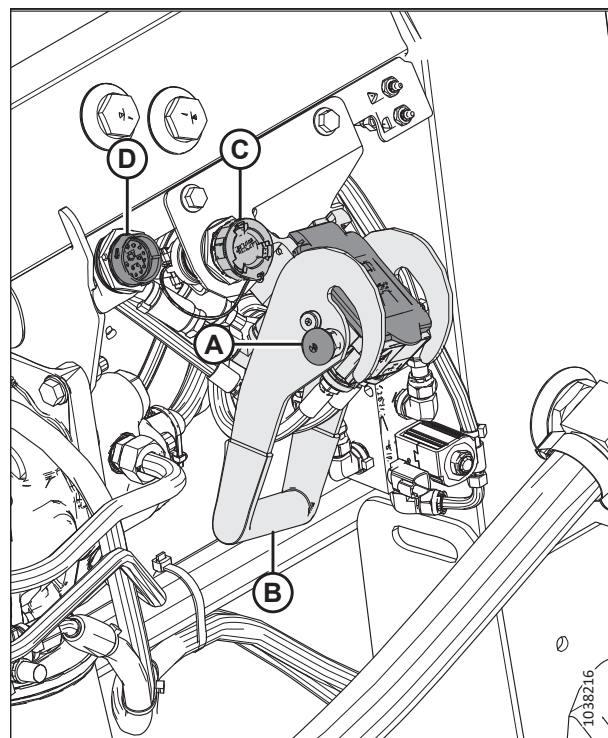


Figure 3.146: Float Lock Handle

OPERATION

8. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and pull the driveline out of combine output shaft (B) until the collar disengages.

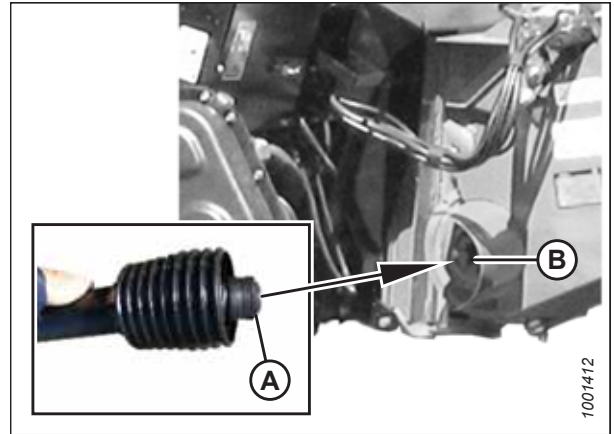


Figure 3.147: Driveline

9. Store the driveline on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (A) on the driveline and fitting it onto support bracket (B). Release the collar so it locks into place on the support bracket.
10. Attach safety chain (C) to support bracket (B).

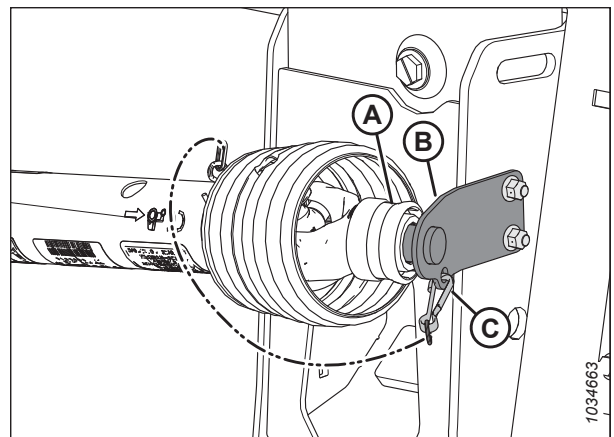


Figure 3.148: Driveline in Storage Position – Driveline MD #B7038 or MD #B7039

11. Pull pin (A) outward and rotate handle (B) clockwise until both feeder house pins (C) are fully retracted into float module brackets (D).

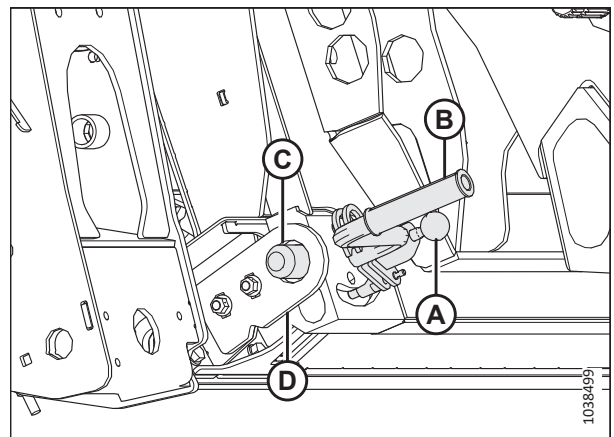


Figure 3.149: Feeder House Pin

OPERATION

12. Start the engine and lower feeder house (A) until it disengages float module support (B).
13. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.
14. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

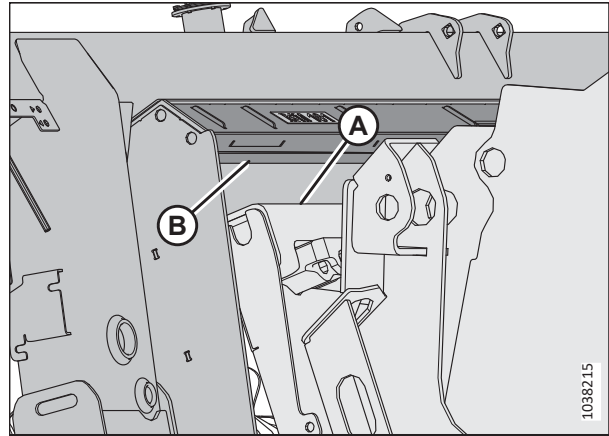


Figure 3.150: Combine and Float Module

3.6.8 Attaching Header to / Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module

To attach the float module to, or detach it from, the header, follow the relevant procedure. These procedures require that the float module remain attached to the combine.

NOTE:

If the header is equipped with transport wheels, the float module can be attached to and detached from the header while it is in either transport or field mode.

Detach the float module from the header only in the following cases:

- The header is needed for use on a windrower
- A different, float module-compatible header will be attached to the combine
- The header or float module need service or repair, and the service or repair procedures require that the float module be detached from the header

Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module

The FM200 Float Module attaches to the header, giving it the ability to closely follow ground contours. If necessary, the FM200 can be disconnected from the header.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

⚠ WARNING

Keep hands clear of the area between guards and knife at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

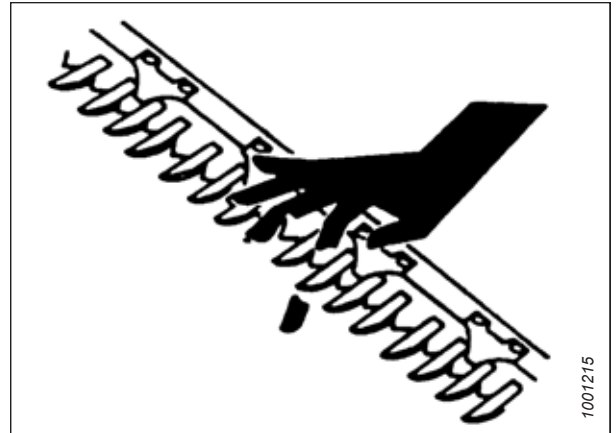


Figure 3.151: Cutterbar Hazard

1. Start the engine, and then lower header.
2. Increase clearance under the float module feed draper by tilting the header and fully extending cylinder (A) until indicator (B) is at position E.
3. Raise the reel to its full height.
4. Stop the engine, and then remove key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props.

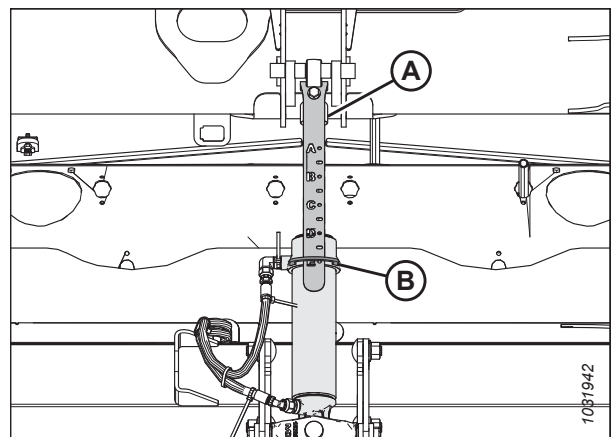


Figure 3.152: Center-Link

6. Move lever (A) to lock position to engage wing locks.

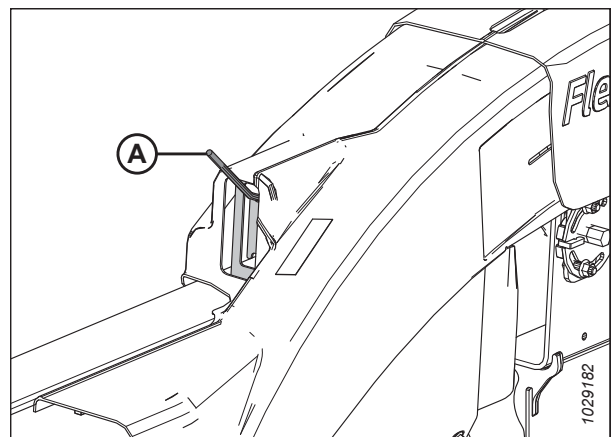


Figure 3.153: Wing Lock – Left Side Shown

OPERATION

7. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

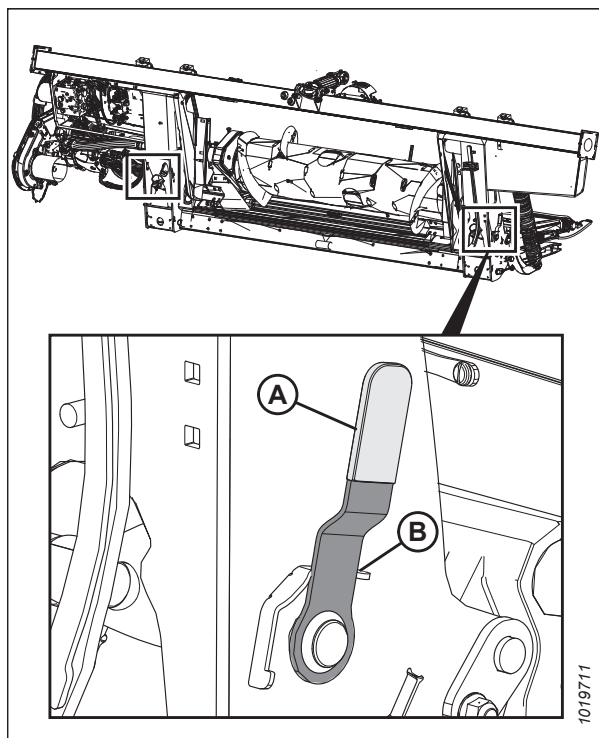


Figure 3.154: Float Lock

8. On the back of the float module frame, remove bolts (A) to release the tension on trim springs (B).
9. Unhook trim springs (B) from spring tensioners (C). Allow the springs to hang on balance channel (D).
10. Reinstall the springs tensioner's onto the float module. Secure with bolts (A).
11. Repeat on the opposite side.

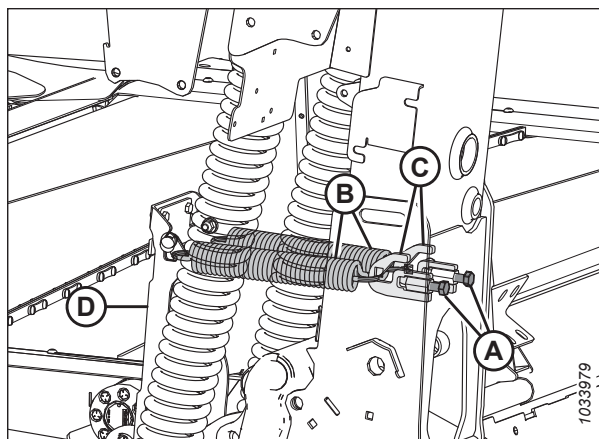


Figure 3.155: Trim Springs – Left side

OPERATION

12. Remove two bolts (A) and fillers (B) from transition pan support angle (C). Repeat on opposite side.

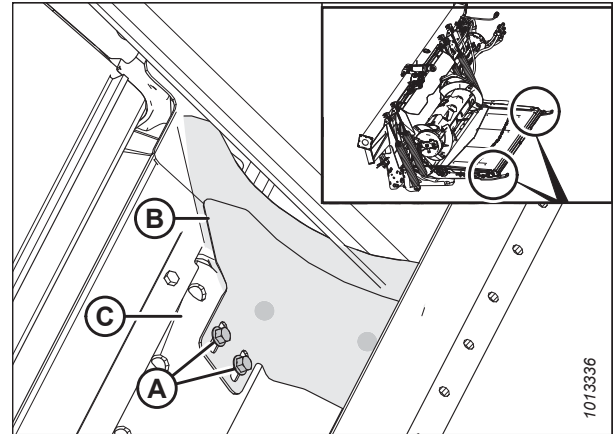


Figure 3.156: Fillers

13. Remove and retain screw (A).
14. Remove the M10 nut from bolt (B).
15. Use a 24 mm wrench on hex bolt (C) to rotate latch downwards and slightly raise the feed deck to remove bolt (B).
16. Rotate latch up and back to lower the float module deck and disengage the transition pan tube.
17. Install screw (A).
18. Repeat for the opposite side of the feed draper deck.

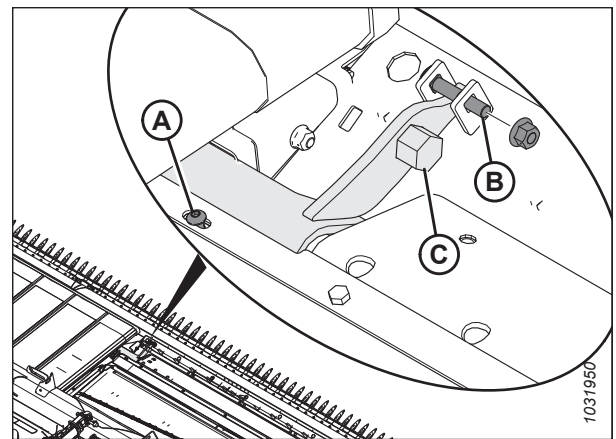


Figure 3.157: Float Module Latch

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

19. Disengage the reel safety props, start the engine, lower the reel, and fully raise the header.
20. Stop the engine, remove the key from the ignition, and engage the combine safety props.
21. Loosen nut and bolt (A), and disengage hook (B) from leg on both sides of float module.

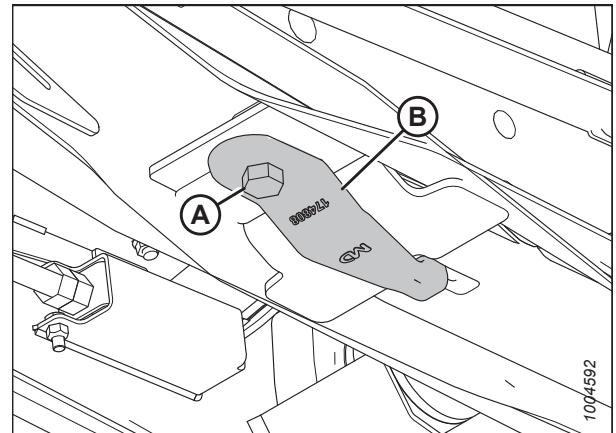


Figure 3.158: Float Module Underside

OPERATION

22. Rotate hook (B) 90° for storage, and retighten bolt (A) and nut.

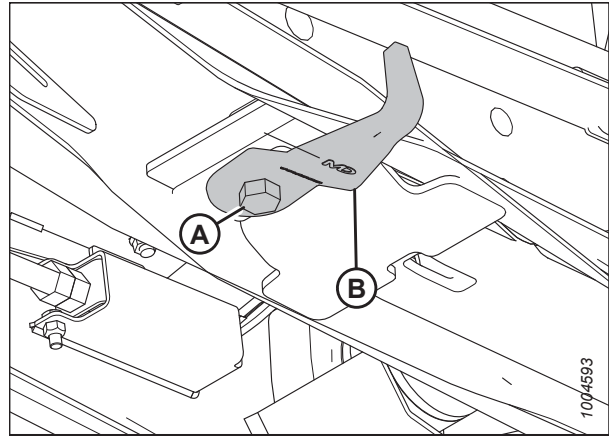


Figure 3.159: Float Module Underside

23. Place a 150 mm (6 in.) block (A) under the header leg. This will assist with disconnecting the center-link.
24. Disengage the combine lift cylinder locks, start the engine, and lower the header until the header leg rests on the block or stabilizer wheels are on the ground.

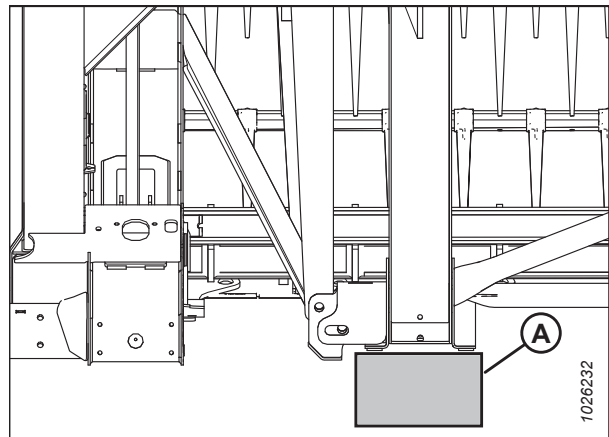


Figure 3.160: Header Leg on Block

25. Disconnect the hydraulic center-link as follows:

- a. Remove lynch pin (A) and pin (B).

NOTE:

Be careful when removing pin, there may or may not be washer(s) installed on both sides of the center-link.

- b. Lift center-link (C) clear of the bracket.
- c. Reinstall pin (B) on the bracket, and secure with lynch pin (A).

NOTE:

It may be necessary to raise or lower the feeder house to adjust the length of the center-link and relieve excess load on the center-link.

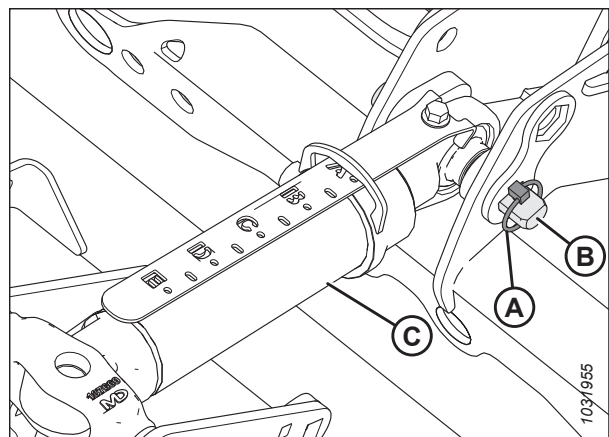


Figure 3.161: Hydraulic Center-Link

OPERATION

NOTE:

- If on the ground: Push reel fully forward to reduce oil loss.
- If on transport: Pull reel fully back.

26. Disconnect electrical connector (A).

NOTE:

If colored plastic ties are missing from any of the hoses, replace them before disconnecting the hoses.

27. Disconnect all of the hoses between the module and manifold (B). Immediately cap the hose ends to prevent oil loss.

NOTE:

Mark hose locations to assist with reattachment.

28. Store and secure hoses on float module frame.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

29. Start the engine.
30. Lower the float module to disengage it from the header.
31. Slowly back away in a straight line from header.
32. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

Attaching Header to FM200 Float Module

The FD2 Series headers can be attached to the float module from either field or transport configuration.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

The transport wheels can be used to support the header. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels](#), page 164.

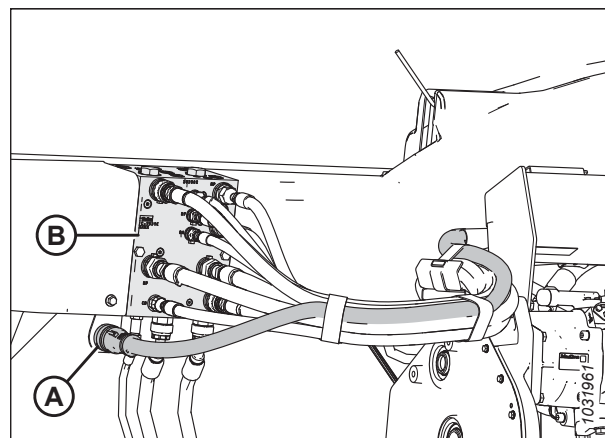


Figure 3.162: Header Connections

OPERATION

1. Prop up hydraulic center-link (A) with a pin (or equivalent tool) at location (B) as shown.

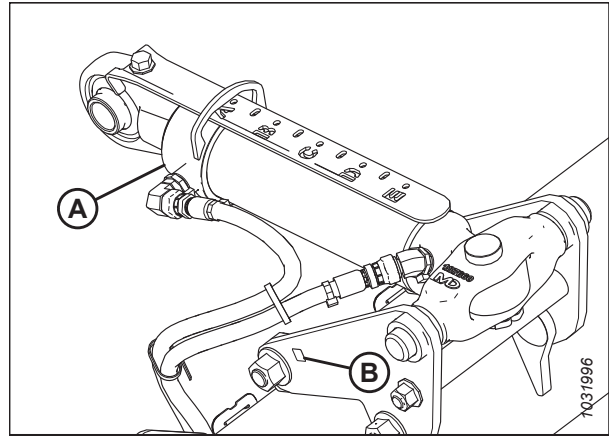


Figure 3.163: Center-Link

2. Ensure latches (A) at the front corners of the float module are rotated towards the rear of the float module.

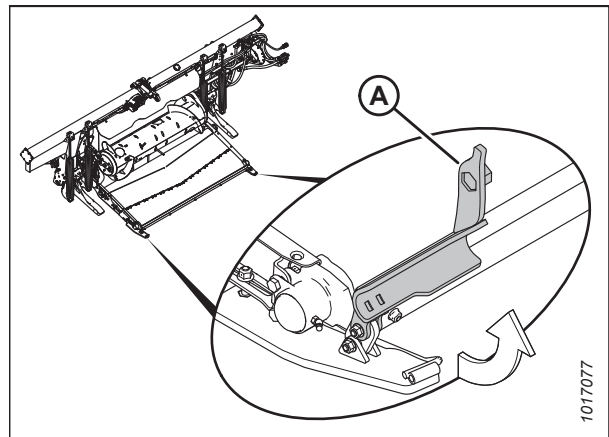


Figure 3.164: Latch

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start engine, and lower the combine feeder house so that float module arms (A) are aligned with header balance channels (B).
4. Drive slowly forward, maintaining alignment between float module arms (A) and header balance channels (B).
5. Keep float module arms (A) just under balance channels (B) to ensure float module legs seat properly in the header linkage supports at location (C).

IMPORTANT:

Keep hydraulic hoses clear to prevent damage when driving into header.

6. Continue forward until float module arms (A) contact stops in balance channels (B).

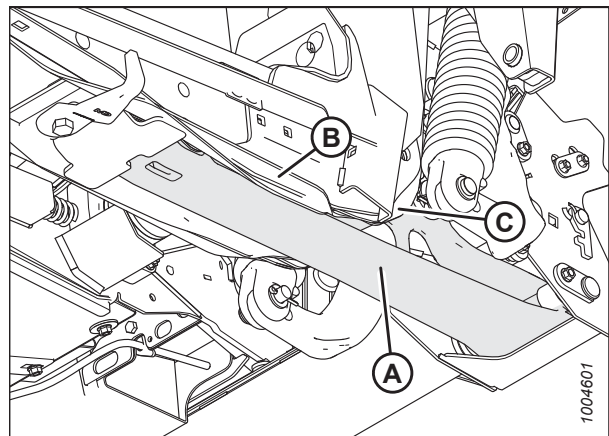


Figure 3.165: Float Module Underside

OPERATION

7. Adjust length of center-link (A) using the header angle hydraulics to approximately align center-link eye (B) with the hole in the header bracket.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
9. Remove lynch pin (C) and pull pin (D) partially out of the bracket.

NOTE:

Be careful when pulling out the pin, there may be some washers on the pin to remove excessive play from the center-link when installed.

10. Remove the item used to prop up center-link (A).
11. Align center-link eye with the hole in the bracket, place any washers (A) removed from Step 9, [page 111](#), onto each side of the center-link while reinserting pin.

NOTE:

There may be none, one, or two washers.

12. Secure pin (B) with lynch pin (C).



CAUTION

Always connect center-link before fully raising header.

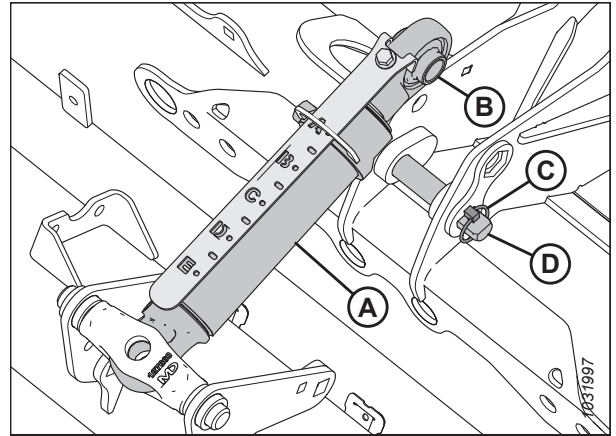


Figure 3.166: Center-Link

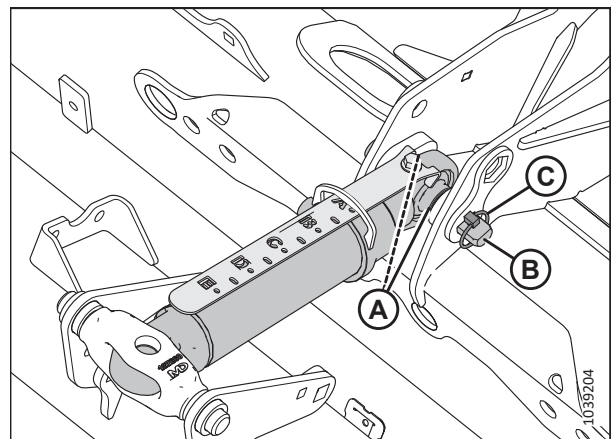


Figure 3.167: Center-Link



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

13. Start the engine.
14. Raise the float module while making sure the float module legs engage the header legs.
15. Raise the header fully.
16. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
17. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

OPERATION

18. Loosen nut and bolt (A), and reposition hook (B) as shown to engage float module arm. Tighten bolt and nut (A).

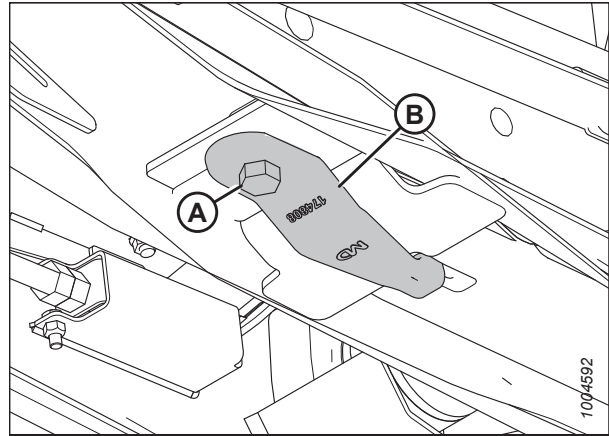


Figure 3.168: Float Module Underside

19. On the back of the float module frame, remove bolts (A), and spring tensioners (C).
20. Hook trim springs (B) that are hang on balance channel (D) to spring tensioners (C).
21. Reinstall the springs tensioners onto the float module. Tighten bolts (A) all the way.
22. Repeat on the opposite side.

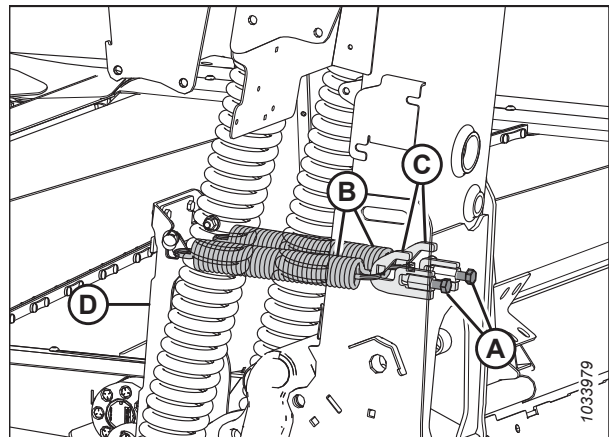


Figure 3.169: Trim Springs – Left side

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

23. Remove screw (A) and remove nut and bolt (B) from both sides of the opening to allow the attachment of the float module deck.
24. Rotate latch (C) forward and down to engage the transition pan tube.

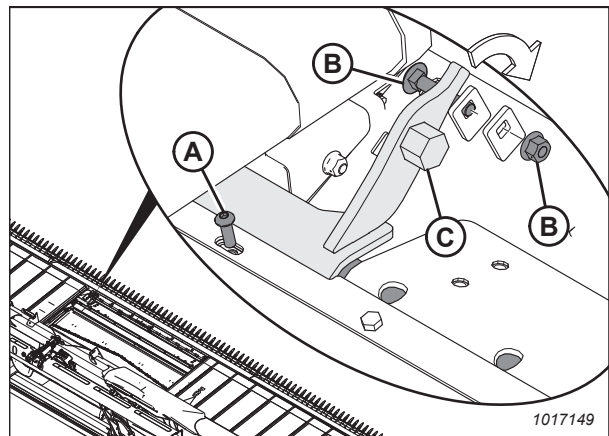


Figure 3.170: Float Module Latch

OPERATION

25. Use a 24 mm (15/16 in.) wrench on hex bolt (C) to rotate latch downwards and slightly raise the feed deck. Install nut and bolt (B) to lock the latch position.
26. Install screw (A).
27. Repeat for the opposite side of the feed draper deck.

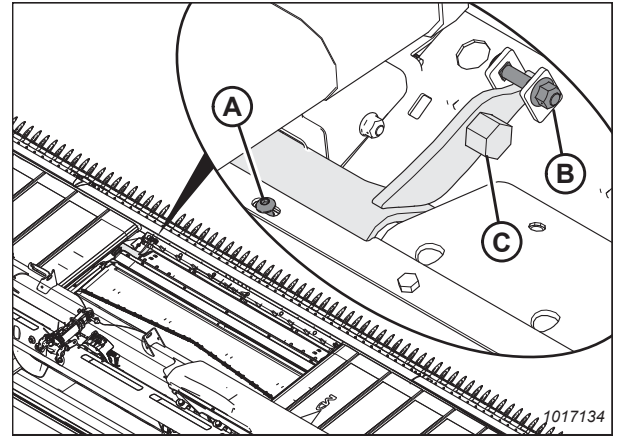


Figure 3.171: Float Module Latch

28. Install fillers (B) on transition pan support angle (C) using two bolts (A).

NOTE:

Ensure that there is no contact with the side draper slats.

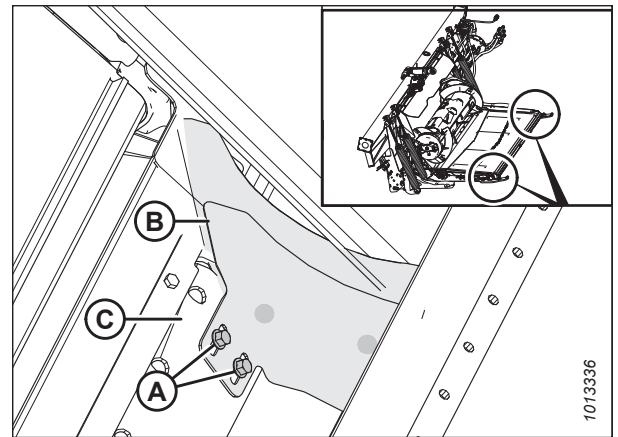


Figure 3.172: Fillers

29. Use a clean cloth to remove debris from couplers and receptacles.
30. Attach the following hydraulic hoses to manifold (B):
 - Knife pressure to port KP on manifold (orange cable tie)
 - Knife return to port KR on manifold (blue cable tie)
 - Draper pressure to port DP on manifold (green cable tie)
 - Draper return to port DR on manifold (red cable tie)
 - Case drain to port CD on manifold
31. Attach electrical connector C20C (A).

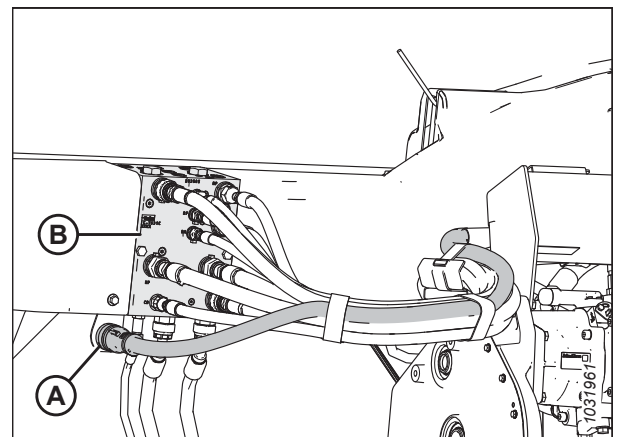


Figure 3.173: Header Connections

32. Check the float and confirm the header is level. For instructions, refer to the following:
 - [3.9.3 Header Float, page 175](#)
 - [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#)



CAUTION

Be sure all bystanders are clear of machine before starting engine or engaging any header drives.

OPERATION

33. Start the combine and perform the following inspections:
 - Raise and lower the reel to ensure the hoses are properly connected.
 - Run the header to ensure the hoses are properly connected.
34. Check for leaks.

3.7 Header Setup

For optimal performance, the header must be configured specifically for various harvesting conditions and crops.

3.7.1 Header Attachments

Optional attachments can improve performance in specific conditions or add features to the header. Optional attachments can be ordered and installed by your MacDon Dealer.

Refer to *5 Options and Attachments, page 697* for descriptions of available items.

3.7.2 Header Settings

The following tables provide a guideline for setting up the header for various harvesting conditions and crops.

For information on the reel settings, refer to *3.7.4 Reel Settings, page 127*.

For information on configuring the FM200 auger, refer to *3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132*.

NOTE:

Increase side draper speed for increased performance due to increased crop material or due to increased ground speed.

Table 3.4 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Cereals

Stubble Height	102 mm (<4 in.)						
Stabilizer Wheels⁴	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting⁵	Header Angle^{6, 7}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %⁸	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Off	8	B – C	3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended
Lodged	Off	7	B – C	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required
Stubble Height	102–203 mm (4–8 in.)						
Stabilizer Wheels	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Down for lodged crop conditions, middle or down for other crop conditions						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting⁵	Header Angle^{6, 7}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %⁸	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Off	8	B – C	4	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended
Lodged	Off	7	D	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required

4. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.
5. Setting on FM200 draper control.
6. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.
7. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.
8. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.4 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Cereals (continued)

Stubble Height	203 mm + (8 in. +)						
Stabilizer Wheels	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting⁵	Header Angle^{6, 7}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %⁸	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Off	8	A	4	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Off	7	B – C	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required

Table 3.5 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Lentils

Stubble Height	On ground						
Stabilizer Wheels ⁹	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting ¹⁰	Header Angle ^{11, 12}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % ¹³	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	On	8	B – C	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required

9. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

10. Setting on FM200 draper control.

11. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

12. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

13. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.6 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Peas

Stubble Height	On ground							
Stabilizer Wheels ¹⁴	Storage							
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting ¹⁵	Header Angle ^{16, 17}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % ¹⁸	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	On	7	B – C	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	4 or 5	Recommended	
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	4 or 5	Recommended	

14. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

15. Setting on FM200 draper control.

16. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

17. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

18. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.7 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Canola

Stubble Height	102–203 mm (4–8 in.)							
Stabilizer Wheels¹⁹	As required							
Skid Shoe Position	Down for light or heavy crop conditions, middle or down for normal or lodged crop conditions							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting²⁰	Header Angle^{21, 22}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %²³	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	On	7	A	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Normal	On	7	B – C	1	10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Heavy	On	8	B – C	1	10	3 or 4	Recommended	
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	3 or 4	Recommended	
Stubble Height	203 mm + (8 in. +)							
Stabilizer Wheels¹⁹	As required							
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting²⁰	Header Angle^{21, 22}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %²³	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	On	7	A	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Heavy	On	8	B – C	1 or 2	10	3 or 4	Recommended	
Lodged	On	7	D	2 or 3	5–10	3 or 4	Recommended	

19. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

20. Setting on FM200 draper control.

21. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

22. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

23. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.8 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for California Rice

Stubble Height	102 mm (<4 in.)						
Stabilizer Wheels²⁴	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods²⁵	Draper Speed Setting²⁶	Header Angle^{27, 28}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %²⁹	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	D	2	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	2	10	4 or 5	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	2	10	4 or 5	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	2	5–10	4 or 5	Not required
Stubble Height	102–203 mm (4–8 in.)						
Stabilizer Wheels²⁴	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Middle or down						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods²⁵	Draper Speed Setting²⁶	Header Angle^{27, 28}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %²⁹	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	D	3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	4	5–10	6 or 7	Not required

24. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

25. The rice divider rod is available. Rice divider rod not required on both ends of header.

26. Setting on FM200 draper control.

27. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

28. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

29. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.8 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for California Rice (continued)

Stubble Height	203 mm + (8 in. +)						
Stabilizer Wheels²⁴	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods²⁵	Draper Speed Setting²⁶	Header Angle^{27, 28}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %²⁹	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	A	3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B – C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	4	5–10	6 or 7	Not required

Table 3.9 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Delta Rice

Stubble Height	51–152 mm (2–6 in.)						
Stabilizer Wheels³⁰	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Middle or down						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting³¹	Header Angle^{32, 33}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %³⁴	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Off	6	D	2 or 3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Off	6	B – C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Off	6	B – C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Off	6	D	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required
Stubble Height	152 mm + (6 in. +)						
Stabilizer Wheels³⁰	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting³¹	Header Angle^{32, 33}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %³⁴	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Off	6	A	2 or 3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Off	6	B – C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Off	6	B – C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Off	6	D	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required

30. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

31. Setting on FM200 draper control.

32. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

33. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

34. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.10 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Edible Beans

Stubble Height	On ground						
Stabilizer Wheels ³⁵	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting ³⁶	Header Angle ^{37, 38}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % ³⁹	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	On	8	D	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required

35. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

36. Setting on FM200 draper control.

37. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

38. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

39. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.11 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Flax

Stubble Height	51–153 mm (2–6 in.)							
Stabilizer Wheels⁴⁰	As required							
Skid Shoe Position	Down for lodged crop conditions, middle or down for other crop conditions							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting⁴¹	Header Angle^{42, 43}	Reel Cam	Reel Speed %⁴⁴	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	On	8	B – C	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required	
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required	
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required	
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required	

40. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

41. Setting on FM200 draper control.

42. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

43. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

44. Percentage above ground speed.

3.7.3 Optimizing Header for Straight-Combining Canola

Ripe canola can be straight-combined, but most varieties are susceptible to pod shatter and subsequent seed loss. This section provides information on the recommended attachments, settings, and adjustments to optimize FD2 Series FlexDraper® Headers for straight-combining canola to reduce seed loss.

Recommended attachments

To optimize the header for straight-combining canola, make the following modifications:

- Install a full-length upper cross auger
- Install vertical knives

NOTE:

Each kit includes installation instructions and the necessary hardware. For more information, refer to [5 Options and Attachments, page 697](#).

Recommended settings

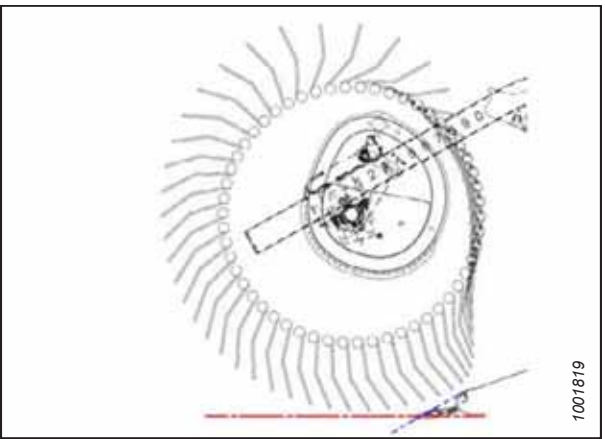
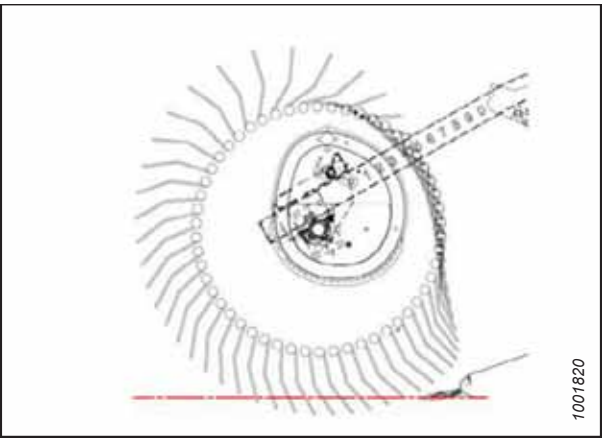
To optimize the header for straight-combining canola, make the following adjustments:

- Relieve the tension on the auger spring. For instructions, refer to [3.8.5 Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs, page 161](#).
- Set the reel speed so that it is equal to the combine's ground speed. Increase the speed as needed. For instructions, refer to [3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206](#).
- Set the side draper speed to position six on in-cab side draper speed control. For instructions, refer to [3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208](#).
- Adjust the reel height so that fingers just engage the crop. For instructions, refer to [3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212](#).
- Adjust the reel fore-aft position. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 218](#).
- Move the reel fore-aft cylinders to the alternative aft location. For instructions, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel, page 221](#) or [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel, page 225](#).
- Set the reel cam to position 1. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Cam, page 232](#).
- Set auger to floating position. For instructions, refer to [3.8.4 Setting Auger Position, page 159](#).

3.7.4 Reel Settings

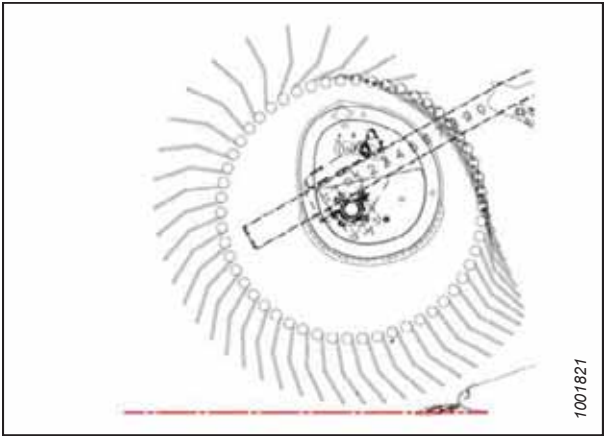
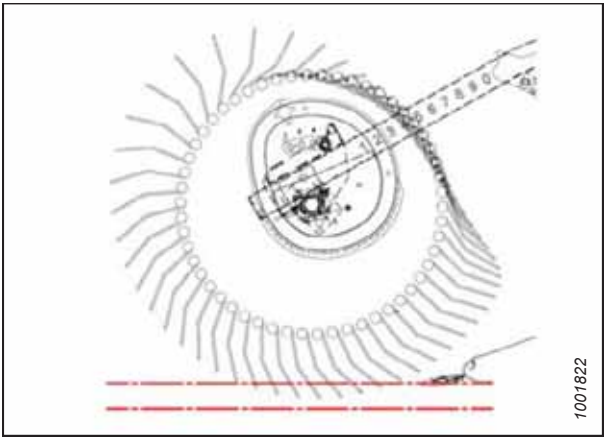
Refer to this procedure to learn how various combinations of reel position and cam setting affect the reel finger profile.

Table 3.12 FD2 Series Recommended Reel Settings

Cam Setting Number (Finger Speed Gain)	Reel Position Number	Reel Finger Pattern
1 (0%)	6 or 7	
2 (20%)	6 or 7	

OPERATION

Table 3.12 FD2 Series Recommended Reel Settings (continued)

Cam Setting Number (Finger Speed Gain)	Reel Position Number	Reel Finger Pattern
3 (30%)	3 or 4	
4 (35%)	2 or 3	

NOTE:

- Adjust the reel forward to get closer to the ground while tilting the header back. Fingers/tines will dig into the ground at extreme reel-forward positions, so adjust the skid shoes or header angle to compensate. Adjust the reel rearward to position the reel farther away from the ground when tilting the header forward.
- Header tilt can be increased to position the reel closer to the ground, or decreased to position the reel farther from the ground, while keeping material flowing onto drapers.
- To leave the maximum amount of stubble in lodged crop, raise the header and increase the header tilt to keep the reel close to the ground. Position the reel fully forward.
- The reel may have to be moved back to prevent lumps or plugging on the cutterbar in thinner crops.
- Minimum crop carrying capacity (the minimum area of exposed draper between the reel and the header backsheet) occurs with the reel in the farthest aft position.
- Maximum crop carrying capacity (the maximum area of exposed draper between the reel and the header backsheet) occurs with the reel in the farthest forward position.
- Due to the nature of the cam action, the tip speed of the fingers/tines at the cutterbar becomes higher than that of the reel speed at higher cam settings. For more information, refer to [Table 3.12, page 127](#).

3.7.5 Floating Crop Divider Settings – Optional

Floating crop dividers can be adjusted for different crop conditions.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

For instructions on how to make adjustments to the floating crop divider, refer to [Adjusting Floating Crop Dividers, page 244](#). For settings, refer to the applicable stubble height table below.

Table 3.13 Stubble Height 50 mm to 125 mm (2 in. to 5 in.)

	Header Angle ⁴⁵	Stubble Height	Header Main Shoes	DownStop	Fore Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Whisker
Normal	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	1	1	C	In
	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	3	1	C	In
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	1	1.5	C	In
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	3	1.5	C	In
Lodged	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	3	1	C	Out
	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	4	1	C	Out
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	3	2	D	Out
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	4	2	D	Out
Severely Lodged	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	4	3	D	Out
	A	125 mm 5 inch	Down	2	5	4	D	Out
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	4	3	C	Out
	E	50 mm 2 inch	Down	1	5	4	C	Out

Table 3.14 Stubble Height 20 mm to 100 mm (3/4 in. to 4 in.)

	Header Angle ⁴⁵	Stubble Height	Header Main Shoes	DownStop	Fore Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Whisker
Normal	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2	1	1	C	In
	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2	3	1	C	In
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	1	1	C	In

45. A (min) – E (max)

OPERATION

Table 3.14 Stubble Height 20 mm to 100 mm (3/4 in. to 4 in.) (continued)

	Header Angle ⁴⁵	Stubble Height	Header Main Shoes	DownStop	Fore Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Whisker
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	3	1	C	In
Lodged	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2	3	1	C	Out
	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2	4	2	C	Out
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	3	1	D	Out
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	4	2	D	Out
Severely Lodged	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2-3	4	3	D	Out
	A	100 mm 4 inch	MID	2-3	5	4	D	Out
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	4	3	C	Out
	E	20 mm 3/4 inch	MID	1	5	4	C	Out

Table 3.15 Stubble Height 16 mm to 50 mm (5/8 in. to 2 in.) Cutterbar on Ground

	Header Angle ⁴⁵	Stubble Height	Header Main Shoes	DownStop	Fore Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Whisker
Normal	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	2	1-3	1	C	In
	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	2	1-3	1	C	In
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	1	2	C	In
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	3	1	C	In
Lodged	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	2	3	1	C	Out
	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	3	4	1	C	Out
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	3-4	2	D	Out
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	3-4	2	D	Out
Severely Lodged	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	2-3	4	3	D	Out
	A	50 mm 2 inch	Up	2-3	5	4	D	Out

OPERATION

Table 3.15 Stubble Height 16 mm to 50 mm (5/8 in. to 2 in.) Cutterbar on Ground (continued)

	Header Angle⁴⁵	Stubble Height	Header Main Shoes	DownStop	Fore Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Whisker
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	4	2.5	C	Out
	E	16 mm 5/8 inch	Up	1	5	4	C	Out

3.8 Float Module Setup

The following sections outline the recommended float module setup guidelines for your specific combine model and crop type; however, the recommendations cannot cover all conditions.

If feeding problems develop with the float module, refer to [6 Troubleshooting, page 715](#).

3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations

The FM200 feed auger can be configured to suit various crop conditions; there are five configurations available.

Ultra Narrow configuration: Ultra Narrow configuration uses 8 long bolt-on flightings (4 on the left and 4 on the right) and 18 auger fingers. This optional configuration may improve feeding performance on combines with narrow feeder houses. It may also be helpful when harvesting rice.

NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

NOTE:

You will need to drill holes in the flighting and in the drum to install the extra flighting.

For more information on converting to Ultra Narrow configuration, refer to [Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 134](#).

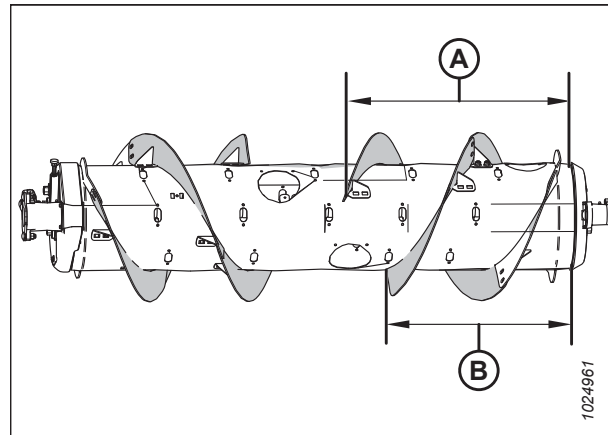


Figure 3.174: Ultra Narrow Configuration – Rear View

A - 760 mm (29 15/16 in.)

B - 602 mm (23 11/16 in.)

Narrow configuration: The narrow configuration uses 4 long bolt-on flightings (2 on the left and 2 on the right) and 18 feed auger fingers.

NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

Narrow configuration is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- IDEAL™ 7/8/9/10
- Gleaner R6/75, R6/76, S6/77, S6/7/88, S96/7/8
- New Holland CR 920/940/960, 9020/40/60/65, 6090/7090, 8060/8070/8080

Narrow configuration is an optional configuration for the following combines:

- Case 2166/88, 2344/66/77/88, 2577/88, 5/6/7088, 5/6/7130, 5/6/7140, 5/6/7150

For more information on converting to Narrow configuration, refer to [Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 138](#).

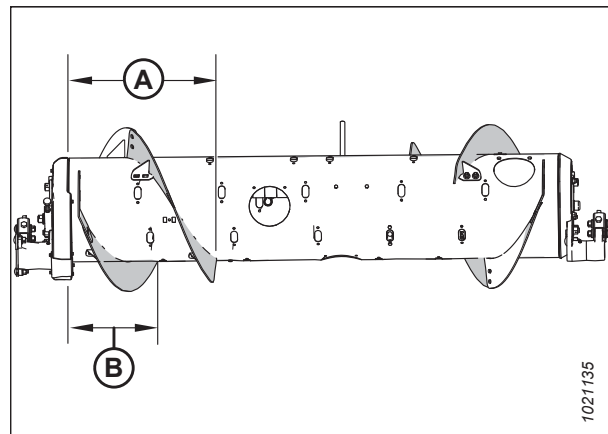


Figure 3.175: Narrow Configuration – Rear View

A - 514 mm (20 1/4 in.)

B - 356 mm (14 in.)

OPERATION

Medium configuration: The medium configuration uses 4 short bolt-on flightings (2 on the left and 2 on the right) and 22 feed auger fingers.

NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

Medium configuration is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- Case IH 2166/88, 2344/66/77/88, 2577/88, 5/6/7088, 5/6/7130, 5/6/7140, 5/6/7150, 7/8/9230, 7/8/9240, 7/8/9250
- Challenger® 66/67/680B, 54/560C, 54/560E
- CLAAS 56/57/58/590R, 57/58/595R, 62/63/64/65/66/670, 73/74/75/76/77/780, 5X00, 6X00, 7X00, 8X00
- Fendt 9490x, 6335C
- Gleaner A66/76/86
- John Deere 95/96/97/9860, 95/96/97/9870, S65/66/67/68/690, T670
- Massey Ferguson® 92/9380, 96/97/9895, 9520/40/60, 9500, 9545/65
- New Holland CR 970/980, 9070/9080, 8090/9090, X.90, X.80
- New Holland CX 8X0, 80X0, 8.X0
- Rostselmash 161, T500, TORUM 7X0, TORUM 785

For more information on converting to Medium configuration, refer to [Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 141](#).

Wide configuration: The wide configuration uses 2 short bolt-on flightings (1 on the left and 1 on the right) and 30 feed auger fingers.

NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

Wide configuration is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- John Deere X9 1000, 1100

Wide configuration is an optional configuration for the following combines:

- Challenger® 670B/680B, 540C/560C, 540E/560E
- CLAAS 590R/595R, 660/670, 760/770/780, 5X00, 6X00, 7X00, 8X00
- Massey Ferguson® 9895, 9540, 9560, 9545, 9565, 9380
- New Holland CX 8X0, 80X0, 8.X0

NOTE:

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.

For more information on converting to Wide configuration, refer to [Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 143](#).

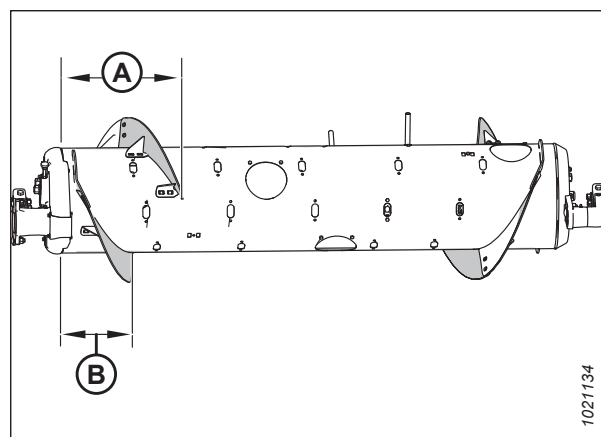


Figure 3.176: Medium Configuration – Rear View

A - 410 mm (16 1/8 in.)

B - 260 mm (10 1/4 in.)

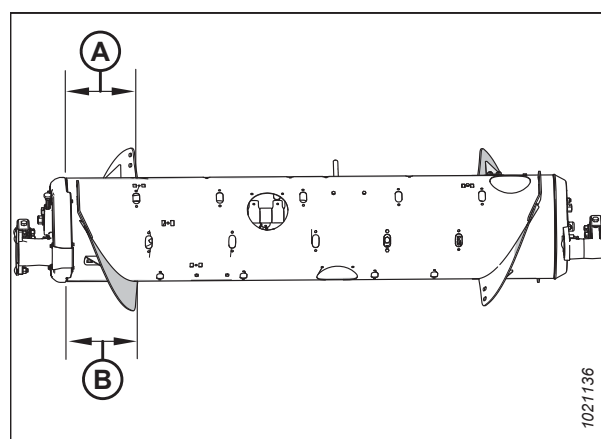


Figure 3.177: Wide Configuration – Rear View

A - 257 mm (10 1/8 in.)

B - 257 mm (10 1/8 in.)

OPERATION

Ultra Wide configuration: The Ultra Wide configuration uses only factory-welded flighting (A) is responsible for conveying the crop. No bolt-on flighting is installed and a total of 30 auger fingers are recommended for this configuration.

Ultra Wide configuration is an optional configuration for wide feeder house combines.

NOTE:

This configuration may improve feeding for wide feeder house combines.

For more information on converting to Ultra Wide configuration, refer to [Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting](#), page 146.

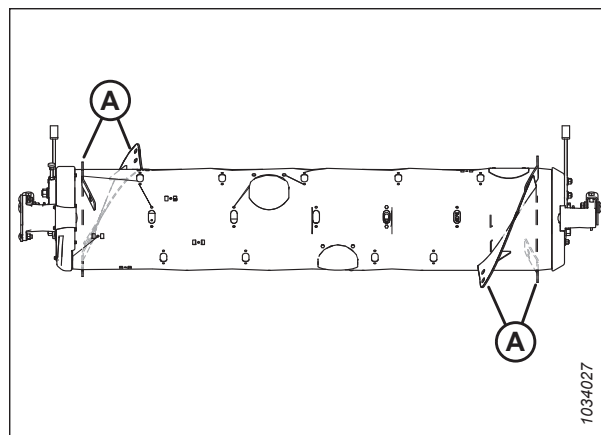


Figure 3.178: Ultra Wide Configuration – Rear View

Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting

Ultra Narrow configuration uses eight long bolt-on flightings (four on the left and four on the right), and 18 auger fingers are recommended.

NOTE:

You will need to drill holes in the flighting and in the drum to install the four additional flightings.

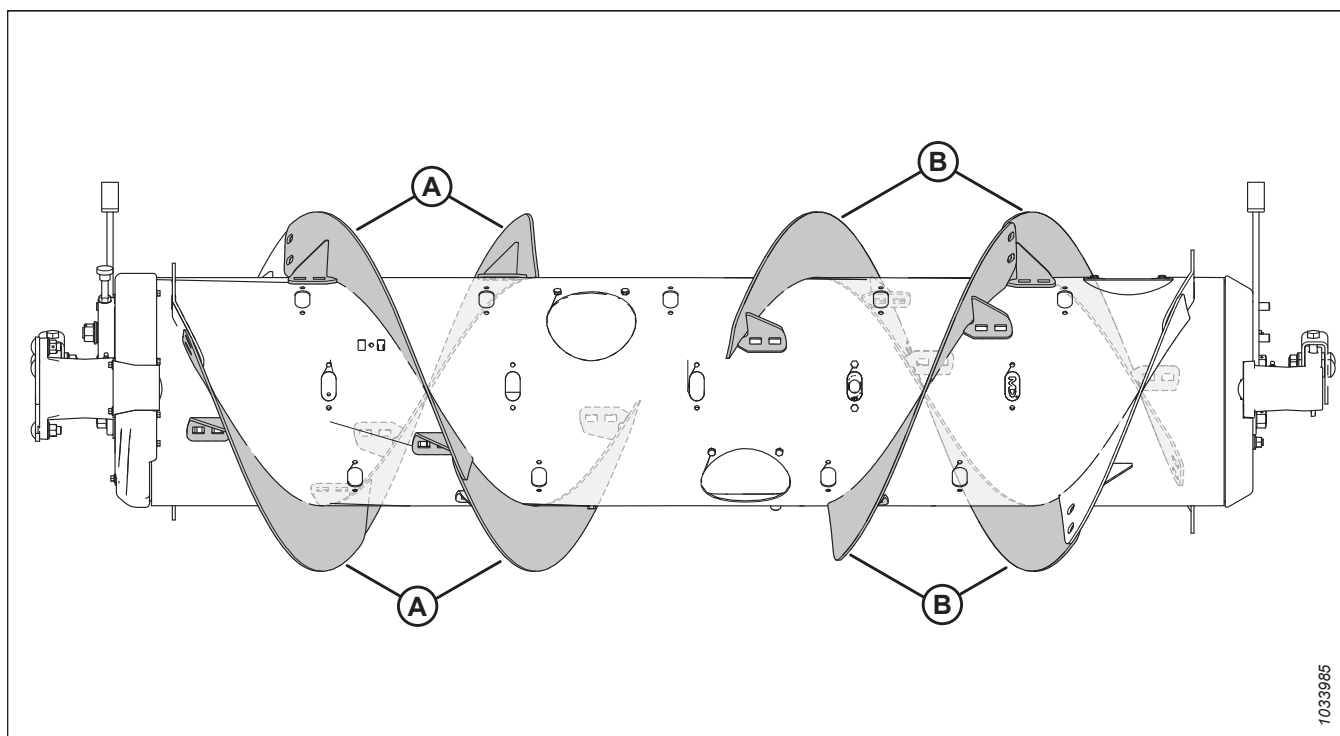


Figure 3.179: Ultra Narrow Configuration

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

To convert to Ultra Narrow configuration from Narrow Configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #357234 or MD #B7345⁴⁶) and some hole-drilling are required to install flightings (A). Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions.

IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware at the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- To install the additional flightings that require hole drilling, refer to [Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only, page 153](#).
- For finger installation/removal instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#) and [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

To convert to Ultra Narrow configuration from Medium, Wide, or Ultra Wide configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #357234 or MD #B7345⁴⁶) and some hole-drilling is required to convert to this configuration.

You will need to replace existing short flightings (A)⁴⁷ with long flightings (B). Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions.

IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#) and [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- To install the additional flightings that require hole drilling, refer to [Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only, page 153](#).
- For finger installation/removal instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#) and [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

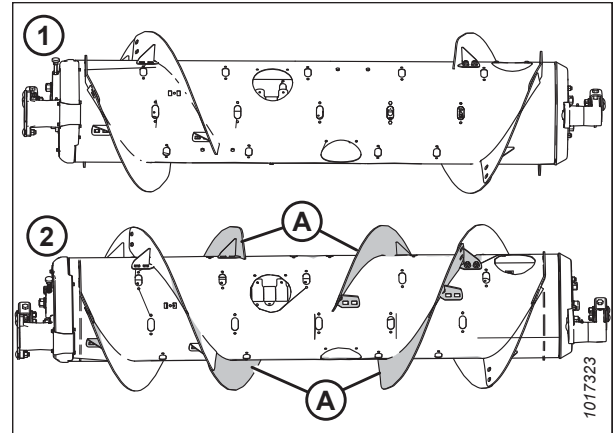


Figure 3.180: Auger Configurations – Rear View
1 - Narrow Configuration 2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

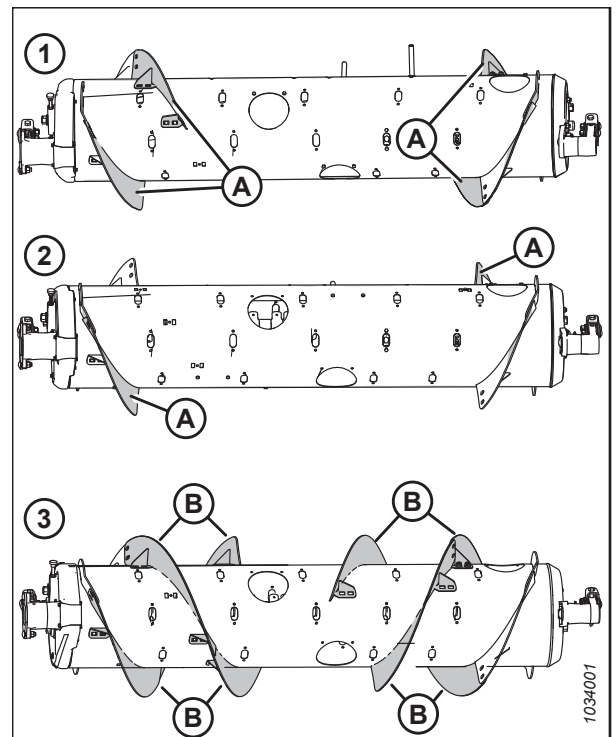


Figure 3.181: Auger Configurations – Rear View
1 - Medium Configuration 2 - Wide Configuration
3 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

46. MD #357234 is available only through MacDon Parts. MD #B7345 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

47. The quantity of existing short flightings is either 0, 2, or 4, depending on the current configuration.

OPERATION

NOTE:

If converting from Ultra Wide configuration, there is no existing bolt-on fighting to remove because that configuration uses only the factory-welded fighting (A).

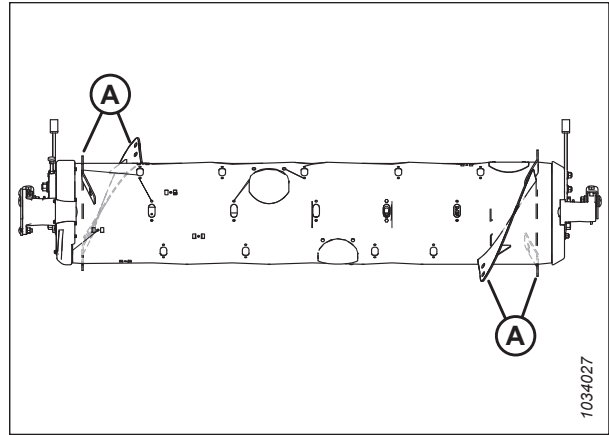


Figure 3.182: Ultra Wide Configuration

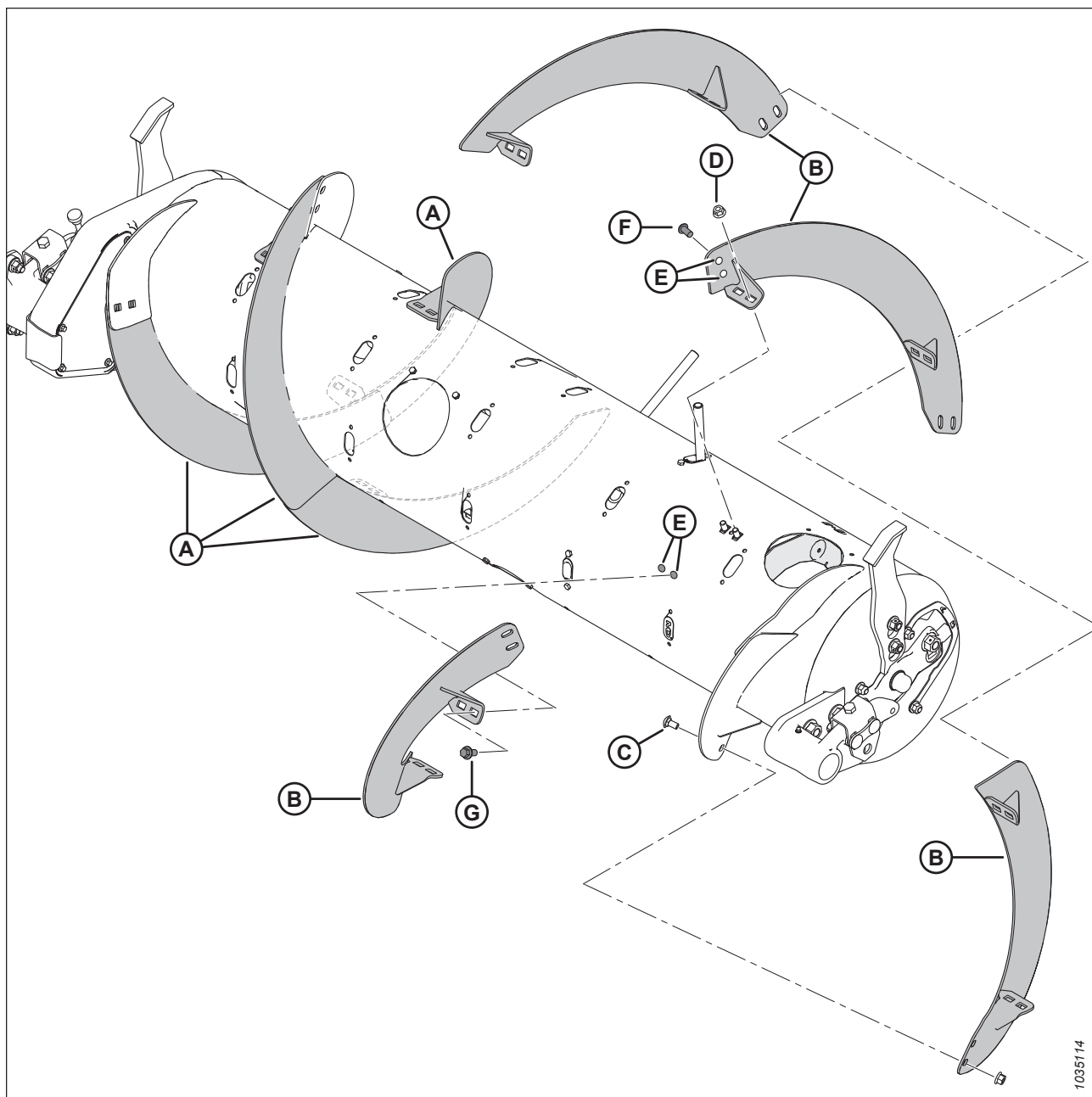


Figure 3.183: Ultra Narrow Configuration

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

G - M10 x 20 mm Flange Head Bolt (MD #152655)⁵⁰

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

E - Drilled Holes – 11 mm (7/16 in.)⁴⁸

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

F - M10 x 20 mm Button Head Bolt (MD #135723)⁴⁹

48. Each of the four additional flightings require six drilled holes to install (four in the auger and two in the adjacent flighting).

49. Used on the holes drilled in the existing flighting.

50. Used on the holes drilled in the auger.

OPERATION

Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting

Narrow configuration uses four long bolt-on flightings (two on the left and two on the right), and 18 auger fingers.

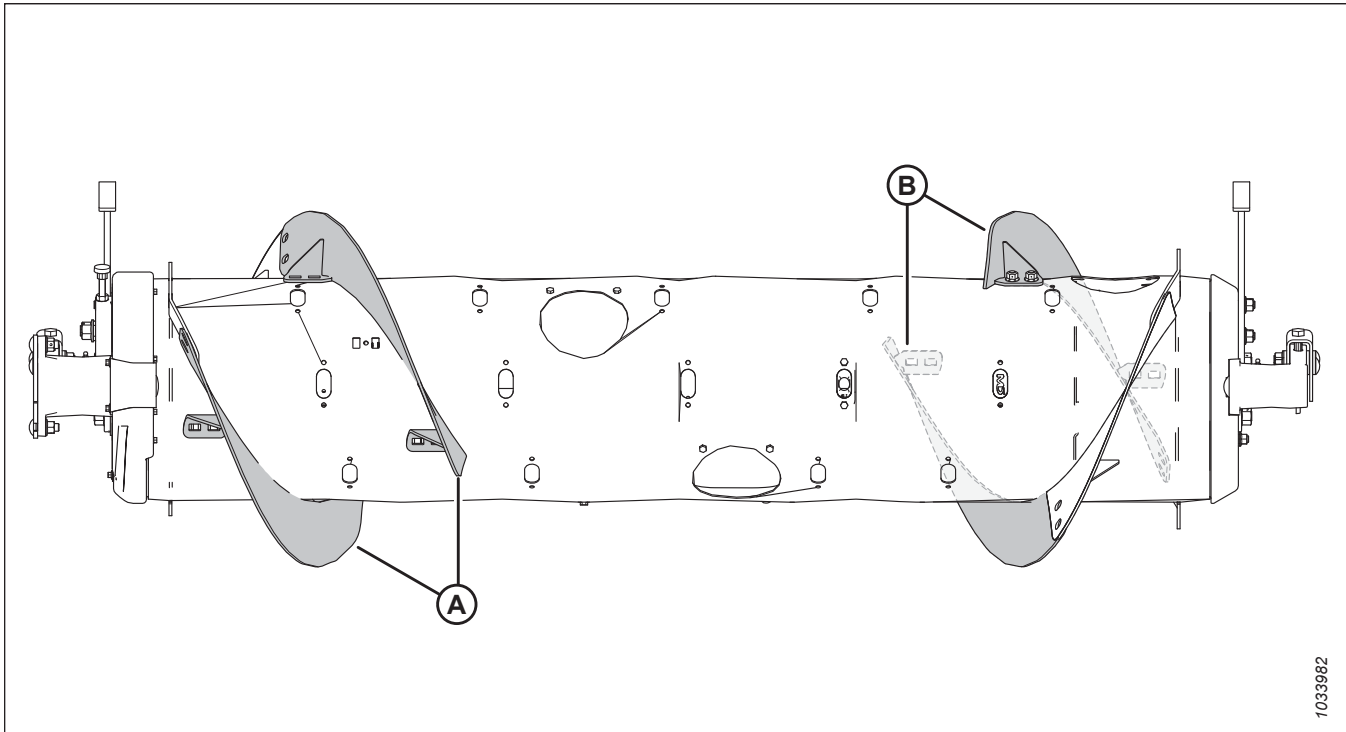


Figure 3.184: Narrow Configuration

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

To convert to Narrow configuration from Ultra Narrow Configuration:

Remove four flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers. A total of 18 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).

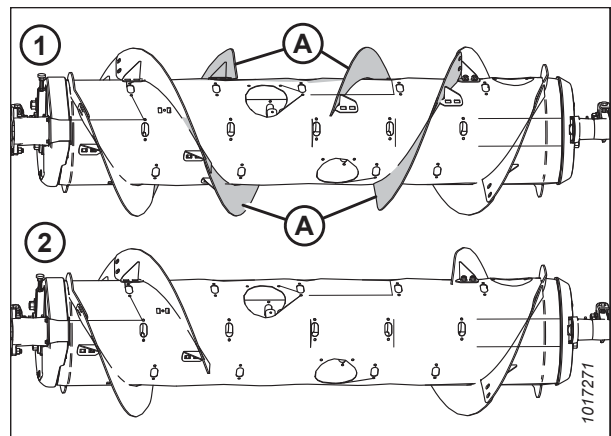


Figure 3.185: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

2 - Narrow Configuration

OPERATION

To convert to Narrow configuration from Medium, Wide, or Ultra Wide configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #357234 or MD #B7345⁵¹) is required. You will need to replace any of the existing short flightings (A)⁵² with long flightings (B) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 18 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#) and [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

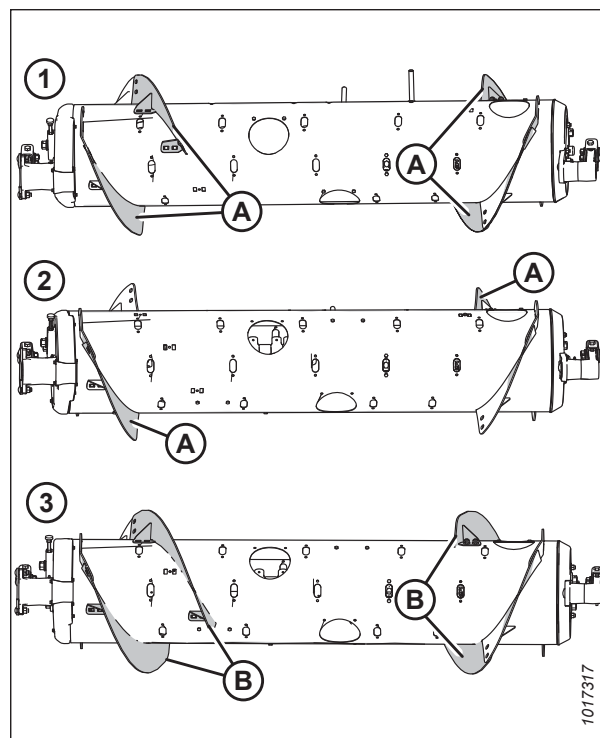


Figure 3.186: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Medium Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

3 - Narrow Configuration

NOTE:

If converting from Ultra Wide configuration, there is no existing bolt-on flighting to remove because that configuration uses only the factory-welded flighting (A).

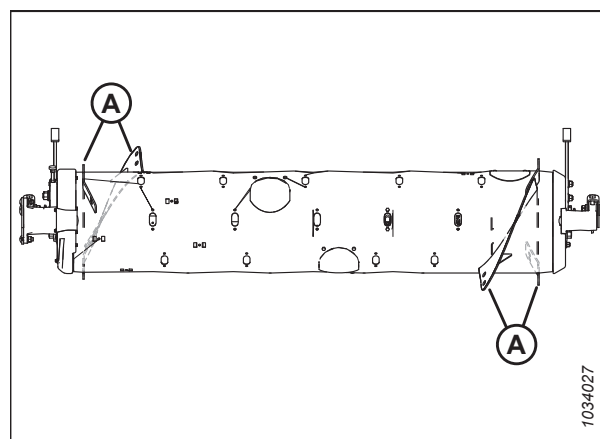


Figure 3.187: Ultra Wide Configuration

51. MD #357234 is available only through MacDon Parts. MD #B7345 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

52. The quantity of existing short flightings is either 0, 2, or 4, depending on the current configuration.

OPERATION

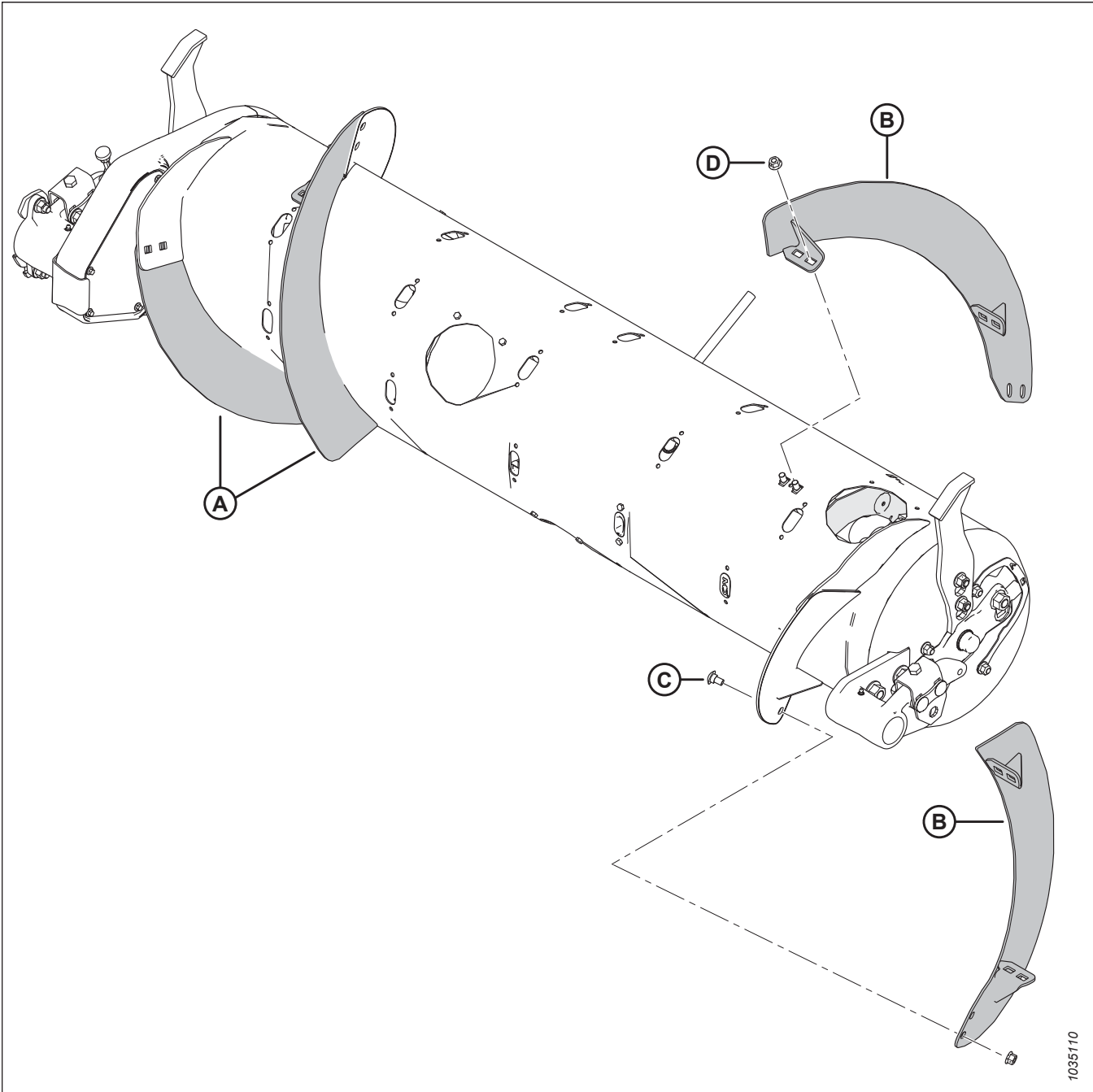


Figure 3.188: Narrow Configuration

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting

Medium configuration uses four short bolt-on flightings (two on the left and two on the right), and 22 auger fingers are recommended.

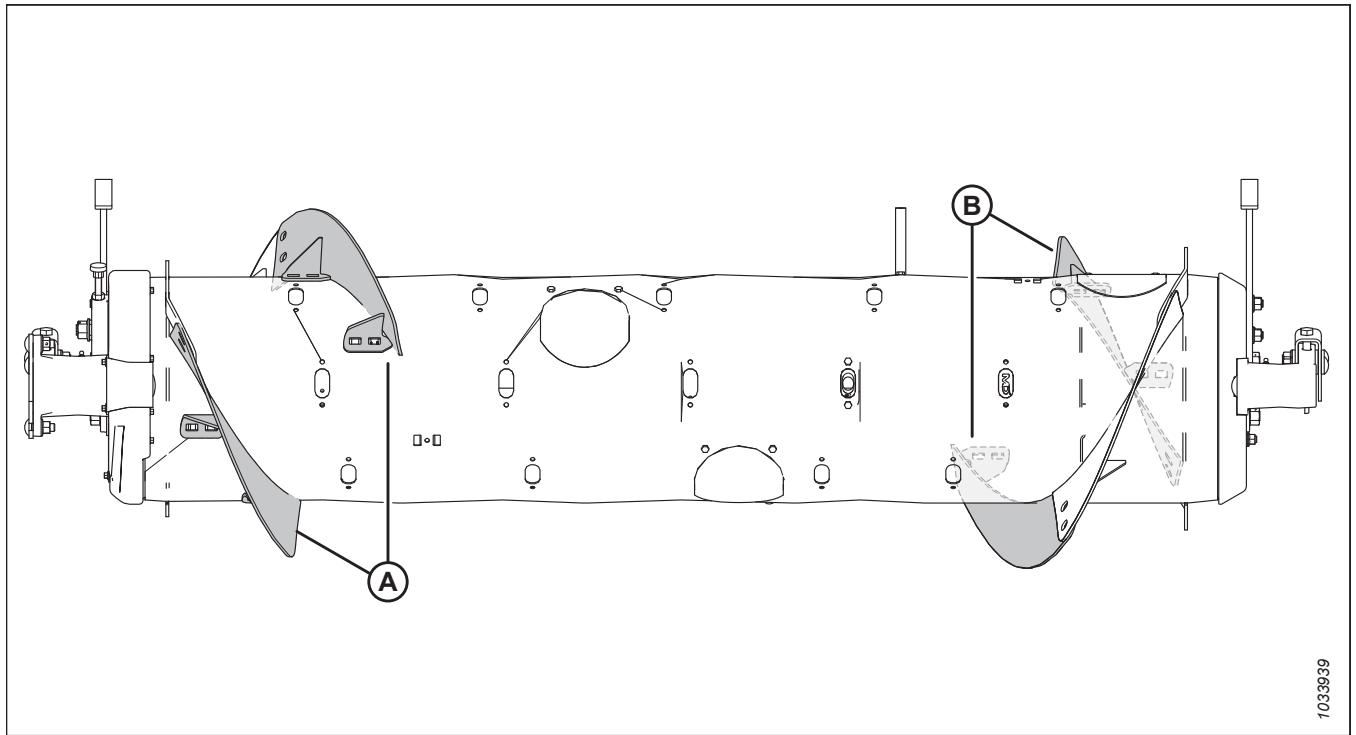


Figure 3.189: Medium Configuration

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

To convert to Medium configuration from Wide configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #357233 or MD #B7344⁵³) is required. You will need to install new flightings (A) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

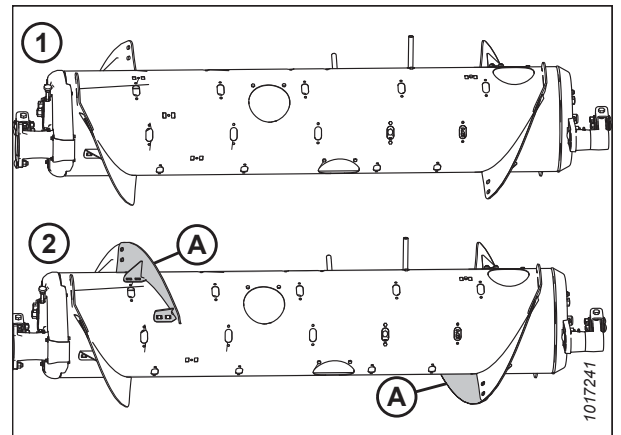


Figure 3.190: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Wide Configuration

2 - Medium Configuration

53. MD #357233 is available only through MacDon Parts. MD #B7344 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

OPERATION

To convert to Medium configuration from Narrow or Ultra Narrow configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #357233 or MD #B7344⁵³) are required. You will need to replace long flightings (A)⁵⁴ with short flightings (B) and install additional auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#) and [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).

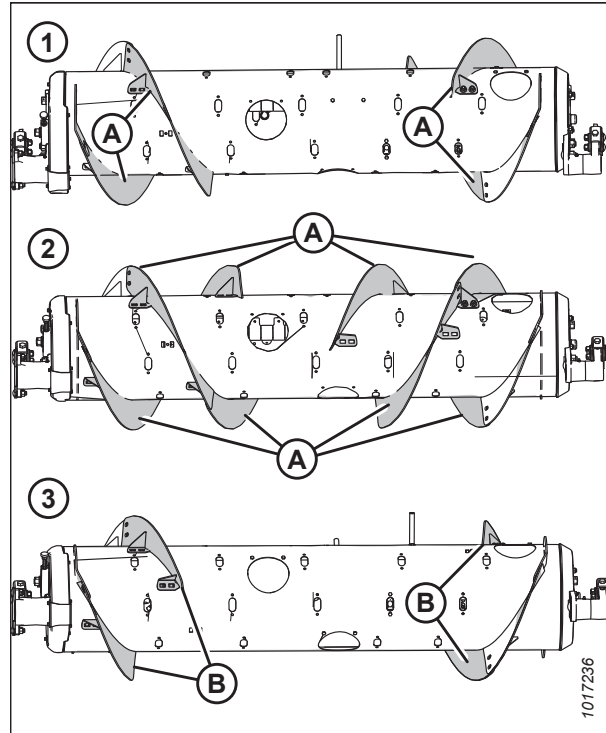


Figure 3.191: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Narrow Configuration
3 - Medium Configuration

2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

To convert to Medium configuration from Ultra Wide configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #357233 or MD #B7344⁵³) are required. You will need to install four short flightings onto the existing welded flightings (A) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

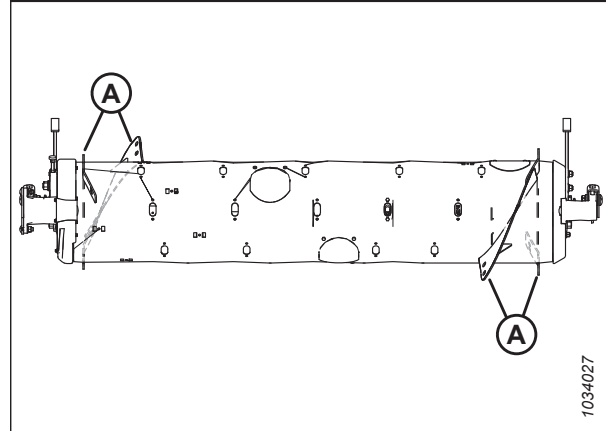


Figure 3.192: Ultra Wide Configuration

54. The quantity of existing long flightings is either 4 or 8, depending on the current configuration.

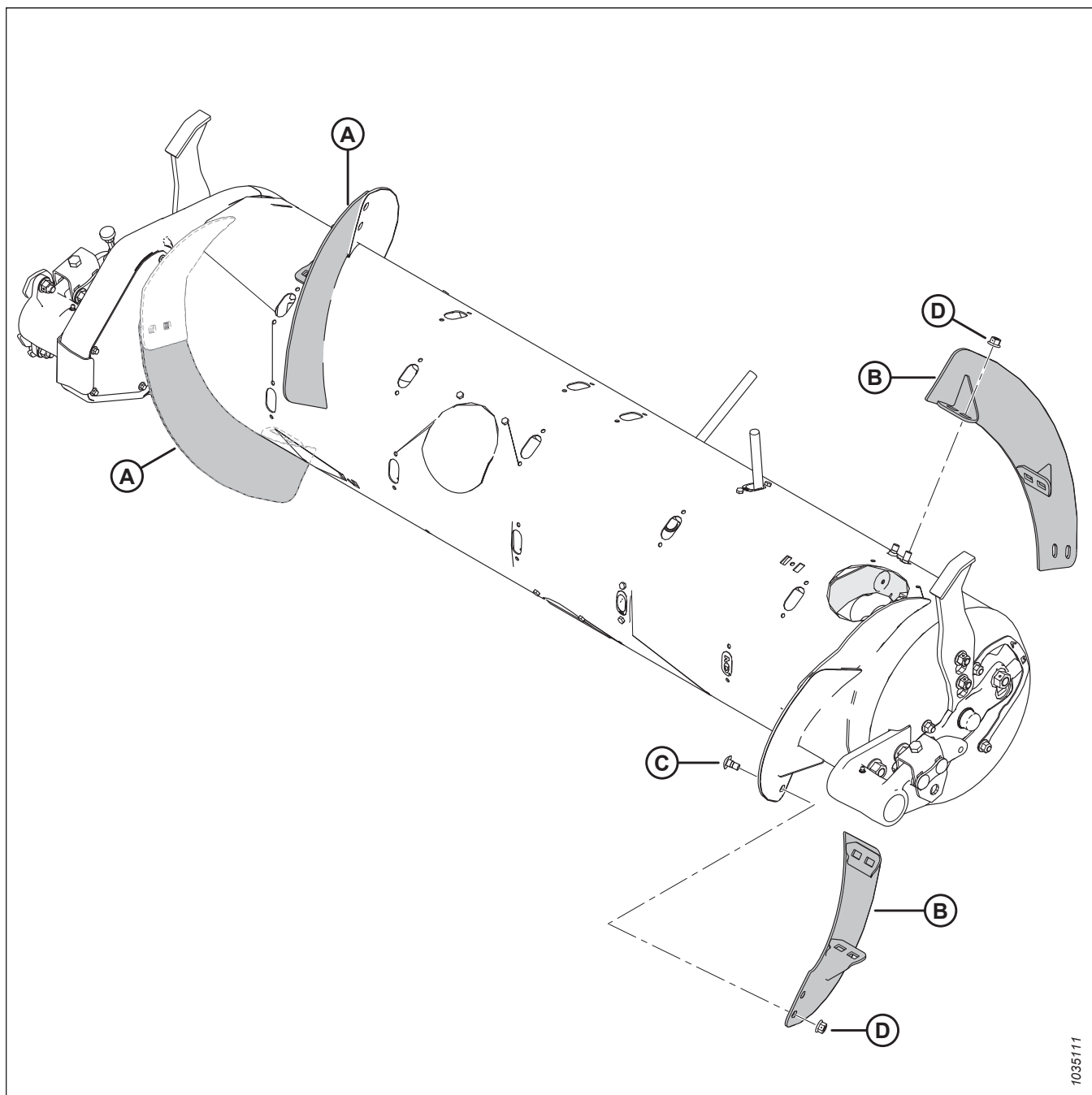


Figure 3.193: Medium Configuration

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting

Wide configuration uses two short bolt-on flightings (one on the left and one on the right), and 30 auger fingers are recommended.

NOTE:

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.

OPERATION

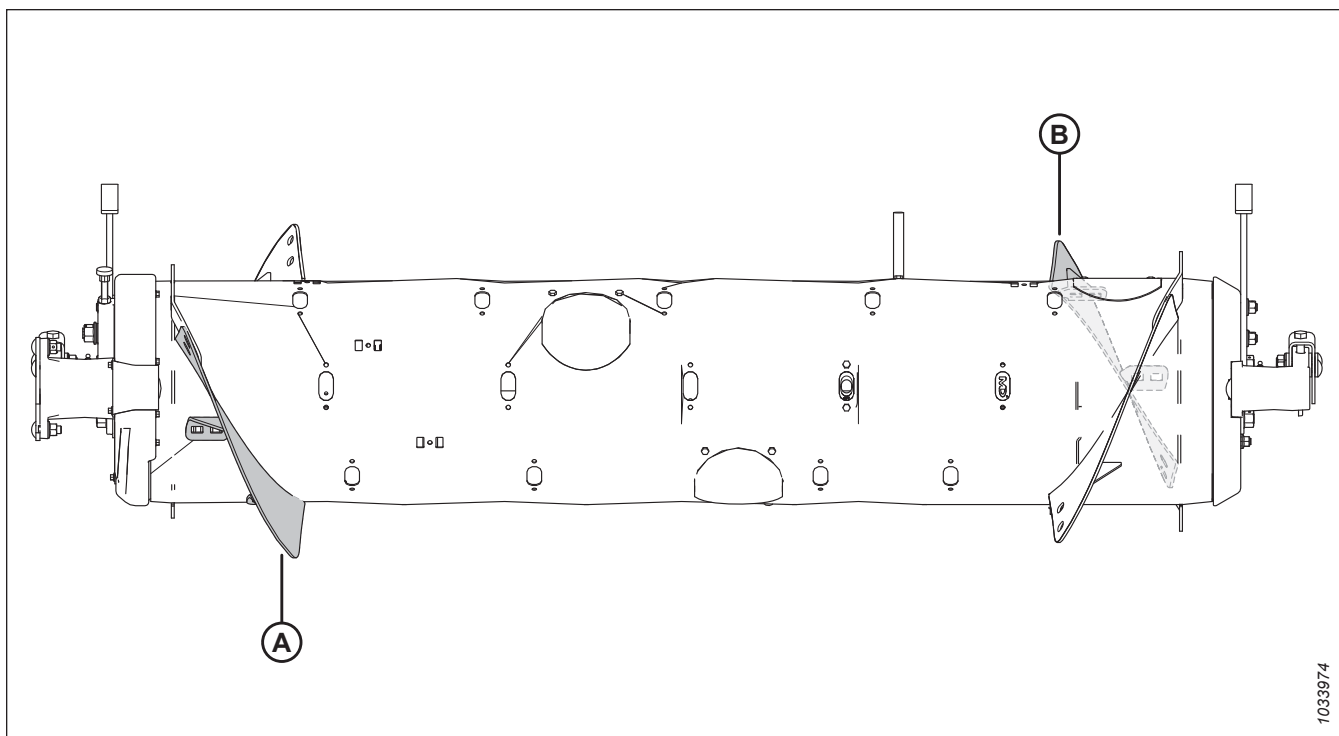


Figure 3.194: Wide Configuration

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

To convert to Wide configuration from Medium Configuration:

Remove existing flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).

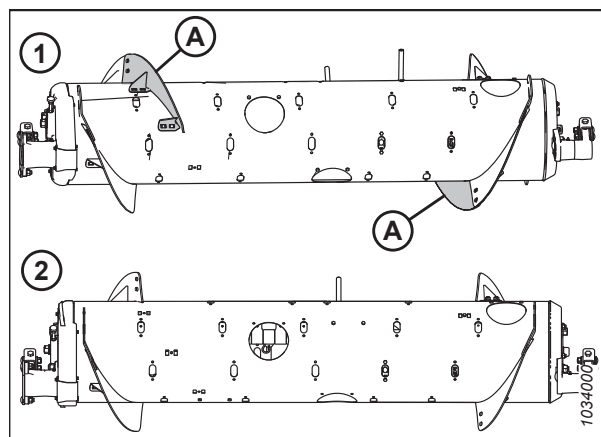


Figure 3.195: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Medium Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

To convert to Wide configuration from Ultra Wide configuration:

One flighting kits (MD #357233 or MD #B7344⁵⁵) is required. You will need to install two short flightings onto the existing welded flightings (A). A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- If required to remove auger fingers, refer to [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#).

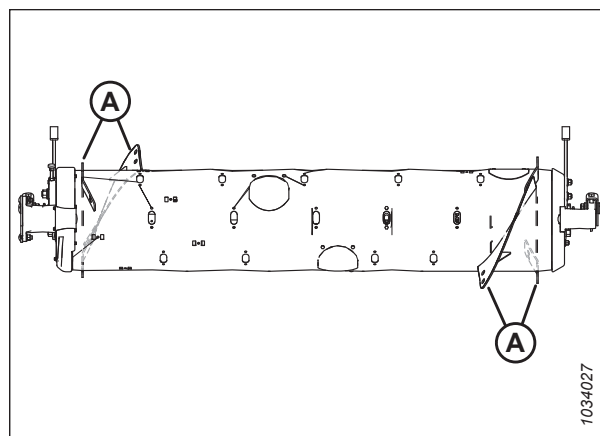


Figure 3.196: Ultra Wide Configuration

To convert to Wide configuration from Narrow or Ultra Narrow configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #357233 or MD #B7344⁵⁵) is required. You will need to replace existing long flightings (A)⁵⁶ with short flightings (B) and install additional auger fingers. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#) and [Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 150](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).

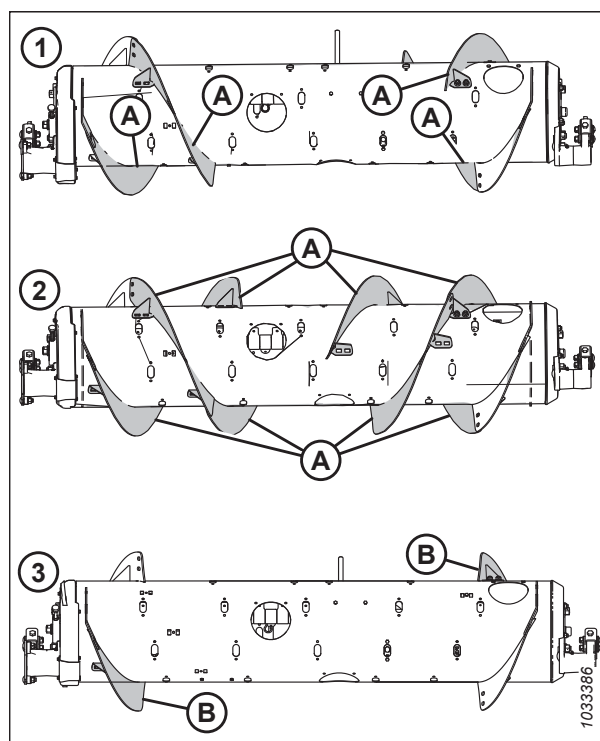


Figure 3.197: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Narrow Configuration 2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration
3 - Wide Configuration

55. MD #357233 is available only through MacDon Parts. MD #B7344 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

56. The quantity of existing long flightings is either 4 or 8, depending on the current configuration.

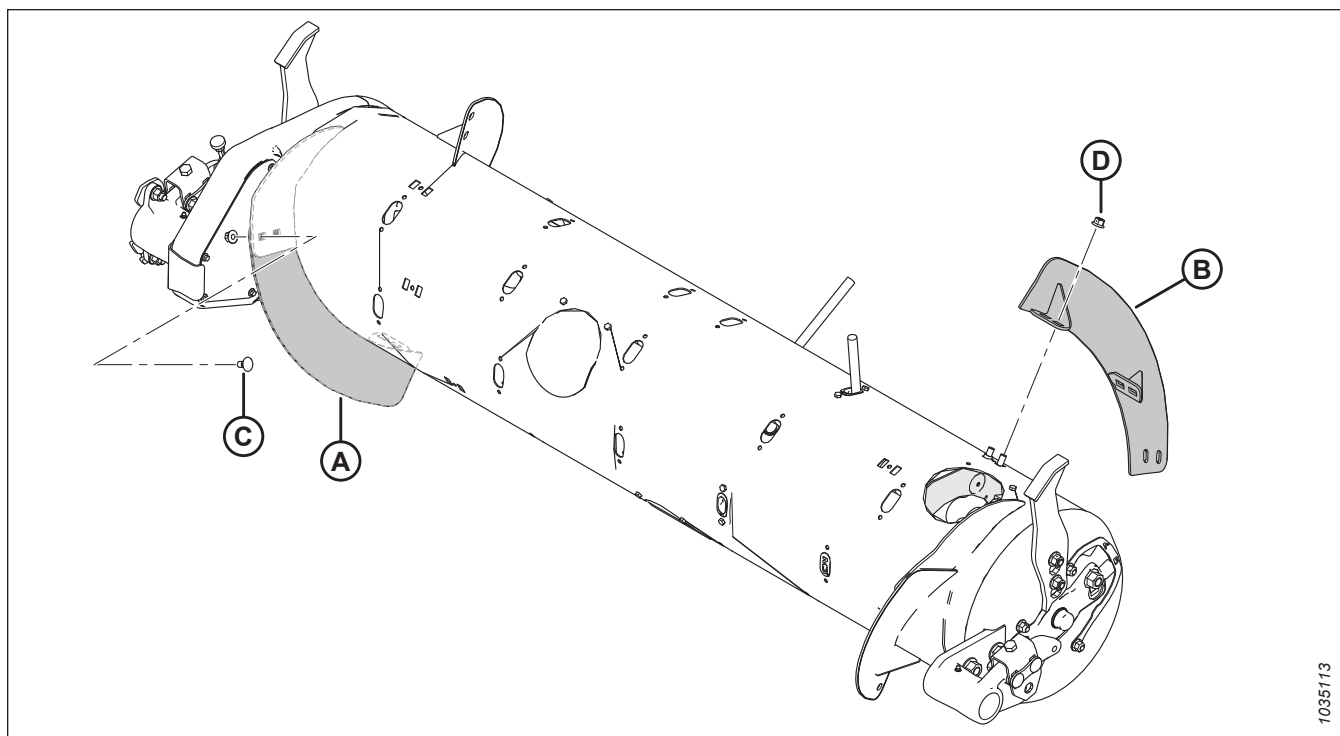


Figure 3.198: Wide Configuration

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting

Ultra Wide configuration uses no bolt-on flighting; only factory-welded flighting is responsible for conveying the crop. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

NOTE:

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.

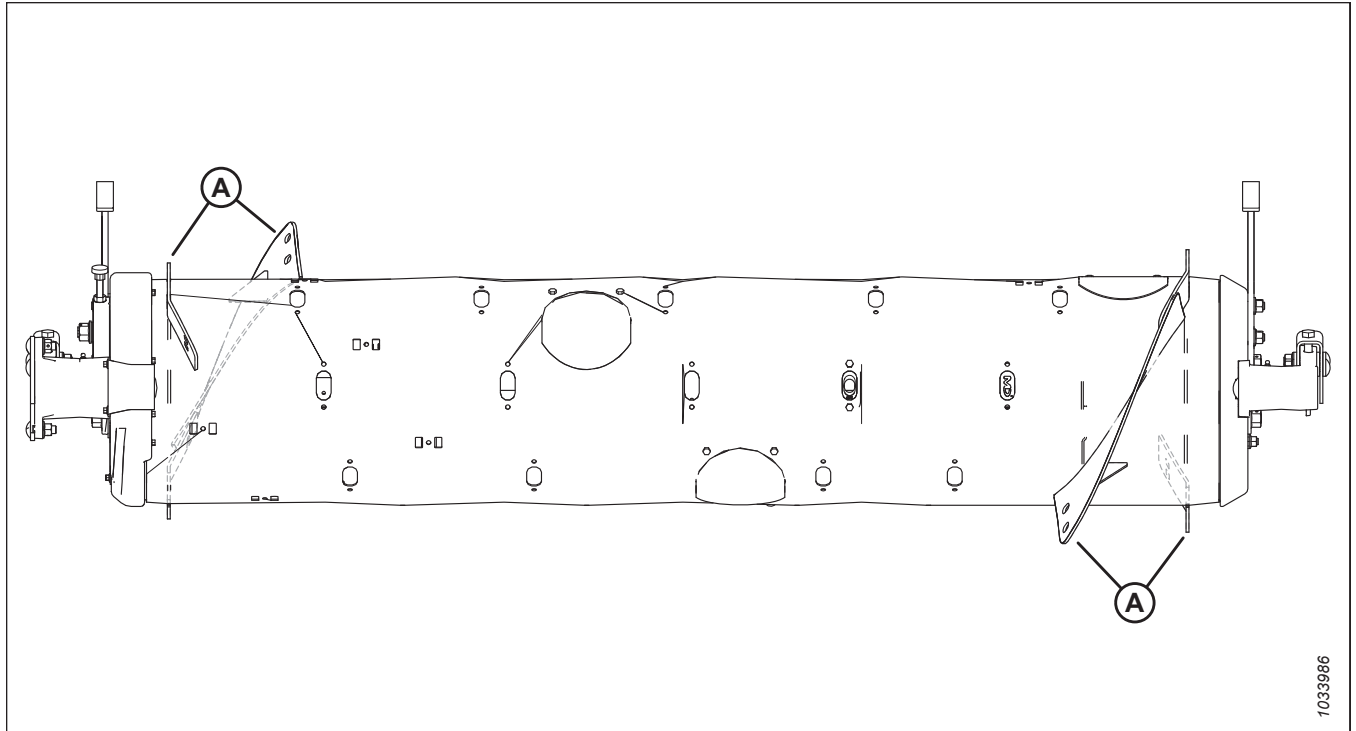


Figure 3.199: Ultra Wide Configuration

A - Factory-Welded Flighting

To convert to Ultra Wide configuration:

Remove all existing bolt-on flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers if required. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 148](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).

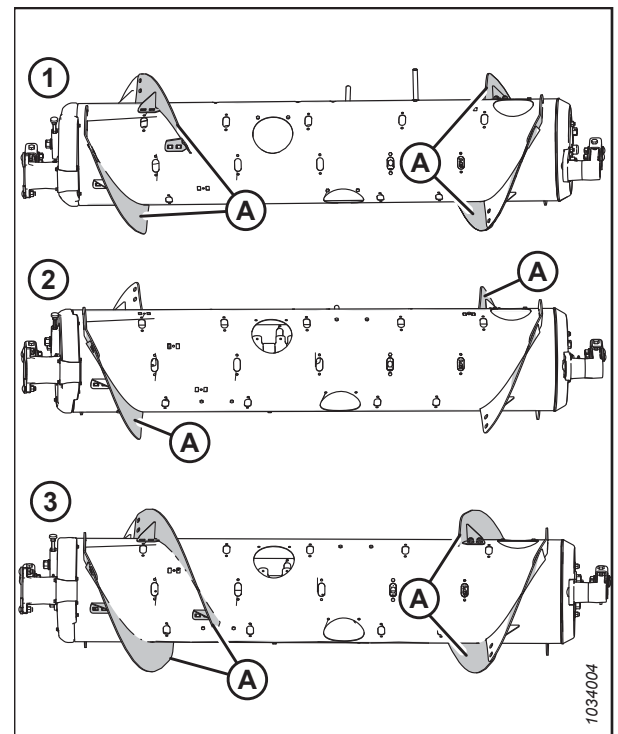


Figure 3.200: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Medium Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

3 - Narrow Configuration

Auger Flighting

The auger flighting on the FM200 can be configured for particular harvesting and crop conditions.

For instructions, refer to [3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132](#) for combine/crop specific configurations.

Removing Bolt-On Flighting

The feed auger has removable flighting that can be customized to the different models of combines.

Before removing the bolt-on flighting, determine the quantity and type of flighting required. For information on the different flighting configurations, refer to [3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132](#).

To remove bolt-on flighting, follow these steps:

1. To improve access to the feed auger, remove the float module from the combine.
2. Rotate the auger as needed.

NOTE:

The illustrations in this procedure show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. The procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

3. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain these parts for reassembly. If necessary, remove multiple access covers.

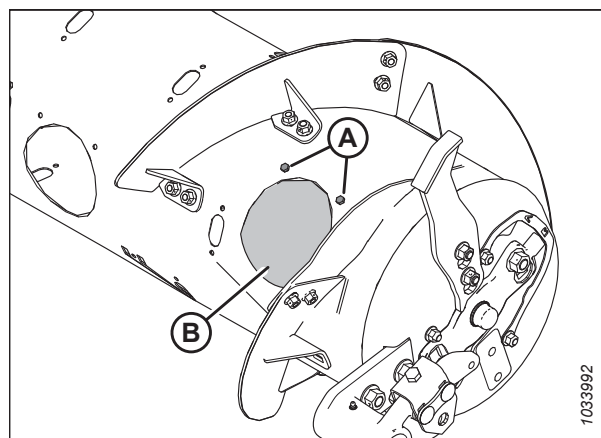


Figure 3.201: Auger Access Cover – Right Side

4. Remove bolts and nuts (B) and remove flighting (A).

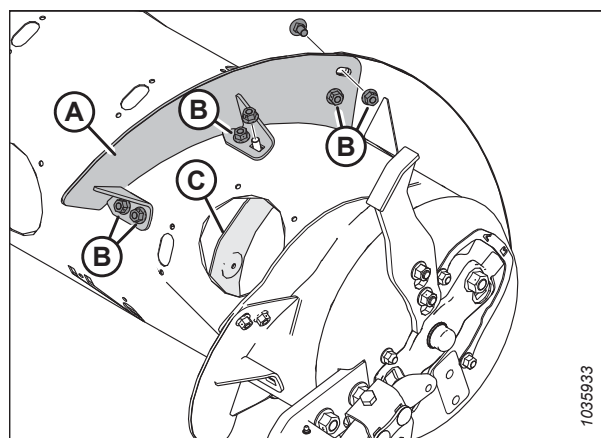


Figure 3.202: Short Flighting – Right Side

OPERATION

NOTE:

The illustration shows new long flighting (A) installed.

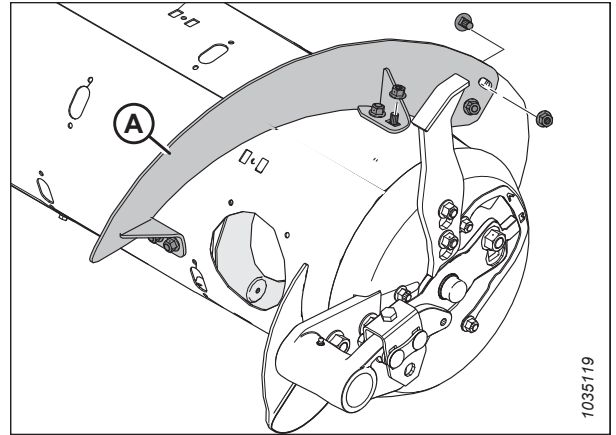


Figure 3.203: Long Flighting – Right Side

5. Install slot plug (A) with M6 bolt (B) and tee nut (C) at each location from which the flighting was removed. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

NOTE:

If the plug bolts are **NOT** new, coat them with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) prior to installation.

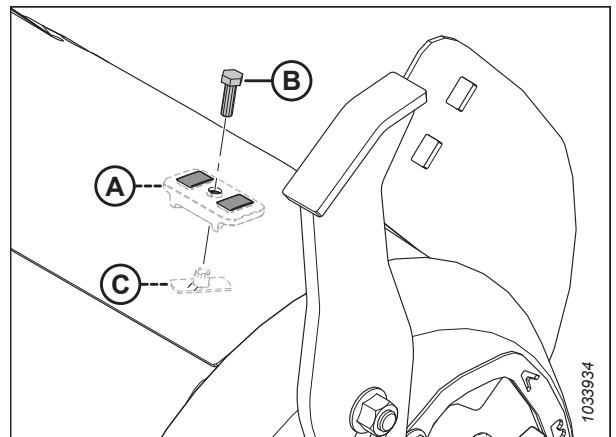


Figure 3.204: Installing Slot Plugs

6. Repeat this procedure to remove flighting (A) from the left side of the auger.

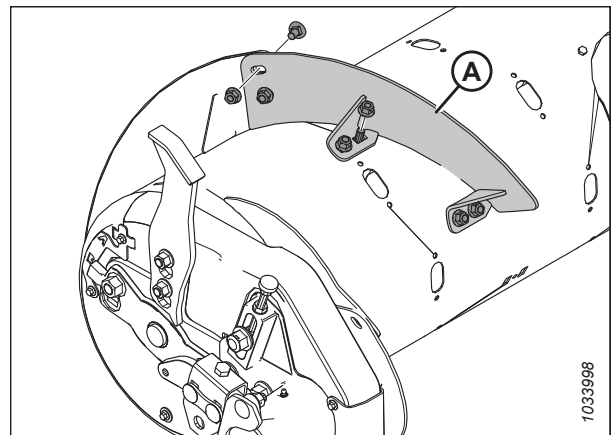


Figure 3.205: Short Flighting – Left Side

OPERATION

7. Reinstall access cover(s) (A) using retained bolts (B) and the welded nuts inside the auger. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) and torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

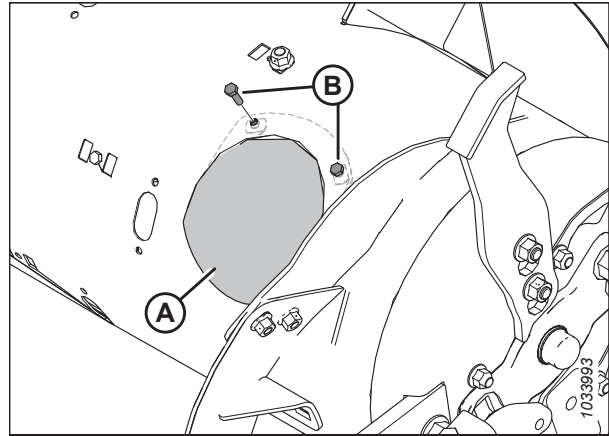


Figure 3.206: Access Cover – Right Side

Installing Bolt-On Flighting

The feed auger has removable flighting that can be customized to the different models of combines.

Before installing the bolt-on flighting, determine the quantity and type of flighting required. For information on the different flighting configurations, refer to [3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132](#).

To install bolt-on flighting, follow these steps:

1. To improve access to the feed auger and ease installation, remove the float module from the combine.
2. Rotate the auger as needed.

NOTE:

The illustrations in this procedure show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. This procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

3. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain for reassembly. If necessary, remove multiple access covers.

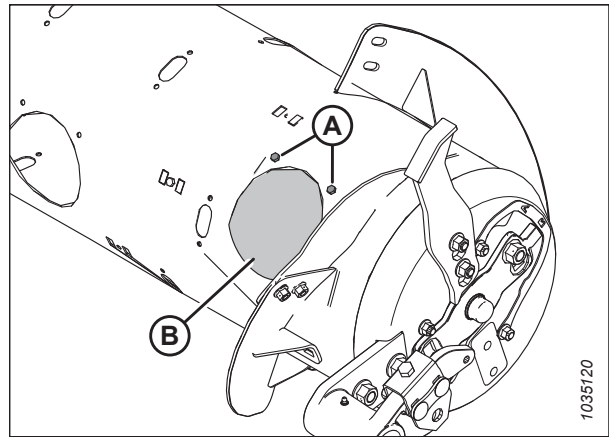


Figure 3.207: Auger Access Cover – Right Side

OPERATION

- Line up the new bolt-on flighting (A) in position to determine which slot plugs need to be removed from the auger. The new flighting overlaps on the outboard side of the adjacent flighting.

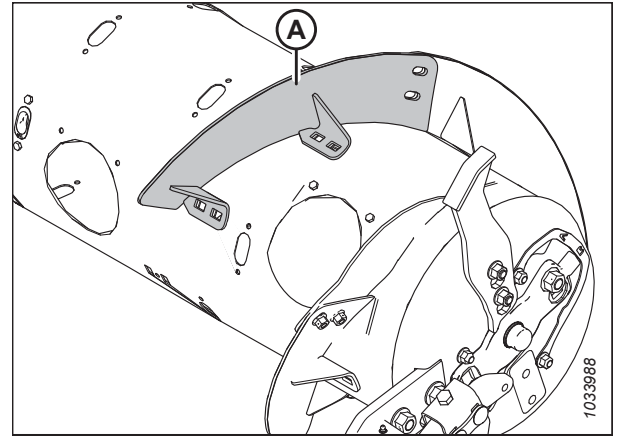


Figure 3.208: Right Side of Auger

- Remove applicable slot plugs(s) (A).

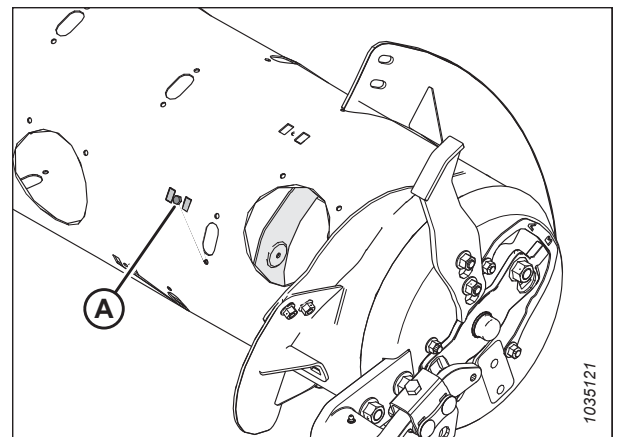


Figure 3.209: Right Side of Auger

- Install flighting (A) using M10 x 20 mm square neck carriage bolts and center lock nuts at locations (B).

IMPORTANT:

The bolt heads must be installed on the inside of the auger to prevent damage to the auger's internal components.

IMPORTANT:

The bolts that attach the flightings to each other must have the bolt heads on the inboard (crop side) of the flighting.

- Torque the six nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf-ft) to eliminate deflection on the flighting, then torque them to 61 Nm (45 lbf-ft).

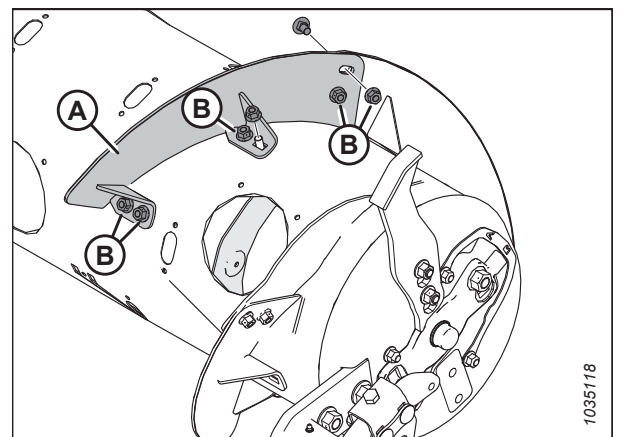


Figure 3.210: Short Flighting – Right Side

NOTE:

The illustration shows long flighting (A) installed.

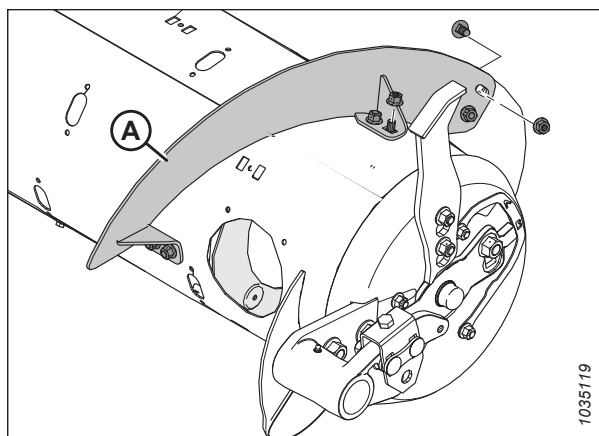


Figure 3.211: Long Flighting – Right Side

8. Repeat the procedure to install flighting (A) on the left side of the auger.

NOTE:

Flighting performs best when no gaps are present. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill the gaps.

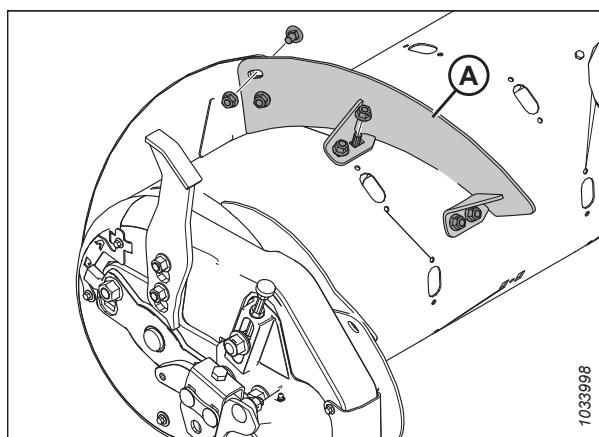


Figure 3.212: Short Flighting – Left Side

9. Reinstall access cover(s) (A) using retained bolts (B) and the welded nuts inside the auger. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) and torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).
10. If converting to Ultra Narrow configuration and drilling is required to install the remaining flighting, proceed to [Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only, page 153](#).

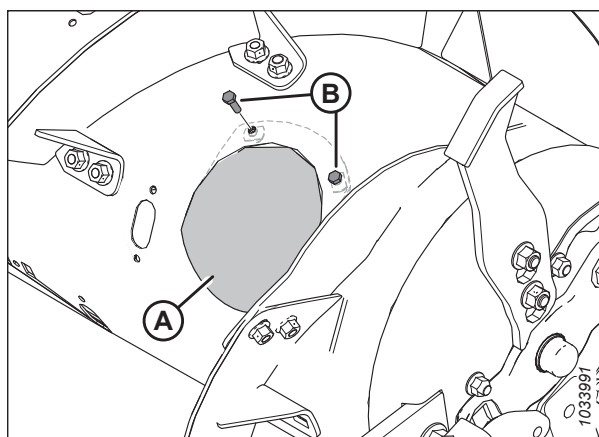


Figure 3.213: Access Cover – Right Side

OPERATION

Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only

When converting the feed auger to Ultra Narrow configuration, some hole drilling is required to install additional flighting.

NOTE:

This procedure assumes the feed auger is currently in Narrow configuration (4 long flightings [A] installed).

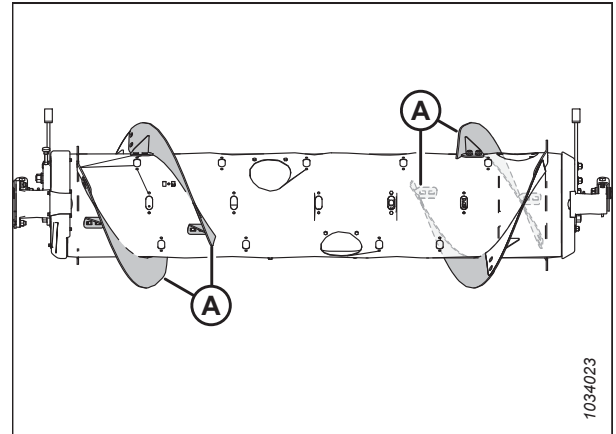


Figure 3.214: Narrow Configuration

To install the four additional long flightings for Ultra Narrow configuration, follow these steps:

1. To improve access to the feed auger and ease installation, remove the float module from the combine.
2. Rotate the auger as needed.

NOTE:

The illustrations in this procedure show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. This procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

3. Place new flighting (A) outboard of existing flighting (B) on the left side of the auger, as shown.
4. Mark hole locations (C) onto existing flighting (B).
5. Remove nearest access cover to existing flighting (B). Retain the hardware for reassembly.
6. Remove existing bolt-on flighting (B) from the auger. Retain the hardware for reassembly.

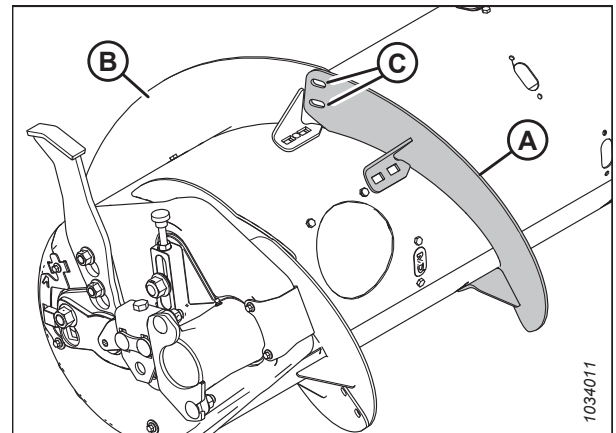


Figure 3.215: Left Side of Auger

OPERATION

7. Drill two 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations (A) on the existing flighting.
8. Reinstall the existing bolt-on flighting.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the carriage bolt heads are on the inside of the auger to prevent damage to the internal components.

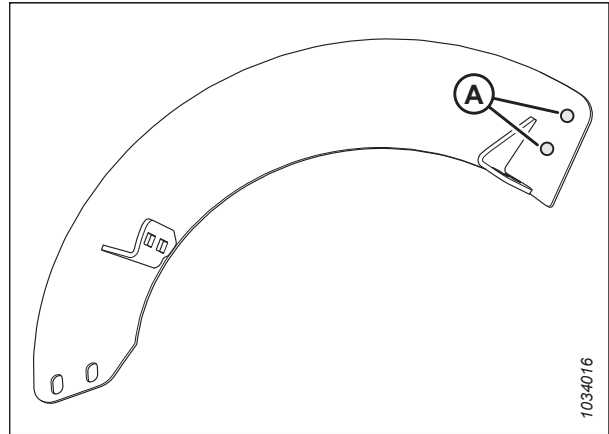


Figure 3.216: Drilling Locations

9. Place new flighting (A) into position on the auger, outboard of existing flighting (B).
10. Secure with two M10 x 20 mm button head bolts and center lock nuts (C).

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the bolt heads are on the inboard side (crop side) and the nuts are on the outboard side of the flighting.

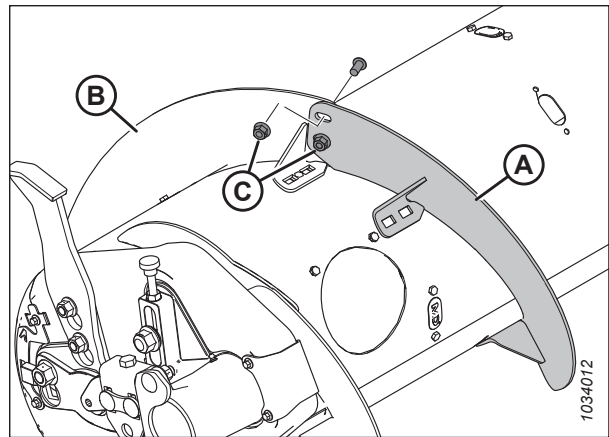


Figure 3.217: Left Side of Auger

11. Stretch flighting (A) to fit the auger tube as shown. Use the slotted holes on the flighting to get the best fit around the auger tube.

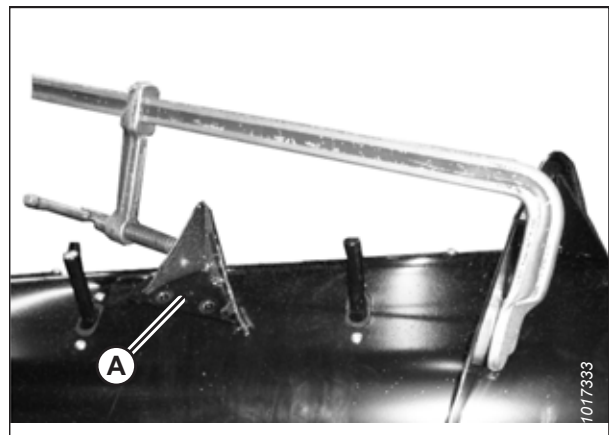


Figure 3.218: Flighting Stretched Axially

OPERATION

12. With the flighting in the desired position, mark four hole locations (A) and drill 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes in the auger tube.

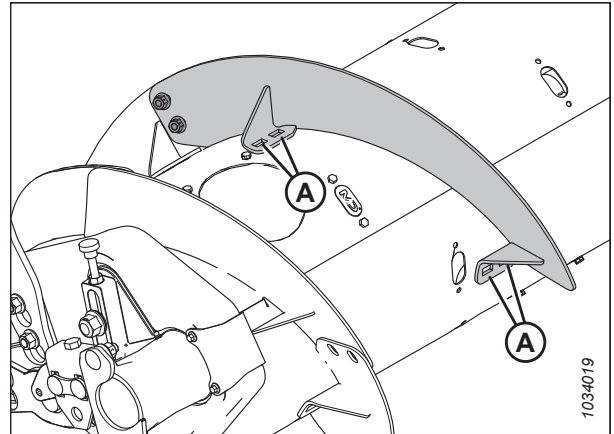


Figure 3.219: Flighting on Left Side of Auger

13. Remove nearest access cover(s) (B). Retain the cover for reinstallation.
14. Secure the flighting to the auger at drilled holes (A) using four M10 x 20 mm flange head bolts and center lock nuts.
15. Repeat Step 2, page 153 to Step 14, page 155 for the other flighting on the left side of the auger.
16. Repeat Step 2, page 153 to Step 14, page 155 for both flightings on the right side of the auger.
17. Torque all flighting nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf-ft) to eliminate deflection on the flighting, then torque the nuts and bolts to 61 Nm (45 lbf-ft).

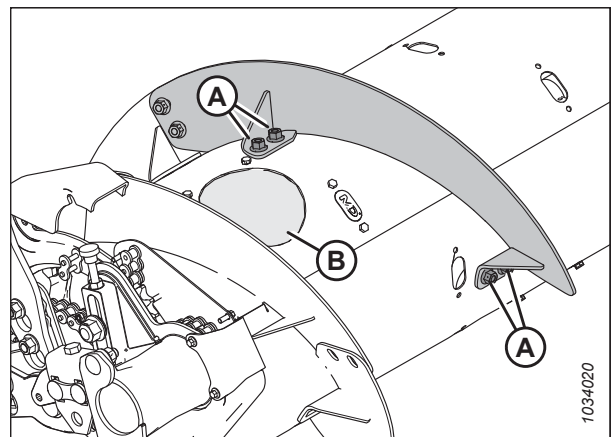


Figure 3.220: Left Side of Auger

NOTE:

Flighting performs best when there are no gaps between the flighting and the auger drum. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill any gaps.

18. Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions. For instructions, refer to [3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 155](#) or [3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 158](#).
19. If you are not adding or removing auger fingers, reinstall all access covers. Coat the retained bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent), then use them to secure the auger covers. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

3.8.2 Removing Feed Auger Fingers

The feed auger uses fingers to bring crop into the feeder house. The quantity of fingers varies for the different models of combines.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

OPERATION

IMPORTANT:

When removing auger fingers from the feed auger, work from outside inward. Make sure there is an equal number of fingers on each side of the auger.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing. Retain parts for reinstallation.

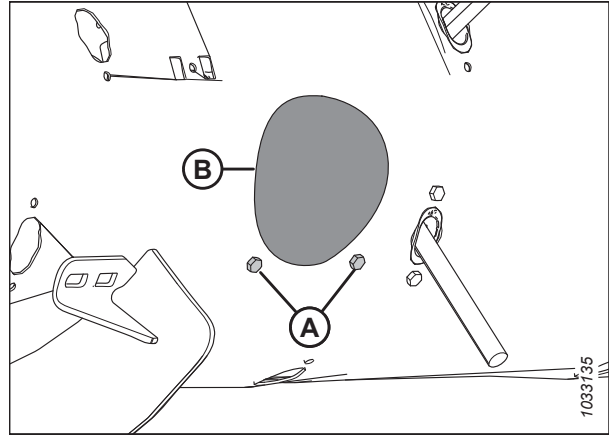


Figure 3.221: Auger Access Hole Cover

6. Remove finger as follows:
 - a. Remove hairpin (A). Pull finger (B), out of finger holder (C).
 - b. Push finger (B) through guide (D) and into the drum. Pull the finger out of the drum access hole.

NOTE:

If the finger is broken, remove any remnants from holder (C) and from inside the drum.

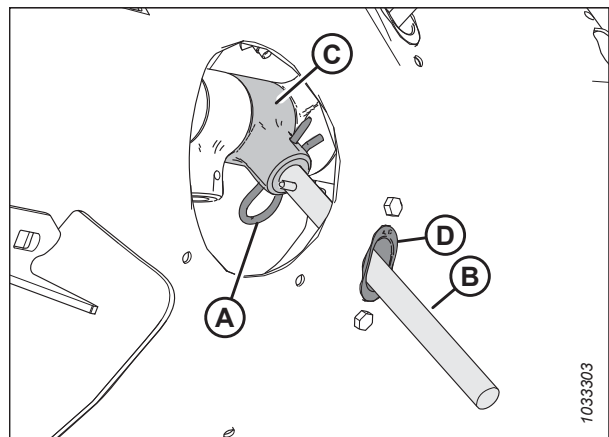


Figure 3.222: Auger Finger

OPERATION

7. Remove and retain two bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown) securing finger guide (B) to the auger. Remove guide (B).

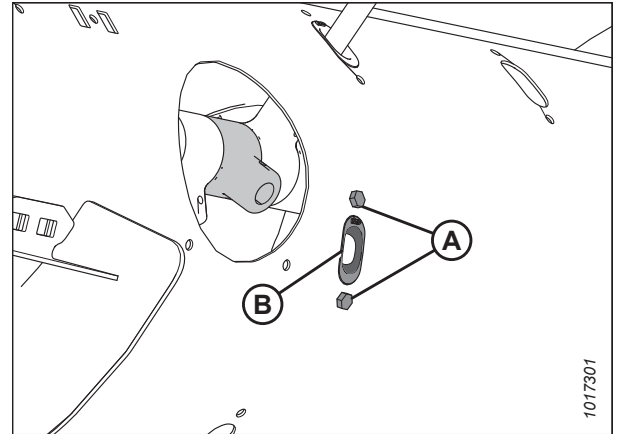


Figure 3.223: Auger Finger Hole

8. Position plug (A) into the hole from inside the auger. Secure with two M6 hex head bolts (B) and tee nuts. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

NOTE:

Bolts (B) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (B), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

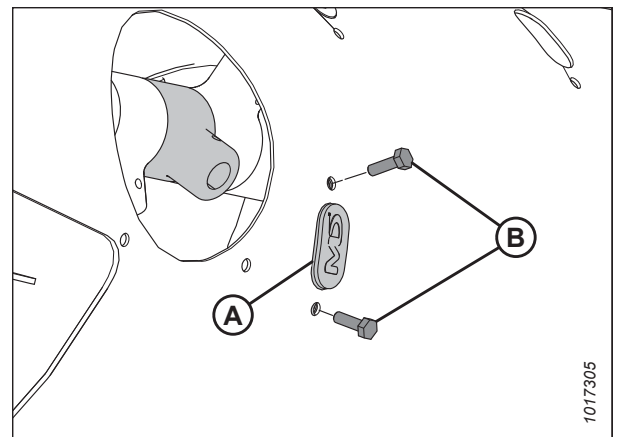


Figure 3.224: Plug

9. Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

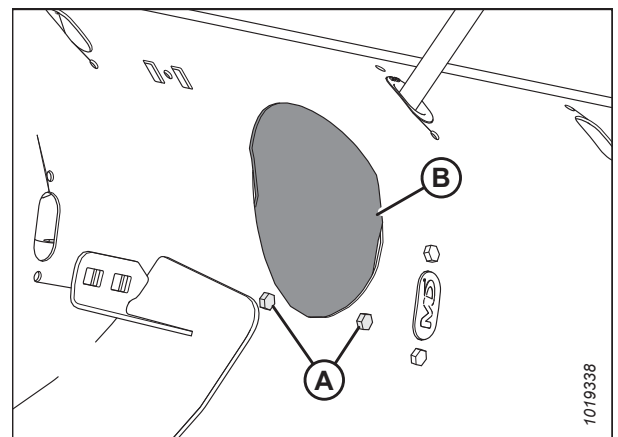


Figure 3.225: Auger Access Hole Cover

3.8.3 Installing Feed Auger Fingers

The feed auger uses fingers to bring crop into the feeder house. The quantity of fingers varies for the different models of combines.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

When installing additional fingers, ensure you install an equal number on each side of the auger.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Insert guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown).

IMPORTANT:

Always install a new guide when replacing a solid finger.

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

5. Torque bolts (A) to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

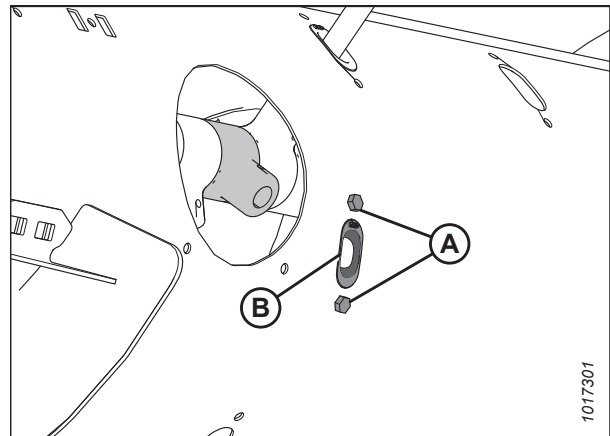


Figure 3.226: Auger Finger Hole

6. Place auger finger (A) inside the drum. Insert one end of auger finger (A) up through the bottom of guide (B) and insert the other end into holder (C).
7. Secure the finger by inserting hairpin (D) into the holder. Make sure the round end (the S-shaped side) of the hairpin faces the chain drive side of the auger. Make sure the closed end of the hairpin points in the direction of auger-forward rotation.

IMPORTANT:

Position the hairpin as described in this step to prevent the hairpin from falling out during operation. If fingers are lost, the header might not be able to feed crop into the combine properly. Fingers that fall into the drum might damage the auger's internal components.

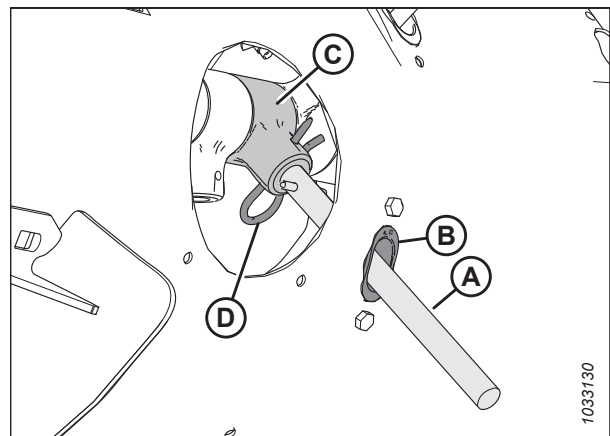


Figure 3.227: Auger Finger

OPERATION

8. Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque the bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

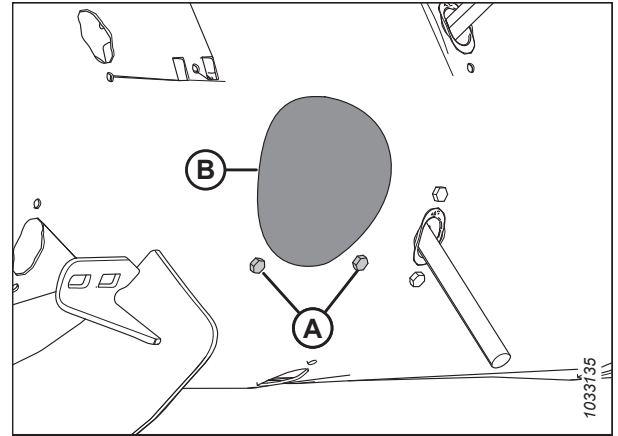


Figure 3.228: Auger Access Hole Cover

3.8.4 Setting Auger Position

The auger position has two settings: floating and fixed. The factory setting is the floating position, and is recommended for most crop conditions.

Auger float adjustment arms (A) are located at the bottom left and bottom right of the float module.

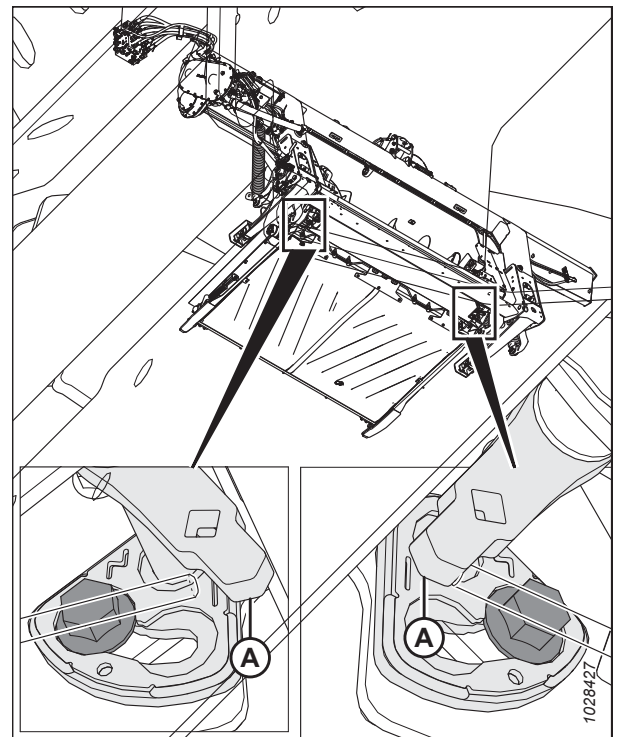


Figure 3.229: Auger Float Adjustment Arms

OPERATION

If bolt (A) is next to floating symbol (B), the auger is in the floating position. If bolt (A) is next to fixed symbol (C), the auger is in the fixed position.

CAUTION

Make sure left and right brackets are set to the same position; two bolts (A) must be in the same location to prevent damage to the machine during operation.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

To set the auger position, follow these steps:

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Using a 21 mm wrench, loosen bolt (A) until the bolt head is clear of bracket (B).

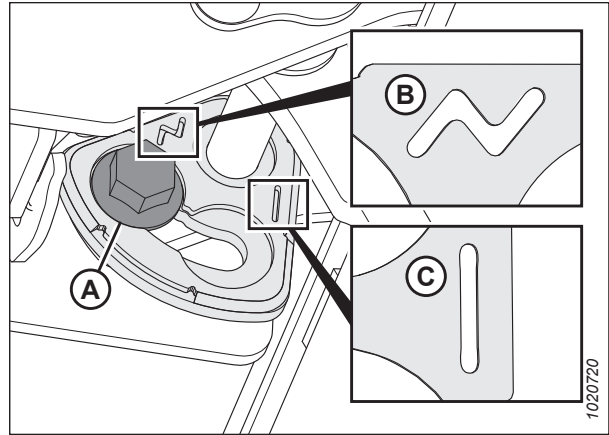


Figure 3.230: Auger Float Positions

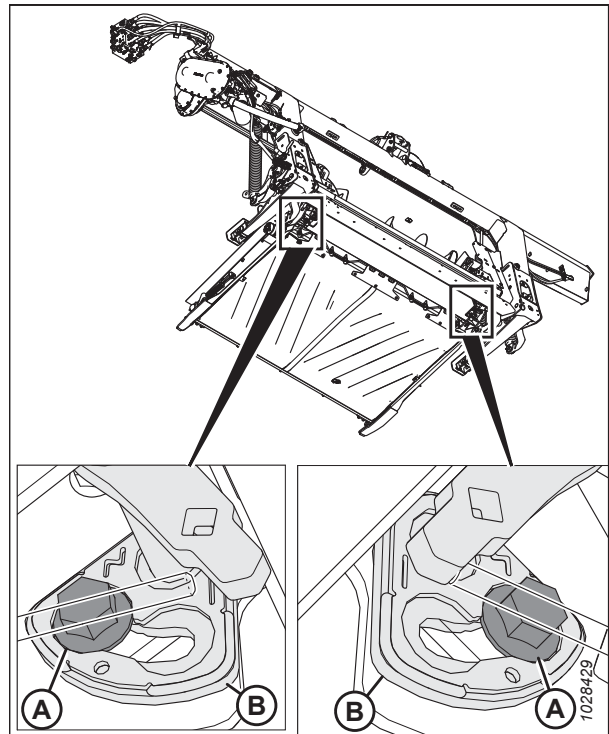


Figure 3.231: Feed Auger Float Adjustment

OPERATION

- Using a breaker bar in the square hole on arm (B), move the arm forward until bolt (A) is in the slot on bracket next to the fixed symbol.

NOTE:

If changing the auger position from fixed to floating, move the arm in the opposite direction.

- Tighten bolt (A) to 122 Nm (90 lbf·ft).

IMPORTANT:

Bolt (A) must be properly seated in the recess on the bracket before tightening the bolt. If arm (B) can be moved after tightening the bolt, then bolt (A) is not seated properly.

- Repeat on the opposite side.

IMPORTANT:

Bolt (A) on each side of the float module must be in the same position to prevent damage to the machine during operation.

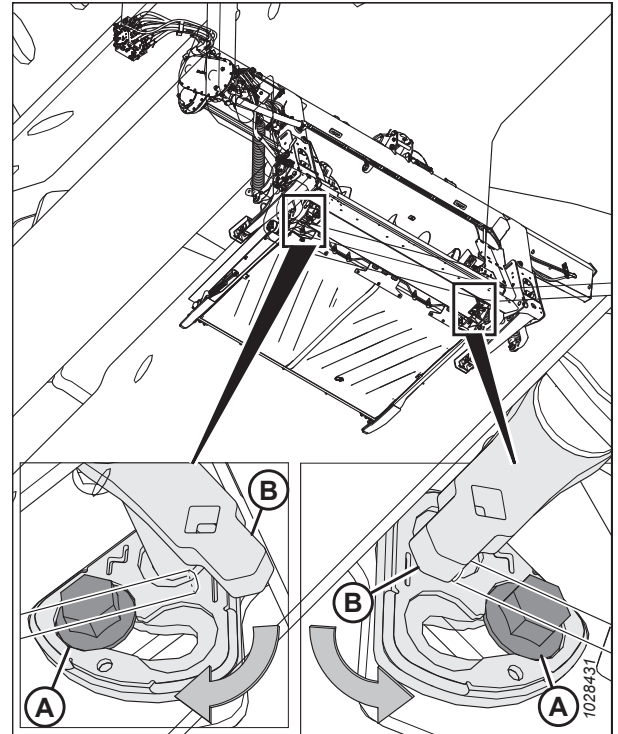


Figure 3.232: Feed Auger Float Adjustment

3.8.5 Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs

The feed auger has an adjustable spring tensioning system that allows the auger to float on top of the crop instead of crushing and damaging it. The factory-set tension is adequate for most crop conditions.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Raise the header fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.

OPERATION

5. Check the thread length protruding past nut (A). The length should be 22–26 mm (7/8–1 in.).

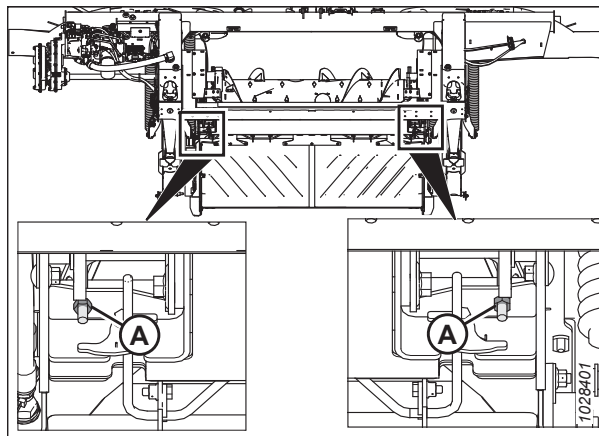


Figure 3.233: Spring Tensioner

If adjustment is required, follow these steps:

6. Loosen upper jam nut (A) on the spring tensioner.
NOTE:
The upper jam nut is located on other side of the plate.
7. Turn lower nut (B) until thread (C) protrudes 22–26 mm (7/8–1 in.).
8. Tighten jam nut (A).
9. Repeat Steps 6, page 162 to 8, page 162 on the opposite side.

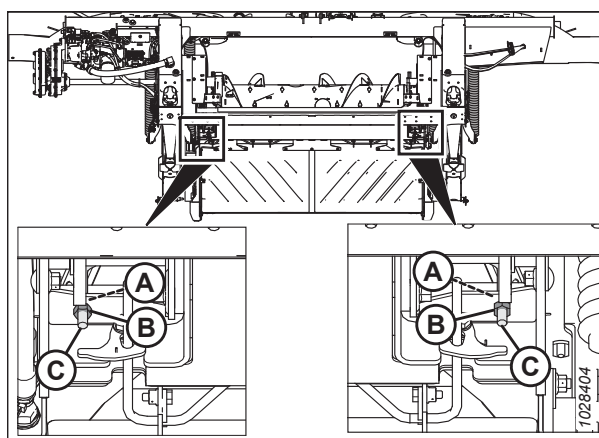


Figure 3.234: Spring Tensioner

3.8.6 Stripper Bars

A stripper bar kit may have been supplied with your header. Installing the stripper bar kit improves feeding in certain crops, such as rice.

For information on removing and installing the stripper bars, refer to [4.11 Stripper Bars, page 605](#).

3.9 Header Operating Variables

Satisfactory function of the header requires making adjustments to suit various crops and conditions.

Correctly adjusting the header reduces crop loss and speeds harvesting. Proper adjustments, along with timely maintenance, will also increase the service life of the header.

The variables listed in Table 3.16, page 163 and detailed on the following pages will affect the performance of your header.

You will quickly become adept at adjusting the machine to achieve the results you desire. Most of the settings below have been configured at the factory, but the settings can be changed to suit various crops and harvesting conditions.

Table 3.16 Operating Variables

Variable	Refer to
Cutting height	3.9.1 Cutting off Ground, page 163 3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Header float	3.9.3 Header Float, page 175
Header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Ground speed	3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Draper speed	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208
Knife speed	3.9.9 Knife Speed Information, page 210
Reel height	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Reel fore-aft position	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Reel tine pitch	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Crop divider rods	3.9.14 Crop Dividers, page 236
Feed auger configurations	3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132

3.9.1 Cutting off Ground

The header's design allows you to cut crop above the ground, which results in stubble being cut to a uniform height. Follow these recommendations when configuring the header to cut above ground level.

When cutting above ground level:

- Use the stabilizer wheels on the header (if this optional component is installed) to set the cutting height. The stabilizer wheel system is designed to minimize bouncing at the header ends and may be used to float the header to achieve an even cutting height when cutting above ground level in cereal grains.

NOTE:

The header wings must be locked when using the stabilizer wheel system.

- The ContourMax™ contour wheels provide consistent cutting height information back to the header so it can flex, maintain accurate and consistent cutting height, and still use the combine's auto height control seamlessly. The contour wheels contact the ground, which allows the cutterbar to remain at a fixed height above the ground even through rolling contours. There is no adjustment necessary to the factory auto height control settings.

NOTE:

The header wings must be locked when using the ContourMax™ system.

The stabilizer wheel system (or stabilizer/transport wheel system) cutting height is controlled by the combine header height control.

If the Stabilizer Wheels kit is installed, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#) to change the wheel position.

OPERATION

If the EasyMove™ Transport option is installed, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#) to change the wheel position.

If the ContourMax wheels are installed, refer to [Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch, page 165](#) to change the wheel position.

Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels

A properly adjusted header will achieve a balance between the amount of header weight carried by the float and the amount carried by the stabilizer wheels.

Refer to [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#) for recommended use in specific crops and crop conditions.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Raise the header until the stabilizer wheels are off the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Hold axle pivot handle (B); do **NOT** lift.

NOTE:

Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from slot (C).

4. Pull suspension handle (A) rearward to remove the pin from slot (C).
5. Lift the wheel to the desired height position using support (B), and engage the support channel into center slot (C) in the upper support.
6. Suspension handle (A) should snap into the slot. If not, push in (for middle and lower position) or pull in (for top position) the suspension handle to ensure it is seated in the slot.
7. Use the combine's auto header height control (AHHC) to automatically maintain cutting height. For instructions, refer to [3.10 Auto Header Height Control, page 254](#) and your combine operator's manual for details.

NOTE:

The height sensor on the FM200 Float Module must be connected to the combine height control system in the cab.

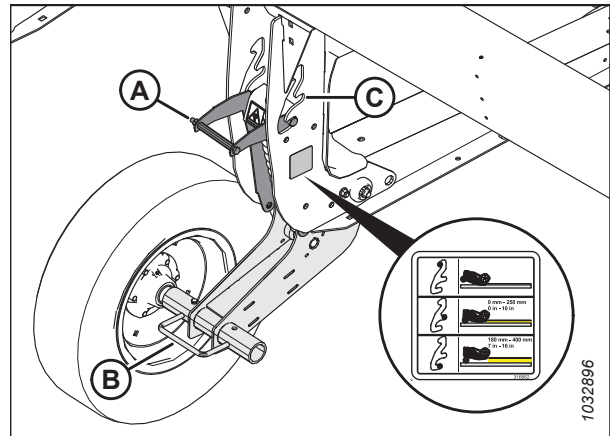


Figure 3.235: Stabilizer Wheel

Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels

A properly adjusted header will achieve a balance between the amount of header weight carried by the float and the amount carried by the transport wheels.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

OPERATION

1. Raise the header so the transport wheels are off the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Check that the float is working properly. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).
4. Hold axle pivot handle (C); do **NOT** lift.

NOTE:

Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from slot (B).

5. Pull suspension handle (A) rearward to remove pin from slot (B).
6. Adjust wheel to desired slot position.
7. Suspension handle (A) should snap into slot. If not, push in (for middle position) or pull in (for top position) suspension handle to ensure it is seated into the slot.

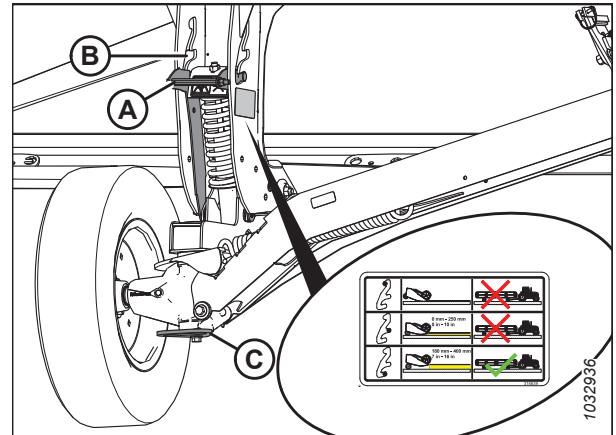


Figure 3.236: Right Wheel

8. Hold axle pivot handle (A); do **NOT** lift.
- ### NOTE:
- Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from the slot.
9. Pull suspension handle (B) rearward to remove the pin from the slot.
 10. Adjust the wheel to the desired slot position.

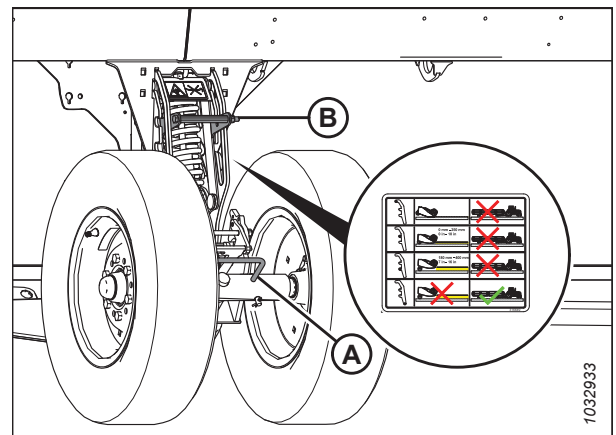


Figure 3.237: Left Wheel

11. Suspension handle (B) should snap into the slot. If not, pull out the suspension handle to ensure it is seated into the slot.
12. Use the combine's auto header height control (AHHC) to automatically maintain cutting height. For instructions, refer to [3.10 Auto Header Height Control, page 254](#) and your combine operator's manual for details.

NOTE:

The height sensor on the FM200 Float Module must be connected to the combine header control module in the cab.

Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch

The ContourMax™ wheels allow the header to mirror the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 25 mm (1 in.) and 457 mm (18 in.) from the ground surface. A foot switch allows the wheel's electronically actuated hydraulic functions to be controlled from the combine cab.

If the combine is equipped with the CLAAS Integration kit MD #B7231) the foot switch is not required. For ContourMax™ Contour Wheels control instructions, refer to the FD2 Series FlexDraper® Combine Header with FM200 Float Module Operator's Manual.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected startup or fall of the raised header, stop the engine, remove the key from the ignition, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason. If using a lifting vehicle, be sure the header is secure before proceeding.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area, and then start the combine engine.
2. Locate the ContourMax™ foot switch.
3. Press and hold the foot switch to activate the ContourMax™ wheels.

NOTE:

When the ContourMax™ foot switch is activated and the reel fore-aft button on the combine's multifunction handle is pressed, the contour wheels will move regardless of the fore-aft / header tilt switch position.

4. To ensure the hydraulic cylinders are properly phased, press and hold the REEL AFT button on the combine multifunction handle to extend the wheels all the way down, then hold the button for 30 seconds. Press and hold the REEL FORE button on the combine multifunction handle to fully retract the wheels, then hold the button for 30 seconds.
5. Operate the hydraulic controls on the multifunction handle to move the wheels to the desired height.
6. Release the foot switch to deactivate the ContourMax™ wheels. The header tilt and the fore-aft functions should operate normally.

The following table describes what functionality the reel fore/aft buttons will have on the header when the contour wheel foot switch and the fore-aft/header tilt switch are in various (active/inactive) states. The X indicates a switch is active.

Table 3.17 Control Logic Chart

Activated Switch				
ContourMax™ Foot Switch Condition	Fore-Aft / Header Angle Switch Position		Combine Multifunction Handle Controls	
	Fore-Aft	Angle	Reel Fore	Reel Aft
—	X	—	Reel forward	Reel back
—	—	X	Header angle extend	Header angle retract
X	—	X	ContourMax™ retract (decrease cut height)	ContourMax™ extend (increase cut height)
X	X	—		

OPERATION

NOTE:

When the contour wheels are fully retracted, the cutterbar can be on the ground when the header angle is set approximately between (B) and (E); the contour wheels will contact the ground when the header angle is set between (A) and (B).

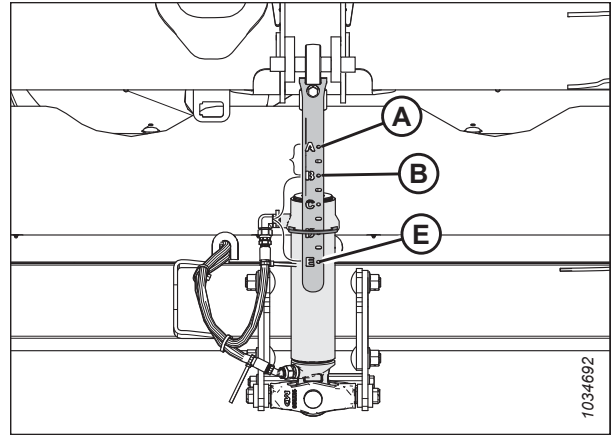


Figure 3.238: Header Angle Indicator

Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with CLAAS Integration Kit

The ContourMax™ wheel option mirrors the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 25 mm (1 in.) and 457 mm (18 in.) from the ground surface.

NOTE:

Functions controlled by the multi-function trigger rocker switch will be available only when the header function switch is in the VARIO table extend/retract position.

1. Press HOTKEY switch (A) on the operator's console to the deck plate position (the header icon [A] with the arrows pointing to each other).



Figure 3.239: Multi-Function Trigger Rocker Switch

OPERATION

2. If the combine is equipped with the standard lever, push toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the reel fore-aft button.
 - The reel fore will retract the contour wheels, decreasing the cut height.
 - The reel aft will extend the contour wheels, increasing the cut height.

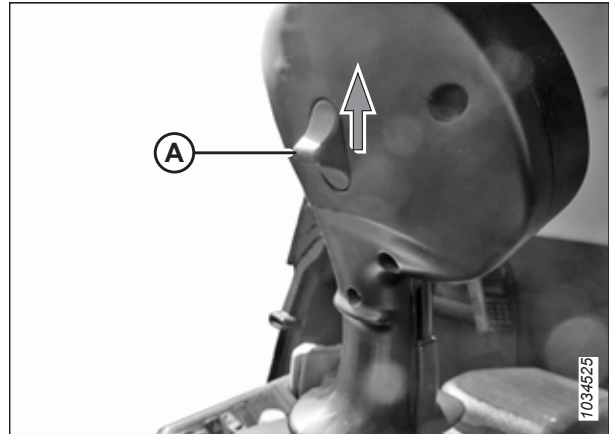


Figure 3.240: Standard Multi-Function Lever

3. If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multi-function lever, pull the multi-function trigger rocker switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the reel fore-aft button.
 - The reel fore will retract the contour wheels, decreasing the cut height.
 - The reel aft will extend the contour wheels, increasing the cut height.

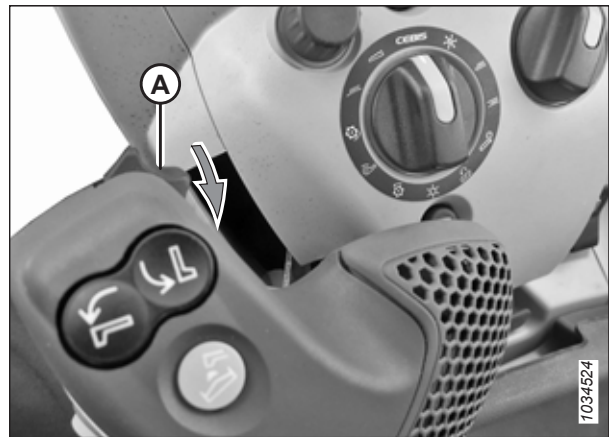


Figure 3.241: CMOTION Multi-Function Lever

Selecting the Default Function for the Multifunction Lever Toggle Switch (with CLAAS Integration Kit)

The default function for the multifunction lever toggle switch is selectable. For example, when cutting on the ground, the default function can be set so that the multifunction lever's toggle switch activates the pitch control cylinder. Likewise, when cutting off the ground, the default function can be changed so that the toggle switch controls the contour wheels.

CAUTION

Ensure that all bystanders are clear of the machine before starting the engine or engaging the header drives.

1. Start the engine.

To select pitch control as the default toggle function:

2. **If the combine is equipped with the standard lever:** push toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the REEL FORE button. Hold these switches for 30 seconds.

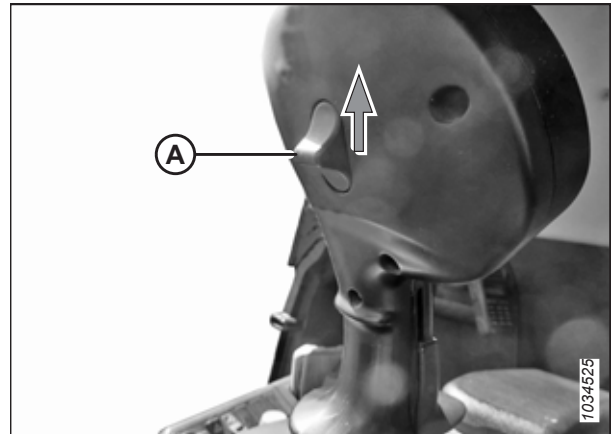


Figure 3.242: Standard Lever

3. **If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multifunction lever:** pull multifunction lever toggle switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the REEL FORE button. Hold these switches for 30 seconds.

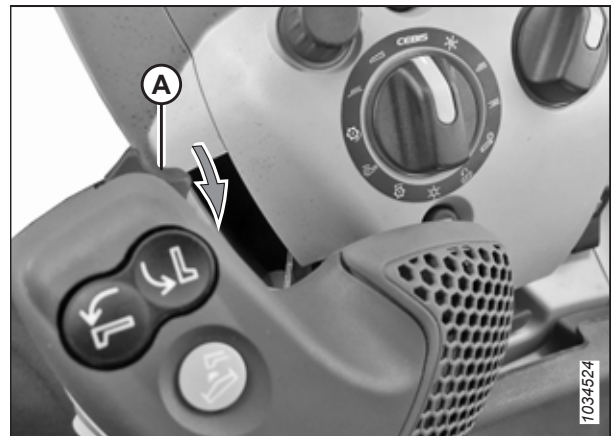


Figure 3.243: CMOTION Lever

To select contour wheel as the default toggle function:

4. **If the combine is equipped with the standard lever:** push toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the REEL AFT button. Hold these switches for 30 seconds.

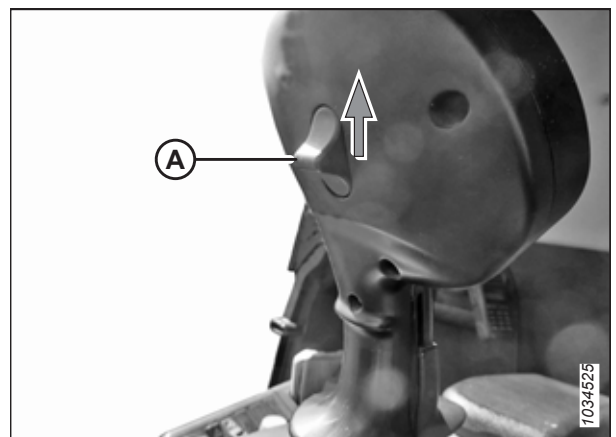


Figure 3.244: Standard Lever

OPERATION

5. **If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multifunction lever:** pull multifunction lever toggle switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the REEL AFT button. Hold these switches for 30 seconds.

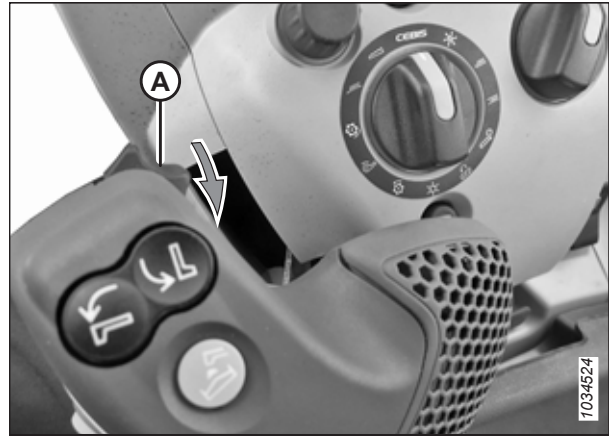


Figure 3.245: CMOTION Lever

Leveling ContourMax™ Wheel Height

The ContourMax™ wheels allow the header to mirror the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 0 mm (0 in.) and 457 mm (18 in.) from the ground surface.



DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of a raised machine, stop engine, remove key, and engage lift cylinder lock-out valves before going under machine for any reason.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

The header float must be set before leveling the ContourMax™. For instructions refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).

NOTE:

The wing balance must be set before leveling the ContourMax™. For instructions refer to [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#).

1. Unlock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
2. Unlock the header float. For instructions refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Float, page 186](#).
3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Park the combine on a level surface.
5. Lower the reel fully.

OPERATION

6. Set ContourMax™ wheel height indicator (A) to number 2 (B).

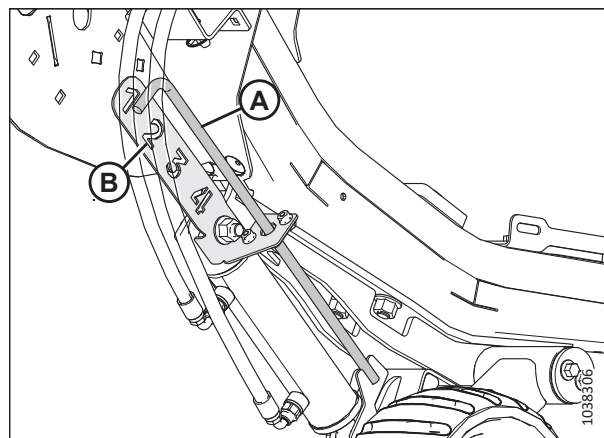


Figure 3.246: Height Indicator – Rear Left End

7. Lower the header until the auto header height indicator (A) is at number 2 (B).
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

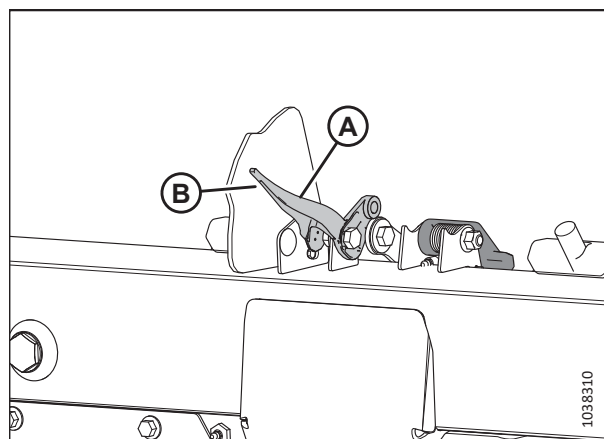


Figure 3.247: Float Setting Indicator

OPERATION

9. At the center of the header, measure distance (A) from the ground to the tip of the center guard and record the measurement.
10. At each end of the header, measure the distance (A) from the ground to the tip of the end guard and record both of the measurements.
 - If the difference between the end measurements and the center measurement is less than 25 mm (1 in.), no adjustment is required.
 - If the difference between the end measurements and the center measurement is greater than 25 mm (1 in.), adjustment is required. Continue to the next step.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

11. Start the engine.
12. Raise the header fully.
13. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
14. Remove pin (A).
15. Reposition adjuster plate (B) in the slot to align with a different hole. There is approximately 24 mm (1/2 in.) difference between each of the holes.
 - If the measurement is less than the measurement at the center of the header, move the adjuster plate **TOWARD** the cutterbar.
 - If the measurement is more than the measurement at the center of the header, move the adjuster plate **AWAY** from the cutterbar.
16. On the opposite end on the header, repeat Step 14, page 172 and Step 15, page 172.

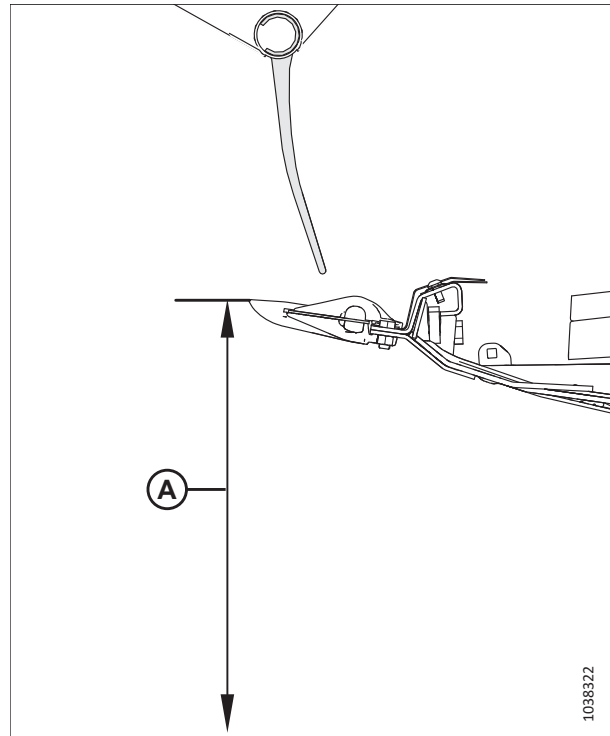


Figure 3.248: Float Setting Indicator

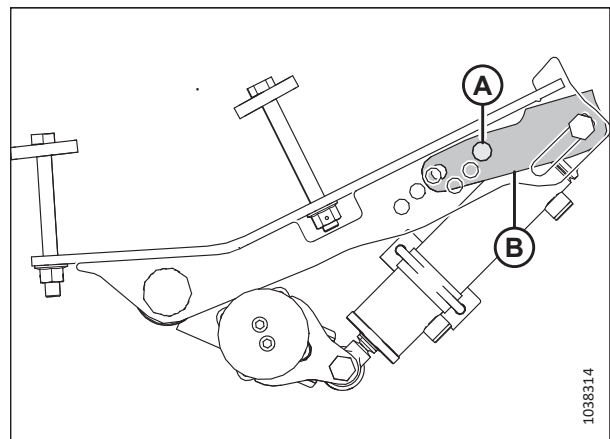


Figure 3.249: Pin Location – Left Outer Wheel

17. Disengage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
18. Lower the header until the auto header height indicator is at number 2.
19. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
20. Measure the guard to ground distance again. Verify that the three measurements are the same. If more adjustment is required, repeat Step 14, page 172.

3.9.2 Cutting on Ground

Cutting height will vary depending on crop type, crop conditions, cutting conditions, etc.

Cutting on the ground is performed with the flexible cutterbar unlocked, header fully lowered, and the cutterbar on the ground. The orientation of the knife and knife guards relative to the ground (header angle) is controlled by the skid shoes

and the center-link—it is **NOT** controlled by the header lift cylinders. The skid shoes, center-link, and flex lockout allow you to adjust to field conditions and maximize the amount of material cut while reducing damage to the knife caused by stones and debris.

The flexible cutterbar and header float system floats the header over the surface to compensate for ridges, trenches, and other variations in ground contour to prevent the cutterbar from pushing into the ground or leaving uncut crop.

Refer to the following for additional information:

- [Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes, page 173](#)
- [Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes, page 174](#)
- [3.9.3 Header Float, page 175](#)
- [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#)

Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes

The skid shoes and center-link allow you to adjust to field conditions and maximize the amount of material cut while reducing damage to the knife caused by stones and debris.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Running skid shoes in the down position can result in accelerated wear of the skid shoe wear plates.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Raise the stabilizer wheels or transport wheels fully (if installed). For instructions, refer to the following:
 - [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#)
 - [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#)
5. Remove lynch pin (A) from each skid shoe.
6. Hold shoe (B) and remove pin (C) by disengaging from the frame and pulling away from the shoe.
7. Raise or lower skid shoe (B) to achieve the desired position using the holes in support (D) as a guide.
8. Install pin (C) in the desired position on support (D), engage in frame, and secure with lynch pin (A).
9. Check that all skid shoes are adjusted to the same position.
10. Adjust the header angle to the desired working position using the machine's header angle controls. If the header angle is not critical, set it to the mid-position.
11. Check the header float. For instructions, refer to [3.9.3 Header Float, page 175](#).

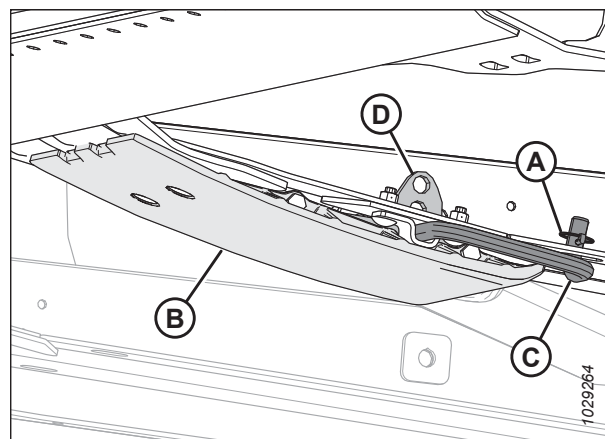


Figure 3.250: Inner Skid Shoe

Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes

The skid shoes and center-link allow you to adjust to field conditions and maximize the amount of material cut while reducing damage to the knife caused by stones and debris.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Running skid shoes in the down position can result in accelerated wear of the skid shoe wear plates.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Raise the stabilizer wheels or transport wheels fully (if installed). For instructions, refer to the following:
 - [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#)
 - [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#)
5. Remove lynch pin (A) from each skid shoe pin (C).
6. Hold skid shoe (B) and remove pin (C) by disengaging from the bracket and pulling away from the shoe.
7. Raise or lower skid shoe (B) to achieve the desired position using the holes in the support plate as a guide.
8. Reinstall pin (C) in the desired position on the support plate, engage the pin into the bracket, and secure with lynch pin (A).
9. Ensure all skid shoes are adjusted to the same position.
10. Check the header float. For instructions, refer to [3.9.3 Header Float, page 175](#).

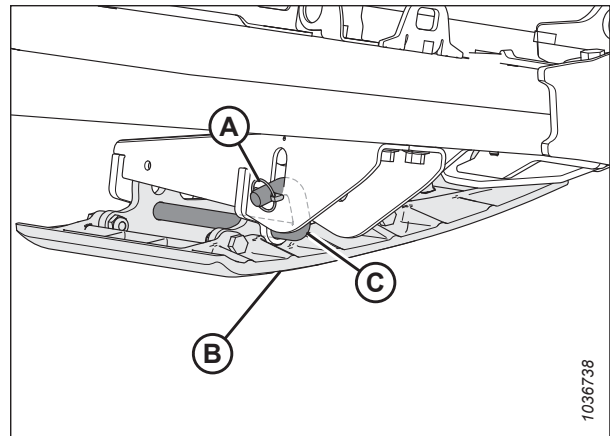


Figure 3.251: Outer Skid Shoe

3.9.3 Header Float

The header float system supports the majority of the header weight to reduce the ground pressure at the cutterbar, allowing the header to more easily follow the ground and quickly respond to sudden ground contour changes or obstacles.

Header float is indicated on the float indicator (A). Values 0 to 4 represent the force of the cutterbar on the ground with 0 being the minimum and 4 being the maximum. They also represent where the header is at in the float range, 0 being the bottom end of the float range and 4 being the top end of the float range.

NOTE:

The indicator on the left side of the float module is for float indication and float settings; the indicator on the right side is for float settings only.

The maximum force is determined by the tension on the float module's adjustable float springs. Float can be changed to suit field and crop conditions and is dependent on what options have been installed on the header.

NOTE:

The small number set (B) at the top of the float indicator is used to check and adjust the float setting. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header performs best with minimum ground pressure under normal conditions. Readjust the float if adding optional attachments to the header that affect header weight.

1. Set the float for cutting on the ground as follows:
 - a. Ensure the header float locks are disengaged. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Float, page 186](#).
 - b. Lower the feeder house using the combine header controls until float indicator (A) reaches the desired float value (cutterbar ground force). Set the float indicator initially to float value 2 and adjust as necessary.
2. Set the float for cutting off the ground as follows:
 - a. Adjust the contour wheels. For instructions, refer to [3.9.1 Cutting off Ground, page 163](#).
 - b. Note the float value on the float indicator and maintain this value during operation (disregard minor fluctuations on the indicator).

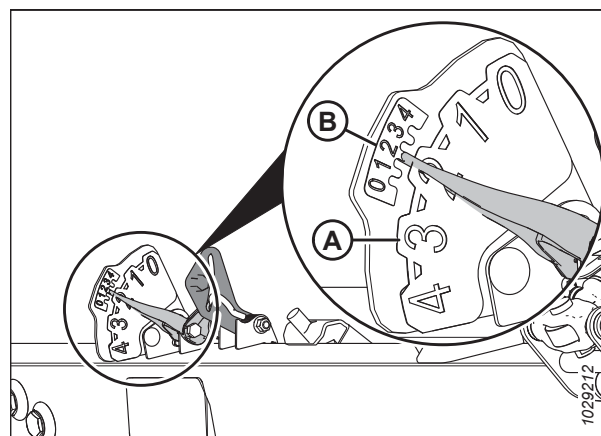


Figure 3.252: Float Indicator – Left Side

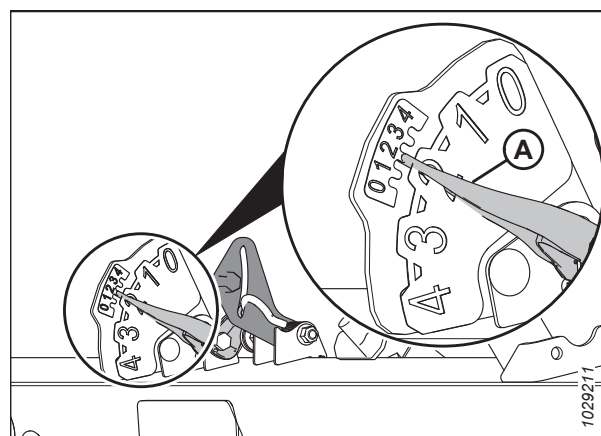


Figure 3.253: Cutting on the Ground

Checking and Adjusting Header Float

The header is equipped with a suspension system that floats the header over the ground to compensate for ridges, trenches, and other variations in ground contour. If the header float is not set properly, the cutterbar may scoop dirt or leave uncut crop. If the float setting is not satisfactory, the float will need to be inspected and adjusted.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use the float module springs to level the header.

Use the following guidelines when adjusting the float:

OPERATION

- Set the header float as light as possible, but not so light that the header bounces when the combine is moving. This will help prevent knife breakage, soil pushing, soil build-up at the cutterbar in wet conditions, and excessive wear to the skid plates.
- To prevent the header from bouncing excessively and cutting unevenly when the float is light, operate the combine at a lower ground speed.
- To cut crop while the header is above ground level, use the stabilizer wheels in conjunction with the header float. This will minimize bouncing at the header ends and will help regulate the cut height. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 164](#).

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

If adequate header float cannot be achieved using all of the available adjustments, change the float spring configuration. For instructions, refer to .

To check and adjust the float settings, do the following:

Preliminary steps

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Locate spirit level (A) on top of the float module frame. Ensure that the bubble is in the center. If adjustment is required, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#).
3. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.
4. Adjust the reel fore-aft position so that the indicator on left indicator bracket (A) is at position 6.

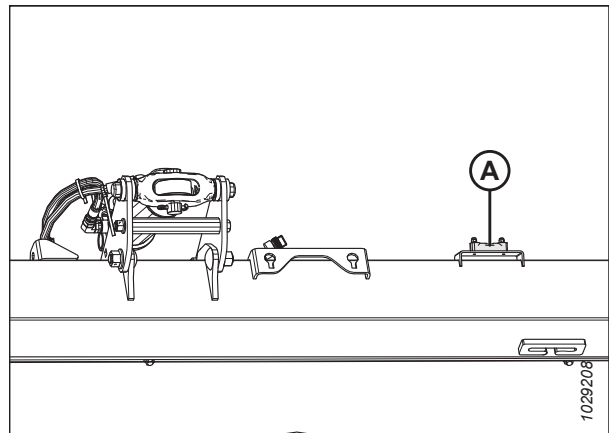


Figure 3.254: Spirit Level

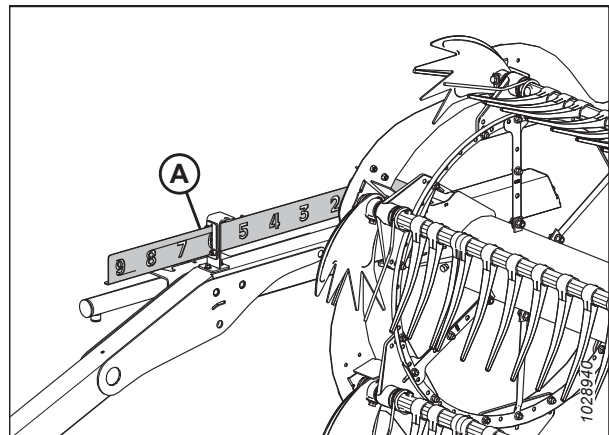


Figure 3.255: Fore-Aft Position

OPERATION

5. Adjust center-link (A) so that indicator (B) is at position **D** on the gauge.
6. Lower the reel fully.
7. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
8. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
9. If transport wheels are installed on the header, move the transport wheels to the uppermost position.

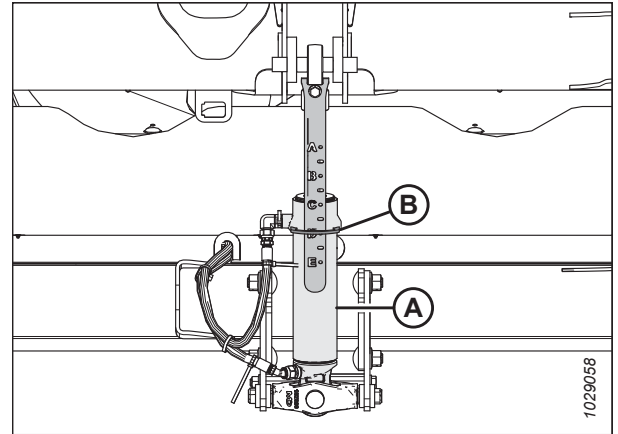


Figure 3.256: Center-Link

10. On the left side of the float module, pull float lock handle (A) away from the float module and pull the float lock handle down and into position (B) (UNLOCK).
11. Repeat the previous step on the right side of the float module.

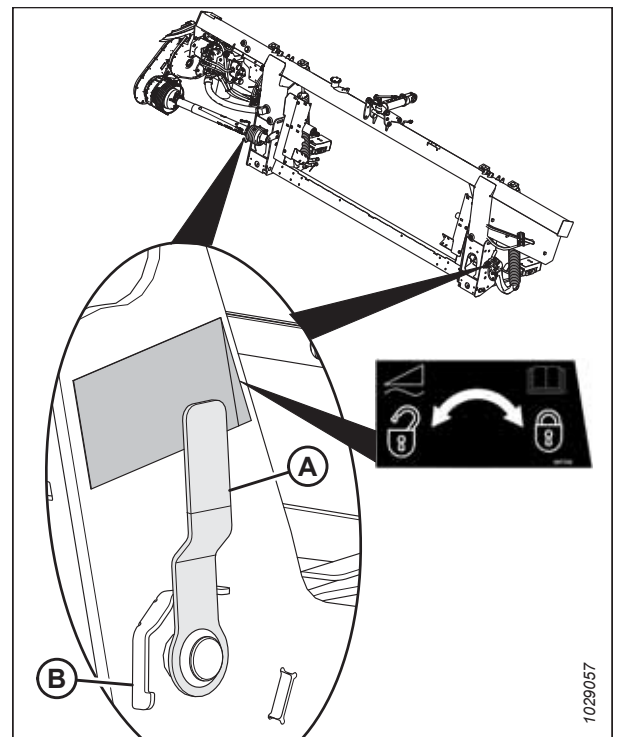


Figure 3.257: Header Float Lock in Locked Position

OPERATION

12. Open the left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
13. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool (B) to the bracket on the left endsheet.
14. Remove multi-tool (B). Replace the hairpin.

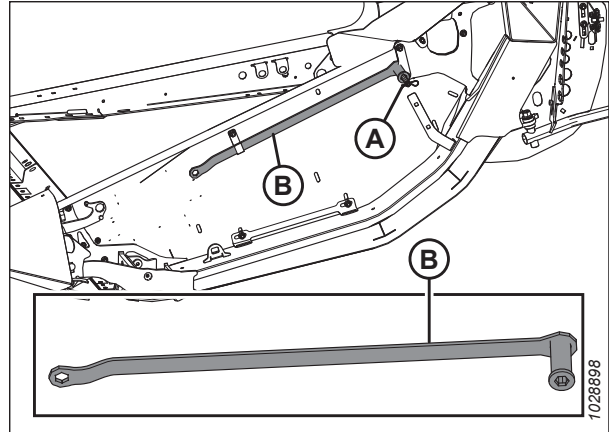


Figure 3.258: Multi-Tool Location

Setting float setting levers

15. On the left side of the float module, lift float setting lever (A) by hand so that the lever is free of slack.
16. Place the flat end of multi-tool (B) on the float setting lever as shown. The multi-tool should be angled slightly toward the front of the float module.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to the float setting lever, ensure that multi-tool (B) is fully engaged with the lever.

WARNING

Once the float setting lever has been set, remove the multi-tool from the lever **IMMEDIATELY**. If the lever falls to its starting position while the multi-tool is engaged with it, injury can occur.

17. Pull multi-tool (B) toward the back of the float module until float setting lever (A) is locked into place and will not return to its original position. Remove the multi-tool.
18. Repeat Steps [15, page 178](#) to [17, page 178](#) to set the right float setting lever.

IMPORTANT:

BOTH the left and the right float setting levers must be set before the float on **EITHER SIDE** of the header can be adjusted.

19. Place the multi-tool back in its storage location. Secure the multi-tool with the hairpin.

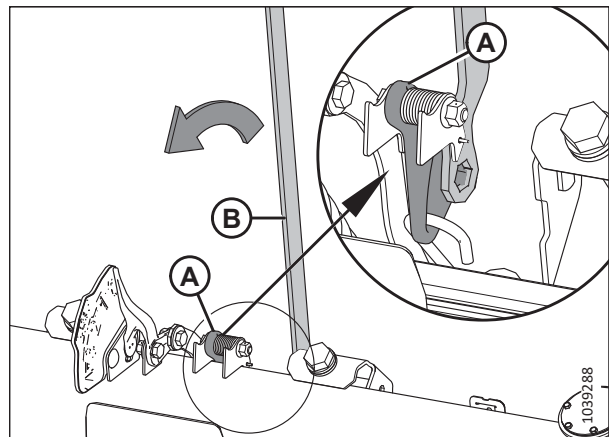


Figure 3.259: Multi-Tool Engaged with Left Float Setting Assembly

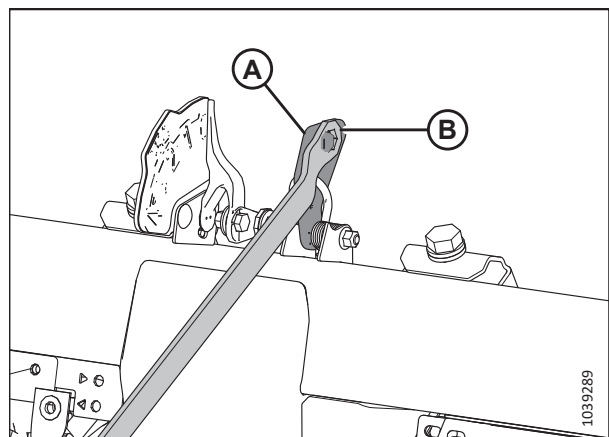


Figure 3.260: Left Float Setting Lever in Set Position

Checking float

20. Set the left float by pushing the left end of the header down by approximately 76 mm (3 in.). Allow the header to rise. Repeat this step at least three times.

NOTE:

Moving the left side of the header up and down ensures that the reading on the left float setting indicator (FSI) will be accurate.

21. On the left side of the float module, inspect smaller float setting indicator (FSI) (B). Arm (A) on the FSI should point to the number 2.

- If arm (A) on FSI (B) points to a value higher than 2, the float is too heavy.
- If arm (A) on FSI (B) points to a value lower than 2, the float is too light.

NOTE:

The larger numbers are used to determine the float height setting. They are used when the header is being operated in the field.

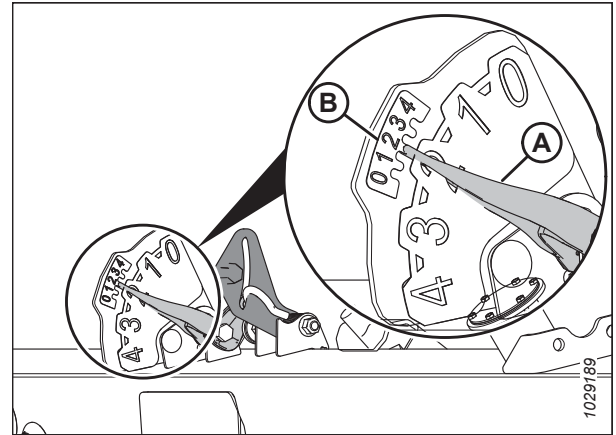


Figure 3.261: Left Float Setting Indicator

Adjusting float

22. On the left side of the float module, loosen bolts (C). Move spring locks (B) so that bolt heads (A) are accessible.
23. Increase or decrease the float on the left side of the float module as needed:
 - To increase the float, turn both left adjustment bolts (A) clockwise.
 - To decrease the float, turn both left adjustment bolts (A) counterclockwise.

NOTE:

Each pair of bolts (A) must be adjusted by the same amount.

24. Set the left float again. Refer to Step 20, page 179 for instructions.
25. Check the left FSI indicator again. Refer to Step 21, page 179 for instructions.
26. If the left float setting is not satisfactory, repeat Step 23, page 179 to Step 25, page 179 until the left float setting is satisfactory.
27. Check and adjust the right float. For instructions, refer to Step 20, page 179 to Step 26, page 179.

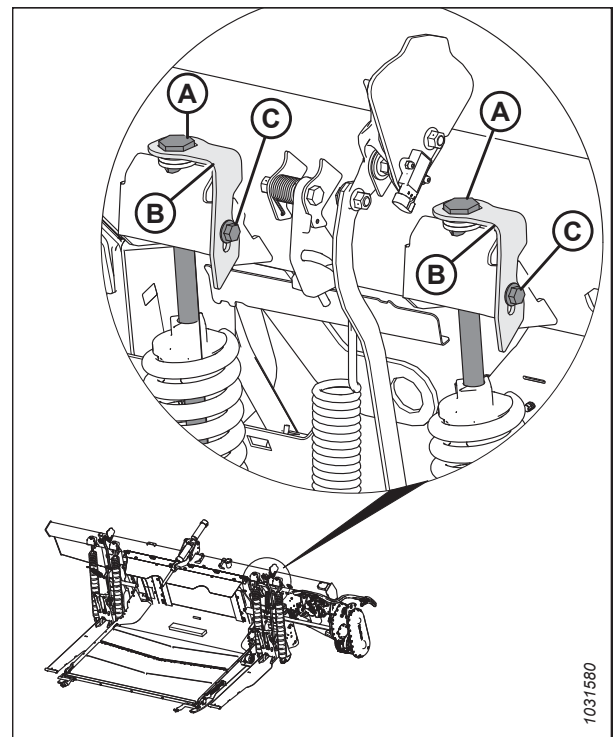


Figure 3.262: Left Float Adjustment

OPERATION

28. On both sides of the float module, lock adjustment bolts (A) with spring locks (B). Ensure that bolt heads (A) are engaged in the spring lock cutouts. Tighten bolts (C) to secure the spring locks.

Releasing float setting levers

29. Start the engine.



WARNING

Do NOT use the multi-tool to release the float setting lever. Using the multi-tool to release the float setting lever can result in injury.

30. Use the combine to fully lower the header. This will cause the left and right float setting levers to return to their original positions.
31. The wing balance will need to be adjusted. Proceed to [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#).

Changing Float Spring Configuration

The float springs are configured according to the weight of the header. You may have to change the float spring configuration if optional equipment is added or removed from the header.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

This procedure is not required for the FD225 header; the float spring should be placed in the back hole of the float lever.

NOTE:

This procedure is not required for the FD240 double-knife header; the spring should be placed in the front hole.

NOTE:

This procedure is not required for the FD241 double-knife header; the spring should be placed in the front hole.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

2. Calculate the float spring configuration as follows:

- Determine the total header weight based on Table 3.18, page 181.

Example:

FD235 single knife base header weight [2600 kg (5750 lb.)] + vertical knives [70 kg (150 lb.)] + no options = 2670 kg (5900 lb.)

- Compare the total weight to Table 3.19, page 182 and determine if the float springs should be installed in front hole (A) or back hole (B) in the float lever.

Example:

FD235 base header [2600 kg (5750 lb.)] + vertical knives [70 kg (150 lb.)] + no options = 2670 kg (5900 lb.)

This FD235 is in the lighter weight range, and therefore the float springs must be installed in the back hole of the float levers.

If you add the optional upper cross auger [180 kg (400 lb.)] and the transport [360 kg (800 lb.)], the total weight will increase to 3210 kg (7100 lb.), and you will have to move the float springs to the front hole in the float levers because the header is now in the heavier weight range.

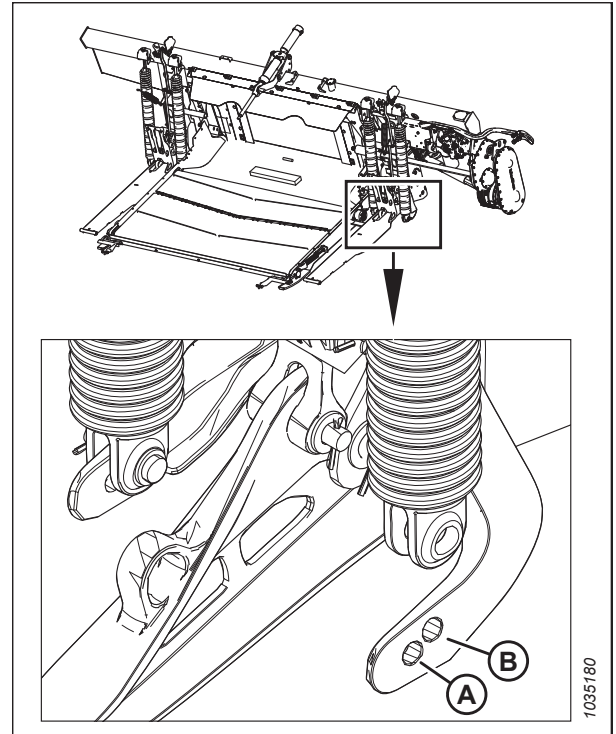


Figure 3.263: Left Float Spring – Installed in Rear Float Lever Hole

Table 3.18 Header Weight Calculator

Total weight = Header weight without dividers and options (A) + one divider option (B) + sum of optional equipment (C) and (D).		
Category	Description	Weight
(A) Base Header – select one	FD225 single knife	N/A. Use the back hole on the float lever.
	FD230 single knife	2400 kg (5300 lb.)
	FD235 single knife	2600 kg (5750 lb.)
	FD235 double knife	2700 kg (5950 lb.)
	FD240 single knife	2800 kg (6150 lb.)
	FD240 double knife	N/A. Use the front hole on the float lever.
	FD241 double knife	N/A. Use the front hole on the float lever.
	FD245 double knife	3225 kg (7100 lb.)
	FD250 double knife	3400 kg (7500 lb.)
(B) Dividers – select one , if installed	Rice divider rods	20 kg (50 lb.)
	Vertical knives	185 kg (407 lb.) ⁵⁷
(C) Optional Upper Cross Auger – select one if installed ⁵⁸	9.1 m (30 ft.) two piece auger	142 kg (312 lb.)

57. Weight includes hydraulic package for FD250.

58. Add 24.5 kg (54 lbs) for hydraulic plumbing if required.

OPERATION

Table 3.18 Header Weight Calculator (continued)

	10.7 m (35 ft.) two piece	156 kg (343 lb.)
	12.2 m (40 ft.) three piece	168 kg (370 lb.)
	12.5 m (41 ft.) two piece	163 kg (360 lb.)
	13.7 m (45 ft.) three piece	191 kg (420 lb.)
	15.2 m (50 ft.) three piece	212 kg (468 lb.)
(D) Other Options – add any installed options	Transport	360 kg (800 lb.)
	Contour wheels	205 kg (450 lb.)
	Stabilizer wheels	160 kg (350 lb.)

Table 3.19 Float Spring Installation Location in Float Lever

Header	Lighter Weight Range	Float Lever Hole	Heavier Weight Range	Float Lever Hole
FD225 single-knife	Use the back hole on the float lever.			
FD230 single-knife	2400–2675 kg (5300–5900 lb.)	Back	2676–3215 kg 5901–7100 lb.	Front
FD235 single-knife	2600–3050 kg (5750–6700 lb.)	Back	3051–3415 kg 6701–7550 lb.	Front
FD235 double-knife	2700–3150 kg (5950–6900 lb.)	Back	3151–3515 kg (6901–7750 lb.)	Front
FD240 single-knife	2800–3200 kg (6150–7000 lb.)	Back	3201–3615 kg (7001–7950 lb.)	Front
FD240 double-knife	Use the front hole on the float lever.			
FD241 double-knife	Use the front hole on the float lever.			
FD245 double-knife	3225–3475 kg (7100–7650 lb.)	Back	3476–4050 kg (7651–8900 lb.)	Front
FD250 double-knife	3400–3800 kg (7500–8350 lb.)	Back	3801–4215 kg (8351–9300 lb.)	Front

OPERATION

3. Lock the header float by pulling the float lock handle into position (A) on both sides of the float module.

NOTE:

The float is unlocked when the handle is in position (B).

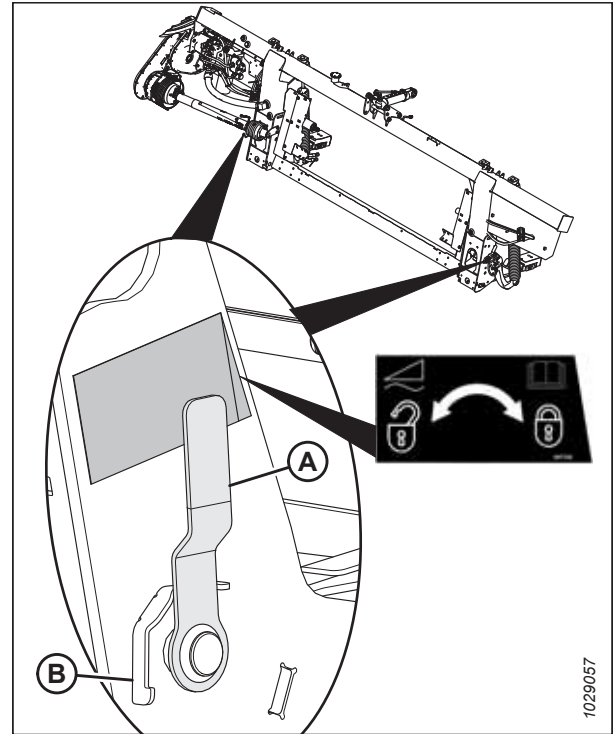


Figure 3.264: Header Float Lock in Locked Position

4. Access float spring adjustment bolts (A) by loosening bolts (C) and rotating spring locks (B) forward.
5. Loosen adjustment bolts (A) equally until the springs are loose.

NOTE:

The adjustment bolts will rise slightly above the washers when the springs are loose.

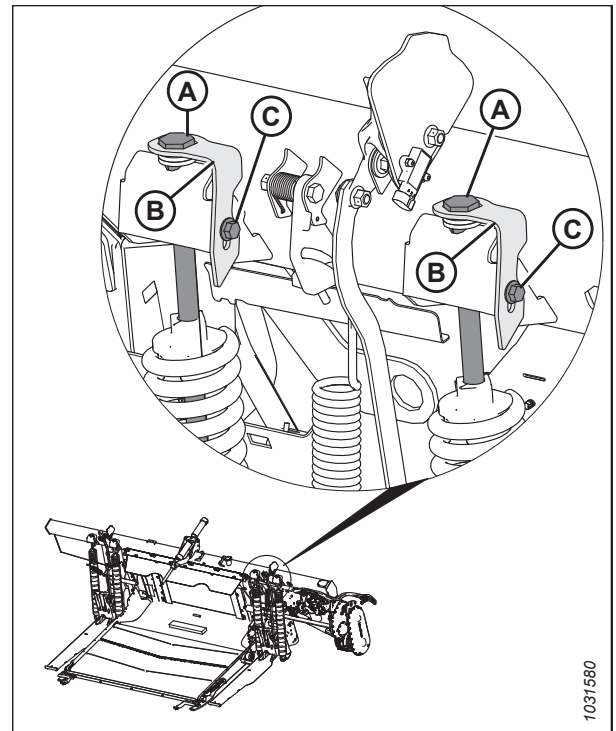


Figure 3.265: Float Adjustment – Left

OPERATION

6. Remove cotter pin (C) from pin (A).
7. Remove pin (A) and washers (B).

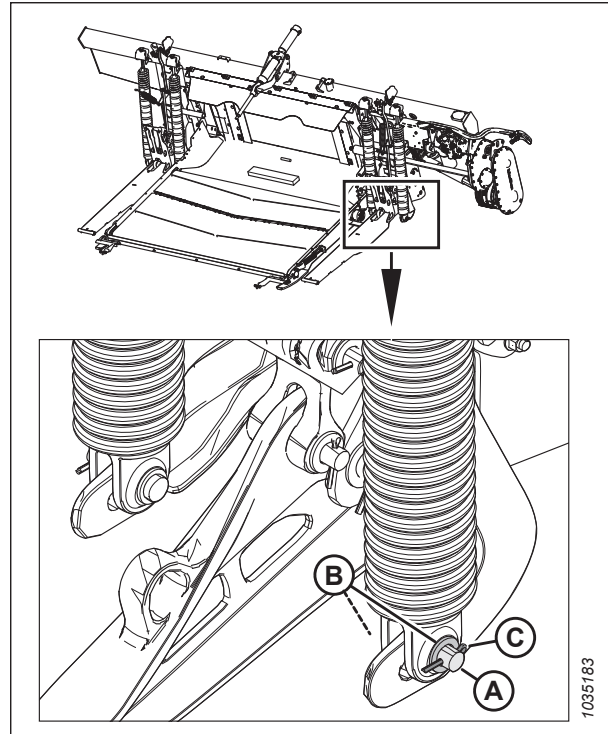


Figure 3.266: Left Float Spring – Installed in Rear Float Lever Hole

8. Align spring to the front (A) or back (B) float lever hole according to the float requirements in Table [3.19, page 182](#).

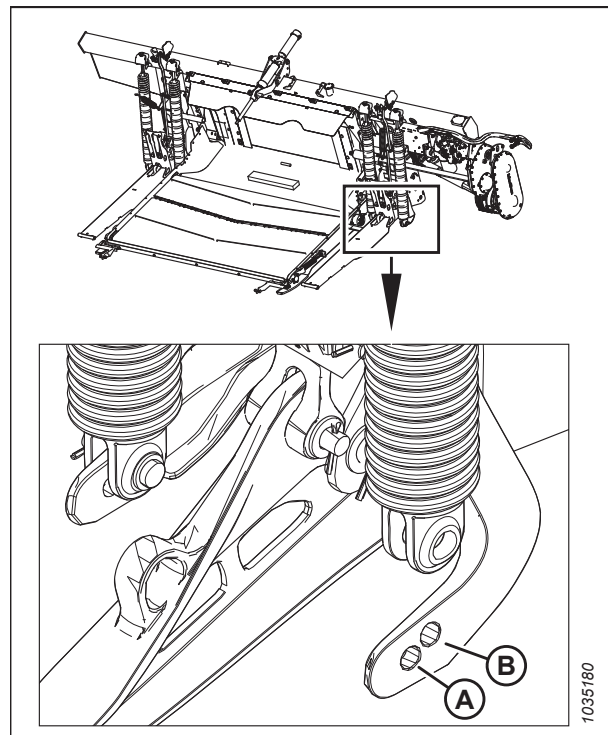


Figure 3.267: Left Float Spring – Installed in Rear Float Lever Hole

OPERATION

9. Install pin (A) with two washers (B) into the new hole.
10. Secure the pin with cotter pin (C).
11. Repeat Step 6, [page 184](#) to Step 10, [page 185](#) for other spring (D).

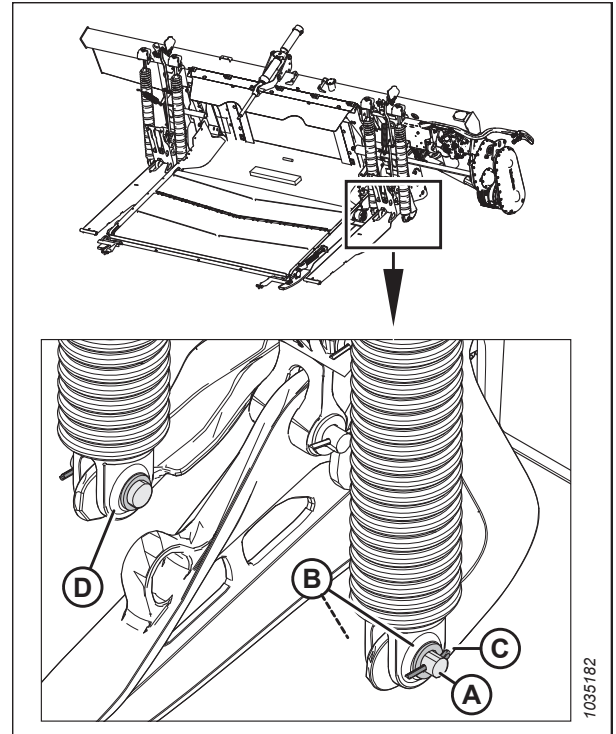


Figure 3.268: Left Float Spring – Installed in Rear Float Lever Hole

12. Retighten adjustment bolts (A) an equal amount to ensure the float springs are the same length.
13. Repeat Step 4, [page 183](#) to Step 12, [page 185](#) on the pair of float springs (B) on the opposite side of the float module.
14. Check the float. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float](#), [page 175](#).

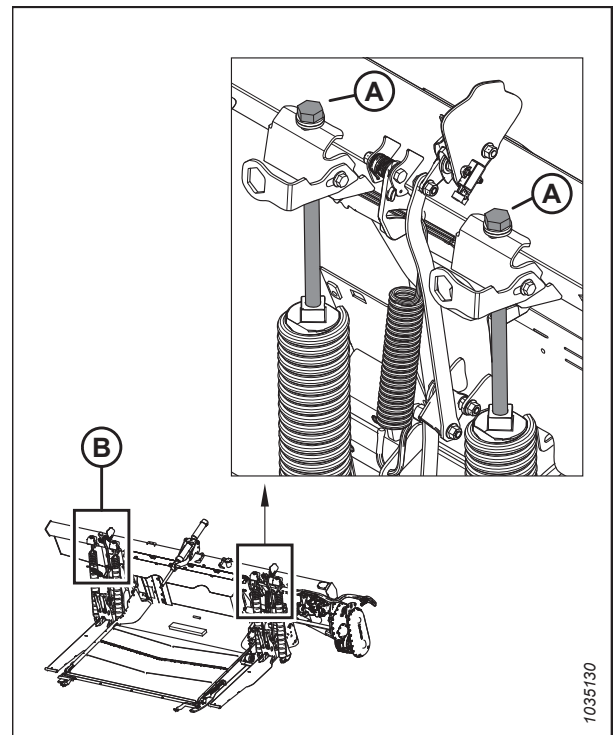


Figure 3.269: Float Adjustment – Left

Locking/Unlocking Header Float

Two header float locks—one on each side of the float module—lock and unlock the header float system.

IMPORTANT:

The float locks must be engaged when the header is being transported with the float module attached so there is no relative movement between the float module and the header. The float locks also must be locked when detaching the float module from the combine to enable the feeder house to release the float module.

To disengage (unlock) the float locks, pull float lock handle (A) into position (B). In this position, the header is unlocked, and can float with respect to the float module.

To engage (lock) the float locks, push float lock handle (A) into position (C). In this position, the header cannot move with respect to the float module.

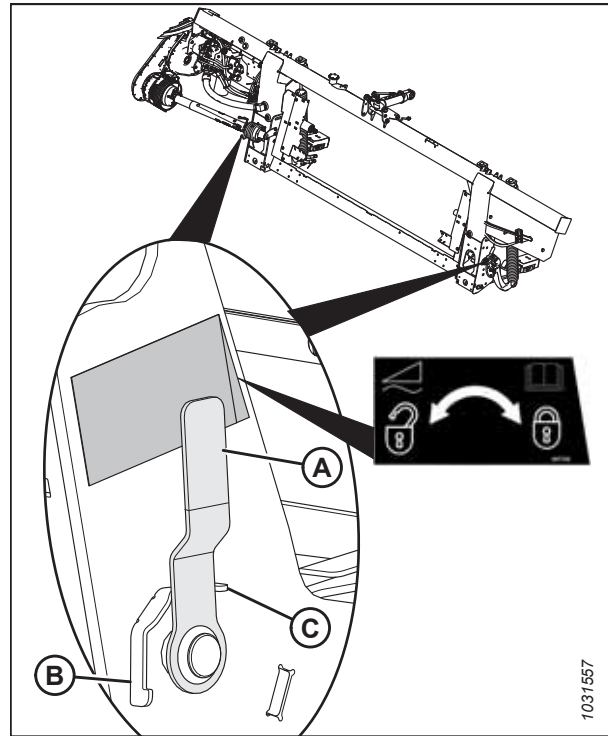


Figure 3.270: Float Lock – in Locked Position

Locking/Unlocking Header Wings

Locking the wings allows the FlexDraper® header to be operated as a rigid header with the cutterbar straight. Unlocking the wings allows the three sections of the cutterbar to move independently to follow the ground contours.

1. **Locking:** Lock the wing by moving spring handle (A) to the top of the slot as shown.

NOTE:

There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged. If the lock mechanism does not engage, proceed to Step 2, [page 187](#).

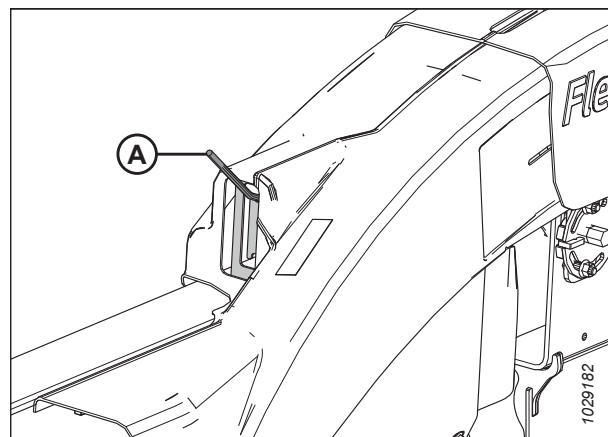


Figure 3.271: Wing in Locked Position

OPERATION

Unlocking: Unlock the wing by moving spring handle (A) to the bottom of the slot as shown.

NOTE:

There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged. If the lock mechanism does not disengage, proceed to Step 2, [page 187](#).

Open the left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

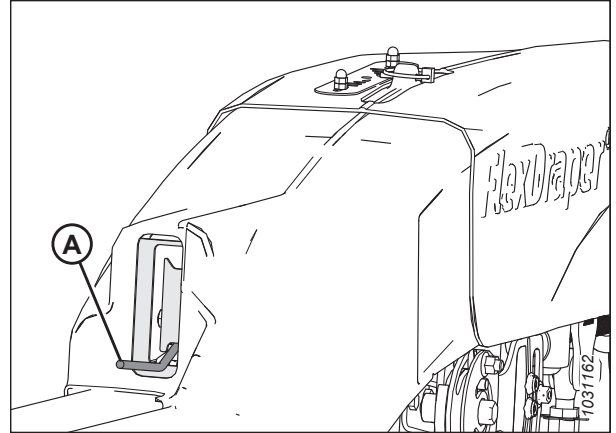


Figure 3.272: Wing in Unlocked Position

2. Remove hairpin (A) securing the multi-tool to the holder bracket on the left endsheet.
3. Remove multi-tool (B) and reinstall the hairpin to the tool holder.

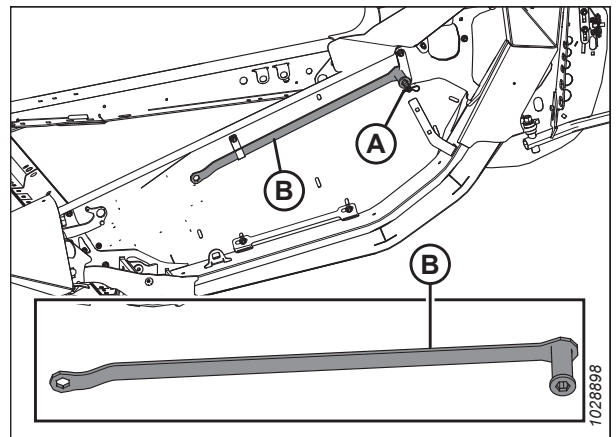


Figure 3.273: Left Endsheets

4. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

NOTE:

Parts have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

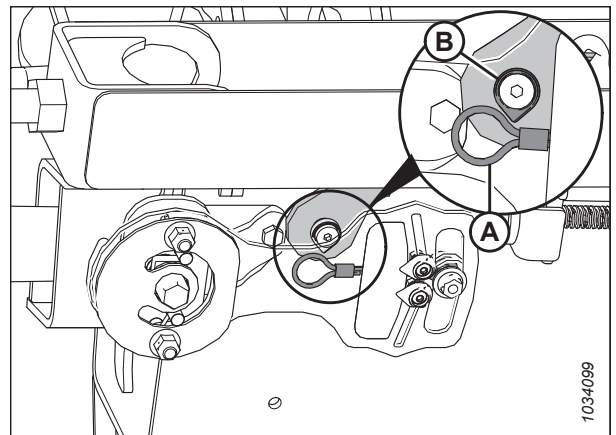


Figure 3.274: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

OPERATION

5. Use multi-tool (A) on wing balance plate (B) to move the wing up/down until you hear the lock click.

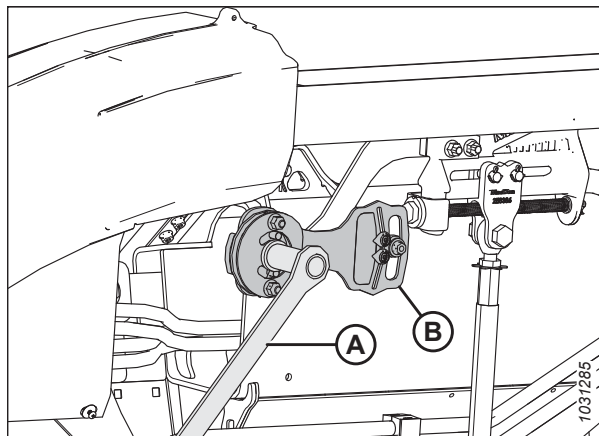


Figure 3.275: Wing Lock Mechanism

6. Detach flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).

NOTE:

Parts have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

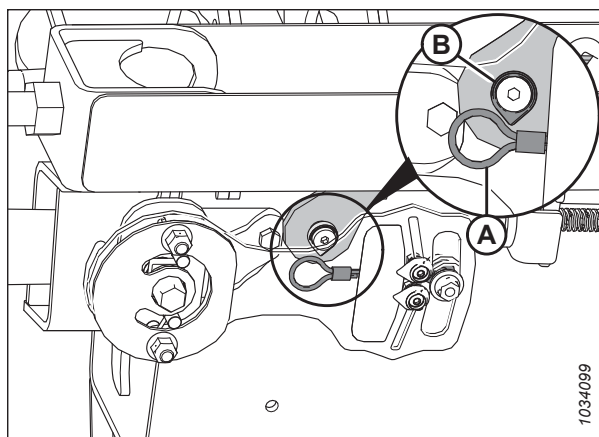


Figure 3.276: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

7. Return multi-tool (B) to its storage position, and secure with hairpin (A).
8. Close the left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

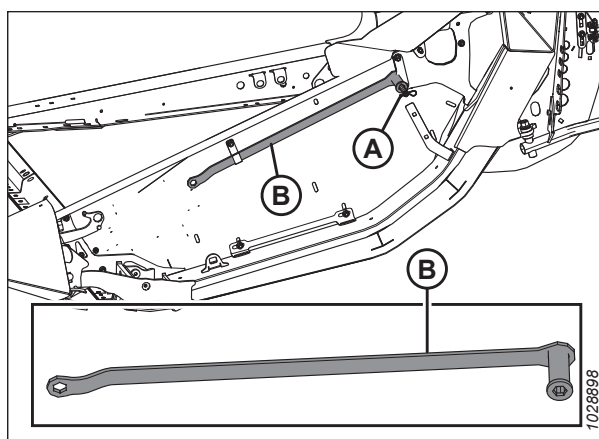


Figure 3.277: Left Endsheets

Operating in Flex Mode

The header is designed to operate with the cutterbar on the ground. The three sections move independently to follow the ground contours. When the wings are unlocked, they are free to move up and down.

Unlock the wings as follows:

1. Move spring handle (A) in the lower slot to unlock the wing. You should hear the lock disengage.
2. If the lock link does not disengage, move the wing by raising and lowering the header, changing the header angle, or driving the combine until it disengages.
3. If the lock still does not disengage, continue to next step.
4. Open the left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields](#), page 35.

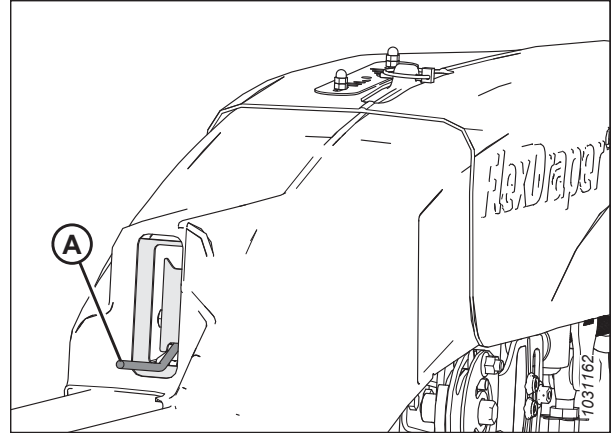


Figure 3.278: Wing in Unlocked Position

5. Remove hairpin (A) securing the multi-tool to bracket on the left endsheet.
6. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin onto the bracket.

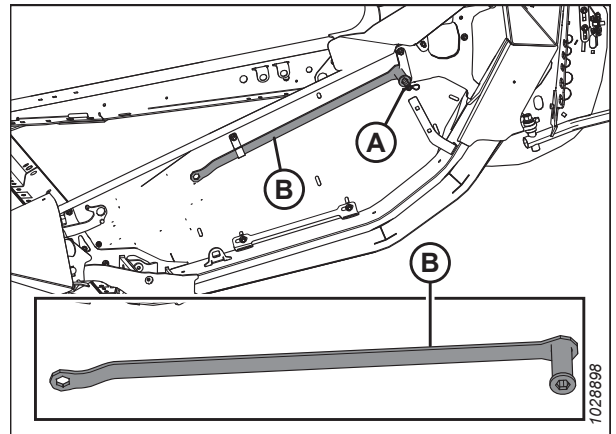


Figure 3.279: Left Endsheets

7. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

NOTE:

Parts have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

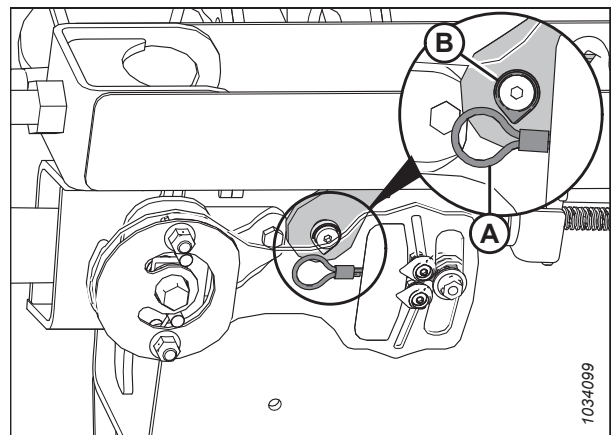


Figure 3.280: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

OPERATION

8. Use multi-tool (A) on plate (B) to move the wing up and down until the lock disengages.

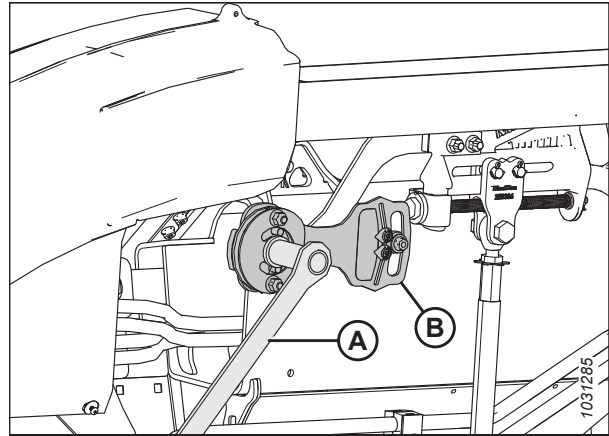


Figure 3.281: Wing Lock in Unlocked Position

9. Detach flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).

NOTE:

Parts have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

10. Return multi-tool (A) to its storage position and reinstall the linkage cover.
11. If necessary, balance the wing. For instructions, refer to [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#).

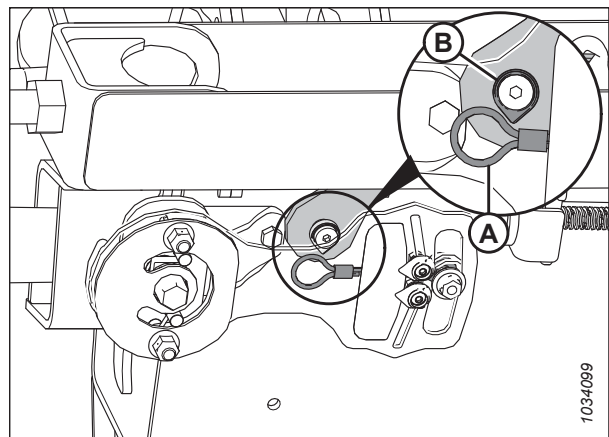


Figure 3.282: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

NOTE:

With the header attached to a combine, wings locked and straight, lynch pin (A) should point to the center of indicator (B). If not, calibrate the indicator by loosening bolts (C) that fasten to the shield and adjust the indicators position. While harvesting with the wings unlocked, the indicator should periodically move through the range. If the indicator remains stuck at either end of the range, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#) and [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#).

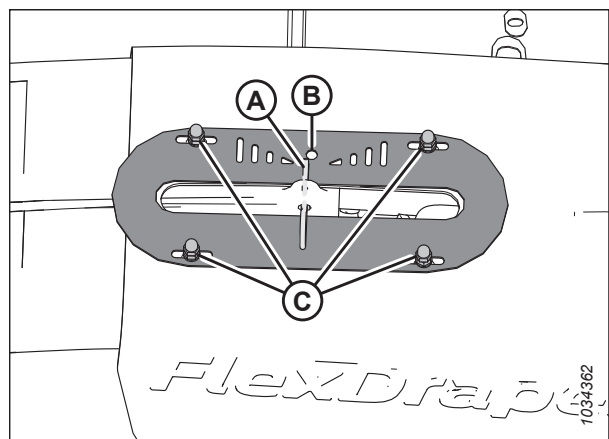


Figure 3.283: Wing Movement Indicator on Top of Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side Shown

12. Close the left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

Operating in Rigid Mode

The header is designed to operate with the cutterbar on the ground. Locking the wings allows the header to be operated as a rigid header with the cutterbar straight. When the three sections of the header are locked, the cutterbar is rigid and moves up and down at the same time.

Lock the wings as follows:

1. Move spring handle (A) in the upper slot to lock the wing. The locking should be audible.
2. If the lock link does not engage, move the wing by raising and lowering the header, changing the header angle, or driving the combine until it engages.
3. If the lock still does not engage, continue to Step 4, [page 191](#).
4. Remove the flex linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 44](#).

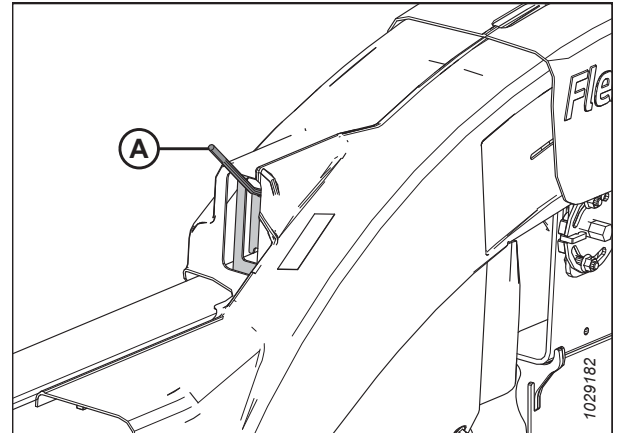


Figure 3.284: Wing in Locked Position

5. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool to the holder bracket on the left endsheet.
6. Remove multi-tool (B) from its storage location, and reinstall the hairpin on the multi-tool holder.

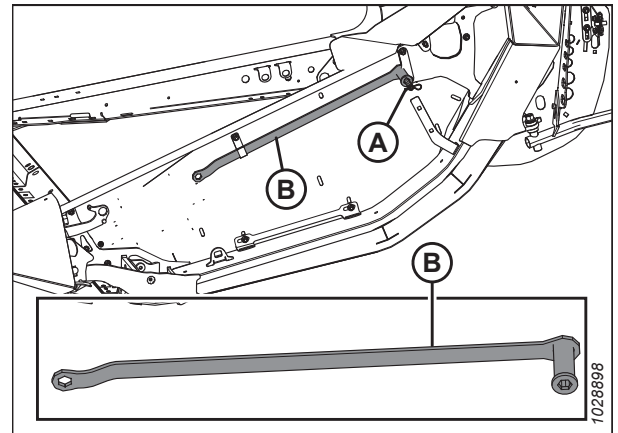


Figure 3.285: Left Endsheets

7. Use multi-tool (A) on plate (B) to move the wing up and down until the lock engages.
8. Return multi-tool (A) to its storage position, and reinstall the linkage cover.
9. Reinstall the flex linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 45](#).

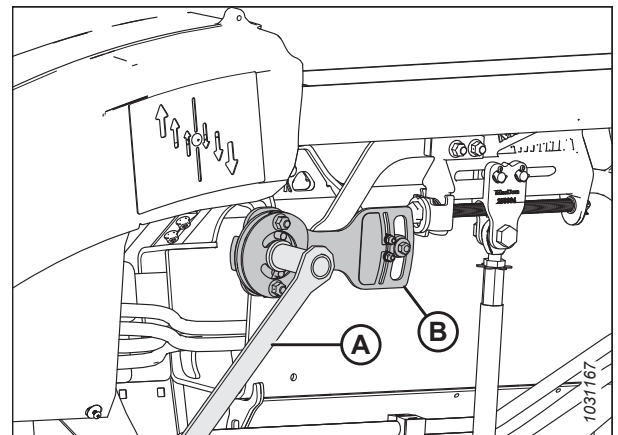


Figure 3.286: Wing in Locked Position

Disabling Flex Frown Limiter

Disabling the flex frown limiter increases the flex range which can help the header follow ground contours on uneven terrain, and may be preferred when a close reel-to-cutterbar relationship is not critical, such as when harvesting tall crops like standing cereals or canola.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

NOTE:

When the flex frown limiter plate is removed, the reel to cutterbar clearance will not be able to be as close, and will require adjustment. Refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#) for specifications.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
3. Extend the hydraulic center-link fully.
4. Lower the header fully.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Remove two bolts (A).
7. Remove flex frown limiter plate (B).

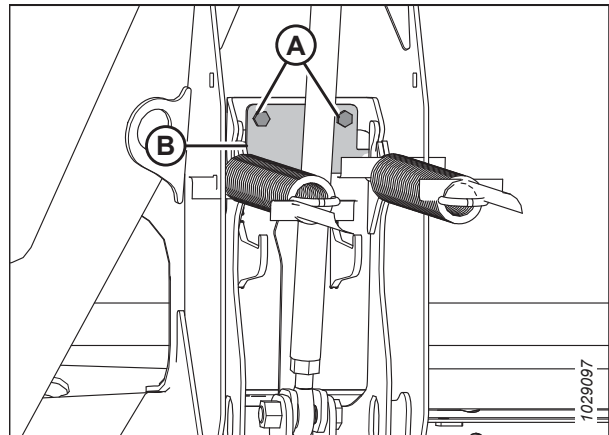


Figure 3.287: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

8. Flip limiter plate (B) upside down.
9. Install flex frown limiter plate (B).
10. Reinstall two bolts (A).
11. Repeat Step [6, page 192](#) to Step [10, page 192](#) on the opposite side.
12. To avoid cutting off reel fingers when the header forms a frown shape, adjust the reel finger clearance, refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#) for specifications.

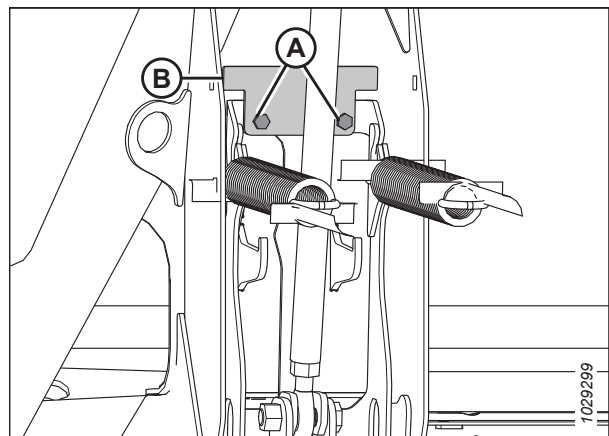


Figure 3.288: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

Enabling Flex Frown Limiter

Enabling the flex frown limiter limits the header's ability to frown, allowing the reel to be very close to the cutterbar. A close reel-to-cutterbar relationship is ideal when harvesting short crops such as lentils, lodged peas, or short soybeans.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

NOTE:

When installing the flex float limiter plate, the reel to cutterbar clearance will be closer and should be adjusted. Refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#) for specifications.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Extend the hydraulic center-link fully.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Remove two bolts (A).
7. Remove flex frown limiter plate (B).

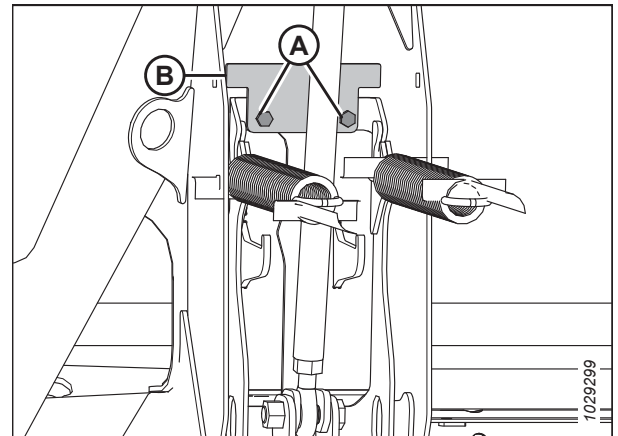


Figure 3.289: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

8. Flip limiter plate (B) upside down.
9. Install flex frown limiter plate (B).
10. Reinstall two bolts (A).
11. Repeat on the opposite side.
12. Adjust the reel finger clearance, refer to [Adjusting Clearance between Reel and Cutterbar, page 631](#) for specifications.

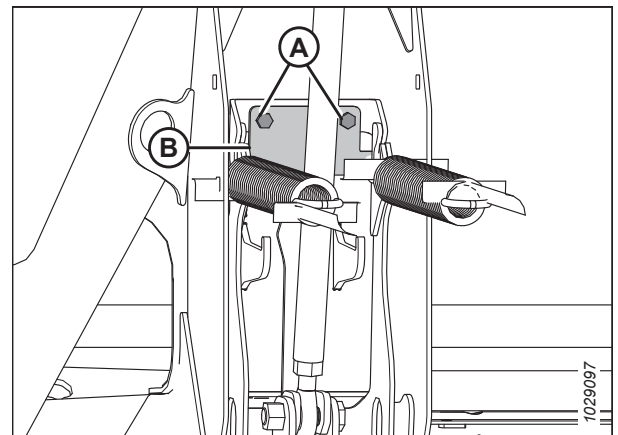


Figure 3.290: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance

Wing balance is important for ground following. Operators should adjust the balance of each wing if the header is not following the ground contours properly.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

IMPORTANT:

To ensure correct wing balance readings, make sure the header float is set properly before proceeding. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#). The float module must be sitting level before performing any adjustments.

NOTE:

The header wings are balanced when it takes an equal amount of force to move a wing up or down.

If a header wing has a tendency to be in a smile (A) or a frown (B) position, and the header is missing crop or pushing dirt, the wing balance may require adjusting.

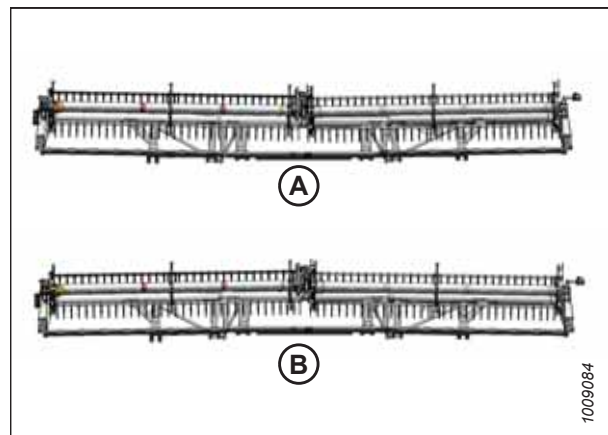


Figure 3.291: Wing Imbalance

1. Adjust the reel fore-aft position so that the indicator on left indicator bracket (A) is at position 6.
2. Lower the reel fully.

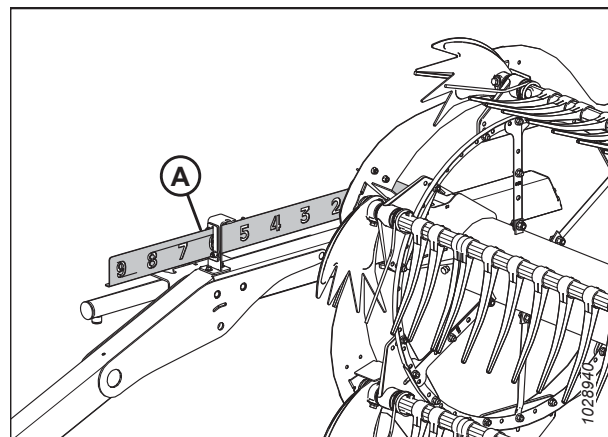


Figure 3.292: Fore-Aft Position

OPERATION

3. Adjust center-link (A) so that indicator (B) is at position **D** on the gauge.
4. If installed, move the transport wheels or contour wheels so that they are supported by the header. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 164](#) or [Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch, page 165](#).
5. Park the combine on a level surface.
6. Position the header until it is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

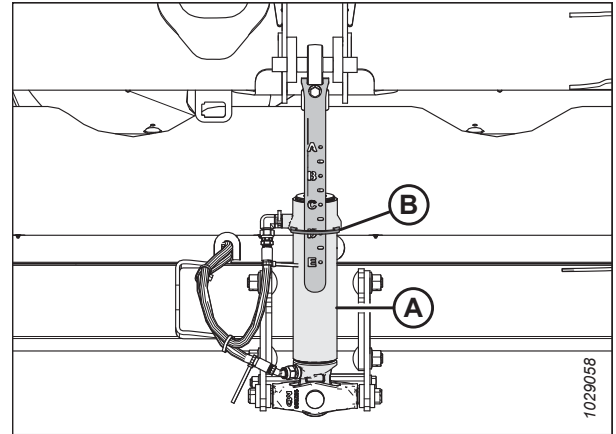


Figure 3.293: Center-Link

7. Locate spirit level (A) on top of the float module frame. Ensure that the bubble is in the center. If adjustment is required, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#).
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
9. Remove the linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 44](#).

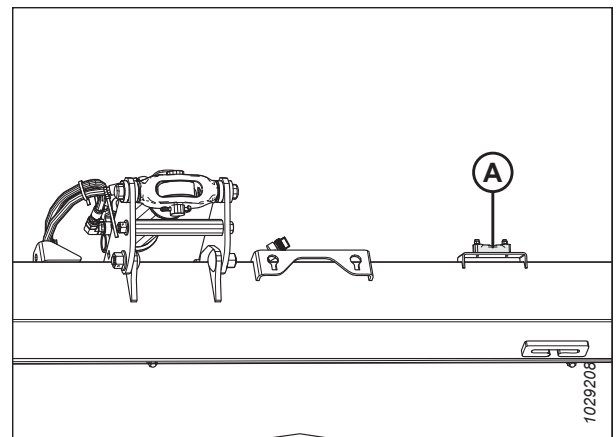


Figure 3.294: Spirit Level

10. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).
- NOTE:**
Some parts have been made transparent to show the cable lock.
11. Open the left header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

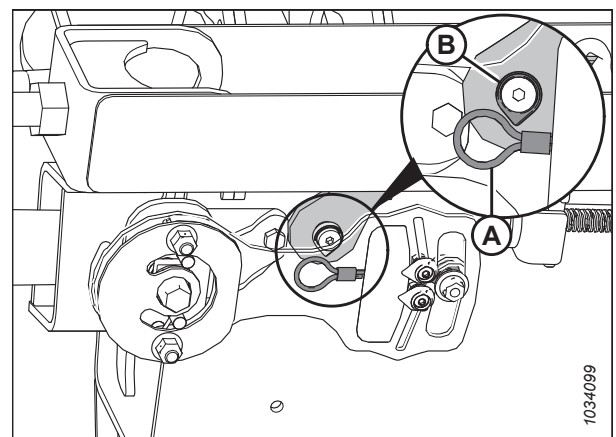


Figure 3.295: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

OPERATION

12. Remove hairpin (A) securing the multi-tool to tool holder bracket on the left endsheet.
13. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin to the tool holder.

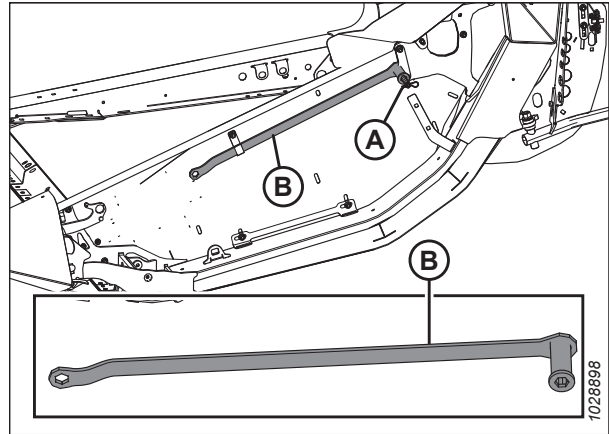


Figure 3.296: Left Endsheets

14. Unlock the wing you are checking by moving spring handle (A) to the lower **(UNLOCK)** position. Unlock **ONLY** the wing you are checking. Ensure the opposite wing is locked.

NOTE:

There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged.

15. If the internal lock mechanism does not engage, move the wing with multi-tool (B) until you hear an audible click.

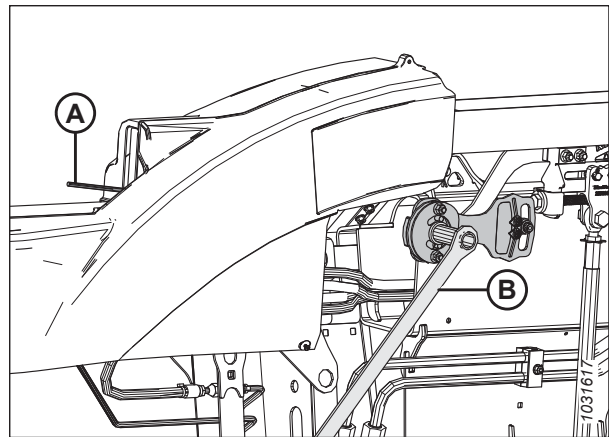


Figure 3.297: Wing Unlocked Position

16. Ensure float checking toggles (A) are disengaged (down) on both sides of the float module.
17. Ensure float locks (B) are engaged (up) on both sides of the float module.

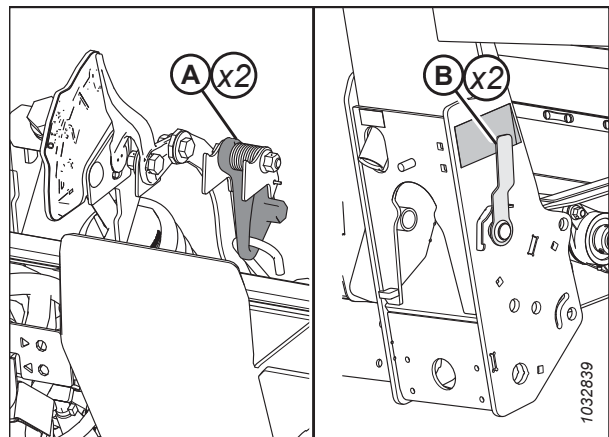


Figure 3.298: Checker Plate Assembly

OPERATION

18. On the flex checker plate, pinch indicators (A) and (B) together with your fingers.
19. Use multi-tool (C) to rotate the flex checker plate up until the pin reaches the end of the slot. Lower indicator (B) will move down to give the first reading.
20. Use multi-tool (C) to rotate the flex checker plate down until pin reaches the end of the slot. Upper indicator (A) will move up to give the second reading.

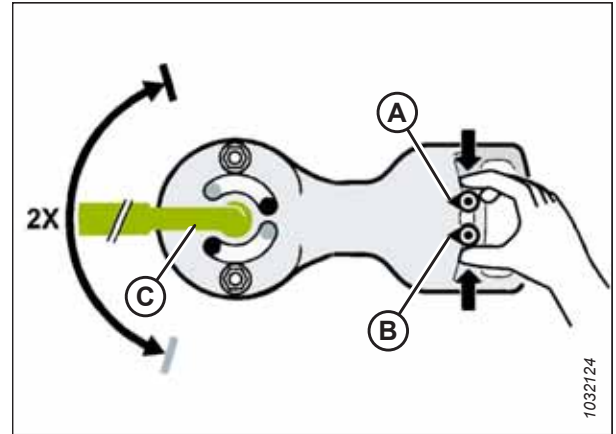


Figure 3.299: Wing Balance Adjustment – Left Side Shown

21. Interpret the reading on the flex checker plate as follows:
 - If the wing is too light (A), make it heavier by turning adjuster bolt (D) to move clevis (E) in direction (F). Recheck the wing balance. Adjust as required until wing is balanced (C), and then proceed to the next step.
 - If the wing is too heavy (B), make it lighter by turning adjuster bolt (D) to move clevis (E) in direction (G). Recheck the wing balance. Adjust as required until wing is balanced (C), and then proceed to the next step.
 - If the wing is balanced (C), no action is required. Proceed to the next step.
22. Move the spring handle to the upper **(LOCK)** position.
23. If the lock does not engage, move the wing up and down with multi-tool until it locks.

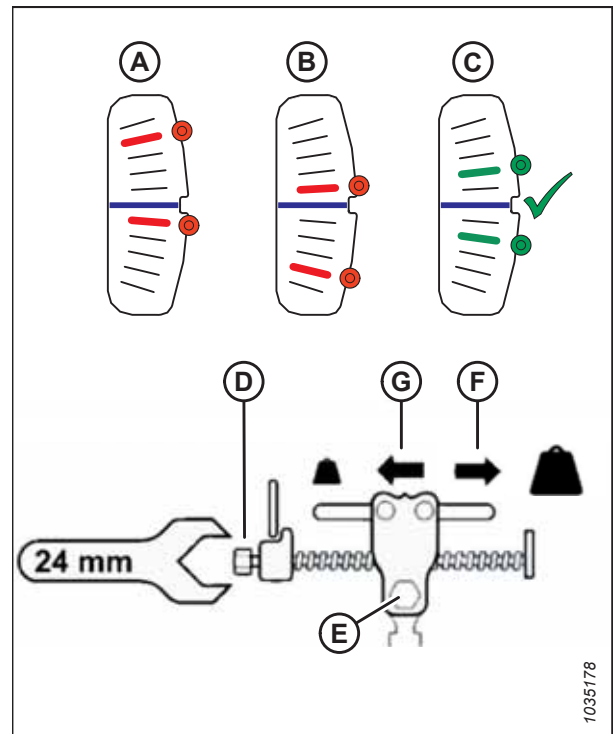


Figure 3.300: Wing Balance Adjustment – Left Side Shown

OPERATION

24. Remove flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).

IMPORTANT:

The flex checker cable may be damaged if it is left in place.

25. Repeat the procedure on the opposite side.

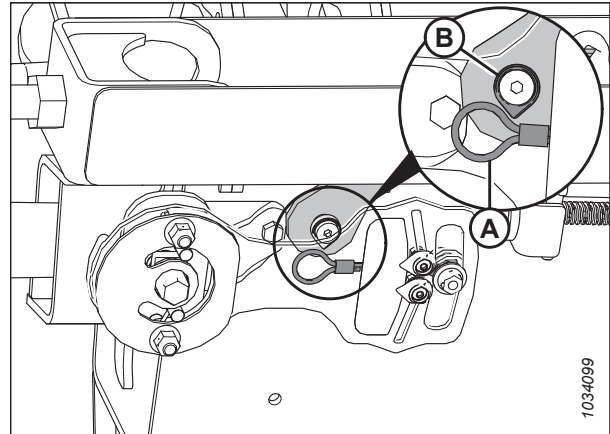


Figure 3.301: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

26. Return multi-tool (B) to its storage position, and secure it with hairpin (A).

27. Reinstall the linkage covers. For instructions, refer to [Installing Outboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 46](#) or [Installing Inboard Flex Linkage Covers, page 45](#).

NOTE:

Adjustment to the main float may be required to maintain good wing balance when operating in the field. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).

28. If the cutterbar is not straight when the wings are in lock mode, then further adjustments are required. Contact your MacDon Dealer.

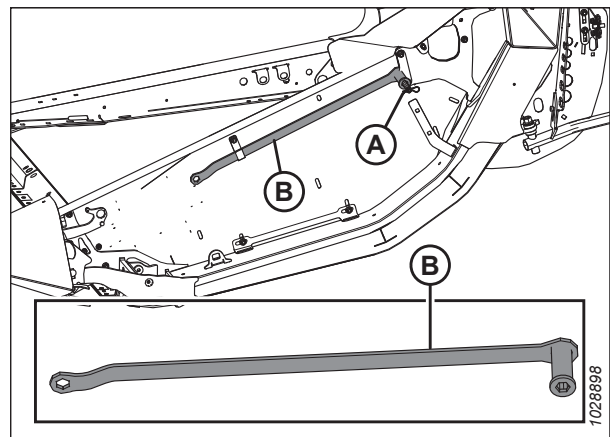


Figure 3.302: Left Endsheets

3.9.5 Header Angle

Header angle is adjustable to accommodate different crop conditions and/or soil types and can be adjusted using the center-link between the combine and the header.

Refer to [Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 200](#) for combine-specific adjustment details.

Header angle (A) is the angle between the header and the ground.

The header angle controls distance (B) between the cutterbar knife and the ground and is critical when cutting crop at ground level.

Adjusting the header angle pivots the header at the point of skid shoe/ground contact (C).

Guard angle (D) is the angle between the upper surface of the cutterbar guards and the ground.

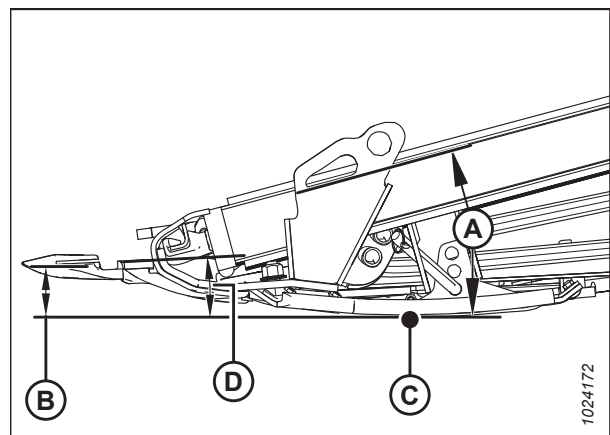


Figure 3.303: Header Angle

OPERATION

1. Set the header angle according to the type and condition of crop and soil as follows:
 - a. Use shallower settings (A) (position **A** on the indicator) for normal cutting conditions and wet soil to reduce soil buildup at the cutterbar. Shallow angle settings also minimize damage to the knife in stony fields.
 - b. Use steeper settings (E) (position **E** on the indicator) for lodged crops and crops that are close to the ground such as soybeans.

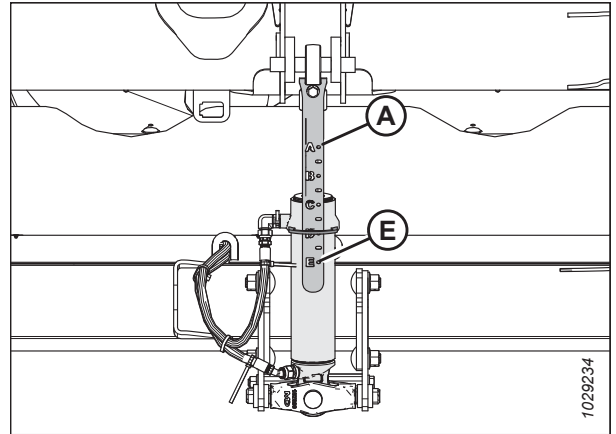


Figure 3.304: Center-Link

Shallowest angle (A) (center-link fully retracted) is at 1.7° , and produces the highest stubble when cutting on the ground.

Steepest angle (E) (center-link fully extended) is at 8.9° , and produces the lowest stubble when cutting on the ground.

Choose an angle that maximizes performance for your crop and field conditions.

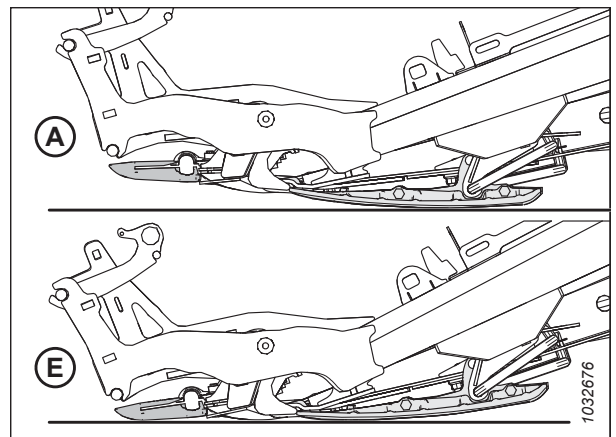


Figure 3.305: Guard Angles

Adjusting Header Angle from Combine

The header angle is adjusted from the combine cab using a switch on the operator's control handle and an indicator on the center-link or on the monitor in the cab. The header angle is determined by the length of the center-link between the combine float module and the header, or by the degree of feeder house tilt on certain combine models.

Case combines:

Case combines use control handle switches to adjust the center-link to change the header angle.

1. Press and hold SHIFT button (A) on the backside of the control handle and press switch (B) to tilt the header forward or press switch (C) to tilt the header back.



Figure 3.306: Case Combine Controls

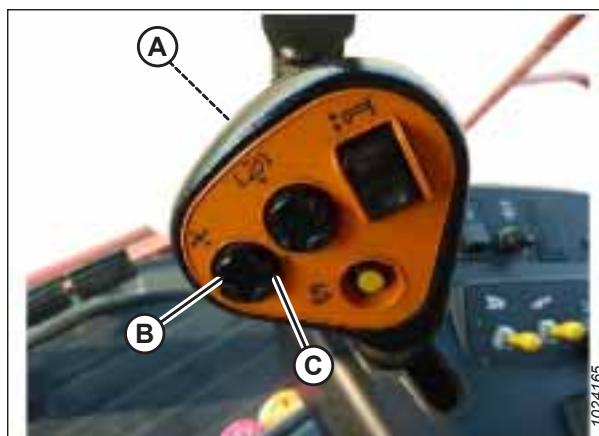


Figure 3.307: Case Combine Controls

Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson combines:

Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a Dealer-installed auxiliary rocker switch, which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality. The location of the rocker switch varies with the combine model.

1. **Gleaner A only:** Open armrest cover (A) to expose a row of switches.
2. Press Dealer-installed rocker switch (B) to HEADER TILT position.

NOTE:

Gleaner A shown in the image, other Challenger® and Massey Ferguson® combine models have rocker switch on the console (not shown).

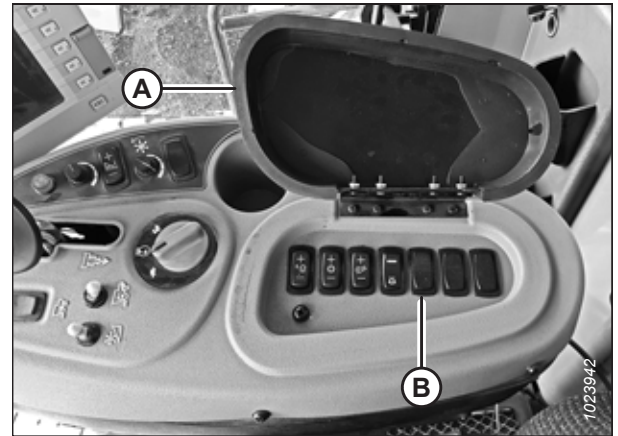


Figure 3.308: Gleaner A Console

3. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press button (A) on the control handle. To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press button (B) on the control handle.



Figure 3.309: Gleaner Controls

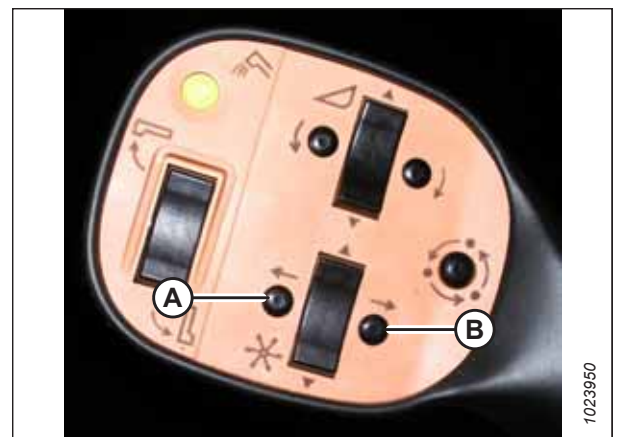


Figure 3.310: Gleaner Controls

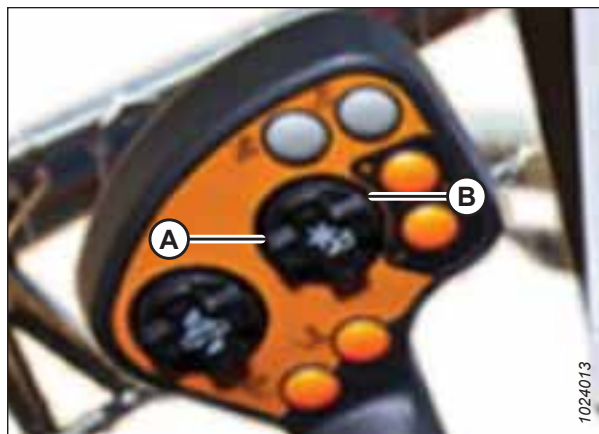


Figure 3.311: Challenger®/Massey Ferguson® Controls

CLAAS combines:

CLAAS (with factory-installed fore-aft / header tilt switch): Newer CLAAS combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a factory-installed auxiliary rocker switch which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press HOTKEY switch (A) on the operator's console to deck plate position (the header icon [B] with the arrows pointing to each other).

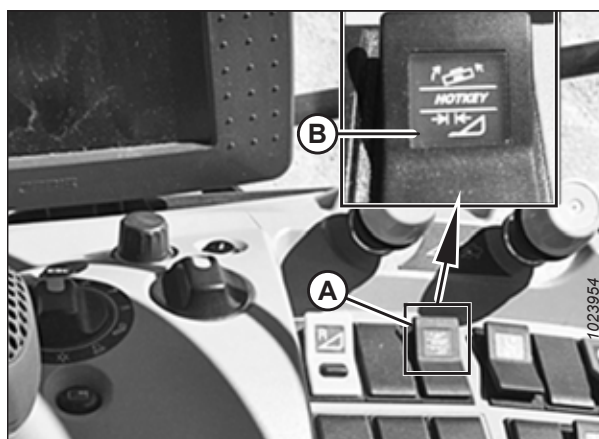


Figure 3.312: CLAAS 700 Console

OPERATION

2. Press and hold switch (A) on the rear of the control handle.
3. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (C).
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).

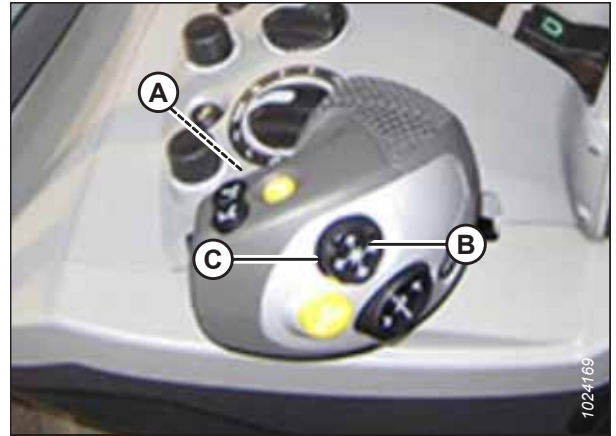


Figure 3.313: CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000 or 8000 Control Handle

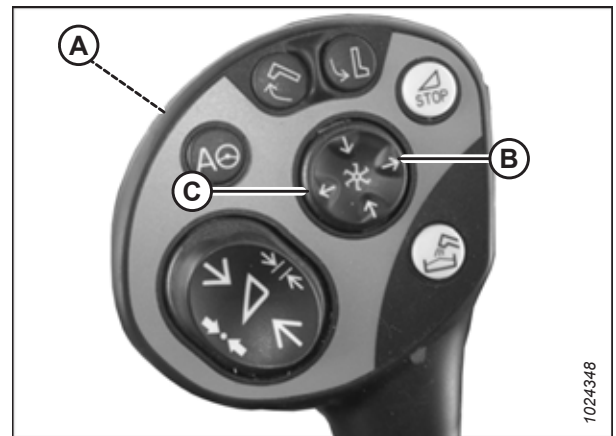


Figure 3.314: CLAAS 500, 600, or 700 Control Handle

John Deere combines:

John Deere S700: S700 Series combines can use a feeder house deckplate tilting system for feeder house fore-aft adjustment. Set the deckplate at a mid-point position, and use the MacDon fore-aft header tilt system.

IMPORTANT:

Damage to equipment may occur if both the deckplate and MacDon header tilt are adjusted to their maximum range.

OPERATION

1. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (A).
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).



Figure 3.315: John Deere 700 Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Controls

John Deere (except S700 Series): Other John Deere combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a Dealer-installed auxiliary rocker switch which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press reel fore-aft / header tilt switch (A) on the console into HEADER TILT position.



Figure 3.316: John Deere Consoles

OPERATION

2. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (A).
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).



Figure 3.317: John Deere Control Handle

New Holland combines:

New Holland combines use control handle switches to adjust the center-link to change the header angle.

1. Press and hold SHIFT button (A) on the backside of the control handle and press switch (B) to tilt the header forward (steeper angle) or switch (C) to tilt the header back (shallower angle).

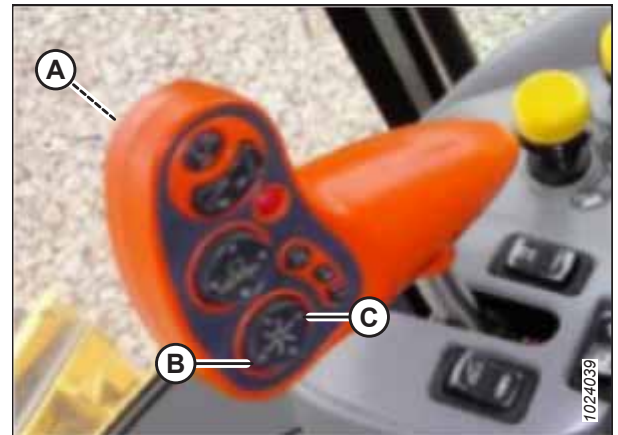


Figure 3.318: New Holland CR/CX Controls

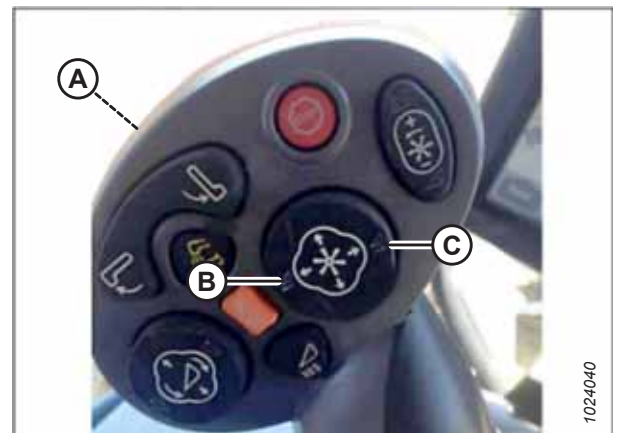


Figure 3.319: New Holland CR/CX Controls

Rostselmash combines:

Versatile combines use a combination of reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a factory-installed auxiliary rocker switch on the combine control console that toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press ON switch (A) on console to place controls in HEADER TILT mode.
2. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press button (B) on control handle. To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press button (C) on control handle.



Figure 3.320: Rostselmash Control Handle and Console

3.9.6 Reel Speed

Reel speed is one of the factors that determines how crop is moved from the cutterbar onto the drapers.

The reel performs best when it appears to be driven by the ground. It should move the cut crop evenly through the cutterbar and onto the drapers without bunching and with minimal disturbance.

In standing crop, reel speed should be slightly higher than, or equal to, the ground speed.

In flattened crop or crop that is leaning away from the cutterbar, the reel speed needs to be higher than the ground speed. To achieve this, either increase the reel speed or decrease the ground speed.

Excessive shattering of grain heads or crop loss over the header backtube may indicate that the reel speed is too high. Excessive reel speed also increases reel component wear and overloads the reel drive.

NOTE:

Excessive reel speed will also cause the reel circuit to go over relief. The reel will speed up and slow down at each bat when operating in heavy, tough, and lodged crops. Reducing the reel speed, so it is closer to the ground speed, will still allow the reel to lift the crop while not trying to pull it out of the ground. This will also reduce seed loss from the reel trying to comb through the crop, instead of just lifting it.

For recommended reel speeds in specific crops and conditions, refer to [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#).

The reel speed is adjustable using the controls in the combine cab. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for adjustment details.

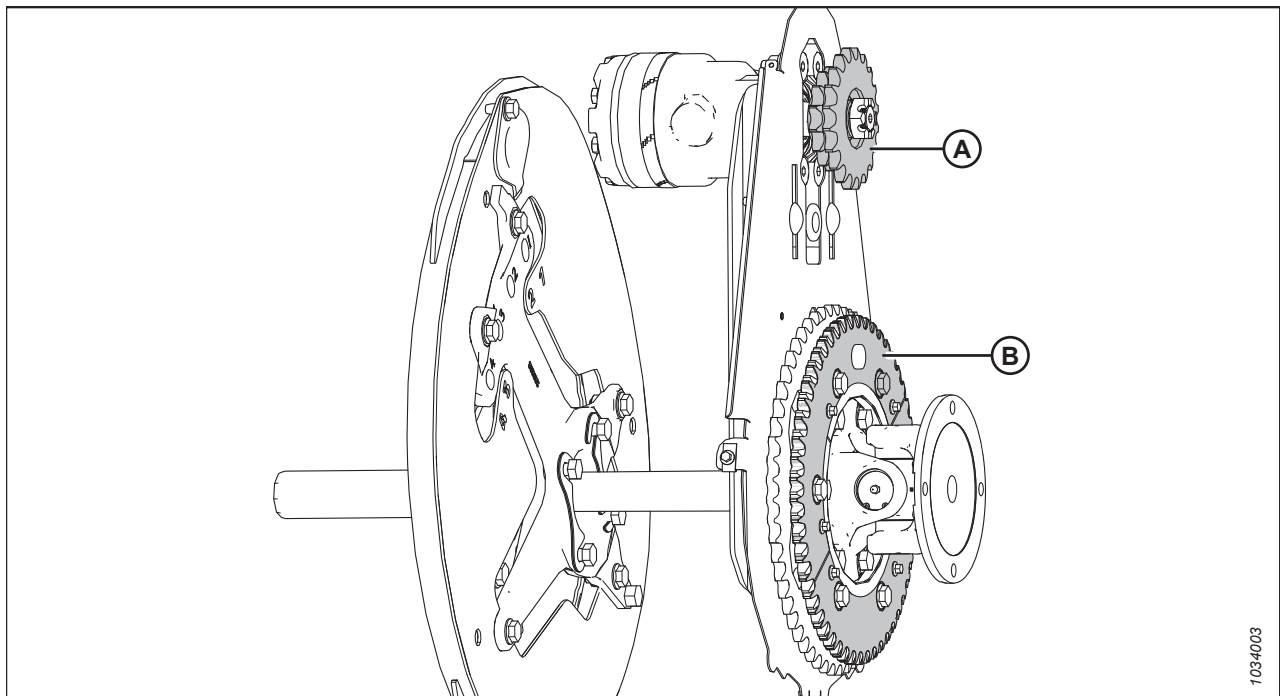
Optional Reel Drive Sprockets

Optional sprockets for use in special crop conditions are available as an alternative to the factory-installed single sprocket.

The header is factory-equipped with a 19-tooth reel drive single sprocket, which is suitable for most crops. Replacing the 19-tooth reel drive single sprocket with optional dual reel drive sprocket (A) will provide more torque to the reel in heavy cutting conditions. With the optional dual reel drive sprocket installed, an optional 52-tooth sprocket (B) can also be added on top of the existing 56-tooth lower sprocket that will allow for higher reel speed in light crops when operating at increased ground speed. With these two optional sprockets installed, switching from high-torque to high-speed and vice versa will be quick and easy. For sprocket information, refer to [Table 3.20, page 207](#), and contact your MacDon Dealer for ordering information.

OPERATION

Figure 3.321: Reel Drive with Optional Sprockets



A - Dual Reel Drive Sprocket (MD #273451, MD #273452, or MD #273453)⁵⁹

B - 52-Tooth Sprocket (MD #273689)⁶⁰

Table 3.20 Optional Sprockets

Sprocket	Machine Hydraulics	Combine	Application	Optional Drive Sprocket
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	13.79 MPa (2000 psi)	Gleaner Transverse Rotary	Combining down rice	10/20 tooth
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	17.24 MPa (2500 psi)	CLAAS 500, 700 Series, Challenger® Axial Rotary	Combining down rice	12/20 tooth
Lower sprocket (B)	—	All	Light crops	52 tooth

Table 3.21 Optional Sprockets

Sprocket	Machine Hydraulics	Combine	Application	Optional Drive Sprocket
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	13.79 MPa (2000 psi)	Case IH 7010, 8010, 7120, 8120, 88 Series	Combining down rice	10/20 tooth
Lower sprocket (B)	—	All	Light crops	52 tooth

Table 3.22 Optional Sprockets

Sprocket	Machine Hydraulics	Combine	Application	Optional Drive Sprocket
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	20.68 MPa (3000 psi)	New Holland CR, CX	Combining down rice	14/20 tooth
Lower sprocket (B)	—	All	Light crops	52 tooth

59. These sprockets are sold separately (individual parts).

60. This sprocket is included in kit MD #311882.

3.9.7 Ground Speed

Operating the header at the appropriate ground speed for the conditions results in cleanly cut crop and even feeding.

Reduce the vehicle's ground speed in difficult cutting conditions to reduce equipment wear.

Use lower ground speeds when harvesting very light crops (for example, short soybeans) to allow the reel to pull in short plants. Start at 4.8–5.8 km/h (3.0–3.5 mph) and adjust the speed as needed.

Higher ground speeds may require heavier float settings to prevent excessive bouncing, which can result in uneven cutting and possible damage to the cutting components. If ground speed is increased, draper and reel speeds should generally be increased to handle the extra material.

Figure 3.322, [page 208](#) illustrates the relationship between ground speed and area cut for the various sized headers.

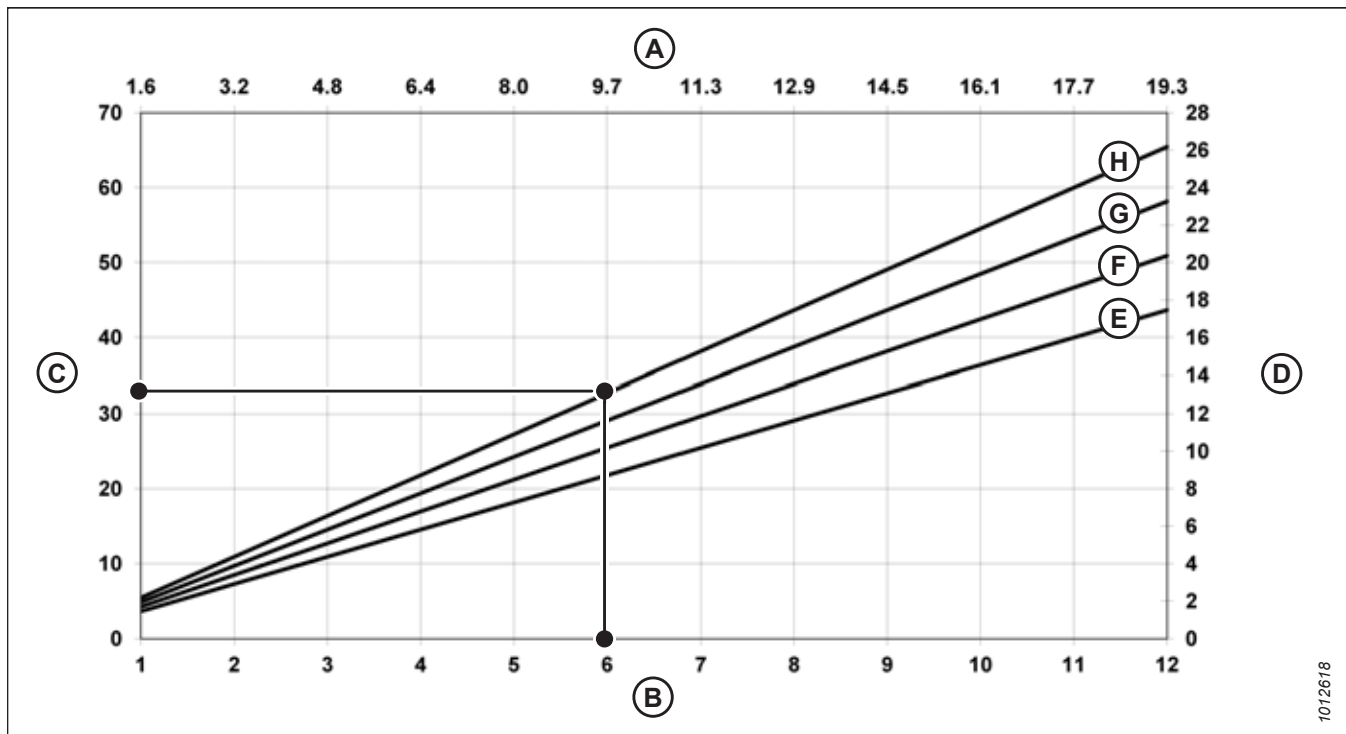


Figure 3.322: Ground Speed versus Acres

A - Kilometers/Hour

B - Miles/Hour

C - Acres/Hour

D - Hectares/Hour

E - 9.1 m (30 ft.)

F - 10.7 m (35 ft.)

G - 12.2 m (40 ft.)

H - 13.7 m (45 ft.)

Example: A 12.2 m (40 ft.) header operating at a ground speed of 9.7 km/h (6 mph) would produce a cut area of approximately 11.3 hectares (28 acres) in one hour.

3.9.8 Side Draper Speed

Operating with the correct draper speed is an important factor for achieving good flow of cut crop away from the cutterbar.

Side draper speed must be optimized for crop density, ground speed, and feeder house capacity. Side drapers that run too fast, will pull crop off the cutterbar, and can result in crop bunches at the feed draper. Side drapers that run too slow, will allow the feed draper to pull crop off of the side drapers, and can result in uneven feeding also.

Adjust the side draper speed to achieve efficient crop feeding onto the float module feed draper. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Side Draper Speed, page 209](#).

Adjusting Side Draper Speed

The side drapers carry the cut crop to the float module feed draper, which then feeds it into the combine. The speed is adjustable to suit a variety of crops and crop conditions.

Side drapers (A) are driven by hydraulic motors and a pump that is powered by the combine feeder house drive through a gearbox on the float module. Side draper speed is adjustable in cab on the side draper speed control, which regulates the flow to the draper hydraulic motors.

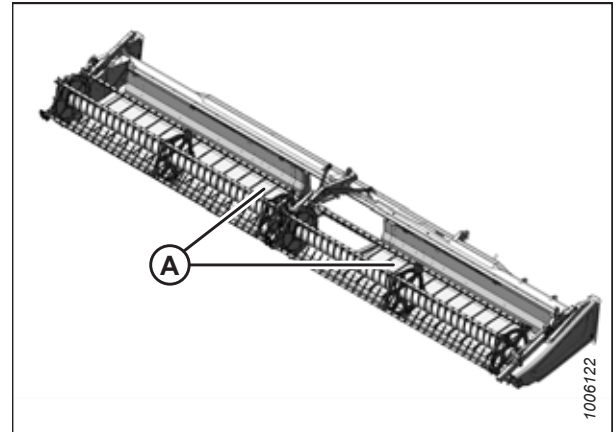


Figure 3.323: Side Drapers

1. Rotate knob (A) to setting 6 as a starting point.

NOTE:

Switch (B) activates the header tilt or reel fore-aft controls. For instructions on header tilt or reel fore-aft controls, refer to [Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 200](#).

NOTE:

For CNH combines the switch to activate the header tilt or reel fore-aft controls is on the back of the ground speed lever (GSL).

2. For recommended draper settings, refer to one of the following:

- [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#)
- [3.7.3 Optimizing Header for Straight-Combining Canola, page 126](#)

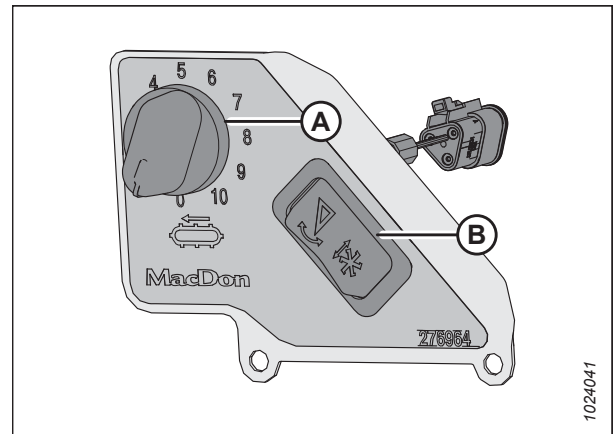


Figure 3.324: In-Cab Side Draper Speed Control

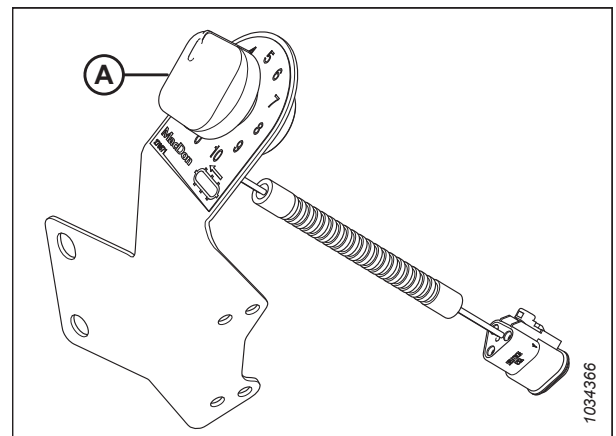


Figure 3.325: CNH In-Cab Side Draper Speed Control

OPERATION

Feed Draper Speed

The feed draper moves the cut crop from the side drapers into the float module feed auger.

The float module feed draper (A) is driven by a hydraulic motor and a pump that is powered by the combine feeder house drive through a gearbox on the float module.

The feed draper speed is determined by the combine feeder house speed and cannot be independently adjusted.

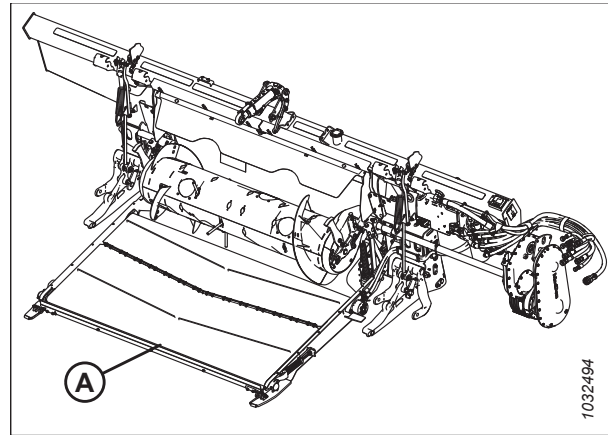


Figure 3.326: FM200 Float Module

3.9.9 Knife Speed Information

The float module is driven by a driveline that is attached to the combine feeder house. The driveline attaches to a gearbox that drives the knife drive pump.

Table 3.23 Feeder House Speed

Combine	Feeder House Speed (rpm)
Case IH	580
Challenger®	625
CLAAS ^{61,62}	420
Gleaner®	625
IDEAL™	620
John Deere	490
Massey Ferguson®	625
New Holland	580

Table 3.24 FD2 Series Header Knife Speed

Header	Recommended Knife Drive Speed Range (rpm)	
	Single-Knife Drive	Double-Knife Drive
FD225	600–700	—
FD230	600–750	—
FD235	600–700	600–750
FD240	600–650	600–750
FD241	—	600–750

61. For CLAAS 600/700 combines, the value on the display reflects the top shaft speed, not the output shaft speed. When the display value is 420 rpm, the actual output shaft speed is 750 rpm.
62. For CLAAS 8000/7000 combines, the value on the display reflects the bottom shaft speed. The actual output shaft speed is 750 rpm.

Table 3.24 FD2 Series Header Knife Speed (continued)

Header	Recommended Knife Drive Speed Range (rpm)	
	Single-Knife Drive	Double-Knife Drive
FD245	—	600–750
FD250	—	600–750

NOTE:

All sizes of headers are set to 650 rpm. This knife speed will work fine in normal cutting conditions.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the knife speed is within the range of rpm values in Table 3.24, page 210. For instructions, refer to *Checking Knife Speed, page 211*.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid causing the knife to overspeed, set the knife speed while the feeder house speed is to set maximum speed.

Checking Knife Speed

Knife speed is important to proper operation of the header.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields, page 35*.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Engage the header drive, and run the feeder house at the maximum speed. For maximum speed information, refer to Table 3.25, page 211.

IMPORTANT:

Before checking the knife speed, make sure the feeder house is set to maximum speed. This will prevent the knife from overspeeding when making further adjustments.

5. Run the float module and the header until the oil temperature is 38°C to 52°C (100°F to 125°F).

Table 3.25 Feeder House Speed

Combine	Feeder House Speed (rpm)
Case IH	580
Challenger®	625
CLAAS ^{63,64}	420
Gleaner®	625
IDEAL™	620
John Deere	490
Massey Ferguson®	625
New Holland	580

63. For CLAAS 600/700 combines, the value on the display reflects the top shaft speed, not the output shaft speed. When the display value is 420 rpm, the actual output shaft speed is 750 rpm.
64. For CLAAS 8000/7000 combines, the value on the display reflects the bottom shaft speed. The actual output shaft speed is 750 rpm.

OPERATION

- Measure the rpm of flywheel (A) with a hand-held photo tachometer.

NOTE:

One revolution (rpm) is equivalent to two knife strokes (spm) (1 rpm = 2 spm).

- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

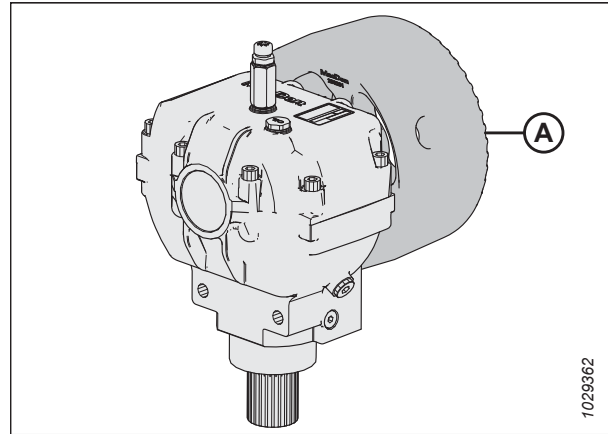


Figure 3.327: Flywheel

- Compare the flywheel rpm measurement with the rpm values in Table 3.25, page 211.

NOTE:

All header models are factory-set to 650 rpm. This knife speed will work fine in normal cutting conditions.

- Contact your MacDon Dealer if the pulley rpm measurement exceeds the specified rpm range for your header.

Table 3.26 FD2 Series Header Knife Speed

Header	Recommended Knife Drive Speed Range (rpm)	
	Single-Knife Drive	Double-Knife Drive
FD225	600–700	—
FD230	600–750	—
FD235	600–700	600–750
FD240	600–650	600–750
FD241	—	600–750
FD245	—	600–750
FD250	—	600–750

3.9.10 Reel Height

The reel operating position depends on the type of crop and cutting conditions.

Set the reel height and fore-aft position to carry material past the knife and onto the drapers with minimal damage to the crop.

The reel height is controlled manually or with button presets on the ground speed lever (GSL) in the combine cab. Refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions on controlling reel height or setting up auto reel height presets. Where applicable, this manual contains instructions for presetting reel height on selected combines. Refer to [3.10 Auto Header Height Control, page 254](#) for more information.

For more information on fore-aft positioning, refer to [3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217](#).

Table 3.27 Reel Position

Crop Condition	Reel Position
Lodged rice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower the reel Change reel speed and/or cam setting Change fore-aft position by extending the reel
Bushy or heavy standing (all)	Raised

The following conditions might result if the reel is set too low:

- Crop loss over the header backtube
- Crop disturbance on the drapers caused by the reel fingers
- Crop pushed down by the tine tubes
- Tall crop wrapped around the reel drive and ends

The following conditions might result if the reel is set too high:

- Cutterbar plugging
- Crop lodging and being left uncut
- Grain stalks dropping ahead of the cutterbar

For recommended reel heights for specific crops and crop conditions, refer to [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#).

IMPORTANT:

Maintain adequate clearance to prevent fingers contacting the knife or the ground. For instructions, refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#).

Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor

The orientation of the reel height sensor arm must be checked manually at the sensor, and the output voltage range of the sensor can be checked either manually at the sensor or from inside the cab.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the minimum reel height is properly set before adjusting the reel height sensor. For instructions, refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#).

NOTE:

For in-cab instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

Checking and adjusting sensor arm orientation

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

3. On the right endsheet, locate reel height sensor (A). It connects to the right reel arm.

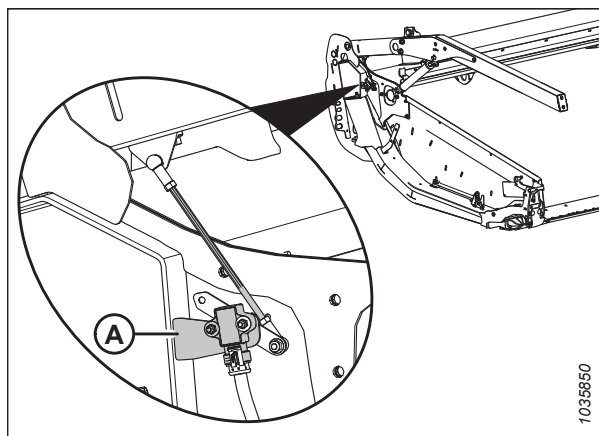


Figure 3.328: Reel Height Sensor Location

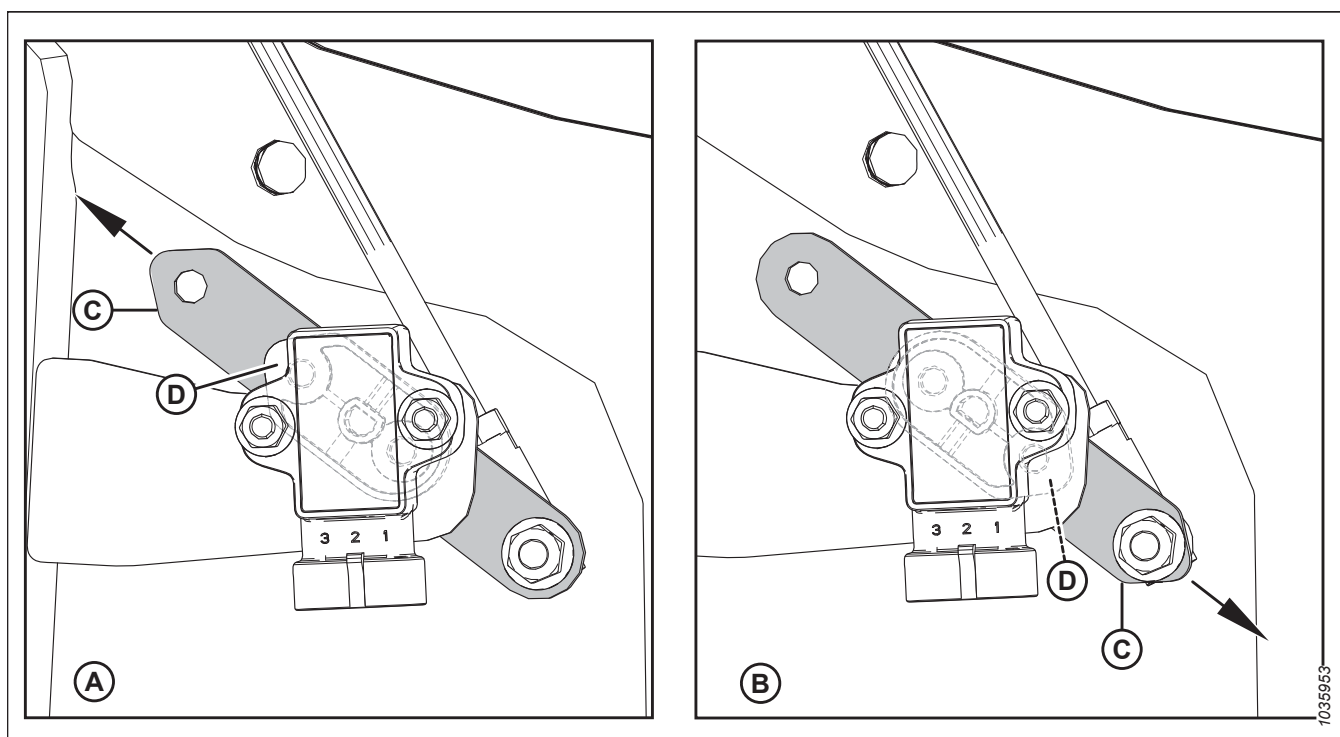


Figure 3.329: Sensor Arm/Pointer Configurations

A - John Deere, CLAAS, IDEAL Configuration⁶⁵

C - Sensor Arm

B - Case/New Holland Configuration

D - Sensor Pointer (Located Between Sensor and Sensor Arm)

65. Massey Ferguson, Challenger, Gleaner, and Rostselmash combines are not compatible with the reel height sensor.

OPERATION

- Check that sensor arm (C) and pointer (D) are configured properly for your machine, refer to Figure 3.329, page 214.

NOTE:

In configuration **A**, the arrow indicates that the pointed end of the sensor arm is pointed toward the back of the header.

In configuration **B**, the arrow indicates that the pointed end of the sensor arm is pointed toward the front of the header.

- If the sensor arm orientation is incorrect, remove sensor arm (C) and reposition it in the correct orientation. Torque the nut to 8.2 Nm (6 lbf-ft).

Checking and adjusting sensor output voltage when the reel is lowered

- Engage the parking brake.
- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Lower the reel fully.
- Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure the voltage range when the reel is lowered. Refer to Table 3.28, page 215 for range requirements.

Table 3.28 Reel Height Sensor Voltage Limits

Combine Type	Recommended Voltage Range	
	Voltage with Reel Raised	Voltage with Reel Lowered
IDEAL™	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V
Case/New Holland	0.7–1.1 V	3.9–4.3 V
CLAAS	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V
John Deere	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V

NOTE:

For CLAAS combines: To avoid a collision of the reel with the cab, the machine is equipped with an automatic reel height limitation. Some CLAAS combines have an automatic shutoff feature that engages when the automatic reel height limitation is reached. When raising the header by more than 80%, the reel is automatically lowered. The automatic lowering of the reel can be manually overridden, and a warning will appear on the CEBIS terminal.

- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (pin 2 wire) and the signal (pin 3 wire) at reel height sensor (B).
- Check if the voltage is within the recommended voltage range. If the voltage is not within range, loosen jam nuts (D) and (E), and adjust the rod length. Hand-tighten the jam nuts, and then use a wrench to tighten them another quarter-turn.

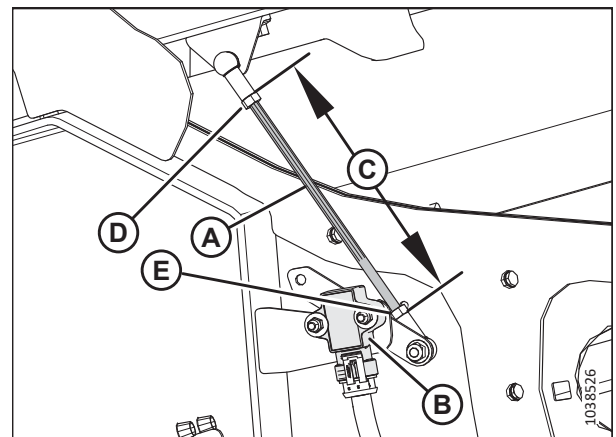


Figure 3.330: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm with Reel Down

OPERATION

Checking and adjusting sensor output voltage when the reel is raised

13. Start the engine, and fully raise the reel.
14. Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure the voltage range when the reel is raised. Refer to Table 3.28, page 215 for range requirements.
15. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
16. Using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (pin 2 wire) and the signal (pin 3 wire) at the reel height sensor (A).
17. If the voltage is not within the recommended range, loosen two M5 hex nuts (B) and rotate sensor (A) to achieve the recommended voltage range. Tighten nuts (B) to 2.5 Nm (2 lbf·ft).
18. Repeat checking and adjusting until the voltage range is within the range specified.
19. Start the engine.
20. Lower the reel fully.
21. Recheck the voltage range and ensure it is still within the range specified. Adjust if required.

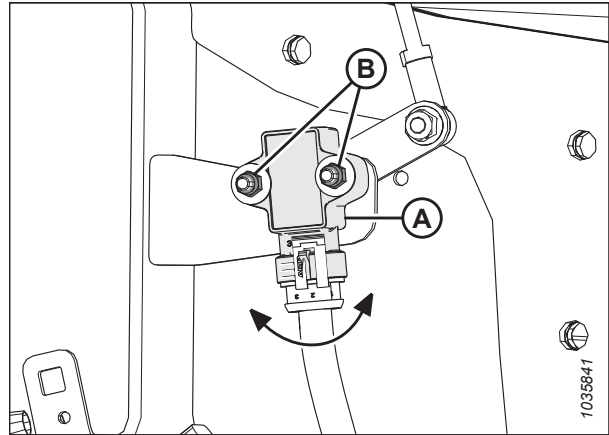


Figure 3.331: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm with Reel Up

Replacing Reel Height Sensor

The reel height sensor is used to reference where the reel is positioned above from the cutterbar.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Disconnect the harness from sensor (A).
5. Remove two hex head bolts (B) from sensor arm (C). Retain the hardware for reinstallation.

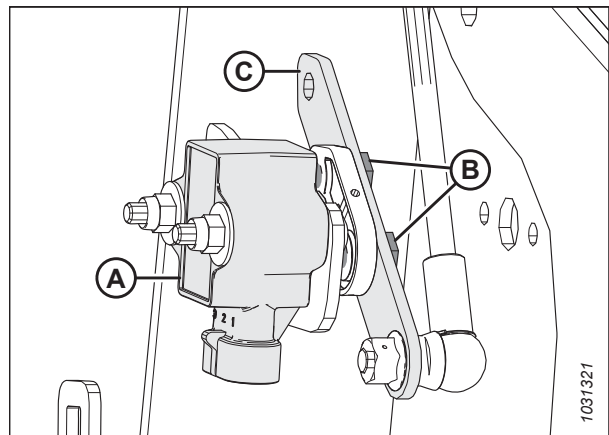


Figure 3.332: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

OPERATION

6. Remove two nyloc nuts, washers, and bolts (A) securing sensor (B) to the header frame. Remove the sensor.
7. Install new sensor (B) onto bracket (C) on the header frame. Attach it using retained bolts (A), washers, and nyloc nuts. Torque bolts (A) to 2–3 Nm (17–27 lbf·in).

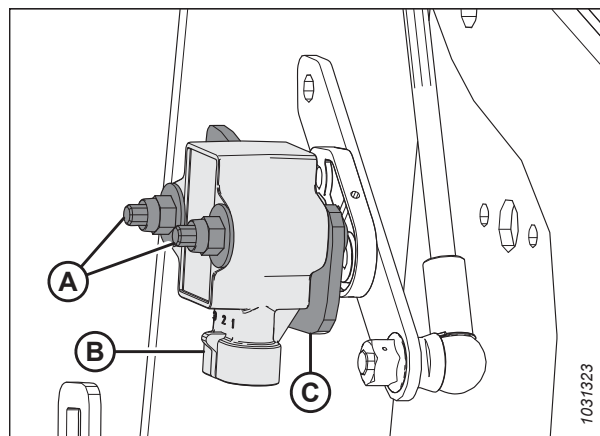


Figure 3.333: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

8. Secure sensor arm (B) using retained hex head bolts (A). Ensure sensor pointer (C) is installed in the same direction as the pointed end of sensor arm (B).
9. Torque bolts (A) to 4 Nm (35 lbf·in).
10. Connect the harness to the sensor.
11. Check the sensor voltage range. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 213](#).

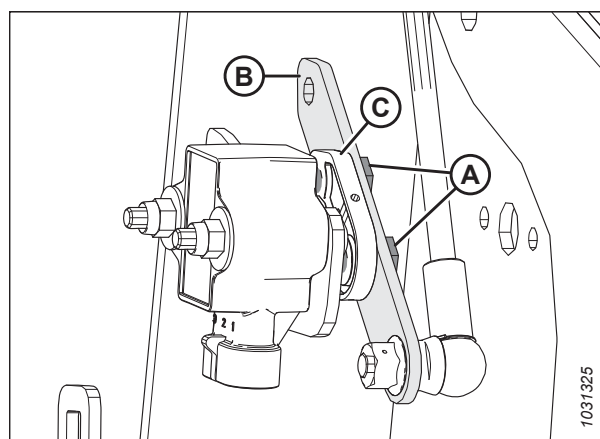


Figure 3.334: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position

Reel fore-aft position is a critical factor for achieving the best results in adverse conditions. The factory-recommended reel position has the position marker centered over numbers (4–5 on the indicator). This suits normal conditions, but the fore-aft position can be adjusted as required using the controls inside the cab.

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the header's reel arms to accommodate certain crop conditions.

- For single-reel headers, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Single Reel, page 218](#).
- For double-reel headers, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel, page 221](#).
- For triple-reel headers, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel, page 225](#).

OPERATION

The reel position indicator (A) is located at the left reel arm. Bracket (B) is the reel fore-aft position marker.

For straight standing crop, center the reel over the cutterbar (4–5 on indicator).

For crops that are down, tangled, or leaning, it may be necessary to move the reel ahead of the cutterbar (lower number on indicator).

NOTE:

If experiencing difficulty picking up flattened crop, adjust to a steeper header angle. Refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#) for adjustment instructions. Adjust reel position only if header angle adjustments are not satisfactory.

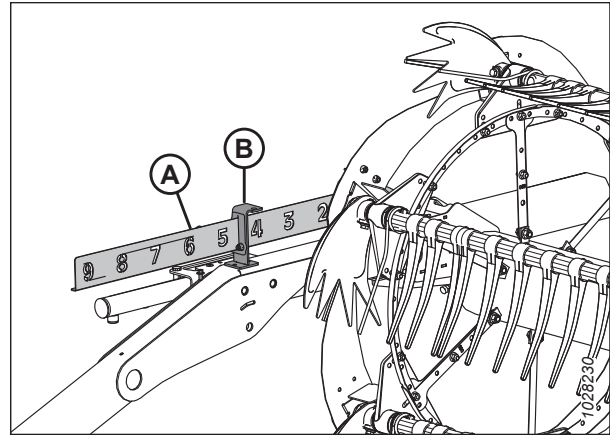


Figure 3.335: Fore-Aft Indicator

NOTE:

In crops that are difficult to pick up such as rice, or severely lodged crops that require full forward positioning of the reel, set the reel tine pitch to provide proper placement of the crop onto the drapers. Refer to [3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230](#) for adjustment details.

Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position

The factory-set reel position suits many conditions, but the fore-aft position can be adjusted as required using the controls inside the cab.

To adjust the reel fore-aft position, follow these steps:

1. Select FORE-AFT mode on the selector switch in the cab.
2. Operate the hydraulics to move the reel to the desired position while using fore-aft indicator (A) as a reference. Bracket (B) is the position marker.
3. Check the reel clearance to cutterbar after making changes to the cam setting. Refer to the following for measurement and adjustment procedures:
 - [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#)
 - [4.13.2 Reel Frown, page 634](#)

IMPORTANT:

Operating with the reel too far forward can result in the fingers contacting the ground. When operating with the reel in this position, lower the skid shoes or adjust the header tilt as required to prevent damaging the fingers.

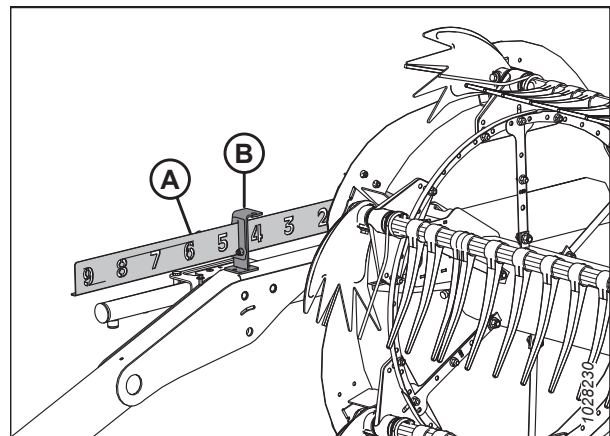


Figure 3.336: Fore-Aft Indicator

Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Single Reel

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in.) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the reel arms. This may be desirable when straight-combining canola.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

OPERATION

IMPORTANT:

Ensure all fore-aft cylinders are set to the same position.

1. Position reel fully aft with support arms horizontal.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool to holder bracket on left endsheet.
4. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to holder.

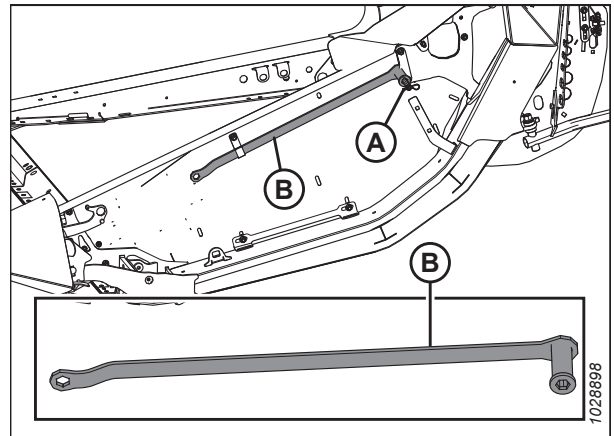


Figure 3.337: Left Endsheets

Reposition the outer right cylinder as follows:

1. Remove split ring (A), clevis pin (B), and flat washer securing the right fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.

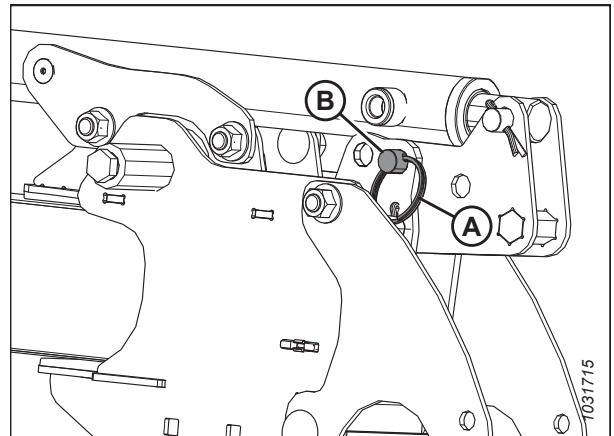


Figure 3.338: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

OPERATION

2. Use multi-tool (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).

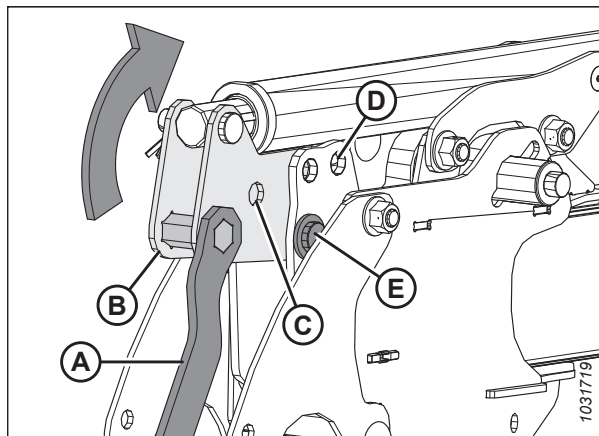


Figure 3.339: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

3. When the bracket holes are lined up, secure in aft position with clevis pin (A), washer, and split ring (B).

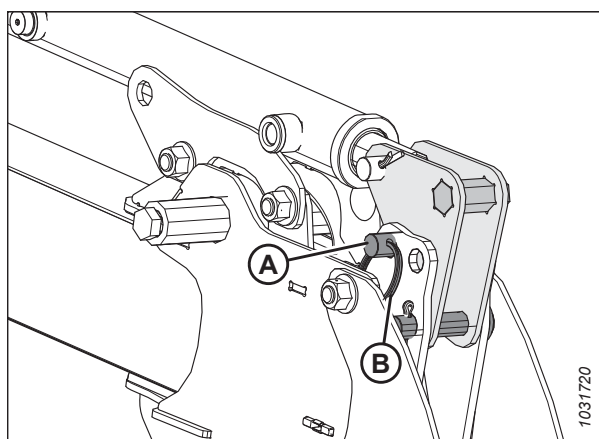


Figure 3.340: Right Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

Reposition the outer left cylinder as follows:

1. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the left cylinder in forward position on cylinder bracket (C).

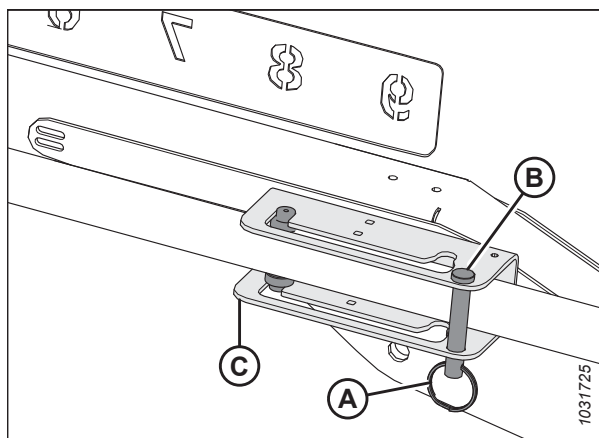


Figure 3.341: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

OPERATION

2. Grab hold of the cylinder, and use guides (A) to slide the cylinder along the bracket slot and into aft position (B).

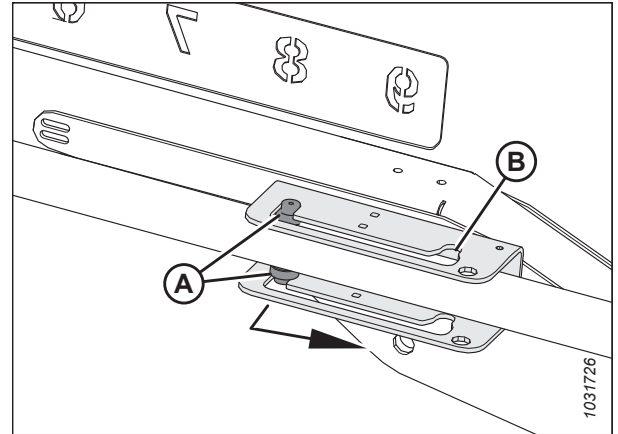


Figure 3.342: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

3. Reinstall clevis pin (A) and split ring (B) to secure the cylinder in aft position (C) on the bracket.

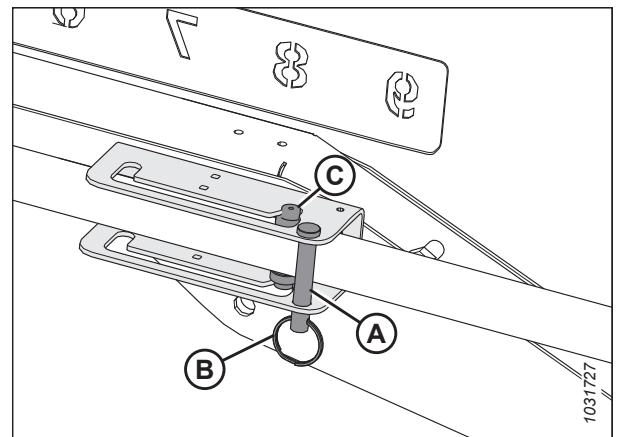


Figure 3.343: Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

4. Check reel clearance to backsheet, upper cross auger (if installed), and reel braces.
5. Adjust reel tine pitch (if required). For adjustment procedures, refer to [3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230](#).

Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in.) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the reel arms. This may be desirable when straight-combining canola.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure all fore-aft cylinders are set to the same position.

1. Position the reel fully aft so that the support arms are horizontal.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

3. Remove hairpin (A) securing the multi-tool to the holder bracket on the left endsheet.
4. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin to the holder.

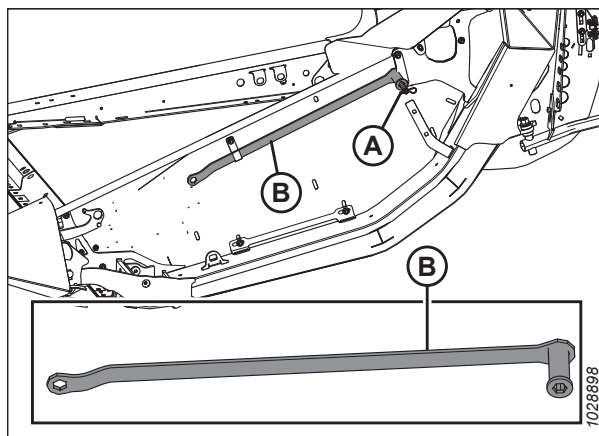


Figure 3.344: Left Endsheets

Repositioning the center cylinder

NOTE:

There are two center cylinders on triple-reel headers.

5. Remove split ring (A), clevis pin (B), and the washer securing the center fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.

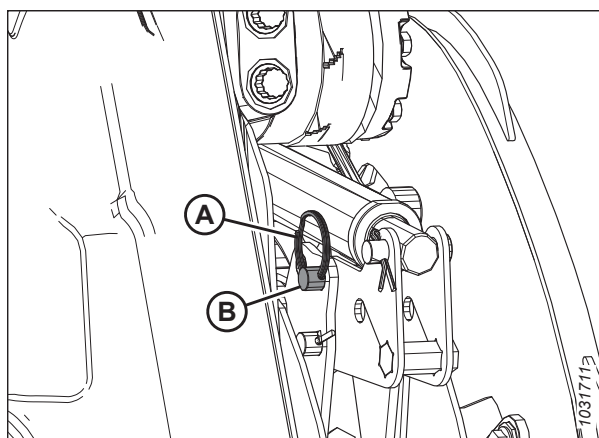


Figure 3.345: Center Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

6. Use multi-tool (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).

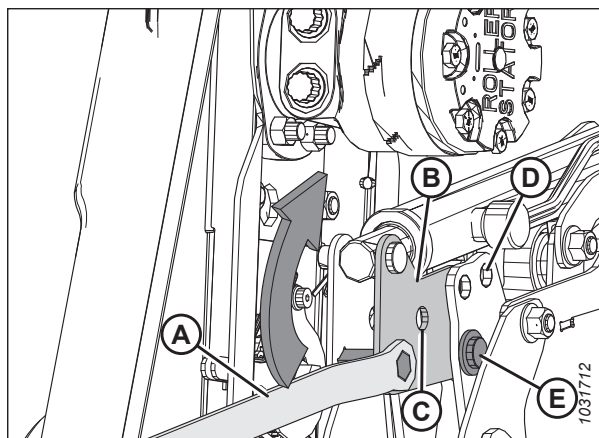


Figure 3.346: Center Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

OPERATION

7. Secure the center arm cylinder in the aft position with clevis pin (A), washer, and split ring (B).

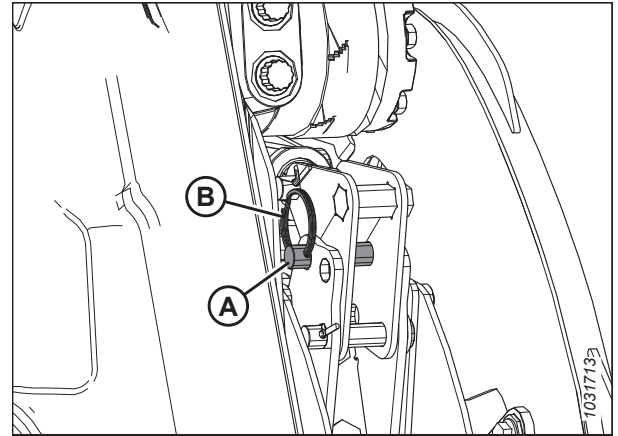


Figure 3.347: Center Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

Repositioning the outer right cylinder

1. Remove split ring (A), clevis pin (B), and flat washer securing the right fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.

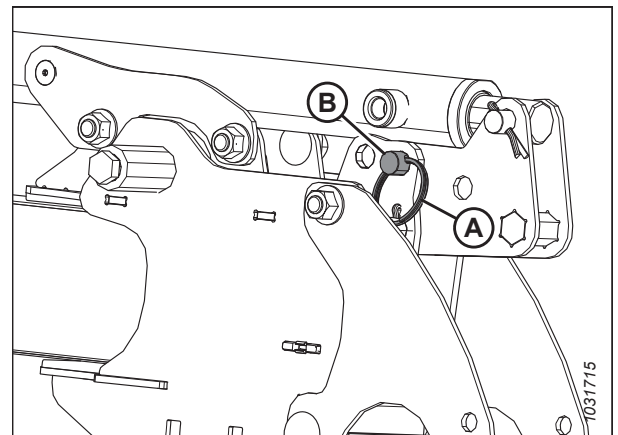


Figure 3.348: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

2. Use multi-tool (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).

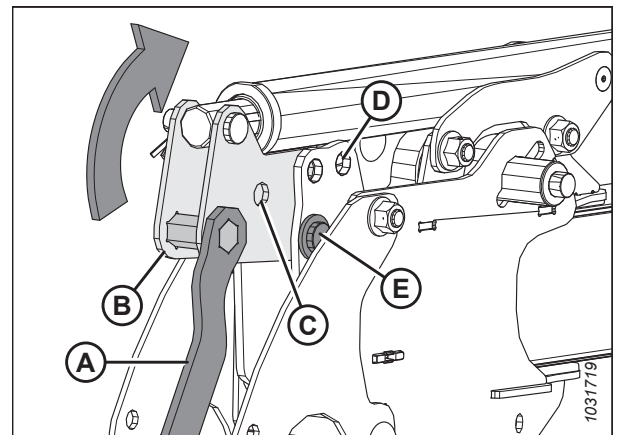


Figure 3.349: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

OPERATION

3. Secure the right fore-aft cylinder in the aft position with clevis pin (A), washer, and split ring (B).

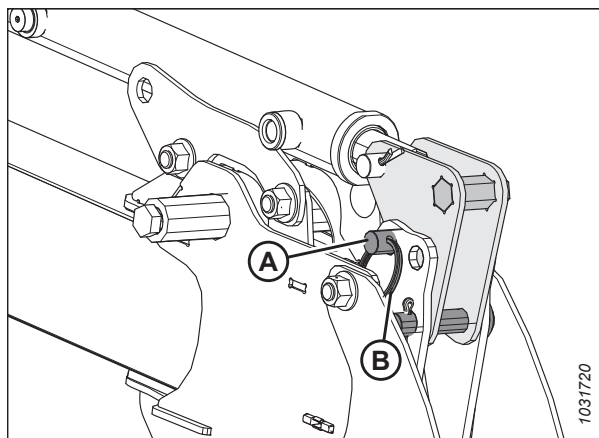


Figure 3.350: Right Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

Repositioning the outer left cylinder

1. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the left cylinder in forward position on cylinder bracket (C).

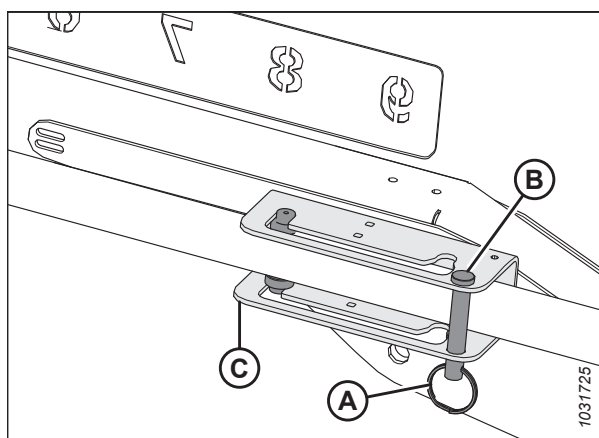


Figure 3.351: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

2. Slide cylinder guides (A) along the bracket slot and into aft position (B).

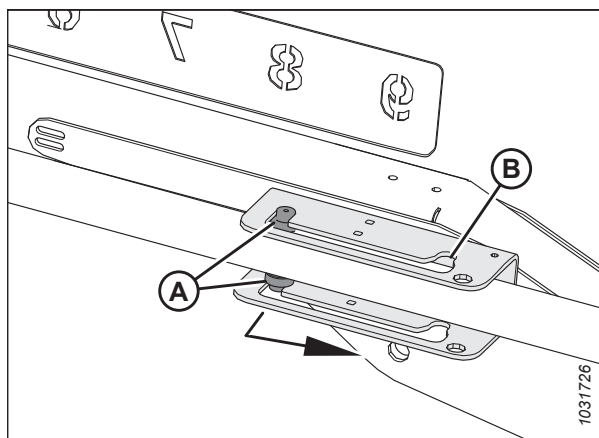


Figure 3.352: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

OPERATION

3. Reinstall clevis pin (A) and split ring (B) to secure the cylinder in aft position (C) on the bracket.

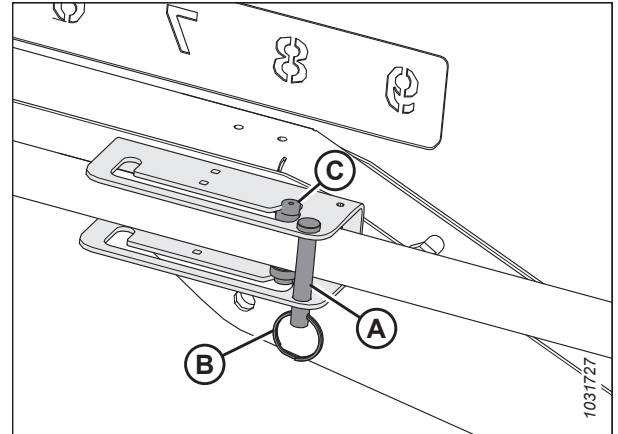


Figure 3.353: Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

4. Ensure clearance between reel and backsheet, upper cross auger (if installed), and reel braces.
5. For recommended reel settings based on crop and conditions, refer to [3.7 Header Setup, page 115](#).

Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in.) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the reel arms. This may be desirable when straight-combining canola.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure all fore-aft cylinders are set to the same position.

1. Position the reel fully aft with the support arms horizontal.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing the multi-tool to the holder bracket on the left endsheet.
4. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin onto the holder.

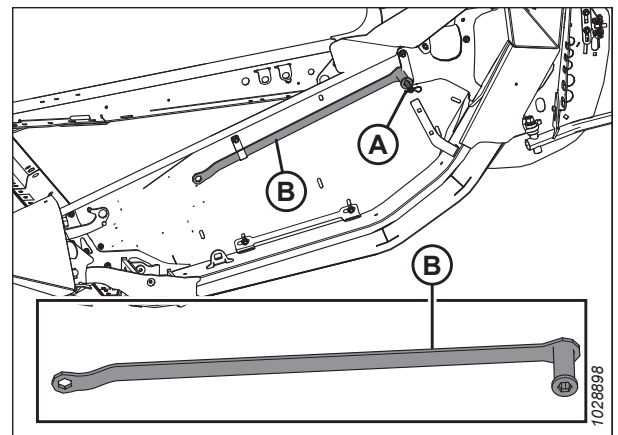


Figure 3.354: Left Endsheets

OPERATION

Repositioning the center left and center right fore-aft cylinders

5. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the center fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.

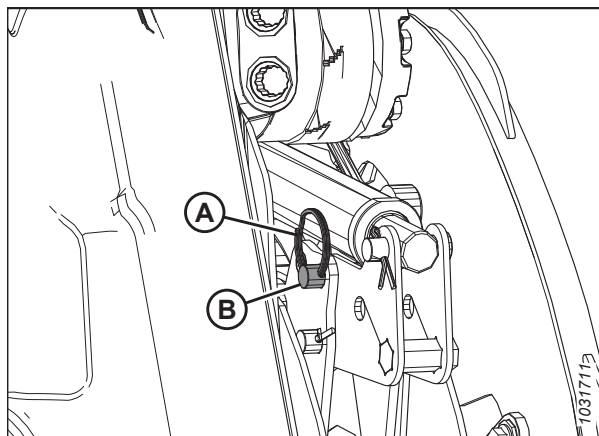


Figure 3.355: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

6. Use multi-tool (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).

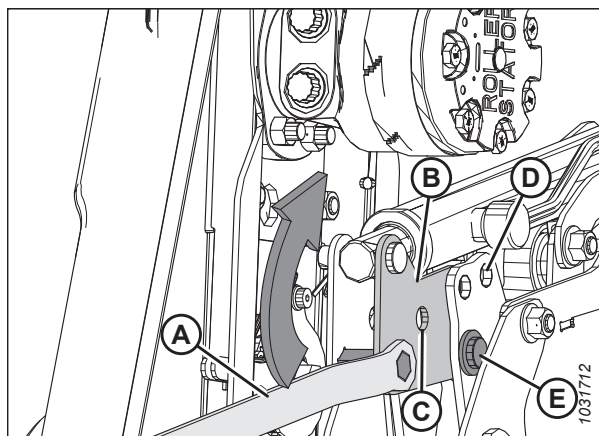


Figure 3.356: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

7. Secure the center left cylinder in the aft position with clevis pin (A) and split ring (B).

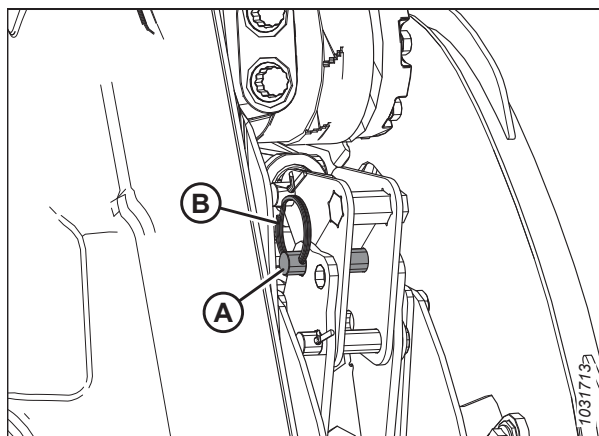


Figure 3.357: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

OPERATION

Repositioning the outer left and outer right fore-aft cylinders

1. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the left cylinder in the forward position on cylinder bracket (C).

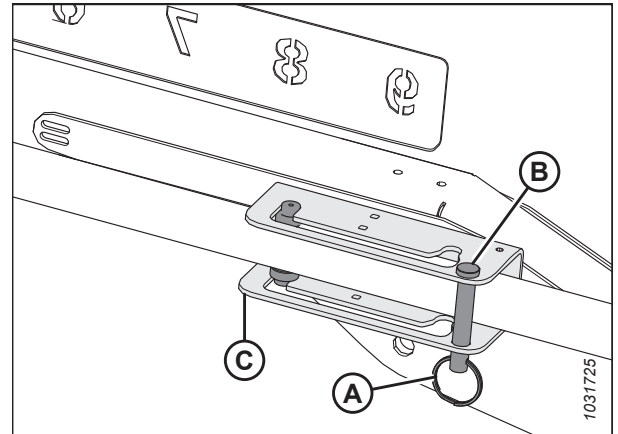


Figure 3.358: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

2. Slide cylinder guides (A) along the bracket slot and into aft position (B).

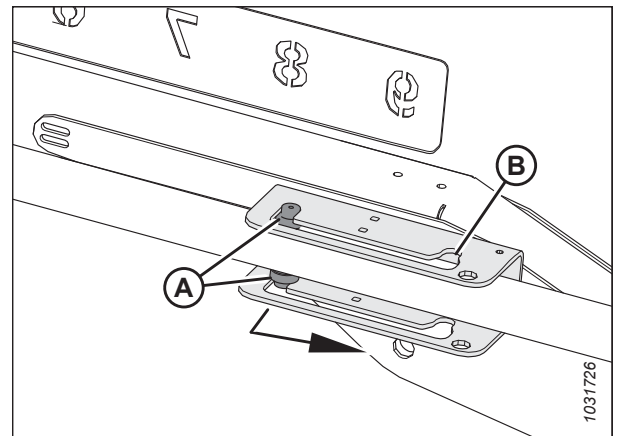


Figure 3.359: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

3. Reinstall clevis pin (A) and split ring (B) to secure the cylinder in aft position (C) on the bracket.

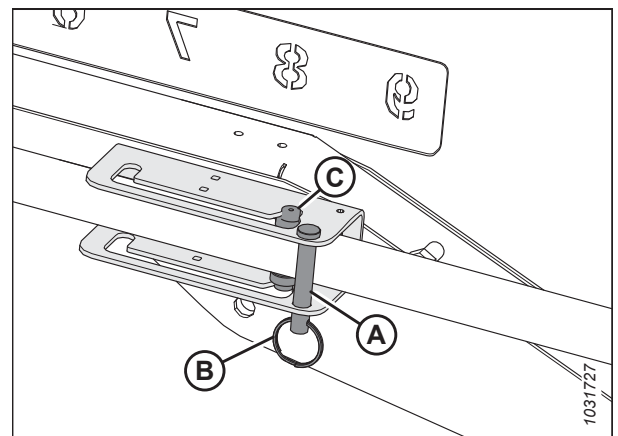


Figure 3.360: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

4. Ensure clearance between reel and backsheet, upper cross auger (if installed), and reel braces
5. For recommended reel settings based on crop and conditions, refer to [3.7 Header Setup, page 115](#).

Checking and Adjusting Fore-Aft Position Sensor

There is a sensor that informs the combine where the reel is positioned when adjusted in the fore and aft directions, and displays that information for the operator. The sensor arm's orientation and the sensor's output voltage range must be set correctly for your machine.

Checking and adjusting the orientation of the sensor arm

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Check the orientation of sensor arm (C) and hardware (D). Ensure that the sensor arm is configured properly for your machine; refer to Figure 3.361, page 228.

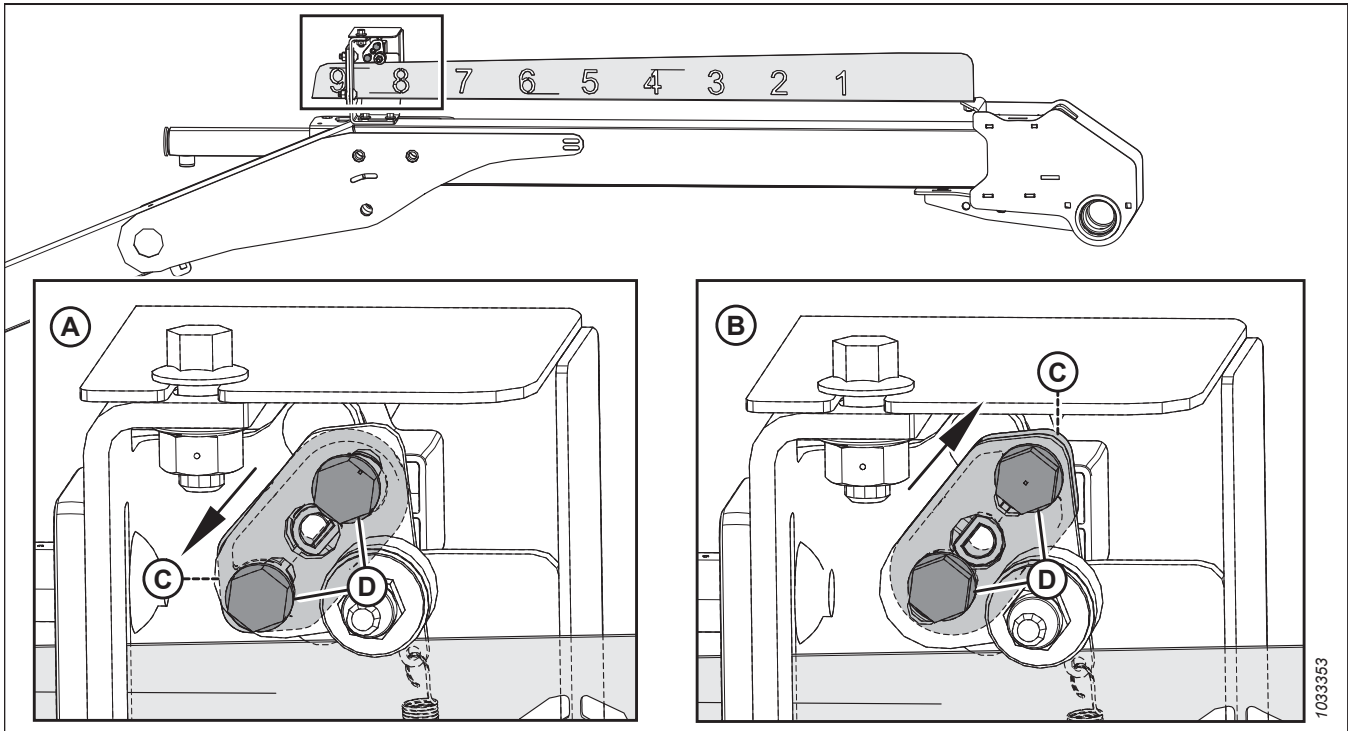


Figure 3.361: Sensor Arm Configurations

A - John Deere, CLAAS, IDEAL™ Configuration

B - Case/New Holland Configuration

C - Sensor Arm

D - Mounting Hardware

4. If sensor arm (C) is not oriented correctly, remove it and then reinstall it in the correct orientation.

Checking and adjusting the sensor's output voltage

WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

- Engage the parking brake.

IMPORTANT:

To measure the output voltage of the fore-aft sensor, the engine needs to be running and supplying power to the sensor. Always engage the parking brake and stay away from the reel.

- Start the engine.
- Adjust the reel to the fully forward position. Dimension (B) (from the sensor bracket to the end of the indicator) should be 62–72 mm (2.4–2.8 in.).

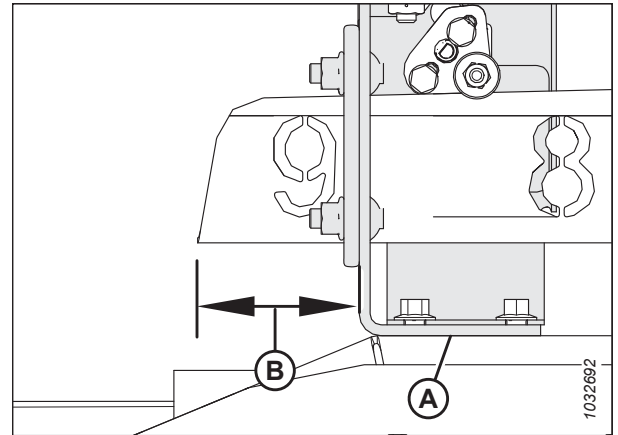


Figure 3.362: Fore-Aft Bracket

- Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure the voltage range. If using a voltmeter, check sensor (A) voltage between pin 2 (ground) and pin 3 (signal). The range should be

- For Case and New Holland combines: 0.7–1.1 V
- For Challenger, Gleaner, IDEAL, Massey Ferguson, CLAAS, and John Deere combines: 3.9–4.3 V

- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

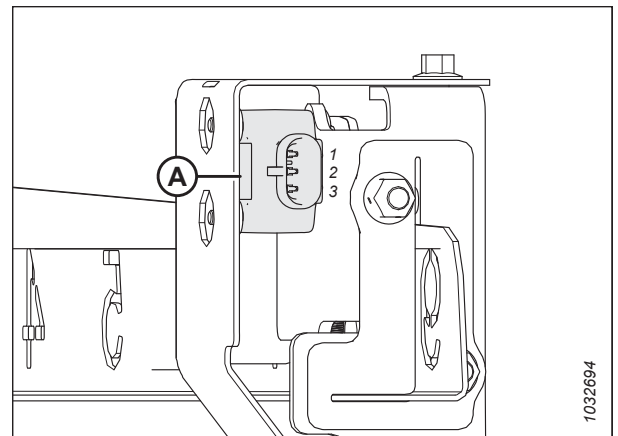


Figure 3.363: Fore-Aft Sensor

- If adjustment is required, loosen hardware (A) and rotate sensor (B) until the voltage is in the correct range.
- Once sensor adjustment is complete, torque the hardware to 2.1 Nm (22 lbf·in).

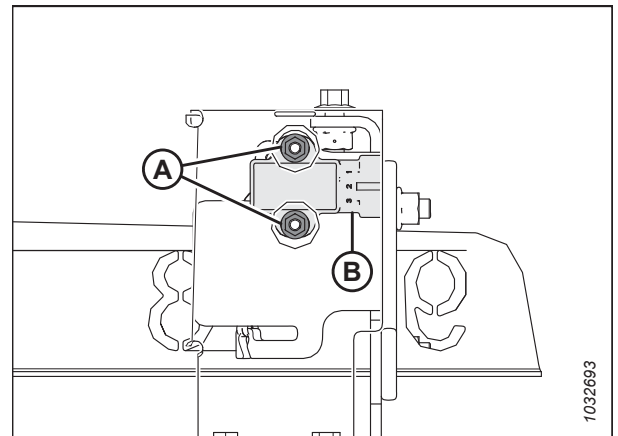


Figure 3.364: Fore-Aft Sensor

3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch

Reel tine pitch is a term used to describe the position of the reel fingers in relation to the cutterbar. The reel tine pitch can be changed by changing the reel fore-aft position and the reel cam setting. You may wish to change the reel tine pitch to suit different harvesting conditions.

Changing the reel position has the largest impact on the reel tine pitch. Changing the cam setting, on the other hand, has a smaller impact on reel tine pitch. For example, with the cam position range at 33°, the corresponding finger pitch range is only 5° at the lowest point of the reel's rotation.

For the best results, use the minimum cam setting that delivers the crop past the rear edge of the cutterbar and onto the drapers. For more information, refer to [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#).

Reel Cam Settings

Changing the cam position allows you to adjust the point at which the reel fingers release gathered crop to the drapers. Recommendations are provided for reel cam settings in various harvesting conditions.

The setting numbers are visible above the slots on the cam disc. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Cam, page 232](#).

NOTE:

For the recommended reel tine pitch setting to use in various harvesting conditions, refer to [3.7.2 Header Settings, page 115](#).

Cam Position 1, Reel Position 6 or 7 delivers the most even crop flow onto the drapers without fluffing or disturbing the material.

- This setting will release crop close to the cutterbar. Use this setting when the cutterbar is on the ground while harvesting.
- Some crops will not be delivered past the cutterbar when the cutterbar is raised off the ground while the reel is far forward. Therefore, set the initial reel speed so that it close to the ground speed.

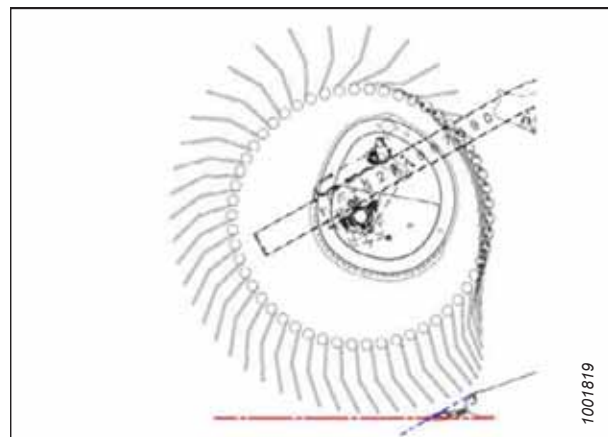


Figure 3.365: Finger Profile – Position 1

Cam Position 2, Reel Position 3 or 4 is the recommended starting position for most crops and conditions.

- If the crop is stalling on the cutterbar when the reel is in the forward position, increase the cam setting to push the crop past the rear edge of the cutterbar.
- If the crop is getting fluffed or if there is a disruption to the flow across the drapers, decrease the cam setting.
- This setting results in the reel fingertip speed being approximately 20% faster than the reel speed.

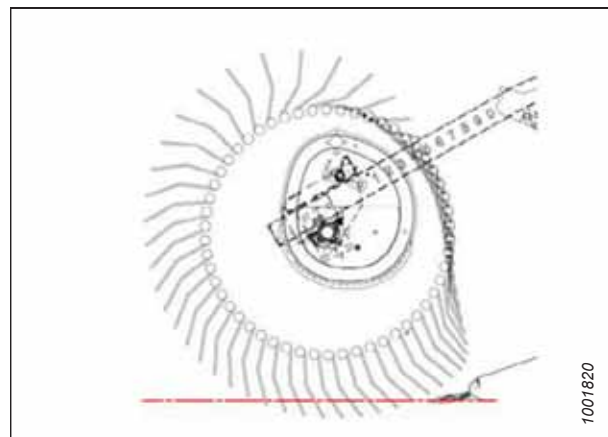


Figure 3.366: Finger Profile – Position 2

OPERATION

Cam Position 3, Reel Position 6 or 7 is mainly used to leave long stubble.

- This position allows the reel to reach forward and lift the crop across the knife and onto the drapers.
- This setting results in the reel fingertip speed being approximately 30% faster than the reel speed.

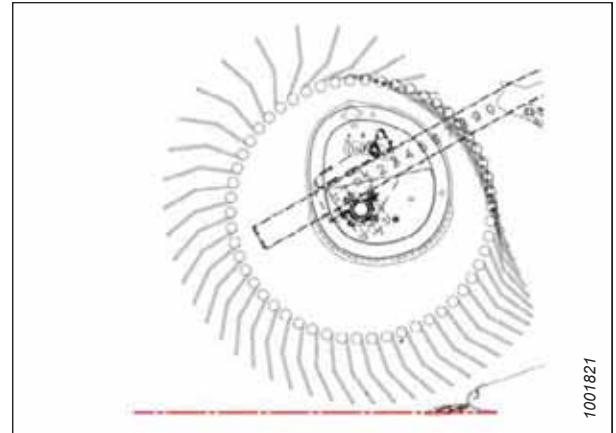


Figure 3.367: Finger Profile – Position 3

Cam Position 4, Reel Position 2 or 3 is used with the reel is fully forward. Using this setting results in the header leaving the maximum amount of stubble when harvesting in lodged crops.

- This position allows the reel to reach forward and lift the crop across the knife and onto the drapers.
- This setting results in the reel fingertip speed being approximately 35% faster than the reel speed.

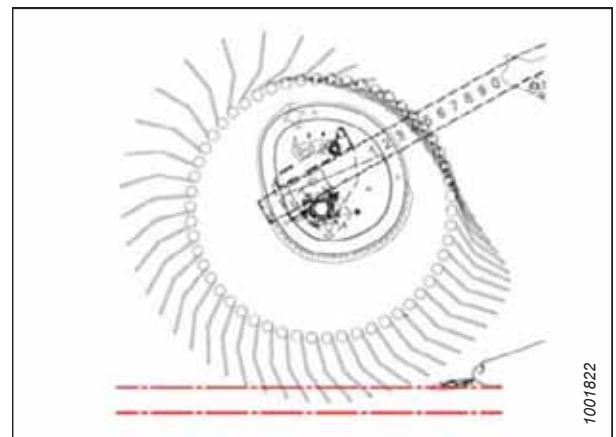


Figure 3.368: Finger Profile – Position 4

Cam Position 4, Header Angle at Maximum, and Reel Fully Forward provides the maximum amount of reel reach below the cutterbar to pick up lodged crops.

- This position leaves a significant amount of stubble when the cutting height is set to approximately 203 mm (8 in.). In damp materials such as rice, it is possible to double the combine's ground speed because of the reduction of cut material.
- This setting results in a the reel fingertip speed being approximately 35% faster than the reel speed.

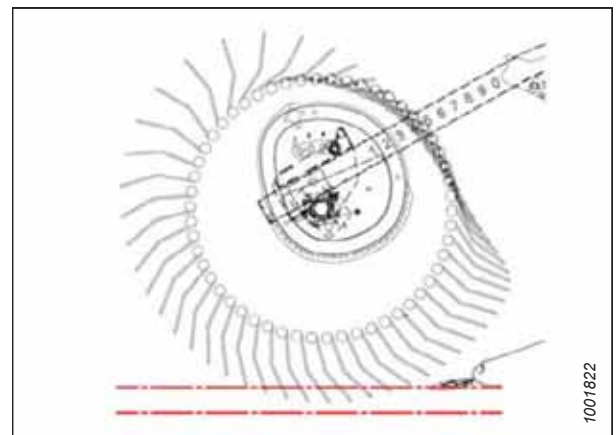


Figure 3.369: Finger Profile – Position 4

NOTE:

Using higher cam settings when the reel's fore-aft position is set between 4 and 5 results in drastically decreased draper capacity. This happens because the reel fingers continually engage with crop that is already moving on the drapers, resulting in disrupted flow into the combine feeder house. Higher cam settings are recommended only when the reel is at or close to the fully forward setting.

Adjusting Reel Cam

The reel cam can be adjusted to change the reel tine pitch.

IMPORTANT:

Always check the reel-to-cutterbar clearance after adjusting the reel tine pitch and reel fore-aft positions. For information, refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627](#).

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

If there are multiple reel cams, the adjustments need to be made on all of the reel cams.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool (B) to bracket on the left endsheet.

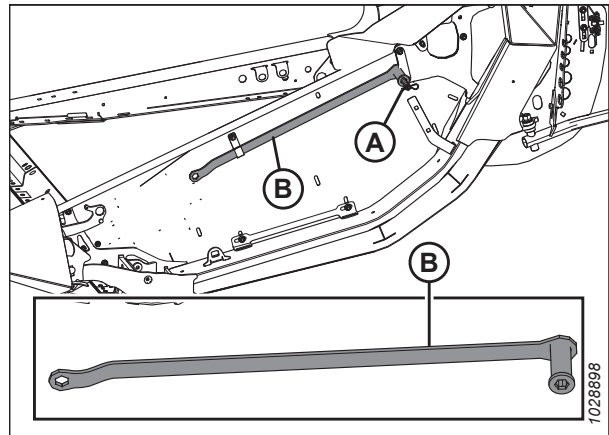


Figure 3.370: Left Endsheet

3. Turn latch pin (A) **COUNTERCLOCKWISE** using multi-tool to release the cam disc.

IMPORTANT:

Refer to the cam latch decal for the locking/unlocking rotation direction. Forcing the cam latch in the wrong direction can damage the roll pins.

4. Use the multi-tool on bolt (B) to rotate the cam disc and align latch pin (A) with the desired cam disc hole position (C) (1 to 4).

NOTE:

Bolt (B) is welded to the cam support.

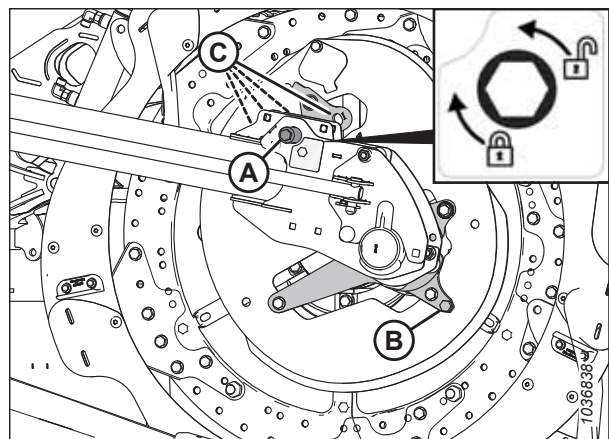


Figure 3.371: Cam Disc Positions

5. Turn latch pin (A) **CLOCKWISE** to engage and lock the cam disc.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the cam is secured into position before operating the machine.

6. Repeat the above procedure for all reels.

3.9.13 Upper Cross Auger

The Upper Cross Auger (UCA) improves crop feeding into the center of the header in heavy crop conditions. It is ideal for high-volume harvesting forages, oats, canola, mustard, and other tall, bushy, hard-to-convey crops.

The shutoff valve (A) turns off the UCA when it is not needed.

NOTE:

Even though the UCA is shut off, it still needs to be greased at the regular intervals because of the movement of the wings.

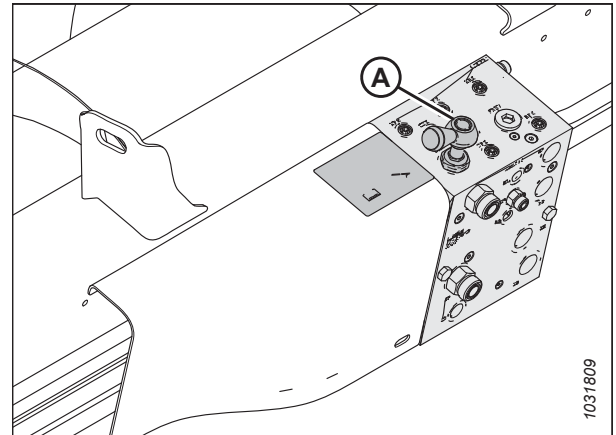


Figure 3.372: Shutoff Valve

Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position

The upper cross auger (UCA) has an adjustable mount that allows the auger position to be adjusted for different harvesting conditions. Headers with three-piece augers have two adjustable mounts: one on each end of the center auger.

NOTE:

For information on the positions of the primary and secondary front bolts, refer to Figure 3.375, page 234.

The mount(s) are initially installed in the rear-most position, so that front bolt (A) is in the primary position. This is the recommended configuration for most conditions.

When front bolt (A) is in the primary position, the auger and the reel are safe to operate in any position. The position of the auger can be adjusted (to a limited extent) by changing the position of the mount with respect to rear bolt (B).

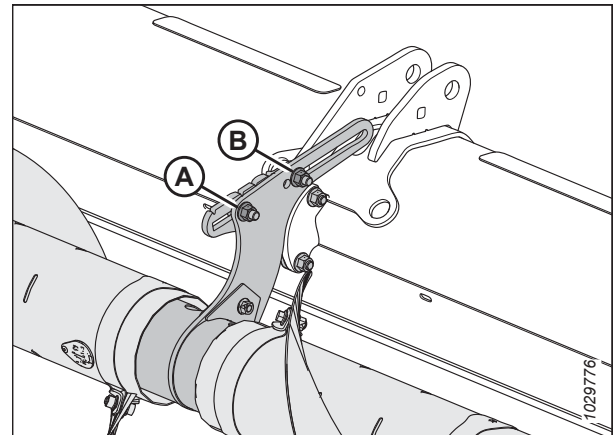


Figure 3.373: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Two-Piece Auger

OPERATION

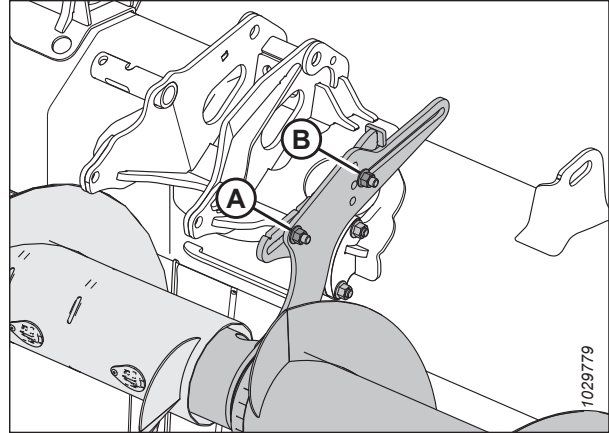


Figure 3.374: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Three-Piece Auger

When the front bolt is moved to secondary position (B), the auger position can be adjusted to a greater extent. For three-piece augers, additional secondary positions (B) are available if you wish to raise or lower the auger. When the front bolt is in one of these positions, the fore-aft adjustment is limited, which prevents the UCA from interfering with the feed auger and the header frame.

IMPORTANT:

When the front bolt is in one of secondary positions (B) and the reel is in its rear-most position, the reel fingers and cam arms may contact the UCA. When the reel is moved fully back (for example, when harvesting canola), the UCA must also be moved fully back in order to allow for sufficient clearance between the reel fingers and the auger.

Move the auger forward to

- Help convey light crops, especially on side hills
- Improve the feeding of light crops
- Reduce the reel carry over or the crop flow disruption caused by the reel

Move the auger rearward to

- Increase the available volume for conveying heavy crop
- Keep the auger close to the deflectors to prevent crop from getting behind the auger and wrapping around the auger

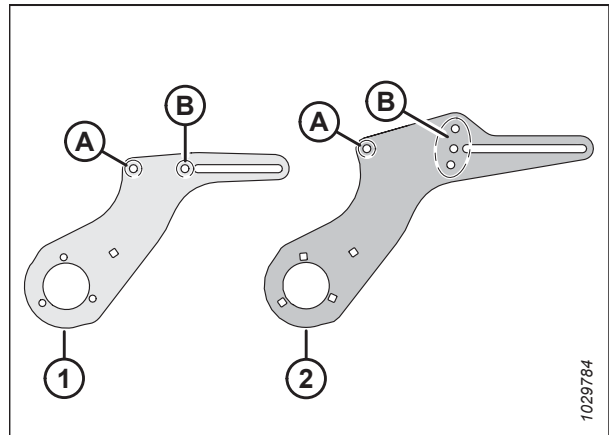


Figure 3.375: Adjustable Mount Details

1 - Two-Piece Auger Mount

2 - Three-Piece Auger Mount

A - Primary Position for Front Bolt

B - Secondary Position(s) for Front Bolt

OPERATION

To adjust the auger position, do the following:

1. Locate the adjustable mount.

NOTE:

On two-piece augers, the adjustable mount protrudes from the center support assembly. On three-piece augers, the adjustable mount protrudes from the ends of the center auger.

NOTE:

The illustration shows the left adjustable mount on a three-piece auger. The adjustable mount on a two-piece auger is similar, but has only one secondary position for the front bolt instead of three. Refer to Figure 3.375, page 234 for more information.

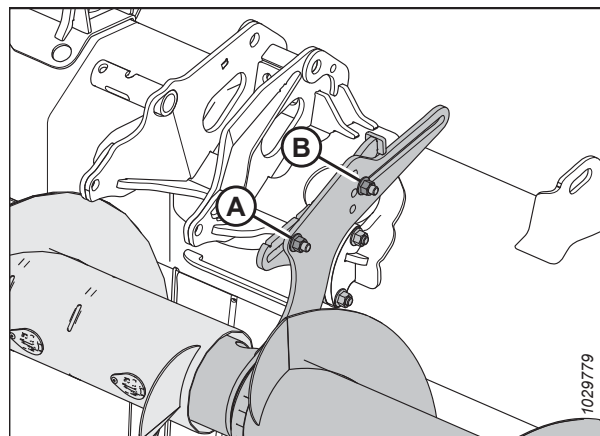


Figure 3.376: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Three-Piece Auger

2. If desired, relocate front bolt and nut (A). The front bolt and nut have two possible locations on two-piece augers: the primary location and the secondary location. On three-piece augers, there are four possible locations: one primary location and three secondary locations.
3. Loosen front nut (A) and rear nut (B) just enough to allow the adjustable mount to slide.
4. Move the mount to the desired position.
5. Retighten nuts (A) and (B). Torque the nuts to 69 Nm (51 lbf-ft).
6. If a three-piece UCA is installed, repeat this procedure on the second adjustable mount.

IMPORTANT:

On headers with three-piece augers, ensure that both mounts are in the same position.

7. Check for interference between the reel fingers and the UCA. Check for interference between the cam arms and the UCA along the entire hydraulic fore-aft range of the reel. For instructions, refer to [Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference, page 235](#).

Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference

If the upper cross auger (UCA) is out of adjustment, it can contact the reel or the header frame. The clearance between the UCA and certain header components will need to be inspected.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine.
2. Fully retract the reel in the fore-aft dimension.

NOTE:

Fully retracting the reel will ensure that the reel is as close as possible to the UCA.

NOTE:

If the reel cam adjustment is changed, this procedure will need to be performed again.

3. Place 254–356 mm (10–14 in) blocks under the cutterbar at both ends of the header. Lower the reel onto the blocks so that the header wings form a smile shape.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected startup of the machine, stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before you make adjustments to the machine.

4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Manually rotate UCA (A). Ensure that the clearance between the UCA and the header components is at least 10 mm (13/32 in.) at the following locations:
 - Reel cam arms (B)
 - Reel fingers (C)
 - Reel cylinder supports (D)
 - **FD241, FD245, and FD250:** Split frame joint (E)
6. If the clearance between the UCA and the header components requires adjustment, proceed to [Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position, page 233](#).

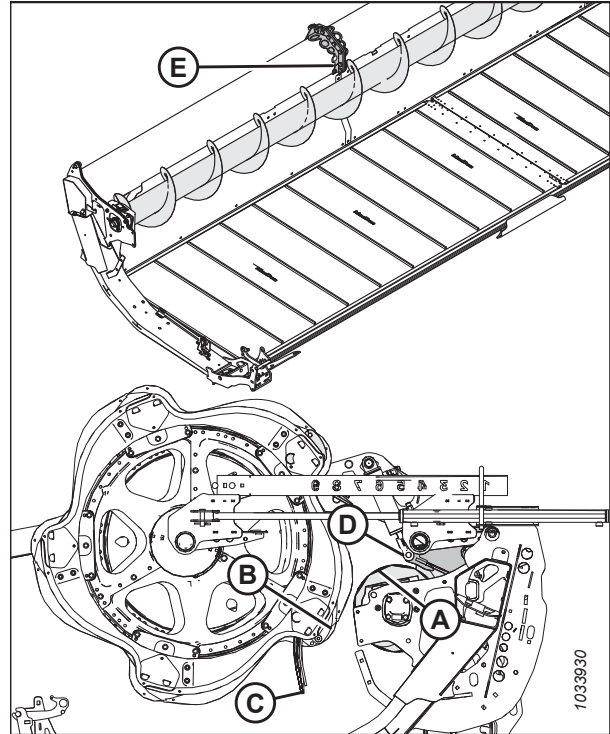


Figure 3.377: UCA Clearance Check Locations

3.9.14 Crop Dividers

Crop dividers are used to separate the crop when harvesting. They are removable to allow the installation of vertical knives or the sunflower attachment, and to decrease transport width.

Standard crop dividers are provided with all headers. Optional floating crop dividers may also be purchased. Refer to [5.1.4 Floating Crop Dividers, page 698](#).

Removing Crop Dividers

Crop dividers can be removed to allow installation of other options or to decrease transport width.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

1. Lower the reel and raise the header. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the safety props. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.

OPERATION

4. Open the endshields. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Hold onto crop divider (E).
7. Rotate hex shaft (B) on divider latch (C) forward to disengage it from bolt (D).

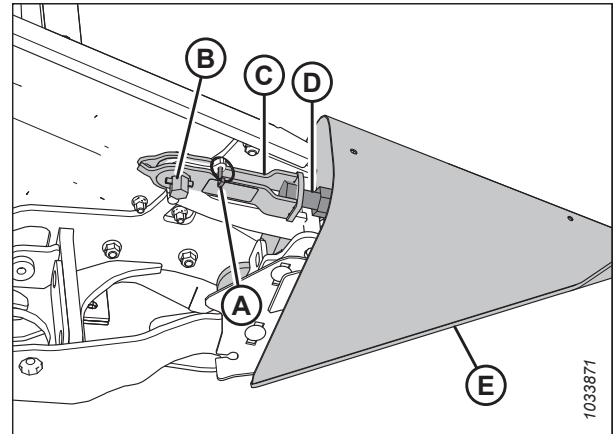


Figure 3.378: Crop Divider with Latch

8. Lower crop divider (A), and remove it from the endsheet.
9. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

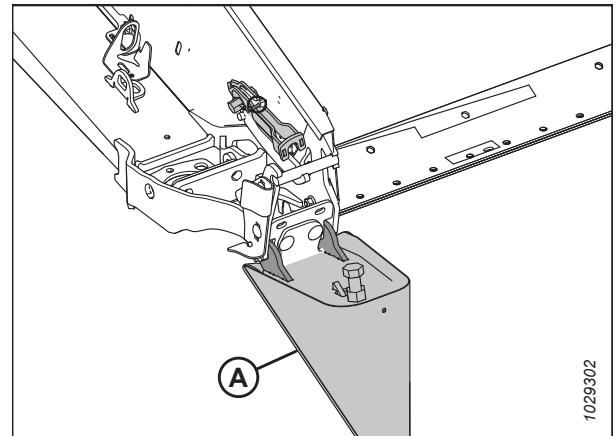


Figure 3.379: Crop Divider with Latch

10. If installed, place crop divider (A) onto optional storage position on bracket (B).
11. If not installed, place crop dividers in a safe location.

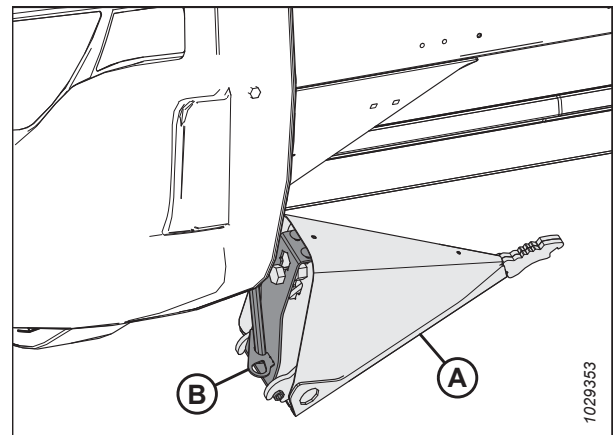


Figure 3.380: Optional Crop Divider Storage

Installing Crop Dividers

Follow these instructions to properly instal the crop dividers.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
6. If optional storage bracket is installed. Remove crop divider (A) from storage position by lifting the crop divider so that bolt (B) clears the slot in storage bracket (C).
7. If not installed, retrieve crop dividers from where they were stored.
8. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

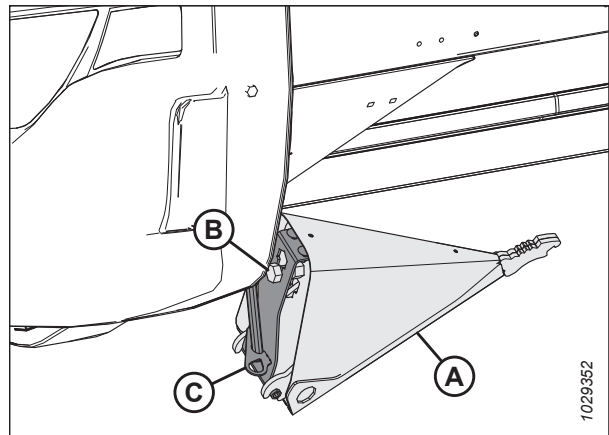


Figure 3.381: Optional Crop Divider

9. Insert crop divider lugs (A) into holes in the endsheet as shown.
10. Remove lynch pin (B) from latch (C).

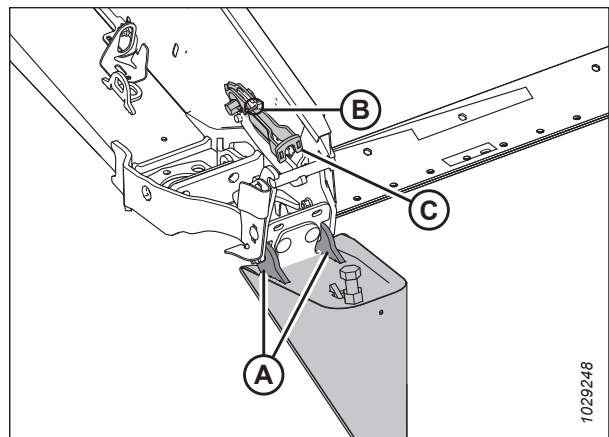


Figure 3.382: Crop Divider with Latch

OPERATION

11. Lift the forward end of latch (A) and crop divider (B).

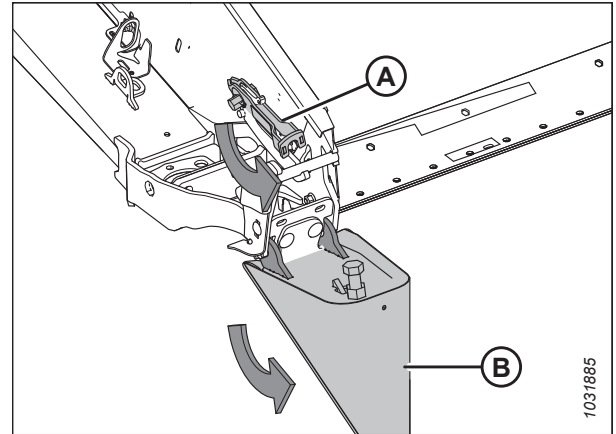


Figure 3.383: Crop Divider with Latch

12. Engage latch (A) onto crop divider bolt (B).
13. Rotate hex shaft (D) on latch (A) counter-clockwise to engage lock.

NOTE:

Hex shaft (D) requires a torque of 40–54 Nm (30–40 lbf·ft) to close the latch. If adjustment is required, loosen latch (A) and adjust bolt (B) to correct the amount of torque required.

14. Secure with lynch pin (C).
15. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

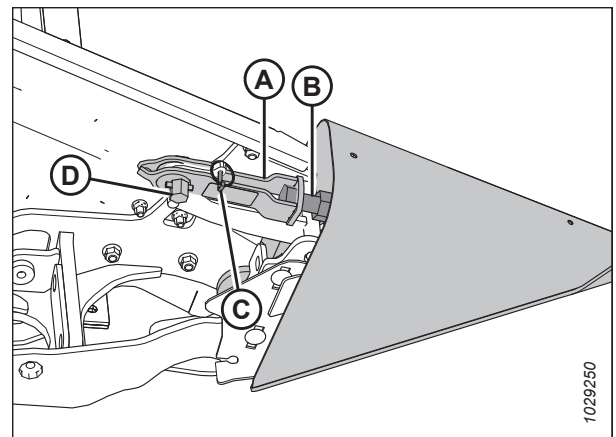


Figure 3.384: Crop Divider with Latch

Removing Floating Crop Dividers

Floating crop dividers can be removed to allow installation of other attachments or the standard crop dividers.



DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine. If it is impossible to engage safety props and impractical to block the header, NEVER climb onto or go underneath an unsupported header.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Raise the header 60–90 cm (2–3 ft.) off the ground.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Open the endshield.

OPERATION

6. Retrieve multi-tool (A) from the left endsheet.
7. Remove lynch pin (B).
8. Install multi-tool (A) onto hex shaft (C).
9. Rotate the multi-tool downwards until latch (D) releases from bolt (E).
10. Lift latch (D) up and off bolt (E).

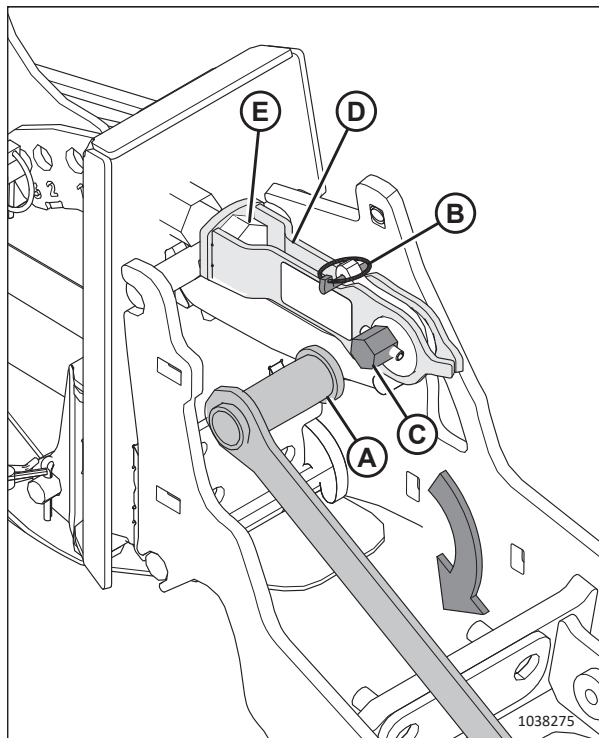


Figure 3.385: Floating Crop Divider Installed

11. Tilt the crop divider forward and pull it out of the header.
12. Reinstall lynch pin (A).
13. Close the endshield.

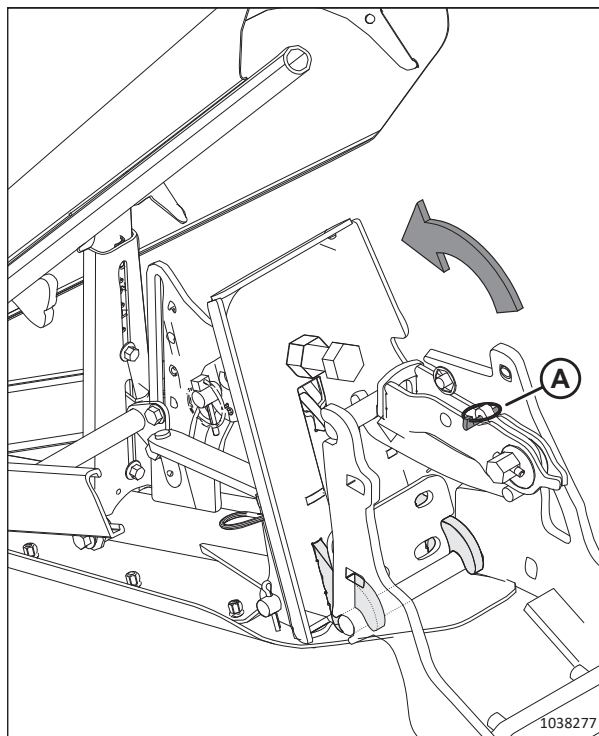


Figure 3.386: Latch Released

Installing Floating Crop Dividers

Follow these instructions to properly install the floating crop dividers.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine. If it is impossible to engage safety props and impractical to block the header, NEVER climb onto or go underneath an unsupported header.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Raise the header 60–90 cm (2–3 ft.) off the ground.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Open the endshield.
6. Remove lynch pin (A) from quick latch (B).
7. Attach multi-tool (C) (stored on the left endsheet) to hex shaft (D) and rotate to release latch (B).
8. If crop dividers (E) are installed, lift latch (B) off of bolt (F) and set the crop dividers aside.

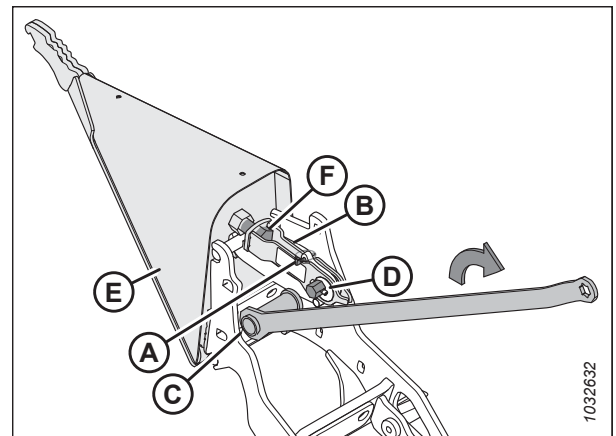


Figure 3.387: Crop Divider Installed

OPERATION

9. Insert crop divider lugs (A) into the slots in the header frame.

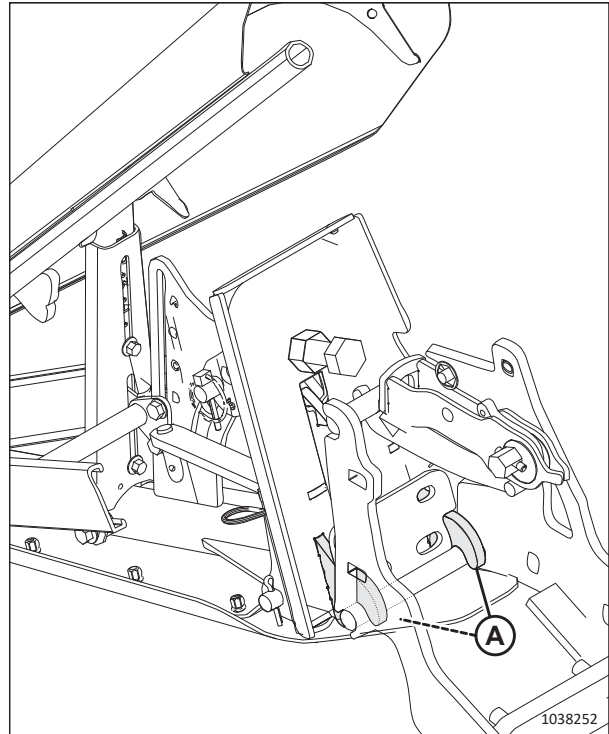


Figure 3.388: Crop Divider Installation

10. Lift the forward end of quick latch (A), and rotate crop divider (B) up into position.

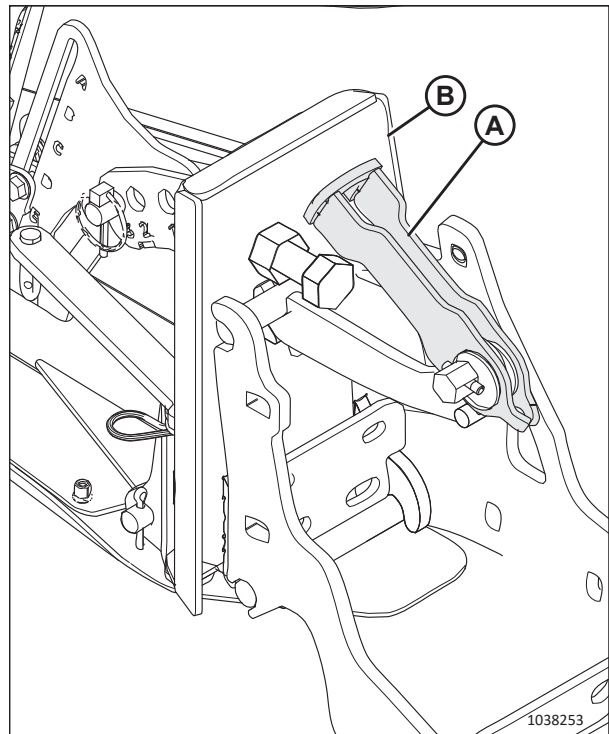


Figure 3.389: Quick Latch

OPERATION

11. Engage quick latch (A) onto the bolt.
12. Make sure the latch closes tightly and crop divider stop (B) contacts header stop (C).

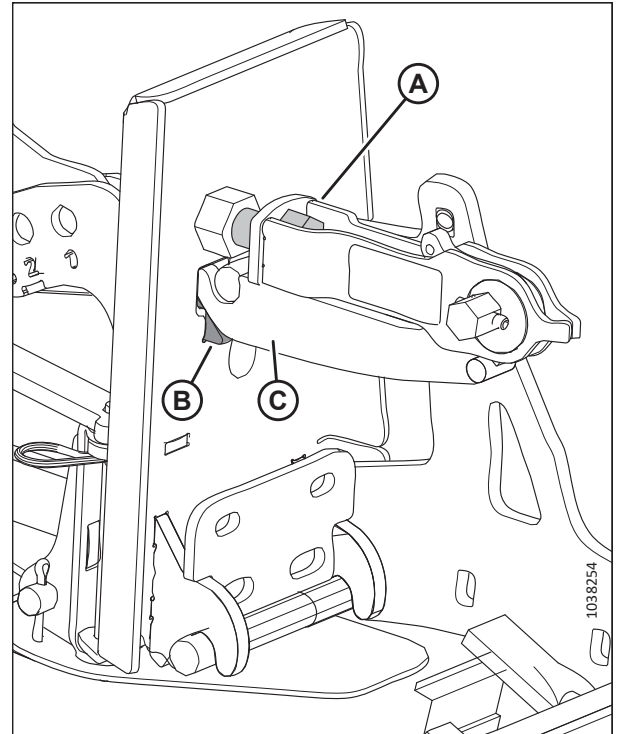


Figure 3.390: Crop Divider Latched to Header

13. If the latch requires adjustment, loosen nut (A), and adjust the length of bolt (B) until it takes 40–54 Nm (30–40 lbf-ft) of torque on hex shaft (C) to close the latch.
14. Retighten nut (A).
15. Attach multi-tool (D) onto hex shaft (C) and rotate the multi-tool to lock the latch.
16. Install lynch pin (E) to secure the quick latch in place.
17. Repeat Step 6, page 241 to Step 16, page 243 at the opposite end of the header to install the opposite crop divider.

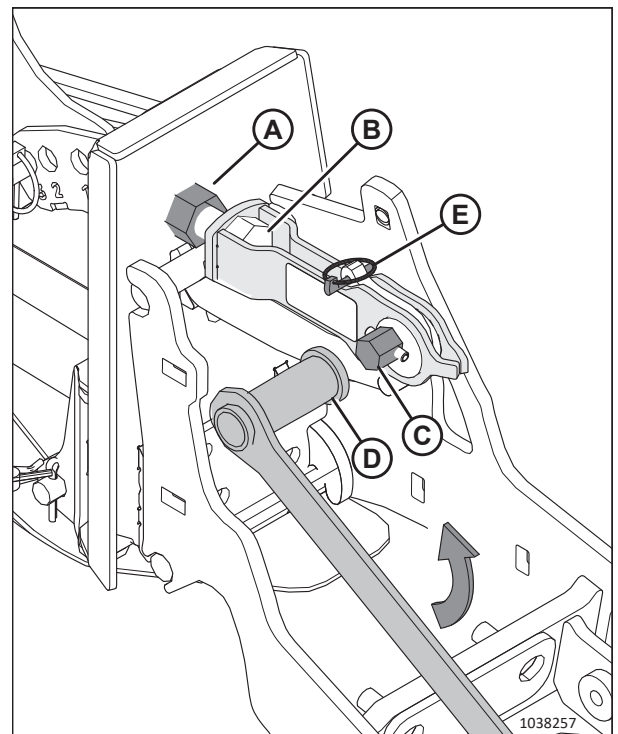


Figure 3.391: Latch Adjustment

18. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).
19. Check the float. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).
20. Check the wing balance. For instructions, refer to [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#)

Adjusting Floating Crop Dividers

Crop dividers can be adjusted for different crop conditions.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine. If it is impossible to engage safety props and impractical to block the header, NEVER climb onto or go underneath an unsupported header.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Raise the header 60–90 cm (2–3 ft.) off the ground.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Refer to the chart according to the stubble height range and reel configuration:
 - Field with a stubble height of 50–125 mm (2–5 in.): Refer to Step [6, page 245](#).
 - Field with a stubble height of 20–100 mm (3/4–4 in.): Refer to Step [7, page 246](#).
 - Cutterbar on the ground, field with a stubble height of 16–50 mm (5/8–2 in.): Refer to Step [8, page 247](#).

Table 3.29 Floating Crop Divider Settings – Double- or Triple-Reel Header, Field with a Stubble Height of 50–125 mm (2–5 in.)

6. Adjust the header according to the settings in the table row that describes the crop condition and the stubble height: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust the header angle. Adjust the header skid shoes. Adjust the floating crop divider (Down Stop to Top Deflector Side Rod) and confirm the range of motion set by the down stop does NOT contact the reel supports or the reel. For instructions, refer to Step 9, page 248 to Step 15, page 250. 									
	Stubble Height	Header Angle ⁶⁶	Header Skid Shoes	Down Stop	Nose Cone Fore-Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Side Rod	
Standing Crop	125 mm (5 in.)	A	Down	2	1 or 3	1	C	In	
	50 mm (2 in.)	E	Down	1	1 or 3	1.5	C	In	
Lodged	125 mm (5 in.)	A	Down	2	3 or 4	1	C	Out	
	50 mm (2 in.)	E	Down	1	3 or 4	2	D	Out	
Severely Lodged⁶⁷	125 mm (5 in.)	A	Down	2	4	3	D	Out	
	125 mm (5 in.)	A	Down	2	5	4	D	Out	
	50 mm (2 in.)	E	Down	1	4	3	C	Out	
	50 mm (2 in.)	E	Down	1	5	4	C	Out	

66. A (min) – E (max)

67. Crop canopy lower than 150 mm (6 in.)

Table 3.30 Floating Crop Divider Settings – Double or Triple Reel Header, Field with a Stubble Height of 20–100 mm (3/4–4 in.)

7. Adjust the header according to the settings in the table row that describes the crop condition and the stubble height: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust the header angle. Adjust the header skid shoes. Adjust the floating crop divider (Down Stop to Top Deflector Side Rod) and confirm the range of motion set by the down stop does NOT contact the reel supports or the reel. For instructions, refer to Step 9, page 248 to Step 15, page 250. 									
	Stubble Height	Header Angle ⁶⁸	Header Skid Shoes	Down Stop	Nose Cone Fore-Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Side Rod	
Standing Crop	100 mm (4 in.)	A	Middle	2	1 or 3	1	C	In	
	20 mm (3/4 in.)	E	Middle	1	1 or 3	1	C	In	
Lodged	100 mm (4 in.)	A	Middle	2	3	1	C	Out	
	100 mm (4 in.)	A	Middle	2	4	2	C	Out	
	20 mm (3/4 in.)	E	Middle	1	3	1	D	Out	
	20 mm (3/4 in.)	E	Middle	1	4	2	D	Out	
Severely Lodged⁶⁹	100 mm (4 in.)	A	Middle	2 or 3	4	3	D	Out	
	100 mm (4 in.)	A	Middle	2 or 3	5	4	D	Out	
	20 mm (3/4 in.)	E	Middle	1	4	3	C	Out	
	20 mm (3/4 in.)	E	Middle	1	5	4	C	Out	

 68. A (min) – E (max)

69. Crop canopy lower than 150 mm (6 in.)

Table 3.31 Floating Crop Divider Settings – Double- or Triple-Reel Header, Cutterbar on the Ground, Field with a Stubble Height of 16–50 mm (5/8–2 in.)

8. Adjust the header according to the settings in the table row that describes the crop condition and the stubble height: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust the header angle. Adjust the header skid shoes. Adjust the floating crop divider (Down Stop to Top Deflector Side Rod) and confirm the range of motion set by the down stop does NOT contact the reel supports or the reel. For instructions, refer to Step 9, page 248 to Step 15, page 250. 									
	Stubble Height	Header Angle ⁷⁰	Header Skid Shoes	Down Stop	Nose Cone Fore-Aft Position	Top Deflector Height	Side Deflector Height	Top Deflector Side Rod	
Standing Crop	50 mm (2 in.)	A	Up	2	1 or 3	1	C	In	
	16 mm (5/8 in.)	E	Up	1	1	2	C	In	
	16 mm (5/8 in.)	E	Up	1	3	1	C	In	
Lodged	50 mm (2 in.)	A	Up	2	3	1	C	Out	
	50 mm (2 in.)	A	Up	3	4	1	C	Out	
	16 mm (5/8 in.)	E	Up	1	3 or 4	2	D	Out	
Severely Lodged⁷¹	50 mm (2 in.)	A	Up	2 or 3	4	3	D	Out	
	50 mm (2 in.)	A	Up	2 or 3	5	4	D	Out	
	16 mm (5/8 in.)	E	Up	1	4	2.5	C	Out	
	16 mm (5/8 in.)	E	Up	1	5	4	C	Out	

70. A (min) – E (max)

71. Crop canopy lower than 150 mm (6 in.)

OPERATION

9. **Down stop:** Remove lynch pin (A) from the clevis pin and then remove the clevis pin.
10. Tilt the divider and install the clevis pin into a numbered hole "1" to "3". Secure the clevis pin with the lynch pin.

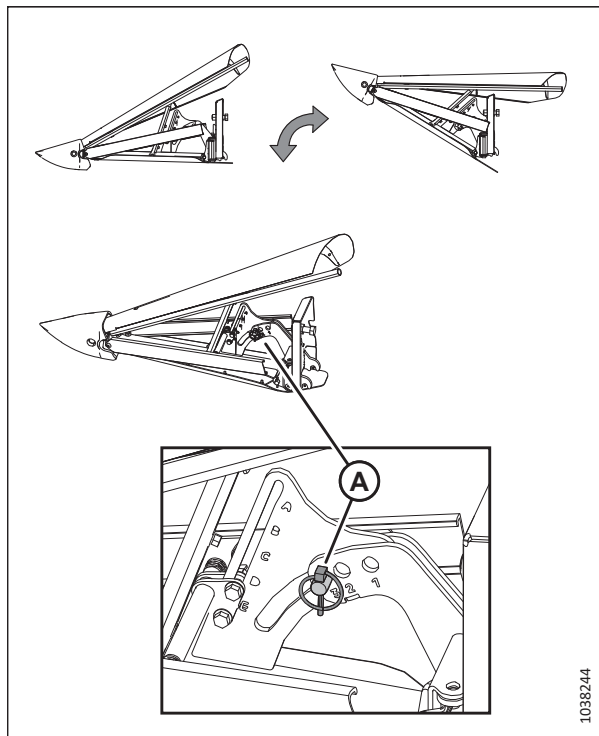


Figure 3.392: Down Stop Adjustment

11. **Nose cone fore-aft:** Remove bolt (A), move the tube in or out, and install the bolt into one of the five tube holes.

NOTE:

In example (B), the bolt is installed in tube hole "1". In example (C), the bolt is installed in tube hole "5".

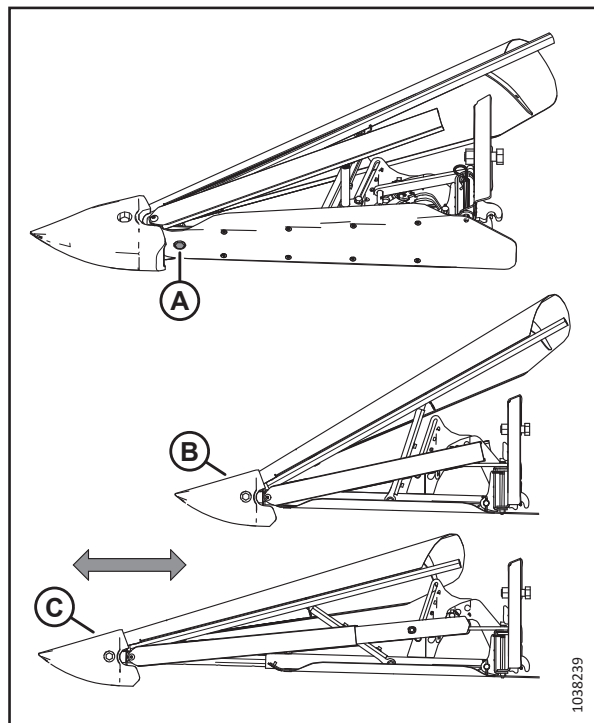


Figure 3.393: Nose Cone Fore-aft Adjustment

OPERATION

12. **Top deflector height:** Loosen the nuts on bolts (A), slide the center support to the desired setting (1 to 4.5), and tighten the nuts.

- Align the dots with the support to set half-increments. Example (B) is 2.5.
- Align the number with the support to set full increments. Example (C) is 2.

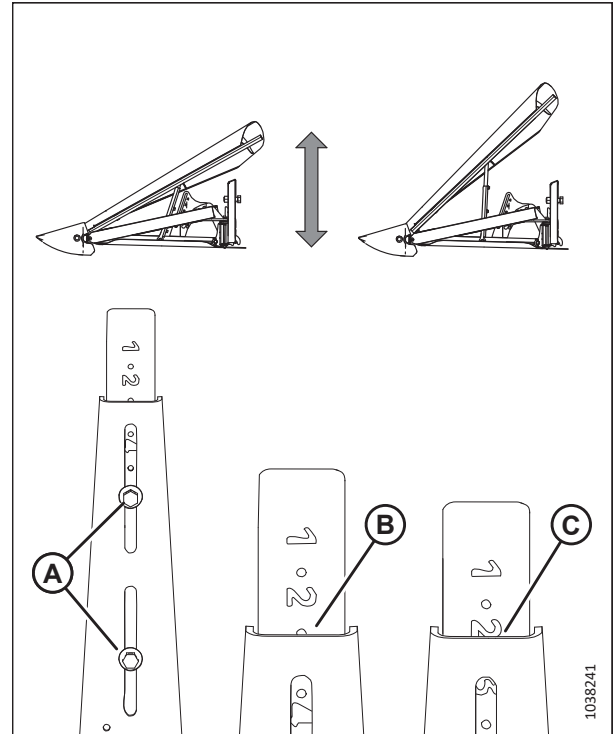


Figure 3.394: Top Deflector Height Adjustment

13. **Side deflector height:** Loosen the nuts on bolts (A), slide deflectors until notch (B) is at the desired setting "A" to "E", and tighten nuts.

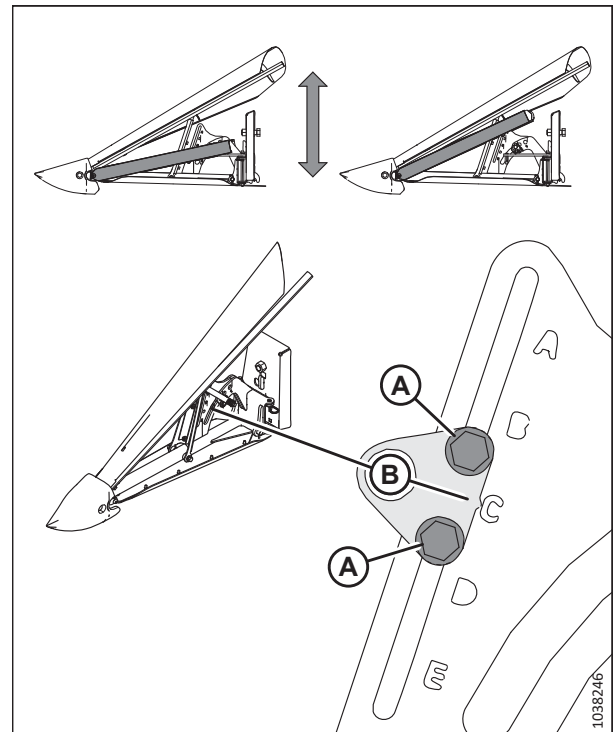


Figure 3.395: Side Deflector Height Adjustment

OPERATION

14. **Top deflector side rod:** Loosen nut (A) and bolt (B), and swing rod (C) outward or inward. Tighten nut (A) to 39 Nm (29 lbf-ft). Tighten bolt (B) to 52 Nm (38 lbf-ft).

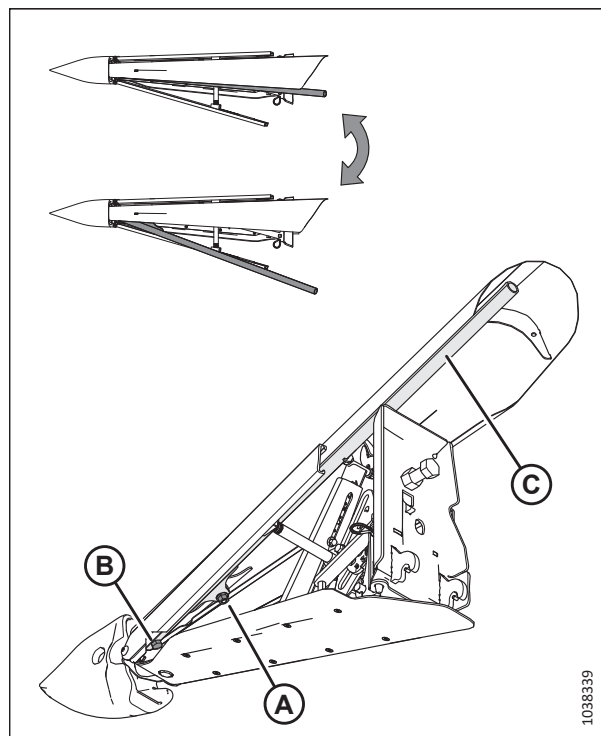
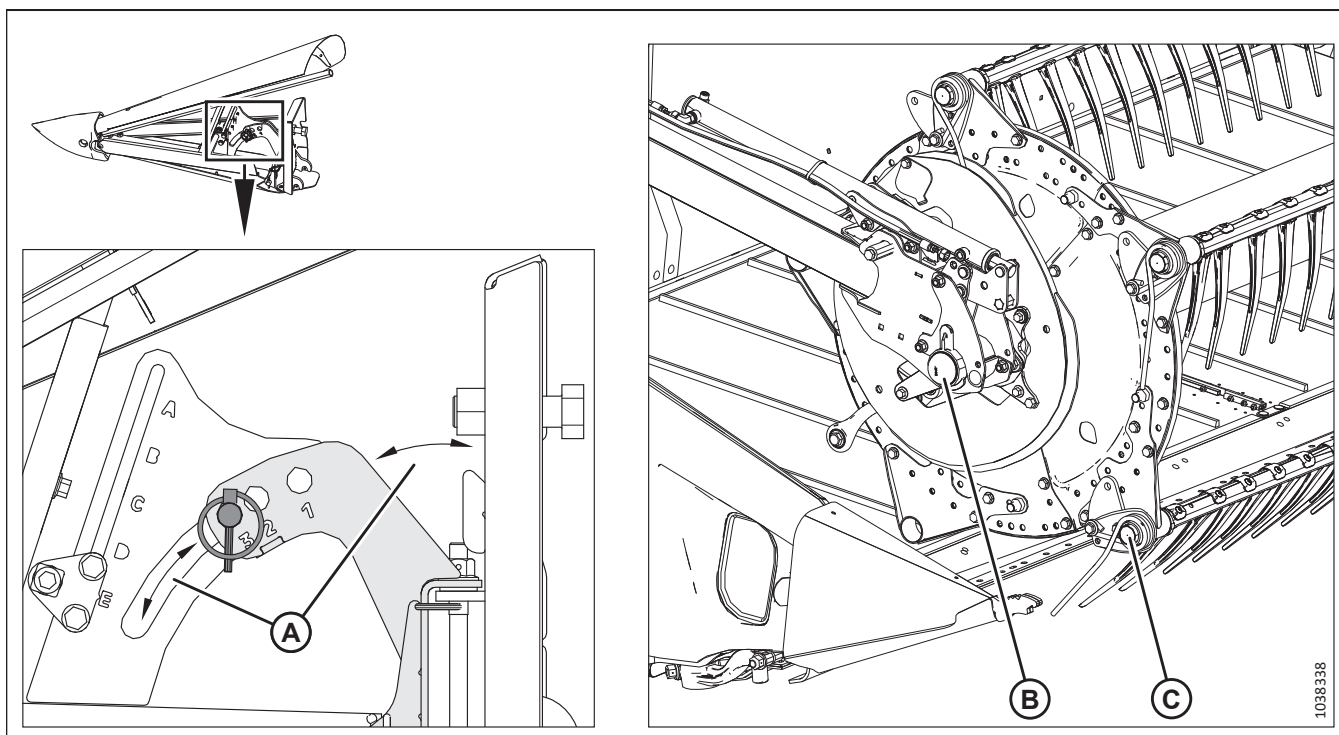


Figure 3.396: Top Deflector Side Rod Adjustment

Figure 3.397: Floating Crop Divider Range of Motion



15. **Range of motion check:** Lift and lower the floating crop divider through the range of motion (A) set by the down stop. Confirm the floating divider does **NOT** contact reel supports (B) or reel (C).

3.9.15 Crop Divider Rods

Removable crop divider rods are provided with the header and to be used in conjunction with crop dividers to help separate crop when harvesting. The rods are most useful when crop is bushy or down. In standing crops, using only crop dividers is recommended.

Table 3.32 Crop Divider Rods Recommended Use

With Divider Rods		Without Divider Rods
Alfalfa	Lodged cereal	Edible beans
Canola	Peas	Milo
Flax	Soybeans	Rice
Grass seed	Sudan grass	Soybeans
Lentils	Winter forage	Standing cereal

Removing Crop Divider Rods

Crop divider rods can be removed from the ends of the crop dividers and stored on the header.

1. Loosen bolt (B) and remove crop divider rod (A) from both sides of the header.

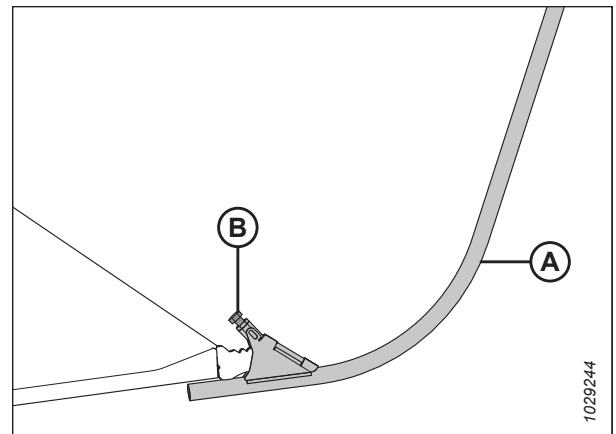


Figure 3.398: Crop Divider Rod

2. Store both crop divider rods (B) on the right endsheet, and secure with lynch pin (A).

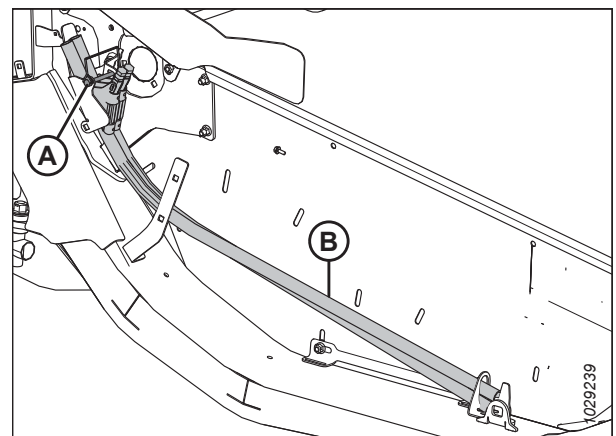


Figure 3.399: Right Endsheets

Installing Crop Divider Rods

The crop divider rods can be installed on the ends of the crop dividers to help separate bushy crop.

1. Open the right endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

OPERATION

2. Undo lynch pin (A) securing divider rods (B) to the header endsheet, and remove the divider rods from the storage location.
3. Reinstall lynch pin (A).

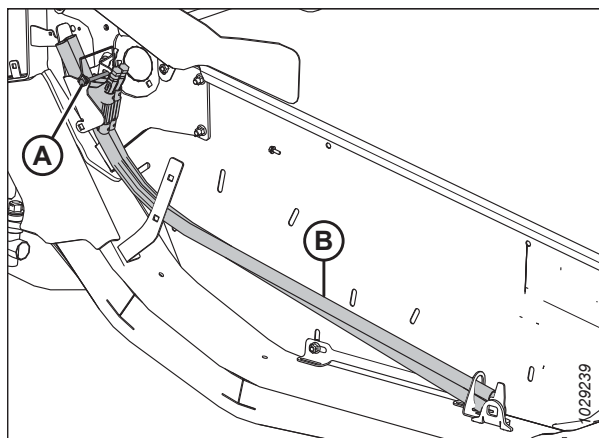


Figure 3.400: Divider Rods in Storage Location at Right Header Endsheet

4. Position crop divider rod (A) on the tip of the crop divider as shown and tighten bolt (B).
5. Repeat the procedure at the opposite end of the header.
6. Close the right endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

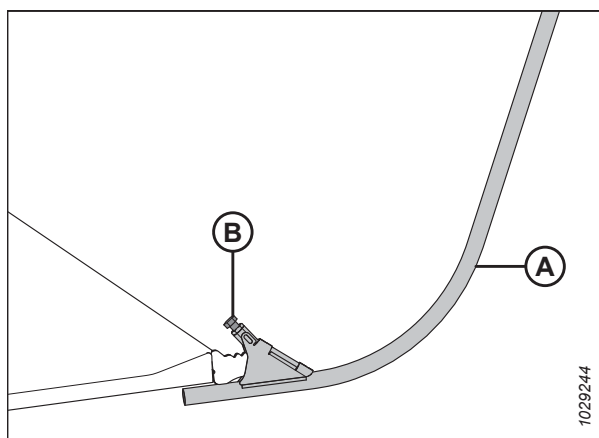


Figure 3.401: Divider Rod on Crop Divider

Optional Rice Divider Rods

The optional rice divider rods are used assist with tall and tangled rice crops. They can be installed on the ends of the crop dividers.

Rice divider rods provide improved performance in tall and tangled rice crops. For more bundle information, refer to [5.1.6 Rice Divider Rod Kit, page 700](#).

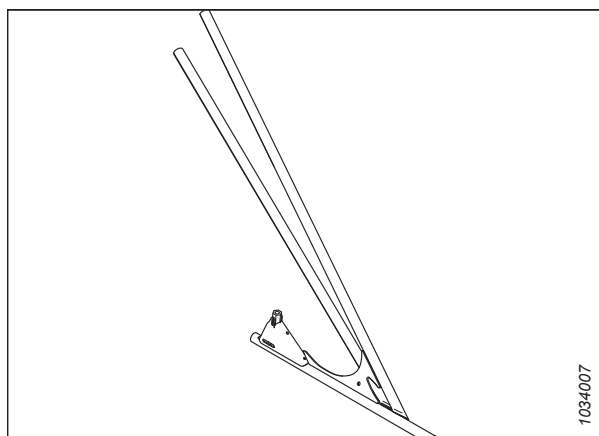


Figure 3.402: Optional Divider Rod for Rice

OPERATION

Rice divider rods are stored at the rear of both endsheets on storage bracket (A) and secured in place with pin (B). The installation and removal of these rods are the same as the procedures for standard crop divider rods.

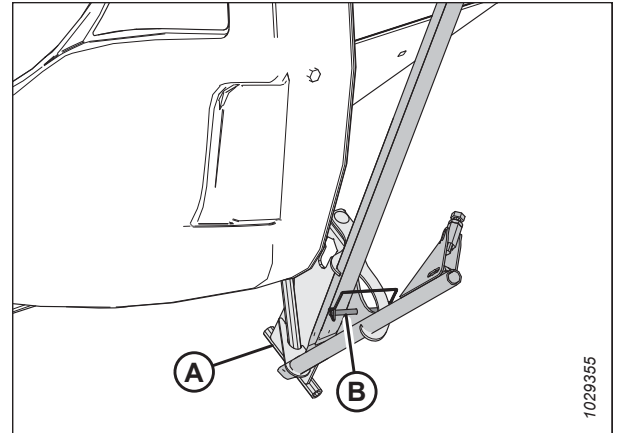


Figure 3.403: Rice Divider Rod Storage

3.10 Auto Header Height Control

MacDon's auto header height control (AHHC) feature works in conjunction with the AHHC option available on certain combine models.

There are two hall-effect sensors (A) installed on the float setting indicators on the float module. These sensors send signals to the combine allowing it to maintain a consistent cutting height and an optimum float as the header follows ground contours.

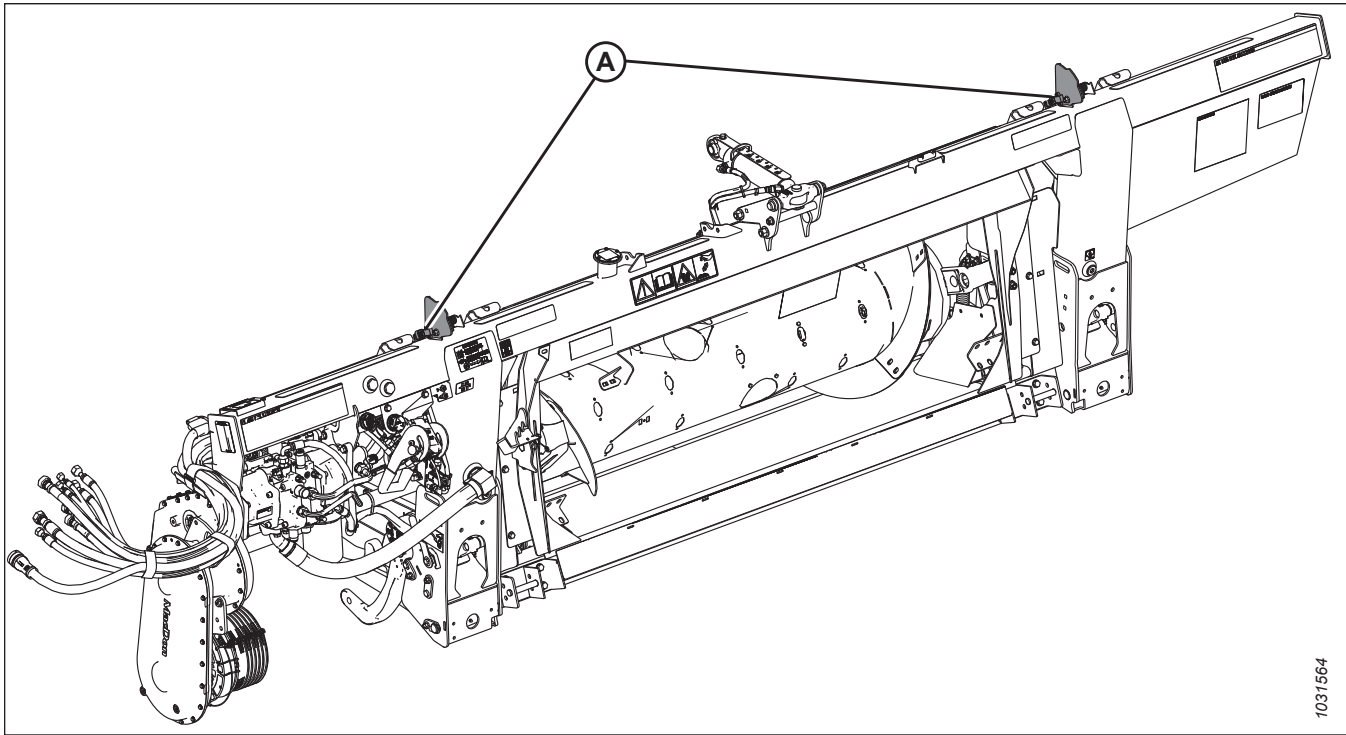


Figure 3.404: FM200 Float Module

To configure the AHHC system for your specific combine model, refer to the relevant procedure:

- [3.10.6 Case IH 130 and 140 Series Mid-Range Combines, page 262](#)
- [3.10.7 Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines, page 272](#)
- [3.10.8 Challenger® and Massey Ferguson® 6 and 7 Series Combines, page 287](#)
- [3.10.9 CLAAS 500 Series Combines, page 295](#)
- [3.10.10 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines, page 304](#)
- [3.10.11 CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series Combines, page 315](#)
- [3.10.12 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines, page 325](#)
- [3.10.13 Gleaner S9 Series Combines, page 335](#)
- [3.10.14 IDEAL™ Series Combines, page 350](#)
- [3.10.15 John Deere 70 Series Combines, page 364](#)
- [3.10.16 John Deere S and T Series Combines, page 371](#)
- [3.10.17 John Deere S7 Series Combines, page 390](#)
- [3.10.18 John Deere X9 Series Combines, page 402](#)
- [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 421](#)

- 3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430

3.10.1 Auto Header Height Control Sensor Operation

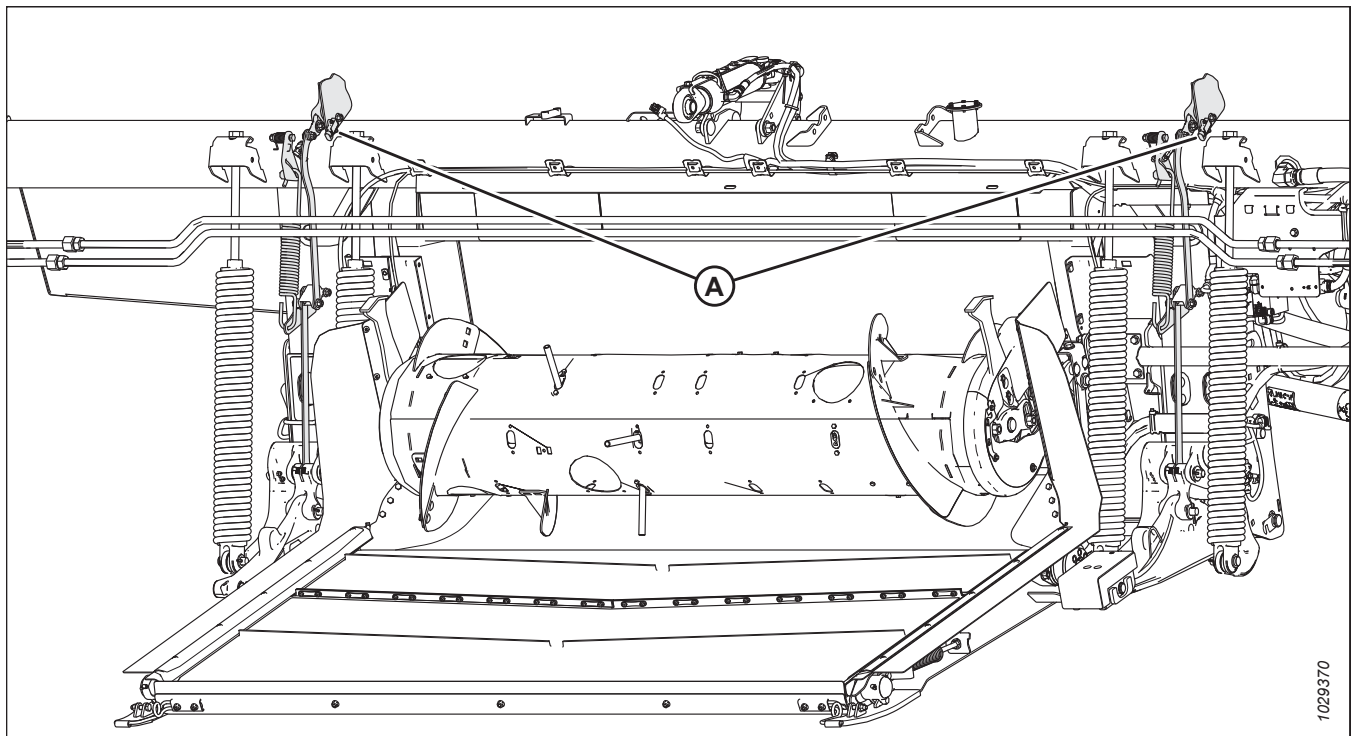


Figure 3.405: FM200 Float Module

The position sensors supplied with the auto header height control (AHHC) system are hall-effect sensors. Normal operating signal voltages for the sensors fall between 10% (0.5 VDC) and 90% (4.5 VDC). An increase in sensor voltage correlates to a decrease in ground pressure, or if you are cutting off the ground on gauge wheels an increase in the header cut height.

Sensor errors result in a 0 V signal, indicating a faulty sensor, incorrect supply voltage, or a damaged wiring harness.

Sensors

Two hall-effect sensors are installed on float indicator needles (A). As the header follows ground contours, the sensors communicate with the combine causing it to raise and lower the feeder house to maintain a consistent cutting height and optimum float.

Normal operating signal voltages for the sensors fall between 10% (0.5 VDC) and 90% (4.5 VDC). An increase in sensor voltage correlates to an increase in header height. Any sensor error results in a 0 V signal, which indicates either a faulty sensor or lack of supply voltage.

Before using the AHHC feature, you must do the following:

1. Prepare the combine to use the AHHC feature (applies only to some combine models—refer to the instructions for your combine).
2. Calibrate the sensors used by the AHHC system so that the combine can correctly interpret data from the hall-effect sensors on the float module (for more information, refer to the instructions for your combine).

NOTE:

Once calibration is complete, you are ready to use the AHHC feature in the field. Individual combine settings can improve AHHC performance (for more information, refer to your combine operators manual).

OPERATION

Sensor voltage must be between 0.5–4.5 V. If the voltage is too close to either end of the voltage range, there will be difficulty with calibration and operation of the AHHC. A properly set sensor will have room on both ends of the voltage range.

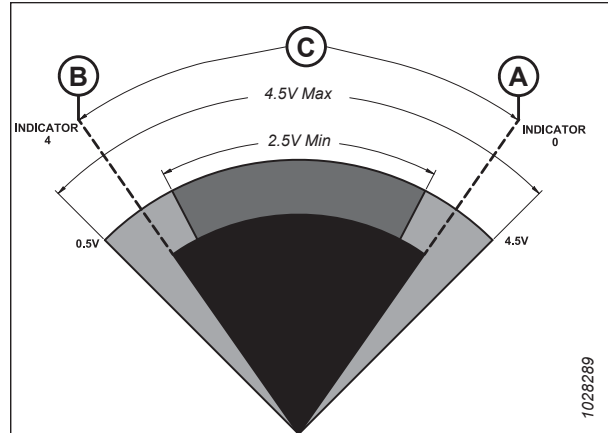


Figure 3.406: Sensor Range Properly Set

A - High Voltage

B - Low Voltage

C - Sensor Operating Range

A sensor that is adjusted too close to the high voltage or low voltage limit will have difficulty staying within the sensor's operating range of 0.5–4.5 V. If the sensor moves out of range, the AHHC will stop functioning correctly.

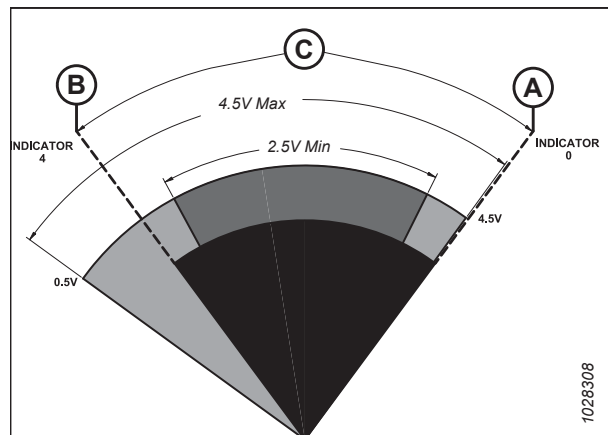


Figure 3.407: Sensor Range too Close to the High Voltage Limit

A - High Voltage

B - Low Voltage

C - Sensor Operating Range

A sensor with a voltage range that is too narrow will have difficulty staying within the set range. The combine will continually seek to keep the sensor within the set range.

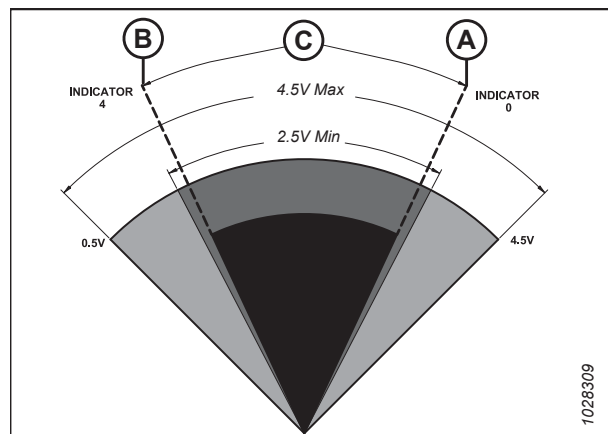


Figure 3.408: Sensor Range too Narrow

A - High Voltage

B - Low Voltage

C - Sensor Operating Range

3.10.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements

The auto header height control (AHC) sensor output must be within a specific voltage range for each combine, or the AHC feature will not work properly.

Table 3.33 Combine Voltage Limits

Combine	Lower Voltage Limit	Upper Voltage Limit	Range
Case IH 5088/6088/7088, 5130/6130/7130, 7010/8010, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, and 7240/8240/9240	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Challenger® B and C Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
CLAAS 500/600/700 Series, 7000/8000 Series, and Tucano Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
IDEAL™ Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Gleaner R, and S Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
John Deere 70, S, and T Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Massey Ferguson® 9005 and 9500	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
New Holland CR/CX - 5 V system	0.7 V	4.3 V	2.5 V
New Holland CR/CX - 10 V system	2.8 V	7.2 V	4.1–4.4 V

3.10.3 Manually Checking Voltage Limits

In order for the auto header height to function properly the voltage needs to be set properly.

NOTE:

Some combines can check the voltages from the cab. For instructions, refer to the instructions for your combine.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Park the combine on a level surface.
3. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

Checking sensor upper voltage limit

4. Extend the guard angle until header angle indicator (A) is at E.

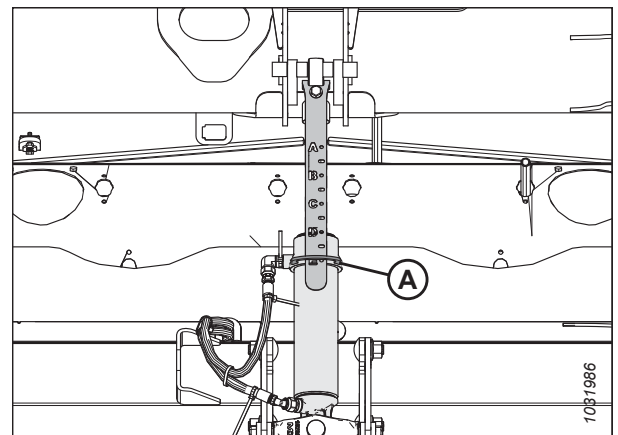


Figure 3.409: Center-Link

OPERATION

5. Float indicator pointer (A) should be at 0 (B).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

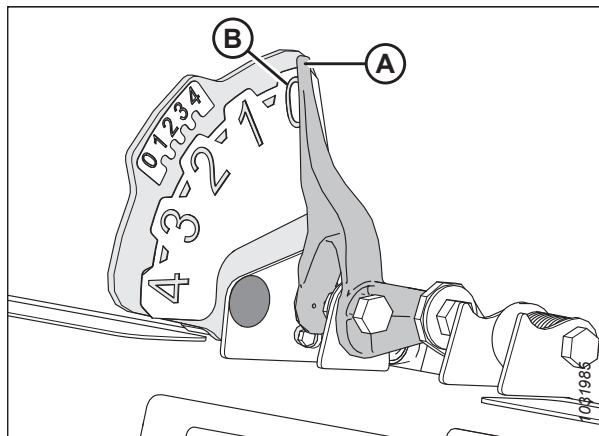


Figure 3.410: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear

7. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is **NOT** on its down stops, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

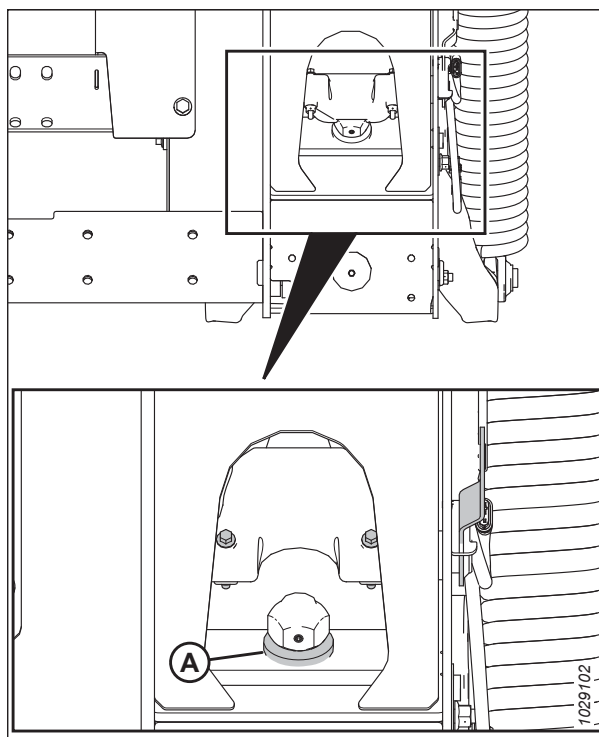


Figure 3.411: Down Stop Washer

OPERATION

8. Locate connector P600 (A) at the left front of the float module.
9. Remove plug cap (B).
10. Turn the key to the run position.
11. Check P600 for power from the combine. There should be 5V at pin 7.
 - Pin 7 - FM2215E – power
 - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground
12. On connector P600, confirm upper voltage from left sensor (pins 1 and 8), and right sensor (pins 3 and 8). For voltage, Refer to [3.10.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements](#), page 257.
 - Pin 1 - FM3326A – left sensor signal
 - Pin 3 - FM3328A – right sensor signal
 - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground

NOTE:

If the standard plug is installed in P600, the plug sends the average of both sensors to the combine. If the optional lateral tilt plug is installed, then the plug sends separate voltage signals from both sensors to the combine.

Checking sensor lower voltage limit

13. Extend the guard angle until header angle indicator (A) is at E.

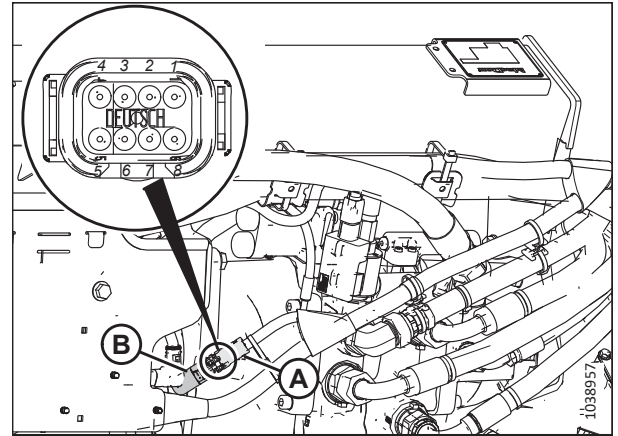


Figure 3.412: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear

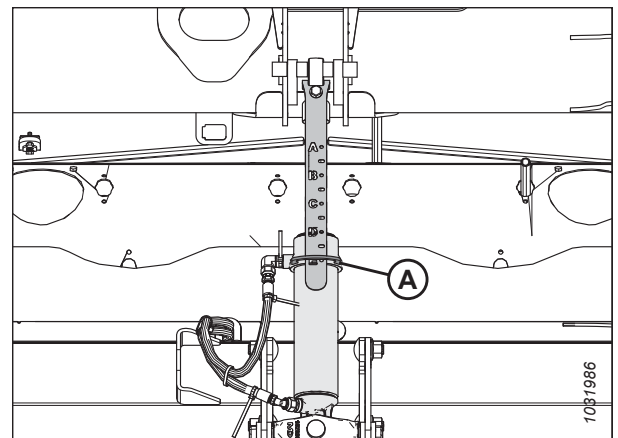


Figure 3.413: Center-Link

OPERATION

14. Fully lower header on the ground, float indicator pointer (A) should be at **4** (B).
15. Turn the key to the run position.
16. On connector P600, confirm lower voltage from left sensor (pins 1 and 8), and right sensor (pins 3 and 8).
For voltage, Refer to [3.10.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements](#), page 257.
 - Pin 1 - FM3326A – left sensor signal
 - Pin 3 - FM3328A – right sensor signal
 - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground

NOTE:

If the standard plug is installed in P600, the plug sends the average of both sensors to the combine. If the optional lateral tilt plug is installed, then the plug sends separate voltage signals from both sensors to the combine.

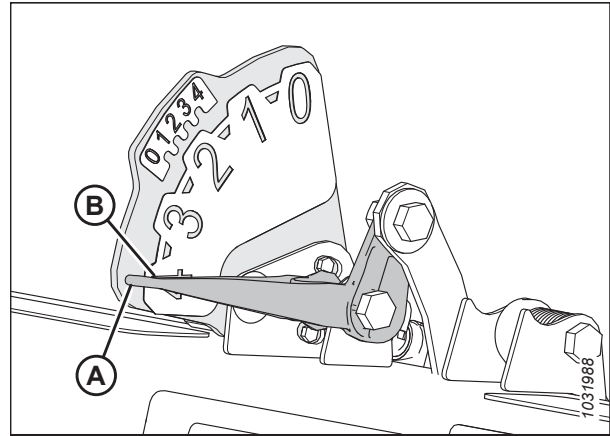


Figure 3.414: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear

3.10.4 Replacing Float Height Sensor

Two magnetic sensors are installed on the float setting indicators. As the header follows ground contours, the sensors communicate with the combine causing it to raise and lower the feeder house to maintain a consistent cutting height and optimum float.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

This procedure can be completed on either side of the float module.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Lower the reel fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

OPERATION

5. Disconnect harness plug P537 (C) from the sensor on the left side of the float module.

NOTE:

If replacing the float height indicator sensor on the right side of the float module, disconnect plug P539.

6. Remove bolt (A).
7. Remove indicator plate (B) complete with the sensor.

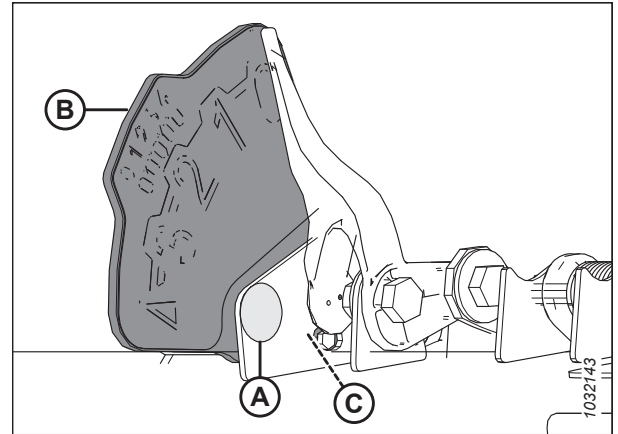


Figure 3.415: Float Setting Indicator – Left

8. Remove two bolts and nuts (A).
9. Remove and discard old sensor (B).
10. Install new sensor (B), with the plug facing down.
11. Install two bolts and nuts (A).

NOTE:

Bolt heads should be on the same side as the decal.

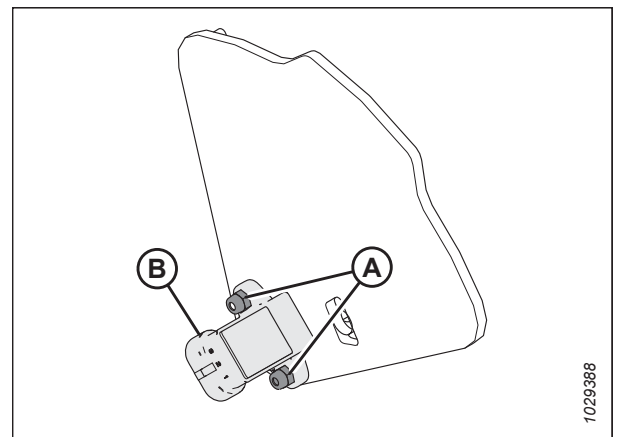


Figure 3.416: Float Height Sensor

12. Install indicator plate (B) complete with the sensor.
13. Install bolt (A).
14. Connect harness plug (C).
15. Check the voltage range. For instructions, refer to [3.10.3 Manually Checking Voltage Limits, page 257](#).

NOTE:

Some combines can check voltages from the cab. For instructions, refer to the instructions for your combine.

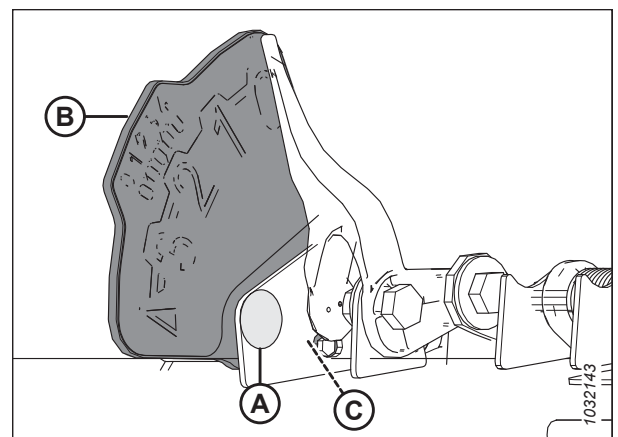


Figure 3.417: Float Setting Indicator – Left

3.10.5 10 Volt Adapter – New Holland Combines Only

New Holland combines with a 10 V system require the appropriate 10 V adapter for calibration of the auto header height control (AHHC) feature.

If a 10 V New Holland combine does not have adapter (A) installed, the AHHC output will always read 0 V regardless of the sensor position.

To check sensor voltages, refer to *Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – New Holland CR/CX Series, page 421* or *3.10.3 Manually Checking Voltage Limits, page 257*.

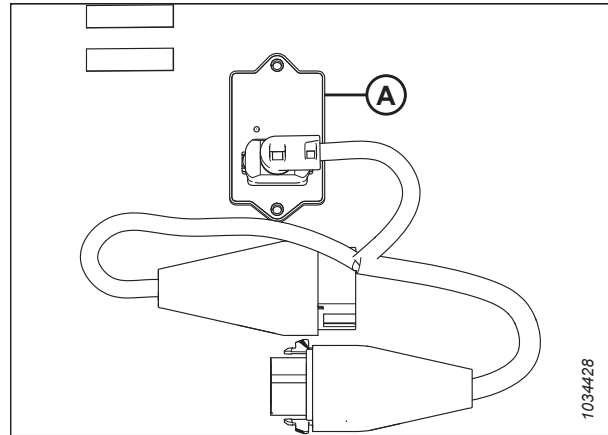


Figure 3.418: 10 V Adapter (MD #7241)

3.10.6 Case IH 130 and 140 Series Mid-Range Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with Case IH 130 and 140 Series mid-range combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140

The auto header height control sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

OPERATION

2. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

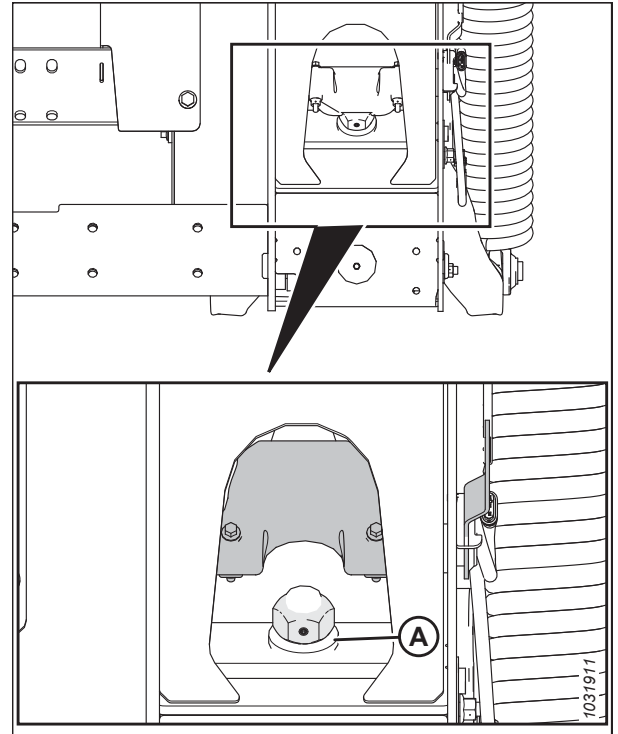


Figure 3.419: Float Lock

3. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

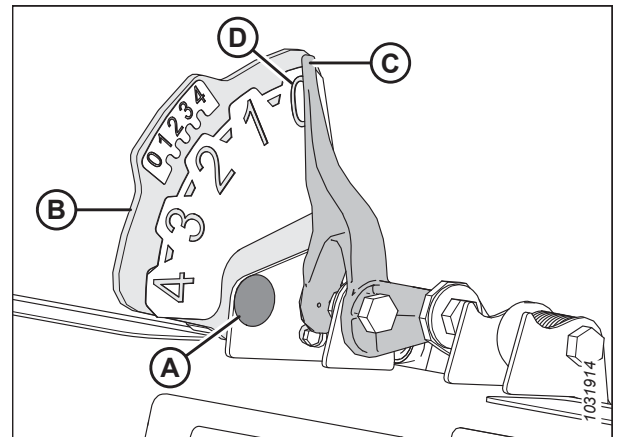


Figure 3.420: Float Indicator

OPERATION

5. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
6. On the main page of the combine display, select **DIAGNOSTICS (A)**. The **DIAGNOSTICS** page appears.

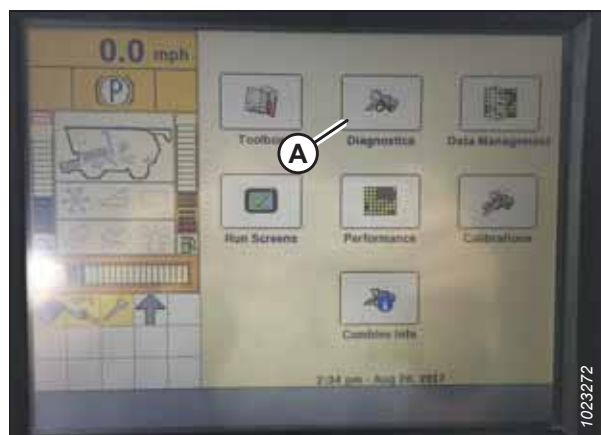


Figure 3.421: Case IH Combine Display

7. Select **SETTINGS (A)**. The **SETTINGS** page appears.
8. From the **GROUP** menu, select **HEADER (B)**.

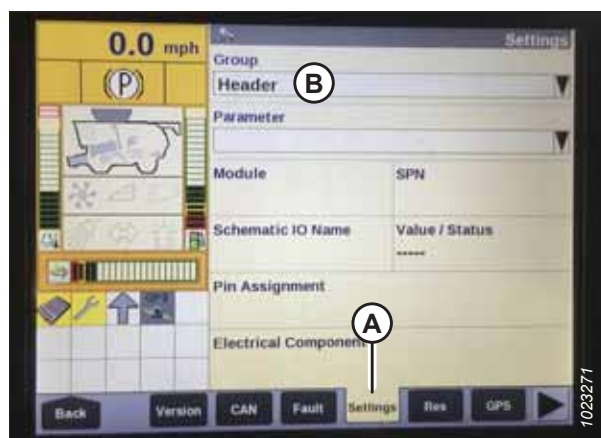


Figure 3.422: Case IH Combine Display

9. From the **PARAMETER** menu, select **LEFT HEIGHT/TILT SENSOR (A)**.



Figure 3.423: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

10. The SETTINGS page updates to display the voltage in VALUE/STATUS field (A). Lower the feeder house fully, and then raise it 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground to view the full range of voltage readings.



Figure 3.424: Case IH Combine Display

Header Settings Quick Reference – Case IH 130 and 140 Series

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a FD2 Series FlexDraper®.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the Case IH 130 and 140 Series combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.34 Header Settings – Case IH 130 and 140 Series

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting	
Cutting type	Platform	
Header pressure float	Not installed	
HHC height sensitivity ⁷²	Two sensor system	250
	One sensor system	180
HHC tilt sensitivity	150	
Reel drive type	Standard 19-tooth drive sprocket	4
	Optional high-torque 14-tooth drive sprocket	5
	Optional high-torque 10-tooth drive sprocket	6
Reel height sensor	Yes	
Autotilt	Two sensor system	YES
	One sensor system	NO

Setting up Header on Combine Display – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140

To set up the header to work with a Case IH 5130/6130/7130 or 5140/6140/7140 combine, you will need to access the HEADER SETUP page on the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

72. If hunting occurs during operation, decrease the HUNTING setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

OPERATION

1. On the main page of the combine display, select TOOLBOX (A).

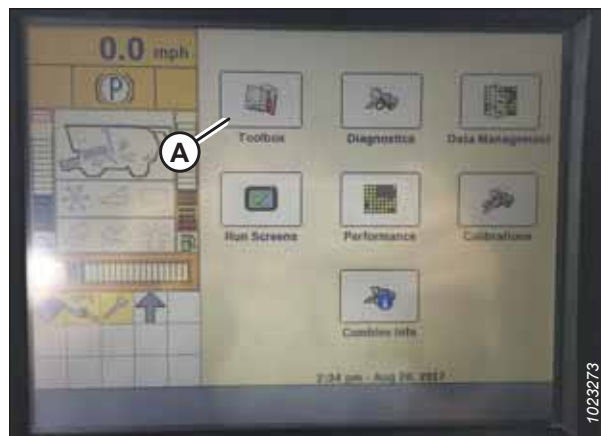


Figure 3.425: Case IH Combine Display

2. Select HEAD 1 tab (A). The HEADER SETUP page appears.

NOTE:

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

3. From CUTTING TYPE menu (B), select PLATFORM.

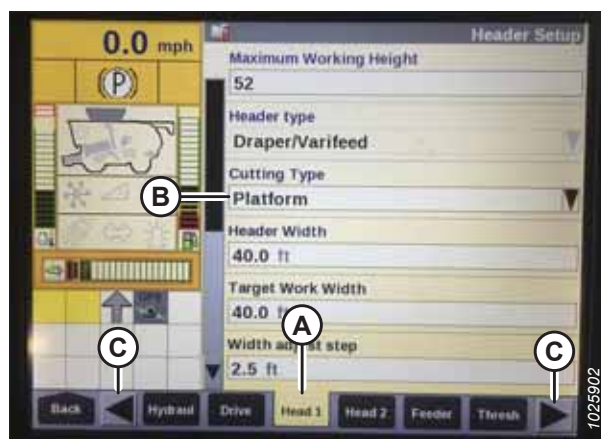


Figure 3.426: Case IH Combine Display

4. Select HEAD 2 tab (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 page appears.
5. From HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT menu (B), select NOT INSTALLED.

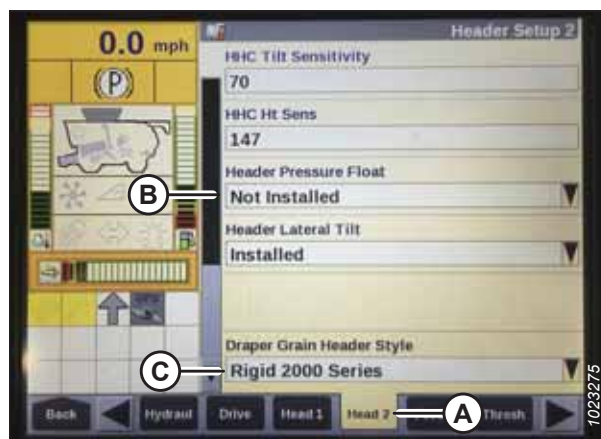


Figure 3.427: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

6. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A). Enter the following settings:

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

NOTE:

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease the HUNTING setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

7. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.
8. From REEL DRIVE TYPE menu (A), select one of the following:
 - 4 if you are using a standard 19-tooth drive sprocket.
 - 5 if you are using an optional high-torque 14-tooth drive sprocket.
 - 6 if you are using an optional high-torque 10-tooth drive sprocket.

9. From REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu (A), select YES.



Figure 3.428: Case IH Combine Display

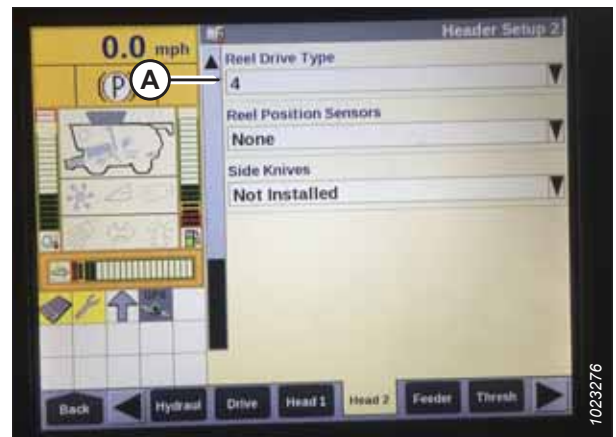


Figure 3.429: Case IH Combine Display



Figure 3.430: Case IH Combine Display

10. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.



Figure 3.431: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with a software version 28.00 or above, refer to [Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software, page 280](#).

1. To view the software version, select the DIAGNOSTICS button from the Home Screen, then select VERSION tab (A).



Figure 3.432: Case IH Combine Display

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. In order to prevent the header from separating from the float module, it may be necessary to change the float to a heavier setting during the calibration procedure.

OPERATION

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

2. Ensure that the center-link is set to **D**.
3. Confirm that all electrical and hydraulic connections between the header and float module are functional.
4. Start the combine engine, but do **NOT** engage the separator or the feeder house.
5. Locate the HEADER CONTROL switch on the right console, and set to HT (this is AHHC mode).
6. Hold the DOWN button for 10 seconds, or until the combine feeder house has been lowered all the way down (the feeder house will stop moving).
7. Push the RAISE button and hold it until the feeder house travels all the way up. It will stop 61 cm (2 ft.) above the ground for 5 seconds, then it will resume traveling upward. This is an indication that calibration is successful.

NOTE:

If the float was changed to a heavier setting to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float weight after the calibration is complete.

Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140

Once the cab combine display has been configured, the preset cutting heights can be used.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

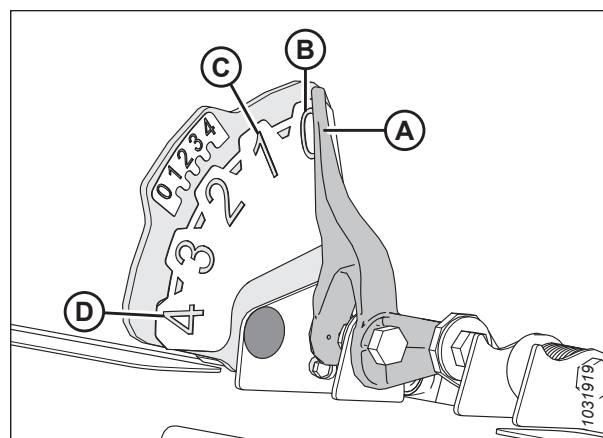


Figure 3.433: Float Indicator

OPERATION

1. Engage the separator and header.
2. Manually raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height.
3. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.

NOTE:

When setting presets, always set the header position before setting the reel position. If the header and the reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not be saved.

4. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
5. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
6. Manually raise or lower the header to a second desired cutting height.
7. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
8. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
9. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.

Up and down arrows should now appear in MANUAL HEIGHT box (A) on the RUN 1 page on the combine display. This indicates that the auto header height control (AHHC) is functioning.



Figure 3.434: Case Combine Console



Figure 3.435: Case Combine Console



Figure 3.436: Case Combine Display – Run 1 Page

OPERATION

10. To enable the presets, activate AHHC button (A) to place the header on the ground. To enable the first preset, tap the button once. To enable the second preset, tap the button twice.

To lift the header to maximum working height, hold the SHIFT button on the back of the control handle while tapping AHHC button (A).



Figure 3.437: Case Combine Control Handle

11. The maximum working height can be adjusted on the HEADER SETUP page on the combine display. Enter the desired height in MAXIMUM WORKING HEIGHT field (A).



Figure 3.438: Case Combine Display – Header Setup Page

12. If you need to change the position of one of the presets, you can fine-tune this setting with button (A) on the combine console.



Figure 3.439: Case Combine Console

3.10.7 Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

In order for the auto header height control (AHHC) system to work correctly, the header height sensors must be sending the correct voltage readings. The sensor outputs can be viewed using the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

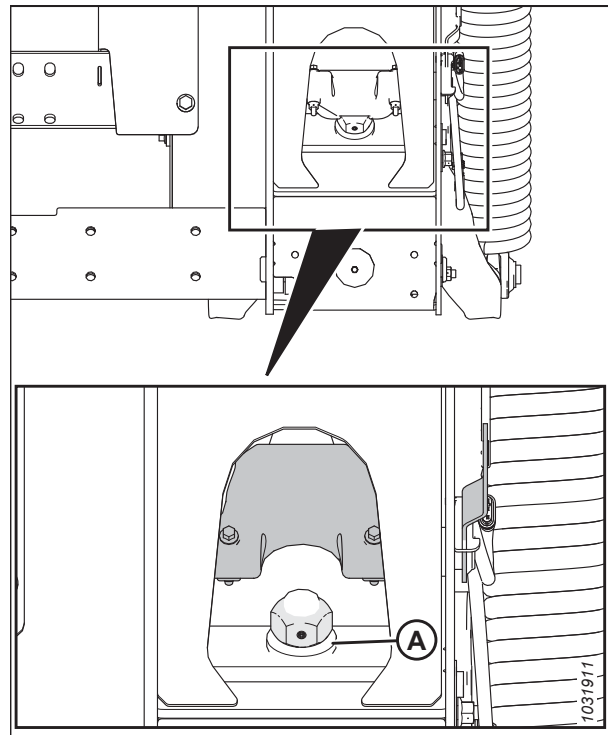


Figure 3.440: Float Lock

OPERATION

3. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

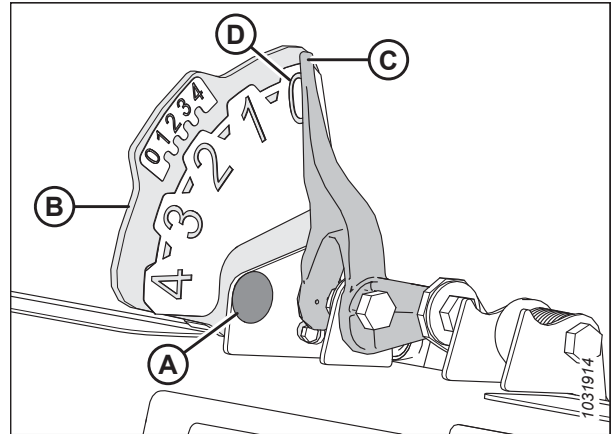


Figure 3.441: Float Indicator

5. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
6. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the MAIN page. The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.
7. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS page opens.

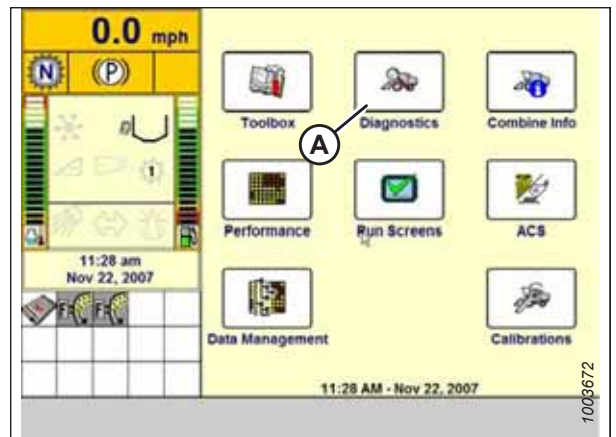


Figure 3.442: Case IH Combine Display

8. Select GROUP drop-down menu (A). The GROUP dialog box opens.

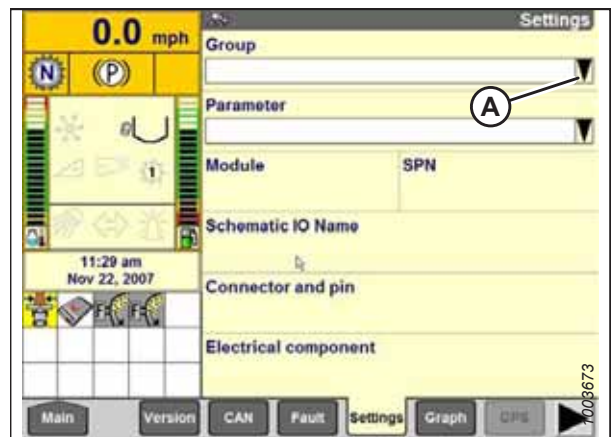


Figure 3.443: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

9. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER page opens.

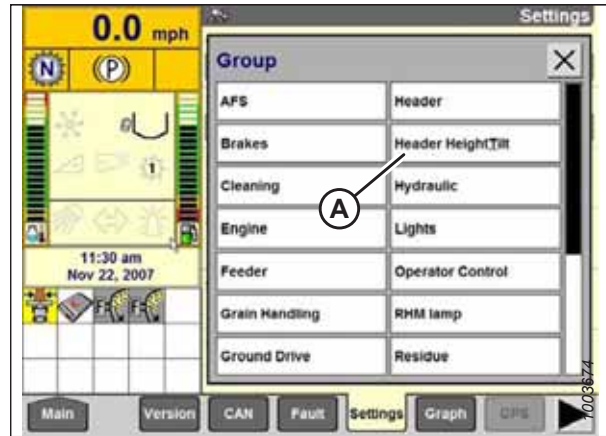


Figure 3.444: Case IH Combine Display

10. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage is displayed at top of page. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

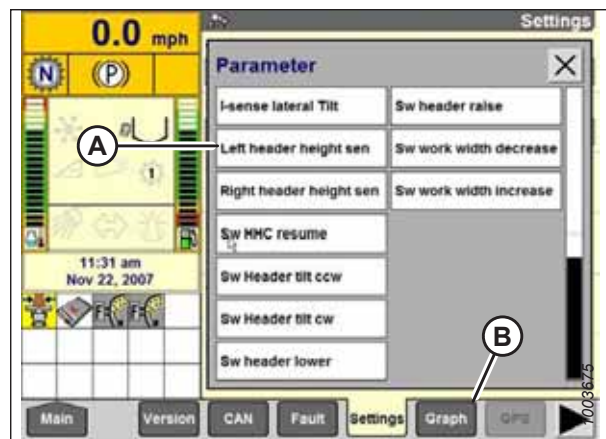


Figure 3.445: Case IH Combine Display

Header Settings Quick Reference – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a 2 Series draper header.

NOTE:

The setting options vary based on the combine software version. For version 28.00 or higher, refer to Table 3.35, page 274; for lower versions, refer to Table 3.36, page 276.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.35 Header Settings – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series (Software Version 28.00 or Higher)

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting
Header sub type	2000
Frame type	Flex
Header sensors	Enable
Header pressure float	No
Height/Tilt Response	Fast

OPERATION

Table 3.35 Header Settings – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series (Software Version 28.00 or Higher) (continued)

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting	
Auto height override	Yes	
HHC height sensitivity ⁷³	Two sensor system	250
	One sensor system	180
HHC tilt sensitivity	150	
Reel height sensor	Yes	
Autotilt	Two sensor system	Yes
	One sensor system	No

73. If hunting occurs during operation, decrease the HUNTING setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

OPERATION

Table 3.36 Header Settings – Case IH 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series (Below Software Version 28.00)

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting	
Header style	Flexhead	
Auto reel speed slope	133	
Header pressure float	No	
Reel drive	Hydraulic	
Reel fore-back	Yes	
HHC height sensitivity ⁷⁴	Two sensor system	250
	One sensor system	180
HHC tilt sensitivity	150	
Fore/Aft control	Yes	
Hdr fore/aft tilt	Yes	
Header type (Head2 Tab)	Draper	
Cutting type	Platform	
Header width	Set according to header specification	
Header usage	Set according to header specification	
Reel height sensor	Yes	
Autotilt	Two sensor system	Yes
	One sensor system	No

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with software version 28.00 or above, refer to [Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software, page 280](#).

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

74. If hunting occurs during operation, decrease the HUNTING setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

OPERATION

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Confirm that all electrical and hydraulic connections between the header and float module are functional.
3. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

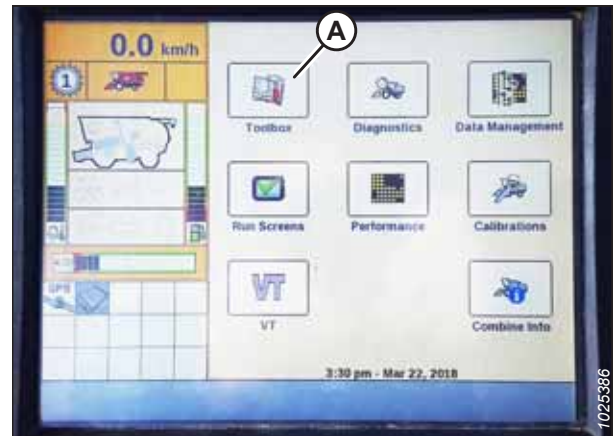


Figure 3.446: Case IH Combine Display

4. Select HEADER tab (A).

NOTE:

To locate the HEADER tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

5. Set HEADER STYLE (B).

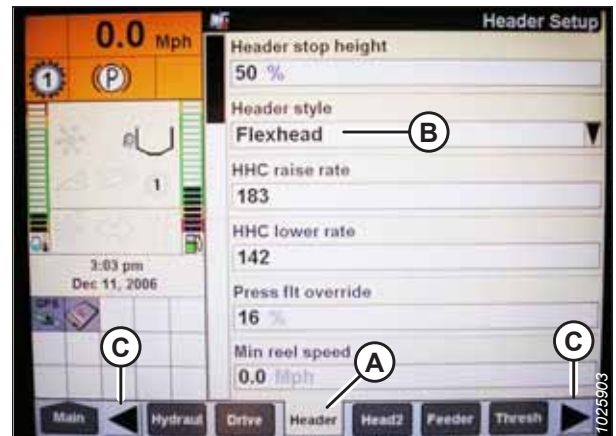


Figure 3.447: Case IH Combine Display

6. Set AUTO REEL SPEED SLOPE.

NOTE:

The AUTO REEL SPEED SLOPE value automatically maintains the speed of the reel relative to ground speed. For example, if the value is set to 133, then the reel will turn faster than the ground speed. The reel's speed should be faster than the combine's ground speed; however, adjust the value according to crop conditions.

7. Set HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT to NO if equipped, and ensure REEL DRIVE is set to HYDRAULIC.

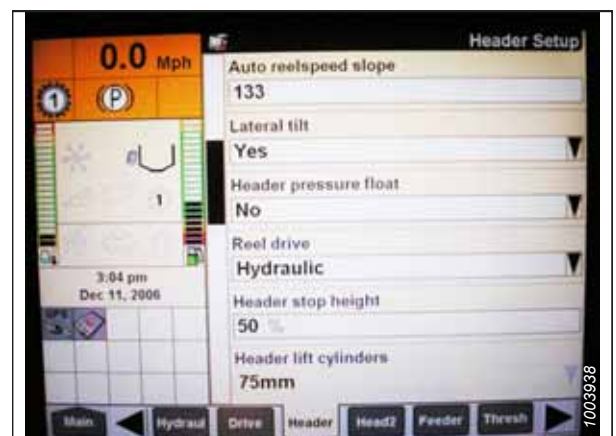


Figure 3.448: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

8. Set REEL FORE-BACK to YES (if applicable).

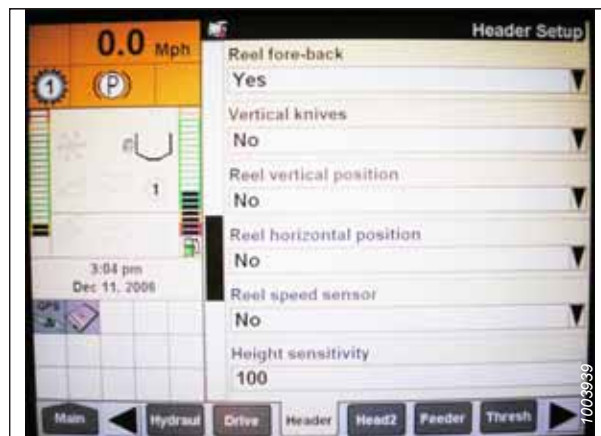


Figure 3.449: Case IH Combine Display

9. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set it as follows:

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

NOTE:

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

10. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease sensitivity as desired.



Figure 3.450: Case IH Combine Display

11. Set FORE/AFT CONTROL and HDR FORE/AFT TILT to YES (if applicable).

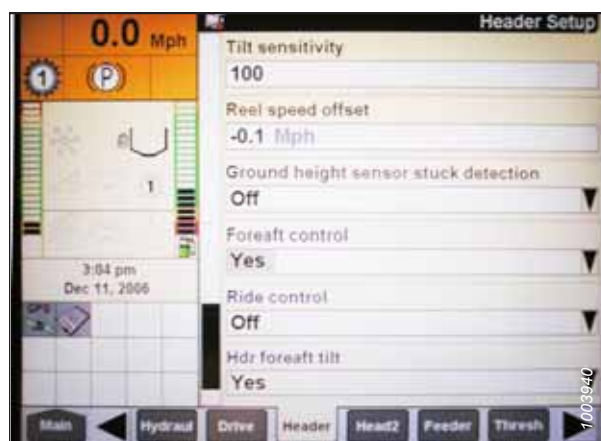


Figure 3.451: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

12. Press HEAD2 (A) at the bottom of the page.

13. Ensure HEADER TYPE (B) is set to DRAPER.

NOTE:

If the recognition resistor is plugged in to the header harness, you will not be able to change this.

14. Set CUTTING TYPE (C) to PLATFORM.

15. Set HEADER WIDTH (D) and HEADER USAGE (E) to the appropriate values.

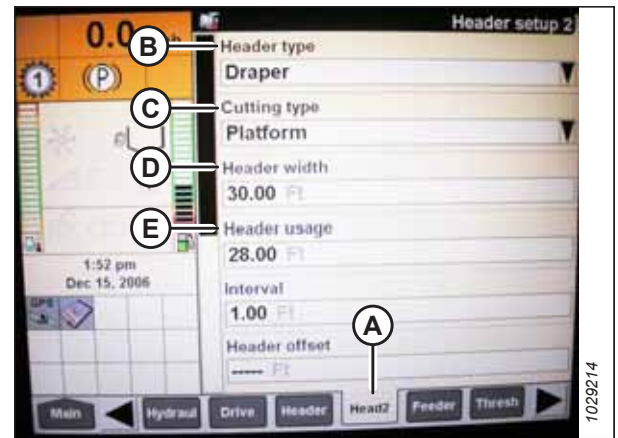


Figure 3.452: Case IH Combine Display

16. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).



Figure 3.453: Case IH Combine Display

17. Locate AUTOTILT field (A) and set it as follows:

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.

NOTE:

If the float was changed to a heavier setting to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.454: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software

Calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. To view the software version, select the DIAGNOSTICS button from the Home Screen, then select VERSION tab (A).

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).



Figure 3.455: Case IH Combine Display

2. Set the header center-link to **D**.
3. Raise the header onto the down stops and unlock the float.
4. Place the wings in the locked position.

Adjusting settings in the combine display

5. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

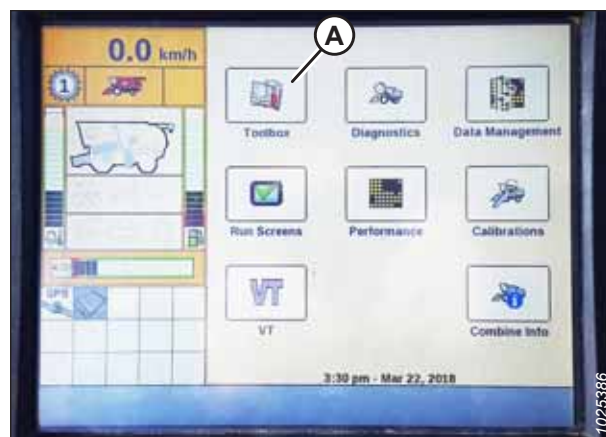


Figure 3.456: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

6. Select HEAD 1 tab (A).

NOTE:

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (B).



Figure 3.457: Case IH Combine Display

7. Locate the HEADER SUB TYPE field.

8. Select 2000 (A).



Figure 3.458: Case IH Combine Display

9. Return to the Head 1 page and choose FLEX from FRAME TYPE drop-down menu (A).



Figure 3.459: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

10. Select HEAD 2 tab (A).
11. In HEADER SENSORS field (B), select ENABLE.
12. In HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT field (C), select NO.
13. In HEIGHT/TILT RESPONSE field (D), select FAST.
14. In AUTO HEIGHT OVERRIDE field (E), select YES.
15. Press down arrow (F) to go to the next page.

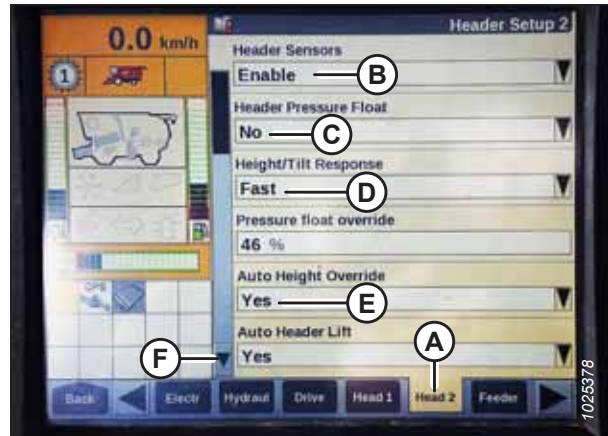


Figure 3.460: Case IH Combine Display

16. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set it as follows:
 - **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.
 - **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
- NOTE:**
If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.
17. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease the sensitivity as desired.



Figure 3.461: Case IH Combine Display

18. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).



Figure 3.462: Case IH Combine Display

19. Scroll to the AUTOTILT field (A), and set it as follows:

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.



Figure 3.463: Case IH Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control

20. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display and press the right arrow navigation key to enter the information box.
21. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

NOTE:

Use the UP and DOWN navigation keys to move between options.

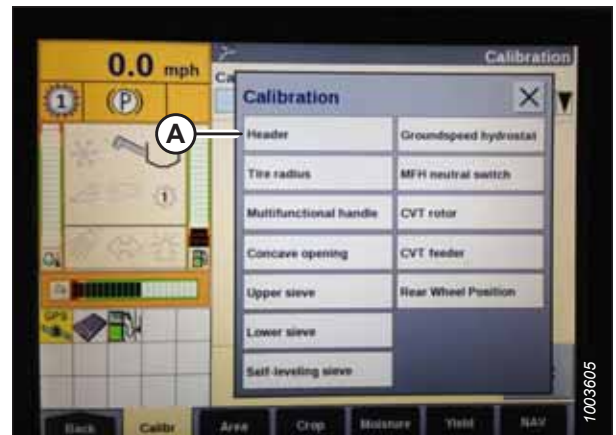


Figure 3.464: Case IH Combine Display

22. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for over 3 minutes will stop the calibration procedure.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.

23. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message displays on the page. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.465: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

24. Ensure AUTO HEIGHT icon (A) appears on the monitor as shown at location (B). When the header is set for cutting on the ground, this verifies that the combine is correctly using the sensor on the header to sense ground pressure.

NOTE:

Icons (A) and (B) appear on the monitor only after engaging the separator and header, and then pressing HEADER RESUME button on the control panel.

NOTE:

AUTO HEIGHT field (B) may appear on any of the RUN tabs and not necessarily on the RUN 1 tab.



Figure 3.466: Case IH Combine Display

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – Case IH Combines

The voltage output of the reel height sensors can be inspected using the combine display in the cab.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page appears.

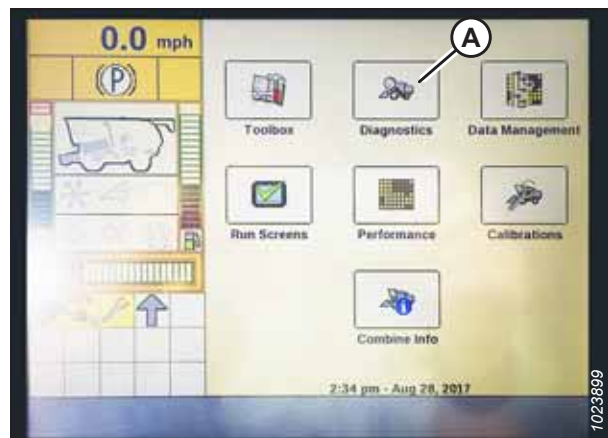


Figure 3.467: Case IH Combine Display

OPERATION

2. Select SETTINGS tab (A). The SETTINGS page appears.
3. From the GROUP menu, select HEADER (B).
4. From the PARAMETER menu, select REEL VERTICAL POSITION (C).



Figure 3.468: Case IH Combine Display

5. Select GRAPH tab (A). The REEL VERTICAL POSITION graph appears.
6. Lower the reel to view upper voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
7. Raise the reel to view lower voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.
8. If either voltage is out of range, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor](#), page 213.

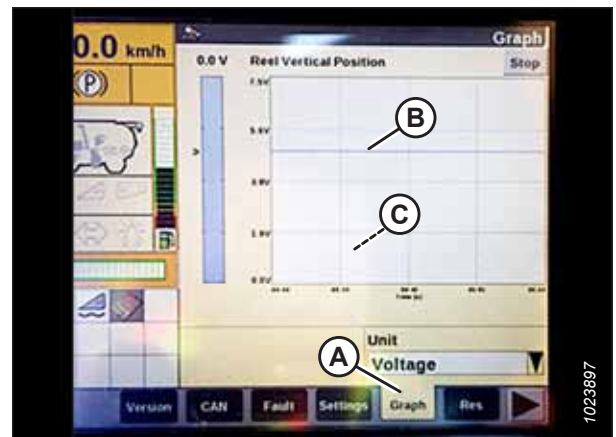


Figure 3.469: Case IH Combine Display

Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system has been configured to work with the header, the preset cutting height can be set.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

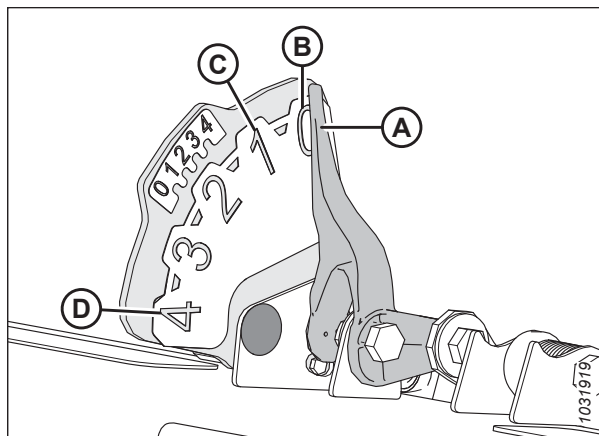


Figure 3.470: Float Indicator

1. Engage the separator and the header.
2. Manually raise or lower the header to a desired cutting height.

3. Press SET #1 switch (A). The light beside switch (A) will illuminate.

NOTE:

Use switch (C) for fine adjustments.

NOTE:

When setting the presets, always set the header position before setting the reel position. If the header and the reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not be saved.

4. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired position.
5. Press SET #1 switch (A). The light beside switch (A) will light up.
6. Manually raise or lower the header to a second desired cutting height.
7. Press SET #2 switch (B). The light beside switch (B) will light up.
8. Manually raise or lower the reel to a second desired working position.
9. Press SET #2 switch (B). The light beside switch (B) will light up.



Figure 3.471: Case Combine Controls

OPERATION

10. To swap between the set points, press HEADER RESUME (A).
11. To raise the header, press and hold SHIFT button (B) at the back of the control handle and press HEADER RESUME switch (A). To lower the header, press HEADER RESUME switch (A) once to return to the header preset height.

NOTE:

Pressing HEADER RAISE/LOWER switches (C) and (D) disengages AUTO HEIGHT mode. Press HEADER RESUME (A) to re-engage AUTO HEIGHT mode.



Figure 3.472: Case Combine Controls

3.10.8 Challenger® and Massey Ferguson® 6 and 7 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with Challenger® and Massey Ferguson® 6 and 7 Series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The auto header height control sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

OPERATION

2. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation, causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

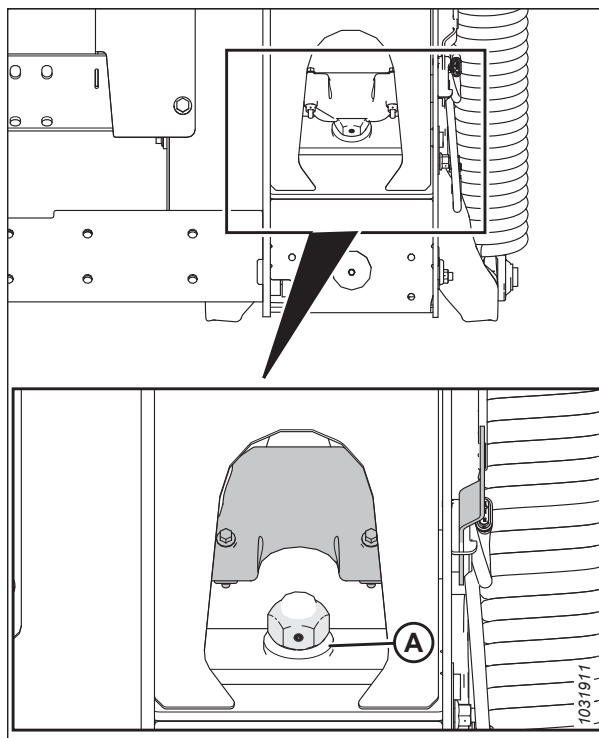


Figure 3.473: Float Lock

3. Loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

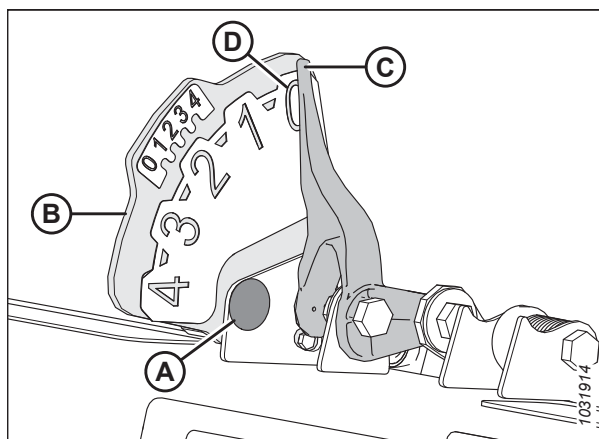


Figure 3.474: Float Indicator

OPERATION

5. Go to the FIELD page on the combine monitor, and then press the diagnostics icon. The MISCELLANEOUS page displays.
6. Press VMM DIAGNOSTIC button (A). The VMM DIAGNOSTIC page displays.

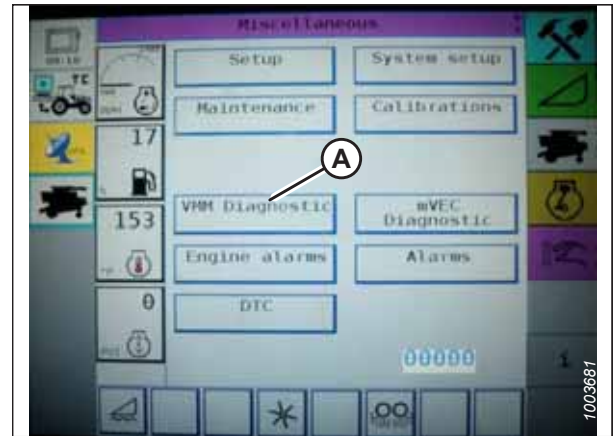


Figure 3.475: Challenger® Combine Display

7. Go to ANALOG IN tab (A), and then select VMM MODULE 3 by pressing the text box below the four tabs. The voltage from the AHC sensor is now displayed on page as HEADER HEIGHT RIGHT POT and HEADER HEIGHT LEFT POT. The readings may be slightly different.



Figure 3.476: Challenger® Combine Display

8. Fully lower the combine feeder house (the float module should be fully separated from the header).

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

9. Read the voltage.
10. Raise the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
11. Read the voltage.
12. If the sensor voltage is not within the lower and upper limits, or if the range between the lower and upper limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. For instructions, refer to [3.10.3 Manually Checking Voltage Limits, page 257](#).



Figure 3.477: Challenger® Combine Display

Engaging Auto Header Height Control – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The auto header height control (AHHC) system must be engaged before its features can be configured.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHHC) to work:

- Main module (PCB board) and header driver module (PCB board) mounted in the card box in the fuse panel module (FP)
- Multifunction control handle operator inputs
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console module (CC) panel
- The electrohydraulic header lift control valve

To engage the auto header height control, follow these steps:

1. Scroll through the header control options on the combine display using the header control switch until AHHC icon (A) is displayed in the first message box. The AHHC will adjust the header height in relation to the ground according to the height setting and sensitivity setting.

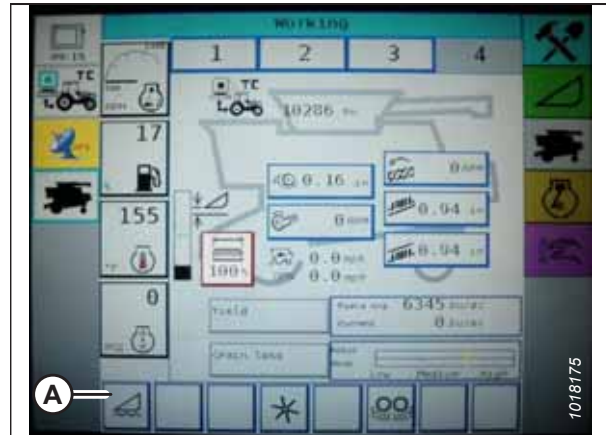


Figure 3.478: Challenger® Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the AHHC calibration. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header doesn't separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

OPERATION

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. On the FIELD page, press DIAGNOSTICS icon (A). The MISCELLANEOUS page appears.



Figure 3.479: Challenger® Combine Display

3. Press CALIBRATIONS button (A). The CALIBRATIONS page appears.

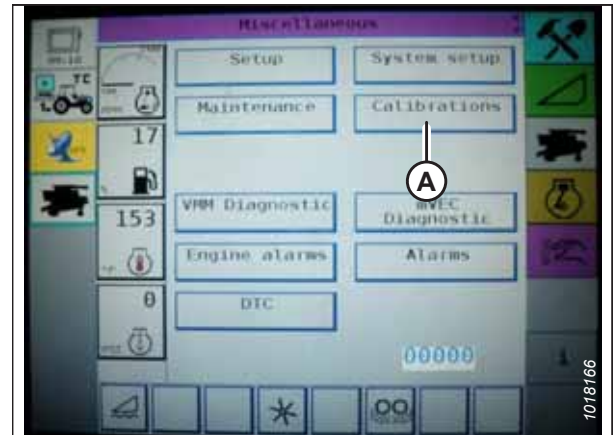


Figure 3.480: Challenger® Combine Display

4. Press HEADER button (A). The HEADER CALIBRATION page displays a warning.

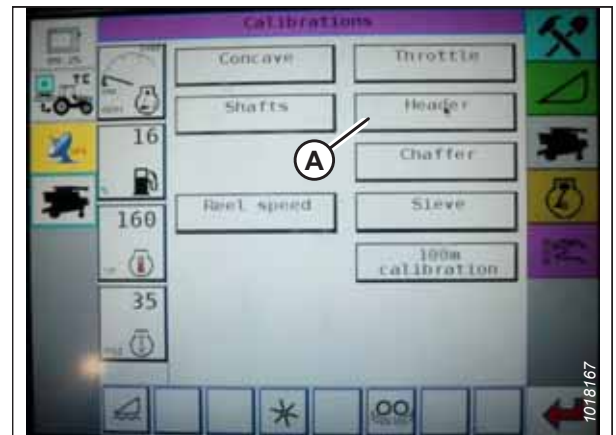


Figure 3.481: Challenger® Combine Display

OPERATION

5. Read the warning message, and then press the green check mark button.



Figure 3.482: Challenger® Combine Display

6. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete calibration.

NOTE:

The calibration procedure can be canceled at any time by pressing the CANCEL button on the screen. While the header calibration is running, the calibration can also be canceled by using the UP, DOWN, TILT RIGHT, or TILT LEFT buttons on the control handle.

NOTE:

If the combine does not have HEADER TILT installed or if it is inoperable, you may receive warnings during calibration. Press the green check mark if these warnings appear. This will not affect the AHHC calibration.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

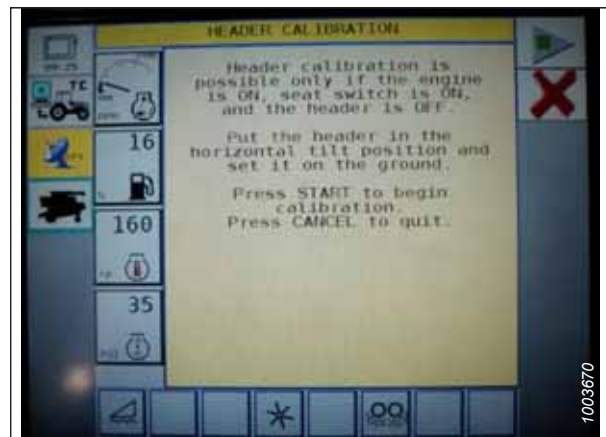


Figure 3.483: Challenger® Combine Display

Adjusting Header Height – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The auto header height control (AHHC) feature allows the operator to set specific header heights.



DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

Once the auto header height control (AHC) is activated, press and release the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle. The AHC will automatically lower the header to the selected height setting.

You can adjust the selected AHC height using HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT knob (A) on the control console. Turning the knob clockwise increases the selected height, and turning the knob counterclockwise decreases the selected height.



Figure 3.484: Height Adjustment Knob on the Combine Control Console

Adjusting Header Raise/Lower Rate – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The rate at which the header rises and falls can be configured by accessing the HEADER CONTROL menu on the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Press HEADER icon (A) on the FIELD page. The HEADER page displays.

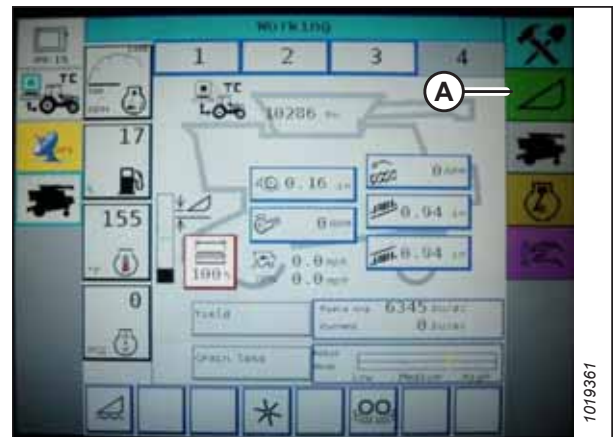


Figure 3.485: Challenger® Combine Display

OPERATION

2. Press HEADER CONTROL (A). The HEADER CONTROL page displays.

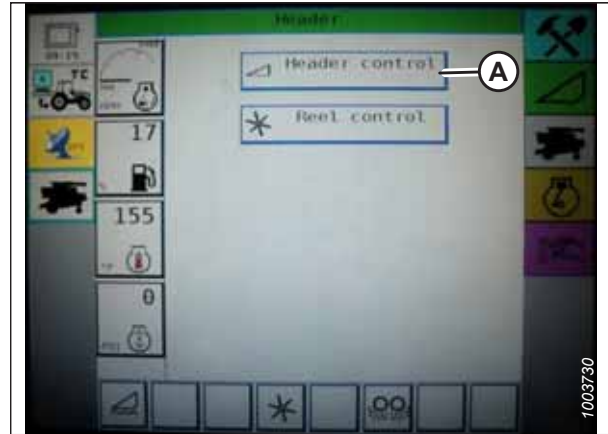


Figure 3.486: Challenger® Combine Display

3. Go to the TABLE SETTINGS tab.
4. Press the up arrow on MAX UP PWM to increase the percentage number and increase the raise speed. Press the down arrow on MAX UP PWM to decrease the percentage number and decrease the raise speed.
5. Press the up arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to increase the percentage number and increase the lower speed. Press the down arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to decrease the percentage number and decrease the lower speed.

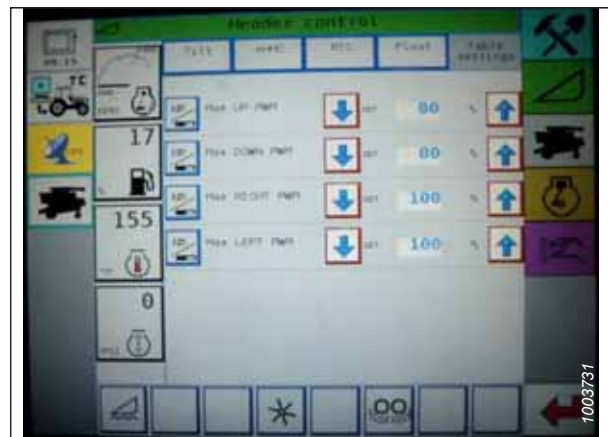


Figure 3.487: Challenger® Combine Display

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – Challenger® and Massey Ferguson®

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house.

! DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Press the HEADER icon on the FIELD page. The HEADER page appears.

OPERATION

- Press HEADER CONTROL button (A). The HEADER CONTROL page appears. You can adjust sensitivity on this page using the up and down arrows.

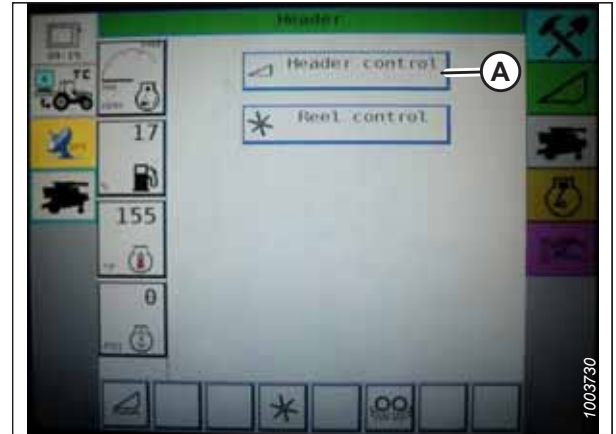


Figure 3.488: Challenger® Combine Display

- Adjust the sensitivity to the maximum setting.
- Activate the AHHC, and press the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle.
- Decrease the sensitivity until the feeder house remains steady and does not bounce up and down.

NOTE:

This is the maximum sensitivity and is only an initial setting. The final setting must be made in the field, as the system reaction will vary with changing surfaces and operating conditions.

NOTE:

If maximum sensitivity is not needed, a less sensitive setting will reduce the frequency of header height corrections and component wear. Partially opening the accumulator valve will cushion the action of the header lift cylinders and reduce header hunting.



Figure 3.489: Challenger® Combine Display

3.10.9 CLAAS 500 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with CLAAS 500 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

OPERATION

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Use < key (A) or > key (B) to select AUTO HEADER, and press OK key (C). The E5 page indicates whether the automatic header height is on or off.

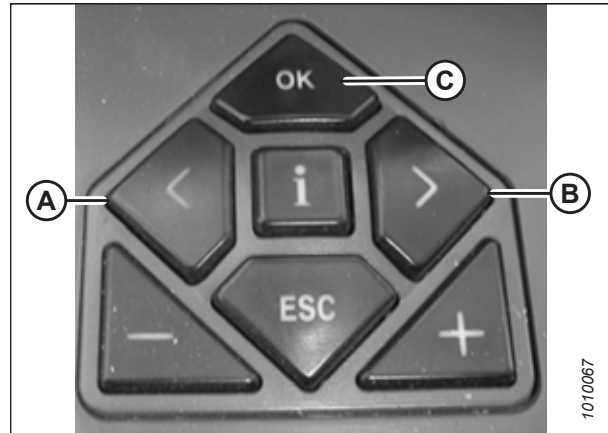


Figure 3.490: CLAAS Combine Controls

3. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to turn the AHHC on, and press OK key (C).
4. Engage the threshing mechanism and the header.

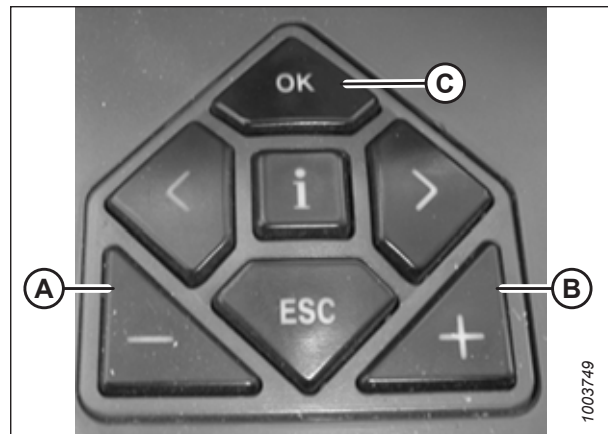


Figure 3.491: CLAAS Combine Controls

5. Use the < or > key to select CUTT. HEIGHT LIMITS, and press the combine control's OK key.
6. Follow the procedure displayed on the screen to program the upper and lower limits of the header into the CEBIS.

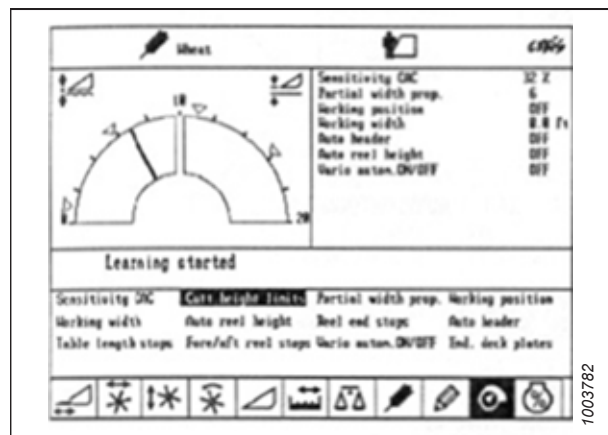


Figure 3.492: CLAAS Combine Display

OPERATION

- Use the < or > key to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press the combine control's OK key.

NOTE:

Setting the sensitivity of the AHHC system affects the reaction speed of the AHHC on the header.

- Use the – key or the + key to change the reaction speed setting, and press the combine control's OK key.

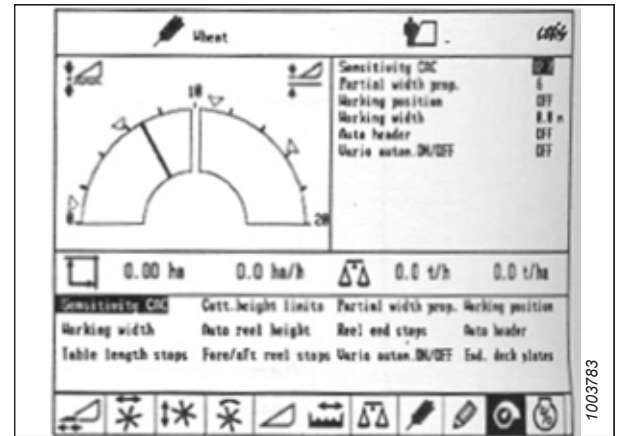


Figure 3.493: CLAAS Combine Display

- Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

NOTE:

The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

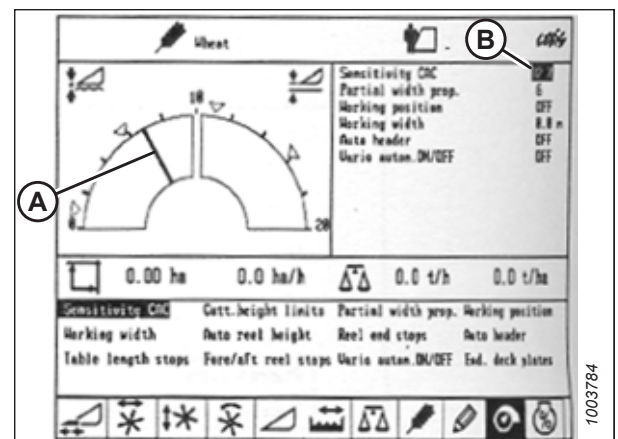


Figure 3.494: CLAAS Combine Display

Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series

Cutting heights can be programmed into the preset cutting height and auto contour systems. Use the preset cutting height system for cutting heights above 150 mm (6 in.), and use the auto contour system for cutting heights below 150 mm (6 in.).

Setting Preset Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system has been configured and activated, the preset cutting height can be set.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

- Start the engine.
- Activate the machine enable switch.
- Engage the threshing mechanism.
- Engage the header.

OPERATION

- Briefly press button (A) in order to activate the auto contour system, or briefly press button (B) in order to activate the preset cutting height system.

NOTE:

Button (A) is used only with auto header height control (AHHC) function. Button (B) is used only with the return to cut function.



Figure 3.495: Control Handle Buttons

- Use < key (C) or > key (D) to select the CUTTING HEIGHT page, and press OK key (E).
- Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the desired cutting height. An arrow indicates the selected cutting height on the scale.

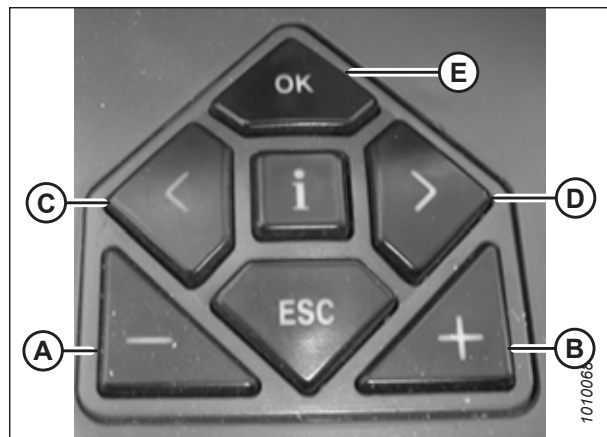


Figure 3.496: CLAAS Combine Controls

- Briefly press button (A) or button (B) in order to select the set point.
- Repeat Step 7, page 298 for the set point.



Figure 3.497: Control Handle Buttons

Setting Cutting Height Manually – CLAAS 500 Series

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system has been configured and activated, the preset cutting height can be manually configured.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Use button (A) to raise the header, or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height.
2. Press and hold button (C) for 3 seconds to store the cutting height (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).
3. Program a second set point, if desired, by using button (A) to raise the header, or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height, and briefly press button (C) to store the second set point (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

For above-the-ground cutting, repeat Step 1, page 299, and use button (D) instead of button (C) while repeating Step 2, page 299.



Figure 3.498: Control Handle Buttons

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 500 Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house.

NOTE:

The upper and lower limits of the header must be set before adjusting the sensitivity of the AHHC system. The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When the sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When the sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Use < key (C) or > key (D) to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press OK key (E).
2. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to change the reaction speed setting, and press OK key (E).

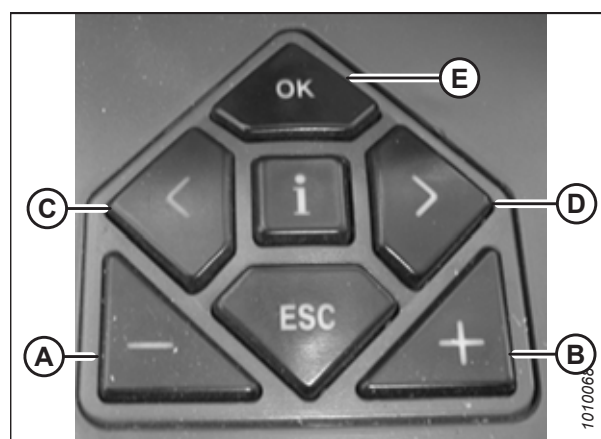


Figure 3.499: CLAAS Combine Controls

OPERATION

- Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

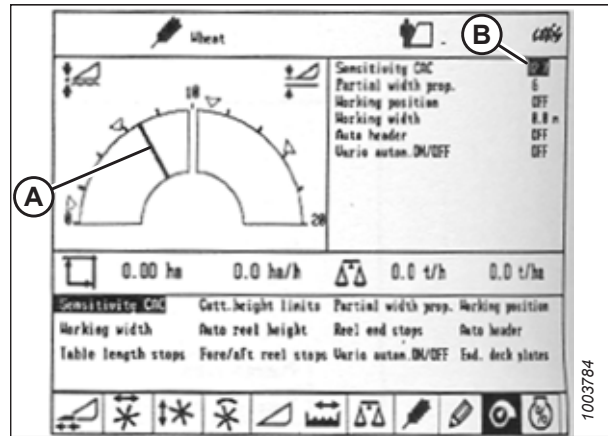


Figure 3.500: CLAAS Combine Display

OPERATION

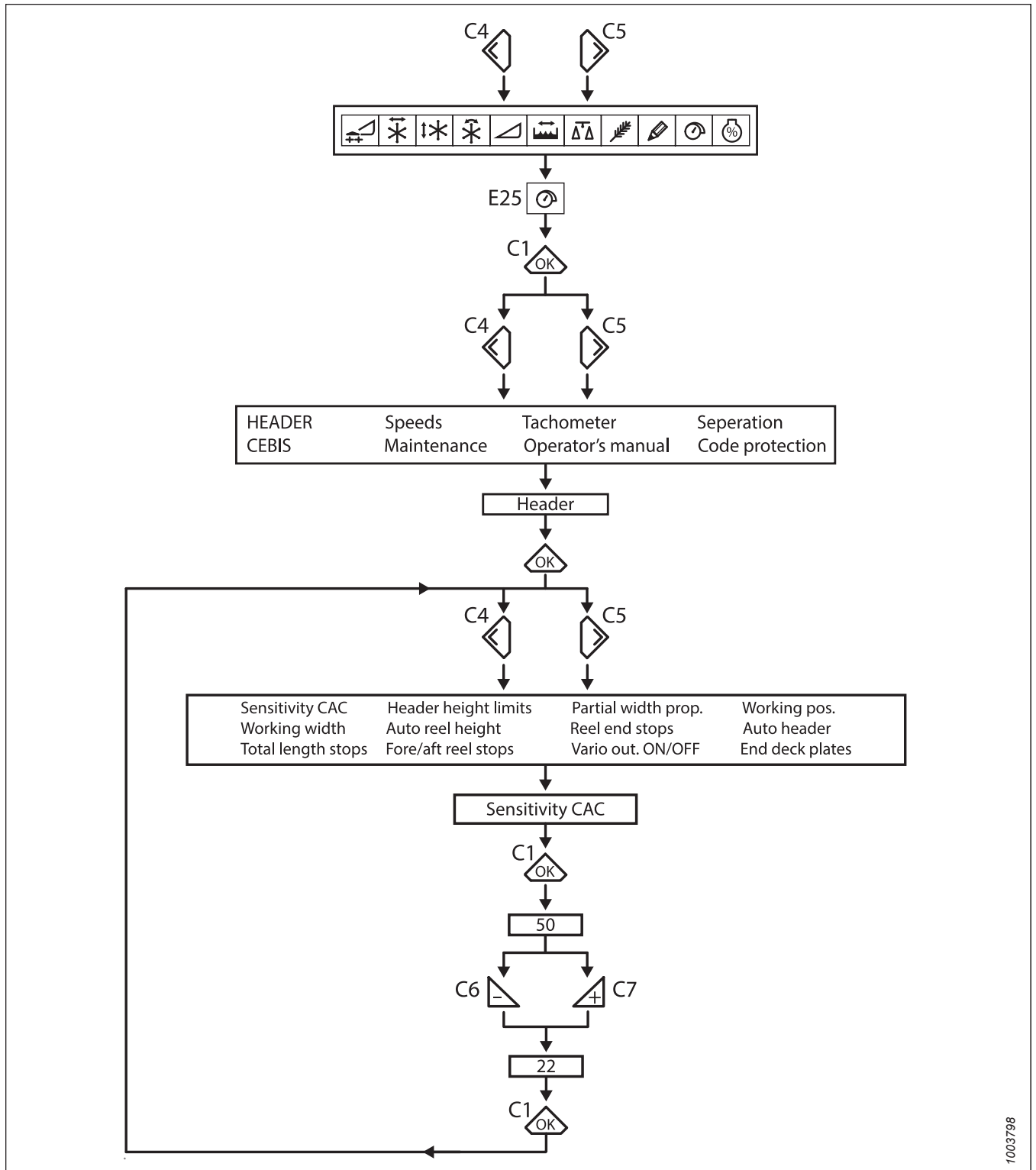


Figure 3.501: Flow Chart for Setting the Sensitivity of the Float Optimizer

OPERATION

Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 500 Series

The preset reel speed can be set when the automatic header functions are activated.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Use the < or > key to select REEL WINDOW. Window E15 displays the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.

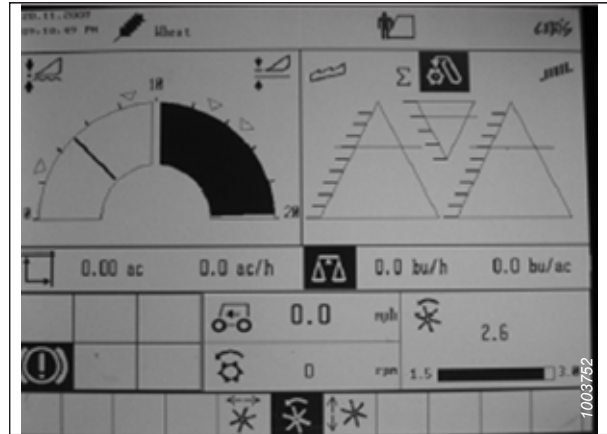


Figure 3.502: CLAAS Combine Display

2. Press OK key (C) to open the REEL SPEED window.
3. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the reel speed in relation to the current ground speed. Window E15 displays the selected reel speed.

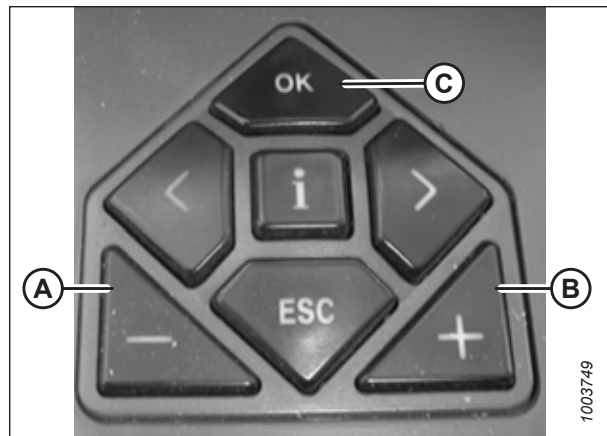


Figure 3.503: CLAAS Combine Controls

4. Manually adjust the reel speed by rotating the rotary switch to reel position (A), and then use the – or + key to set the reel speed.



Figure 3.504: CLAAS Combine Rotary Switch

OPERATION

5. Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting (an alarm sounds when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.



Figure 3.505: CLAAS Control Handle Buttons

6. Use the < or > key to select the REEL WINDOW. Window E15 displays the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.

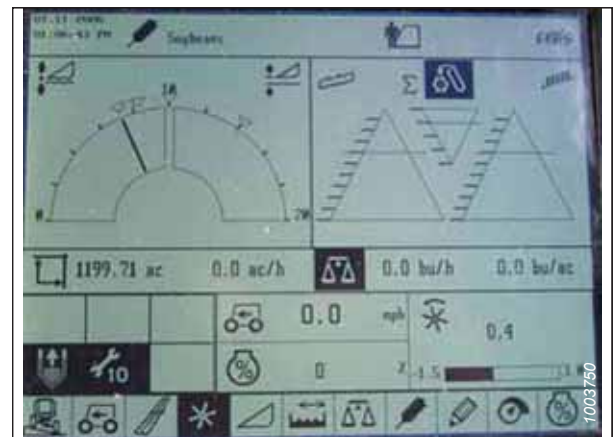


Figure 3.506: CLAAS Combine Display

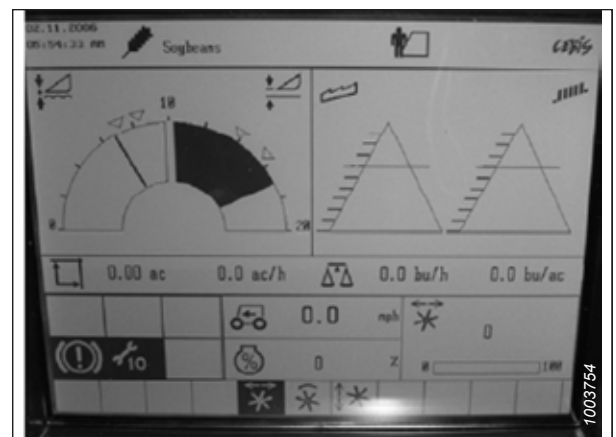


Figure 3.507: CLAAS Combine Display

OPERATION

7. Press OK key (E), and use < key (C) or > key (D) to select the REEL FORE AND AFT window.
8. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the reel fore-aft position.

NOTE:

Control handle button (A) or button (B) (as shown in Figure 3.509, page 304) can also be used to set the reel fore-aft position.

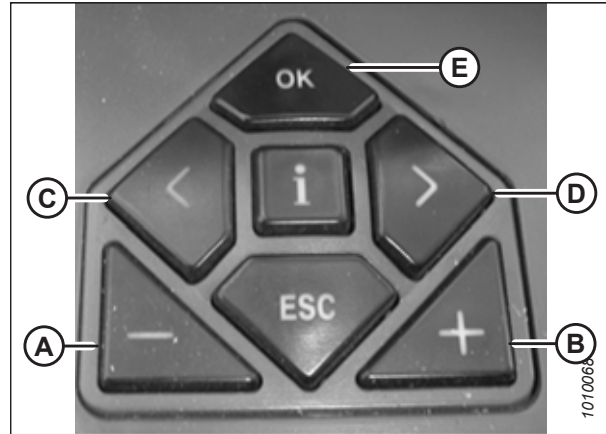


Figure 3.508: CLAAS Combine Controls

9. Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting into the CEBIS (an alarm sounds when the new setting has been stored).

NOTE:

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.



Figure 3.509: CLAAS Control Handle Buttons

3.10.10 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with CLAAS 600 and 700 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the AHHC calibration. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

OPERATION

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Ensure that the header float is unlocked.
3. Place the wings in the locked position.
4. Use control knob (A) to highlight AUTO CONTOUR icon (B) and press control knob (A) to select it.



Figure 3.510: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

5. Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a header with up and down arrows (not shown). Press control knob (A) to select it. Highlighted header icon (B) displays on the screen.



Figure 3.511: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

6. Use control knob (A) to highlight header icon (B) with the up and down arrows. Press control knob (A) to select it.



Figure 3.512: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

OPERATION

7. Use control knob (A) to highlight screwdriver icon (B).
8. Engage the combine separator and feeder house.
9. Press control knob (A). A progress bar appears.



Figure 3.513: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

10. Fully raise the feeder house. Progress bar (A) advances to 25%.
11. Fully lower the feeder house. Progress bar (A) advances to 50%.
12. Fully raise the feeder house. Progress bar (A) advances to 75%.
13. Fully lower the feeder house. Progress bar (A) advances to 100%.



Figure 3.514: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

14. Ensure progress bar (A) displays 100%. The calibration procedure is now complete.

NOTE:

If the voltage is not within the range of 0.5–4.5 V at any time throughout the calibration process, the monitor will indicate learning procedure not concluded.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the ground calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.515: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The Operator can configure two different cutting height presets. The height presets can be selected using the combine's control handle.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Lower the header to the desired cutting height or to the ground pressure setting. The float indicator box should be set to 1.5.
2. Hold the left side of header raise and lower switch (A) until you hear a ping sound.



Figure 3.516: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Use control knob (A) to highlight HEADER/REEL icon (B). Press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.
2. Select the HEADER icon.

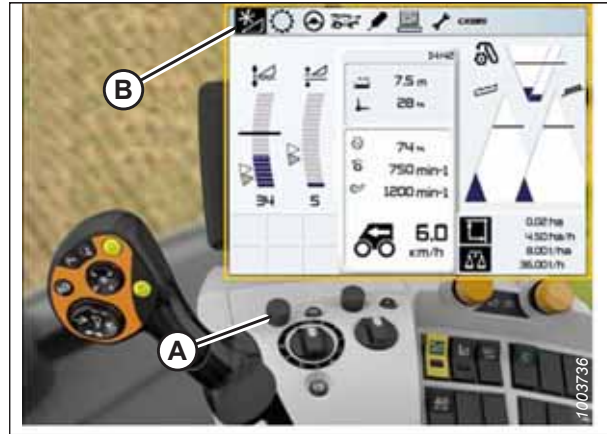


Figure 3.517: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

3. Select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETER SETTINGS icon (A). A list of settings appears.
4. Select SENSITIVITY CAC (B) from the list.



Figure 3.518: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

5. Select SENSITIVITY CAC icon (A).

NOTE:

To set the sensitivity, change CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (B) from the 0 default. The settings from 1–50 provide a faster response, whereas the settings from -1 to -50 provide a slower response. For best results, make adjustments in increments of 5.

6. If the reaction time between the header and the float module is too slow while cutting on the ground, increase the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting. If the reaction time between the header and the float module is too fast, decrease the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting.
7. If the header is lowered too slowly, increase the sensitivity. If the header hits the ground too hard or is lowered too quickly, decrease the sensitivity.



Figure 3.519: CLAAS Combine Display

Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The preset reel speed can be set when the automatic header functions are activated.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Use control knob (A) to highlight HEADER/REEL icon (B). Press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.

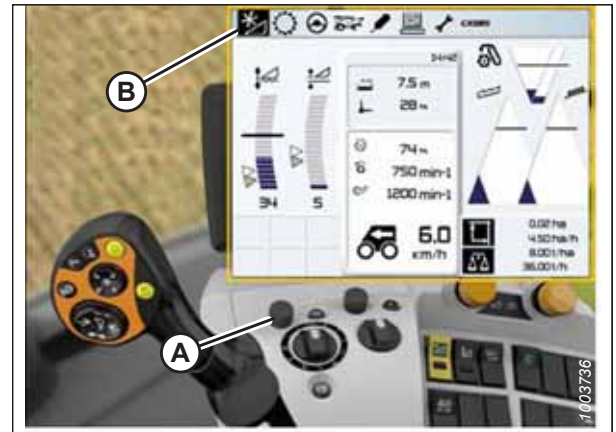


Figure 3.520: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

2. Use control knob (A) to select REEL SPEED (B), and adjust the reel speed (if you are **NOT** using Auto Reel Speed). A graph appears in the dialog box.



Figure 3.521: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

OPERATION

3. Select ACTUAL VALUE (A) from the AUTO REEL SPEED dialog box (if you are using Auto Reel Speed). The ACTUAL VALUE dialog box indicates the auto reel speed.



Figure 3.522: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

4. Use control knob (A) to raise or lower the reel speed.

NOTE:

This option is only available with the engine at full throttle.



Figure 3.523: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

Calibrating the reel fore-aft sensor is only possible if the optional CLAAS integration kit (MD #B7231) is installed.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine.
2. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. Keep the engine running.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

3. Use control knob (A) to highlight FRONT ATTACHMENT icon (B). Press control knob (A) to select it.



Figure 3.524: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

4. Use control knob (A) to highlight REEL icon (B). Press control knob (A) to select it.

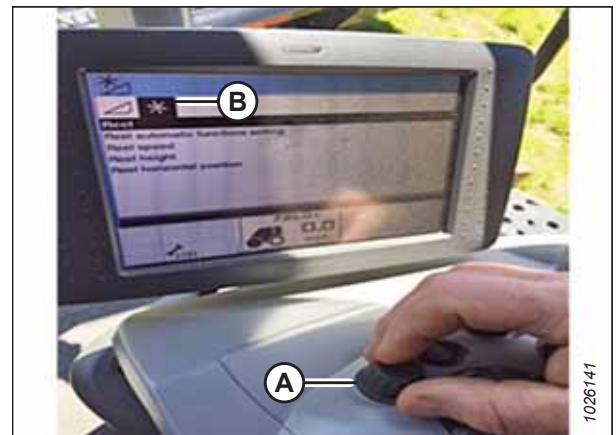


Figure 3.525: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

OPERATION

5. Highlight REEL HEIGHT icon (A). Press the control knob to select it.
6. Select LEARNING END STOPS (B) from the list.



Figure 3.526: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

7. Use control knob (A) to highlight screwdriver icon (B).
8. Press the control knob.



Figure 3.527: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

9. Progress bar chart (A) appears on the screen.
10. Follow the prompts on the screen to raise and lower the reel.



Figure 3.528: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

OPERATION

11. Ensure progress bar chart (A) displays 100%. When the progress bar chart displays 100%, the calibration procedure is complete.



Figure 3.529: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

12. **If equipped with CLAAS integration kit (MD #B7231):** Calibrate the reel fore-aft sensor by selecting REEL HORIZONTAL POSITION (A), then LEARNING END STOPS (B). Then repeat Step 7, page 312 to Step 11, page 313.



Figure 3.530: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

Adjusting Auto Reel Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

The auto reel height setting can be configured by accessing the REEL menu on the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Use HOTKEY rotary dial (A) to select REEL icon (B).

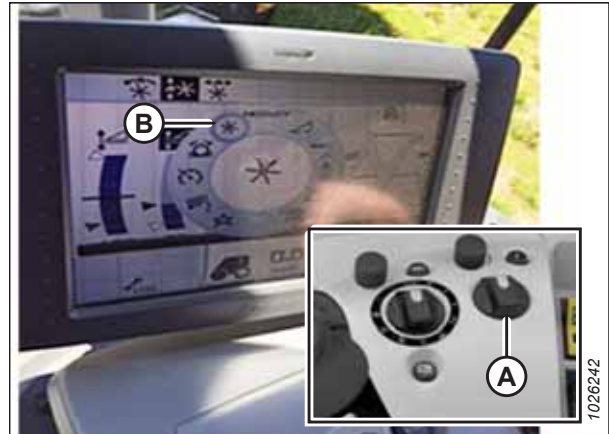


Figure 3.531: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

2. Use control knob (A) to select AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (B) at the top of the page.

NOTE:

AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (C) at the center of the page should be highlighted black. If it is not black, either the end stops have not been set or the auto header height control (AHHC) is not active. For instructions, refer to [Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series](#), page 310.

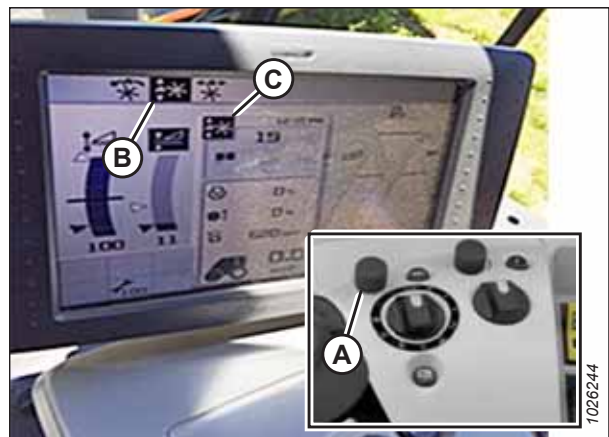


Figure 3.532: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

3. Adjust the auto reel height position for the current AHHC position using outer scroll knob (A). To lower the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob counterclockwise; to raise the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob clockwise. The display will update current setting (B).

NOTE:

If the AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon in the center of the page is not black, an AHHC position is not currently active.

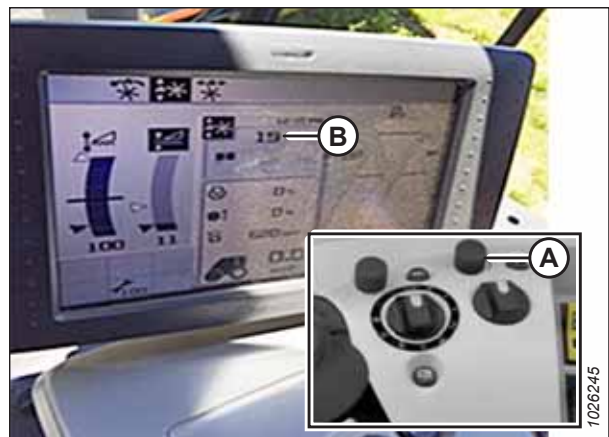


Figure 3.533: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

3.10.11 CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Header Settings Quick Reference – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a FD2 Series FlexDraper® header.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.37 Header Settings – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting
Front attachment type	Flex cutterbar product by other manufacturer
Working width	Set header width
Drop rate with auto contour	Adjust to preference
Reel speed adjust	Adjust to preference

Setting up Header – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series

To set up a header to work with the auto header height control (AHHC) system, you will need to access the FRONT ATTACHMENT menu using the CEBIS terminal.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.534: CEBIS Main Page

OPERATION

- From the drop down list, select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS (A).



Figure 3.535: Front Attachment Page

- From the FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT TYPE (A).
- From the drop down list, select FLEX CUTTERBAR PRODUCT BY OTHER MANUFACTURER (B).

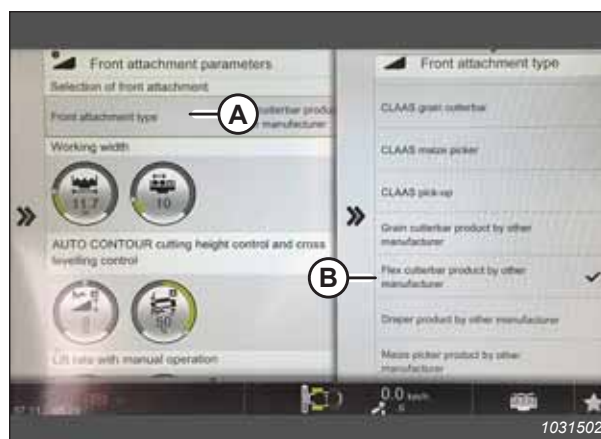


Figure 3.536: Attachment Parameters Page

- From the FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS page, select WORKING WIDTH (A).
- Set the header width by sliding adjuster arrow (B) up or down.
- Select check mark (C) to save the settings.

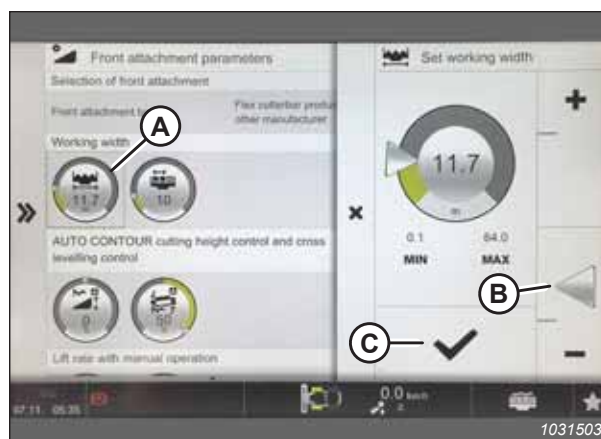


Figure 3.537: Attachment Parameters Page

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. From the MAIN page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.538: CEBIS Main Page

2. Select LEARNING PROCEDURES (A) from the menu.
3. SELECT FRONT ATTACHMENT HEIGHT (B).

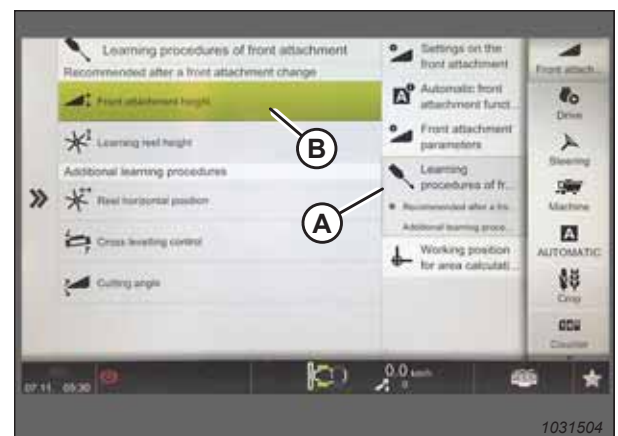


Figure 3.539: Learning Procedures Page

OPERATION

- Follow the prompts that appear in DESCRIPTION and NOTES fields (A).

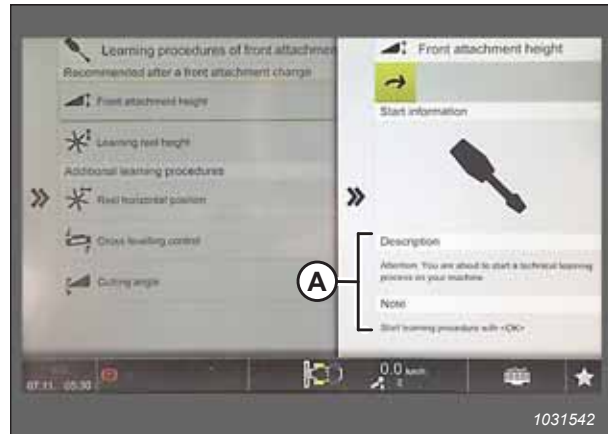


Figure 3.540: Front Attachment Height Page

- When prompted, select OK button (A) to start the learning procedure.



Figure 3.541: Operator Controls

OPERATION

6. When prompted, raise the front attachment with button (A) on the multifunction lever.
7. When prompted, lower the front attachment with button (B) on the multifunction lever.
8. Repeat the previous steps as prompted until calibration is complete.



Figure 3.542: Multifunction Lever

Setting Cut and Reel Height Preset – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series

The reel and cut height setting can be stored in the combine. When harvesting, the setting can be selected from the control handle.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Set the desired cutting height with feeder house raise/lower buttons (A) on the multifunction lever.
2. Set the desired reel position with buttons (B).
3. Press and hold AUTO HEIGHT PRESET button (C) to store the settings.



Figure 3.543: Multifunction Lever

OPERATION

Triangle (A) appears on the header height gauge indicating the preset level.



Figure 3.544: CEBIS Main Page

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the system to raise or lower the feeder house.

! DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.545: CEBIS Main Page

OPERATION

- From the drop down list, select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS (A).



Figure 3.546: Front Attachment Parameters Page

- Scroll through the list and select DROP RATE WITH AUTO CONTOUR icon (A).
- Adjust the drop rate by sliding adjuster arrow (B) up or down.
- Select check mark (C) to confirm the settings.

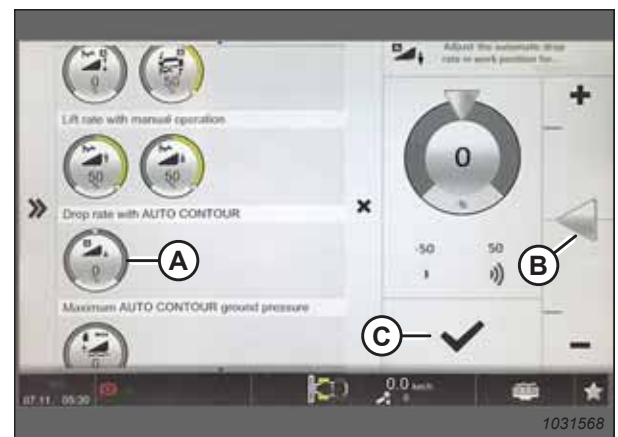


Figure 3.547: Drop Rate with Auto Contour Page

Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 Series

The preset reel speed can be set when the automatic header functions are activated.

! DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.548: CEBIS Main Page

2. From the list, select SETTINGS ON FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).
3. Select REEL TARGET VALUES (B).
4. Select REEL SPEED ADJUST icon (C).



Figure 3.549: Settings on Front Attachment Page

5. Adjust the reel speed target value by sliding adjuster arrow (A) up or down.
6. Select check mark (B) to save the setting.



Figure 3.550: Reel Speed Target Value Page

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – CLAAS 7000 and 8000 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Calibrating the reel fore-aft sensor is only possible if the optional CLAAS integration kit (MD #B7231) is installed.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the reel raise and lower functions do not work as expected on model year 2022 and newer CLAAS combines, contact your MacDon Dealer.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

NOTE:

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

2. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.551: CEBIS Main Page

3. Select LEARNING PROCEDURES FOR FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).
4. Select LEARNING REEL HEIGHT (B).



Figure 3.552: Front Attachment Page

OPERATION

5. Follow the prompts that appear in DESCRIPTION and NOTES fields (A).

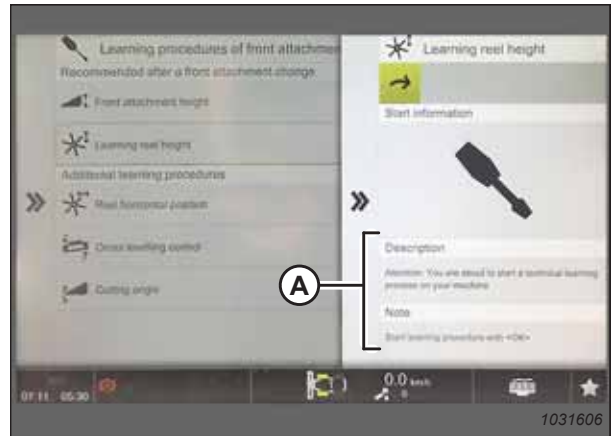


Figure 3.553: Learning Reel Height Page

6. When prompted, select OK button (A) to start the learning procedure.



Figure 3.554: Operator Controls

7. **If equipped with CLAAS integration kit (MD #B7231):**
Calibrate the reel fore-aft sensor by selecting REEL HORIZONTAL POSITION (A) as the learning procedure and follow the prompts.



Figure 3.555: Front Attachment Page

3.10.12 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

The auto header height control sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.

OPERATION

3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

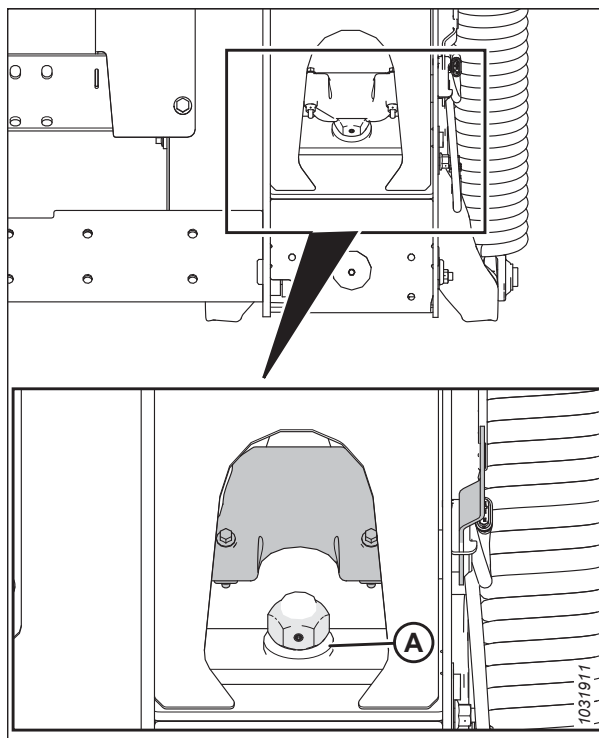


Figure 3.556: Float Lock

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).

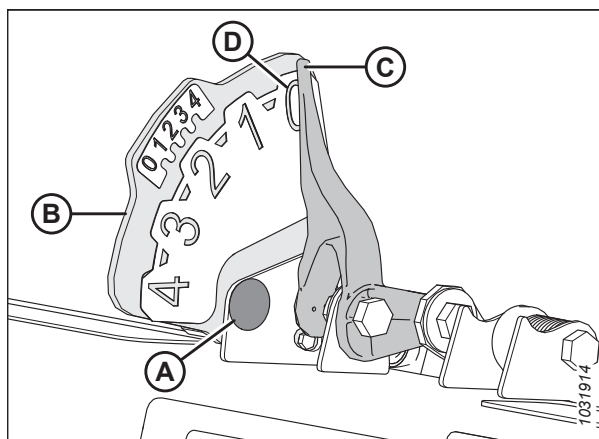


Figure 3.557: Float Indicator



Figure 3.558: Combine Heads-Up Display

6. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
7. Press and hold button (A) on the heads-up display for 3 seconds to enter diagnostic mode.
8. Scroll down using button (B) until LEFT is displayed on the LCD screen.
9. Press OK button (C). The number indicated on the LCD screen is the voltage reading from the sensor of the auto header height control (AHHC). Raise and lower the header to see the full range of the voltage readings.

Header Settings Quick Reference – Gleaner S9 Series Combines

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a FD2 Series FlexDraper® header.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the Gleaner S9 series combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.38 Header Settings – Gleaner S9 Series

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting
Header type	Power Flow
Header has reel attached check box	Checked
Reel diameter	40
Reel PPR ⁷⁵	30
Sensitivity (RTC)	50
Sensitivity (AHHC)	60
Header control speed ⁷⁶	Slow: Up 45/Down 40 Fast: Up 100/Down 100

75. Pulses per revolution

76. A two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second.

OPERATION

Table 3.38 Header Settings – Gleaner S9 Series (continued)

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting
Header lateral offset	0
Feeder house to cutter	68

Engaging Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

Engage the auto header height control (AHHC) before adjusting it for height and sensitivity.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHHC) to work:

- Main module and header driver module mounted in card box in fuse panel (FP) module.
- Multifunction control handle operator inputs.
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console (CC) module panel.
- Electrohydraulic header lift control valve.



Figure 3.559: Combine Auto Header Height Controls

1. Press AUTO MODE button (A) until AHHC LED light (B) begins flashing. If the RTC light is flashing, press AUTO MODE button (A) again until it switches to the AHHC.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

2. Briefly press button (A) on the control handle. The AHHC light should change from flashing to solid. The header should drop to the ground. The AHHC is now engaged and can be adjusted for height and sensitivity.
3. Use the controls to adjust the height and sensitivity to the constant changing ground conditions such as shallow gullies and field drainage trenches.

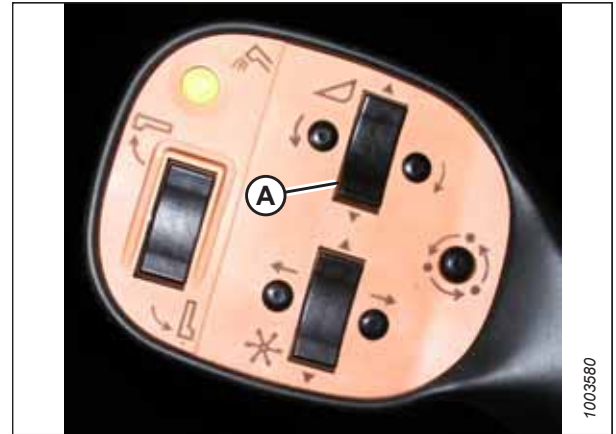


Figure 3.560: Control Handle

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.



Figure 3.561: Combine Auto Header Height Controls

A - AUTO MODE Button
D - Raise Header Light
G - CAL2 Button

B - AHHC Light
E - Lower Header Light

C - CAL1 Button
F - AUTO Mode

OPERATION

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

NOTE:

Calibration should be done on flat, level ground without the header engaged. The header height and header tilt functions must not be in auto or standby modes. The engine rpm must be above 2000 rpm. The header tilt option on 2004 and earlier model combines does not work with MacDon headers. This system will have to be removed and disabled in order to calibrate the AHHC. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Press AUTO MODE button (A) until AHHC light (B) lights up.
3. Press and hold CAL1 button (C) until you see the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), tilt auto mode (F), and AHHC (B).
4. Fully lower the header, and continue to hold the HEADER LOWER button for 5–8 seconds to ensure the float module has separated from the header.
5. Press CAL2 button (G) until lower header light (E) stops flashing, and release it when raise header light (D) begins flashing.
6. Raise the header to its maximum height, and ensure the header is resting on the down-stop pads.
7. Press CAL2 button (G) until raise header light (D) turns off.

NOTE:

The following steps are applicable only to 2005 and newer combines with the Smartrac feeder house.

8. Wait for the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) to start flashing, and then tilt the header to the maximum left position.
9. Press CAL2 button (G) until the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) stops flashing, and release the button when the HEADER TILT RIGHT light (not shown) begins flashing.
10. Tilt the header to the maximum right position.
11. Press CAL2 button (G) until all of the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), height auto mode (A), right header and left header (not shown), and tilt auto mode (F).
12. Center the header.
13. Press CAL1 button (C) to exit calibration and save all values. All lights should stop flashing.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

OPERATION

Turning off Accumulator – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

The accumulator being on will affect the combine's height adjustment reaction time, which can affect the auto header height control (AHHC) system's performance.

Refer to the combine operator's manual for the procedure for turning the accumulator off and on. For best performance, turn the feeder house accumulator off.

NOTE:

The accumulator is located in front of the front left axle beam.



Figure 3.562: Combine Accumulator ON/OFF Switch

A - Accumulator Lever (Off Position)

Adjusting Header Raise/Lower Rate – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) system's stability is affected by hydraulic flow rates. Adjust the header raise/lower rate to ensure the stability of the auto header height control system.

Ensure that header raise restrictor (A) and header lower restrictor (B) in the hydraulic manifold are adjusted so that it takes approximately 6 seconds to raise the header from ground level to maximum height (that is, to the point at which the hydraulic cylinders are fully extended), and approximately 6 seconds to lower the header from maximum height to ground level.

If there is excessive header movement (for example, hunting) when the header is on the ground, adjust the lower rate so that it takes 7 or 8 seconds for the header to drop down to ground level.

NOTE:

Make this adjustment with the hydraulic system at its normal operating temperature (54.4°C [130°F]) and the engine running at full throttle.

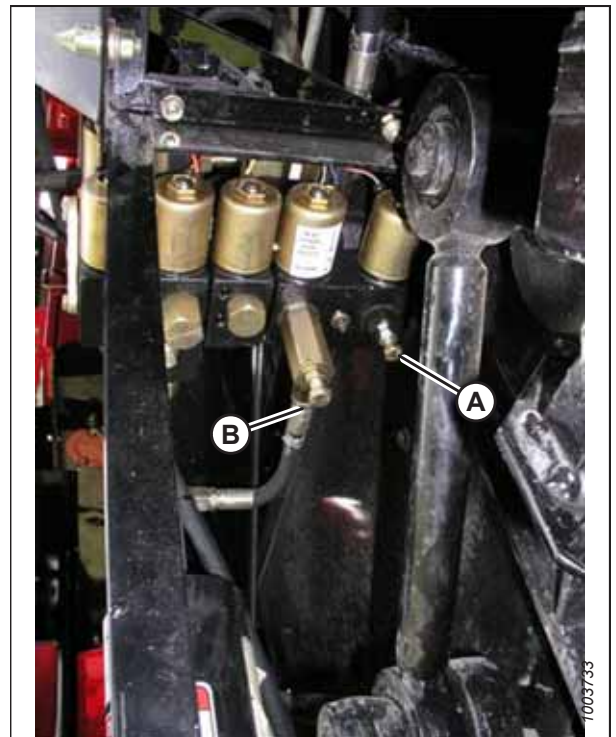


Figure 3.563: Header Raise and Lower Adjustable Restrictors

Adjusting Ground Pressure – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

Adjust the header ground pressure setting so that the pressure is as light as possible, but sufficiently heavy that the header does not bounce while in operation.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Ensure indicator (A) is at position 0 (B) with the header is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series, page 325](#).

NOTE:

When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

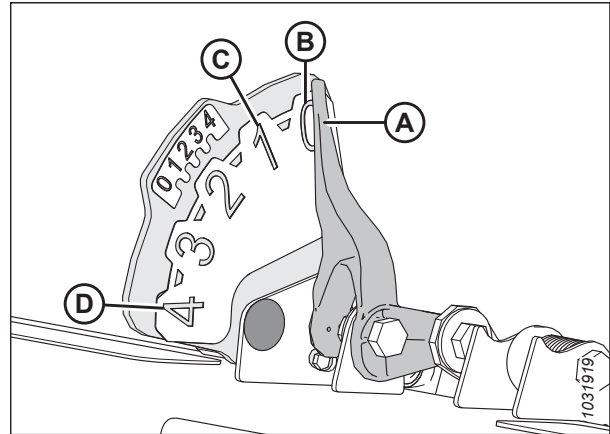


Figure 3.564: Float Indicator

2. Ensure the header is in auto header height control (AHHC) mode. This is indicated by AUTO MODE LED light (A) displaying a continuous, solid light.
3. The header will lower to the height (ground pressure) corresponding to the position selected with height control knob (B). Turn the knob counterclockwise for minimum ground pressure, and clockwise for maximum ground pressure.



Figure 3.565: AHHC Console

Adjusting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

Auto header height control (AHHC) sensitivity refers to the distance that the cutterbar must travel up or down before the AHHC reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



Figure 3.566: Auto Header Height Control Console

SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to maximum (turned completely clockwise), only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 19 mm (3/4 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.

When SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to minimum (turned completely counterclockwise), large changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 51 mm (2 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.

The HEADER SENSE LINE input also changes the range of the sensitivity. When connected to a draper, the counterclockwise position (least sensitive) allows for approximately 102 mm (4 in.) of vertical travel before correction is made.

Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

Refer to this section to learn the meaning of the alarms and faults related to the auto header height control (AHHC) system. Alarms and diagnostic faults are displayed on the combine's electronic instrument panel (EIP).

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

Display type:

Displayed on tachometer (A) as XX or XXX.



Figure 3.567: Tachometer

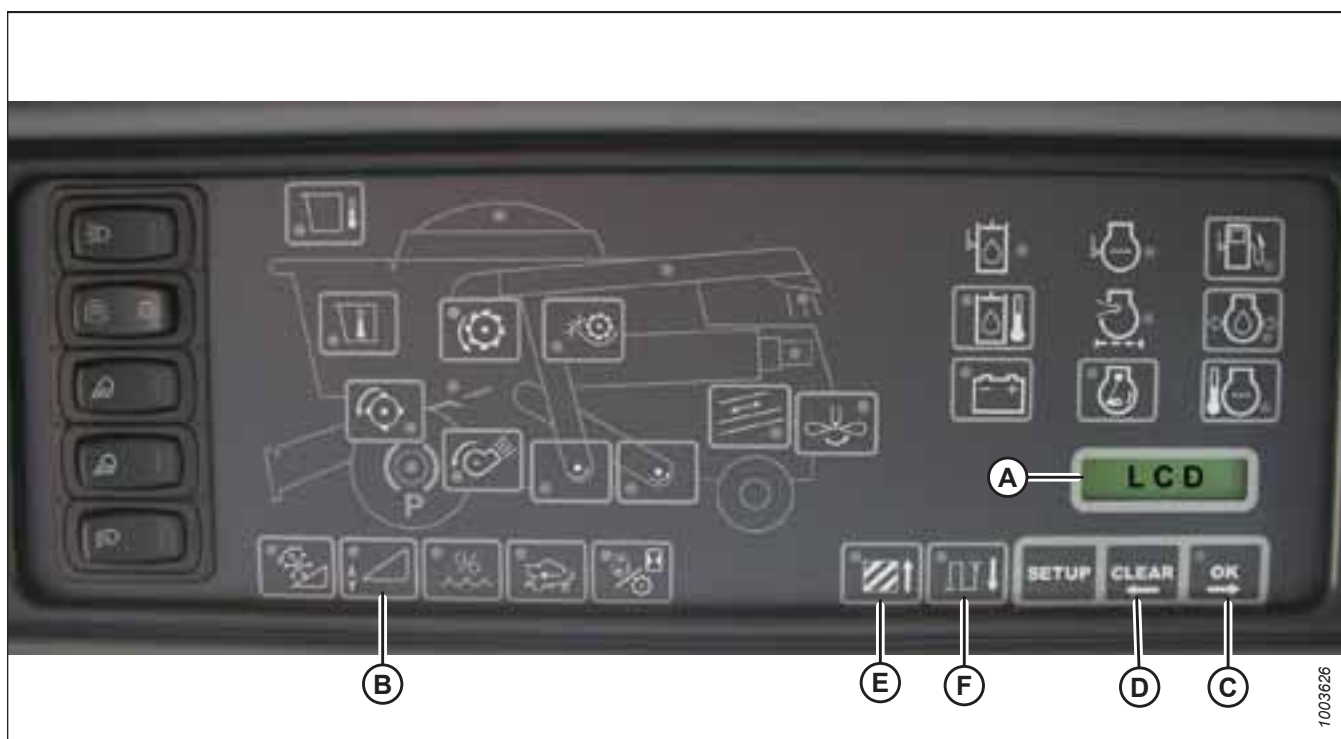


Figure 3.568: Combine Electronic Instrument Panel (EIP)

NOTE:

Displayed on LCD (A) as XX in. or XXX cm.

Alarm conditions:

If an error message is received from the fuse panel, an alarm sounds. The alarm buzzer sounds five times every 10 seconds. LCD (A) on the electronic instrument panel (EIP) indicates the header system in error as HDR CTRL followed by HGT ERR for height, and HDR CTRL followed by TILT ERR for tilt. The header height LED flashes yellow two times every second.

When an alarm condition occurs, a green LED flashes (green, yellow, or red depending on the input). In addition, a message is displayed on the LCD to identify the nature of the alarm. For example, HYD TEMP, OPEN, SHRT will be flashed alternately.

Diagnostic fault failures:

Refer to Figure 3.568, page 334.

OPERATION

Pressing header height switch (B) for a minimum of 5 seconds will put the EIP in header diagnostic mode. The LCD (shown on previous screen) will display the message HDR DIAG when the EIP has entered header diagnostic mode.

In this mode, after 3 seconds, header fault parameter labels are displayed on the EIP LCD. All the information displayed is read-only.

OK (C) and CLEAR (D) buttons allow you to scroll through the list of parameters. If there are no active fault codes, the EIP LCD will display NO CODE.

When a parameter is displayed, its label is displayed for 3 seconds, after which its value is automatically displayed.

Pressing OK button (C) while the value is displayed will advance to the next parameter and display its label.

When a parameter label is displayed and OK button (C) is pressed before 3 seconds, the parameter's value will be displayed.

Pressing AREA (E) will cycle through the options. When LEFT is displayed on the LCD, press OK button (C), and the auto header height control (AHHC) voltage will be shown on the display.

Press DIST button (F) to cycle back through the table.

Press CLEAR button (D) to exit header diagnostics and return to normal mode.

3.10.13 Gleaner S9 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with Gleaner S9 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Setting up Header – Gleaner S9 Series

To set up a header to work with the auto header height control (AHHC) system, you will need to access the HEADER SETTINGS menu using the Tyton terminal.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

AGCO Tyton terminal (A) is used to set up and manage a MacDon draper header on a Gleaner S9 Series combine. Use the touch screen display to select the desired item on the screen.



Figure 3.569: Operators Station – Gleaner S9

A - Tyton Terminal B - Control Handle
C - Throttle D - Header Control Cluster

OPERATION

1. On the top right quadrant of the home page, touch COMBINE icon (A). The COMBINE MAIN MENU opens.



Figure 3.570: Combine Icon on Home Page

2. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A). The HEADER SETTINGS page opens.



Figure 3.571: Header Settings in Combine Main Menu

OPERATION

3. Touch HEADER CONFIGURATION field (A). A dialog box showing predefined headers opens.
 - If your MacDon header is already set up, it appears on the header list. Touch MacDon header title (B) to highlight the selection in blue, and then touch green check mark (E) to continue.
 - If only default header (D) is shown, touch ABC button (C), and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the MacDon header information. When complete, select one of the following options to return to the HEADER SETTINGS page:
 - Green check mark (E) saves the settings
 - Garbage can icon (F) deletes the highlighted header from the list
 - Red X (G) cancels the change(s)

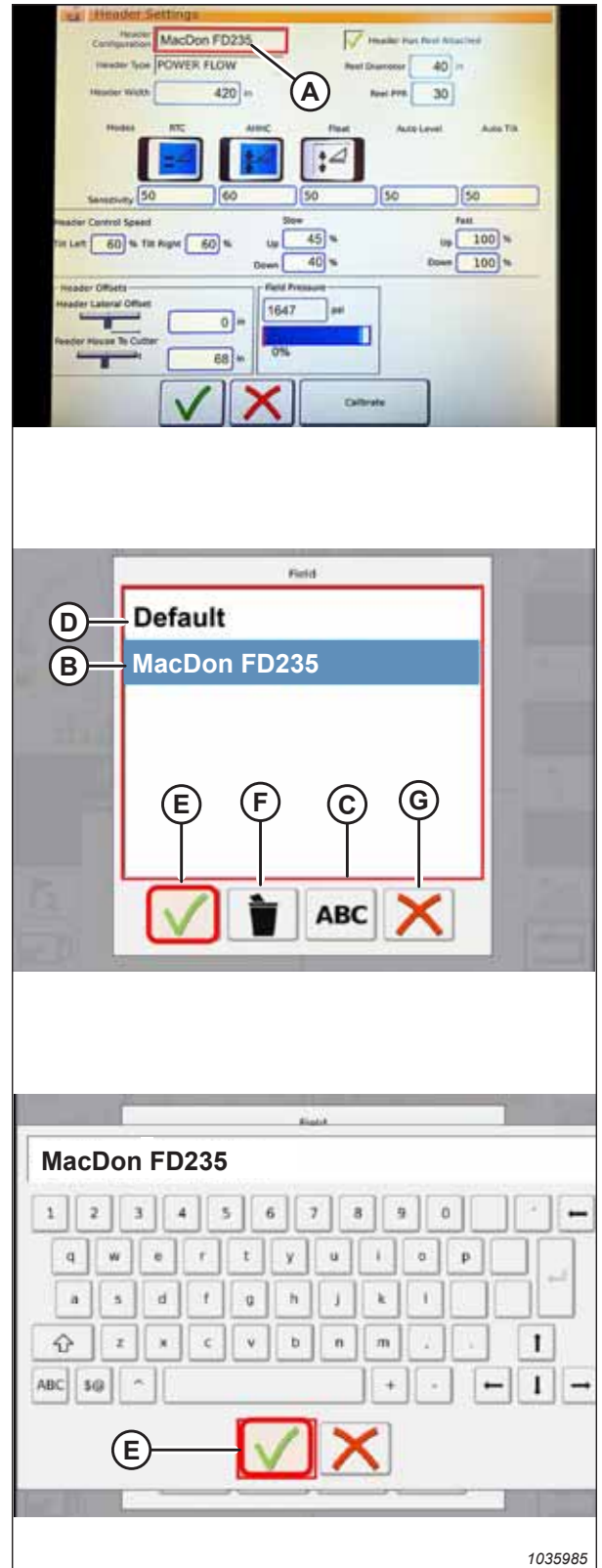


Figure 3.572: Header Configuration Menu on Header Settings Page

OPERATION

4. To specify the type of header installed on the machine, touch HEADER TYPE field (A).

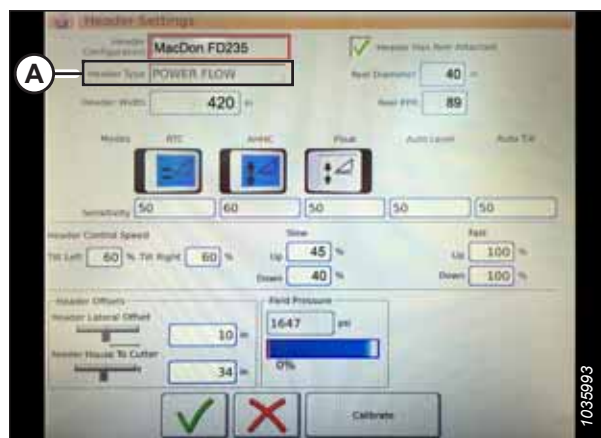


Figure 3.573: Header Settings

5. A list of predefined header types appears.
 - For MacDon FD2 Series FlexDraper® headers, touch POWER FLOW (A)
 - Touch green check mark (B) to save the selection and continue

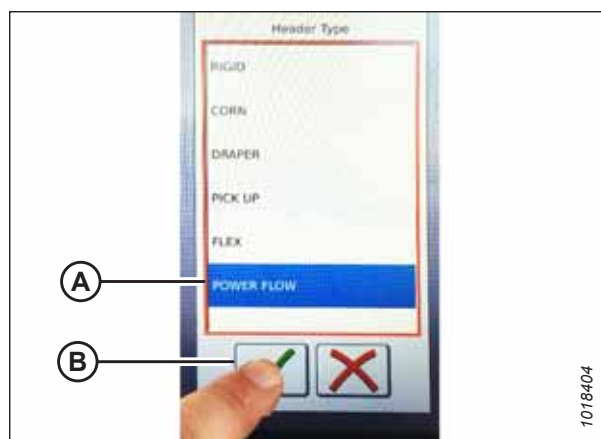


Figure 3.574: Header Type

6. Make sure that HEADER HAS REEL ATTACHED check box (A) is checked.

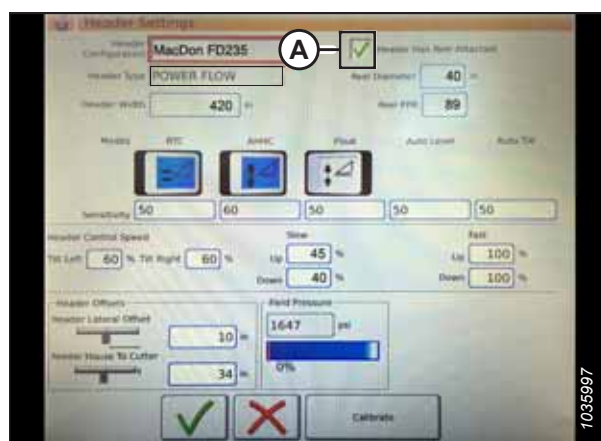


Figure 3.575: Header Settings

OPERATION

7. Touch REEL DIAMETER field (A) and a numeric keypad displays. Enter **40** for a MacDon reel.
8. Touch REEL PPR (Pulses Per Revolution) field (B) and enter **30** as the value for your MacDon header.

NOTE:

PPR is determined by the number of teeth on the reel speed sprocket.

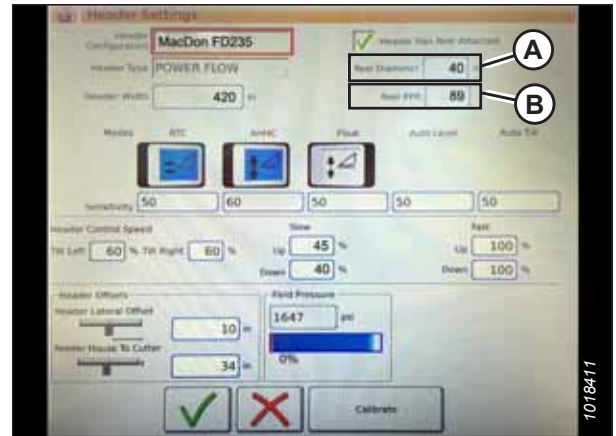


Figure 3.576: Header Settings

9. Touch green check mark (B) at the bottom of numeric keypad (A) when complete, or the red X to cancel.

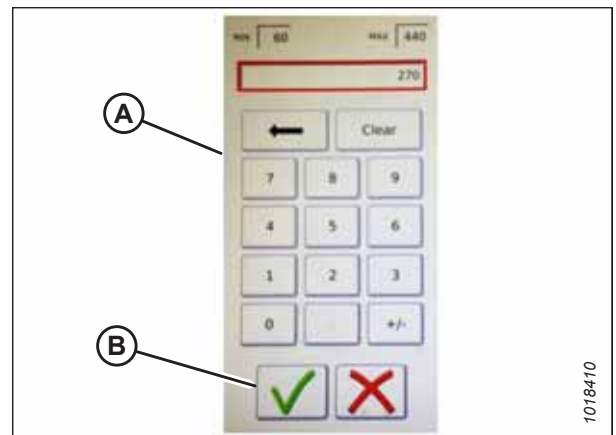


Figure 3.577: Numeric Keypad

10. When complete, touch green check mark (A) at the bottom of the HEADER SETTINGS page.

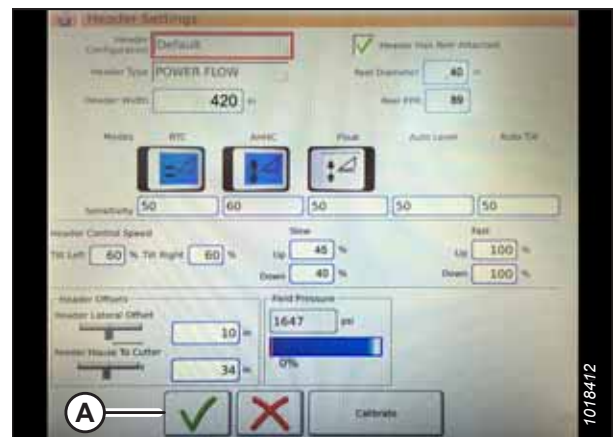


Figure 3.578: Header Settings Page

Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – Gleaner S9 Series

To set up the header's minimum reel speed to work with the auto header height control (AHHC) system, and to calibrate the reel, the REEL SETTINGS menu will need to be accessed.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. From the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch REEL SETTINGS (A) to open the REEL SETTINGS page.



Figure 3.579: Reel Settings on Combine Main Menu

2. To set the minimum reel speed, touch SPEED MINIMUM FIELD (B). The on-screen keyboard appears. Enter the desired value. Touch the green check mark to accept the new value, or the red X to cancel. The reel speed is shown in mph and rpm.

NOTE:

At the bottom of the REEL SETTINGS page, the reel diameter and reel pulses per revolution (PPR) are displayed. These values have already been set in the HEADER SETTINGS page.

3. The reel speed is calibrated on the REEL SETTINGS page by touching CALIBRATE button (A) in the top right of the page.



Figure 3.580: Reel Settings Calibration

OPERATION

4. The CALIBRATION WIZARD opens and displays a hazard warning.
5. Make sure to meet all the conditions listed in the CALIBRATION WIZARD warning. Press green check mark (A) to accept and start the reel calibration. Pressing red X (B) will cancel the calibration procedure.

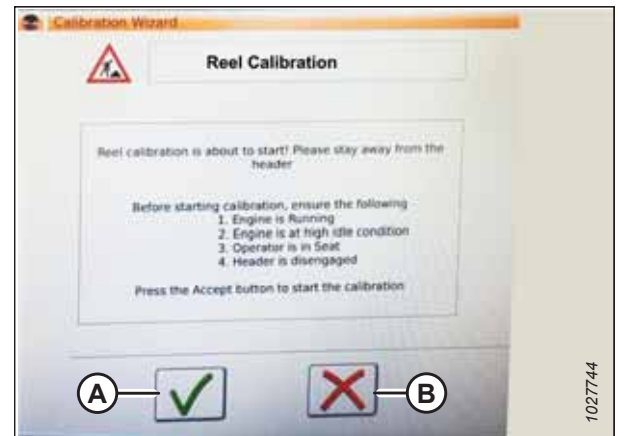


Figure 3.581: Calibration Wizard

6. A message appears in the CALIBRATION WIZARD stating that the reel calibration has started. The reel will begin turning slowly and the reel speed will increase to high speed. A progress bar is provided. If necessary, touch the red X to cancel. Otherwise, wait for the message that reel calibration has completed successfully. Touch the green check mark to save the calibrated settings.

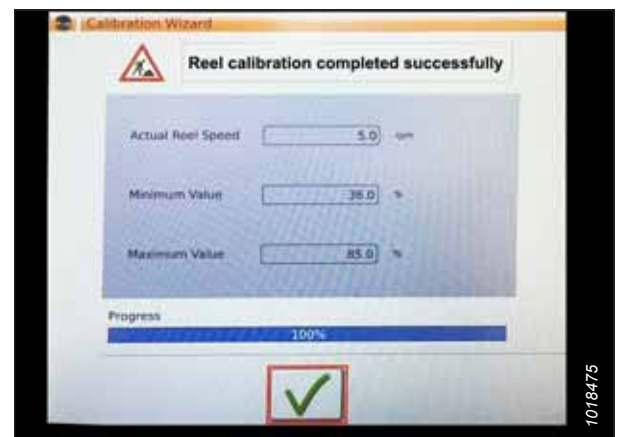


Figure 3.582: Calibration Progress

Setting up Automatic Header Controls – Gleaner S9 Series

Automatic header functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS page.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. **Automatic control functions:** There are toggle (OFF/ON) switches on the HEADER SETTINGS page for the automatic control functions. For MacDon headers, ensure the following two functions are enabled as shown:

- RTC (return to cut) (A)
- AHHC (automatic header height control) (B)

All other switches are disabled (not highlighted).

2. **Sensitivity:** Setting (C) controls how responsive a control (RTC or AHHC) is to a given change in sensor feedback. The setting fields are located directly below the toggle switches. To enter a new sensitivity setting, touch the setting field below the specific toggle switch, and enter the new value in the on-screen keyboard.

- Increase the sensitivity if the combine does not change the feeder position quickly enough when in Auto Mode.
- Decrease the sensitivity if the combine hunts for a position in Auto Mode.

NOTE:

The sensitivity starting points for MacDon headers are as follows:

- 50 for RTC (A)
- 60 for AHHC (B)

3. **Header speed:** HEADER CONTROL SPEED area (A) on the HEADER SETTINGS page is used to adjust the following speeds:

- Tilt left and right is the lateral tilt of the combine faceplate
- Header up and down (slow and fast speeds) is a two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second

NOTE:

The control speed starting points for MacDon headers are as follows:

- Slow: 45 up / 40 down
- Fast: 100 up / 100 down

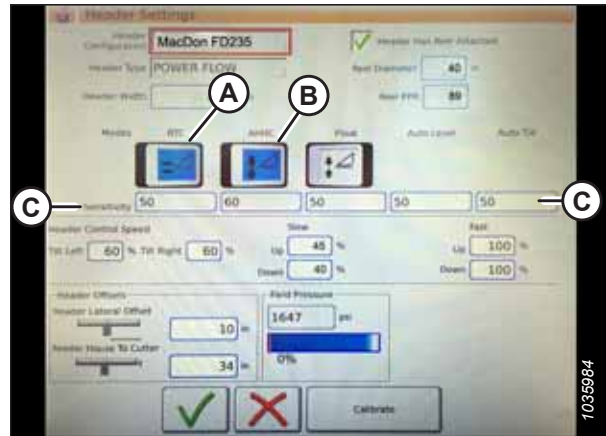


Figure 3.583: Automatic Controls and Sensitivity Settings

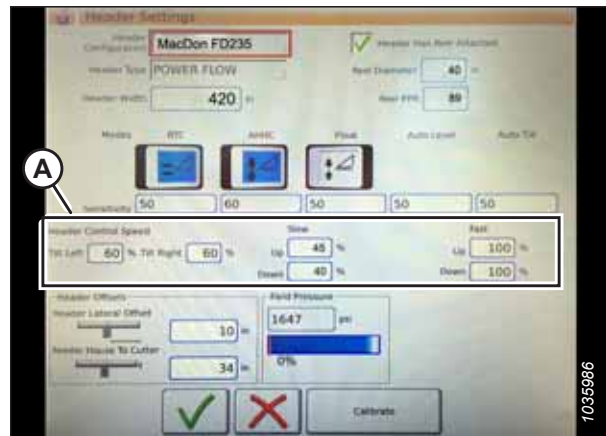


Figure 3.584: Header Speed Control Settings

OPERATION

4. **Header offsets (A):** Offset distances are important for yield mapping. There are two adjustable dimensions on the HEADER SETTINGS page:

- Header Lateral Offset: the distance between the centerline of the header and the centerline of the machine. Set to **0** for a MacDon header.
- Feeder House to Cutter: the distance from the machine interface to the cutterbar. Set to **68** for a MacDon header.

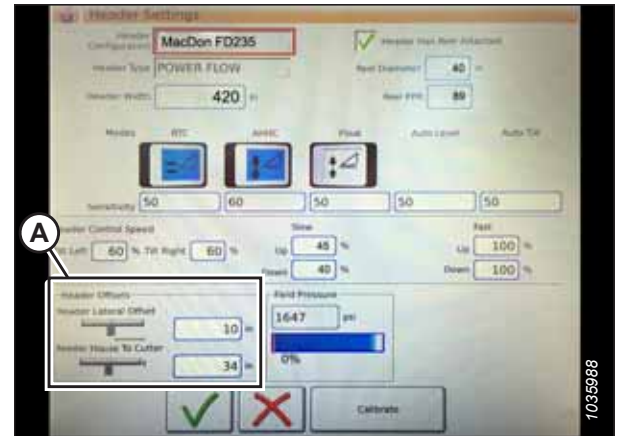


Figure 3.585: Header Offset Settings

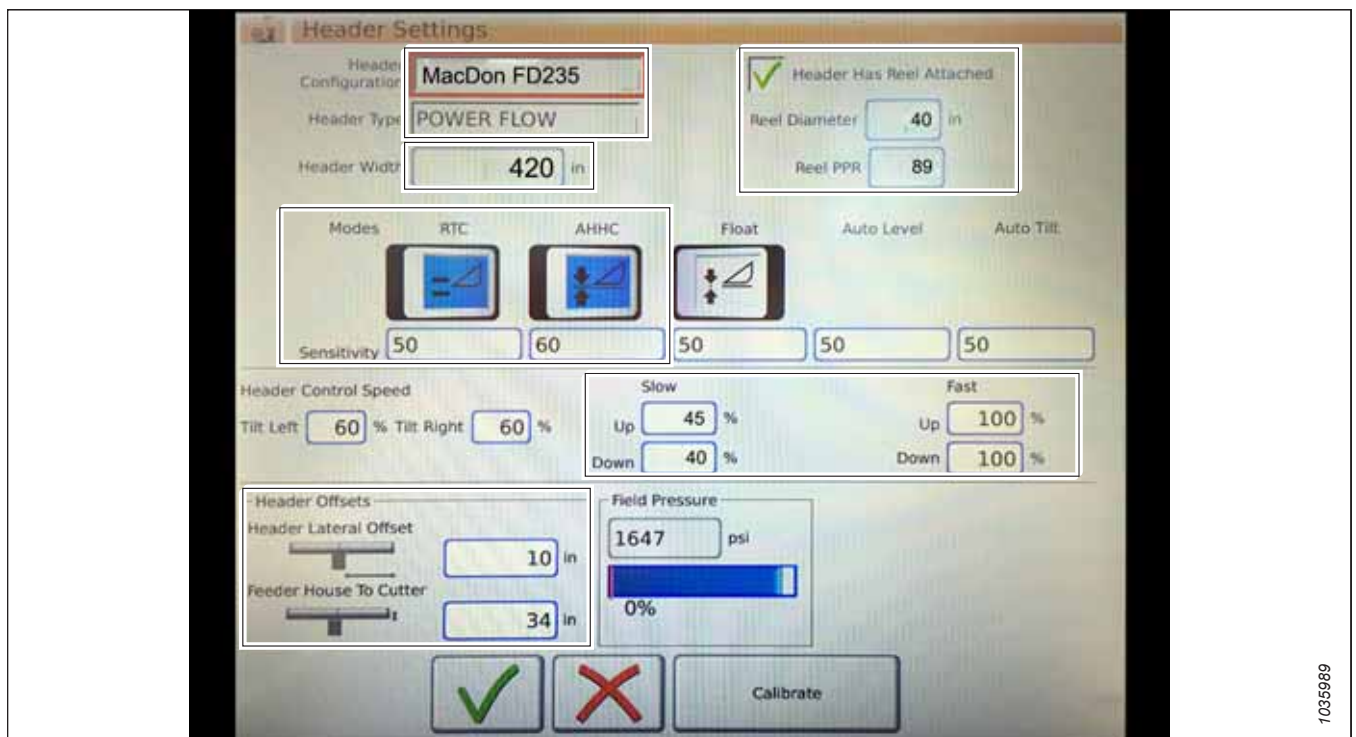


Figure 3.586: MacDon Header Settings Inputs

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A).



Figure 3.587: Combine Main Menu

2. Touch CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom right of the page. The HEADER CALIBRATION page appears.

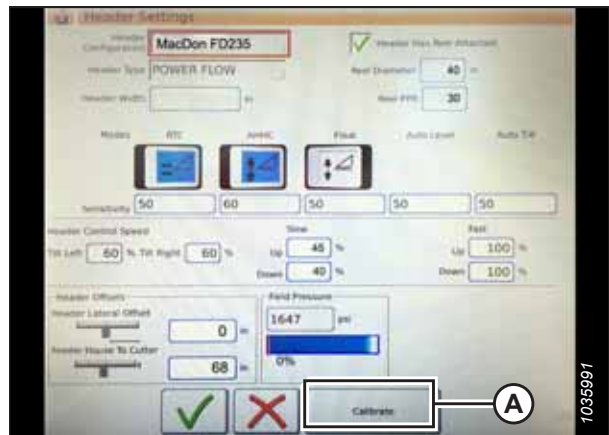


Figure 3.588: Header Settings Page

OPERATION

The right side of the page shows header calibration information (A). The results are shown for a variety of sensors (B):

- Left and right header sensor (voltage) (values will be the same with MacDon headers)
- Header height sensor (mA)
- Tilt position sensor (mA)

The following valid modes are shown with check marks (C) below sensor values (B):

- Return to cut
- Automatic header height control

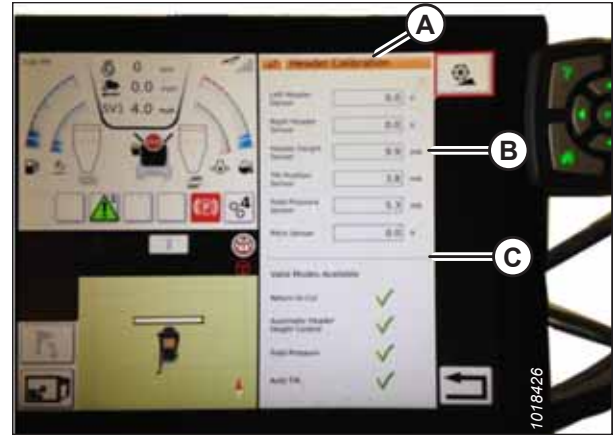


Figure 3.589: Header Calibration Page

3. On the control handle, touch HEADER DOWN button (A). Sensor values start changing on the HEADER CALIBRATION page as the header lowers.



Figure 3.590: Header Down Switch

4. When the sensor values are stable, touch CALIBRATE icon (A).



Figure 3.591: Header Calibration

OPERATION

5. The hazard warning for HEADER CALIBRATION appears. Make sure that all conditions are met.
6. Touch the green check mark at the bottom of the page to start the CALIBRATION WIZARD.



Figure 3.592: Header Calibration Warning

A calibration progress bar displays at the bottom of the screen. The process can be stopped at any time by touching the red X. The header moves automatically and erratically during this process.

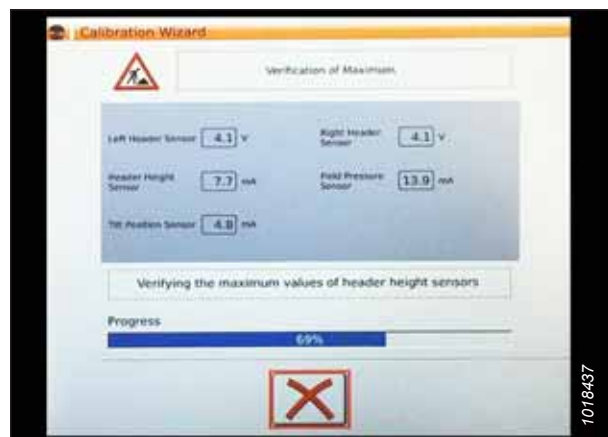


Figure 3.593: Calibration in Progress

7. When the calibration is complete, a message displays, and summary information (A) is shown. Green check marks confirm the functions have been calibrated (B). Touch bottom green check mark (C) to save.



Figure 3.594: Completed Calibration Page

OPERATION

NOTE:

Touch CALIBRATION icon (A) on the COMBINE MAIN MENU page to display the CALIBRATION MENU where you can choose from a variety of calibrations including header and reel calibration.



Figure 3.595: Direct Calibration Menu

Operating Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system has been set up, follow these instructions to take advantage of its functions.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

The following controls are used to operate the auto header height control (AHHC) functions:

- Tyton terminal (A)
- Control handle (B)
- Throttle (C)
- Header control cluster (D)

Use the combine operator's manual to familiarize yourself with the controls.



Figure 3.596: Gleaner S9 Operator Controls

OPERATION

1. With the header running, set lateral tilt switch (A) to MANUAL.
2. Engage the AHHC by pressing switch (B) upward to the I position.



Figure 3.597: Header Control Cluster

3. Press AHHC control switch (A) on the control handle to engage the AHHC. The header moves to the current set point position.



Figure 3.598: AHHC on Control Handle

4. Use HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) as necessary to fine-tune the position.



Figure 3.599: Header Control Cluster

Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – Gleaner S9 Series

The auto header height control (AHHHC) settings can be reviewed at a glance by pressing the HEADER icon on the Tyton terminal's home page.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. To view the following header group settings, touch HEADER icon (A) on the right side of the home page:

- CURRENT POSITION of header (B).
- SETPOINT cut-off position (C) (indicated by the red line)
- HEADER symbol (D) – touch to adjust the set point cut-off position using the scroll wheel on the right side of the Tyton terminal.
- CUT HEIGHT for AHHC (E) – fine-tune with the header height set point control dial on the header control cluster.
- HEADER WORKING WIDTH (F)
- HEADER PITCH (G)

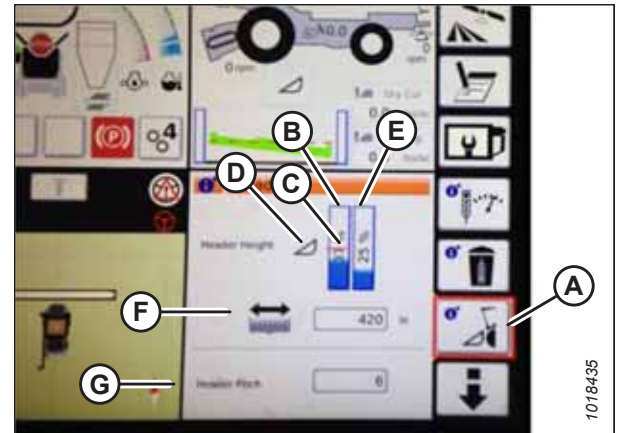


Figure 3.600: Header Groups

2. Touching a field opens the on-screen keyboard, so that the values can be adjusted. Enter the new value and touch the green check mark when complete.

NOTE:

Scroll wheel (A) is located on the right side of the Tyton terminal.



Figure 3.601: Adjustment Wheel on Right Side of Tyton Terminal

NOTE:

HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) is on the header control cluster.



Figure 3.602: Header Control Cluster

3.10.14 IDEAL™ Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with IDEAL™ Series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Header Settings Quick Reference – IDEAL™

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a FD2 Series FlexDraper® header.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the IDEAL™ combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.39 Header Settings – IDEAL™

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting		
Header type	Power Flow		
Reel check box	Checked		
Reel diameter	102 cm (40 in.) ⁷⁷		
Reel PPR ⁷⁸	Standard - 38	High torque sprocket - 68	High speed sprocket - 34
Sensitivity (RTC)	50		
Sensitivity (AHHC)	60		
Header control speed ⁷⁹	Slow: Up 45/Down 40 Fast: Up 100/Down 100		
Header lateral offset	0		
Feeder house to cutter	68		

77. If the reel speed does not index correctly, then the reel diameter can be increased to 112 cm (44 in.).

78. Pulses per revolution

79. A two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second.

Setting up Header – IDEAL™ Series

Set these initial configuration options on your IDEAL™ Series combine when setting up the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

Tyton terminal (A) is used to set up and manage the MacDon header on an IDEAL™ Series combine. Use the touch screen display to select the desired item on the page.



Figure 3.603: IDEAL™ Series Operator Station

A - Tyton Terminal B - Control Handle
C - Throttle D - Header Control Cluster

1. On the top right of the home page, touch COMBINE icon (A). The COMBINE MAIN MENU opens.

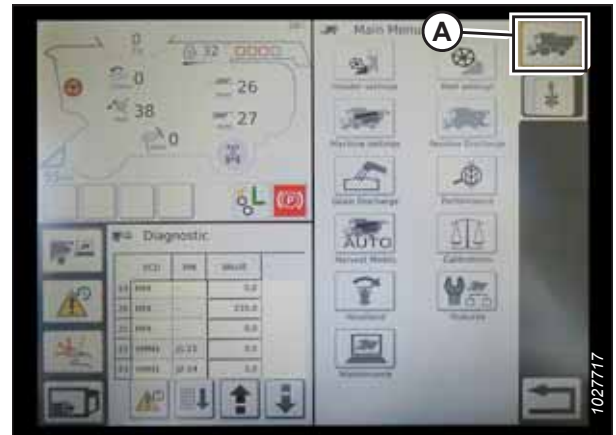


Figure 3.604: Combine Icon on Home Page

OPERATION

2. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A). The HEADER SETTINGS page opens.

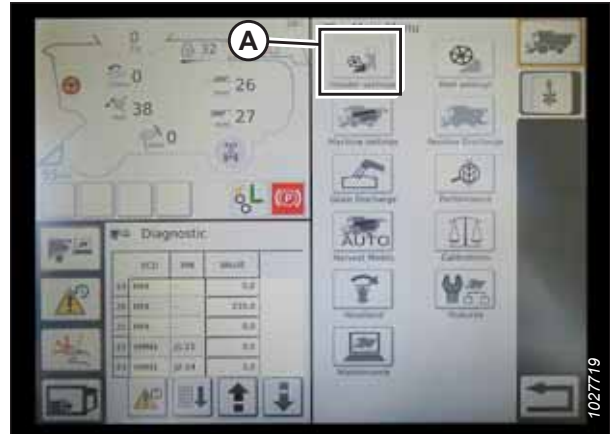


Figure 3.605: Header Settings in Combine Main Menu

3. Touch HEADER CONFIGURATION field (A). A dialog box showing a list of predefined header configuration profiles opens.
 - If your MacDon header is already set up, it appears on the header list. Touch MacDon header title (B) to highlight the selection in blue, and then touch green check mark (E) to continue.
 - If only default header (D) is shown, touch ABC button (C) and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the MacDon header information. When complete, select one of the following options to return to the HEADER SETTINGS page:
 - Green check mark (E) saves the settings
 - Garbage can icon (F) deletes the highlighted header from the list
 - Red X (G) cancels the change(s)

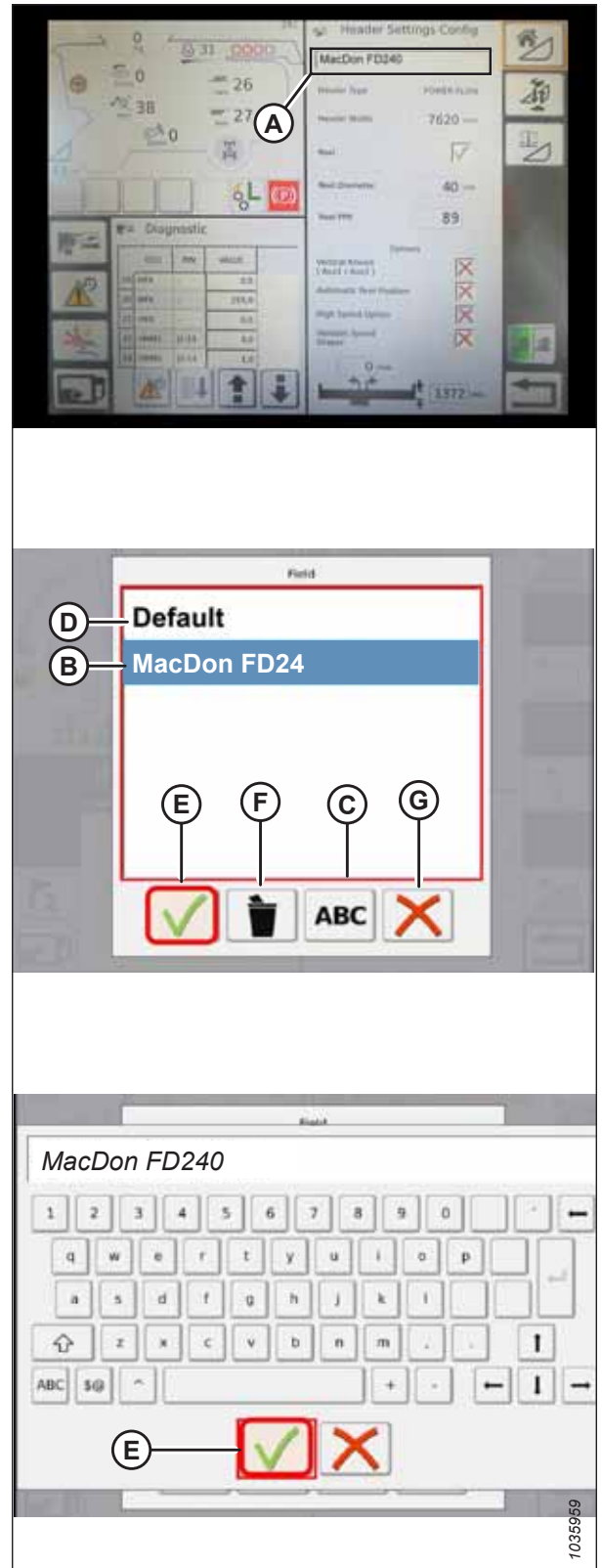


Figure 3.606: Header Configuration Menu on Header Settings Page

OPERATION

4. To specify the type of header installed on the machine, touch HEADER TYPE field (A).

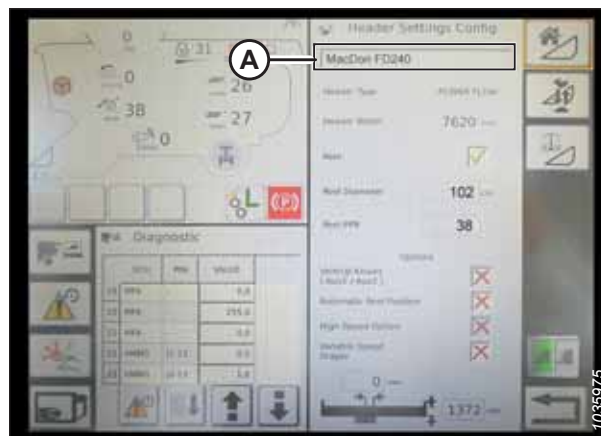


Figure 3.607: Header Settings

5. From the list of predefined header types, touch POWER FLOW (A).
6. Touch green check mark (B) to save the selection and continue.

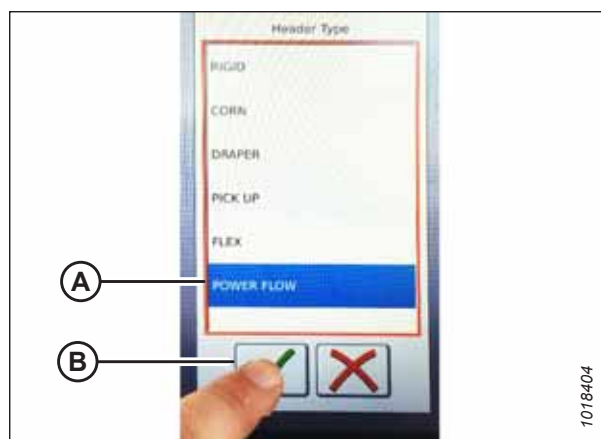


Figure 3.608: Header Type

7. Make sure that REEL check box (A) is checked.

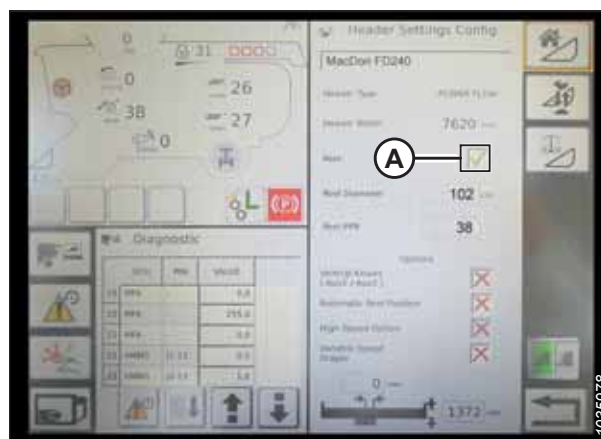


Figure 3.609: Header Settings

OPERATION

8. Touch REEL DIAMETER field (A) and a numeric keypad appears. Enter the following value for a MacDon reel:

- 102 cm (40 in.)

NOTE:

If the reel speed does not index correctly, then the reel diameter can be increased to 112 cm (44 in.).

9. Touch REEL PPR (Pulses Per Revolution) field (B) and enter the following as the value for your MacDon header:

- **Standard:** 38
- **Two-speed, high torque:** 68
- **Two-speed, high speed:** 34

10. Touch green check mark (B) at the bottom of numeric keypad (A) when complete, or the red X to cancel.

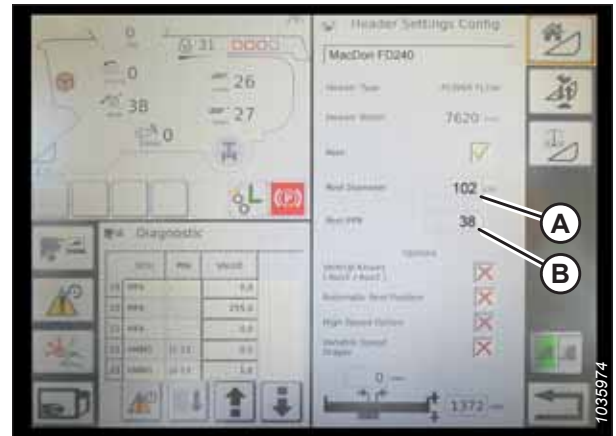


Figure 3.610: Header Settings

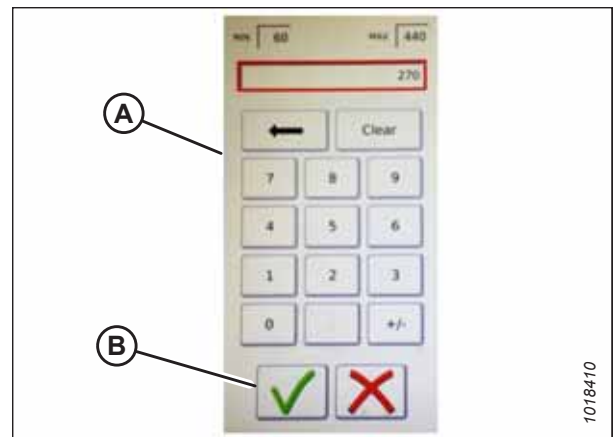


Figure 3.611: Numeric Keypad

11. When complete, touch green check mark (A) at the bottom of the HEADER SETTINGS page.

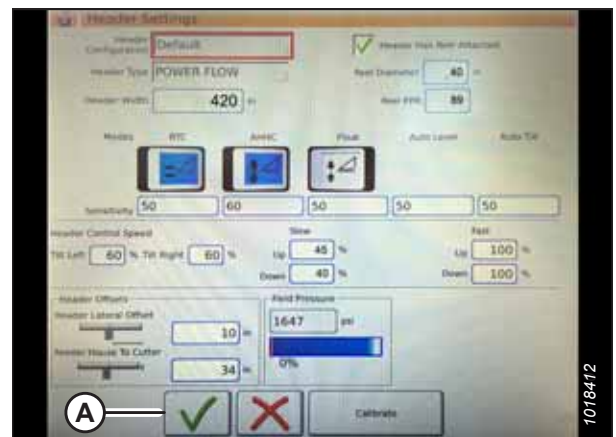


Figure 3.612: Header Settings Page

Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – IDEAL™ Series

To configure the reel speed on the header to work with the auto header height control system (AHHC) on an IDEAL™ Series combine, the reel operation parameters must be configured and the combine must run an automatic reel calibration procedure.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updated information.

1. From the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch REEL SETTINGS (A) to open the REEL SETTINGS page.

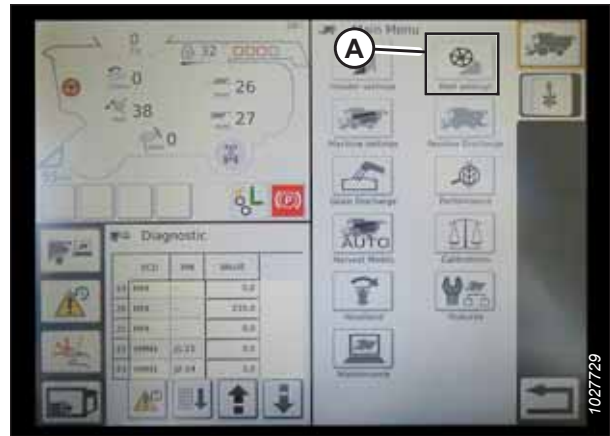


Figure 3.613: Reel Settings on Combine Main Menu

2. To set the minimum reel speed, touch SPEED MINIMUM FIELD (B). The on-screen keyboard appears. Enter the desired value. Touch the green check mark to accept the new value, or the red X to cancel. The reel speed is shown in miles per hour (mph) and rotations per minute (rpm).

NOTE:

The reel diameter and reel pulses per revolution (PPR) are displayed at the bottom of the REEL SETTINGS page. These values have already been set in the HEADER SETTINGS page.

3. Reel speed is calibrated on the REEL SETTINGS page by touching CALIBRATE button (A) at the top right corner of the page.

NOTE:

The CALIBRATION WIZARD opens and displays a hazard warning.



Figure 3.614: Reel Settings Calibration

OPERATION

4. Make sure to meet all the conditions listed in the CALIBRATION WIZARD warning. Press the green check mark to accept and start the reel calibration procedure. Pressing the red X will cancel the calibration procedure.



Figure 3.615: Calibration Wizard

5. A message appears in the CALIBRATION WIZARD stating that the reel calibration procedure has started. The reel will begin turning slowly and its speed will gradually increase. If necessary, touch the red X (not shown) to cancel. Otherwise, wait for the message that the reel calibration procedure has completed successfully. Touch the green check mark to save the calibrated settings.

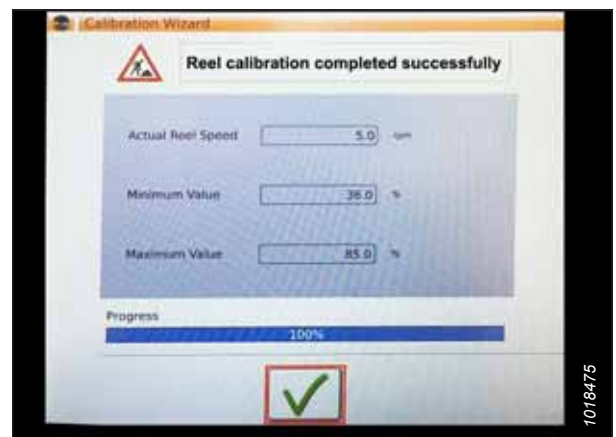


Figure 3.616: Calibration Progress

Setting up Automatic Header Controls – IDEAL™ Series

To configure the automatic header height control (AHC) functions on an IDEAL™ Series combine to work with your header, navigate to the HEADER SETTINGS page on the combine's computer.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. **Automatic Control Functions:** There are toggle (OFF/ON) switches on the HEADER SETTINGS page for the automatic control functions. For MacDon headers, ensure that the following two functions are enabled as shown:

- RTC (return to cut) (A)
- AHHC (automatic header height control) (B)

All other switches should be disabled (not highlighted).

2. **Sensitivity** setting (C) controls how responsive a control (RTC or AHHC) is to a given change in sensor feedback. The setting fields are located directly below the toggle switches. To enter a new sensitivity setting, touch the setting field below the specific toggle switch, and enter the new value in the on-screen keyboard.

- Increase the sensitivity if the combine does not change the feeder position quickly enough when in Auto Mode.
- Decrease the sensitivity if the combine continually hunts for a position in Auto Mode.

NOTE:

The following sensitivity settings are recommended for MacDon headers:

- 50 for RTC (A)
- 60 for AHHC (B)

3. **Header Speed:** HEADER CONTROL SPEED area (A) on the HEADER SETTINGS page is used to adjust the following speeds:

- Tilt left and right is the lateral tilt of the combine faceplate
- Header up and down (slow and fast speeds) is a two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second

NOTE:

The recommended header control speed settings are:

- Slow: Up 45/Down 40
- Fast: Up 100/Down 100

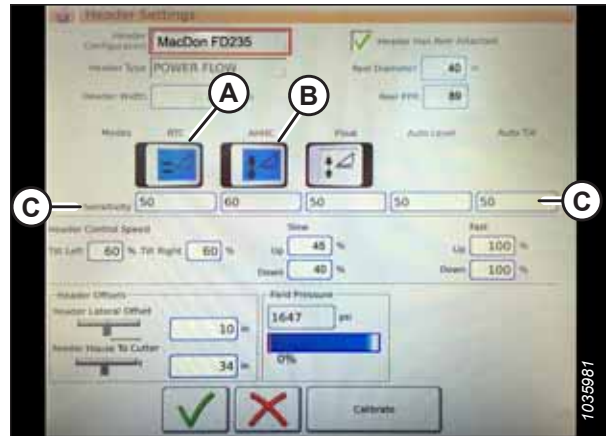


Figure 3.617: Automatic Controls and Sensitivity Settings

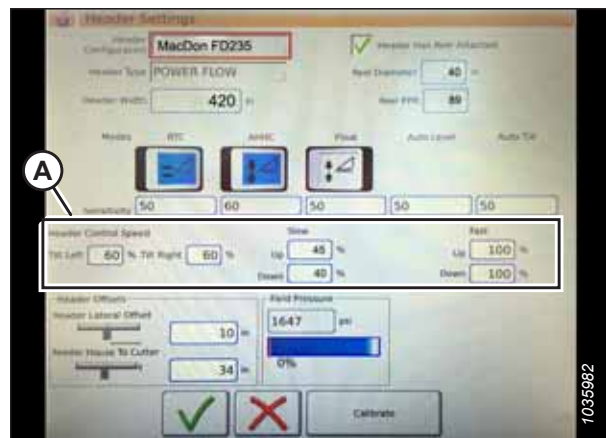


Figure 3.618: Header Speed Control Settings

OPERATION

4. **Header Offsets (A):** Offset distances are important for yield mapping. There are two adjustable dimensions on the HEADER SETTINGS page:

- Header Lateral Offset: the distance between the centerline of the header and the centerline of the machine. This should be set at **0** for a MacDon header.
- Feeder House to Cutter: the distance from the machine interface to the cutterbar. This should be set at **68** for a MacDon header.

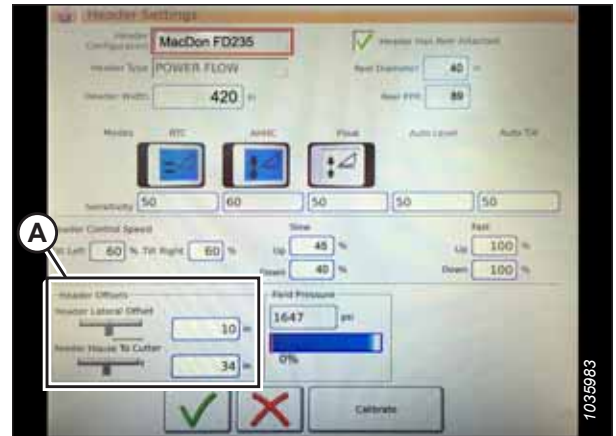


Figure 3.619: Header Offset Settings

Calibrating Header – IDEAL™ Series

The auto header height control (AHC) sensor output must be calibrated for IDEAL™ Series combines, or the AHC feature will not work properly.

DANGER

Clear the area of bystanders. Keep children away from the machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure that no one is under, on, or close to it.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A).

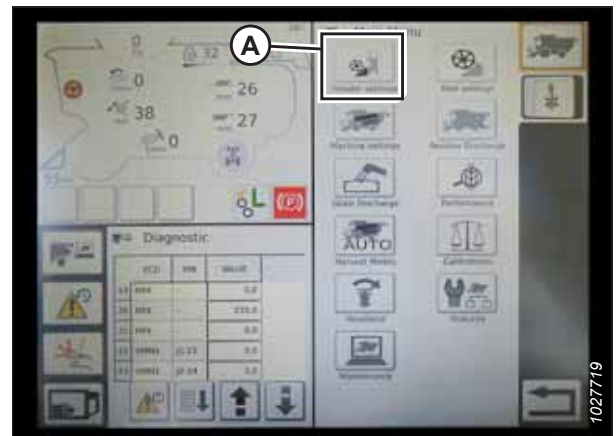


Figure 3.620: Combine Main Menu

OPERATION

2. Touch HEADER CALIBRATE (A) at the right side of the HEADER SETTINGS CONFIG page.

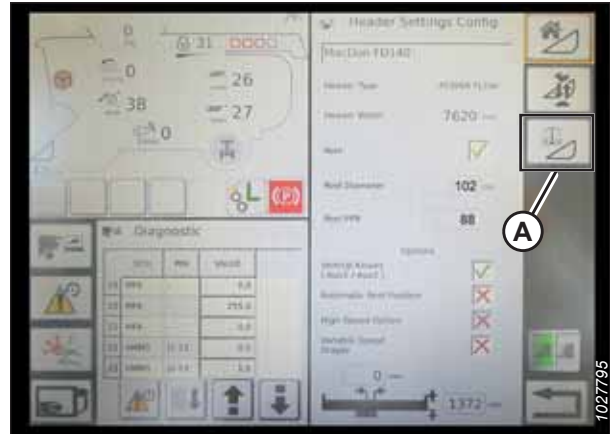


Figure 3.621: Header Settings Page

3. The hazard warning for HEADER CALIBRATION appears. Ensure that all conditions are met.
4. Touch the green check mark at the bottom of the page to start the calibration procedure and follow the on-screen commands.



Figure 3.622: Header Calibration Warning

A progress bar is provided and the calibration can be stopped by touching the red X. The header moves automatically and erratically during this process.

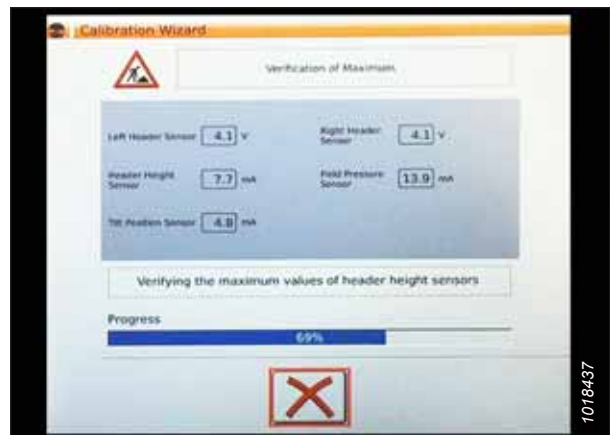


Figure 3.623: Calibration in Progress

OPERATION

5. When the calibration procedure is complete:

- Review summary information (A)
- Review green check marks confirming calibrated functions (B)
- Touch check mark (C) to save

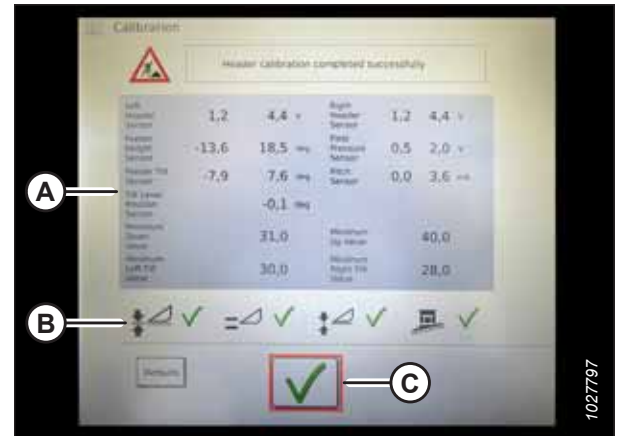


Figure 3.624: Completed Calibration Page

NOTE:

Touch CALIBRATIONS icon (A) on the MAIN MENU page to display the CALIBRATION MENU where you can choose from a variety of calibrations including header and reel calibration.

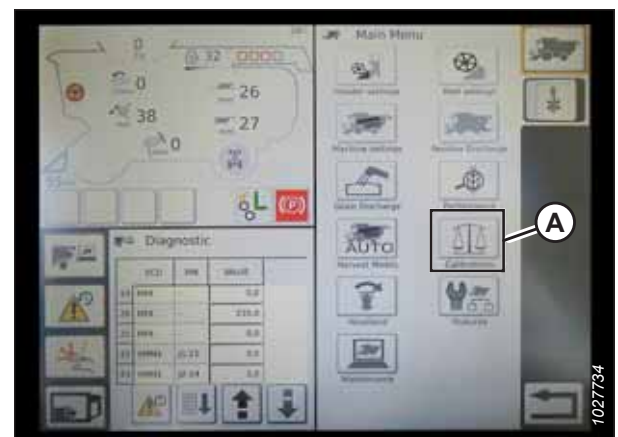


Figure 3.625: Direct Calibration Menu

Operating Header – IDEAL™ Series

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system has been configured on your IDEAL™ Series combine, the AHHC system can be controlled from the combine cab.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

The following are used to operate the auto header height control (AHHC) functions:

- Tyton terminal (A)
- Control handle (B)
- Throttle (C)
- Header control cluster (D)

Refer to the combine operator's manual to familiarize yourself with the combine's controls.



Figure 3.626: Operator Station

OPERATION

1. With the header running, set the lateral tilt to MANUAL by pressing switch (A). The light above the switch should be off.
2. Engage the AHHC by pressing switch (B). The light above the switch should be on.



Figure 3.627: Header Control Cluster

3. Press AHHC control switch (A) on the control handle to engage the AHHC. The header moves to the configured set point position.



Figure 3.628: AHHC on Control Handle

4. Use HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) as necessary to fine-tune the header position.



Figure 3.629: Header Control Cluster

Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – IDEAL™ Series

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) system is working correctly with your IDEAL™ Series combine, you can fine-tune these AHHC settings to your liking.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Touch HEADER icon (A) on the right side of the home page to view the following header group settings:
 - CURRENT POSITION of header (B).
 - SETPOINT cut-off position (C) (indicated by the red line)
 - HEADER symbol (D) – touch this to adjust the set point cut-off position using the adjustment wheel on the right side of the Tyton terminal.
 - CUT HEIGHT for AHHC (E) – fine-tune this setting with the header height set point control dial on the header control cluster.
 - HEADER WORKING WIDTH (F)
 - HEADER PITCH (G)

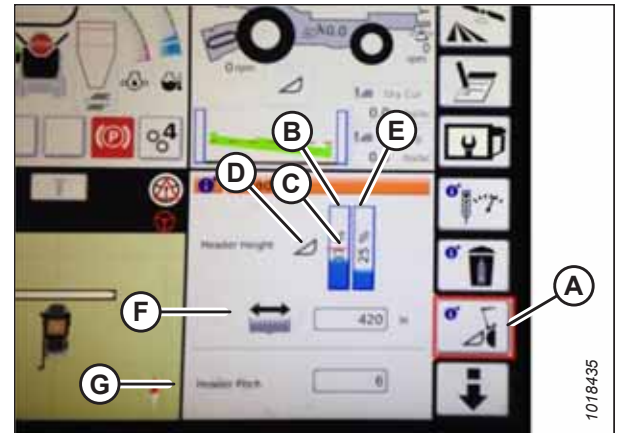


Figure 3.630: Header Groups

2. Touching a field opens the on-screen keyboard so that the values can be adjusted. Enter the new value and touch the green check mark.

NOTE:

Adjustment wheel (A) is located on the right of the Tyton terminal.



Figure 3.631: Adjustment Wheel on Right of Tyton Terminal

NOTE:

HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) is on the header control cluster.



Figure 3.632: Header Control Cluster

3.10.15 John Deere 70 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with John Deere 70 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere 70 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.

OPERATION

3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

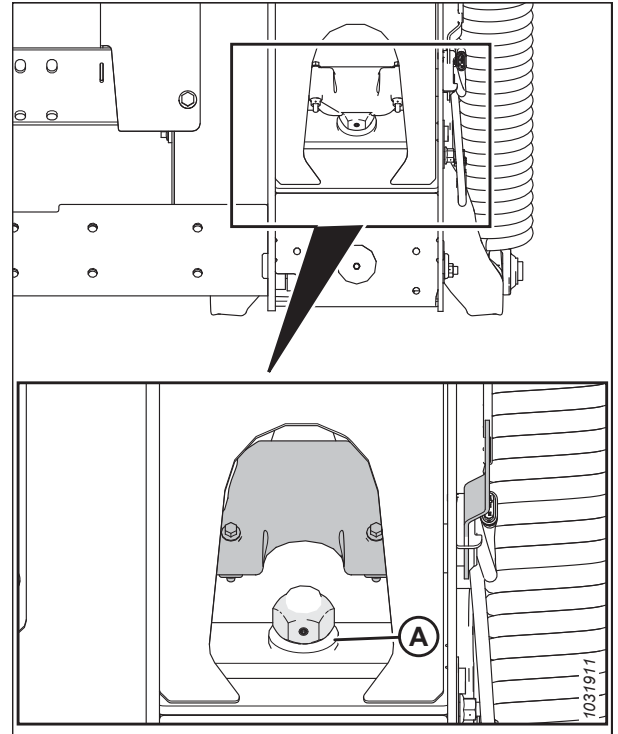


Figure 3.633: Float Lock

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).

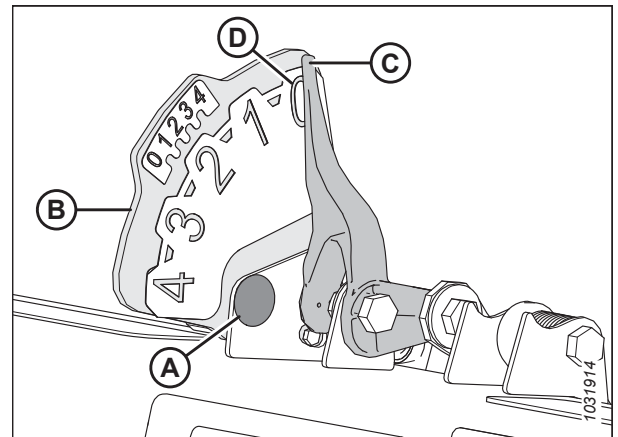


Figure 3.634: Float Indicator

OPERATION

6. Press HOME PAGE button (A) on the main page of the display.



Figure 3.635: John Deere Combine Display

7. Ensure three icons (A) shown in the illustration at right appear on the display.



Figure 3.636: John Deere Combine Display

8. Use scroll knob (A) to highlight the middle icon (the green i) and press check mark button (B) to select it. The Message Center appears.

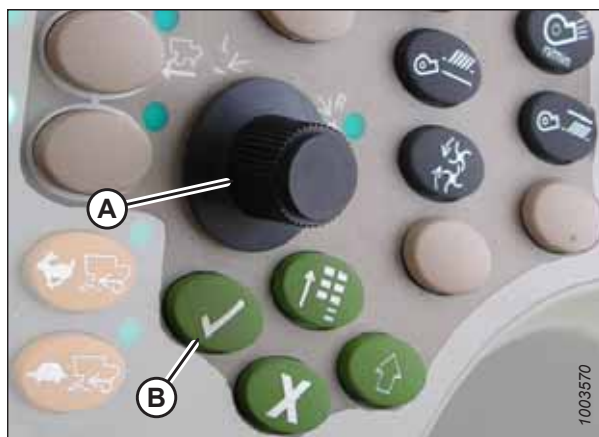


Figure 3.637: John Deere Combine Control Console

OPERATION

9. Use the scroll knob to highlight DIAGNOSTIC ADDRESSES (A) from the right column and select it by pressing the check mark button.
10. Use the scroll knob to highlight drop-down box (B) and press the check mark button to select it.



Figure 3.638: John Deere Combine Display

11. Use the scroll knob to highlight LC 1.001 VEHICLE (A) and press the check mark button to select it.



Figure 3.639: John Deere Combine Display

12. Use the scroll knob to highlight down arrow (A) and press the check mark button to scroll through the list until 029 DATA (B) is displayed and voltage reading (C) appears on the display.

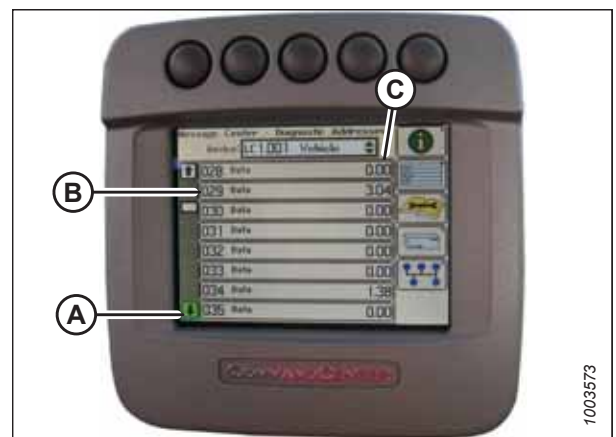


Figure 3.640: John Deere Combine Display

13. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
14. Start the combine and fully lower the feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

15. Check the sensor reading on the display.

OPERATION

16. Raise the header so it is just off the ground and recheck the sensor reading.

Calibrating Feeder House Speed – John Deere 70 Series

The feeder house speed must be calibrated before you calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

Adjusting Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere 70 Series

The weight of the header will dictate the rate at which the header can be raised or lowered during operation.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Press button (A) and the current raise/lower rate setting will appear on the display (the lower the reading, the slower the rate).
2. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the rate. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

NOTE:

If the display remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous page. Pressing check mark button (C) will also return the display to the previous page.

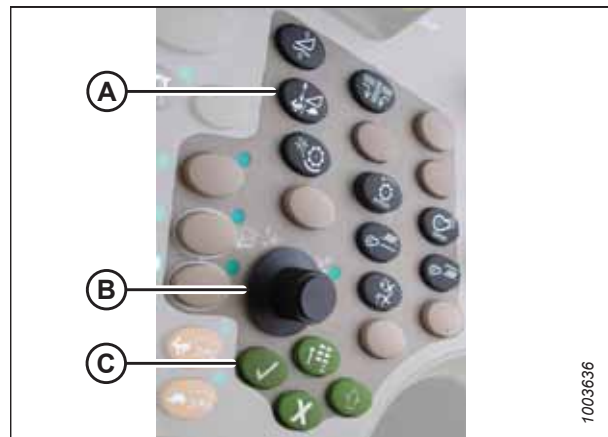


Figure 3.641: John Deere Combine Control Console

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.642: John Deere Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest the header on the down stops.
3. Put the wings in the locked position.
4. Unlock the float.
5. Start the combine.
6. Press the button located fourth from the left along the top of display (A) to select the icon that resembles an open book with a wrench on it (B).
7. Press top button (A) a second time to enter diagnostics and calibration mode.



Figure 3.643: John Deere Combine Display

8. Select HEADER in box (A) by scrolling down to the box using the scroll knob, and then pressing the check mark button (knob and button are shown in Figure 3.645, page 370).
9. Scroll down to the lower right icon that resembles an arrow in a diamond (B) and press the check mark button to select it.
10. Follow the steps listed on the page to perform the calibration.

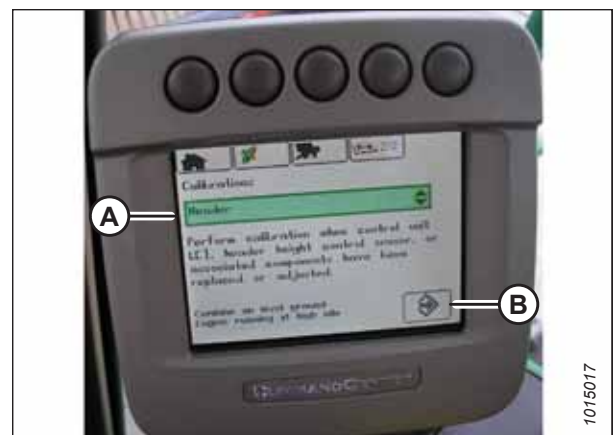


Figure 3.644: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

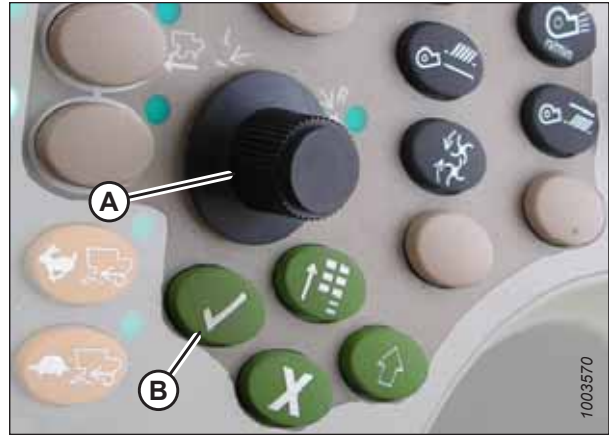


Figure 3.645: John Deere Combine Control Console

A - Scroll Knob

B - Check Mark Button

NOTE:

If an error code appears on the display, the sensor is not in the correct working range. Check and adjust the range. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series, page 371](#).

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – John Deere 70 Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Press button (A) twice. The current sensitivity setting will appear on the display (the lower the reading, the lower the sensitivity).
2. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the sensitivity setting. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

NOTE:

If the page remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous page. Pressing check mark button (C) also will return the display to the previous page.

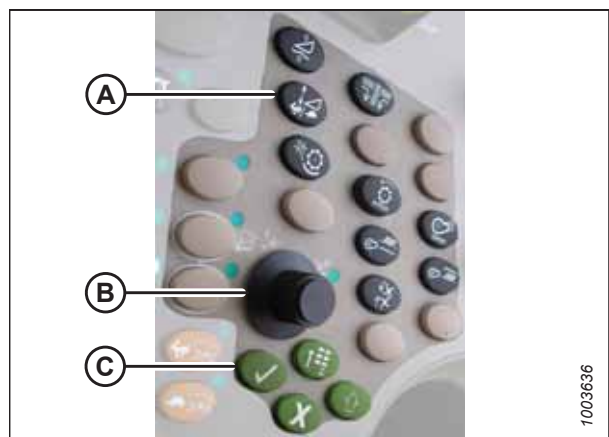


Figure 3.646: John Deere Combine Control Console

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.647: John Deere Combine Display

3.10.16 John Deere S and T Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with John Deere S and T series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.

OPERATION

3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

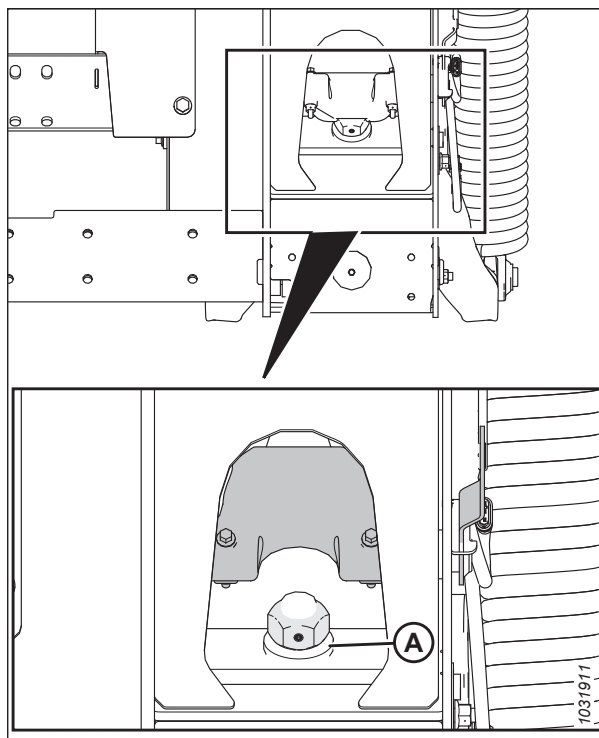


Figure 3.648: Float Lock

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).

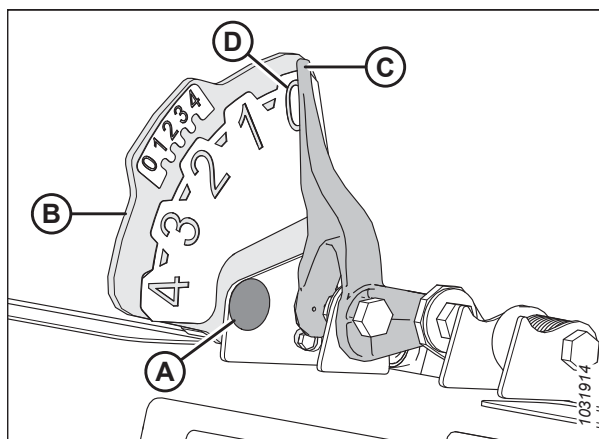


Figure 3.649: Float Indicator

OPERATION

6. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main page of the display. The CALIBRATION page appears.



Figure 3.650: John Deere Combine Display

7. Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION page. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS page appears. This page provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.

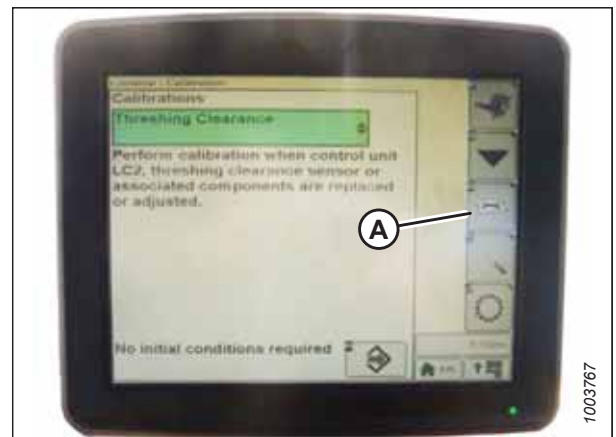


Figure 3.651: John Deere Combine Display

8. Select AHHC RESUME (A) and a list of calibration options appears.



Figure 3.652: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

9. Select the AHHC SENSING option.
10. Press icon (A). The AHHC SENSING menu appears and five pages of information appear.



Figure 3.653: John Deere Combine Display

11. Press icon (A) until it reads Page 5 near the top of the page and the following sensor readings appear:

- LEFT HEADER HEIGHT
- CENTER HEADER HEIGHT
- RIGHT HEADER HEIGHT

A reading is displayed for both the left and right sensors. On the MacDon header, there may be one sensor located in the float indicator box (standard) or two sensors located at the back of the float module side frame (optional).



Figure 3.654: John Deere Combine Display

12. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
13. Start the combine and fully lower the feeder house to the ground.

NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

14. Check the sensor reading on the display.

Adjusting Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere S and T Series

The rate at which the header can be raised or lowered using the combine controls can be changed from the height sensitivity screen in the combine command center.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Put the wings in the locked position.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

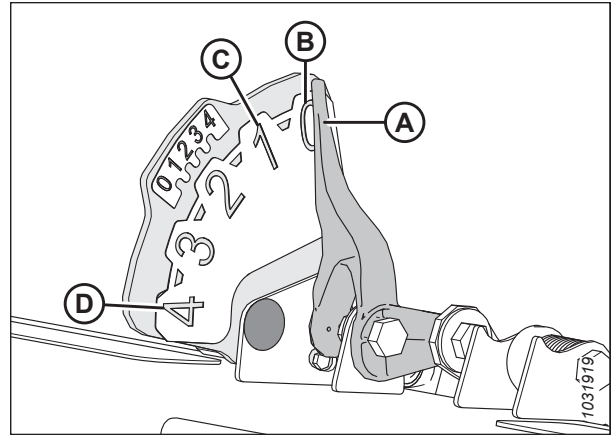


Figure 3.655: Float Indicator

2. Press button (A) and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the display.



Figure 3.656: John Deere Combine Command Center

3. Press – or + icons (A) to adjust the rates.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the combine display in this illustration are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

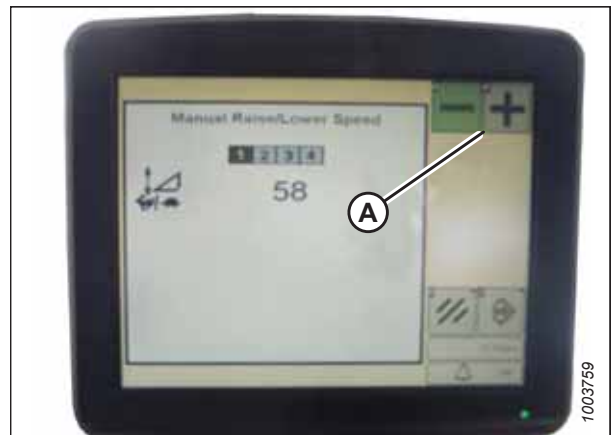


Figure 3.657: John Deere Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so header does not physically separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest the header on the down stops.
3. Unlock the float.
4. Put the wings in the locked position.
5. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main page of the display. The CALIBRATION page appears.

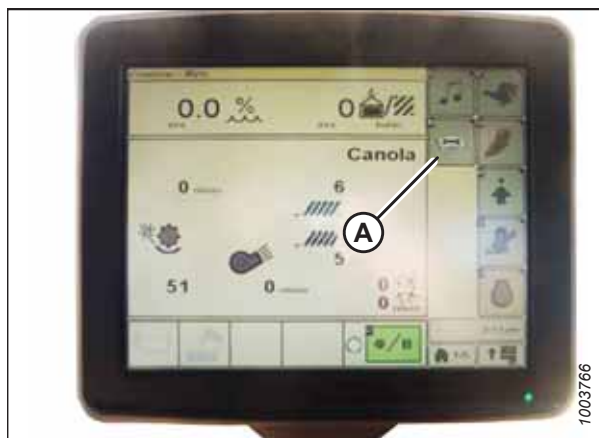


Figure 3.658: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

6. Select THRESHING CLEARANCE (A) and a list of calibration options appears.

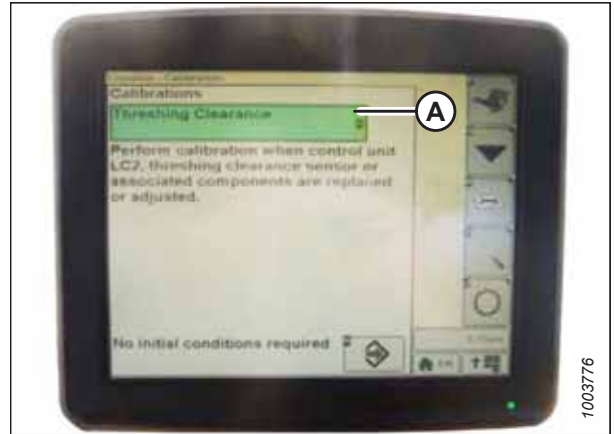


Figure 3.659: John Deere Combine Display

7. Select FEEDER HOUSE SPEED (A) from the list of calibration options.

NOTE:

Feeder house speed calibration must be done before header calibration.

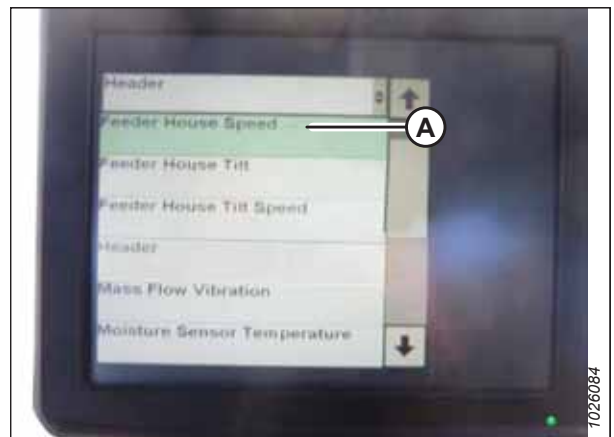


Figure 3.660: John Deere Combine Display

8. With FEEDER HOUSE SPEED selected, press icon (A). The icon turns green.



Figure 3.661: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

9. Press icon (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.



Figure 3.662: John Deere Combine Display

10. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.

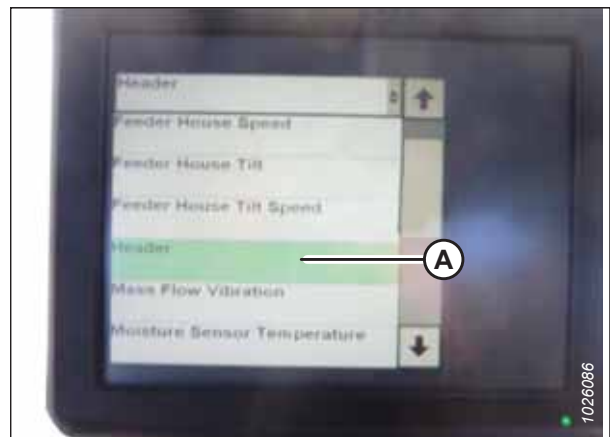


Figure 3.663: John Deere Combine Display

11. With HEADER selected, press icon (A). The icon turns green.

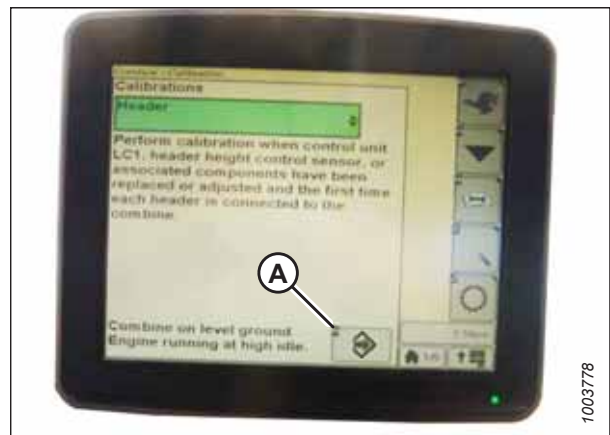


Figure 3.664: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

12. Press icon (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to *Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series*, page 371.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.665: John Deere Combine Display

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – John Deere S and T Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Press button (A) twice and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the display.



Figure 3.666: John Deere Combine Command Center

OPERATION

2. Press – or + icons (A) to adjust the rates.

NOTE:

The numbers shown on the combine display in this illustration are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.667: John Deere Combine Display

Setting Preset Cutting Height – John Deere S and T Series

The reel and cut height setting can be stored in the combine. When harvesting the setting can be selected from the control handle.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Ensure indicator (A) is at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

NOTE:

When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

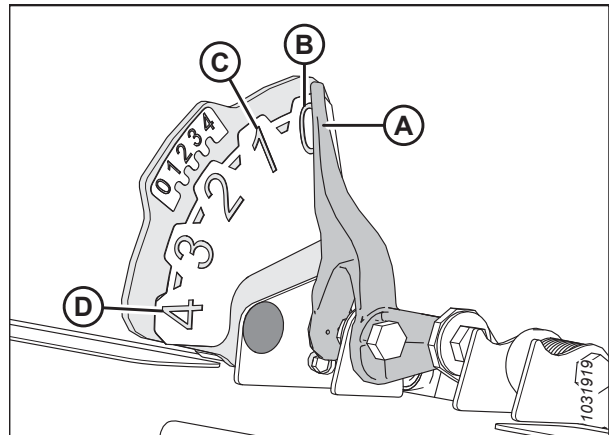


Figure 3.668: Float Indicator

OPERATION

2. Press COMBINE – HEADER SETUP icon (A) on the main page. The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP page appears. This page is used to set various header settings such as reel speed, header width, and height of feeder house for acre counter engagement.



Figure 3.669: Combine Display

3. Select COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC icon (A). The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC page appears.



Figure 3.670: Combine Display

4. Select AUTO HEIGHT SENSING (A), RETURN TO CUT (B), and REEL POSITION (C) icons.

NOTE:

If REEL POSITION icon (C) cannot be selected (no check mark), the reel height sensor requires calibration. For instructions, refer to [Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – John Deere S and T Series, page 388](#).

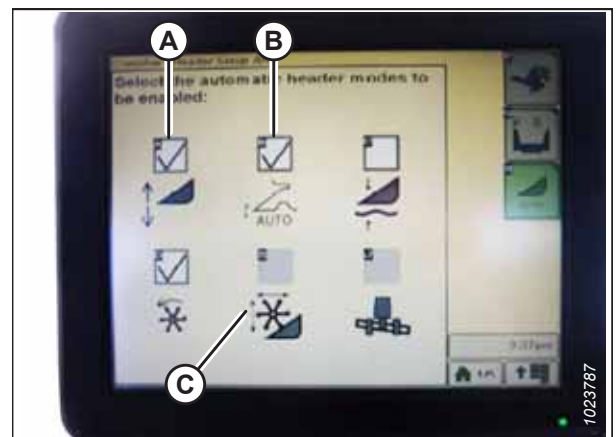


Figure 3.671: Combine Display

OPERATION

5. Engage the header.
6. Move the header to the desired position and use knob (A) to fine tune the position.
7. Move the reel to the desired position.



Figure 3.672: Combine Control Console

8. Press and hold preset switch 2 (B) until the reel height icon flashes on display.
9. Repeat the previous three steps for preset switch 3 (C).
10. Select an appropriate ground pressure setting. Use preset button 2 (B) on the control handle for a low ground pressure setting in muddy or soft soil conditions, and preset 3 (C) for a high ground pressure setting in firm soil conditions and a higher ground speed.

NOTE:

Preset button 1 (A) is reserved for header lift on the headland and is not used for cutting on the ground.



Figure 3.673: Control Handle Buttons

NOTE:

When the AHHC is engaged, AHHC icon (A) appears on the display and the number indicating which button was pressed (B) is shown on the page.

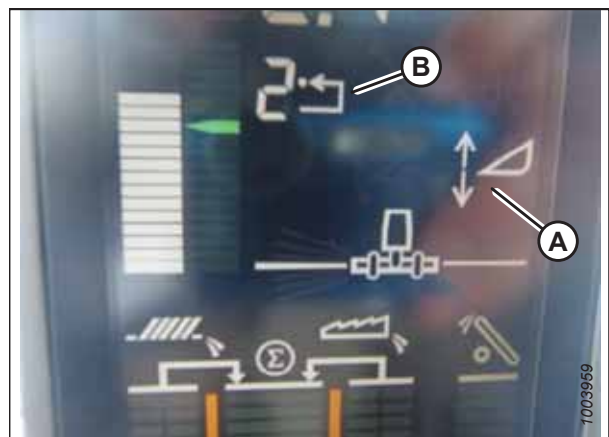


Figure 3.674: Combine Display

Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range – John Deere S and T Series

Follow this procedure to properly calibrate the combine feeder house fore-aft tilt range. This procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

OPERATION

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

The feeder house fore/aft tilt is controlled by buttons (C) and (D) at the back of the control handle.



Figure 3.675: John Deere Control Handle

NOTE:

The feeder house fore/aft tilt controls can be changed to work with buttons E and F by pressing control handle icon (A) and then selecting FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT from drop-down menu (B).

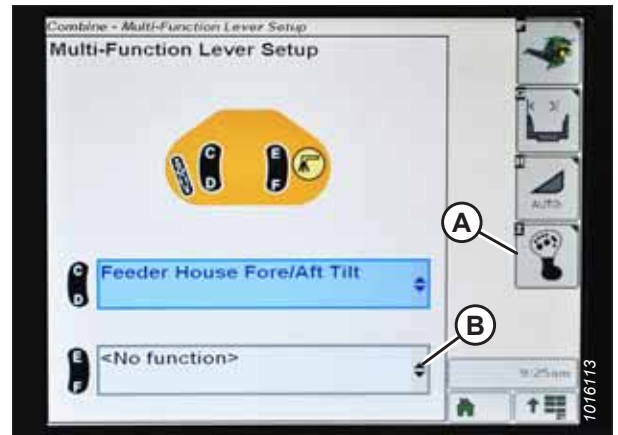


Figure 3.676: John Deere Combine Display

To calibrate the feeder house fore-aft tilt range, follow these steps:

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest the header on the down stops and unlock the float.

OPERATION

3. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main page of the display. The CALIBRATION page displays.



Figure 3.677: John Deere Combine Display

4. Select CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.

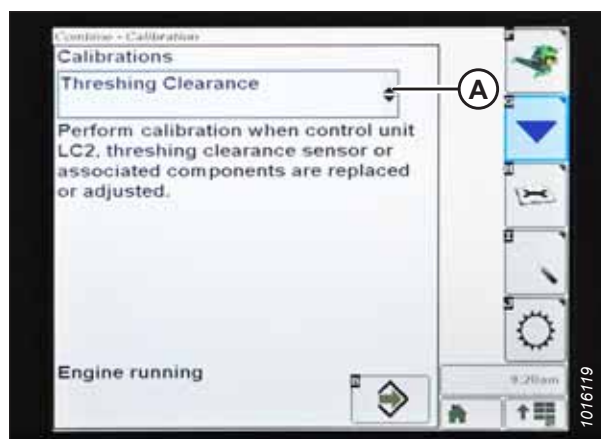


Figure 3.678: John Deere Combine Display

5. Press arrow (A) to cycle up through the calibration options and select FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT RANGE.

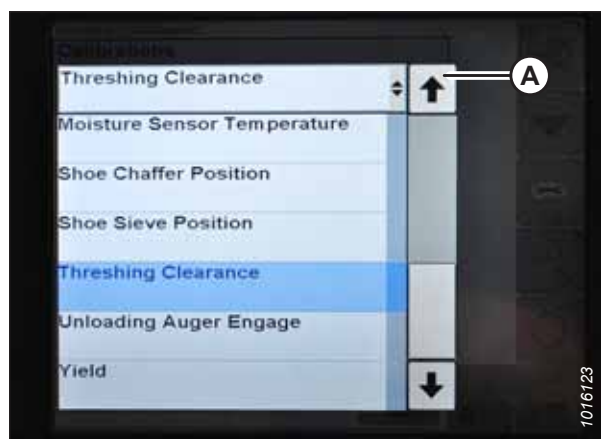


Figure 3.679: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

6. Press ENTER icon (A).

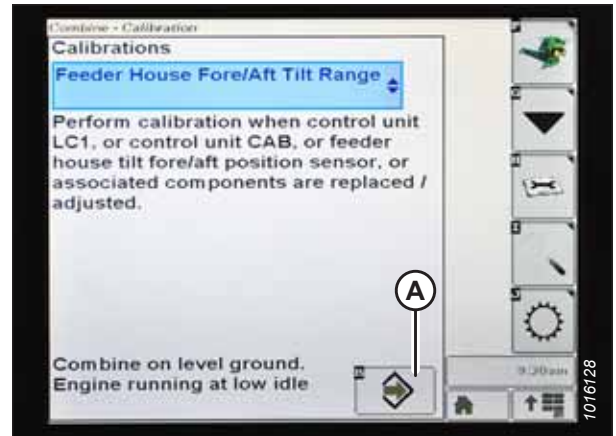


Figure 3.680: John Deere Combine Display

7. Follow the instructions that appear on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series, page 371](#).

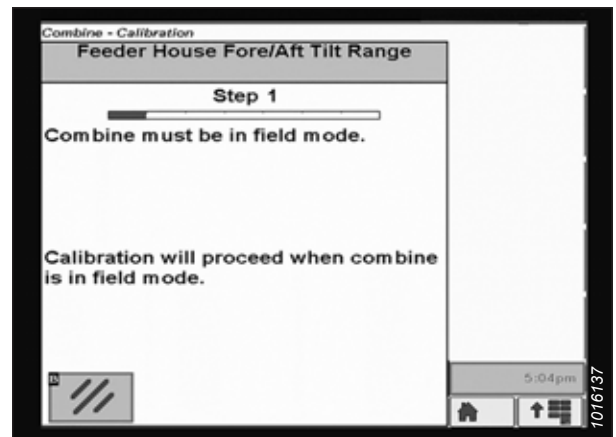


Figure 3.681: John Deere Combine Display

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series

Check the reel height sensor voltages to ensure they are within the prescribed range.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main page of the display. The CALIBRATION page appears.



Figure 3.682: John Deere Combine Display

2. Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION page. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS page appears. This page provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.

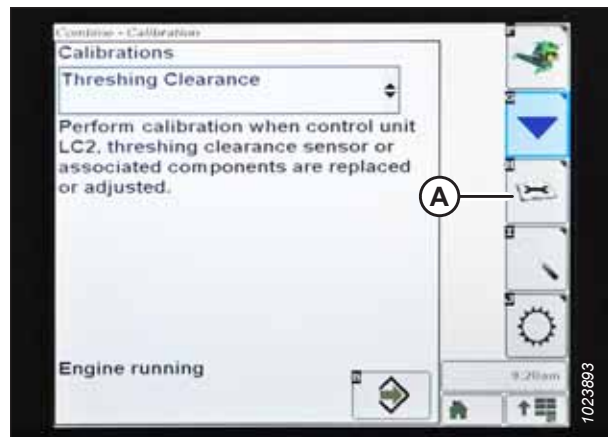


Figure 3.683: John Deere Combine Display

3. Select drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.

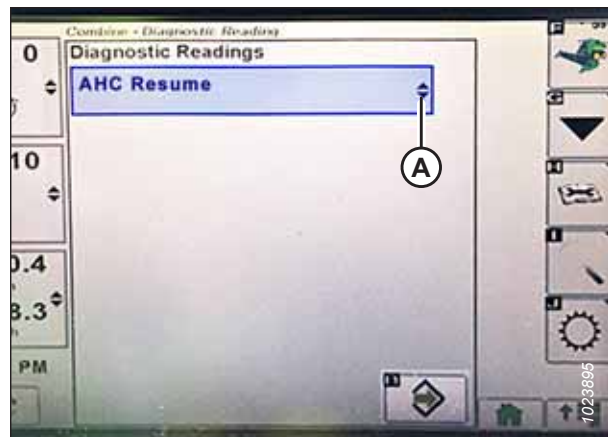


Figure 3.684: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

4. Scroll down and select REEL RESUME (A).

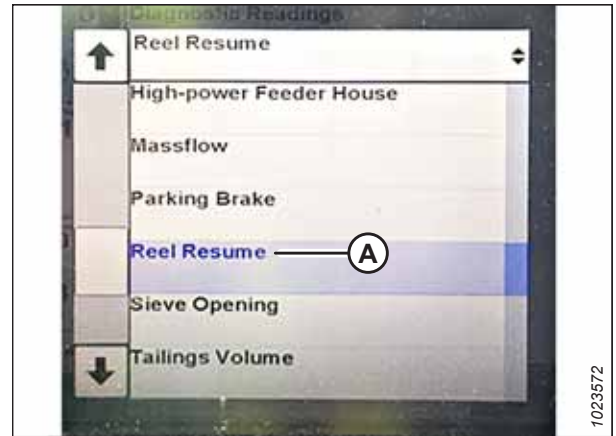


Figure 3.685: John Deere Combine Display

5. Press ENTER icon (A). The REEL RESUME page appears.

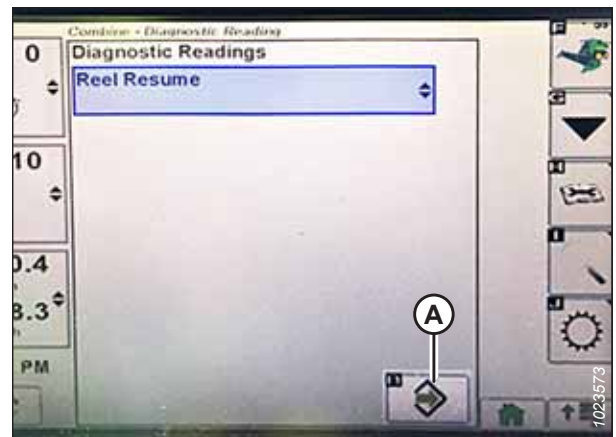


Figure 3.686: John Deere Combine Display

6. Press NEXT PAGE icon (A) to cycle to page 3.
7. Lower the reel to view lower voltage limit (B). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.

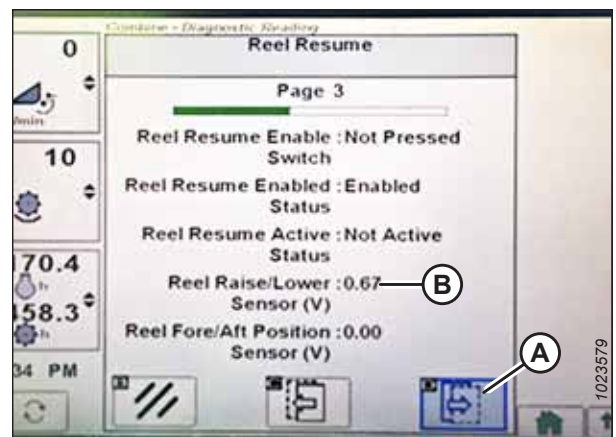


Figure 3.687: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

8. Raise the reel to view upper voltage limit (A). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
9. If either voltage is not within the correct range, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 213](#).

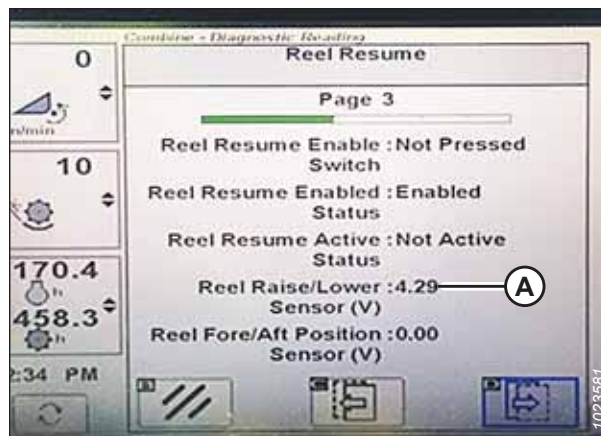


Figure 3.688: John Deere Combine Display

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – John Deere S and T Series

The auto header height control (AHH) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHH feature will not work properly. The following procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

2. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main page of the display. The CALIBRATION page is shown.



Figure 3.689: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

3. Select CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.
4. Scroll through the list of options and select REEL POSITION.
5. Press ENTER icon (B).

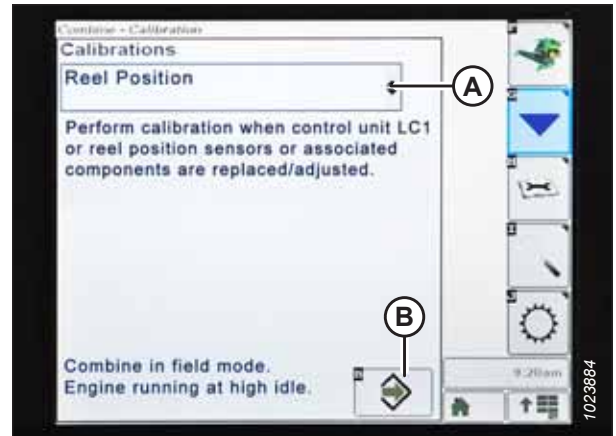


Figure 3.690: John Deere Combine Display

6. Follow the instructions that appear on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step. This calibration requires you to use reel raise (A) and reel lower (B) switches on the control handle.



Figure 3.691: John Deere Control Handle

7. Press and hold REEL LOWER switch until the reel is fully lowered. Continue holding REEL LOWER switch until prompted by the display.



Figure 3.692: John Deere Combine Display

OPERATION

8. Press and hold the REEL RAISE switch until the reel is fully raised. Continue holding the REEL RAISE switch until prompted by the display.

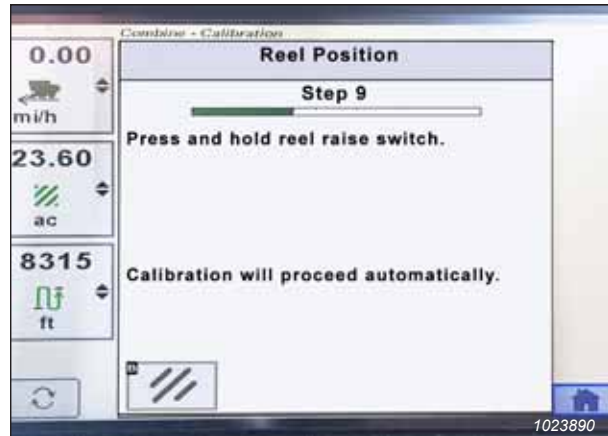


Figure 3.693: John Deere Combine Display

9. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETE message is displayed on the page. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing ENTER icon (A).

NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to [Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series, page 385](#).



Figure 3.694: John Deere Combine Display

3.10.17 John Deere S7 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with John Deere S7 series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Setting up Header – John Deere S7 Series

Set these initial configuration options on your combine when setting up the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Press header button (A) on the panel below the display. The HEADER page opens.



Figure 3.695: John Deere S7 Display

2. Select HEADER TYPE field (A). The HEADER DETAILS dialog box opens.



Figure 3.696: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

3. Verify correct header width is displayed under WIDTH.
4. To change header width, select field (A). The WIDTH dialog box opens.



Figure 3.697: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Window

OPERATION

5. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the correct header width, and then press OK.



Figure 3.698: John Deere S7 Display – Setting Header Width

6. Press close button (A) in the top right corner to return to the HEADER page.



Figure 3.699: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Dialog Box

7. Raise/lower speed (A), tilt speed (B), height sensitivity (C), and tilt sensitivity (D) can all be adjusted from this page. Select the option you would like to adjust. The following example shows the raise/lower speed adjustment.

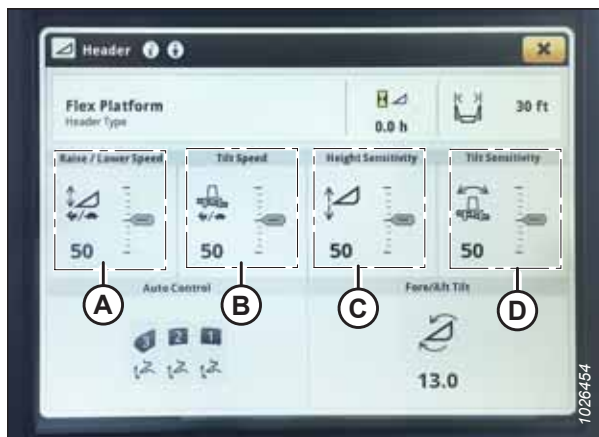


Figure 3.700: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

OPERATION

8. Use + and – buttons (A) to adjust the setting.
9. Press the close button in top right corner of the window to return to the HEADER page.

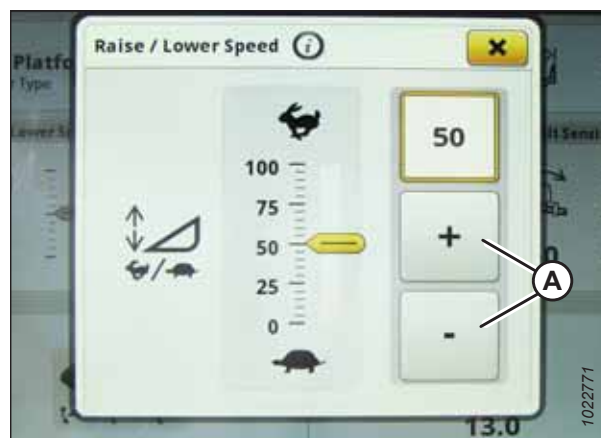


Figure 3.701: John Deere S7 Display – Raise/Lower Speed Adjustment

10. Select AUTO CONTROL icons (A). The AUTO HEADER CONTROLS page opens.

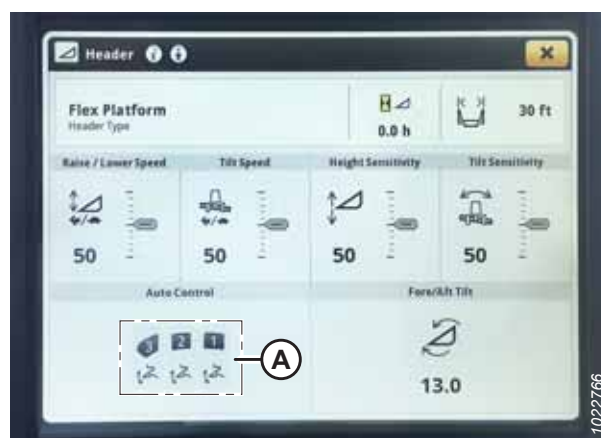


Figure 3.702: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

11. If the header has not been calibrated yet, an error icon will appear on HEIGHT SENSING button (A). Select button (A) to view the error message.



Figure 3.703: John Deere S7 Display – Auto Header Controls

OPERATION

12. Read the error message and then press OK.
13. Proceed to *Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series, page 394*.



Figure 3.704: John Deere S7 Display – Height Sensing Error Message

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series

The auto header height sensor output must be within a specific range, or the feature will not work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.

OPERATION

3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of auto header height control (AHHC) system.

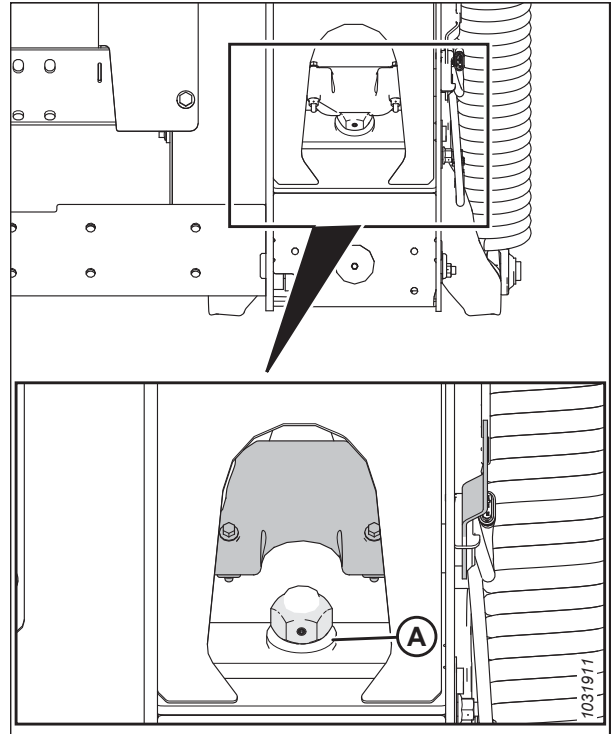


Figure 3.705: Float Lock

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).

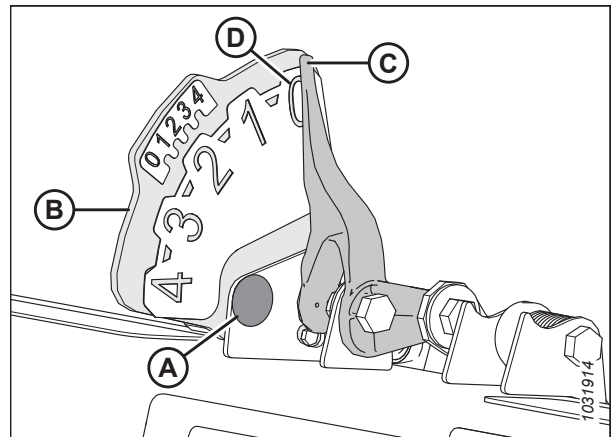


Figure 3.706: Float Indicator

OPERATION

6. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of the page.



Figure 3.707: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

7. On the MENU page, select SYSTEM tab (A). The MENU opens.
8. Select DIAGNOSTICS CENTER icon (B). The DIAGNOSTICS CENTER page opens.

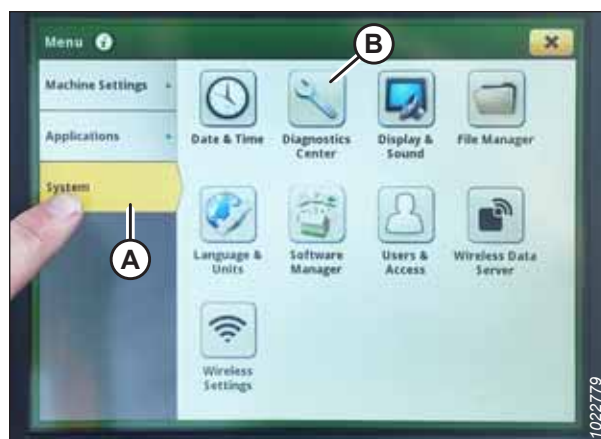


Figure 3.708: John Deere S7 Display – Menu

9. Select AHC - SENSING (A). The AHC - SENSING\DIAGNOSTICS page appears.

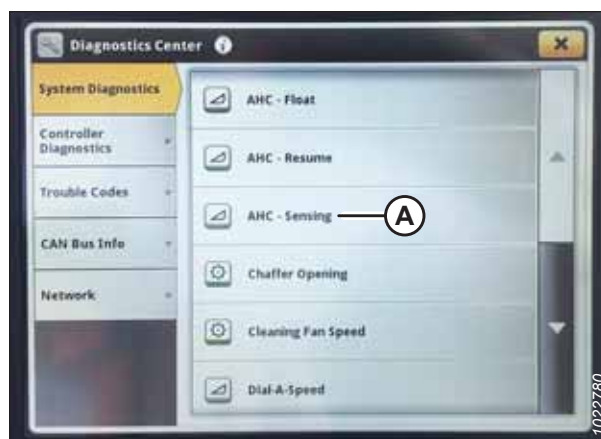


Figure 3.709: John Deere S7 Display – Diagnostics Center

OPERATION

10. Select SENSOR tab (A) to view the sensor voltages. Center header height sensor voltage (B) must be between 0.5 and 4.5 V, with at least 3 V of variation between 0 and 4 on the float indicator box.

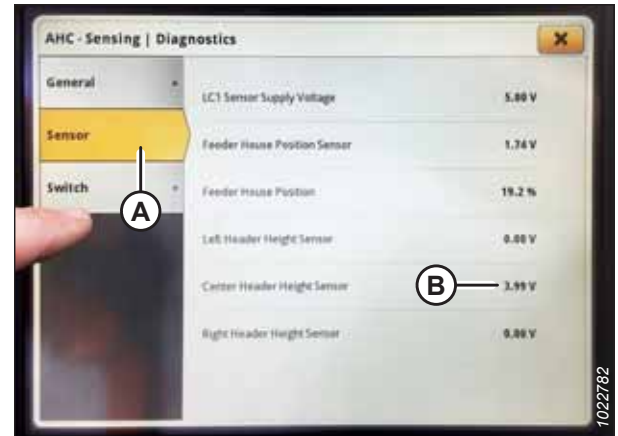


Figure 3.710: John Deere S7 Display – Checking Sensor Voltage

Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest the header on the down stops and unlock the float.
3. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of page. The MENU opens.



Figure 3.711: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

OPERATION

4. Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
5. Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page appears.



Figure 3.712: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

6. Select HEADER tab (A).
7. Select FEEDER HOUSE RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION (B). The FH RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION page appears.

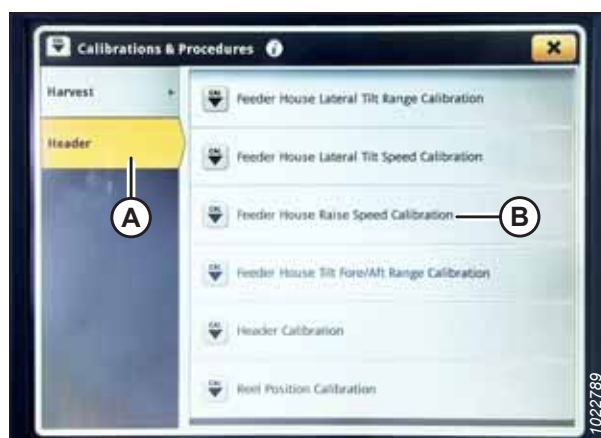


Figure 3.713: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

8. Select CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom of the page. A calibration overview appears.

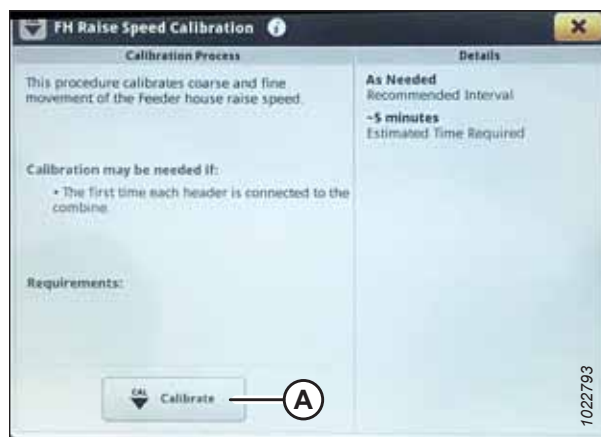


Figure 3.714: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

OPERATION

9. Read the calibration overview, and then press START.



Figure 3.715: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

10. Follow the instructions on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.



Figure 3.716: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

11. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm the calibration.



Figure 3.717: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

Calibrating Header – John Deere S7 Series

Before the auto header height control (AHHC) system can be used, it must be calibrated.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration. If feeder house has not yet been calibrated, refer to [Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series, page 397](#).

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest the header on the down stops and unlock the float module float.
3. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of screen. The MENU opens.



Figure 3.718: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

4. Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
5. Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page appears.



Figure 3.719: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

OPERATION

6. Select HEADER tab (A).
7. Select HEADER CALIBRATION (B). The HEADER CALIBRATION page appears.

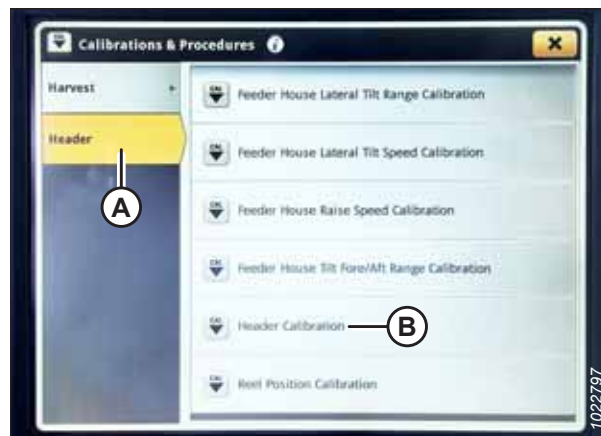


Figure 3.720: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

8. Select CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom of the page. The calibration overview window opens.

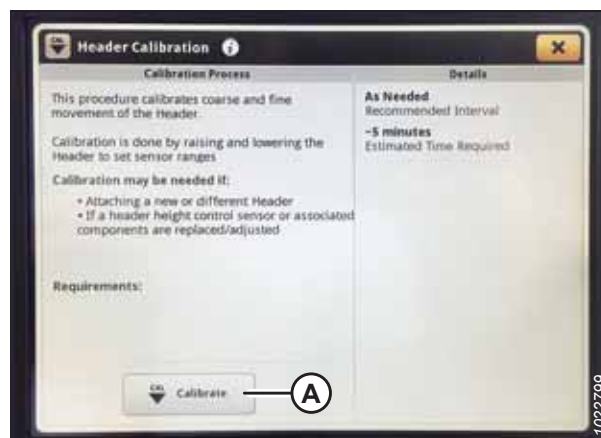


Figure 3.721: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

9. Press button (A) on the console to set the engine to high idle.



Figure 3.722: John Deere S7 Console

OPERATION

10. Select START on the CALIBRATION OVERVIEW page.
11. Follow the instructions that appear on the combine display. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.



Figure 3.723: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

12. When the calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm the calibration.



Figure 3.724: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

3.10.18 John Deere X9 Series Combines

To make your header's auto header height control (AHC) system compatible with John Deere X9 Series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the touch screen settings, set up the AHC controls, and calibrate the AHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

Setting up Header in CommandCenter™ Display– John Deere X9 Series

Set these initial configuration options on your combine when setting up the auto header height control (AHC) system.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display.
The Header page opens.



Figure 3.725: CommandCenter™ Display

3. Verify that the header controller is displaying the correct header type (A) and size (B).

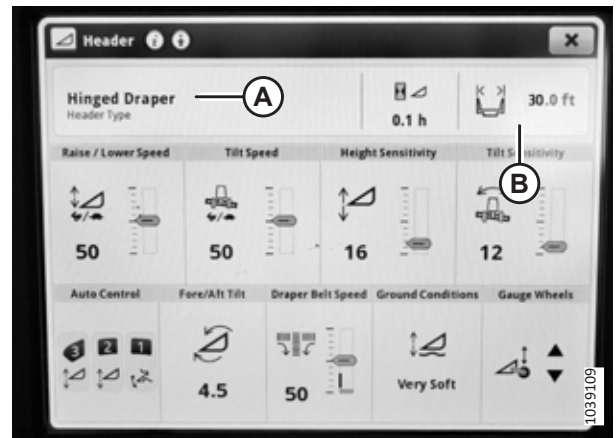


Figure 3.726: CommandCenter™ Display – Header Page

4. On the Header page, select AUTO CONTROL (A).

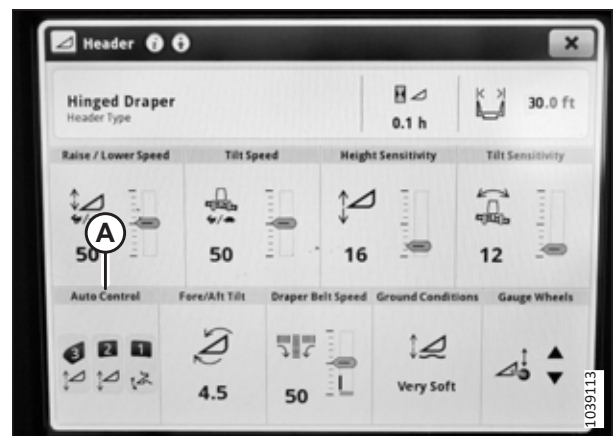


Figure 3.727: CommandCenter™ Display – Auto Header Controls Page

OPERATION

- On the Auto Header Controls page, verify that the following header Automation Options are set to ON:

- Height Resume
- Height Sensing
- Lateral Tilt

- On the Auto Header Controls page, verify that the following Resume Preferences are set to ON:

- Auto Reel Speed
- Fore/Aft Resume
- Reel Position Resume

NOTE:

Unlisted options should be set to OFF.

- On the Header page, select HEIGHT SENSITIVITY (A) and change it to 10.
- On the Header page, select TILT SENSITIVITY (B) and change it to 10.
- Press X (C) to exit the Header screen.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

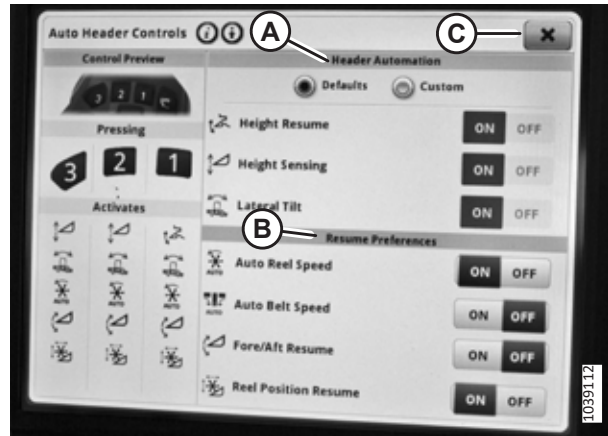


Figure 3.728: CommandCenter™ Display – Auto Header Controls Page



Figure 3.729: CommandCenter™ Display – Header Page

Calibrating Header – John Deere X9 Series

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

- Start the engine.
- Park the combine on a level surface.

OPERATION

- On the Harvesting page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of page. The MENU opens.



Figure 3.730: John Deere X9 Display – Harvesting Page

- Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
- Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The Calibrations & Procedures page appears.



Figure 3.731: John Deere X9 Display – Machine Settings

- Select HEADER tab (A).
- Select GAUGE WHEEL RANGE CALIBRATION (B). The Gauge Wheel Range Calibration page appears.
- Follow the instructions on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
- When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm the calibration.

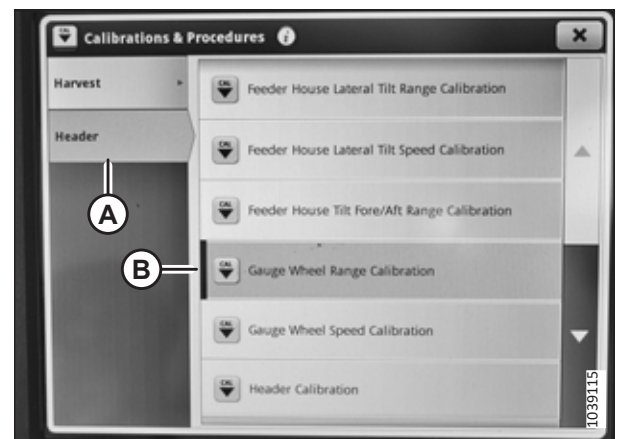


Figure 3.732: John Deere X9 Display – Gauge Wheel Range Calibration

OPERATION

10. Select HEADER CALIBRATION (A). The Header Calibration page appears.
11. Follow the instructions on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
12. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm the calibration.

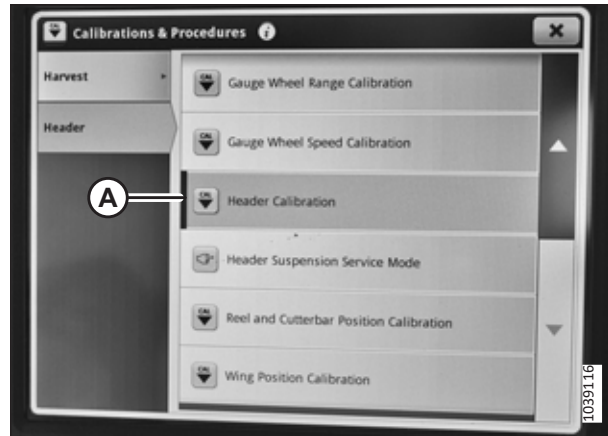


Figure 3.733: John Deere X9 Display – Header Calibration

13. Select REEL AND CUTTERBAR POSITION CALIBRATION (A). The Reel and Cutterbar Position page appears.
14. Follow the instructions on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
15. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm the calibration.
16. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the Calibration & Procedures screen.
17. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

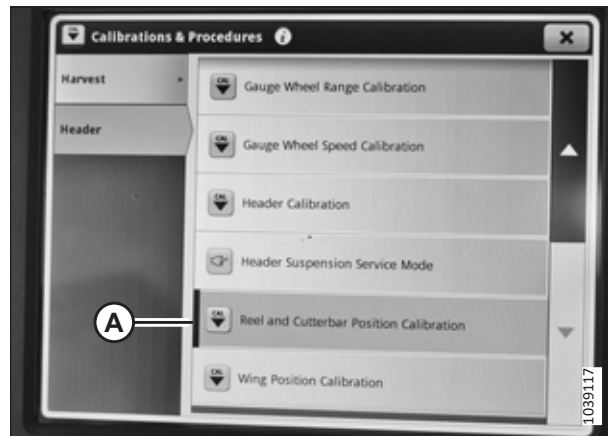


Figure 3.734: John Deere X9 Display – Reel and Cutterbar Position Calibration

Checking Sensor Voltages – John Deere X9 Series

Check sensor voltages to verify proper operation.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Start the engine.
2. On the Harvesting page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of page. The menu opens.



Figure 3.735: John Deere X9 Display – Harvesting Page

3. Select SYSTEM tab (A), and then DIAGNOSTICS CENTER (B).



Figure 3.736: John Deere X9 Display – System

4. Select CONTROLLERS tab (A).
5. Select HEADER/HITCH CONTROLLER (B).

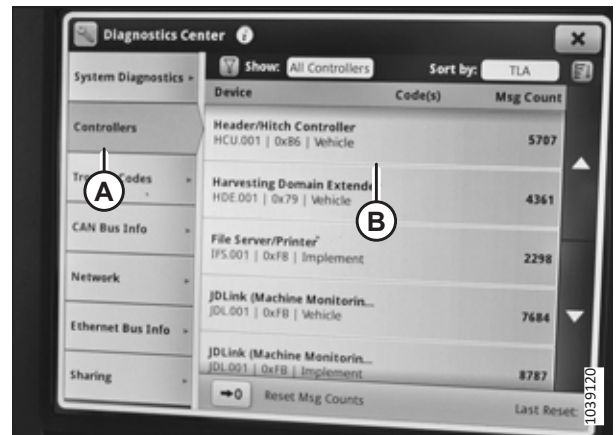


Figure 3.737: John Deere X9 Display – Diagnostics Center

OPERATION

6. Select READINGS (A). Scroll down the list of sensors and view the value shown. This is the current status of the sensors.
7. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the Header/Hitch Controller screen.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

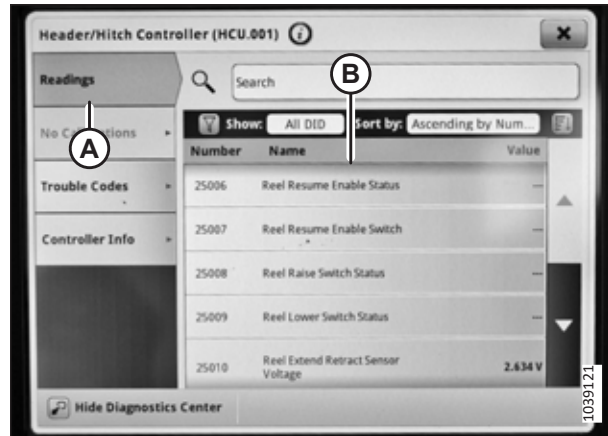


Figure 3.738: John Deere X9 Display – Header/Hitch Controller

Assigning Multi-Function Lever Buttons – John Deere X9 Series

The multi-function lever has buttons on it that can be customized.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display. The Header page opens.



Figure 3.739: CommandCenter™ Display

OPERATION

3. Press multi-function lock button (A) until the light turns off, and the controls setup screen appears.



Figure 3.740: John Deere X9 Display – Console

4. On multi-function lever (A), select a function button (A, B, C, or D) to program or modify.

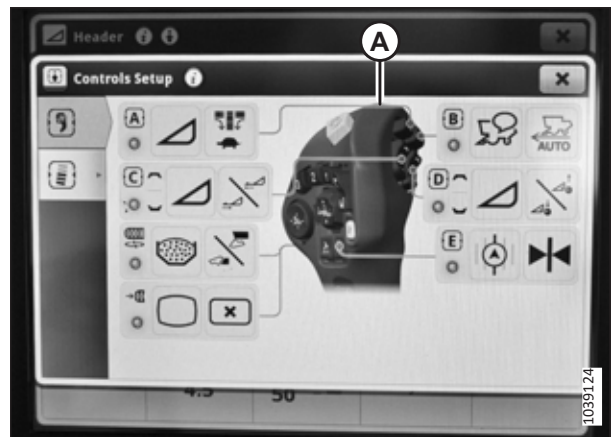


Figure 3.741: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

5. On Select Function window (A), press UP or DOWN arrows to find the desired function.
6. Select the function to assign it to the selected button.

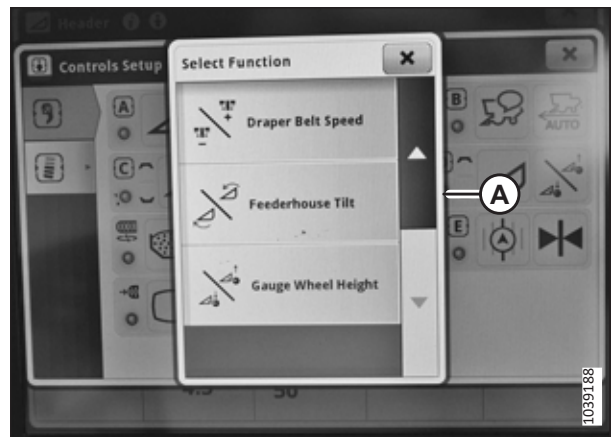


Figure 3.742: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

OPERATION

7. The function is now assigned to the button that was selected on multi-function handle (A).
8. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the Controls Setup screen.
9. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

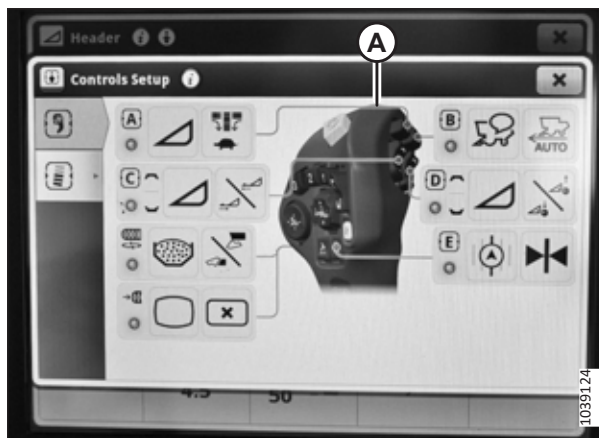


Figure 3.743: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

Assigning Console Buttons – John Deere X9 Series

The console has buttons on it that can be customized.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display. The Header page opens.



Figure 3.744: CommandCenter™ Display

OPERATION

3. Press CONSOLE LOCK button (A) until the light turns off, and the Controls Setup screen appears.



Figure 3.745: John Deere X9 Display – Console

4. Press the function button on console (A) that you want to program or modify.

NOTE:

Only button 2 is a rocker switch.

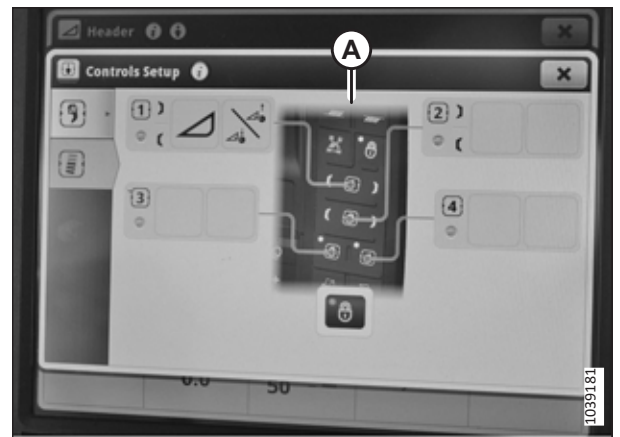


Figure 3.746: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

5. On Select Function window (A), press the UP or DOWN arrow to find the function.
6. Select the function to assign it to the selected button.

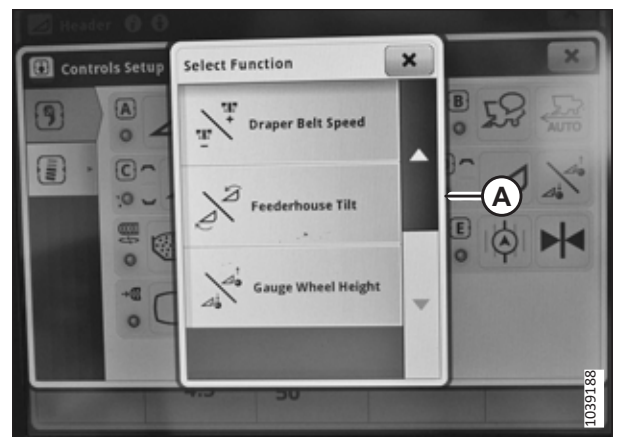


Figure 3.747: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

OPERATION

7. The function is now assigned to the button that was selected on console (A).
8. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the Controls Setup screen.
9. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

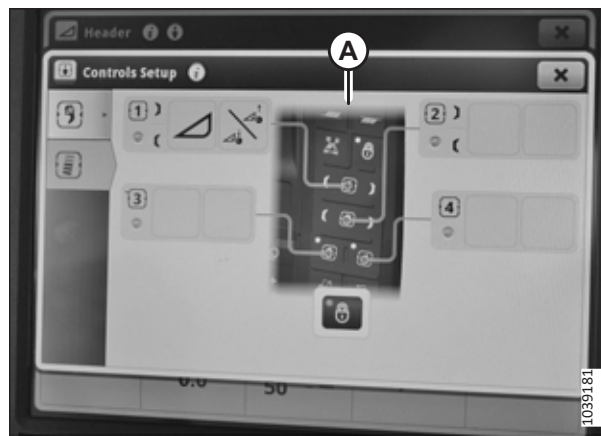


Figure 3.748: John Deere X9 Display – Controls Setup

Using Auto Header Height – John Deere X9 Series

The multi-function lever has three buttons used for auto header height controls.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display. The Header page opens.



Figure 3.749: CommandCenter™ Display

OPERATION

- On the Header page, select AUTO CONTROL (A).

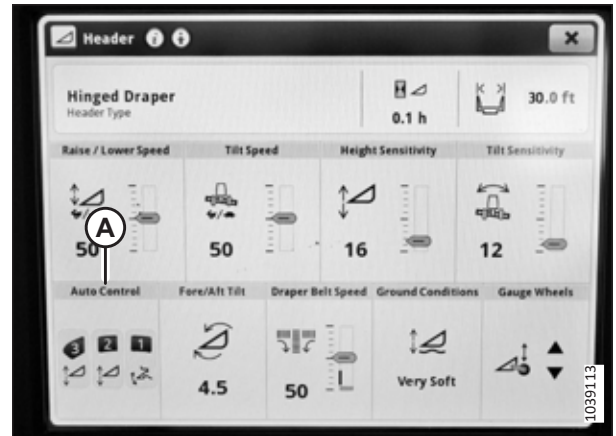


Figure 3.750: CommandCenter™ Display – Auto Header Controls Page

- On the Auto Header Controls Screen, locate CONTROL PREVIEW (A).

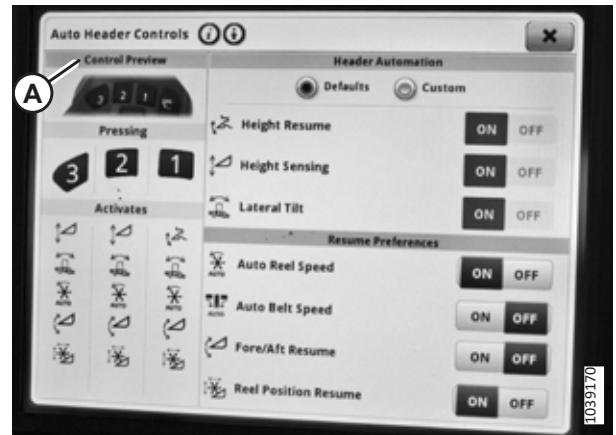


Figure 3.751: John Deere X9 Display – Auto Header Controls Screen

- When buttons 2 or 3 (A) on the multi-function lever are pressed, the system automatically moves the header to the preset setting. The preset setting can be set by the Operator.

NOTE:

Beneath each button is a list of functions that the button will operate.

NOTE:

Button 1 is used for the RETURN TO HEIGHT function.



Figure 3.752: John Deere X9 – Multi-Function Lever

OPERATION

6. To set reel position, press button 2 or 3 (B) on the multi-function lever.
7. Press button (A) to adjust reel fore-aft and/or reel height position. Once the adjustment is complete, hold the button for 3 seconds to save the setting. This will become the preset reel setting for button 2 or 3.

NOTE:

Buttons 2 and 3 can have different settings.



Figure 3.753: John Deere X9 – Multi-Function Lever

Cutting off Ground – John Deere X9 Series

The ContourMax™ allows the header to cut off the ground.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display. The Header page opens.



Figure 3.754: CommandCenter™ Display

OPERATION

- On the Header page, select GAUGE WHEELS (A).

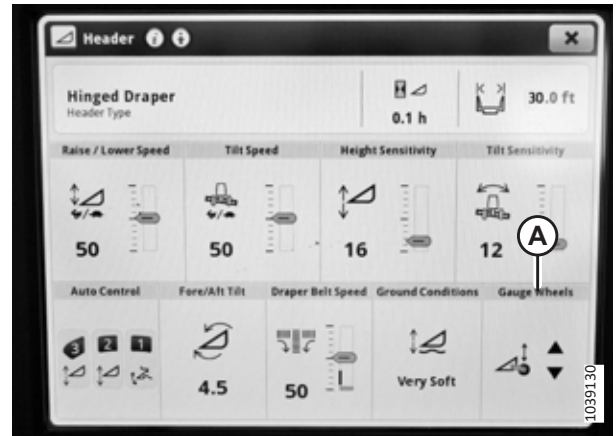


Figure 3.755: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

- Adjust the height on the display or use dial (A) on the console. Once an adjusted, the setting is automatically saved to multi-function lever button 2 or 3.



Figure 3.756: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

- On the Header page, locate GROUND CONDITIONS (A).

NOTE:

This setting can only be changed when height sensing mode is enabled.

- Choose one of the following header ground pressure settings:

- Very Firm (1 on the float indicator)
- Firm (1.5 on the float indicator)
- Typical (2 on the float indicator)
- Soft (2.5 on the float indicator)
- Very Soft (3 on the float indicator)

NOTE:

The firmer the setting the more ground pressure is applied.

NOTE:

This setting is automatically saved to button 2 or 3 on the multi-function handle, depending on which one is selected. The selected button is displayed on the corner display post.

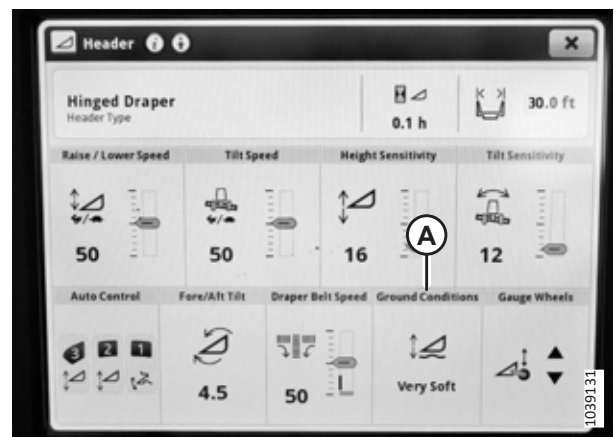


Figure 3.757: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

OPERATION

Cutting on Ground – John Deere X9 Series

The header follows the countour of the ground when cutting on the ground.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press HEADER button (A) on the panel below the display. The Header page opens.



Figure 3.758: CommandCenter™ Display

3. On the Header page, select GAUGE WHEELS (A).

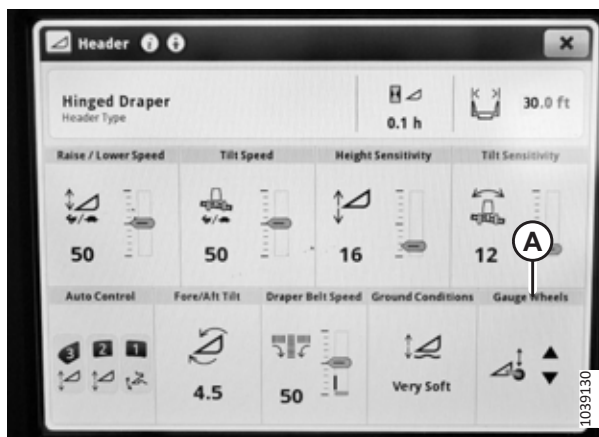


Figure 3.759: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

OPERATION

4. Fully retract the wheels using the height adjustment on the display or use dial (A) on the console. Once adjusted, the setting is automatically saved to the active multi-function lever button (2 or 3).
5. Engage the header.



Figure 3.760: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

6. On the Header page, locate GROUND CONDITIONS (A).

NOTE:

This setting can only be changed when height sensing mode is enabled.

7. Choose one of the following header ground pressure settings:

- Very Firm (1 on the float indicator)
- Firm (1.5 on the float indicator)
- Typical (2 on the float indicator)
- Soft (2.5 on the float indicator)
- Very Soft (3 on the float indicator)

NOTE:

The firmer the setting the more ground pressure is applied.

NOTE:

This setting is automatically saved to the multi-function handle button (2 or 3) depending on which one is selected. The active button selected is shown on the corner display post.

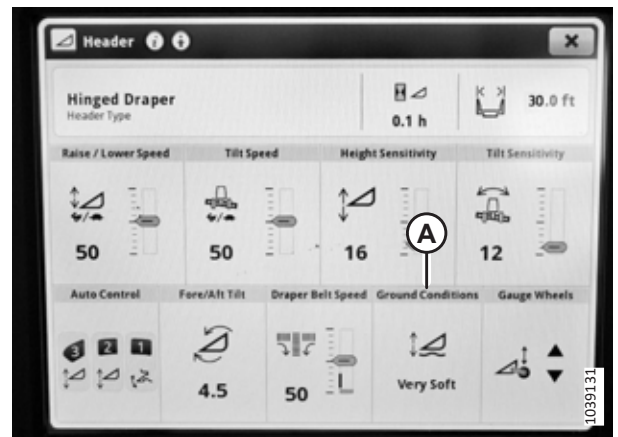


Figure 3.761: John Deere X9 Display – Header Page

Checking Error Codes on Header Controller – John Deere X9 Series

Follow this procedure to check for any error codes on the header controller.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. Start the engine.
2. On the Harvesting page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of page. The menu opens.



Figure 3.762: John Deere X9 Display – Harvesting Page

3. Select SYSTEM tab (A), and then DIAGNOSTICS CENTER (B).



Figure 3.763: John Deere X9 Display – System

4. Select CONTROLLERS tab (A).
5. Select HEADER/HITCH CONTROLLER (B).

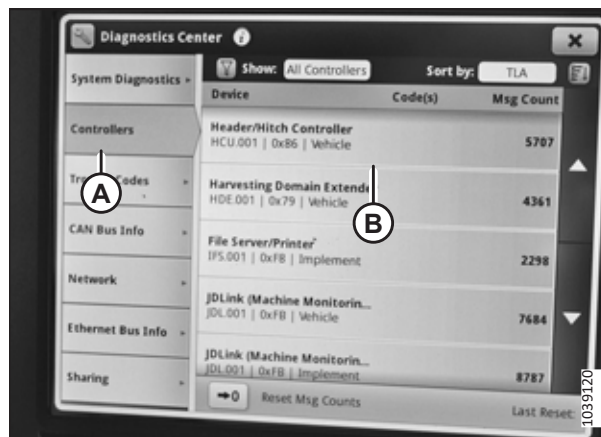


Figure 3.764: John Deere X9 Display – Diagnostics Center

OPERATION

6. Select TROUBLE CODES (A). Trouble codes will be displayed on right side (B) of the display.
7. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the HEADER/HITCH CONTROLLER SCREEN.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

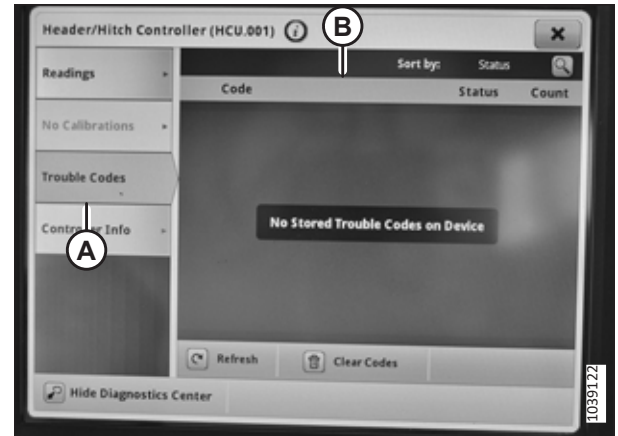


Figure 3.765: John Deere X9 Display – Header/Hitch Controller

Checking Software Version on Header Controller – John Deere X9 Series

Follow this procedure to check the software version on the header controller.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Start the engine.
2. On the Harvesting page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of page. The menu opens.



Figure 3.766: John Deere X9 Display – Harvesting Page

OPERATION

3. Select SYSTEM tab (A), and then DIAGNOSTICS CENTER (B).



Figure 3.767: John Deere X9 Display – System

4. Select CONTROLLERS tab (A).
5. Select HEADER/HITCH CONTROLLER (B).

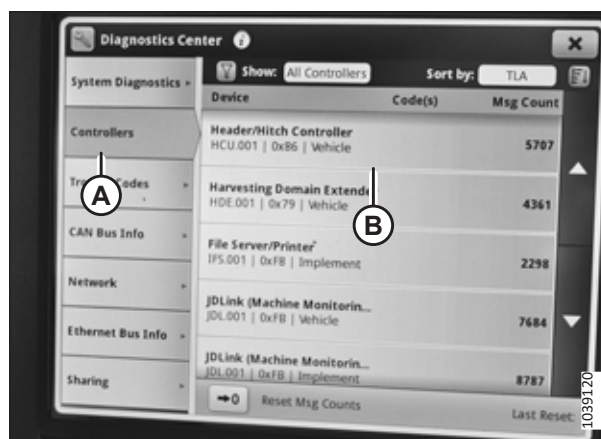


Figure 3.768: John Deere X9 Display – Diagnostics Center

6. Select CONTROLLER INFO (A). Locate SOFTWARE MAIN COMPONENT (B) for the software version.
7. Press the X in the top right corner to exit the HEADER/HITCH CONTROLLER SCREEN.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

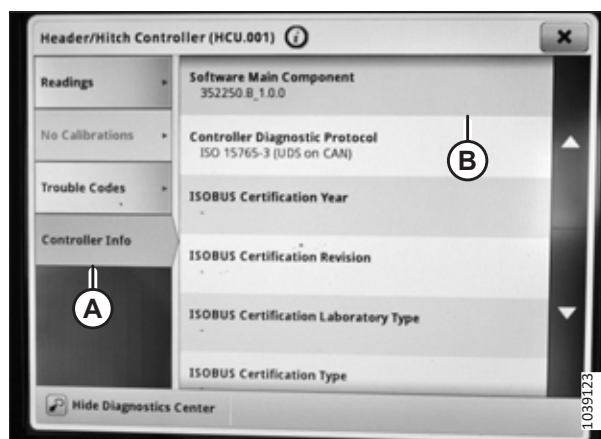


Figure 3.769: John Deere X9 Display – Header/Hitch Controller

3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior

To make your header's auto header height control (AHHC) system compatible with New Holland CR/CX Series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHHC controls, and calibrate the AHHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

This section applies only to pre-2015 CR/CX models.

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – New Holland CR/CX Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.
3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

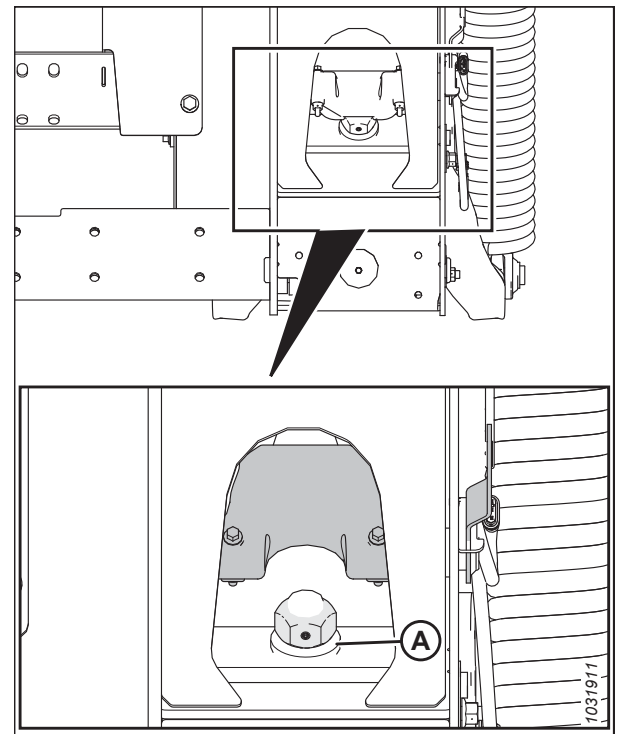


Figure 3.770: Float Lock

OPERATION

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).

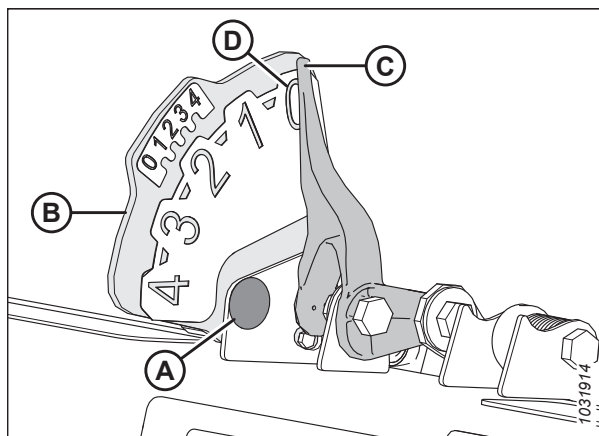


Figure 3.771: Float Indicator

6. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
7. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main page. The DIAGNOSTICS page appears.
8. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS page appears.

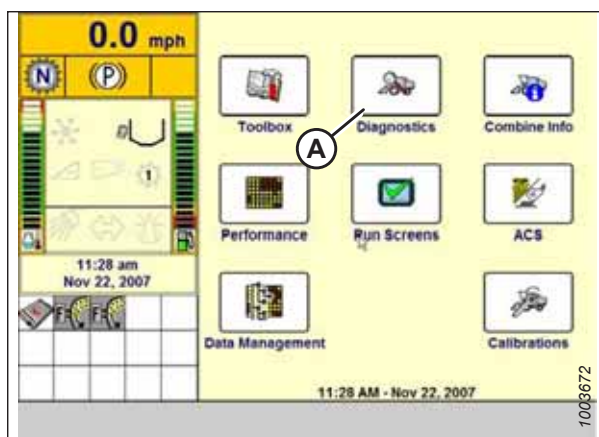


Figure 3.772: New Holland Combine Display

9. Select GROUP drop-down menu (A). The GROUP dialog box appears.

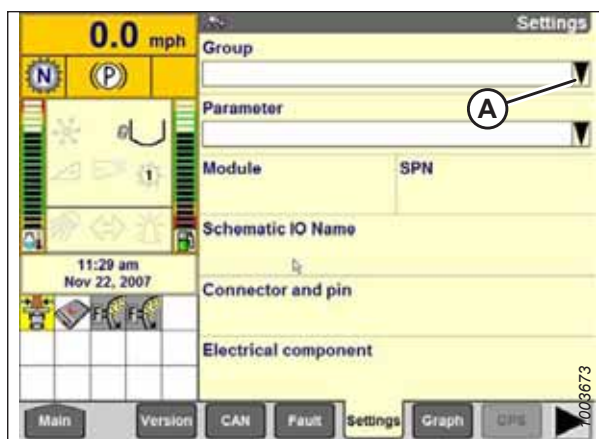


Figure 3.773: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

10. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER page appears.

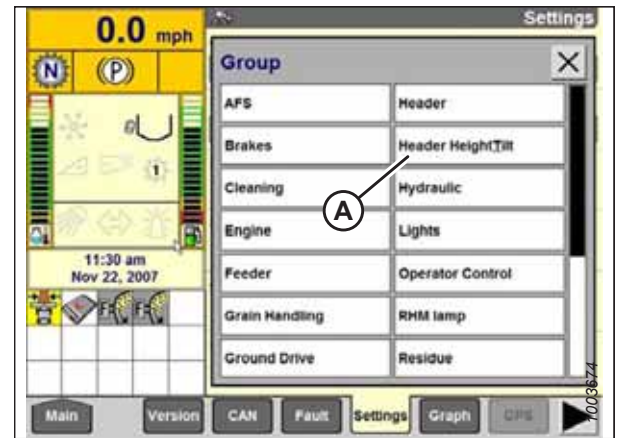


Figure 3.774: New Holland Combine Display

11. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage appears at the top of the page.
12. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

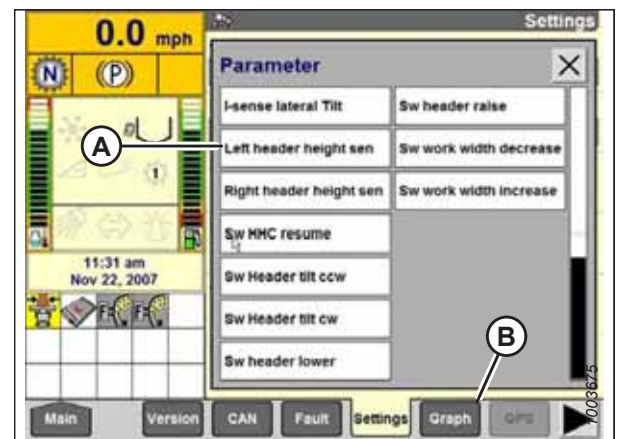


Figure 3.775: New Holland Combine Display

Header Settings Quick Reference – New Holland CR Series

Use the information in the following table to quickly reference the recommended settings for a FD2 Series FlexDraper® header..

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

For detailed instructions, proceed to the New Holland CR series combine header setup and calibration procedures.

Table 3.40 Header Settings – New Holland CR Series

Setup Parameter	Suggested Setting
Cutting type	Platform
Header sub type	80/90
Autofloat	Installed
Auto header lift	Installed
Manual HHC raise/lower rate	Set for best performance
HHC height sensitivity	Set for best performance
HHC tilt sensitivity	Set for best performance
Reel height sensor	Yes

OPERATION

Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series

Auto header height control (AHHC) is set up using the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

1. Select HEADER LATERAL FLOAT on the combine display, and press ENTER.
2. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.



Figure 3.776: New Holland Combine Display

3. Select HEADER AUTOFLOAT, and press ENTER.
4. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.



Figure 3.777: New Holland Combine Display

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to **D**.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the Header Height Controller (HHC) module.
- The header/feeder is disengaged.
- The lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- The ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:

1. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display, and press the RIGHT ARROW navigation key to enter the information box.
2. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

NOTE:

You can use the up and down navigation keys to move between the options.

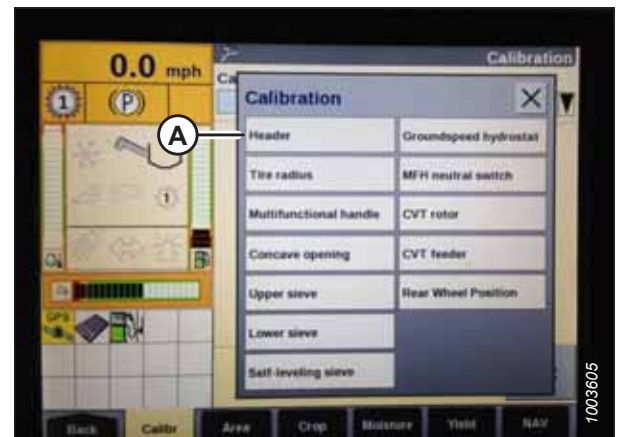


Figure 3.778: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

- Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 3.779: New Holland Combine Display

- When all steps have been completed, a CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message will appear on the screen. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

- If the unit does not function properly, conduct the maximum stubble height calibration. For instructions, refer to [Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height – New Holland CR/CX Series, page 426](#).

Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height – New Holland CR/CX Series

This procedure details how to set the height at which the harvest area counter will start and stop counting harvested area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

IMPORTANT:

- If the value is set too low, the area counter may **NOT** be accurate since the header is sometimes raised above this threshold although the combine is still cutting.
- If the value is set too high, the area counter will keep counting even when the header is raised (but below this threshold) and the combine is no longer cutting crop.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

OPERATION

1. Select the MAXIMUM STUBBLE HEIGHT calibration dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

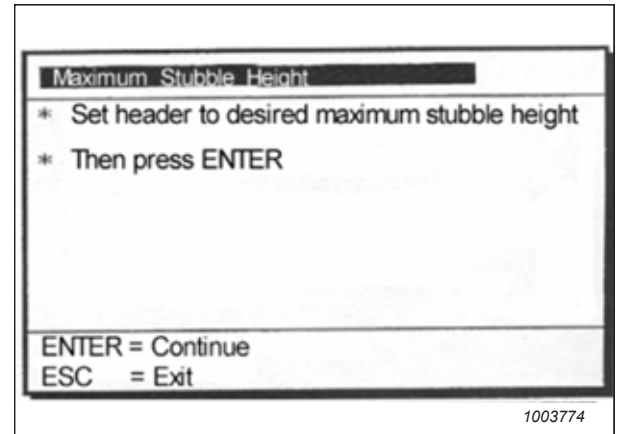


Figure 3.780: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

2. Move the header to the desired maximum stubble height using the header up or down control switch on the multifunction handle.

NOTE:

Set the header to a height which will never be attained while harvesting. This will ensure that the harvest area counter never stops recording harvesting data while the auto header height control (AHC) system is active.

3. Press ENTER to continue. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
4. Press ENTER or ESC to close the calibration screen. The calibration is now complete.

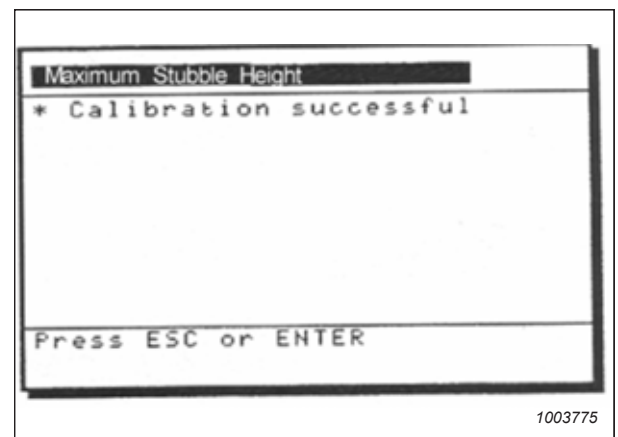


Figure 3.781: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

Adjusting Header Raise Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series

If necessary, the header raise rate (the first speed on the HEADER HEIGHT rocker switch of the multifunctional handle) can be adjusted.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

OPERATION

1. Select HEADER RAISE RATE on the combine display.
2. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting.
3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

NOTE:

The raise rate can be changed from 32–236 in increments of 34. The factory setting is 100.

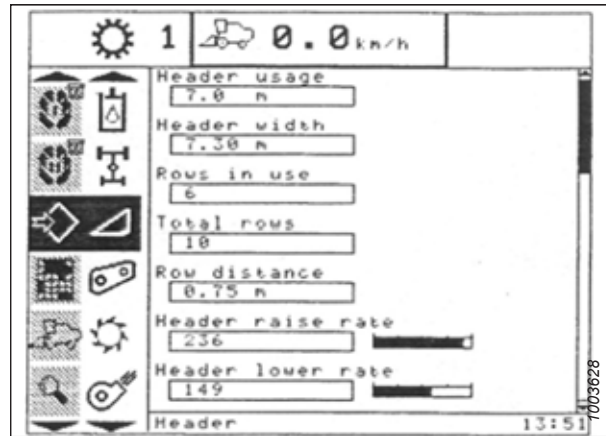


Figure 3.782: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Header Lower Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series

If necessary, the header lower rate (the automatic header height control button or second speed on the header height rocker switch of the multifunction handle) can be adjusted.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

1. Select HEADER LOWER RATE on the combine display.
2. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting to 50.
3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

NOTE:

The header lower rate can be changed from 2–247 in increments of 7. It is factory-set to 100.

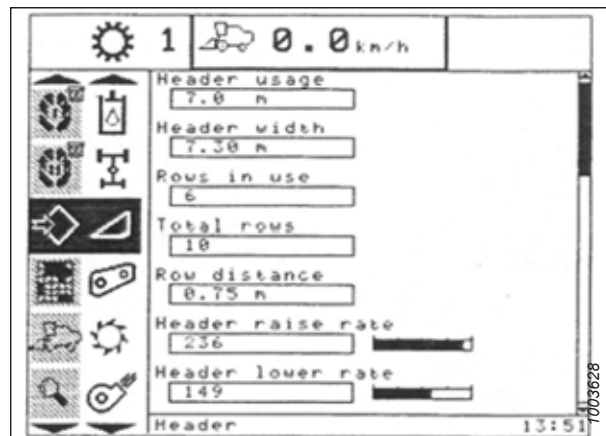


Figure 3.783: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Auto Header Height Control Sensitivity – New Holland CR/CX Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHH) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Engage the threshing mechanism and the feeder house.
2. Select HEIGHT SENSITIVITY on the combine display.
3. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting to 200.
4. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

NOTE:

The sensitivity can be changed from 10–250 in increments of 10. It is factory-set to 100.

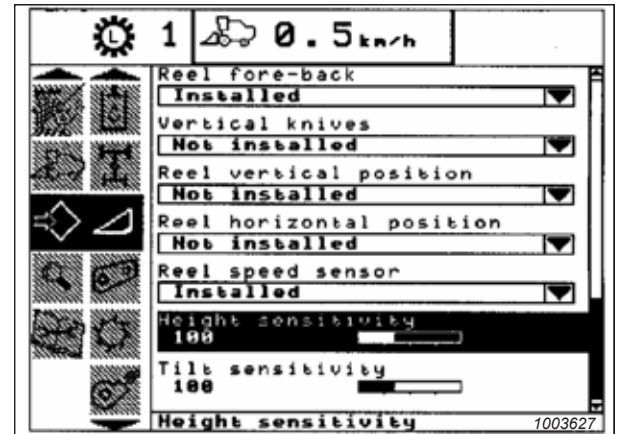


Figure 3.784: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR/CX Series

The cut height setting can be stored in the combine. When harvesting the setting can be selected from the control handle.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 430](#).

NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

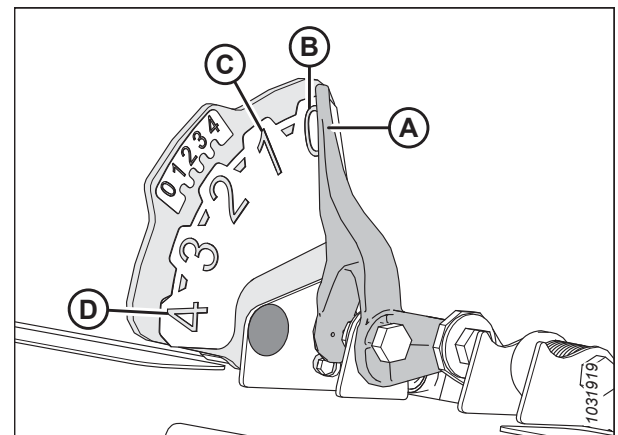


Figure 3.785: Float Indicator

OPERATION

1. Engage the threshing mechanism and the feeder house with switches (A) and (B).
2. Set HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).
3. Raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height using HEADER HEIGHT and HEADER LATERAL FLOAT momentary switch (C).
4. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the height position. A beep confirms the setting.

NOTE:

It is possible to store two different header height values by using HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).

5. Raise or lower the reel to the desired working height using REEL HEIGHT momentary switch (E).
6. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the height position. A beep confirms the setting.
7. To change one of the memorized header height set points while the combine is in use, use HEADER HEIGHT AND HEADER LATERAL FLOAT rocker switch (A) (slow up/down) to raise or lower header to the desired value. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (B) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the new height position. A beep confirms setting.

NOTE:

Fully pressing AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (B) will disengage float mode.

NOTE:

It is not necessary to press rocker switch (C) again after changing header height set point.

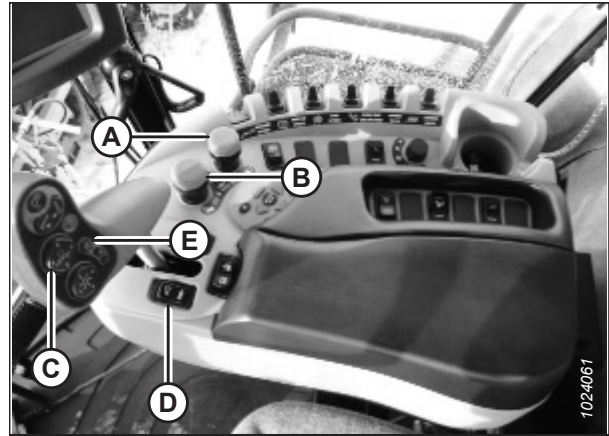


Figure 3.786: New Holland Combine Controls

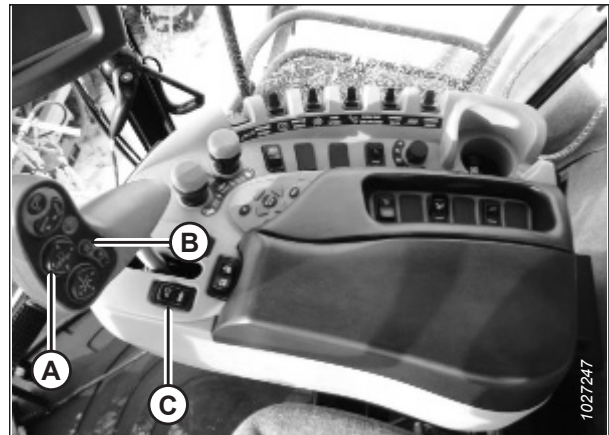


Figure 3.787: New Holland Combine Controls

3.10.20 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later

To make your header's auto header height control (AHC) system compatible with model year 2015 and newer New Holland CR Series combines, you must set your combine's header configuration options for the particular model of header, configure the reel speed settings, set up the AHC controls, and calibrate the AHC system to ensure that it is working correctly.

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90).

Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – New Holland CR Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor needs to operate in a specific voltage range in order to work properly.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 421](#).



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground.
2. Unlock the float.
3. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

NOTE:

If the header is not on the down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on the down stops, refer to [3.11 Leveling Header, page 449](#) for instructions.

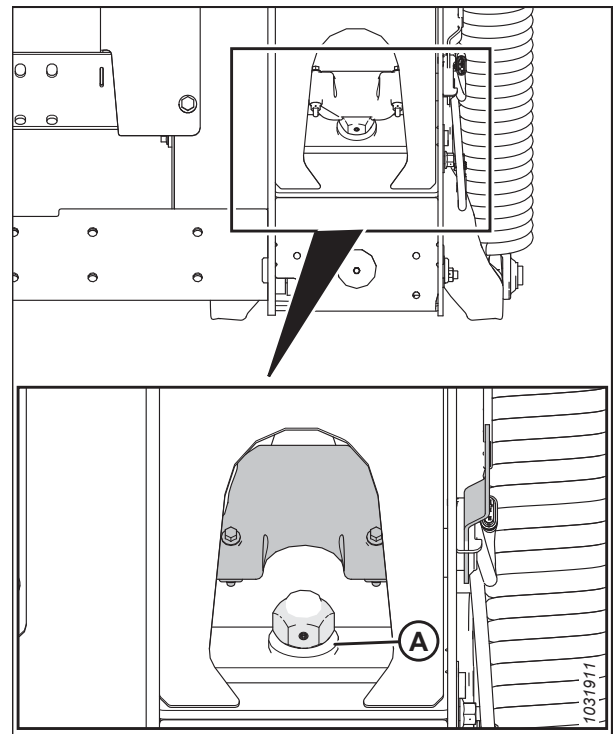


Figure 3.788: Float Lock

OPERATION

4. If the pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
5. Tighten bolt (A).
6. Ensure the header float is unlocked.

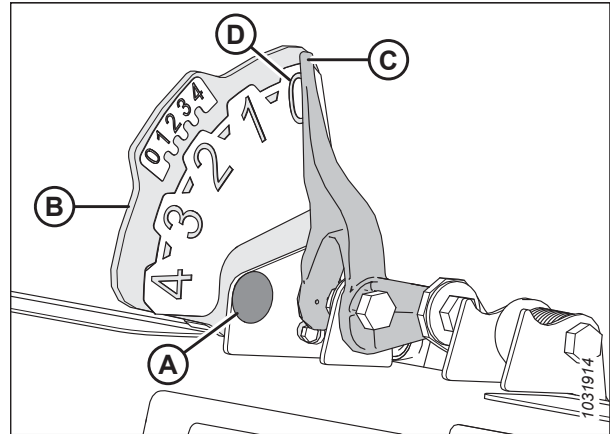


Figure 3.789: Float Indicator

7. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main page. The DIAGNOSTICS page appears.



Figure 3.790: New Holland Combine Display

8. Select SETTINGS (A). The SETTINGS page appears.



Figure 3.791: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

9. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A) from the GROUP drop-down menu.
10. Select HEADER HEIGHT SENS. L (B) from the PARAMETER drop-down menu.



Figure 3.792: New Holland Combine Display

11. Select GRAPH (A). The exact voltage (B) is displayed at the top of the page.
12. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

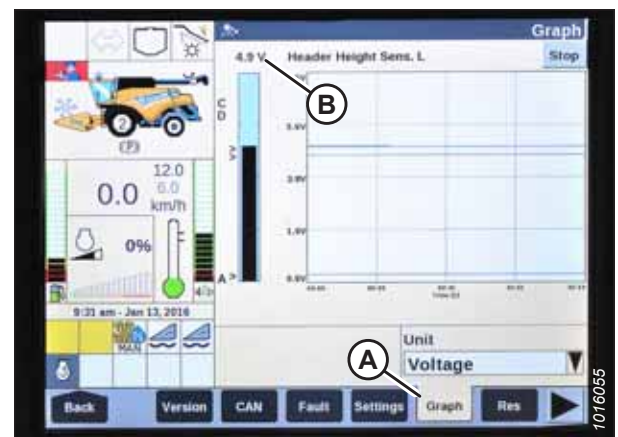


Figure 3.793: New Holland Combine Display

Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series

Auto header height control (AHHC) is set up using the combine display and control handle.

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 421](#).

1. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
2. Shut down the engine.
3. Turn the key to the run position.

OPERATION

4. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main page. The TOOLBOX page appears.



Figure 3.794: New Holland Combine Display

5. Simultaneously press UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.

NOTE:

Software in some New Holland combines may not allow you to change the header from FLEX to PLATFORM or the header type from DEFAULT to 80/90 at the main menu. This is now a dealer setting. If you need to change the dealer setting, contact your MacDon Dealer.



Figure 3.795: New Holland Combine Controls

6. Select HEAD 1 (A). The HEADER SETUP 1 page displays.
7. Select CUTTING TYPE drop-down arrow (B) and change the CUTTING TYPE to PLATFORM (C).



Figure 3.796: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

8. Select HEADER SUB TYPE drop-down arrow, and set HEADER SUB TYPE to 80/90 (A).



Figure 3.797: New Holland Combine Display

9. Select HEAD 2 (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 page displays.



Figure 3.798: New Holland Combine Display

10. Select the AUTOFLOAT drop-down menu and set AUTOFLOAT to INSTALLED (A).
11. Select the AUTO HEADER LIFT drop-down menu and set AUTO HEADER LIFT to INSTALLED (B).

NOTE:

With AUTO HEADER LIFT installed and AHHC engaged, the header will lift up automatically when you pull back on the control handle.

12. Set the values for MANUAL HHC RAISE RATE (C) and MANUAL HHC LOWER RATE (D) for best performance according to ground conditions.



Figure 3.799: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

- Set the values for HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY (A) and HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) for best performance according to ground conditions.



Figure 3.800: New Holland Combine Display

- From REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu (A), select YES.



Figure 3.801: New Holland Combine Display

Setting up Reel Speed – New Holland CR Series

You must record the reel diameter and reel displacement into the combine software before operating the reel speed.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90).

- Shut down the engine.
- Turn the key to the run position.
- Make sure the combine display software is updated to these versions or later:
 - Model year 2015–2018: UCM v38.10.0.0
 - Model year 2019: UCM v1.4.0.0

OPERATION

4. Ensure the center-link is set to **D**.
5. Select **TOOLBOX (A)** on the main page. The **TOOLBOX** page appears.



Figure 3.802: New Holland Combine Display

6. Access dealer mode by simultaneously pressing **UNLOAD (A)** and **RESUME (B)** buttons on the control handle for approximately 10 seconds. The **DEALER SETTING** page should appear and is required to change the **REEL DIAMETER** and **REEL DISPLACEMENT PER REVOLUTION** settings.



Figure 3.803: New Holland Combine Controls

7. Select **HEAD 2 (A)**. The **HEADER SETUP 2** page appears.
8. Select **REEL DIAMETER (B)** and enter 102 cm (40.16 in).
9. Select **REEL DISPLACEMENT PER REVOLUTION (C)** and enter the appropriate value according to the reel drive configuration according to Table .

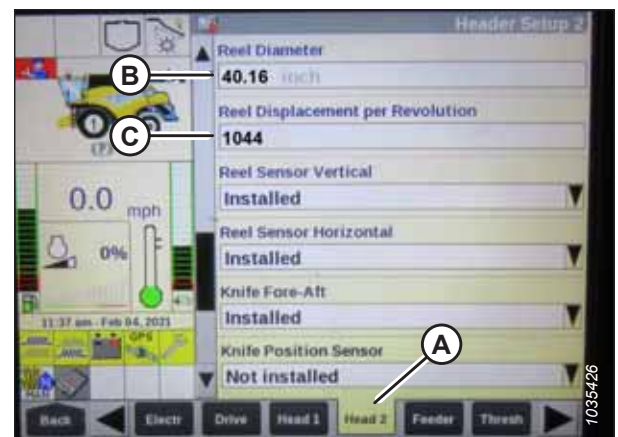


Figure 3.804: New Holland Combine Display

Table 3.41 Reel Displacement per Revolution Chart

Drive Sprocket Size (Number of Teeth)	Driven Sprocket Size (Number of Teeth)	Reel Displacement Per Revolution
19 (standard)	56	769
14 (high torque / low-speed) ⁸⁰	56	1044
20 (low torque / high-speed) ⁸¹	52	679

Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be calibrated for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 421](#).

NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent the calibration of the AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header does not separate from the float module.

NOTE:

For the best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform the ground calibration with the center-link set to **D**. When calibration is complete, adjust the center-link back to the desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198](#).

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to **D**.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the header height controller (HHC) module.
- The header/feeder is disengaged.
- The lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- The ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

80. Two speed kit with chain on inner sprockets.

81. Two speed kit with chain on outer sprockets.

OPERATION

To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:

1. Select CALIBRATIONS (A) on the main page. The CALIBRATION page appears.



Figure 3.805: New Holland Combine Display

2. Select CALIBRATION drop-down menu (A).



Figure 3.806: New Holland Combine Display

3. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.



Figure 3.807: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

- Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display updates to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes stops the calibration procedure.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 3.808: New Holland Combine Display

- When all steps have been completed, the CALIBRATION COMPLETED message appears on the page.

NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust it to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.809: New Holland Combine Display

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor and Reel Fore-Aft Sensor – New Holland CR Series

You must calibrate the reel position before operating the header for the first time. Calibrating the reel position calibrates the reel height sensor and the reel fore-aft sensor.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90).

To calibrate the reel position, follow these steps:

- Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

OPERATION

2. Select CALIBRATIONS (A) on the main page. The CALIBRATION page is shown.



Figure 3.810: New Holland Combine Display

3. Select CALIBRATION drop-down menu (A).



Figure 3.811: New Holland Combine Display

4. Select REEL POSITION (A) from the list of calibration options.

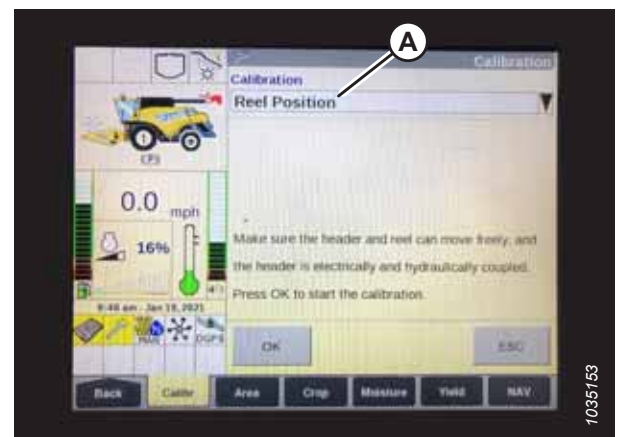


Figure 3.812: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

5. A CAUTION statement (A) will appear. Press ENTER.

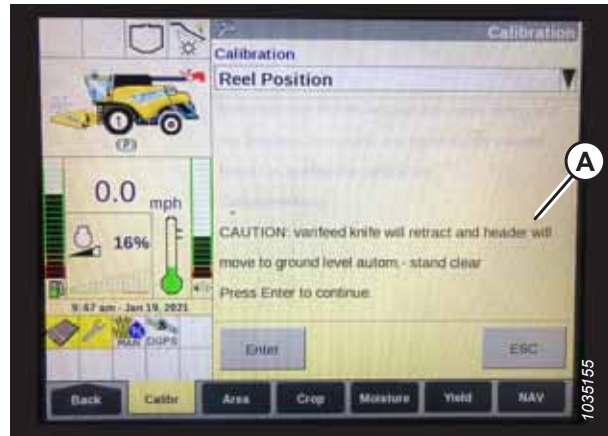


Figure 3.813: New Holland Combine Display

6. If the statement "Confirm varifeed knife is completely retracted" (A) appears, press ENTER. The varifeed knife is not applicable to MacDon headers.

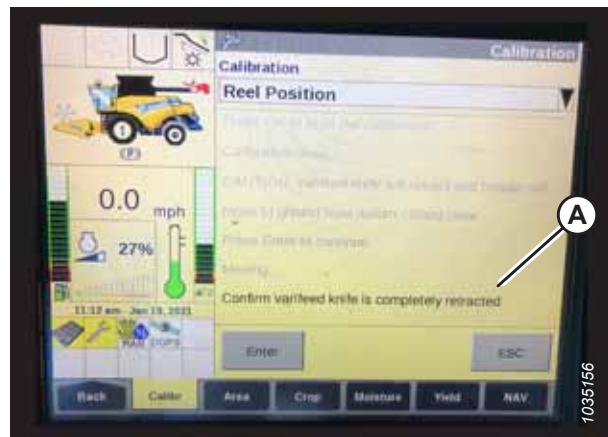


Figure 3.814: New Holland Combine Display

7. Follow the calibration steps (A) in the order in which they appear on the page. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

NOTE:

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

NOTE:

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.

8. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETED message is displayed on the page.

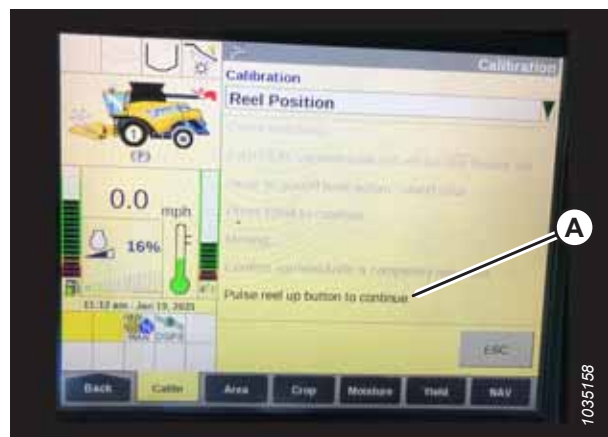


Figure 3.815: New Holland Combine Display

Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – New Holland CR Series

Check the reel height sensor voltages to ensure they are within the prescribed range.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

1. On the main page of the combine display, select **DIAGNOSTICS** (A). The **DIAGNOSTICS** page opens.



Figure 3.816: New Holland Combine Display

2. Select **SETTINGS** tab (A). The **SETTINGS** page opens.
3. From **GROUP** menu (B), select **HEADER**.
4. From **PARAMETER** menu (C), select **REEL VERTICAL POSITION**.



Figure 3.817: New Holland Combine Display

5. Select **GRAPH** tab (A). The **REEL VERTICAL POSITION** graph displays.
6. Raise the reel to view high voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
7. Lower the reel to view low voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.

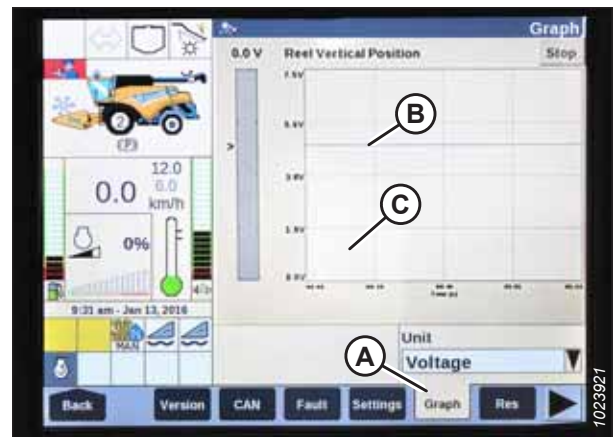


Figure 3.818: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR Series

The cut height setting can be stored in the combine. When harvesting, the setting can be selected from the control handle.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

OPERATION

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior](#), page 421.

The console has two buttons used for auto height presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require first two buttons (A) and (B). Third button (C) is not configured.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

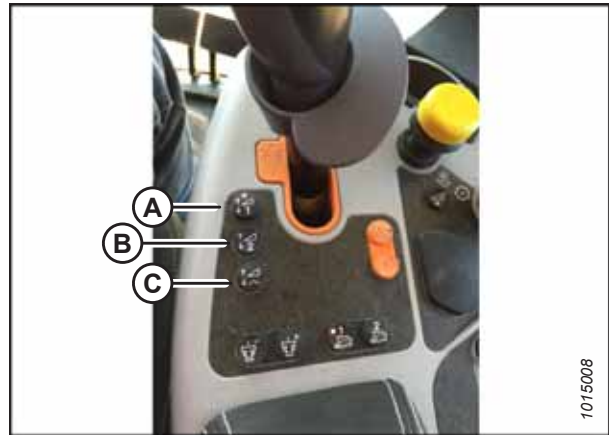


Figure 3.819: New Holland Combine Controls

To set preset cutting height, follow these steps:

1. Engage the separator and the header.
2. Select preset button 1 (A). A yellow light on the button lights up.
3. Raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height.



Figure 3.820: New Holland Combine Controls

4. Hold RESUME button (C) on the multifunction handle to set the preset, until the monitor beeps.

NOTE:

When setting presets, always set the header position before setting the reel position. If the header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not save.

5. Raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
6. Hold RESUME button (C) on the multifunction handle to set the preset.
7. Repeat Step [2, page 444](#) to Step [6, page 444](#), using preset button 2.



Figure 3.821: New Holland Combine Multifunction Handle

OPERATION

8. Lower the header to the ground.
9. Select RUN SCREENS (A) on the main page.



Figure 3.822: New Holland Combine Display

10. Select the RUN tab that shows MANUAL HEIGHT.

NOTE:

The MANUAL HEIGHT field may appear on any of the RUN tabs. When an auto height preset button is pressed, the display changes to AUTO HEIGHT (A).

11. Press one of the auto height preset buttons to select a preset cutting height.



Figure 3.823: New Holland Combine Display

Setting Maximum Work Height – New Holland CR Series

The maximum work height can be set using the combine display.

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.10.19 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 421](#).

OPERATION

1. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main page. The TOOLBOX page appears.



Figure 3.824: New Holland Combine Display

2. Select FEEDER (A). The FEEDER SETUP page appears.
3. Select MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT field (B).

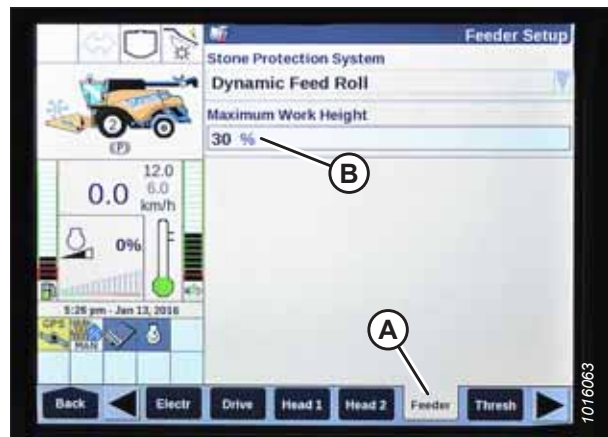


Figure 3.825: New Holland Combine Display

4. Set MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT to the desired value.
5. Press SET and then press ENTER.



Figure 3.826: New Holland Combine Display

Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type – New Holland CR Series

The reel fore-aft, header tilt, and header type settings for the auto header height control (AHHC) system can be changed by accessing the HEAD menus.

NOTE:

This procedure applies only to 2016 New Holland CR models 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, and 9.90.

OPERATION

NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or the display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for the most up-to-date information.

1. Shut down the engine.
2. Turn the key to the run position.
3. Simultaneously press UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.



Figure 3.827: New Holland Combine Controls

4. On the HEAD 1 page, change the CUTTING TYPE from FLEX to PLATFORM as shown at location (A).



Figure 3.828: New Holland Combine Display

5. On the HEAD 2 page, change HEADER SUB TYPE from DEFAULT to 80/90 as shown at location (A).



Figure 3.829: New Holland Combine Display

OPERATION

There are now two different buttons for the ON GROUND presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require first two buttons (A) and (B). Third button down (C) is not configured.



Figure 3.830: New Holland Combine Controls

3.11 Leveling Header

The float module is factory-set to provide the proper level for the header. It should not normally require adjustment.

If the header is not level, perform the following checks prior to adjusting the leveling linkages:

- Check the combine tire pressures.
- Check that the combine feeder house is level. Refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
- Check that the top of the float module is level and parallel with the feeder house.

NOTE:

The float springs are **NOT** used to level the header.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
5. Check, and if necessary adjust the float. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).
6. Disengage both header float locks by pulling float lock handle (A) away from the float module and pushing the float lock handle down and into position (B) (**UNLOCK**).

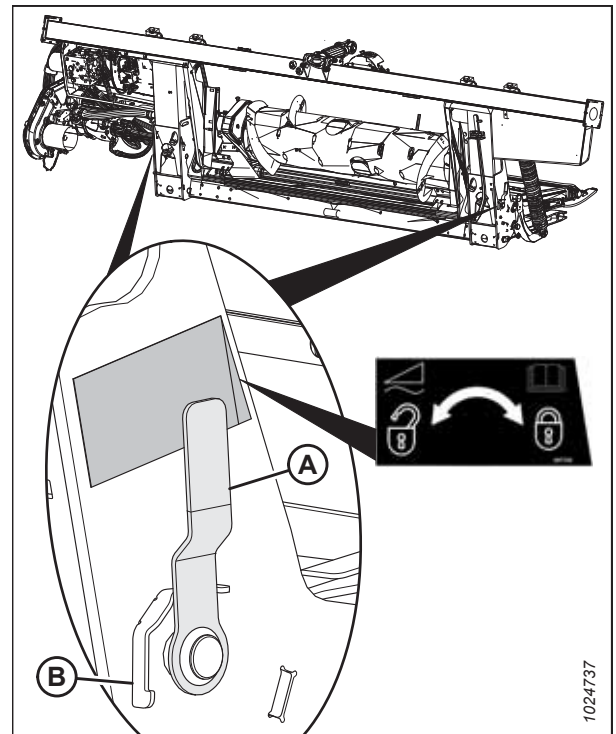


Figure 3.831: Header Float Lock in Locked Position

OPERATION

7. On the high side of the header, make small ($1/4$ – $1/2$ turn) counterclockwise adjustments to nut (A) to level the header.

NOTE:

Set screw (B) does not require loosening for adjustments up to one-half turn of nut (A).

IMPORTANT:

Adjustment of more than two turns in either direction may adversely affect header float.

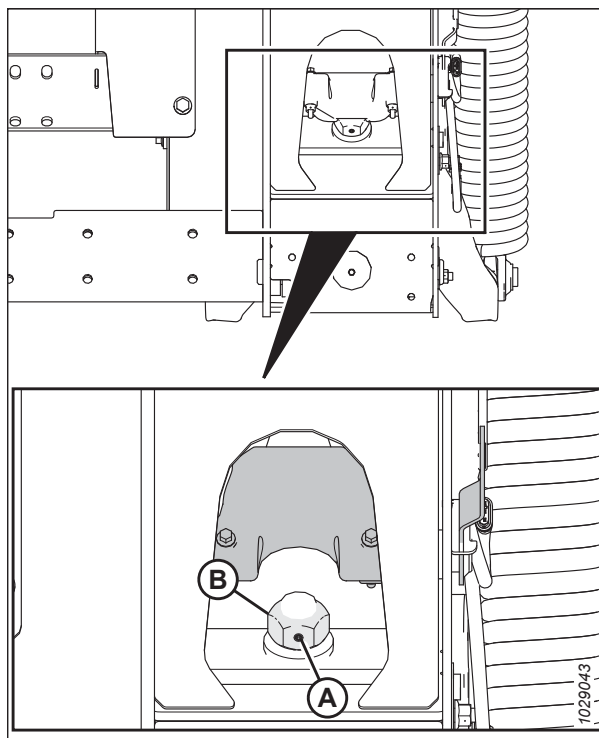


Figure 3.832: Float Lock – Right

8. After adjusting the high side of the header, reset float indicator needle (A) to zero by loosening the nut that secures bolt (B), and center the indicator needle on zero.

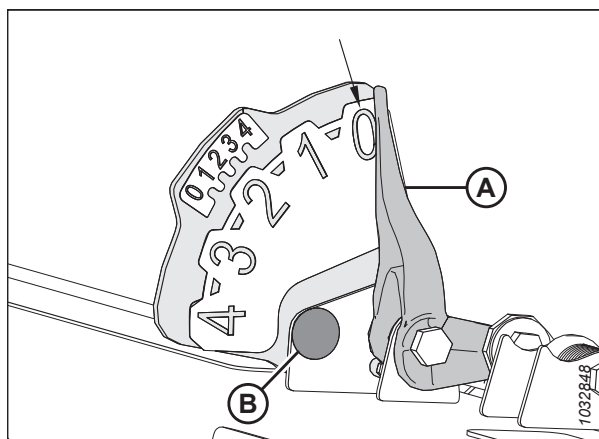


Figure 3.833: Left Float Indicator

OPERATION

NOTE:

Ensure a minimum clearance of 2–3 mm (1/8 in.) (A) between the frame and the back of the bell crank lever.

NOTE:

Check the float after leveling header. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).

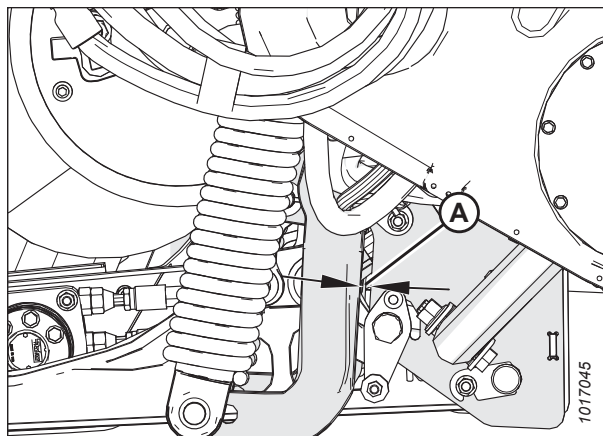


Figure 3.834: Bell Crank

3.12 Unplugging Cutterbar

Follow this procedure if an obstruction prevents the cutterbar from working correctly.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

IMPORTANT:

Lowering a rotating reel on a plugged cutterbar will damage the reel components.

To unplug the cutterbar, reverse the combine feeder house. If the cutterbar is still plugged, do the following:

1. Stop the forward movement of the machine and disengage the header drives.
2. Raise the header to prevent it from filling with dirt, and engage the header drive clutch.
3. If the plug does **NOT** clear, disengage the header drive clutch and fully raise the header.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
6. Clean off the cutterbar by hand.

3.13 Unplugging Float Module Feed Draper

Crop sometimes gets wedged between the feed draper and the feed deck. Follow this procedure to safely clear any obstructions in the float module's feed draper.

1. Stop the forward movement of the machine and disengage the header drives.
2. Raise the header slightly off the ground, and raise the reel.
3. Reverse the combine feed according to the manufacturer specifications (reverse feed varies among different combine models).
4. Turn the side draper speed down to 0.
5. Engage the header drive.
6. Slowly increase the side draper speed to the previous settings once the plug has been cleared.

3.14 Transport

There are two ways to transport the header: attached to a combine and towed behind a combine or an agricultural tractor.

For more information, refer to

- [3.14.1 Transporting Header on Combine, page 454](#)
- [3.14.2 Towing, page 454](#)

3.14.1 Transporting Header on Combine

In conditions with good visibility, you can transport the header while it is attached to a combine.



WARNING

Do NOT drive the combine with the header attached on a road or highway at night, or in conditions which reduce visibility, such as fog or rain. The width of the header may not be apparent under these conditions.



CAUTION

- Check local laws for width regulations and lighting or marking requirements before transporting on roads.
- Follow all recommended procedures in your combine operator's manual for transporting, towing, etc.
- Disengage the header drive clutch when travelling to and from the field.
- Before driving on a roadway, be sure flashing amber lamps, red tail lamps, and head lamps are clean and working properly. Pivot amber lamps for best visibility by approaching traffic. Always use lamps when travelling on roads to provide adequate warning to other vehicles.
- Do NOT use field lamps on roads—they may confuse other drivers.
- Before driving on a roadway, clean slow moving vehicle signs and reflectors, adjust rear view mirrors, and clean windows.
- Lower the reel fully and raise the header unless transporting in hills.
- Maintain adequate visibility and be alert for roadside obstructions, oncoming traffic, and bridges.
- When travelling downhill, reduce speed and keep the header at a minimum height to provide maximum stability if forward momentum is stopped for any reason. Raise the header completely at the bottom of the grade to avoid contacting the ground.
- Travel at safe speeds to ensure complete machine control and stability at all times.

3.14.2 Towing

Headers with the EasyMove™ Transport option can be towed behind a combine or an agricultural tractor at a maximum speed of 32 km/h (20 mph).

For instructions, refer to the towing vehicle's operator's manual.

Attaching Header to Towing Vehicle

The header can be towed to multiple locations using a towing vehicle. Follow the instructions below to prevent loss of control leading to bodily injury and/or machine damage.



CAUTION

Adhere to the following slow speed transport instructions to prevent loss of control leading to bodily injury and/or machine damage:

- Weight of towing vehicle must exceed header weight to ensure adequate control and braking performance.
- Do NOT tow with any highway-capable vehicle. Use only an agricultural tractor, agricultural combine, or a properly configured MacDon windrower.
- Ensure reel is fully lowered and back on support arms to increase header stability during transport. For headers with hydraulic reel fore-aft, never connect the fore-aft couplers to each other or the circuit will be complete and the reel could creep forward during transport.
- Check that all pins are properly secured in transport position at wheel supports, cutterbar support, and hitch.
- Check tire condition and pressure prior to transporting.
- Connect hitch to towing vehicle using a proper hitch pin with a spring locking pin or other suitable fastener.
- Attach hitch safety chain to towing vehicle. Adjust safety chain length to provide only enough slack to permit turning.
- Connect header seven-pole plug wiring harness to mating receptacle on towing vehicle. (The seven-pole receptacle is available from your MacDon Dealer parts department.)
- Ensure lights are functioning properly and clean the slow moving vehicle sign and other reflectors. Use flashing warning lights unless prohibited by law.

Precautions for Towing Header

Review this list of cautions before attaching and towing a header behind a combine or an agricultural tractor.



CAUTION

Adhere to the following slow speed transport instructions to prevent loss of control leading to bodily injury and/or machine damage:

- Do NOT exceed 32 km/h (20 mph).
- Reduce transport speed to less than 8 km/h (5 mph) for slippery or rough conditions.
- Turn corners at only very low speeds (8 km/h [5 mph] or less) as header stability is reduced while cornering. Do NOT accelerate when making or coming out of a turn.
- Obey all highway traffic regulations in your area when transporting on public roads. Use flashing amber lights unless prohibited by law.

3.14.3 Converting from Transport to Field Position (Option)

The header needs to be converted back to field position if it was towed to a new location.

Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Transport to Working Position – ContourMax™ Option

The left outboard wheel need to be repositioned to the working position after being in the transport position.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of raised header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header. If you are using a lifting device to support the header, be sure that the header is secure before proceeding.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.
5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Remove locking pin (B).
7. Slide wheel assembly (C) out of storage bracket (D).

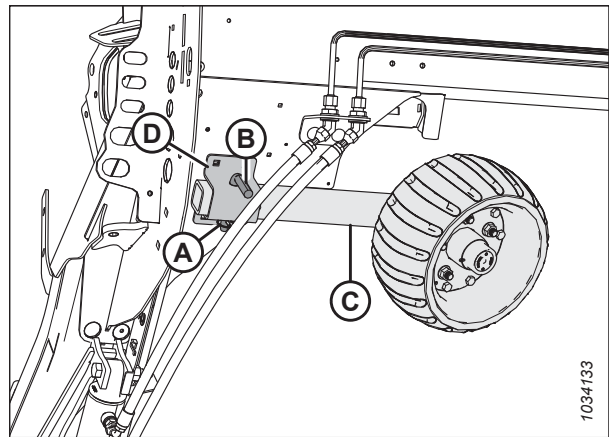


Figure 3.835: Left Wheel Assembly

8. With the wheel facing inboard, align wheel assembly (C) with the isolator assembly and slide it towards the front of the header until the pin holes line up.
9. Install locking pin (B).
10. Install lynch pin (A).

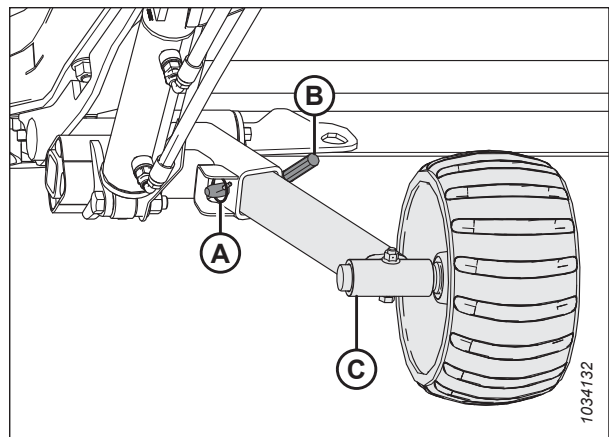


Figure 3.836: Left Wheel Assembly

OPERATION

Removing Tow-Bar

Remove the tow bar from the transport location when converting from the transport position.

1. Block the header tires with wheel chocks (A) to prevent header from rolling.



Figure 3.837: Tire Blocking

2. Disconnect electrical connector (A) and safety chain (B) from towing vehicle and store as shown.
3. If removing a tow-bar with an extension, proceed to Step 4, [page 457](#). If removing a tow-bar without an extension, proceed to Step 16, [page 459](#).

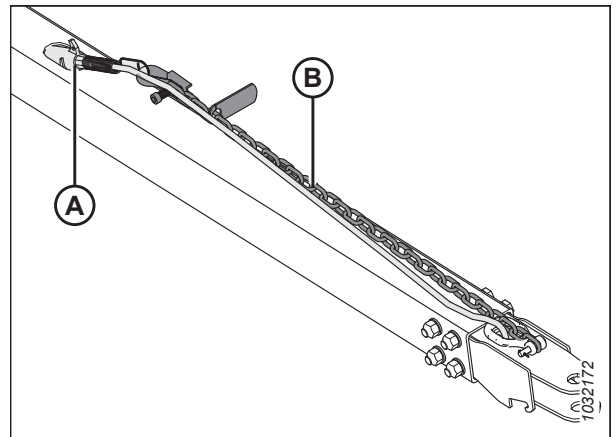


Figure 3.838: Tow-Bar Assembly

Removing tow-bar installed with an extension:

4. Disconnect tow-bar harness (A) from extension harness (B).
5. Remove lynch pin (C) from latch.

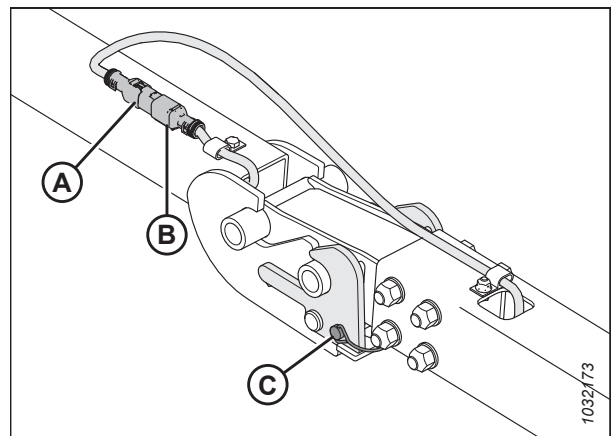


Figure 3.839: Tow-Bar / Extension Harness

OPERATION

6. Secure tow-bar harness (A) in storage location.
7. Lift up on hitch near latch connection to take weight off of latch. While lifting, pull up on latch handle (B) to clear tow-bar lug, and then slowly lower assembly to the ground.
8. Lift end of tow-bar (C) and pull away from extension (D).

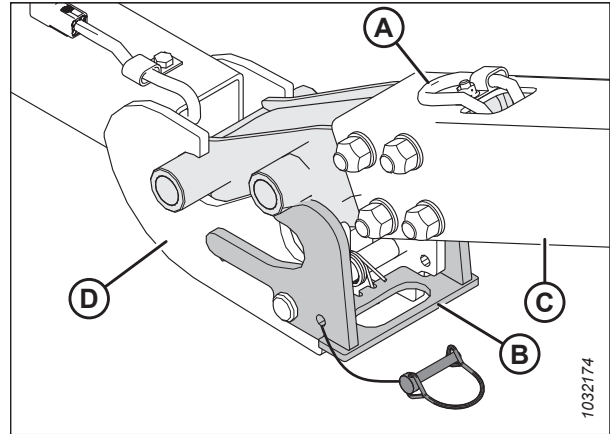


Figure 3.840: Tow-Bar / Extension Joint

9. Unplug tow-bar extension electrical harness (A) from left transport pivot harness (B).

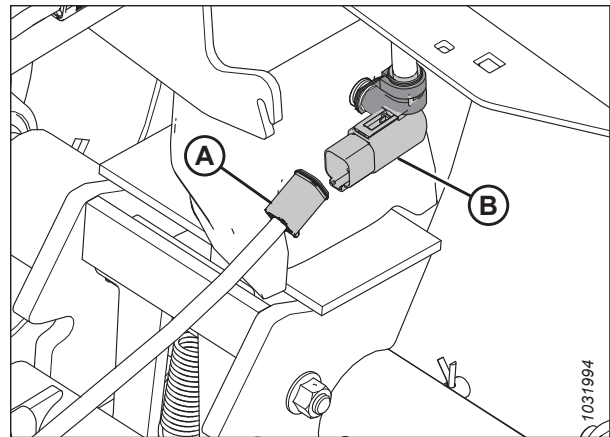


Figure 3.841: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

10. Remove lynch pin (A) from transport pivot (B).
11. Push back on latch (C) to free extension (D).

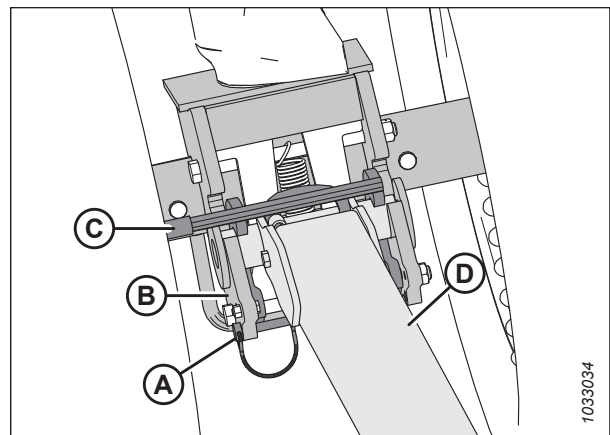


Figure 3.842: Tow-Bar Extension and Transport Pivot

OPERATION

12. Lift extension (A) and pull away from transport pivot (B).
13. Secure extension harness (C) inside the tow-bar extension tube (A).
14. Reinstall lynch pin in left transport pivot for safe keeping.
15. For tow-bar storage, refer to [Storing Tow-Bar, page 460](#).

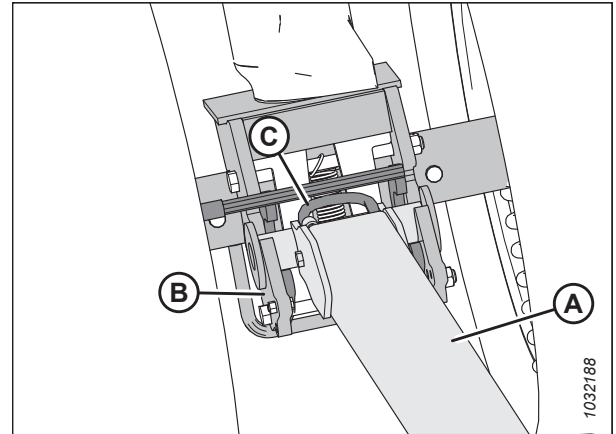


Figure 3.843: Latch Disengaged from Extension

Removing tow-bar installed without an extension:

16. Unplug tow-bar extension electrical harness (A) from left transport pivot harness (B).

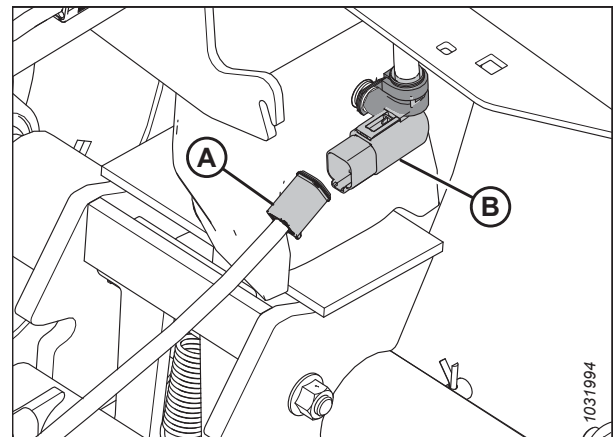


Figure 3.844: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

17. Remove lynch pin (A), then push back on latch (B) to free the tow-bar.

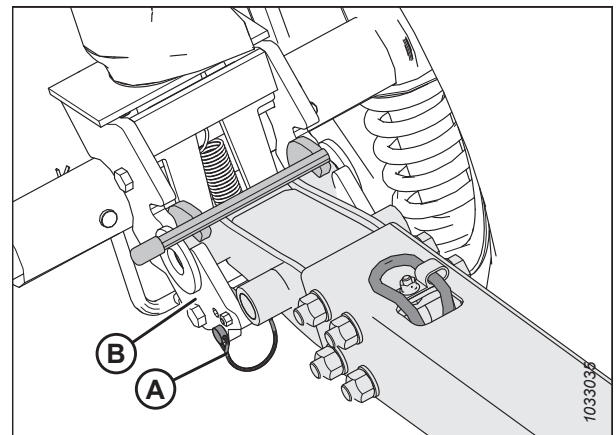


Figure 3.845: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot

OPERATION

18. Lift tow-bar (A) and pull away from transport pivot (B).
19. Reinstall lynch pin in left transport pivot for safe keeping.
20. For tow-bar storage, refer to *Storing Tow-Bar*, page 460.

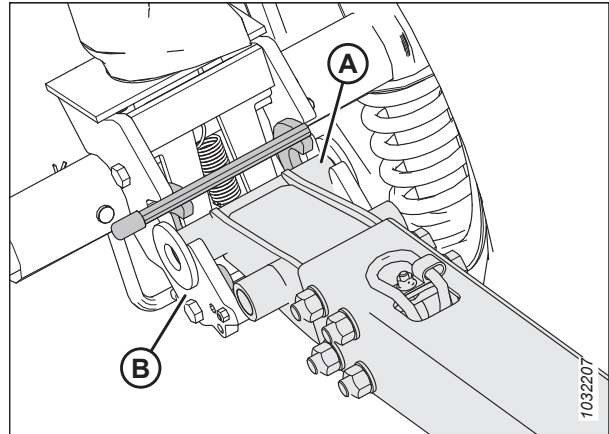


Figure 3.846: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot

Storing Tow-Bar

Store the tow bar in the backtube when not in use.

Tow-bar Extension

1. Insert tube end (B) of tow-bar extension (A) onto pin (C).
2. Rotate tow-bar extension to cradle (D).

NOTE:

To prevent tow-bar extension from shaking loose, ensure extension bar engages groove in bracket (E).

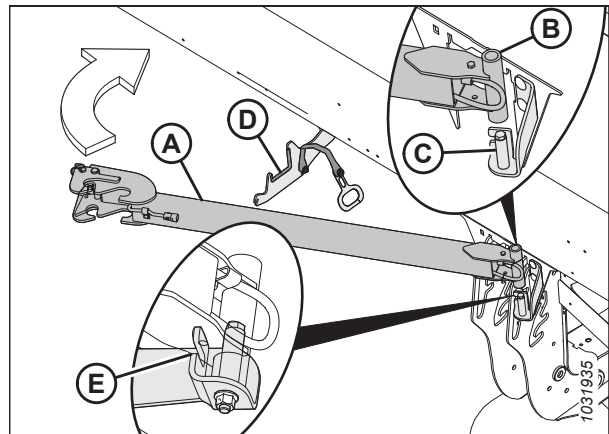


Figure 3.847: Tow-Bar Extension Storage

3. Secure tow-bar extension by hooking strap handle (A) onto notch in cradle (B).

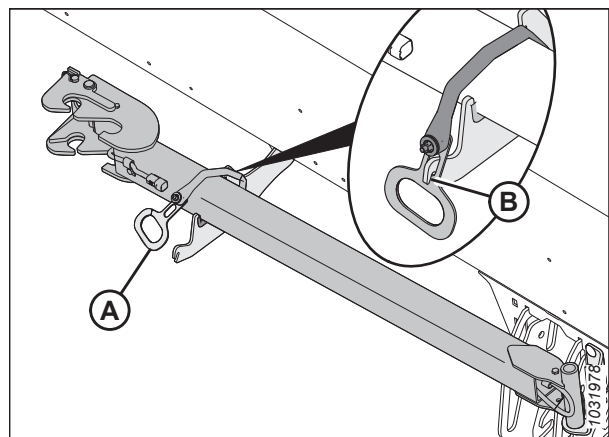


Figure 3.848: Tow-Bar Extension Storage

Tow-bar

4. Open left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
5. With tow chain and harness (A) facing up, insert hitch end (B) of tow bar into left backtube.

IMPORTANT:

Header endshield removed from illustration for clarity.

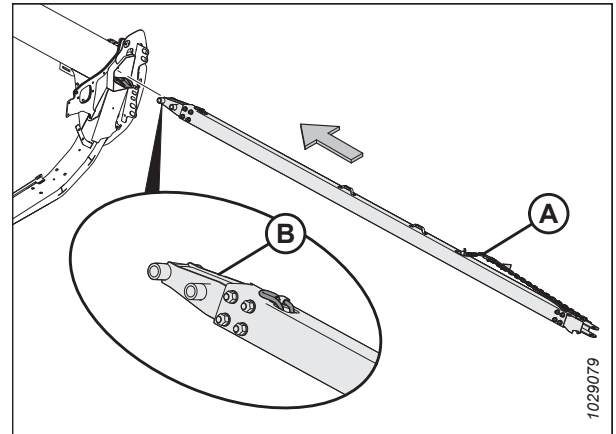


Figure 3.849: Hitch End

6. Slide tow-bar inside the backtube until hooks (A) engage the slots of support angle (B).
7. Close header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

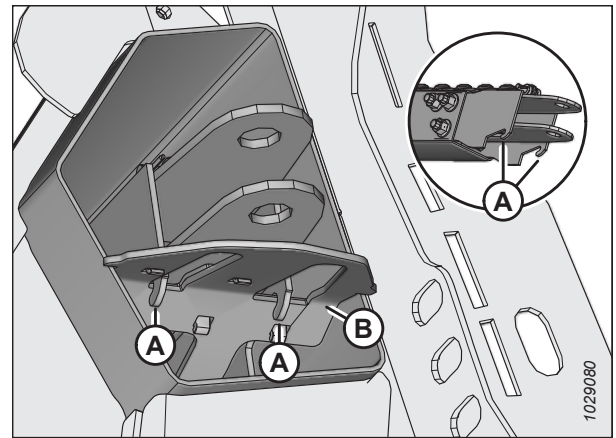


Figure 3.850: Clevis End Retainer Hooks

Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Field Position

This procedure explains how to move the wheels to the highest storage position, but you may wish to use a lower position, depending on whether or not you want the wheels to support the header during field operations. This procedure assumes that the tow-bar has been removed.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header until the transport wheels are 51–102 mm (2–4 in.) off the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

OPERATION

5. Turn left transport wheel assembly (A) 90° in the direction shown.

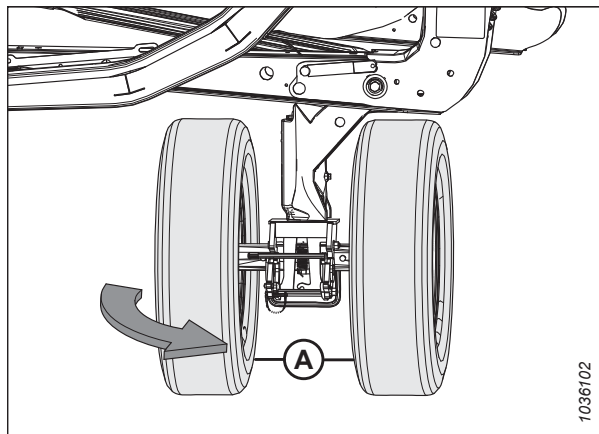


Figure 3.851: Left Transport Wheels in Transport Mode

6. Remove lynch pin (A). Pull handle (B) to engage latch (C)—this will prevent the transport wheel assembly from rotating.

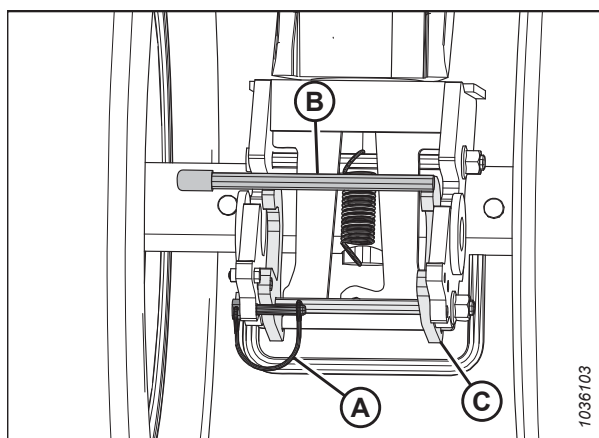


Figure 3.852: Left Transport Wheels – Rotation Lock Latch Disengaged

7. Secure latch (B) with lynch pin (A).

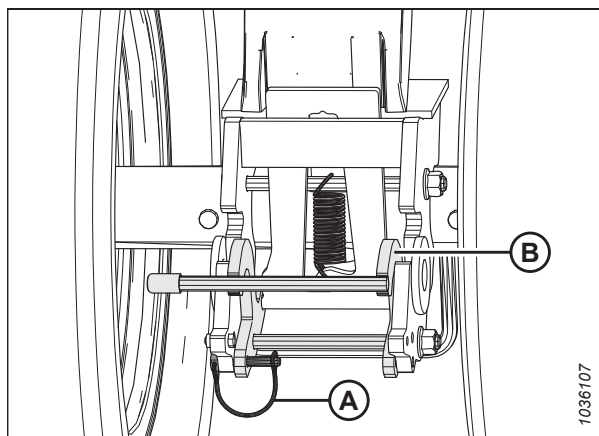


Figure 3.853: Left Transport Wheels – Rotation Lock Latch Engaged

OPERATION

8. To unlock the pivot, use your foot to apply pressure to bolt (B) while pushing handle (A) downward.

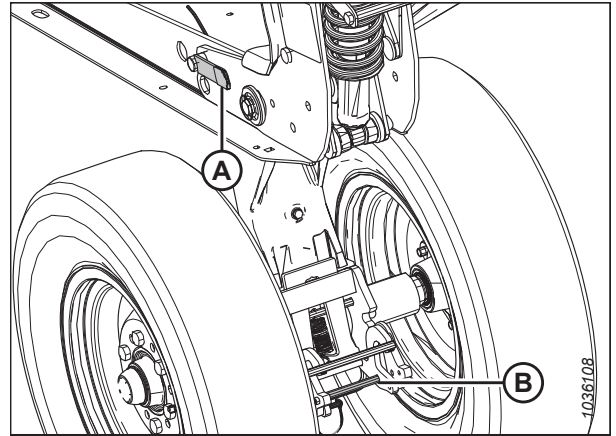


Figure 3.854: Left Transport Wheels – Pivot Released

9. Lift up on handle (A) while pulling back on handle (B) to lift the left wheel assembly into the highest storage position.

NOTE:

Parts have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

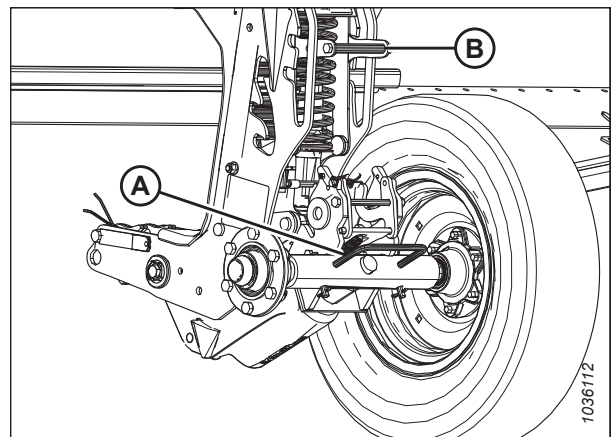


Figure 3.855: Left Transport Wheels in Highest Storage Position

10. Ensure that pin (A) is visible at the highest storage position in plate (B).

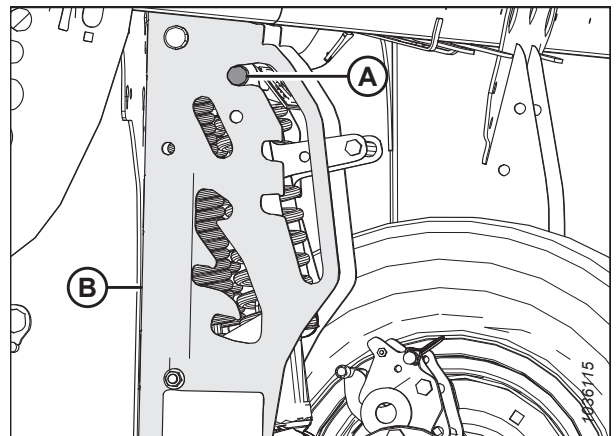


Figure 3.856: Left Transport Wheel Pivot Pin in Highest Storage Position

Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Field Position

The rear (right) transport wheels can be converted from transport to field (storage) position with a few simple steps.

This procedure demonstrates how to move the wheels to the highest storage position, but you may wish to use a lower position, depending on whether or not you want the wheels to support the header during field operations.

⚠ DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header until the transport wheels are 51–102 mm (2–4 in.) off the ground.

NOTE:

Raise the header high enough that the cylinder safety props can be engaged—you will need to work under the header to complete this procedure.

NOTE:

If engaging the safety props requires raising the header to a height where it is inconvenient to work on, use blocks to support the header so that the transport wheels are 51–102 mm (2–4 in.) off the ground.

3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
5. On the right transport axle, remove lynch pin (A) from the right transport axle latch.
6. Support the right transport axle using wheel handle (B), then push handle (C) to release the right transport axle from the header frame.
7. Lower the right transport axle to the ground using wheel handle (B).
8. Reinstall lynch pin (A) into the latch.

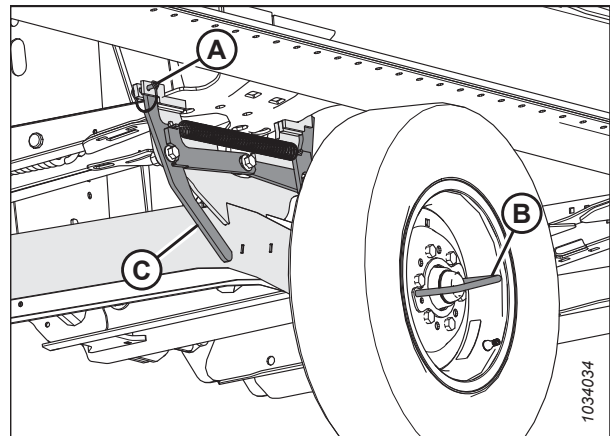


Figure 3.857: Right Transport Axle Latched in Transport Position

9. Lift and rotate right transport axle (A) in the direction shown using the wheel handle.

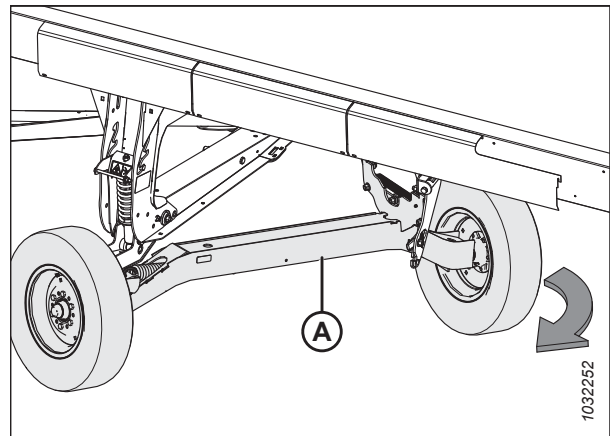


Figure 3.858: Right Transport Axle Rotation

OPERATION

- Using wheel handle (A), lift and position right transport axle (B) to field support (C) to engage the latch.

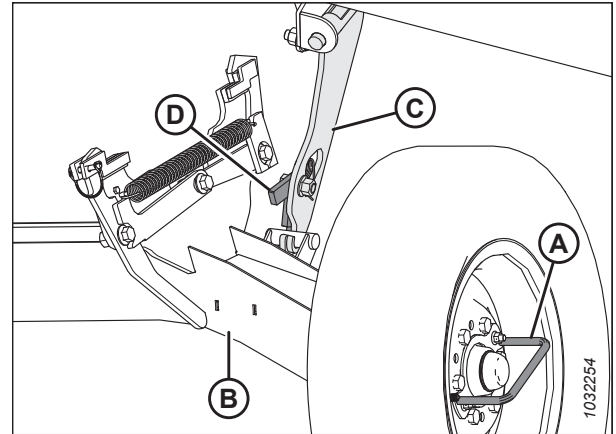


Figure 3.859: Right Transport Axle Latched in Field Position

- Pull transport height adjustment handle (A) and lift axle pivot handle (B) to move the axle to the highest storage position. Ensure that pin (C) is visible at the highest storage position as shown.
- Adjust the skid shoe position at the right transport leg to match the other skid shoes. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes, page 173](#).

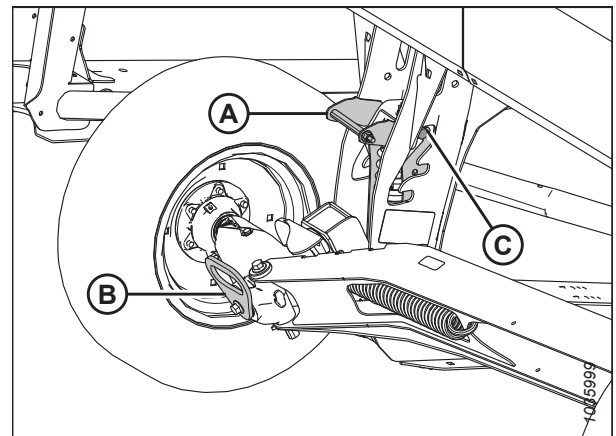


Figure 3.860: Right Transport Wheels in Highest Storage Position

3.14.4 Converting from Field to Transport Position (Option)

The header needs to be converted to the transport when being towed to a new location.

Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Working to Transport Position

The left outboard wheel need to be moved to the transport position before the header can be towed.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of raised header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header. If you are using a lifting device to support the header, be sure that the header is secure before proceeding.

- Start the engine.
- Raise the header fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.

OPERATION

5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Remove locking pins (B).
7. Slide left wheel assembly (C) towards the back of the header.

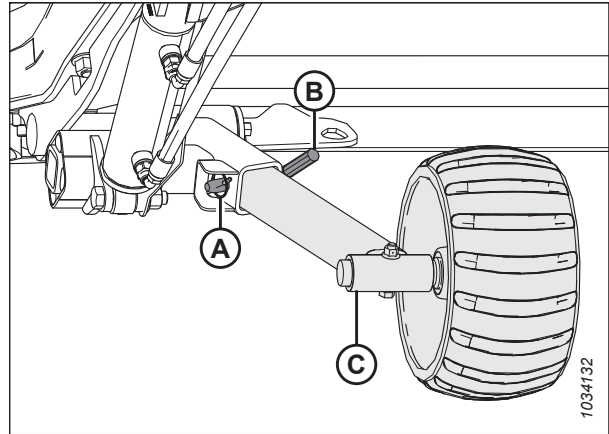


Figure 3.861: Left Wheel Assembly

8. With the wheel facing out, slide left wheel assembly (C) into storage bracket (D).
9. Install locking pin (B).
10. Install lynch pin (A).

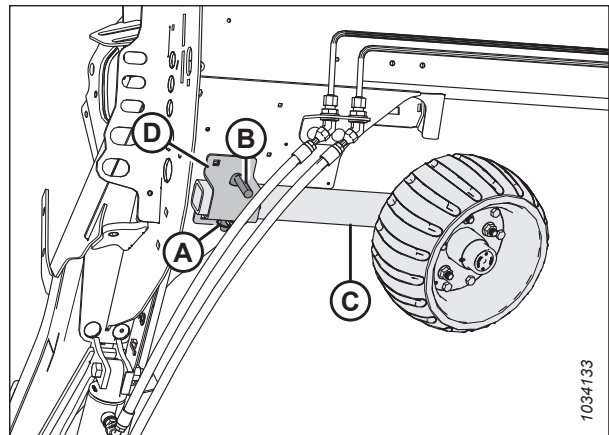


Figure 3.862: Left Wheel Assembly

Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Transport Position

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

CAUTION

Stand clear of the wheels and release the linkage carefully; the wheels will drop suddenly once the mechanism is released.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.

OPERATION

5. Adjust gauge wheel height to transport position (lowest slot). Pull suspension handle (A) outward and push down on axle pivot handle (B) until transport position is reached.

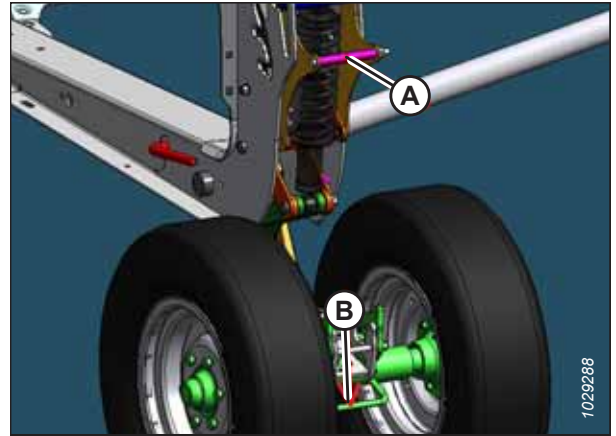


Figure 3.863: Gauge Wheel

6. Secure left transport pivot by pushing pivot handle (A) forward until latch is engaged.
7. Pull back on pivot handle to verify that latch is fully engaged.



Figure 3.864: Gauge Wheel

8. Remove clevis pin (A) securing latch.
9. Push pivot handle (B) up to unlock wheel assembly.

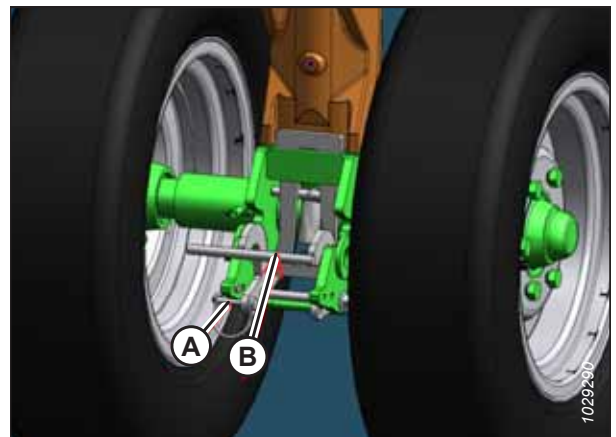


Figure 3.865: Gauge Wheel

10. Turn front wheel assembly clockwise, 90°.

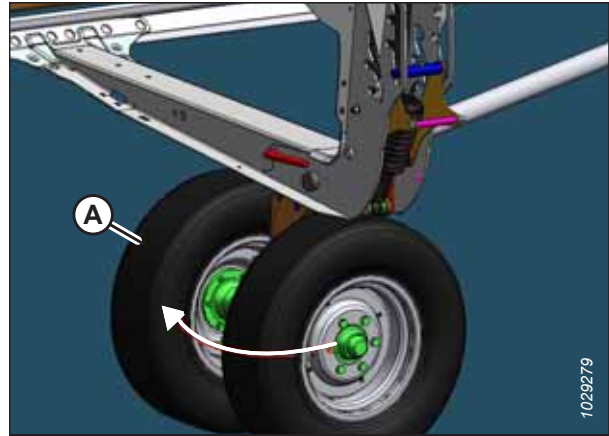


Figure 3.866: Gauge Wheel

Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Transport Position

When towing the header it must be converted into the transport position.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.



CAUTION

Stand clear of the wheels and release the linkage carefully; the wheels will drop suddenly once the mechanism is released.

1. Fully raise the skid shoe at the right transport axle. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes, page 173](#).
2. Adjust gauge wheel height to transport position (lowest slot) as follows:
 - If in top slot, push on handle (A) to release.
 - If in mid slot, pull on handle (A) to release.
3. Pull suspension handle (A) outward and push down on axle pivot handle (B).

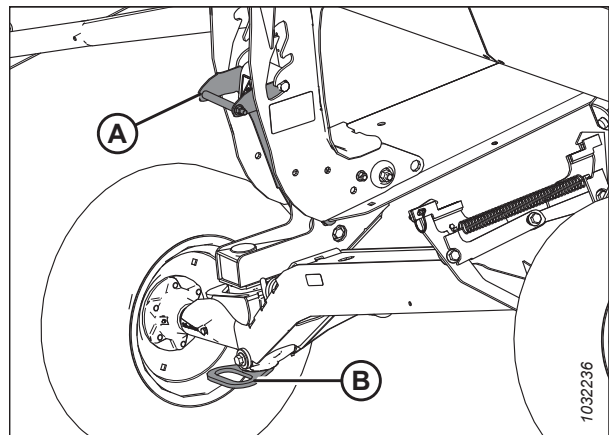


Figure 3.867: Gauge Wheels

OPERATION

4. Push down on latch (A) at right field support (B) to unlock.

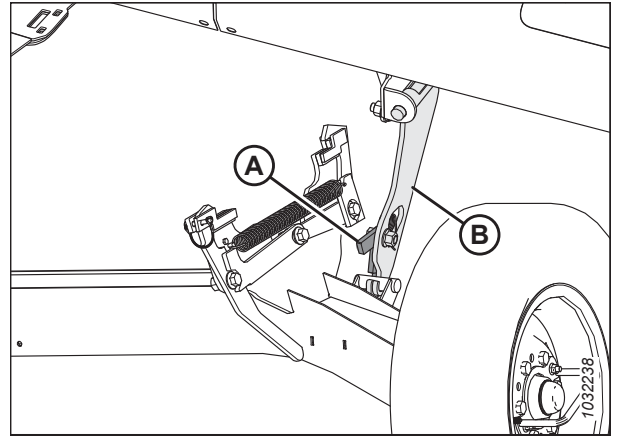


Figure 3.868: Right Field Support

5. Lift wheel handle (A) to remove right transport axle (B) from right field support (C), then lower right transport axle to the ground.

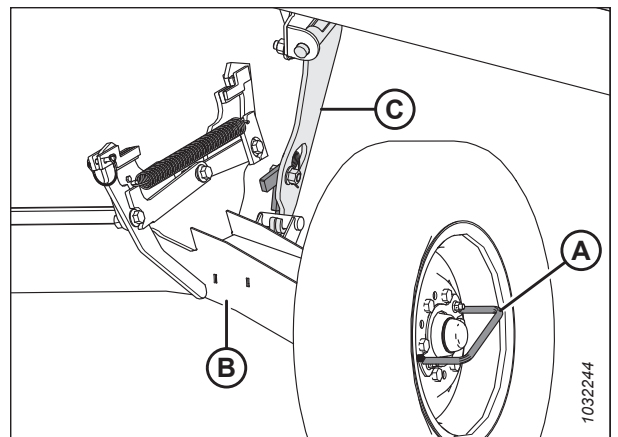


Figure 3.869: Right Field Support

6. Use wheel handle and rotate right transport axle (A) under the header frame.

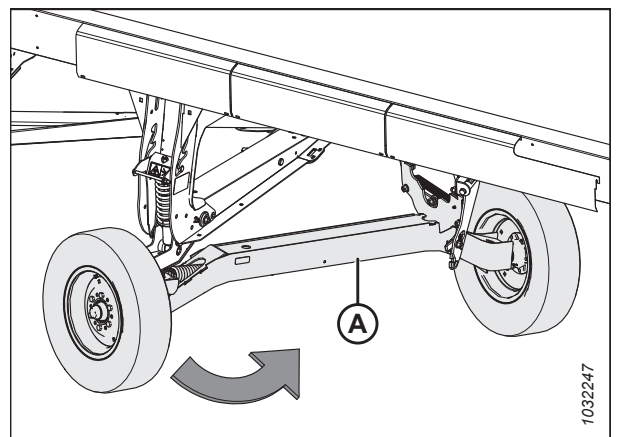


Figure 3.870: Right Transport Axle

OPERATION

7. Remove clevis pin (A) from right transport axle latch.
8. Lift right transport axle with wheel handle (B) until latch engages.
9. Push down on wheel handle (B) to verify latch is engaged.
10. Secure latch by reinstalling clevis pin (A).

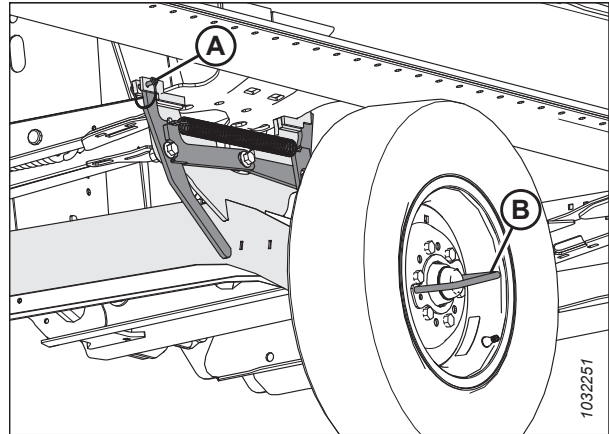


Figure 3.871: Right Transport Axle

Removing Tow-Bar from Storage

Remove the tow-bar from the backtube storage location when converting to the transport position.

Tow-Bar Extension

1. Remove strap (A) from cradle (B) to free tow-bar extension (C).
2. Rotate tow-bar extension to unlock from pin (D).
3. Lift tow-bar extension away (C) from pin (D).

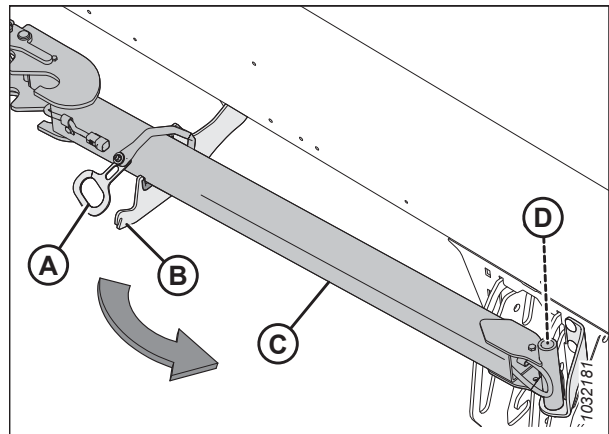


Figure 3.872: Tow-Bar Extension in Storage

Tow-Bar

4. Open left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
5. Pull tow-bar forward until it hits the stop. Lift the tow-bar to free clevis stop (C) and hook (A) from support angle (B), then pull it out of tube.

NOTE:

Backtube is shown transparent in illustration at right.

6. Slide tow-bar out from header backtube.

NOTE:

Use caution to avoid contact with any nearby hydraulic or electrical hoses and lines.

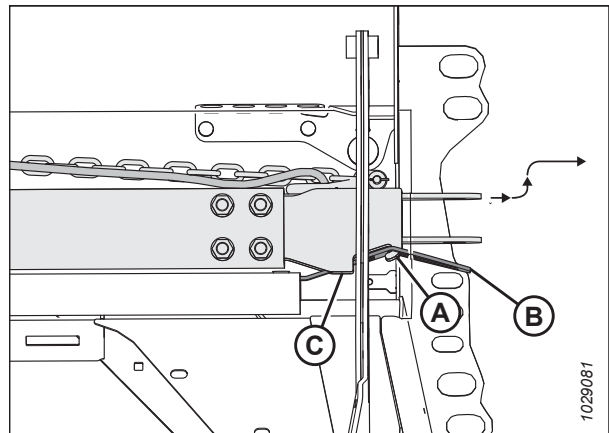


Figure 3.873: Tow-Bar in Storage

Attaching Tow-Bar

The tow-bar consists of two sections which make storage and handling easier.

1. Block the header tires with wheel chocks (A) to prevent header from rolling.
2. Remove tow-bar from storage. For instructions, refer to *Removing Tow-Bar from Storage, page 470*.
3. If installing a tow-bar and extension, proceed to Step 4, *page 471*. If installing tow-bar only, proceed to Step 18, *page 473*.



Figure 3.874: Tire Blocking

Installing tow-bar and extension:

4. Remove lynch pin (A) from left transport pivot (B).
5. Push extension (D) into lugs of left transport pivot until latch (C) engages.
6. Reinstall lynch pin (A) to transport pivot to secure extension.
7. Retrieve the end of extension harness (E) from inside the extension tube.

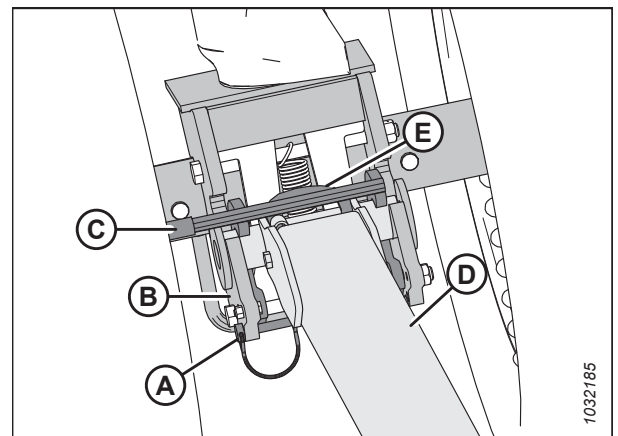


Figure 3.875: Tow-Bar Extension to Left Transport Pivot

8. Connect extension wiring harness (A) to left transport pivot harness (B).

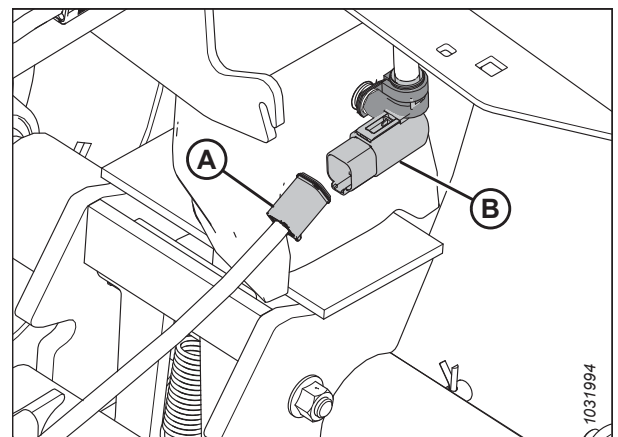


Figure 3.876: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

OPERATION

9. Remove lynch pin (E) from latch (B).
10. Position end of tow-bar (C) on extension lugs then lower tow-bar to the ground.
11. Lift extension (D) for latch (B) to engage to tow-bar (C).
12. Retrieve the end of tow-bar harness (A) from storage location.

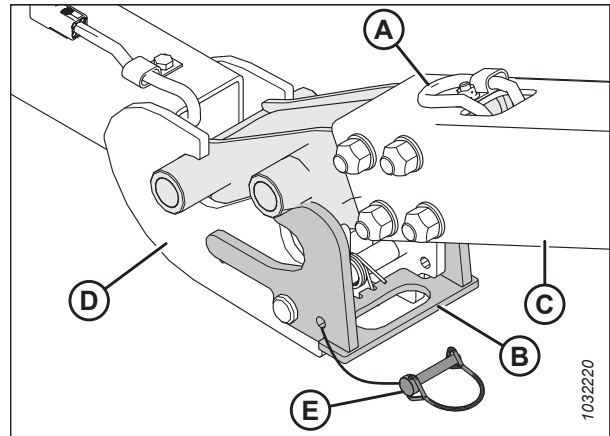


Figure 3.877: Tow-Bar to Extension

13. Connect tow-bar harness (A) to extension harness (B).
14. Reinstall lynch pin (C) to latch to secure tow-bar.

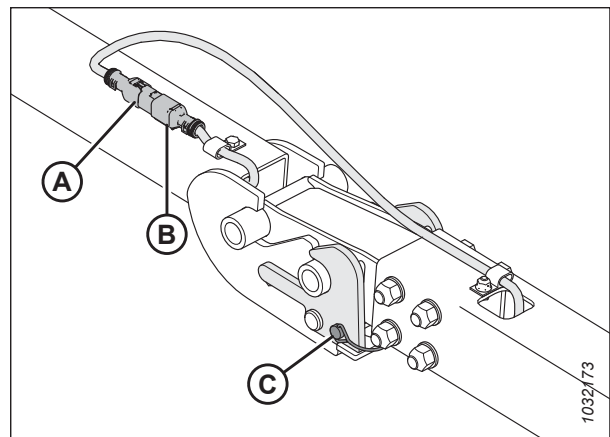


Figure 3.878: Tow-Bar / Extension Harness

15. Retrieve tow-bar wiring harness (A) and safety chain (B) from storage location.
16. Connect tow-bar wiring harness to vehicle, and secure safety chain from tow-bar to tow vehicle.
17. Turn on tow vehicle's 4-way flashers and check that all lights on header are working.

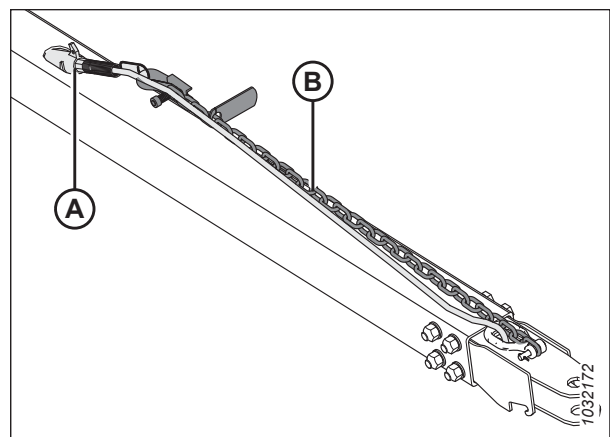


Figure 3.879: Tow-Bar Wiring Harness

OPERATION

Installing tow-bar only:

18. Remove lynch pin (A) from left transport pivot (B).
19. Push tow-bar (C) into lugs of left transport pivot until latch (D) engages.
20. Reinstall lynch pin (A) to transport pivot to secure tow-bar.
21. Retrieve the end of tow-bar harness (E).

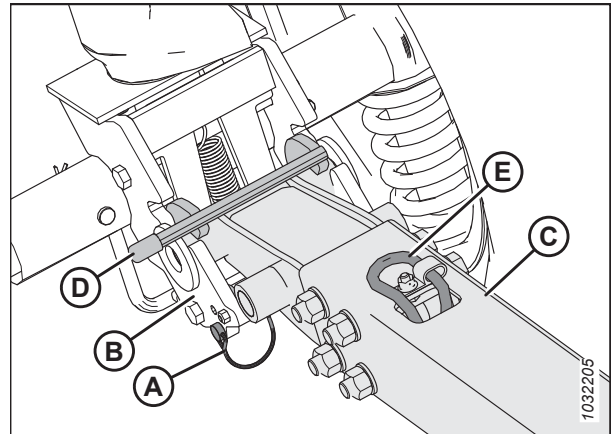


Figure 3.880: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot

22. Connect extension wiring harness (A) to left transport pivot harness (B).

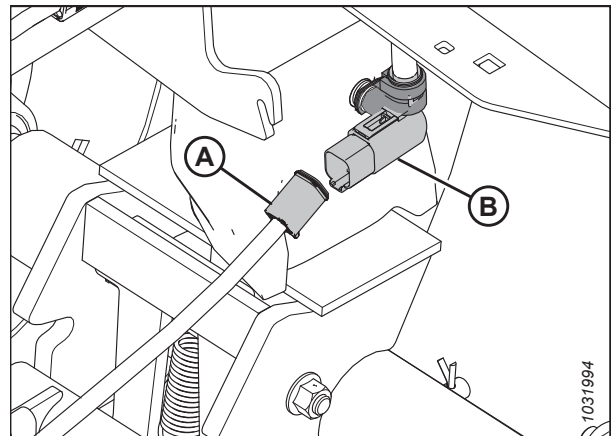


Figure 3.881: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

23. Retrieve tow-bar wiring harness (A) and safety chain (B) from storage location.
24. Connect tow-bar wiring harness to vehicle, and secure safety chain from tow-bar to tow vehicle.
25. Turn on tow vehicle's 4-way flashers and check that all lights on header are working.

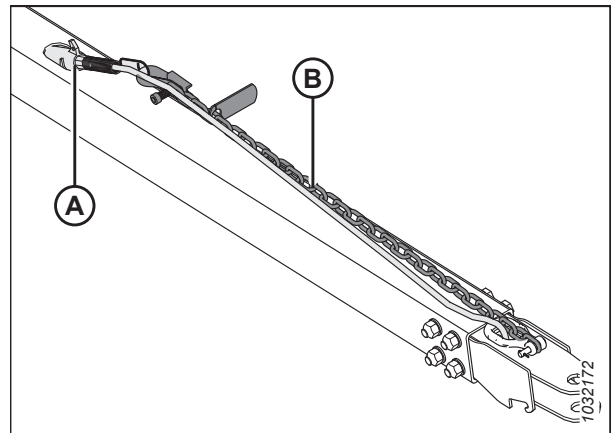


Figure 3.882: Tow-Bar Wiring Harness

3.15 Storing the Header

When putting the header into storage at the end of the season, perform this procedure. Storing the header properly helps to ensure its service life.



WARNING

Never use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.



CAUTION

Cover the cutterbar and the knife guards to prevent injury from accidental contact.

1. Clean the header thoroughly.
2. Store the header in a dry, protected place if possible. If storing the header outdoors, always cover it with a waterproof canvas or other protective material.

NOTE:

If storing the header outdoors, remove the drapers and store them in a dark, dry place. If not removing the drapers, store the header with the cutterbar lowered so that water and snow will not accumulate on the drapers. The weight of water and snow accumulation puts significant stress on the drapers and the header frame.

3. Lower the header onto blocks to keep the cutterbar off of the ground.
4. Lower the reel completely. If the header will be stored outdoors, tie the reel to the frame to prevent rotation caused by the wind.
5. Repaint all worn or chipped painted surfaces to prevent rust from forming.
6. Loosen the drive belts.
7. Lubricate the header thoroughly, leaving excess grease on the fittings to keep moisture out of the bearings.
8. Apply grease to the exposed threads, cylinder rods, and sliding surfaces of components.
9. Check for worn components and repair them as necessary.
10. Check for broken components and order the replacements from your Dealer. Immediate repair of these items will save time and effort at the beginning of next season.
11. Replace or tighten any missing or loose hardware. Ensure that loose hardware is tightened to the recommended torque value. For more information, refer to [7.1 Torque Specifications, page 727](#).

Chapter 4: Maintenance and Servicing

This chapter contains the information necessary to perform routine maintenance and occasional servicing tasks on your machine. The word “maintenance” refers to scheduled tasks that help your machine operate safely and effectively; “Service” refers to tasks that must be performed when a part needs to be repaired or replaced. For advanced service procedures, contact your Dealer.

A parts catalog is provided in the plastic manual case at the rear by the right header leg.

Log hours of operation and use the maintenance record provided (refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#)) to keep track of your scheduled maintenance.

4.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing

Observe all safety precautions before beginning service on the machine.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator’s seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, follow all the safety precautions listed before servicing header or opening drive covers.

Before servicing the machine, follow these steps:

1. Lower the header fully. If it is necessary to service the header in the raised position, always engage the safety props.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the park brake.
4. Wait for all moving parts to stop.

4.2 Maintenance Requirements

Regular maintenance is the best insurance against early wear and untimely breakdowns. Following the maintenance schedule will increase your machine's life. Log hours of operation, use the maintenance record, and keep copies of your maintenance records (refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#)).

Periodic maintenance requirements are organized according to service intervals. If a service interval specifies more than one timeframe, e.g., 100 hours or annually, service the machine at whichever interval is reached first.

IMPORTANT:

Recommended intervals are for average conditions. Service the machine more often if operating under adverse conditions (severe dust, extra heavy loads, etc.).




When servicing the machine, refer to the appropriate section in this Maintenance and Servicing chapter and use only specified fluids and lubricants. Refer to inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.

CAUTION

Carefully follow safety messages. For instructions, refer to [4.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 475](#) and [1 Safety, page 1](#).

4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record

Recording maintenance allows the user to keep track of when maintenance is performed.

Action:		✓ – Check					⬇ – Lubricate					▲ – Change				
	Hour meter reading															
	Service date															
	Serviced by															
First Use		Refer to 4.2.2 Break-In Inspection, page 478 .														
End of Season		Refer to 4.2.4 Equipment Servicing – End-of-Season, page 479 .														
10 Hours or Daily (Whichever Occurs First)																
✓	Hydraulic hoses and lines; refer to 4.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines, page 480 ⁸²															
✓	Knife sections, guards, and hold-downs; refer to 4.8 Knife, page 540 ⁸²															
✓	Tire pressure; refer to 4.16.3 Checking Tire Pressure, page 685 ⁸²															
⬇	Feed draper rollers; refer to Every 10 Hours, page 482															
✓	Link holder hooks; refer to 4.10.7 Checking Link Holder Hooks, page 602 ⁸²															
✓	Axle bolt torque; refer to 4.16.2 Checking Transport Assembly Bolt Torque, page 683															
25 Hours																
✓	Hydraulic oil level at reservoir; refer to 4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 501 ⁸²															
⬇	Knifeheads; refer to Every 25 Hours, page 483 ⁸²															
50 Hours or Annually																
⬇	Driveline and driveline universals; refer to Every 50 Hours, page 484															
⬇	Upper cross auger right bearing; refer to Every 50 Hours, page 484															
⬇	Upper cross auger sliding hubs; refer to Every 50 Hours, page 484															

82. MacDon recommends keeping a record of daily maintenance as evidence of a properly maintained machine.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

⬇	Upper cross auger center support and U-joint; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 484</i>																		
⬇	Float module auger pivots; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 484</i>																		
⬇	Feed draper roller bearings, 3 locations; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 484</i>																		
⬇	Reel drive chain (If chain is dry at next oiling interval – consider decreasing oiling interval.); refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 484</i>																		
▲	Knife drive box lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 578</i>																		
▲	Header drive main gearbox lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 497</i>																		
▲	Header drive completion gearbox lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 499</i>																		
100 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)																			
✓	Auger to pan and feed draper clearance; refer to <i>4.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance, page 517</i>																		
✓	Main gearbox lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 496</i>																		
✓	Completion gearbox lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 498</i>																		
✓	Reel drive chain tension; refer to <i>4.14.1 Reel Drive Chain, page 660</i>																		
✓	Reel finger/cutterbar clearance; refer to <i>4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627</i>																		
✓	Wheel bolt torque; refer to <i>4.16.1 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque, page 683</i>																		
✓	Knife drive box lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box, page 577</i>																		
✓	Knife drive box mounting bolts; refer to <i>Checking Mounting Bolts, page 578</i>																		
⬇	Auger drive chain; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 488</i>																		
⬇	Float pivots; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 488</i>																		
⬇	Float spring tensioners; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 488</i>																		
250 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)																			
⬇	Reel shaft bearings; refer to <i>Every 250 Hours, page 490</i>																		

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

⬇	Reel drive U-joint; refer to <i>Every 250 Hours, page 490</i>																		
⬇	Bell crank linkage; refer to <i>Every 250 Hours, page 490</i>																		
▲	Hydraulic oil filter; refer to <i>4.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 503</i>																		
500 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)																			
⬇	Gauge wheel / slow speed transport wheel bearings; refer to <i>Every 500 Hours, page 492</i>																		
⬇	Contour wheel hub; refer to <i>4.15.2 Lubricating Contour Wheel System, page 679</i>																		
✓	Header drive main gearbox chain tension; refer to <i>4.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox, page 514</i>																		
✓	Header drive completion gearbox chain tension; refer to <i>4.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox, page 515</i>																		
1000 Hours or 3 Years (Whichever Occurs First)																			
▲	Knife drive box lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 578</i>																		
▲	Header drive main gearbox lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 497</i>																		
▲	Header drive completion gearbox lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 499</i>																		
▲	Hydraulic oil; refer to <i>4.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir, page 502</i>																		

4.2.2 Break-In Inspection

Break-in inspection involves checking belts, fluids, and performing general machine inspections for loose hardware or other areas of concern. Break-in inspections ensure that all components can operate for an extended period without requiring service or replacement. The break-in period is the first 50 hours of operation after the machine's initial start up.

Inspection Interval	Item	Refer to
5 Minutes	Check hydraulic oil level in reservoir (check after first run-up and after the hydraulic hoses have filled with oil).	<i>4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 501</i>
5 Hours	Check for loose hardware and tighten to required torque.	<i>7.1 Torque Specifications, page 727</i>
10 Hours	Check auger drive chain tension.	<i>Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Thorough Method, page 521</i>
10 Hours	Check knife drive box mounting bolts.	<i>Checking Mounting Bolts, page 578</i>
10 Hours	Grease the feed draper bearings.	<i>Every 10 Hours, page 482</i>
50 Hours	Change float module gearbox oil.	<i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 497</i>

Inspection Interval	Item	Refer to
50 Hours	Change float module hydraulic oil filter.	4.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 503
50 Hours	Change knife drive box lubricant.	Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 578
50 Hours	Check gearbox chain tension.	4.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox, page 514 and 4.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox, page 515

4.2.3 Equipment Servicing – Preseason

Equipment should be inspected and serviced at the beginning of each operating season.



CAUTION

- Review this manual to refresh your memory on the safety and operating recommendations.
 - Review all the safety decals and other decals on the header and note the hazard areas.
 - Be sure all the shields and guards are properly installed and secured. Never alter or remove safety equipment.
 - Be sure you understand and have practiced safe use of all controls. Know the capacity and operating characteristics of the machine.
 - Ensure you have a first aid kit and fire extinguisher. Know where they are and how to use them.
1. Lubricate the machine completely. For instructions, refer to [4.3 Lubrication, page 482](#).
 2. Perform all annual maintenance tasks. For instructions, refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#).

4.2.4 Equipment Servicing – End-of-Season

Equipment should be inspected and serviced at the end of each operating season.



CAUTION

Never use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.



CAUTION

Cover the cutterbar and the knife guards to prevent injury from accidental contact.

1. Clean the header thoroughly.
2. Store the header in a dry, protected place, if possible. If storing the header outdoors, always cover the machine with a waterproof canvas or other protective material.

NOTE:

If storing the machine outdoors, remove the drapers and store them in a dark, dry place. If not removing the drapers, store the header with the cutterbar lowered so that water and snow will not accumulate on the drapers. The weight of water and snow accumulation puts significant stress on the drapers and header.

3. Lower the header onto blocks to keep the cutterbar off of the ground.
4. Lower the reel completely. If the header will be stored outdoors, tie the reel to the frame to prevent rotation caused by the wind.

5. Repaint all worn or chipped painted surfaces to prevent rust.
6. Loosen the drive belts.
7. Lubricate the header thoroughly, leaving excess grease on the fittings.
8. Apply grease to exposed threads, cylinder rods, and the sliding surfaces of components.
9. Lubricate the knife. Refer to the inside back cover for the recommended lubricants.
10. Check for broken components and order replacements from your Dealer. Immediate repair of these items will save time and effort at the beginning of next season.
11. Tighten any loose hardware. For torque specifications, refer to [7.1 Torque Specifications, page 727](#).

4.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines

Check hydraulic hoses and lines daily for signs of leaks.

WARNING

- **Avoid high-pressure fluids.** Escaping fluid can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Relieve pressure before disconnecting hydraulic lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure. Keep hands and body away from pin holes and nozzles which eject fluids under high pressure.
- **If any fluid is injected into the skin, it must be surgically removed within a few hours by a doctor familiar with this type of injury or gangrene may result.**



Figure 4.1: Hydraulic Pressure Hazard

- **Use a piece of cardboard or paper to search for leaks.**

IMPORTANT:

Keep hydraulic coupler tips and connectors clean. Allowing dust, dirt, water, or foreign material to enter the system is the major cause of hydraulic system damage. Do **NOT** attempt to service hydraulic systems in the field. Precision fits require a perfectly clean connection during overhaul.



Figure 4.2: Testing for Hydraulic Leaks

1. Start the machine, and engage the header. While running, raise and lower the header and reel. Also extend and retract the reel. Run it for 10 minutes.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Once the machine has been sitting still for several hours, walk around it checking for hoses, lines, and fittings that are visibly leaking oil.

4.3 Lubrication

Grease zerk locations are marked on the machine by decals showing a grease gun and the greasing interval, which will be specified in terms of hours of header operation.

Refer to the inside back cover for information on the recommended lubricants.

Log the header's hours of operation. Use the maintenance record provided in this manual to keep track of what maintenance procedures have been performed on the header, and when. For more information, refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#).

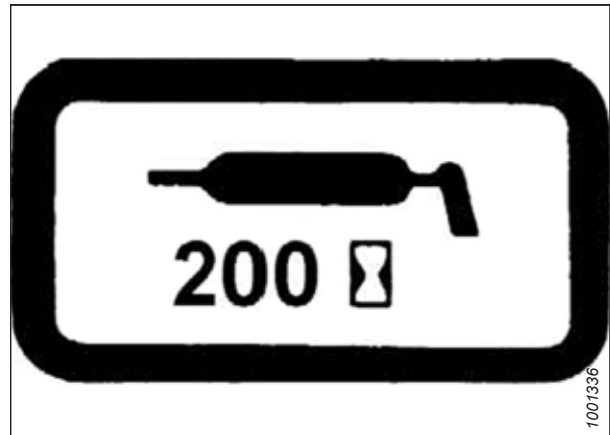


Figure 4.3: Grease Interval Decal

4.3.1 Lubrication Intervals

The lubrication intervals are specified in terms of hours of header operation. Maintaining accurate maintenance records is the best way to ensure these procedures are performed in a timely fashion.

Every 10 Hours

Daily maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

IMPORTANT:

When greasing, clear any debris and excess grease from around the bearing and bearing housing. Inspect the condition of the bearing and bearing housing. Grease the feed draper drive roller bearing until grease comes out of the seal. Wipe any excess grease from area after greasing.

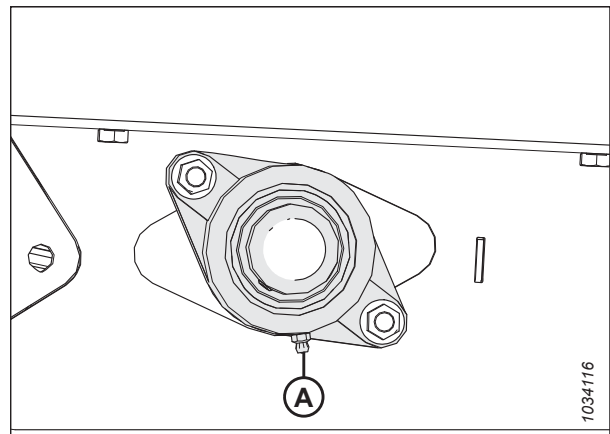


Figure 4.4: Feed Draper Drive Roller

IMPORTANT:

When greasing, clear any debris, and excess grease from around the bearing housing. Inspect the condition of the roller and bearing housing. Grease the feed draper idler roller bearing until grease comes out of the seal. Initial greasing on a new header may require additional grease (may require 5-10 pumps). Wipe any excess grease from area after greasing.

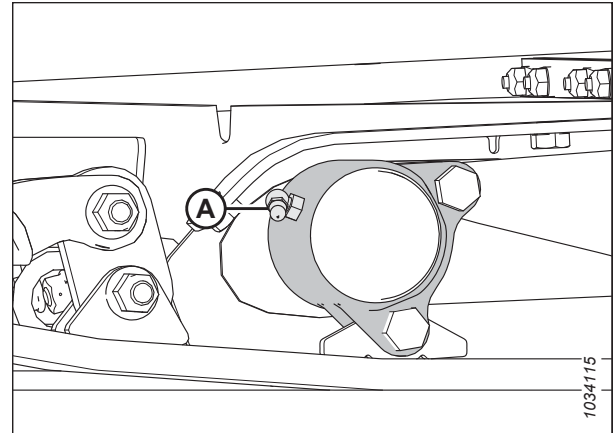


Figure 4.5: Feed Draper Idler Roller

Every 25 Hours

Regular maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

Lubricate knifehead (A) every 25 hours. Check for signs of excessive heating on the first few guards after greasing. If required, relieve the pressure by pressing the check-ball in the grease fitting.

IMPORTANT:

Overgreasing the knifehead puts pressure on the knife, causing it to rub against the guards, resulting in excessive wear from binding. Do **NOT** overgrease the knifehead. Apply only one to two pumps using a mechanical grease gun (do **NOT** use an electric grease gun). If more than six to eight pumps of the grease gun are required to fill the cavity, replace the seal in the knifehead. For instructions, refer to [4.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing, page 543](#).

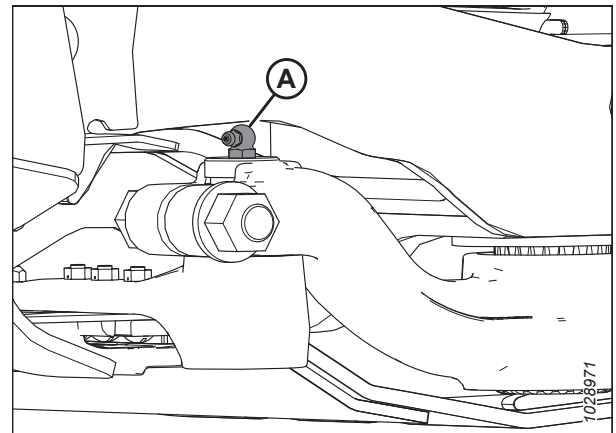


Figure 4.6: Knifehead

Every 50 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

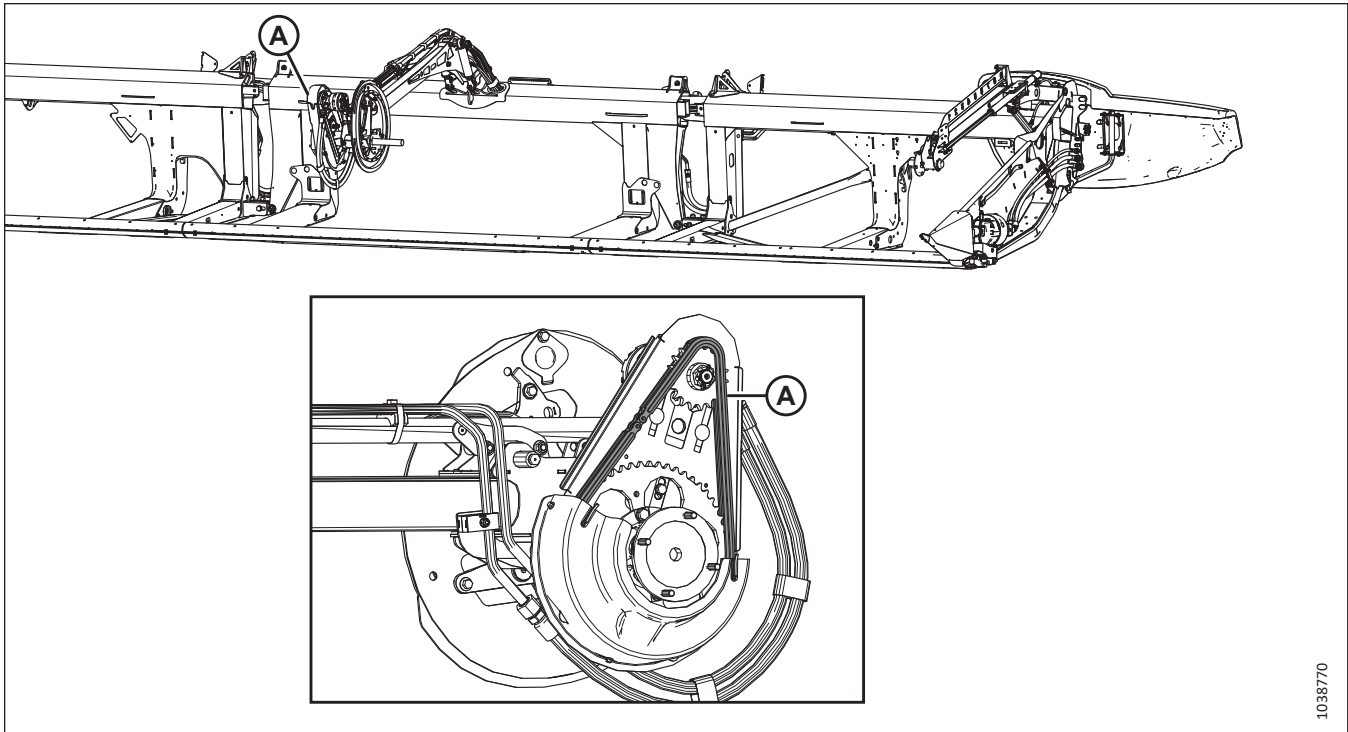


Figure 4.7: Reel

A - Reel Drive Chain. To lubricate, refer to [4.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain, page 494](#).

IMPORTANT:

Use chain oil that has a viscosity of 100-150 sCt at 40°C (typically medium to heavy chain oil) or mineral oil Sae 20W50 that has no detergents or solvents.

NOTE:

If chain is dry at next oiling interval, decrease the oiling interval.

1038770

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

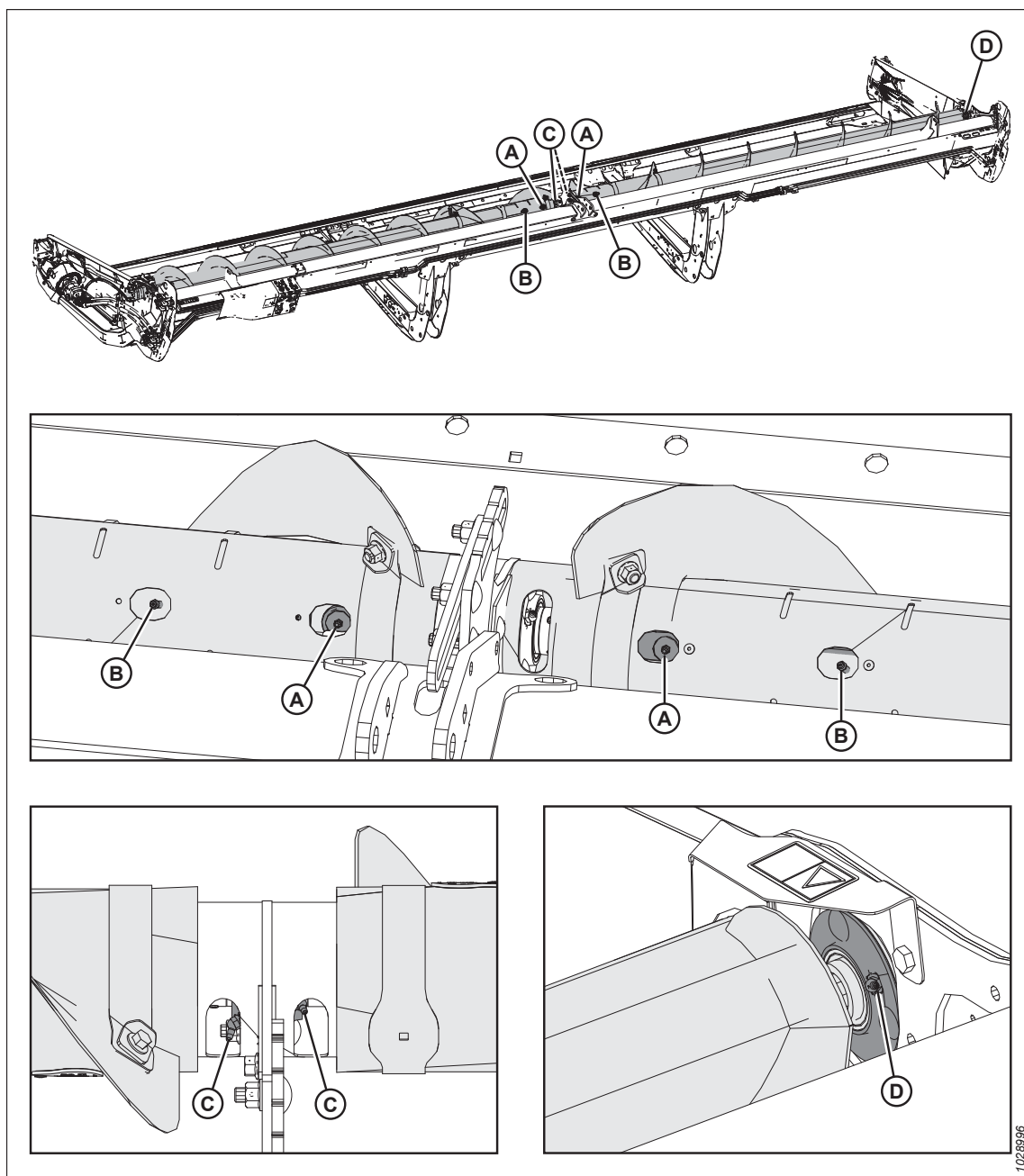


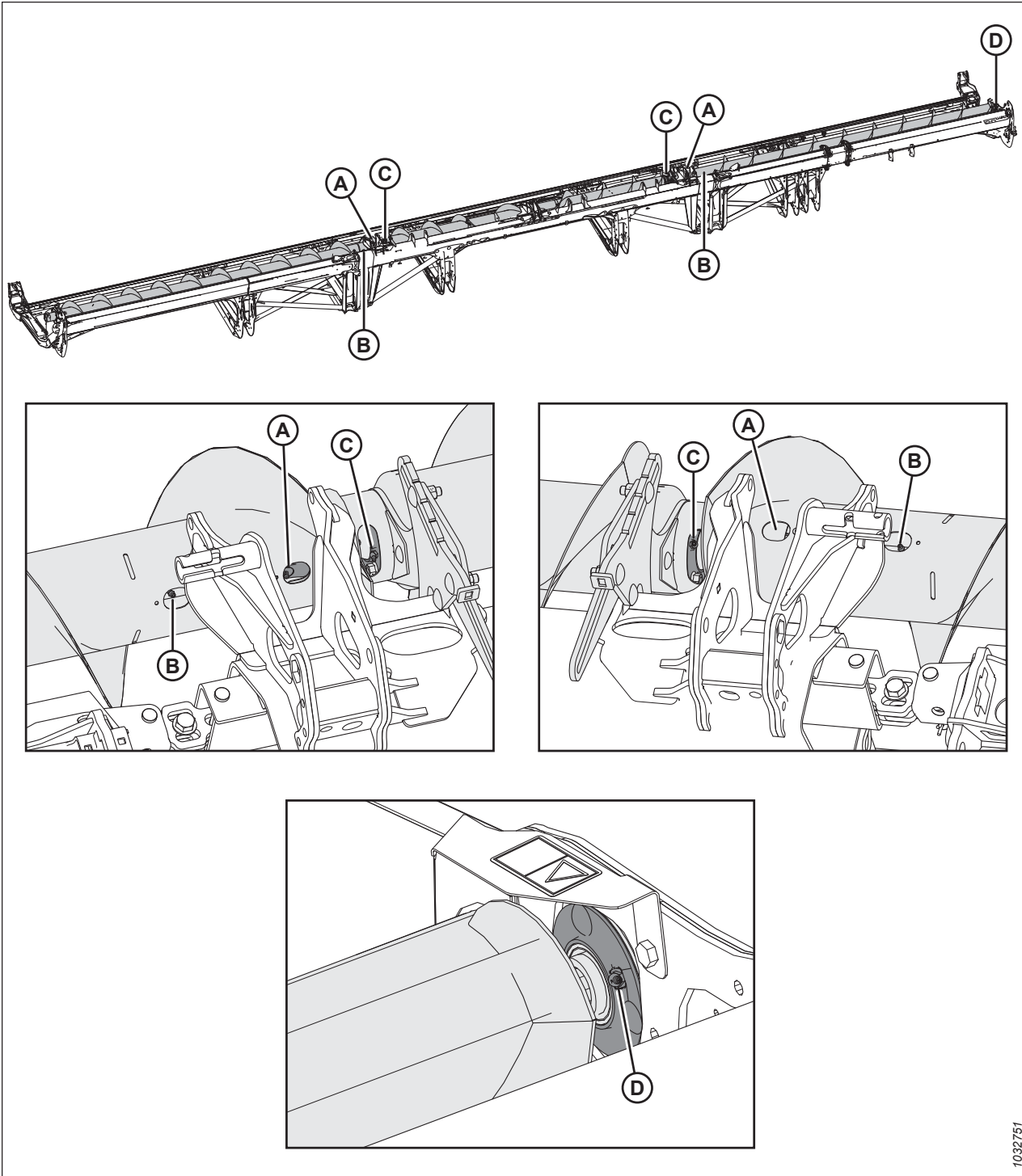
Figure 4.8: Two-Piece Upper Cross Auger

A - Upper Cross Auger U-joints (Two Places)
C - Upper Cross Auger Center Bearings (Two Places)

B - Upper Cross Auger Sliding Hubs (Two Places)
D - Right End Bearing

IMPORTANT:

The Upper Cross Auger must be greased regularly even when turned off as components of the UCA move when the header flexes, regardless of whether the auger is turning or not.



1032751

Figure 4.9: Three-Piece Upper Cross Auger

A - Upper Cross Auger U-joints (Two Places)

C - Upper Cross Auger Center Bearings (Two Places)

B - Upper Cross Auger Sliding Hubs (Two Places)

D - Right End Bearing

IMPORTANT:

The Upper Cross Auger must be greased regularly even when turned off as components of the UCA move when the header flexes, regardless of whether the auger is turning or not.

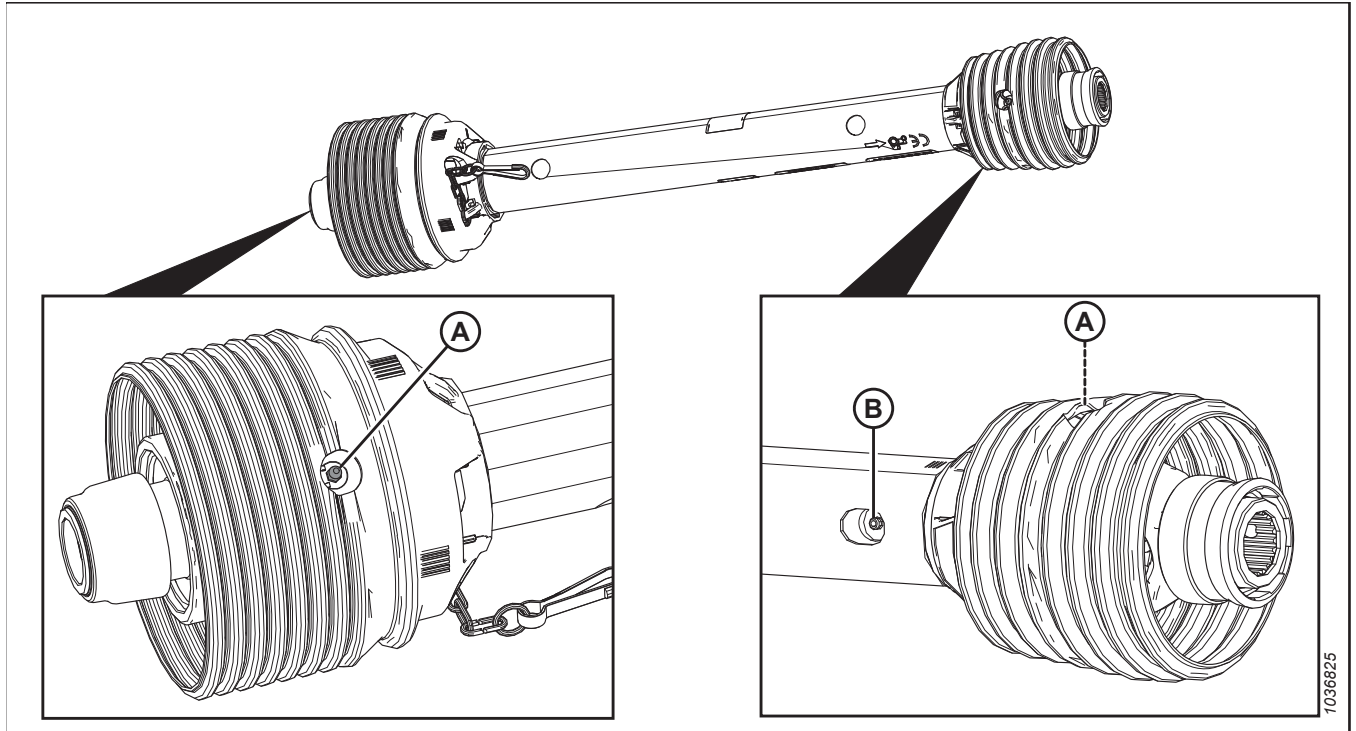


Figure 4.10: FM200

A - Driveline Universal (Two Places)

B - Driveline Slip Joint⁸³

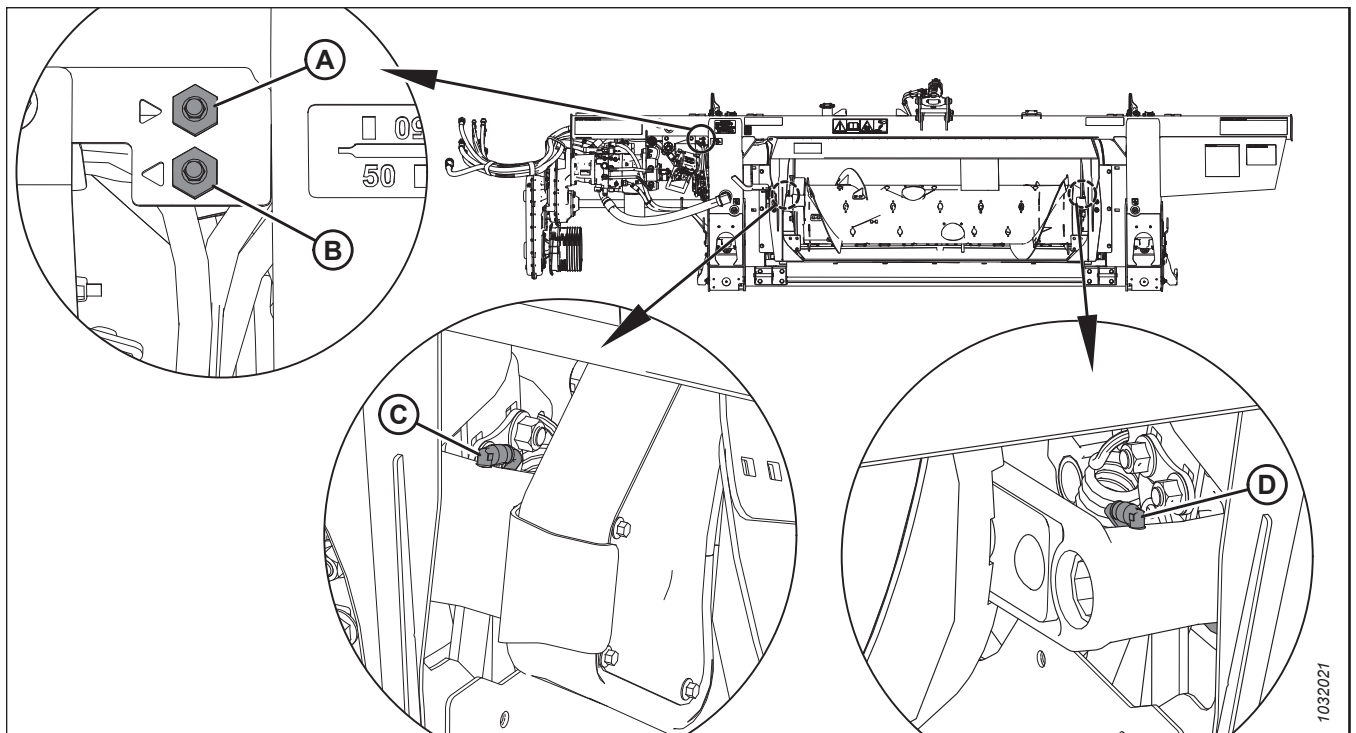


Figure 4.11: FM200

A - Remote Grease Line for Auger Pivot (Right Side)

B - Remote Grease Line for Auger Pivot (Left Side)

C - Auger Pivot (Left Side)

D - Auger Pivot (Right Side)

83. Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 10% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

Every 100 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

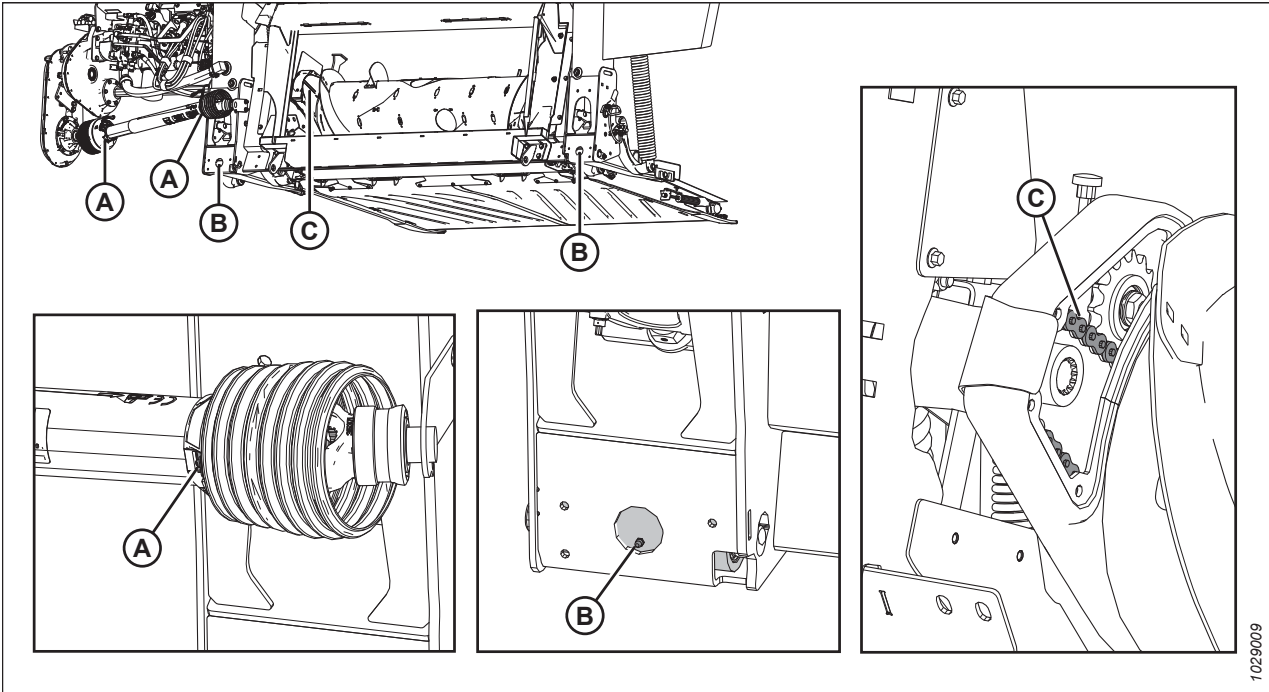


Figure 4.12: FM200

A - Driveline Guards (Both Ends)

B - Float Pivots (Right and Left)

C - Auger Drive Chain. To lubricate, refer to [4.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain, page 495](#).

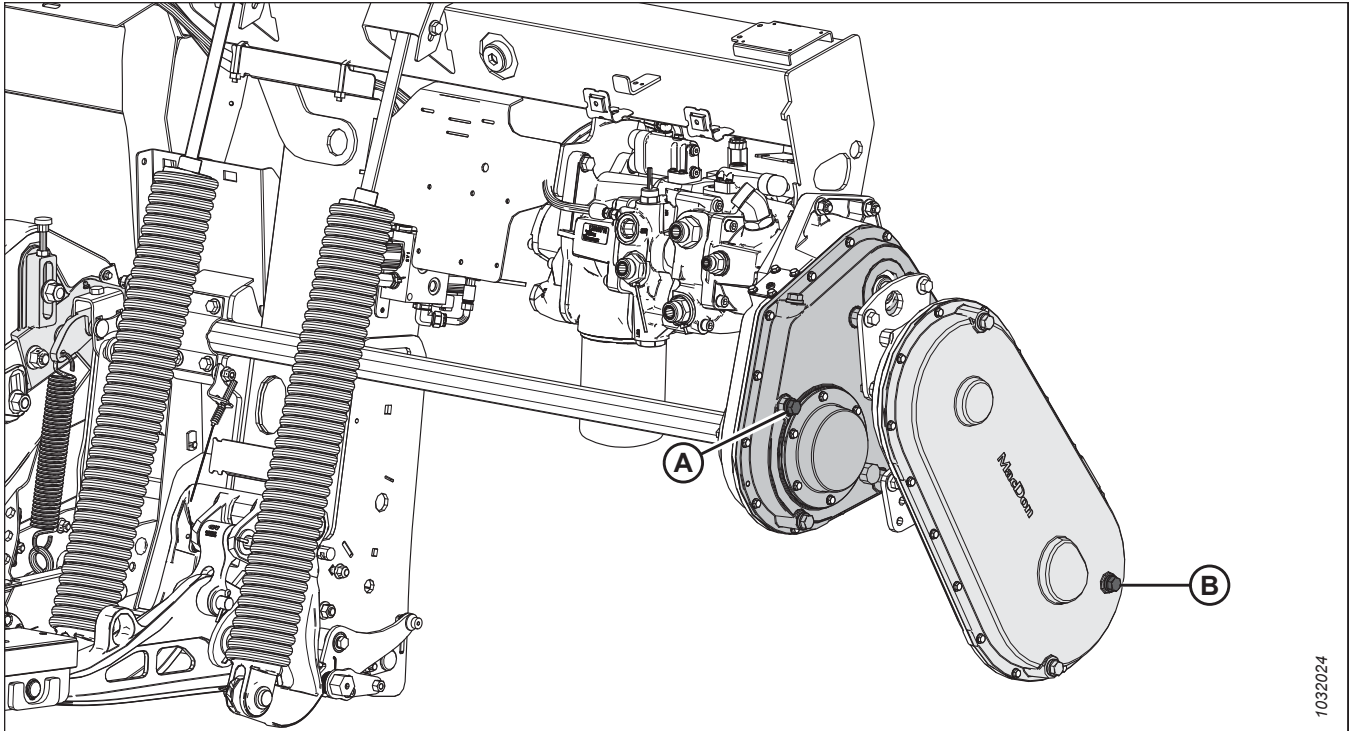


Figure 4.13: FM200

A - Main Gearbox Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [4.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 496](#).

B - Completion Gearbox Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [4.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 498](#).

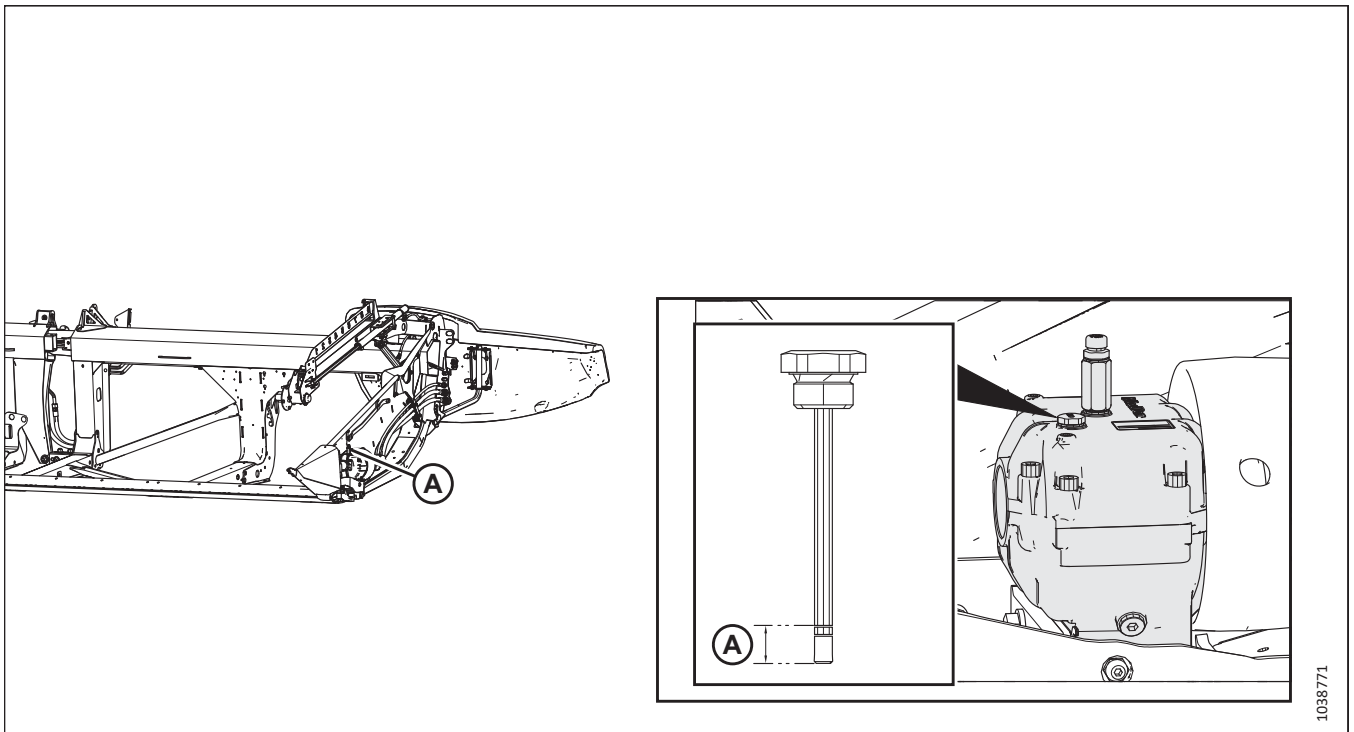


Figure 4.14: Knife Drive Box

B - Knife Drive Box Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box , page 577](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

Every 250 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

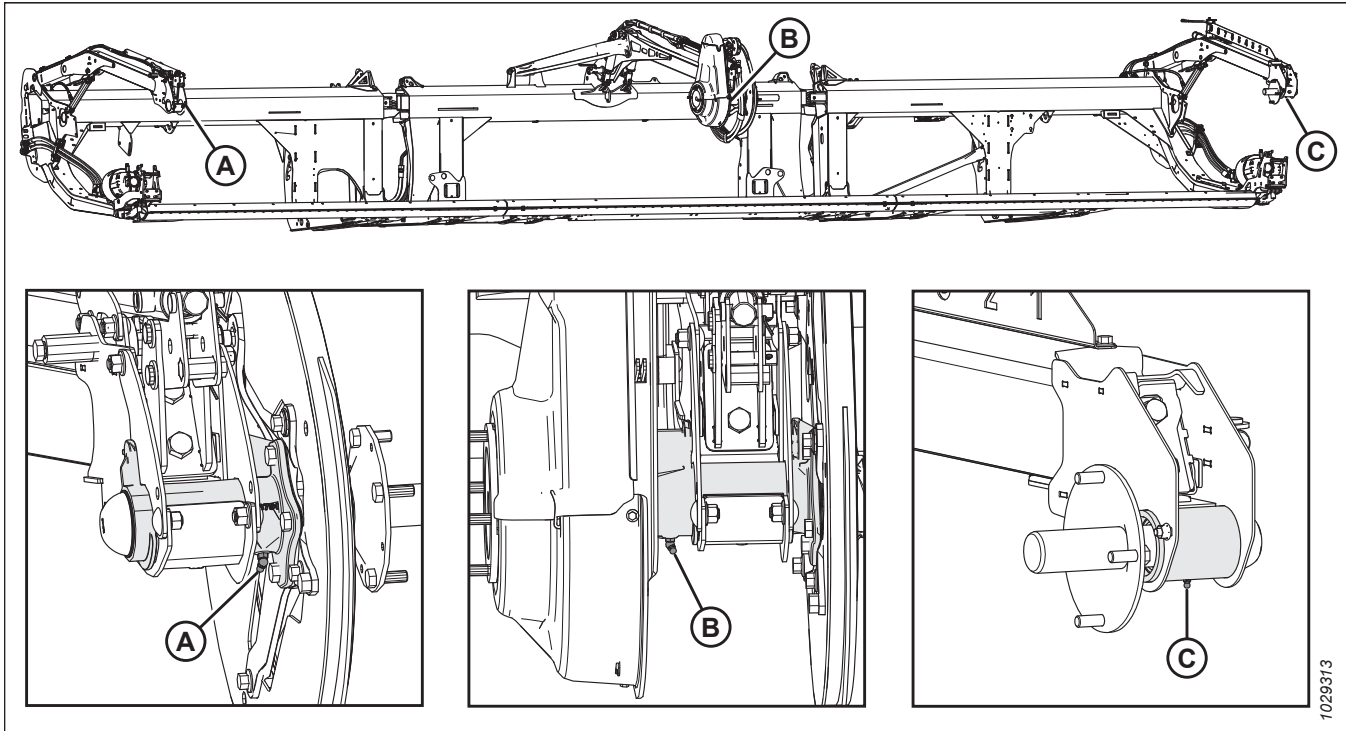


Figure 4.15: Reel

A - Reel Right Bearing (One Place)

B - Reel Center Bearing (One Place)

C - Reel Left Bearing (One Place)

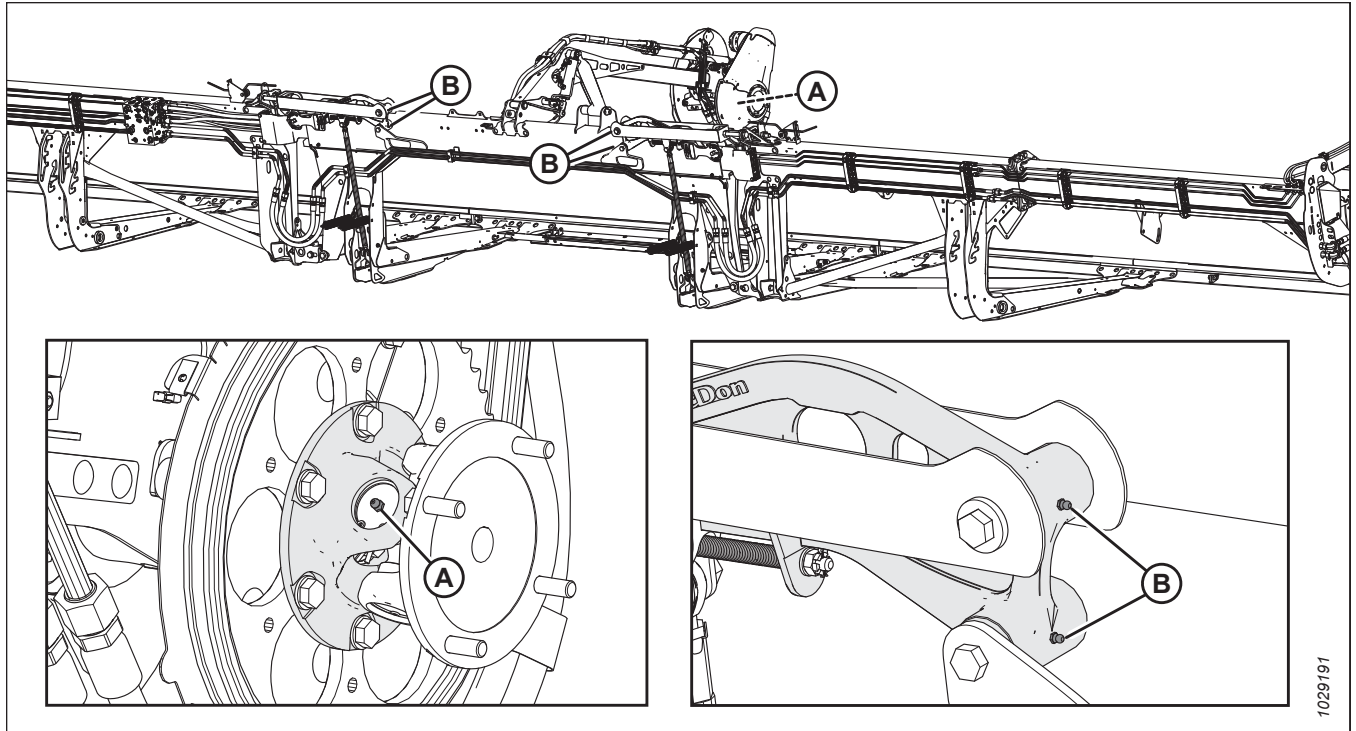


Figure 4.16: Reel

A - Reel U-joint (One Place)⁸⁴

B - Flex Linkage (Two Places) – Both Sides

84. U-joint has an extended lubrication cross and bearing kit. Stop greasing when greasing becomes difficult or if U-joint stops taking grease. Overgreasing will damage U-joint. Six to eight pumps are sufficient at first grease (factory). Increase grease interval as U-joint wears and requires more than six pumps.

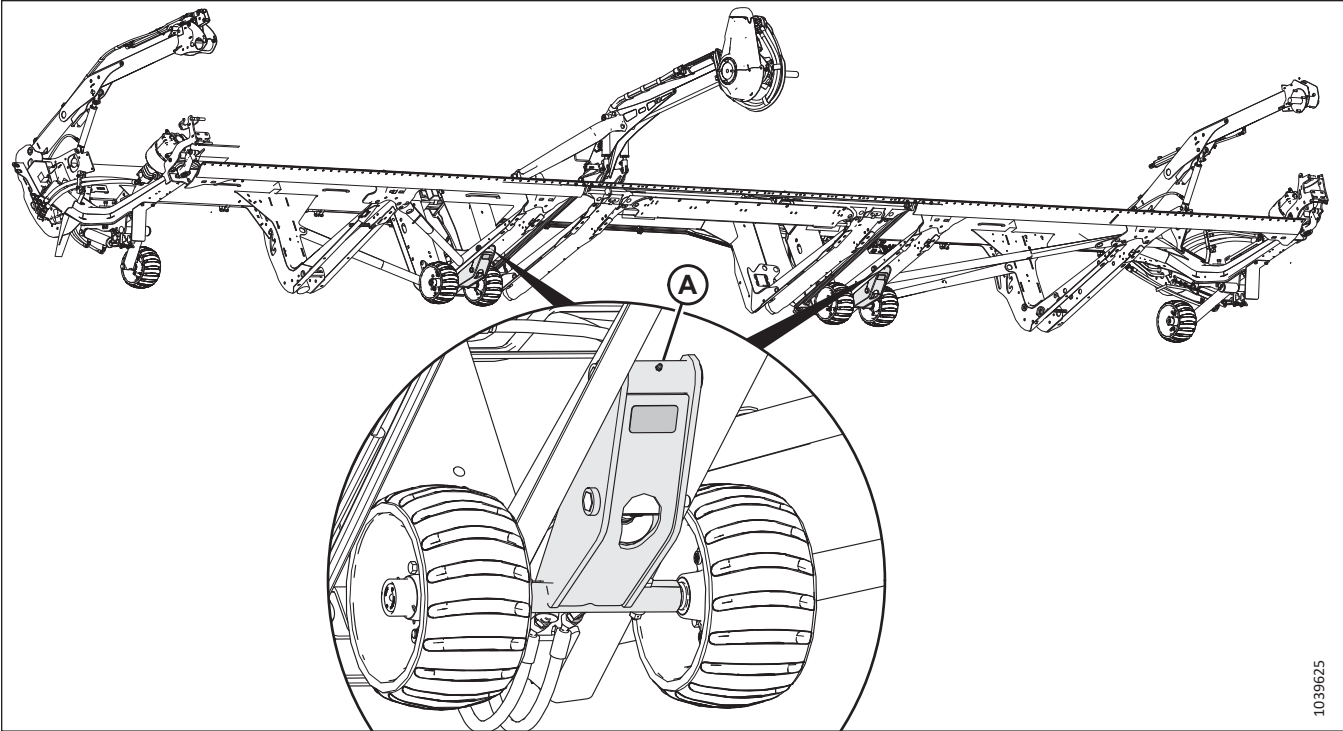


Figure 4.17: Inner Contour Wheel Assemblies

A - Inner Wheel Assemblies (Two Places)

Every 500 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

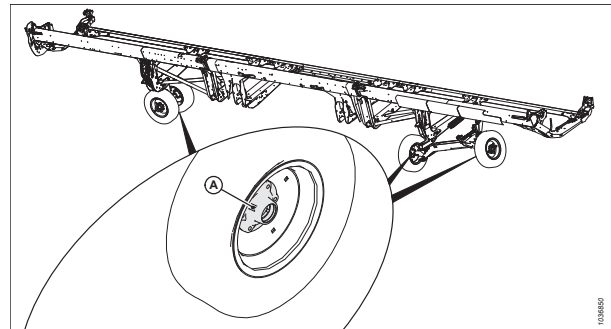


Figure 4.18: Every 500 Hours

A - Wheel Bearings (Four Places)

4.3.2 Greasing Procedure

Greasing points are identified on the machine by decals showing a grease gun and grease interval in hours of operation. Grease point layout decals are located on the header and on the right side of the float module.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

Refer to inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

Log hours of operation and use the Maintenance Record provided to keep a record of scheduled maintenance. Refer to [4.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 476](#).

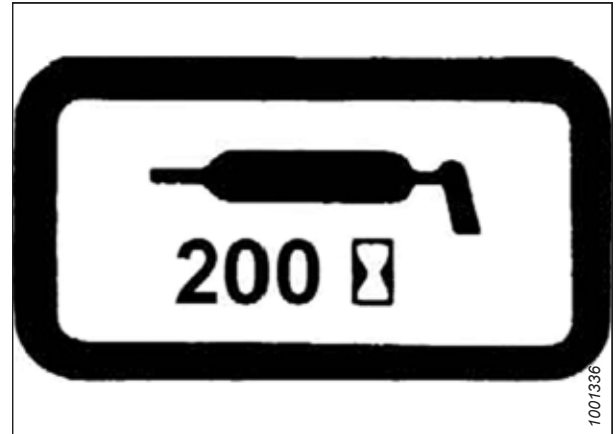


Figure 4.19: Greasing Interval Decal

1. Wipe the grease fitting with a clean cloth before greasing to avoid injecting it with dirt and grit.

IMPORTANT:

Use clean, high-temperature, extreme-pressure grease only.

2. Inject the grease through the fitting with a grease gun until grease overflows the fitting (except where noted).
3. Leave the excess grease on the fitting to keep the dirt out.
4. Replace any loose or broken grease fittings immediately.
5. Remove and thoroughly clean any fitting that will not take grease. Also clean the lubricant passageway. Replace the fitting if necessary.

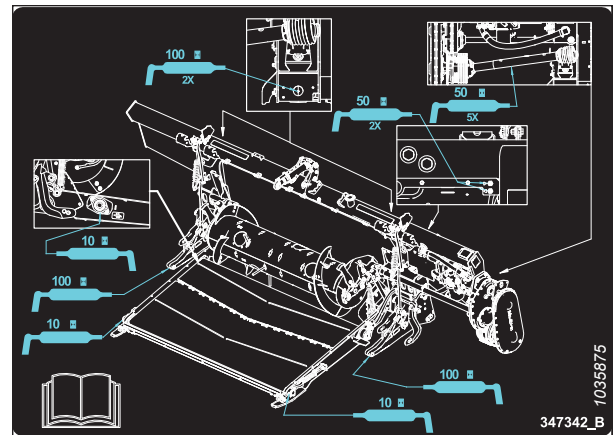


Figure 4.20: FM200 Grease Point Layout Decal

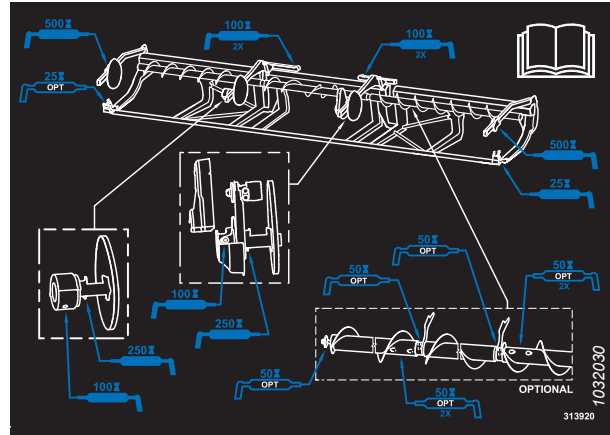


Figure 4.21: FD2 Series Grease Point Layout Decal

4.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain

Lubrication protects the chain and drive sprockets against wear.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

WARNING

Be sure all bystanders are clear of the machine before starting the engine or engaging any header drives.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use grease or motor oils to lubricate reel drive chain.

1. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41*.

IMPORTANT:

Use a chain oil with a viscosity of 100–150 sCt at 40°C (104°F) (typically medium to heavy chain oil) or a mineral oil (SAE 20W50) that has no detergents or solvents.

2. Apply a liberal amount of chain oil with an oil can, brush, or aerosol to the inside of chain (A) while manually rotating reel to cover all of the chain.
3. Reinstall the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43*.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

4. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
5. Run the header and reel for a few minutes so the oil will spread into the chain.

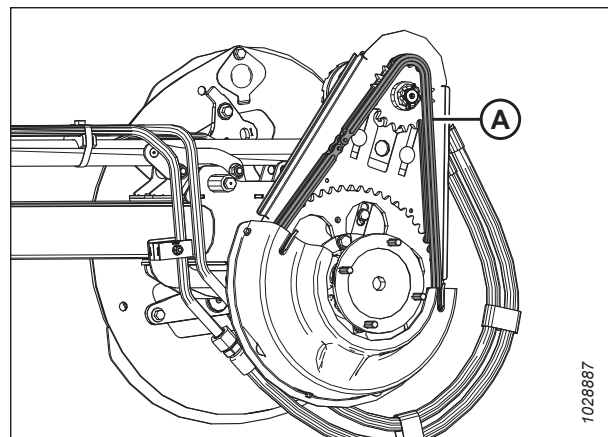


Figure 4.22: Drive Chain

4.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain

Lubricate the auger drive chain according to the interval specified in the maintenance schedule. The auger drive chain can be lubricated with the float module attached to the combine, but this procedure is easier to perform when the float module is detached from the header.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

The auger drive cover consists of an upper and lower cover and a metal inspection panel. Only the metal inspection panel needs to be removed to perform this procedure.

1. Remove four bolts (A) and metal inspection panel (B).

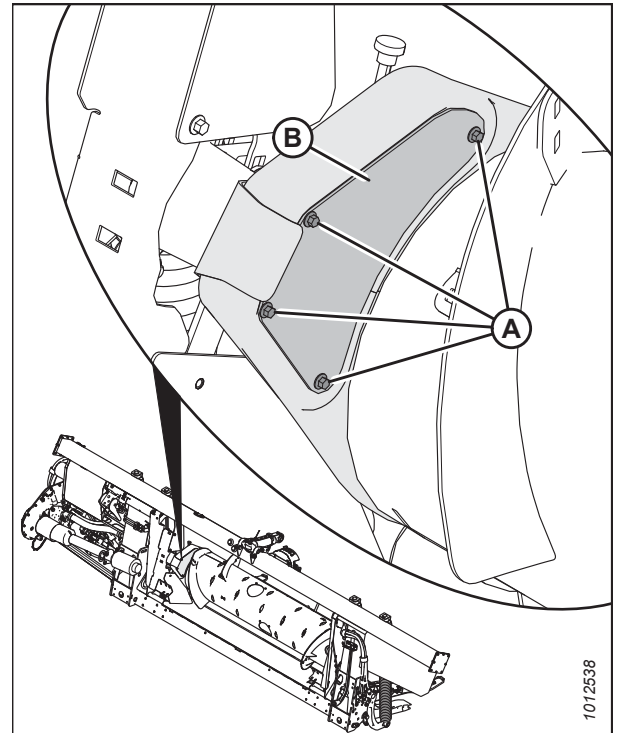


Figure 4.23: Auger Drive Inspection Panel

2. Apply a liberal amount of grease to chain (A), drive sprocket (B), and idler sprocket (C).
3. Rotate the auger and apply grease to more areas of the chain, if necessary.

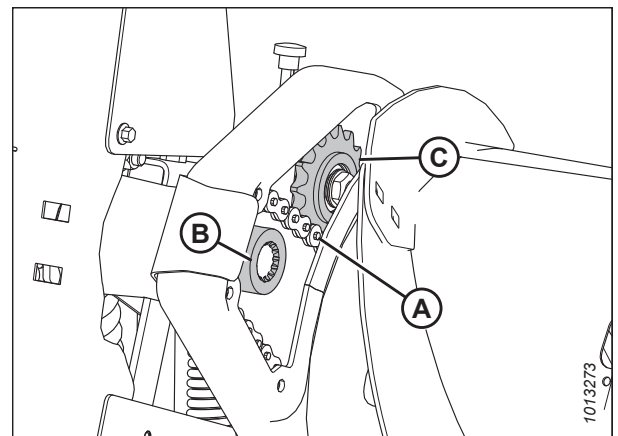


Figure 4.24: Auger Drive Chain

4. Reinstall metal inspection panel (B). Secure the panel with four bolts (A).

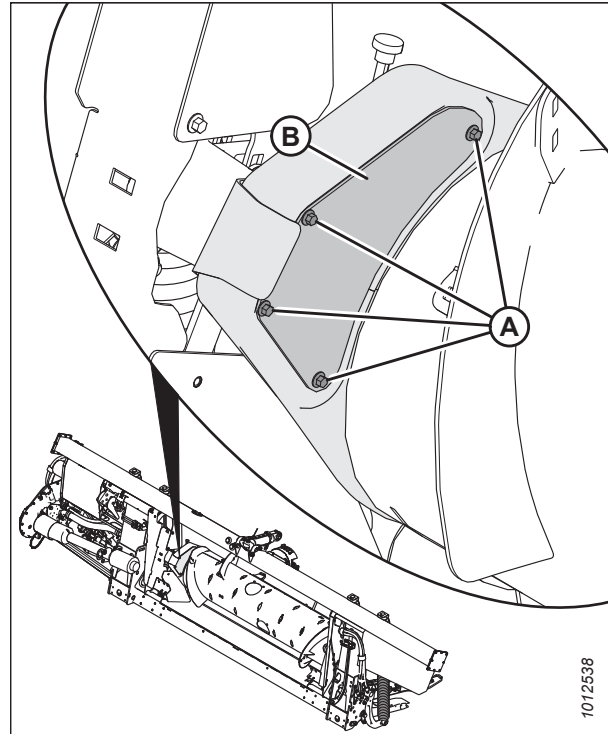


Figure 4.25: Auger Drive Inspection Panel

4.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox

Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox

Check the header drive gearbox oil level every 100 hours.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove oil level plug (A) from main gearbox (B) and check that the oil level is up to the bottom of the hole.
4. Add oil if required. For instructions, refer to [Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 497](#).
5. Reinstall oil level plug (A).

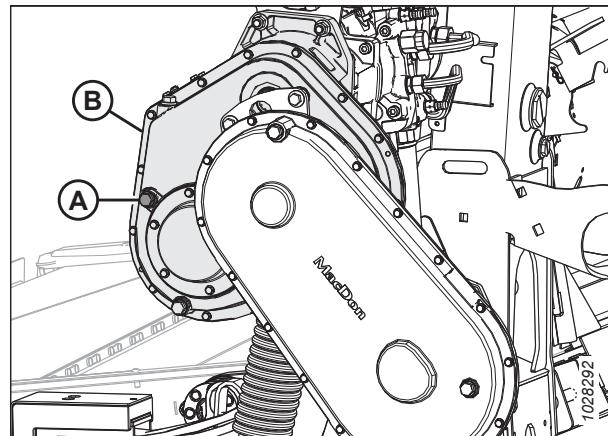


Figure 4.26: Header Drive Main Gearbox

Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox

The main gearbox includes fill, check, and drain plugs for quickly checking and servicing the gear lubricant while mounted to the float module.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Remove filler plug (B) and oil level plug (A) from the main gearbox.
2. Add oil into filler hole (B) until it runs out of oil level plug hole (A). Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.
3. Replace oil level plug (A) and filler plug (B).

NOTE:

The oil drain plug is magnetic. Ensure the magnetic plug is installed in the oil drain position.

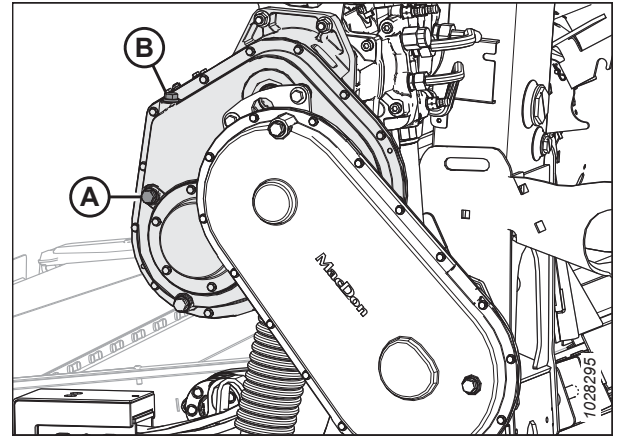


Figure 4.27: Header Drive Main Gearbox

Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox

Change the header drive gearbox oil after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.
3. Raise or lower the header to position oil drain plug (A) at its lowest point.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 4 liters [1 US gal]) underneath the gearbox drain to collect the oil.
6. Remove oil drain plug (A) and filler plug (C), and allow the oil to drain.
7. Replace oil drain plug (A) and remove oil level plug (B).

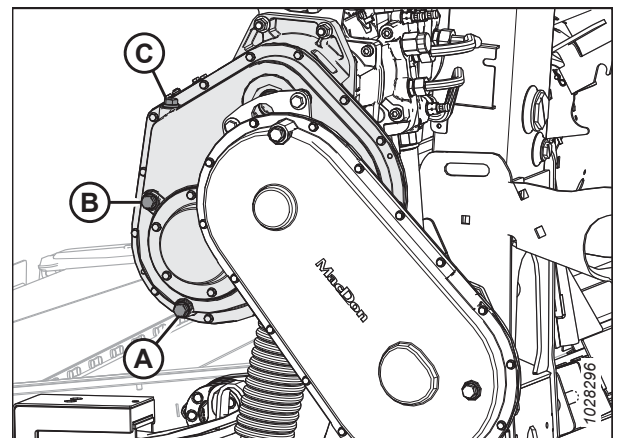


Figure 4.28: Header Drive Main Gearbox

8. Add oil through filler plug (C) until it runs out of oil level hole (B). Refer to this manual's inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

NOTE:

The main gearbox holds approximately 2.75 liters (2.9 quarts) of oil.

9. Replace oil level plug (B) and filler plug (C).

4.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Check the header drive gearbox oil level every 100 hours.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove oil level plug (A) from the completion gearbox. The oil should be at the level of the port.
4. If there is an insufficient amount of oil in the completion gearbox, add oil through filler plug (B). For instructions, refer to [Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 499](#).
5. Reinstall oil level plug (A).

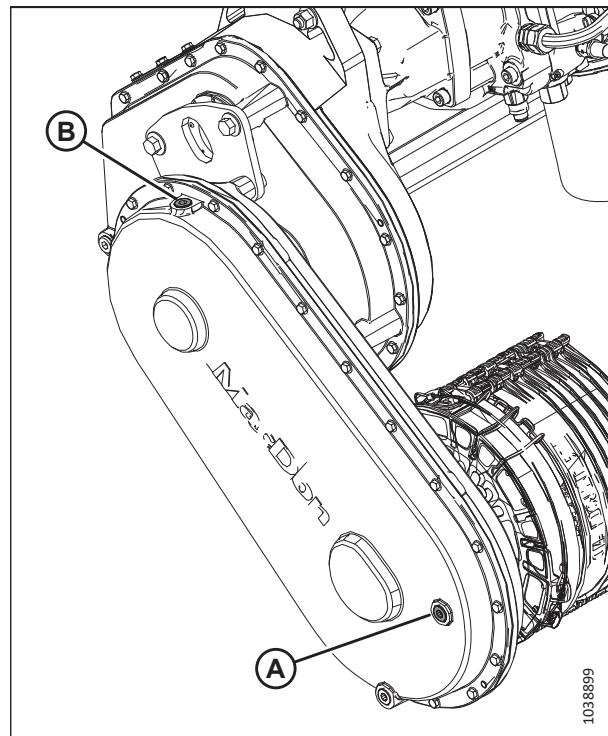


Figure 4.29: Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox

The completion gearbox includes fill, check, and drain plugs for quickly checking and servicing the gear lubricant while mounted to the float module.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the cutterbar to the ground, and ensure the completion gearbox is in working position.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove filler plug (B) and oil level plug (A).
4. Add oil into filler hole (B) until it runs out of oil level plug hole (A). Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.
5. Replace oil level plug (A) and filler plug (B). Torque plugs to 30–40 Nm (22–30 lbf·ft).

NOTE:

The oil drain plug is magnetic. Ensure the magnetic plug is installed in the oil drain position.

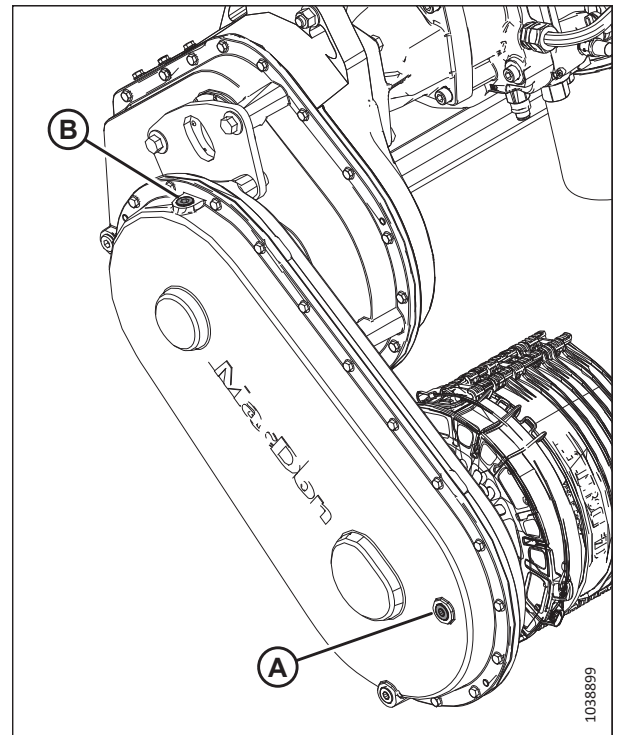


Figure 4.30: Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Change the header drive gearbox oil after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Raise or lower the header to position oil drain plug (A) at its lowest point.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 4 liters [1 US gal]) underneath the gearbox drain to collect the oil.
6. Remove oil drain plug (A) and filler plug (C), and allow the oil to drain.
7. Replace oil drain plug (A).

NOTE:

The oil drain plug is magnetic. Ensure the magnetic plug is installed in oil drain position (A), not in oil level check position (B).

8. Remove oil level plug (B).
9. Add oil through filler plug (C) until it runs out of oil level hole (B). Refer to this manual's inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

NOTE:

The header drive gearbox holds approximately 2.25 liters (2.4 quarts) of oil.

10. Replace oil level plug (B) and filler plug (C).

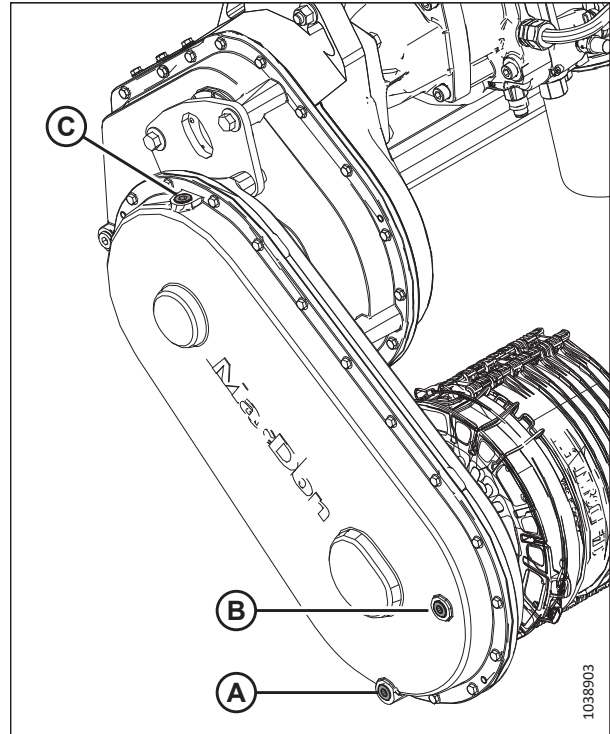


Figure 4.31: Header Drive Completion Gearbox

4.4 Hydraulics

The float module frame acts as an oil reservoir. Refer to the inside back cover for information on the float module's oil requirements.

4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir

Check the hydraulic oil level in the reservoir every 25 hours.

NOTE:

Check the level when the oil is cold.

1. Check the oil level using lower sight (A) and upper sight (B) with the cutterbar just touching the ground and with the center-link retracted.
2. Ensure the oil is at the appropriate level for the terrain as follows:
 - **Normal terrain (1):** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is empty.
 - **Hilly terrain (2):** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is up to one-half filled.

NOTE:

It may be necessary to slightly reduce the oil level when ambient temperatures are above 35°C (95°F) to prevent overflow at the breather when normal operating temperatures are reached.

NOTE:

It is **OK** to use the hilly terrain oil level even in normal terrain as long as the fill neck extension is installed (MD #B6057).

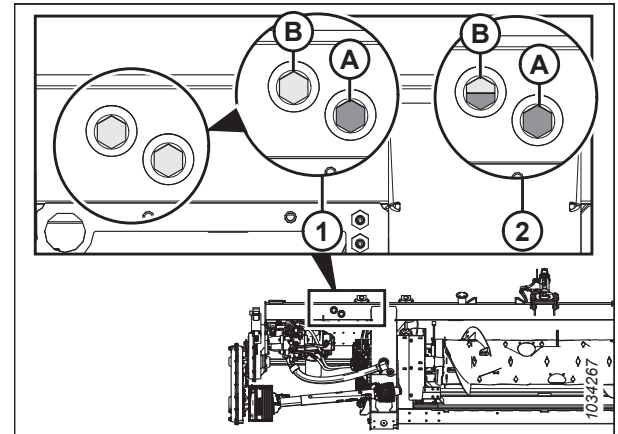


Figure 4.32: Oil Level Sight Glasses

4.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir

If the oil level in the hydraulic reservoir is low, or if the oil has been drained, oil will need to be added.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

2. Clean any dirt or debris from filler cap (A).

CAUTION

The oil reservoir may be under pressure; remove the cap slowly.

3. Turn filler cap (A) clockwise to remove it.
4. Fill the hydraulic oil reservoir with warm oil (approximately 21°C [70°F]) until the appropriate fill level is reached. For instructions, refer to [4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 501](#) for information on how to check the hydraulic oil level. Refer to this manual's inside back cover for information on the capacity of the reservoir and the type of oil to use.

IMPORTANT:

Warm oil will flow through the mesh filler screen better than cold oil. Do **NOT** remove the screen.

5. Reinstall filler cap (A).
6. Recheck the oil level. For instructions, refer to [4.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 501](#).

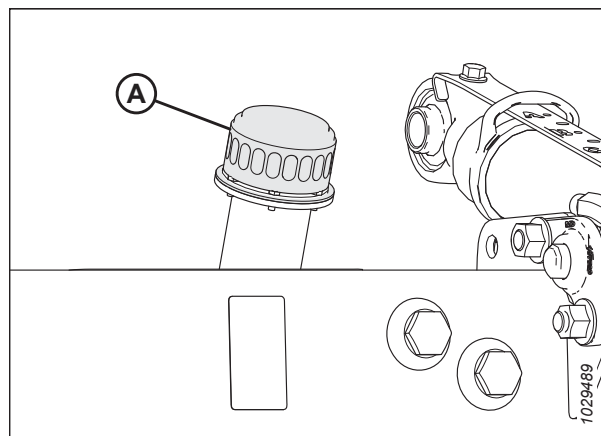


Figure 4.33: Oil Reservoir Filler Cap

4.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir

Change the hydraulic oil in the reservoir every 1000 hours or 3 years (whichever comes first).

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start engine.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Place a suitably sized container (at least 50 liters [13 gallons]) under each of the two oil drain plugs (A) located at the back on each side of the frame.
5. Remove oil drain plugs (A) with a 7/8 in. hex socket and allow the oil to drain.
6. Replace oil drain plugs (A) when reservoir is empty.
7. Change the oil filter if required. For instructions, refer to [4.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 503](#).
8. Add oil to the reservoir. For instructions, refer to [4.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir, page 501](#).

NOTE:

The hydraulic oil tank capacity is approximately 95 liters (25 gallons).

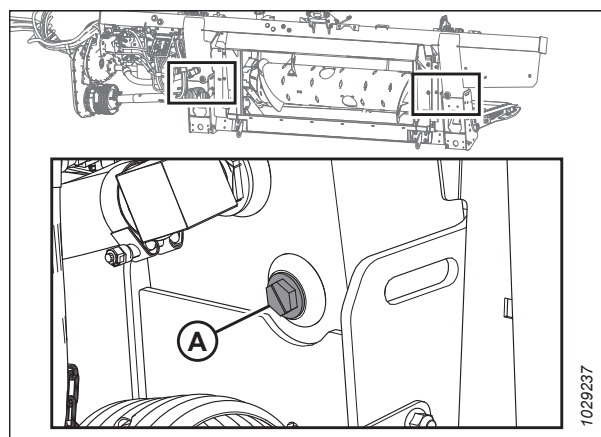


Figure 4.34: Reservoir Drain

4.4.4 Changing Oil Filter

Change the oil filter after the first 50 hours of operation and every 250 hours thereafter.

Obtain filter kit (MD #320360)⁸⁵ from your MacDon Dealer.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Clean around the mating surfaces of filter (A) and integrated pump (B).
3. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 1 liter [0.26 gallons]) under the filter to collect oil runoff.
4. Twist-off filter (A) by hand and clean the exposed filter port in the integrated pump.
5. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the O-ring provided with the new filter.
6. Turn the new filter onto integrated pump (B) until the O-ring contacts the mating surface. Tighten the filter an additional 1/2 to 3/4 turn by hand.

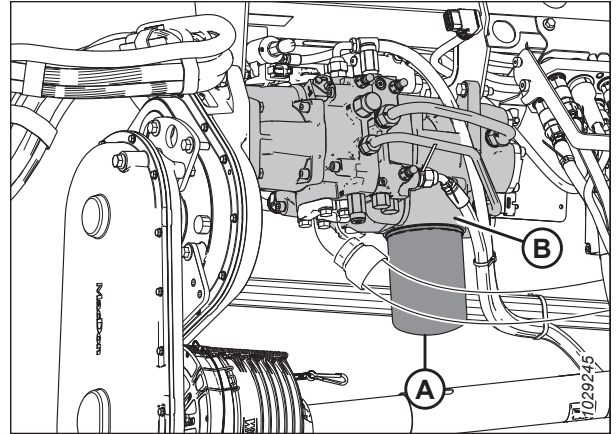


Figure 4.35: FM200 Integrated Pump

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use a filter wrench to install the new filter. Overtightening can damage the O-ring and filter.

85. Part number MD #202986 is printed on the filter, but service the filter using kit MD #320360. The kit includes installation instructions.

4.5 Electrical System

The electrical system for the header is powered by the combine. The header has various lights and sensors that require power.

4.5.1 Replacing Light Bulbs

Lights are an important safety feature. Replace damaged or malfunctioning bulbs or lamps immediately.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

Use bulb trade #1156 for amber transport lights and #1157 for the red tail light (Slow Speed Transport option).

Clearance Lights (North America Only)

1. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the three screws (A) from the fixture, and remove the plastic lens. Retain screws (A).
2. Replace the bulb, and reinstall the plastic lens and screws.

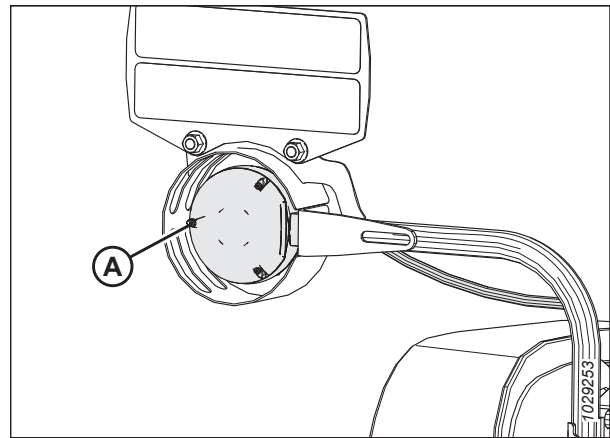


Figure 4.36: Left Clearance Light

Slow Speed Transport Lights

3. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove screws (A) from the fixture, and remove the plastic lens. Retain screws (A).
4. Replace the bulb, and reinstall the plastic lens and screws.

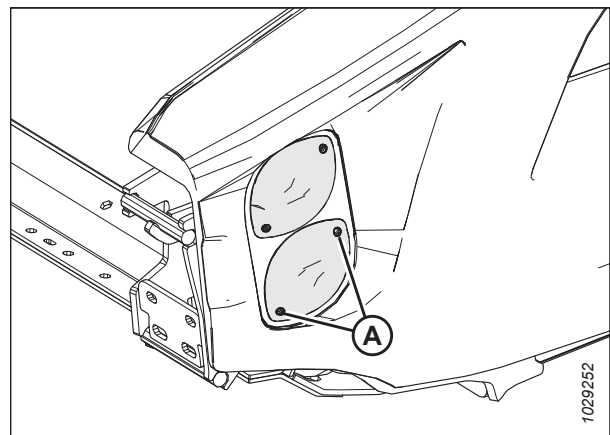


Figure 4.37: Optional Slow Speed Transport – Red and Amber Lights

4.6 Header Drive

The header drive consists of a driveline from the combine to the FM200 Float Module gearbox that drives the feed auger and hydraulic pumps. The pumps provide hydraulic power to the drapers, knives, and optional equipment.

4.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine

The driveline transfers power from the combine PTO to the header float module completion gearbox. A quick release collar allows the driveline to be removed when disconnecting the header float module from the combine.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Disconnect driveline safety chain (A) from the slot on the aluminum plate.

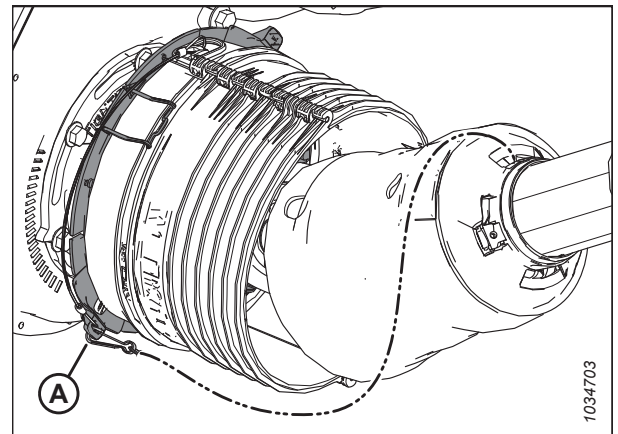


Figure 4.38: Driveline Shield

6. Pry clips (A) up to release shield (B).

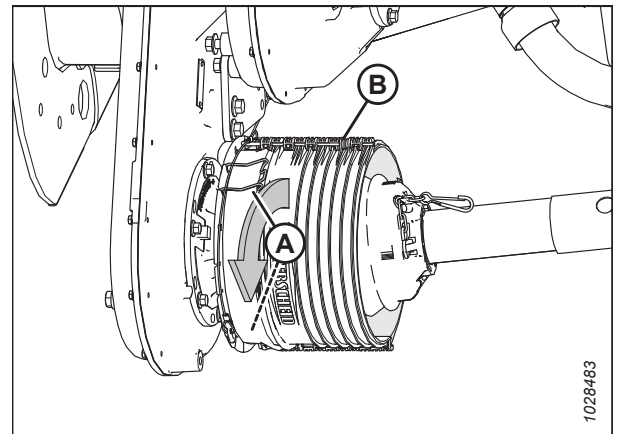


Figure 4.39: Driveline Shield

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Slide shield (A) along driveline to access quick disconnect collar (B).

NOTE:

If the cover does not slide, use a prying tool.

- Pull back quick disconnect collar (B) to release the driveline yoke. Slide the driveline off of the gearbox shaft.
- Slide the driveline through the shield, then lower it to the ground.

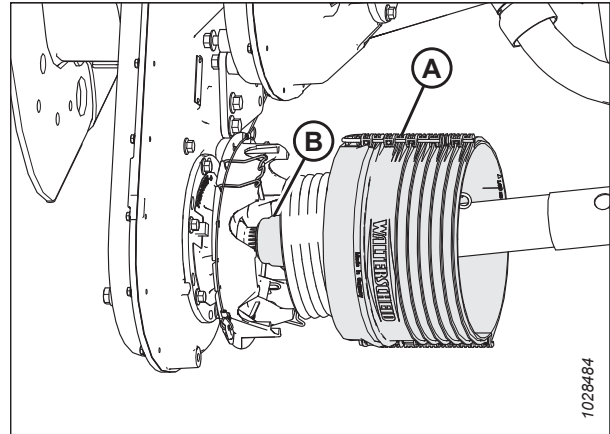


Figure 4.40: Driveline Shield

- Disconnect chain (D) from support bracket (B).
- On the opposite end of driveline (C), pull back quick disconnect collar (A) to release the driveline yoke.
- Slide the yoke off of support bracket (B).
- Remove driveline (C).

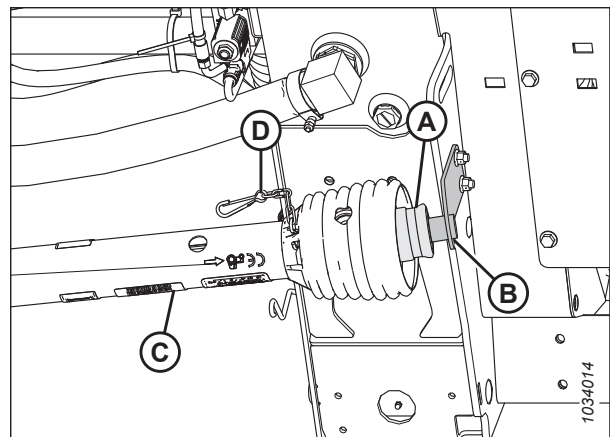


Figure 4.41: Driveline Shield

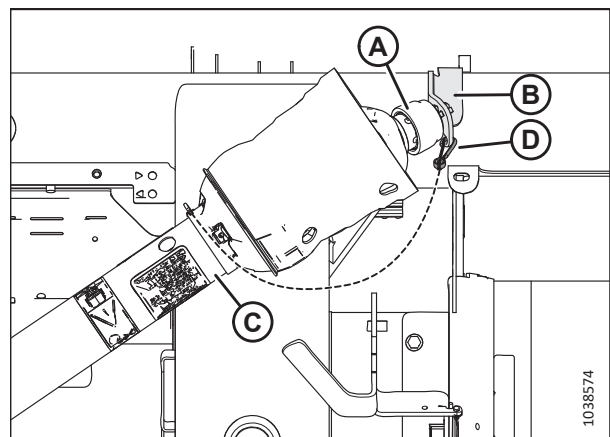


Figure 4.42: Optional Side-Hill Driveline Shield

4.6.2 Installing Driveline

The driveline transfers power from the combine PTO to the header's float module completion gearbox. It will need to be installed on the float module.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Position driveline support bracket (A) (supplied with the driveline) on the left inside of the float module as shown. Secure the bracket with two M10, 30 mm bolts and flange nuts (B).

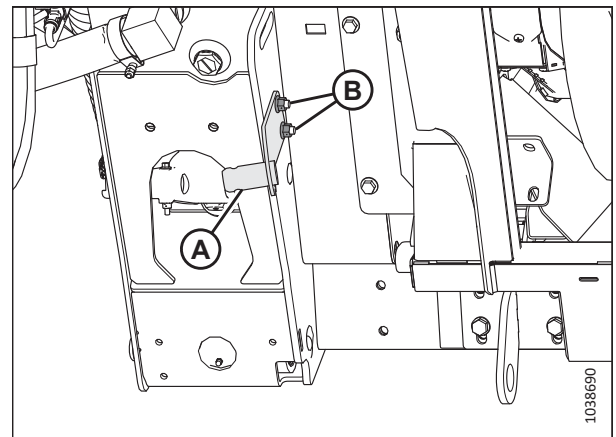


Figure 4.43: Driveline Support Bracket

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. On the end of driveline (D) which has arrow (C) pointing toward the collar, pull back quick disconnect collar (A).
7. Slide the yoke onto support bracket (B).
8. Connect safety chain (E) to the support bracket.

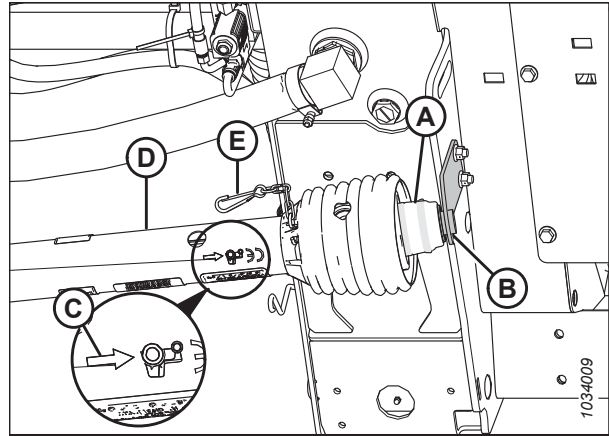


Figure 4.44: Driveline Shield

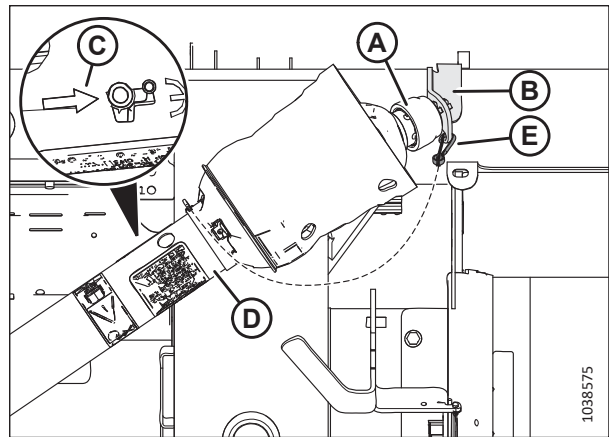


Figure 4.45: Optional Side-Hill Driveline Shield

9. Pry clips (A) up to release shield (B).

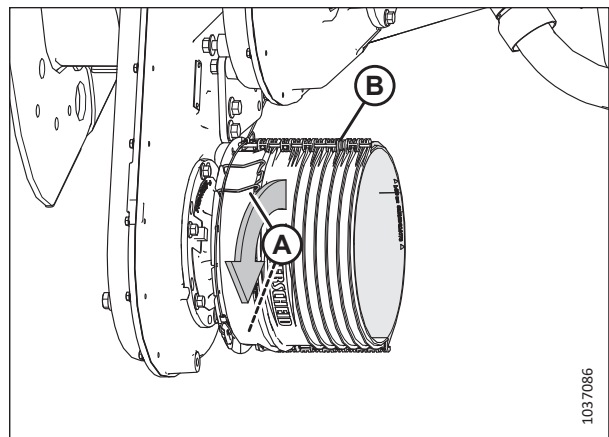


Figure 4.46: Driveline Shield

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Slide the driveline through shield (A). Pull back the quick disconnect collar (B) to release the driveline yoke.
11. Slide the driveline onto the gearbox shaft until it locks onto the shaft.

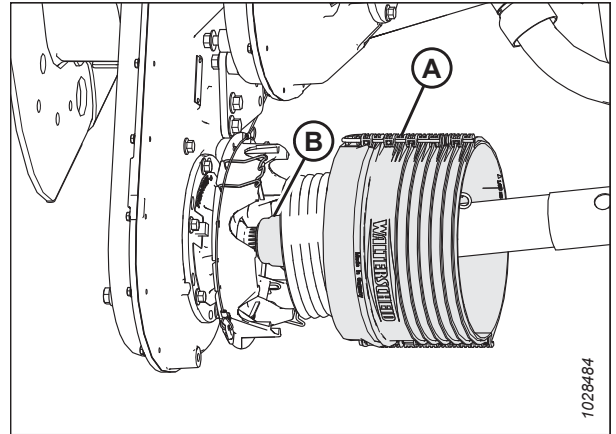


Figure 4.47: Driveline Shield

12. Slide the shield towards the gearbox until clips (A) secure shield (B).

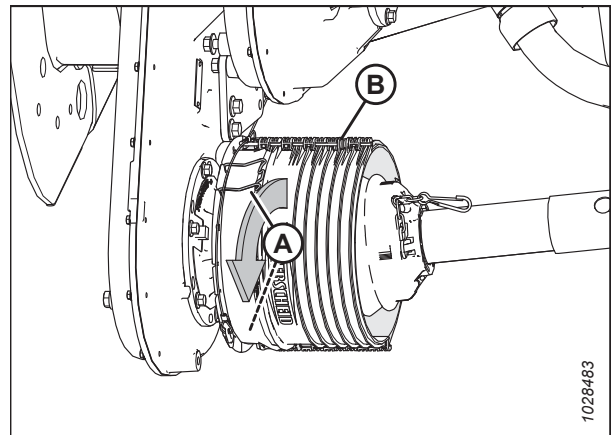


Figure 4.48: Driveline Shield

13. Attach driveline safety chain (A) to the slot on the aluminum plate.

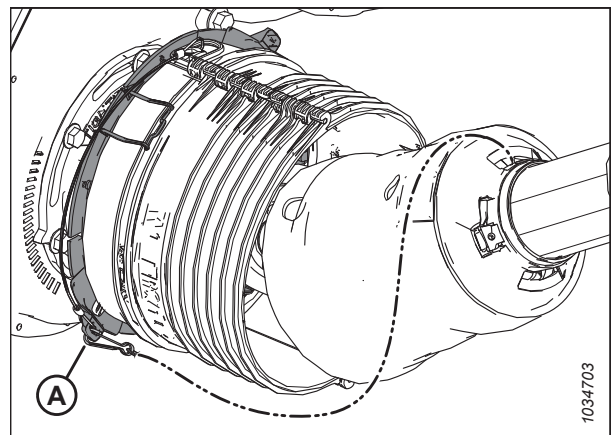


Figure 4.49: Driveline Shield

4.6.3 Removing Driveline Guard

The main driveline guard must remain attached to the driveline during operation, but it can be removed for maintenance purposes.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

The driveline does **NOT** need to be removed from the float module in order to remove the driveline guard.

1. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Pull driveline collar (A) away from power take-off (PTO) support (B). Slide yoke (C) off support (B), and release collar (A).

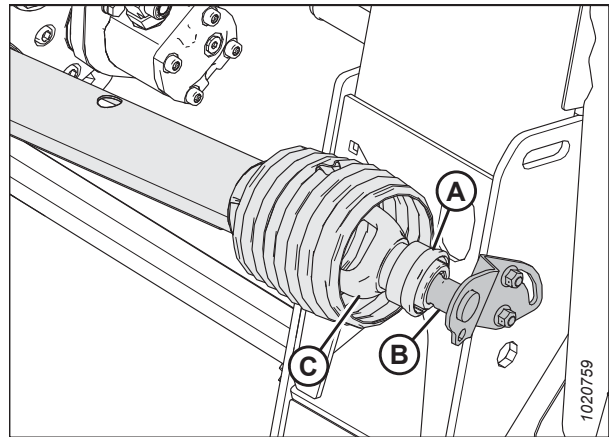


Figure 4.50: Combine End of Driveline

3. Lift the combine end of driveline (A) from the hook, and extend the driveline until it separates. Hold the float module end of driveline (B) to prevent it from dropping and hitting the ground.



Figure 4.51: Separated Driveline

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Use a slotted screwdriver to release grease fitting/lock (A).



Figure 4.52: Driveline Guard

5. Rotate driveline guard locking ring (A) counterclockwise using a screwdriver until lugs (B) line up with the slots in the guard.
6. Pull the guard off the driveline.



Figure 4.53: Driveline Guard

4.6.4 Installing Driveline Guard

The driveline guard must be installed before the header can be safely operated.

1. Slide the guard onto the driveline, and line up the slotted lug on locking ring (A) with arrow (B) on the guard.



Figure 4.54: Driveline Guard

2. Push the guard onto the ring until the locking ring is visible in slots (A).



Figure 4.55: Driveline Guard

3. Use a slotted screwdriver to rotate ring (A) clockwise.



Figure 4.56: Driveline Guard

4. Push grease fitting (A) back into the guard.



Figure 4.57: Driveline Guard

5. Assemble the driveline.

IMPORTANT:

The splines are keyed to align the universals. Align weld (A) with missing spline (B) when assembling. Failure to align the halves of the shaft can cause excessive vibration and feed auger/gearbox failures.

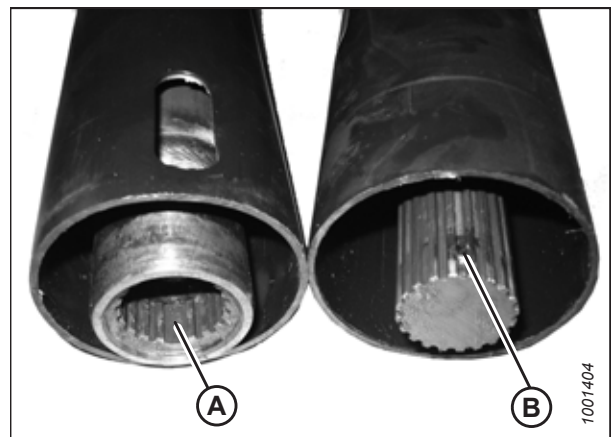


Figure 4.58: Driveline

6. Position the combine end of driveline (A) on power take-off (PTO) storage support (B). Pull back collar (C) on the driveline and slide the driveline onto the support until driveline yoke (D) locks onto the support. Release collar (C).

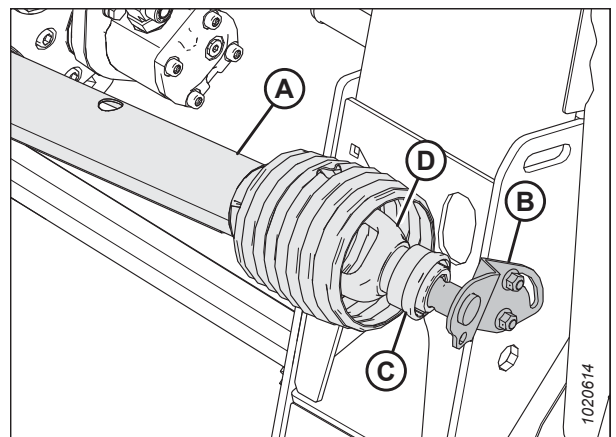


Figure 4.59: Combine End of Driveline

4.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox

The gearbox drive chain tension is factory-set, but tension adjustments are required after the first 50 hours, then every 500 hours or annually (whichever comes first). With the exception of oil changes, the gearbox drive chain requires no other regular maintenance.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Remove four bolts (A), cover (B), and gasket (C) from the main gearbox.

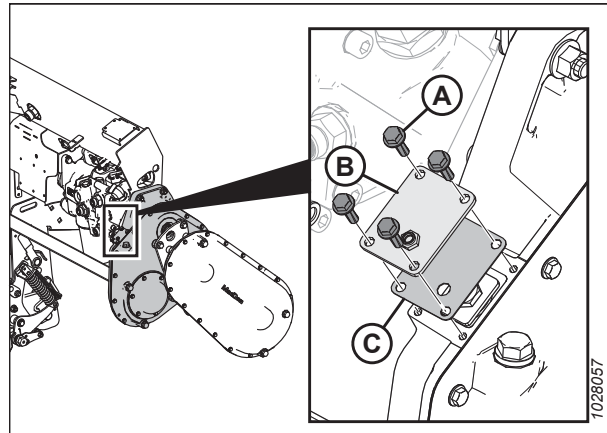


Figure 4.60: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

2. Remove retainer plate (A).
3. Tighten bolt (B) to 250 Ncm (22 lbf-in).
4. Loosen bolt (B) 2 flats (2/6 turn).

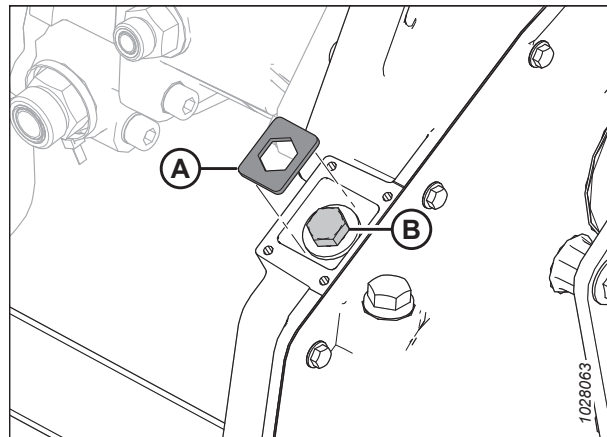


Figure 4.61: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner

5. If required, turn bolt (B) slightly until retainer plate (A) can be installed.

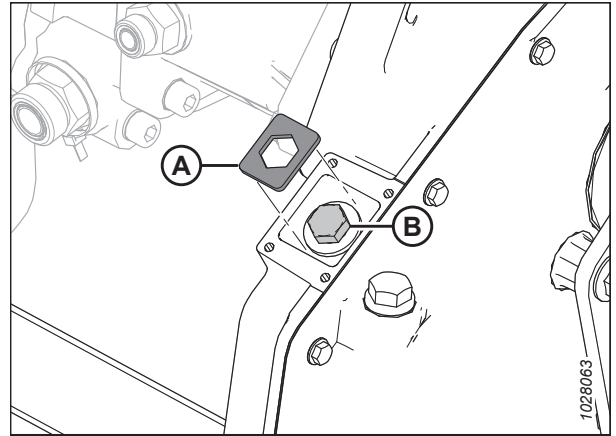


Figure 4.62: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner

6. Reinstall chain adjusting cover (B) and gasket (C).
7. Install four bolts (A). Torque the hardware to 9.5 Nm (84 lbf·in).

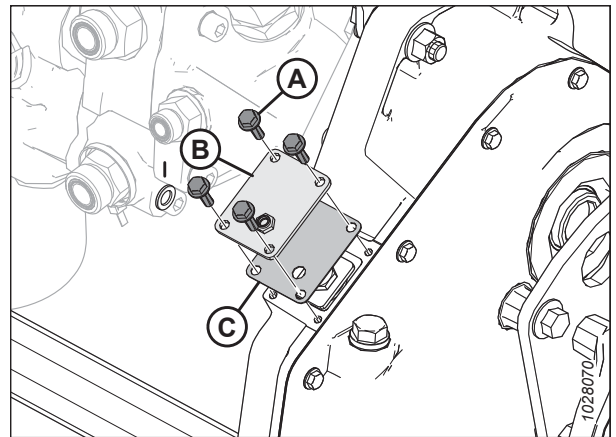


Figure 4.63: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

4.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox

The gearbox drive chain tension is factory-set, but tension adjustments are required after the first 50 hours, then every 500 hours or annually (whichever comes first). With the exception of oil changes, the gearbox drive chain requires no other regular maintenance.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Remove the driveline. For instructions, refer to [4.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine, page 505](#).

5. Remove three bolts (A) that secure input driveline guard base (B).

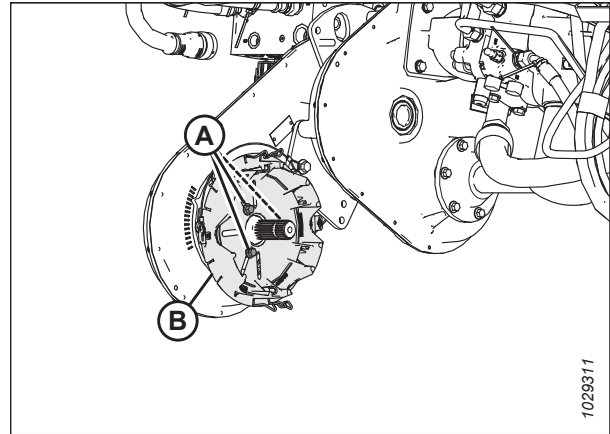


Figure 4.64: Completion Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

6. Loosen six bolts (B), that secure chain tension hub (A) to the gearbox.
7. Locate machined feature (C). Using a wrench, turn hub (A) clockwise to tighten the chain.
8. With light pressure on the wrench, determine which mark (D) on the gearbox housing aligns with the indicator pointer on the hub.
9. Set proper chain tension by slightly turning hub (A) back one mark.
10. Tighten six bolts (B), that secure cover (A). Torque bolts to 25 Nm (18 lbf·ft).

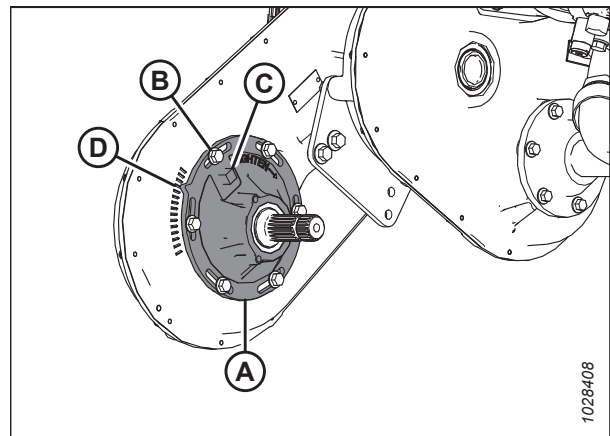


Figure 4.65: Completion Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

11. Install driveline guard base (B). Secure it with three bolts (A).
12. Install the driveline. For instructions, refer to [4.6.2 Installing Driveline, page 507](#).

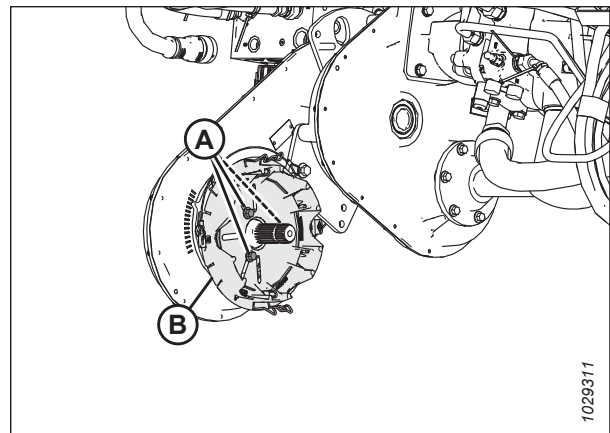


Figure 4.66: Completion Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

4.7 Auger

The FM200 Float Module auger feeds the cut crop from the draper decks into the combine feeder house.

4.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance

Operators should maintain an appropriate distance between the feed auger and the feed auger pan.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Maintain an appropriate distance between the feed auger and the feed auger pan. Too little clearance may result in the fingers or flighting contacting and damaging the feed draper or pan when operating the header at certain angles. Look for evidence of contact when greasing the float module.

1. Extend the center-link to the steepest header angle (setting E), and position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be rotated) at both locations.

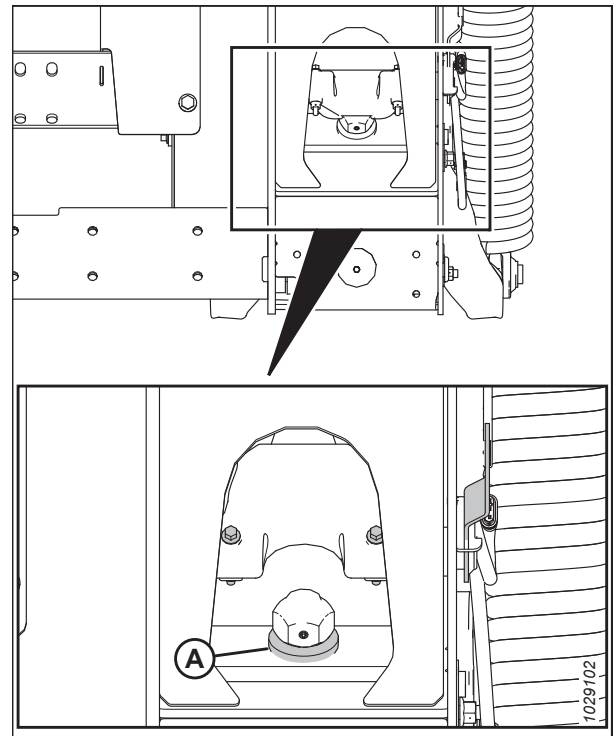


Figure 4.67: Down Stop Washer

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Before adjusting the auger-to-pan clearance, check the auger float position to determine how much clearance is required:

IMPORTANT:

Make sure bolts (A) are set at the same location on both ends of the header to avoid damaging the machine during operation.

- If bolt head (A) is closest to floating symbol (B), the auger is in the floating position.

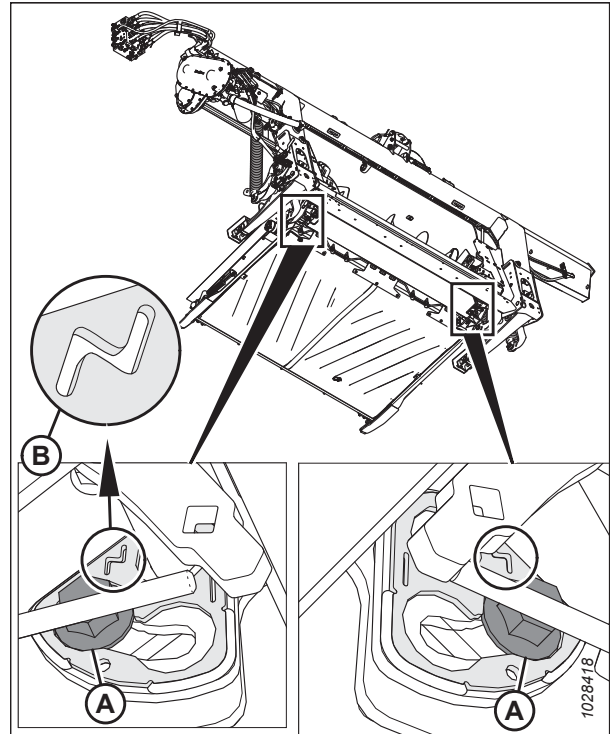


Figure 4.68: Floating Position

- If bolt head (A) is closest to fixed symbol (B), the auger is in the fixed position.

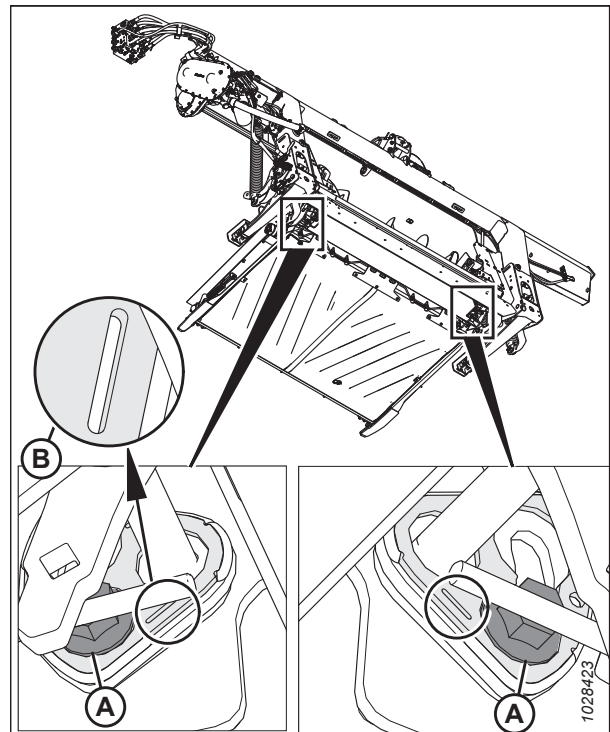


Figure 4.69: Fixed Position

6. Check clearance (C) between the feed auger flighting to the pan.
 - If the feed auger is in the fixed position, clearance should be between 24–28 mm (15/16–1 1/8 in.).
 - If the feed auger is in the floating position, clearance should be between 11.5–15.5 mm (7/16–5/8 in.).
7. If adjustment is required, loosen two nuts (B) and rotate the auger to position the flighting over the feed pan.
8. Turn bolt (A) clockwise to increase clearance (C); turn bolt (A) counterclockwise to decrease clearance (C).
 - If the feed auger is in the fixed position, set clearance to 24–28 mm (15/16–1 1/8 in.).
 - If the feed auger is in the floating position, set clearance to 11.5–15.5 mm (7/16–5/8 in.).

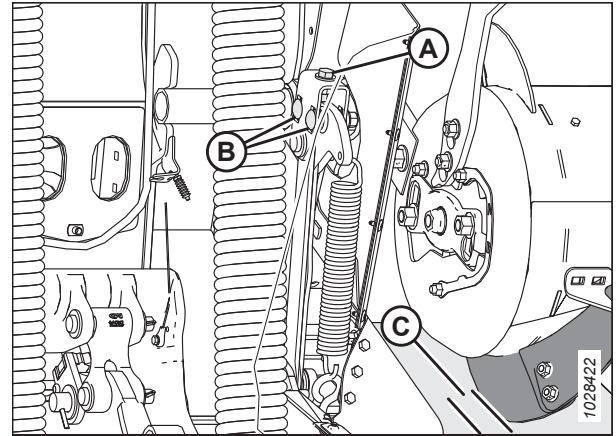


Figure 4.70: Auger Clearance

NOTE:

The clearance increases between 25–40 mm (1–1 1/2 in.) when the center-link is fully retracted.

9. Repeat Step 6, page 519 and Step 8, page 519 for the opposite end of the auger.
- IMPORTANT:**
- Adjusting one side of the auger can affect the other side. Always double-check both sides of the auger after making final adjustments.
10. Tighten nuts (B) on both ends of the feed auger. Torque the nuts to 96 Nm (70 lbf·ft).
 11. Rotate the feed auger and double-check clearances.

4.7.2 Checking Feed Auger Chain Tension

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger.

There are two methods for checking the auger drive chain tension: the quick method is intended for frequent checks; the thorough method is more accurate and should be used when replacing or reinstalling the chain.

Refer to the appropriate procedure for check auger chain tension:

- [Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Quick Method, page 519](#)
- [Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Thorough Method, page 521](#)

Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Quick Method

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

There are two methods for checking the auger drive chain tension: the quick method is intended for frequent checks; the thorough method (refer to [Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Thorough Method, page 521](#)) is more accurate and should be used when the auger drive chain is reinstalled or replaced.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Raise the reel fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
6. Rotate auger (A) by hand in the reverse direction until it cannot turn anymore.
7. Mark a line (B) across the drum and bottom cover.

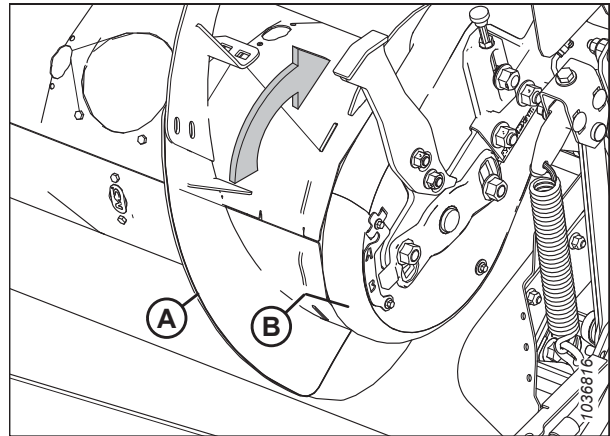


Figure 4.71: Feed Auger Drive

8. Rotate auger (A) by hand in the forward direction until it cannot turn anymore. The marked line will split.

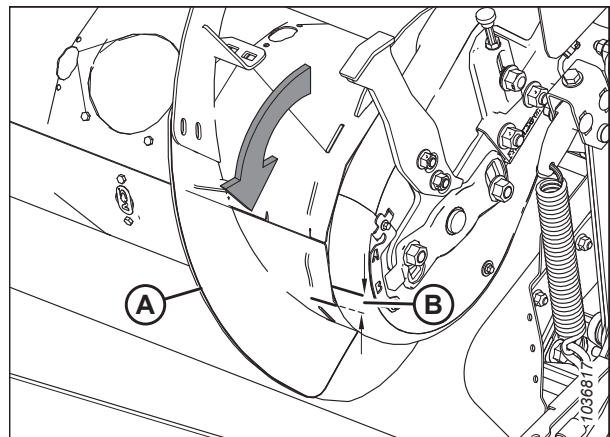


Figure 4.72: Feed Auger Drive

9. Measure the distance between two lines (B).

For a new chain:

- If distance (B) is 1–4 mm (0.04–0.16 in.), no adjustment is required.
- If distance (B) is greater than 4 mm (0.16 in.), the auger drive chain tension needs adjusting. For instructions, refer to [4.7.5 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension, page 530](#).

For a used chain:

- If distance (B) is 3–8 mm (0.12–0.31 in.), no adjustment is required.
- If distance (B) is greater than 8 mm (0.31 in.), the auger drive chain tension needs adjusting. For instructions, refer to [4.7.5 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension, page 530](#).

Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Thorough Method

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

There are two methods for checking the auger drive chain tension: the thorough method is more accurate and should be used when reinstalling or replacing the chain; the quick method (refer to [Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension – Quick Method, page 519](#)) is intended for frequent checks.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Raise the reel fully.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. On the left side of the feed auger, remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B).
8. Remove bolts (C) and remove indicator/clamp (D) that holds the two covers together.
9. Remove bolt (E).
10. Remove bolt and washer (H) that secure the bottom cover.
11. Rotate bottom cover (F) forward to remove.

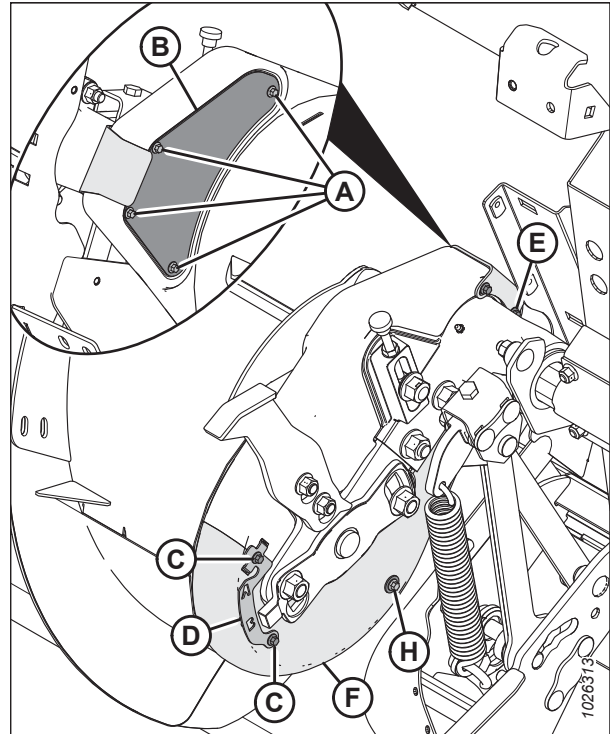


Figure 4.73: Feed Auger Drive – Rear View

12. Check chain at midspan (A). There should be 4 mm (0.16 in.) of deflection. If adjustment is required, refer to [4.7.5 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension, page 530](#).

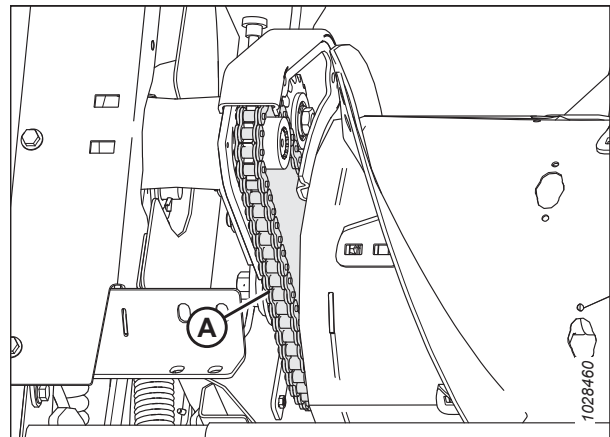


Figure 4.74: Feed Auger Chain – Rear View

13. Position bottom cover (F) and secure with bolt and washer (H).
14. Install bolt (E).
15. Secure the bottom cover to the top cover with clamp/indicator (D) and bolts (C).
16. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A). Tighten bolts (A) and torque to 3.5 Nm (30 lbf·in).

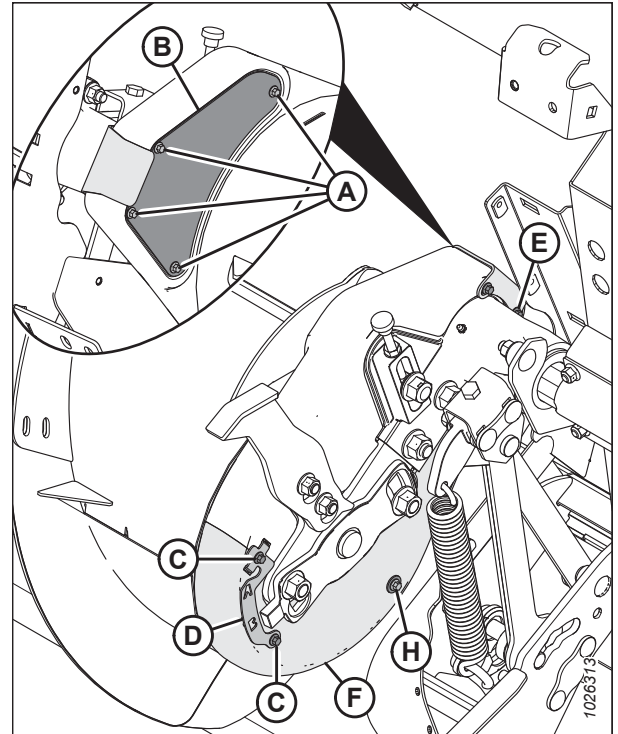


Figure 4.75: Feed Auger Drive – Rear View

4.7.3 Removing Auger Drive Chain

The chain tensioner can take up slack for only a single pitch. Replace the chain when the chain has worn or stretched beyond the limits of the tensioner.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

Replace the chain with endless chain (MD #220317).

NOTE:

Illustrations show the left side of the auger.

1. Tilt the header fully back to maximize space between the auger and the feed pan.
2. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Place wooden blocks (A) under the auger to prevent the auger from dropping onto the feed draper and damaging it.

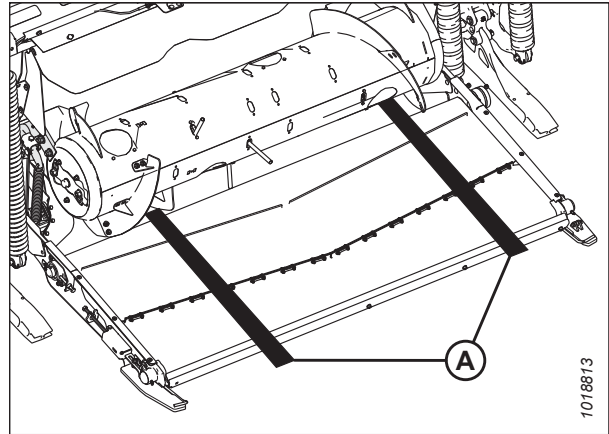


Figure 4.76: Blocks under the Auger

4. Loosen two bolts (A) and remove bumper (B). Repeat on the opposite side.

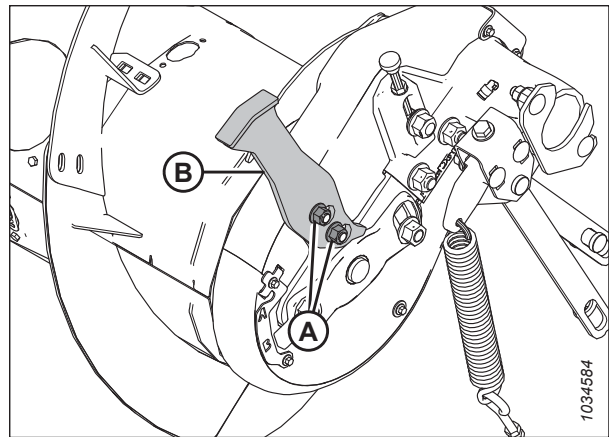


Figure 4.77: Auger Bumper – Left Side

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. On the left side of the auger, remove bolts (E) and remove cover retainer (F).
6. Remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B).
7. Remove bolts (C) and remove indicator/clamp (D) that holds top cover (G) and bottom cover (H) together.
8. Remove bolt and washer (J) that secure bottom cover (H).
9. Rotate top cover (G) and bottom cover (H) forward to remove from the auger.

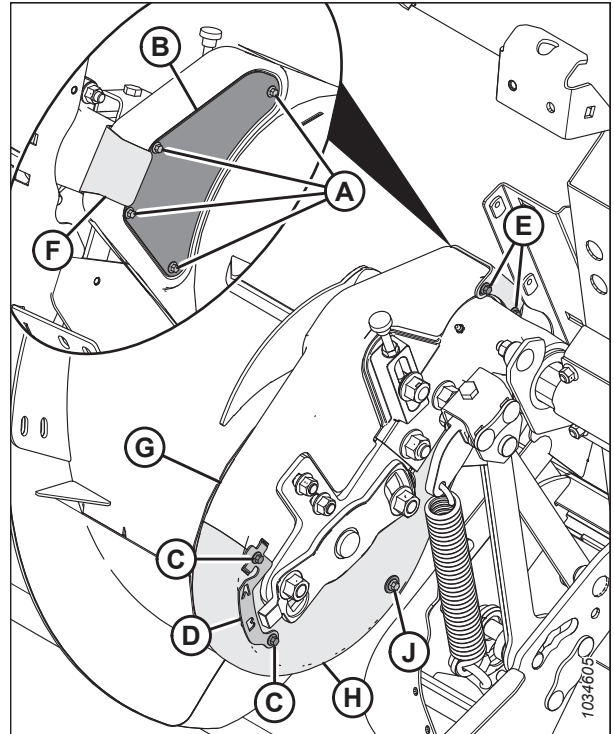


Figure 4.78: Auger Drive

10. To release the chain tension, loosen jam nut (C) and turn thumbscrew (D) counterclockwise to release the bolt holding sprocket (B) and preventing it from being raised up.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** loosen thin nut (E) on the inboard side of the idler sprocket spindle.

11. Loosen idler sprocket nut (A), and raise sprocket (B) to the uppermost position to release the tension on the chain. Tighten nut (A) to hold sprocket in place.
12. Remove screw (F) and washer (G).

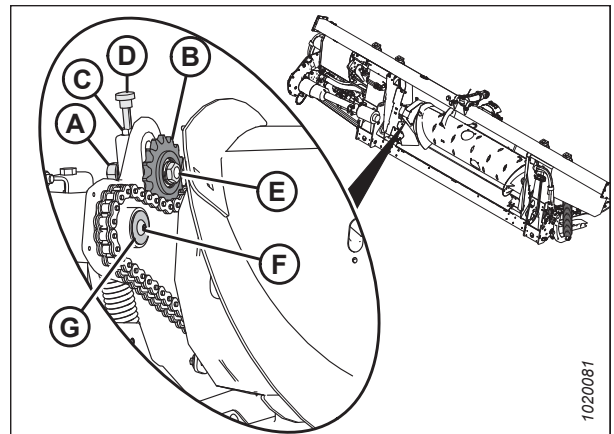


Figure 4.79: Auger Drive

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Remove two bolts and nuts (A).

NOTE:

A second person may be needed to lift or support the auger to completely remove the bolts.

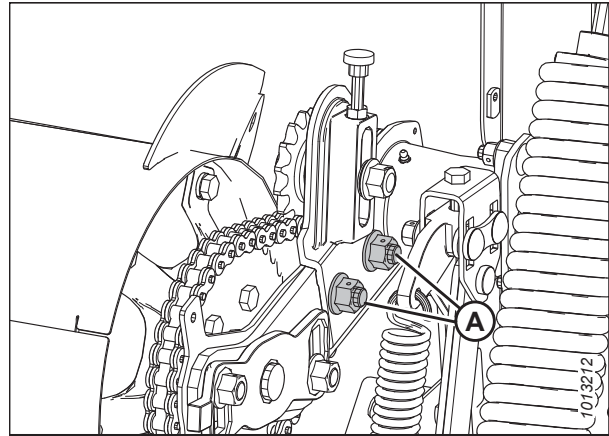


Figure 4.80: Auger Support Arm

14. Using a pry bar at location (A) between support arm (C) and auger pivot (B), pry the auger to the right.

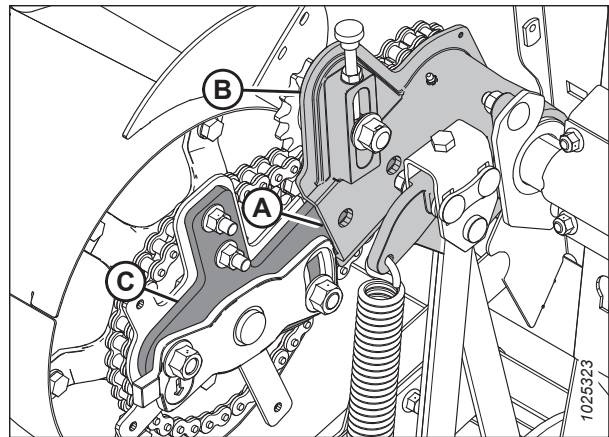


Figure 4.81: Auger

15. Remove drive sprocket (A) and chain (B) from spline shaft.

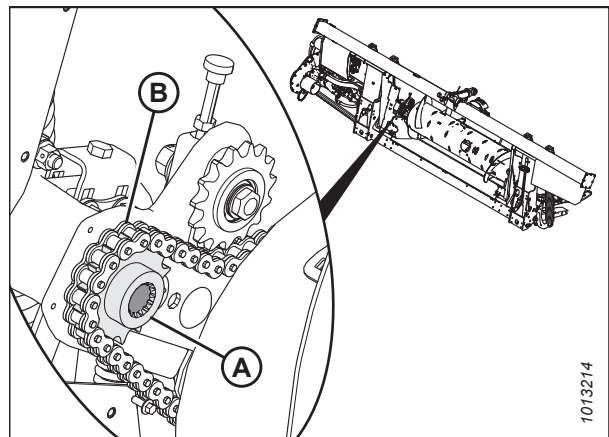


Figure 4.82: Auger Drive

16. Maneuver auger (A) sideways and forward so that endless chain (B) can be removed from the auger.

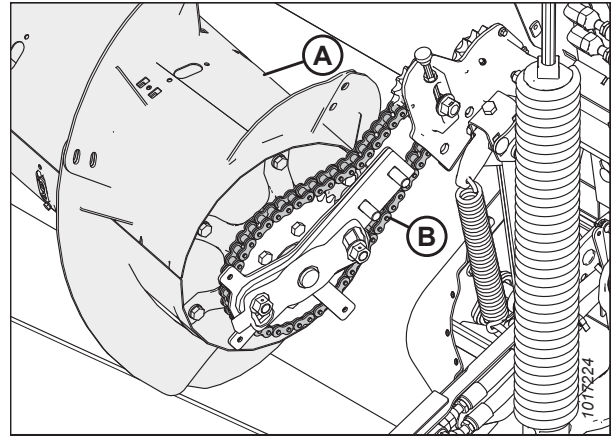


Figure 4.83: Auger Drive

4.7.4 Installing Auger Drive Chain

The auger drive chain transfers power from the main gearbox to the feed auger.

NOTE:

Illustrations show the left side of the auger.

1. Place drive chain (B) over the sprocket on the drive side of auger (A).

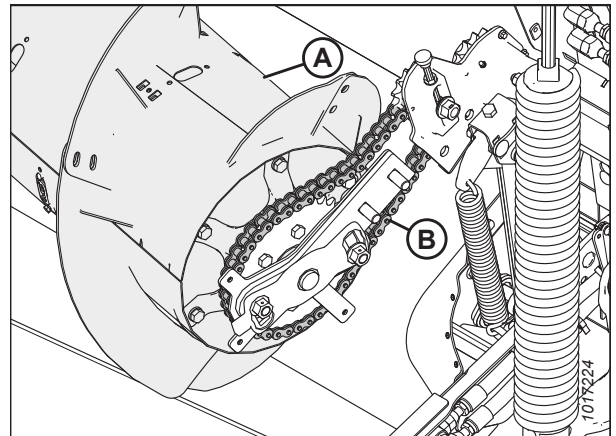


Figure 4.84: Auger Drive

2. Place drive sprocket (B) into chain (A) and align the sprocket onto the shaft.

NOTE:

The shoulder of drive sprocket (B) should face the auger.

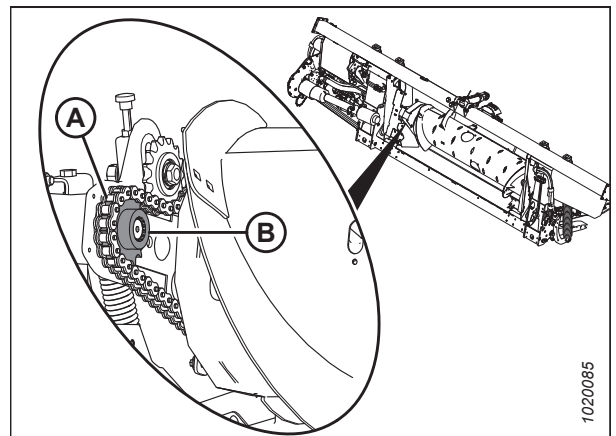


Figure 4.85: Auger Drive

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to threads of screw (A).
4. Install washer (B) and secure it with screw (A).

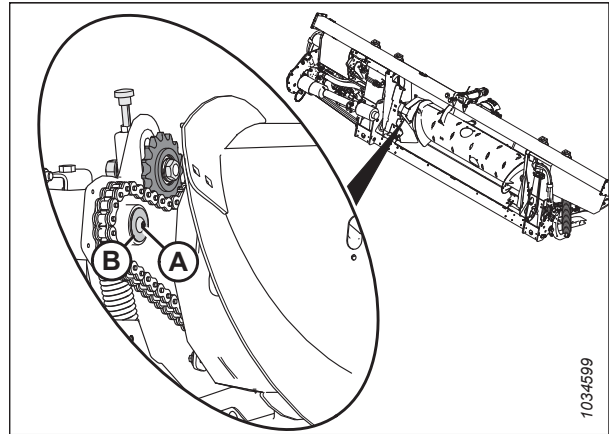


Figure 4.86: Auger Drive

5. Slide the auger drum assembly toward the casting, and then reinstall two bolts and nuts (A).

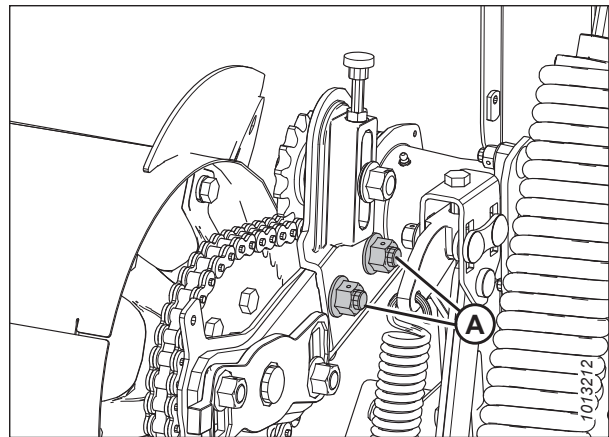


Figure 4.87: Auger Drive

6. Rotate the auger in reverse to take up the slack in the lower strand of the chain.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** loosen thin nut (C) on the inboard side of the idler sprocket spindle.

7. Turn adjuster thumbscrew (D) clockwise to move idler sprocket (B) until it is **FINGER TIGHT ONLY**.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overtighten.

8. Tighten idler nut (A) and torque to 265 Nm (195 lbf-ft).

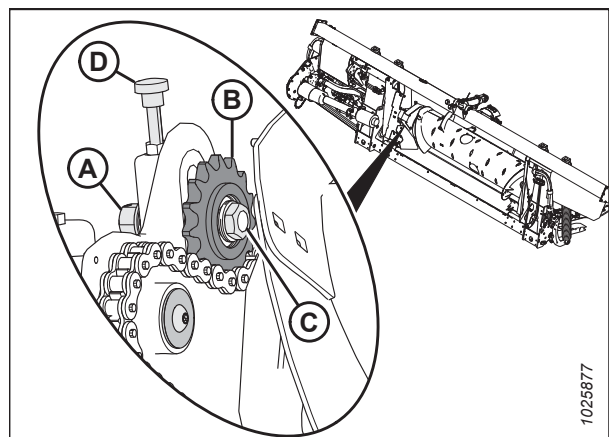


Figure 4.88: Auger Drive

9. Tighten jam nut (A).

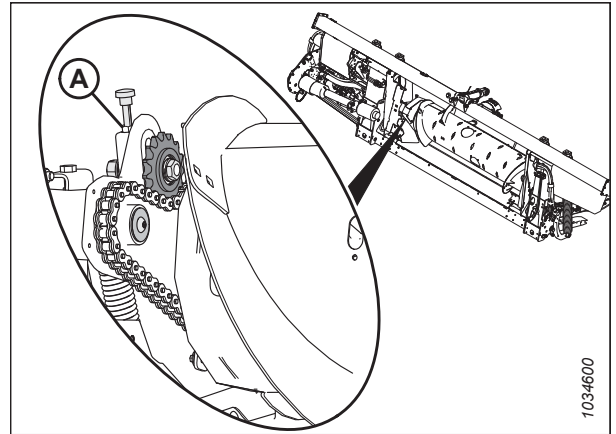


Figure 4.89: Auger Drive

10. Position bottom cover (H) and secure with bolt and washer (J).
11. Position top cover (G). Secure top and bottom covers with clamp/indicator (D) and bolts (C).
12. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A). Tighten bolts (A) and torque to 3.5 Nm (30 lbf·in).
13. Install cover retainer (F) and secure with two bolts (E).

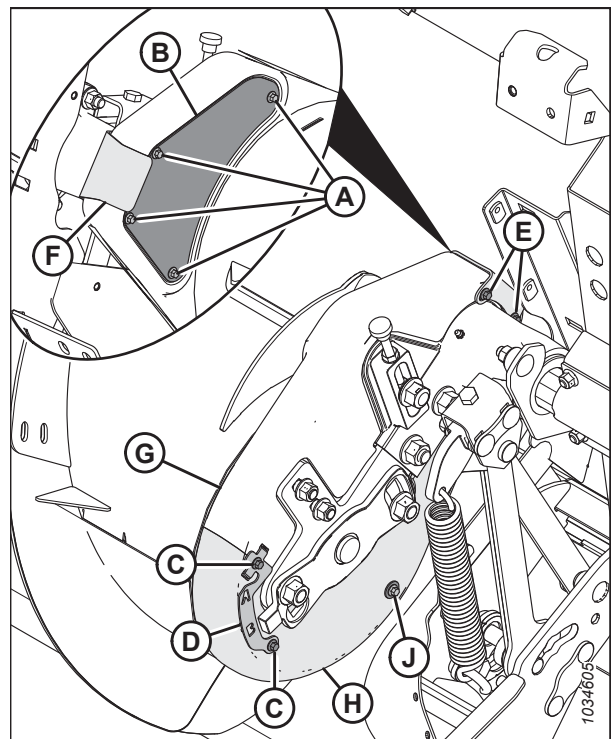


Figure 4.90: Auger

14. Remove wooden blocks (A) from the feed draper.

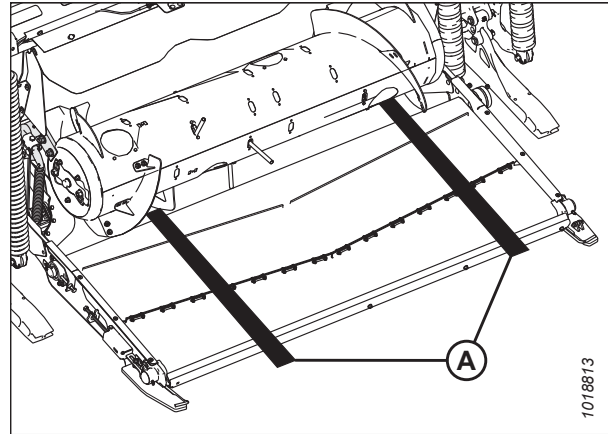


Figure 4.91: Blocks under the Auger

4.7.5 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger. Insufficient chain tension can prematurely wear sprockets or damage the chain.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Raise the reel fully.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B) to view chain.

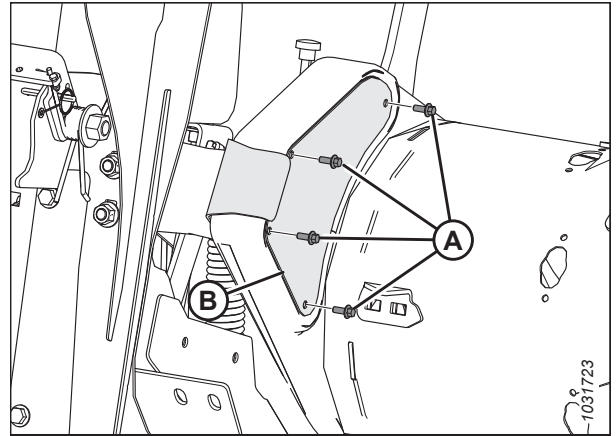


Figure 4.92: Left Side of Auger Drive – Rear View

8. Loosen jam nut (B).
9. Loosen idler nut (A) slightly to allow idler to move by turning adjuster (C).
10. Rotate the auger in reverse to take up slack in the upper strand of the chain.

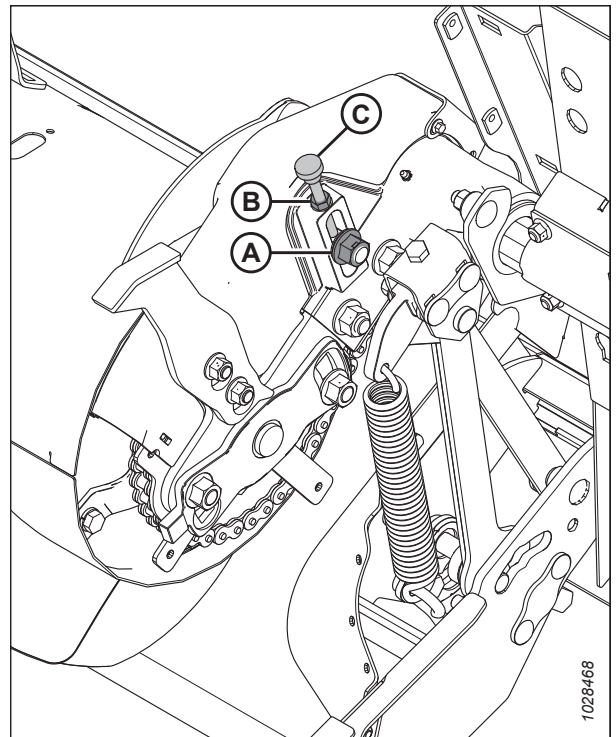


Figure 4.93: Left Side of Auger Drive – Front View

11. Turn adjuster thumbscrew (A) clockwise to increase tension until chain deflection (B) is 4 mm (0.16 in.) at midspan.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overtighten.

NOTE:

The covers have been removed from the illustration for clarity.

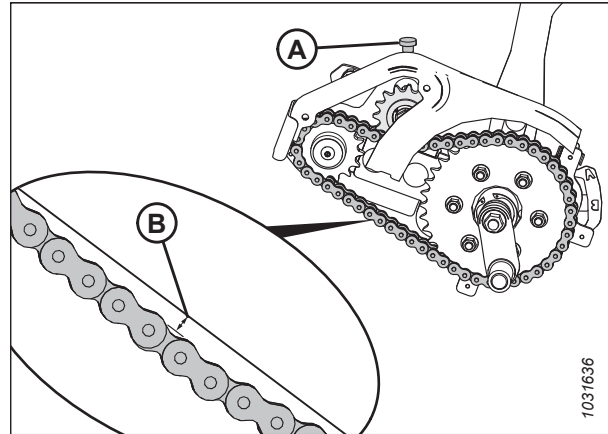


Figure 4.94: Feed Auger Chain Deflection

12. When adjustment is complete, tighten jam nut (A).
13. Tighten the idler nut (B) and torque to 265 Nm (195 lbf-ft).
14. Recheck midspan chain deflection after tightening the idler and jam nut.

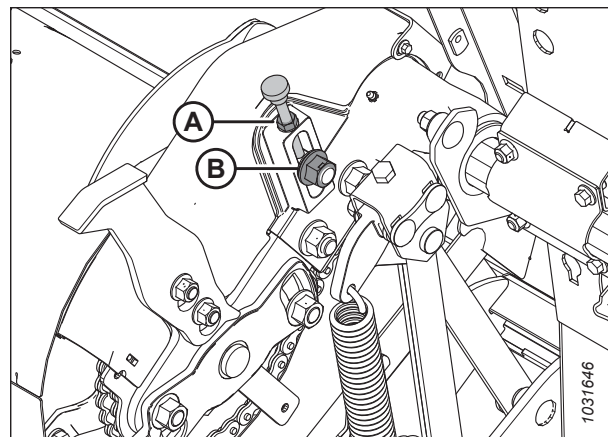


Figure 4.95: Feed Auger Chain – Front View

15. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A).
16. Torque bolts (A) to 3.5 Nm (30 lbf-in).

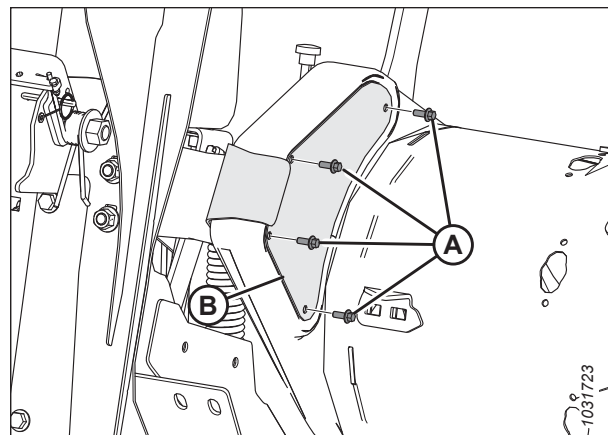


Figure 4.96: Left Side of Auger Drive – Rear View

4.7.6 Auger Flighting

The auger flighting on the FM200 can be configured for particular harvesting and crop conditions.

For instructions, refer to [3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132](#) for combine/crop specific configurations.

4.7.7 Auger Fingers

The FM200 auger uses retracting tines to feed the crop into the combine feeder house. Some conditions may require the removal or installation of fingers for optimal crop feeding. Replace any worn or damaged fingers.

Removing Feed Auger Fingers

The feed auger has fingers that extend and retract to pull crop into the feeder house on the combine. Fingers may need to be removed from the auger drum to change its configuration profile.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

IMPORTANT:

When removing auger fingers, work from the outside inward. Make sure there is an equal number of fingers on both sides of the auger when complete.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Locate the access cover closest to the finger to be removed. Remove and retain bolts (A) and access cover (B).

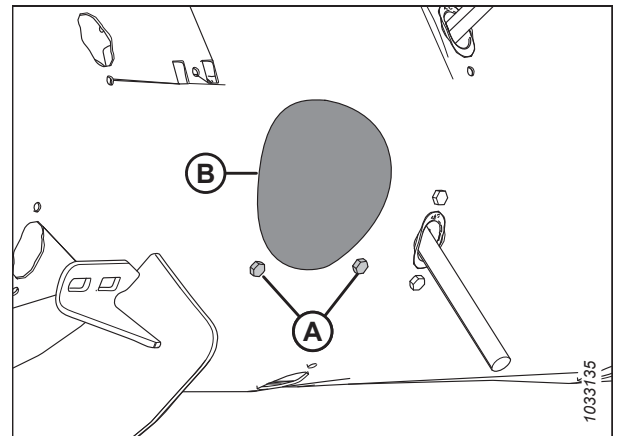
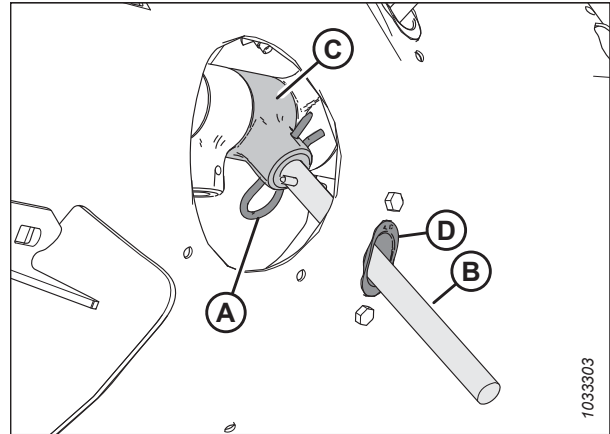


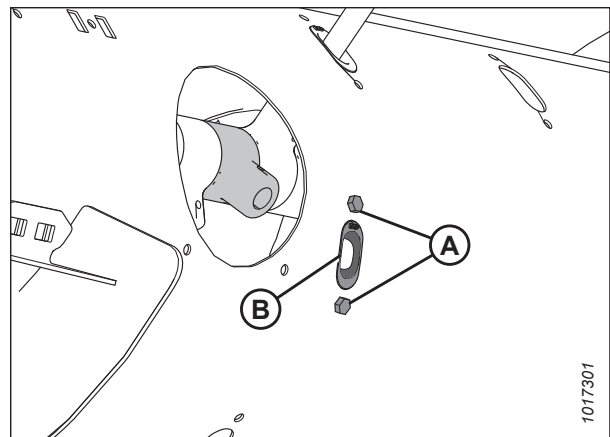
Figure 4.97: Auger Access Hole Cover

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Remove hairpin (A). Pull finger (B) out of finger holder (C).
7. If the finger is broken, remove any remnants from holder (C) and from inside the drum.



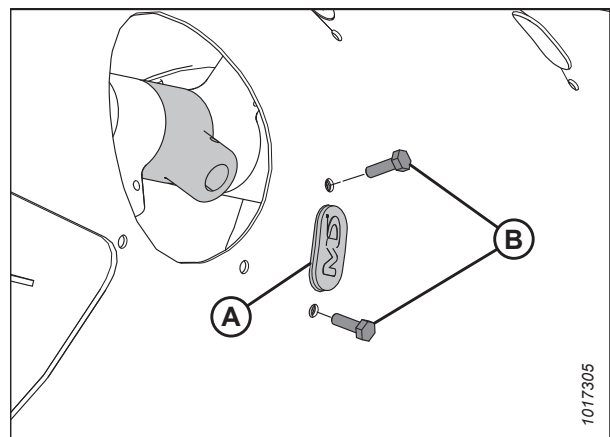
8. Remove and retain two bolts (A) and the tee nuts (not shown) securing finger guide (B) to the auger. Remove guide (B).



9. Place plug (A) in the hole from inside the auger. Secure the plug with two M6 hex head bolts (B) and tee nuts. Torque the bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

NOTE:

Bolts (B) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (B), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.



10. Secure access cover (B) with bolts (A). Torque the bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If you are reusing bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the threads of the bolts before you install them.

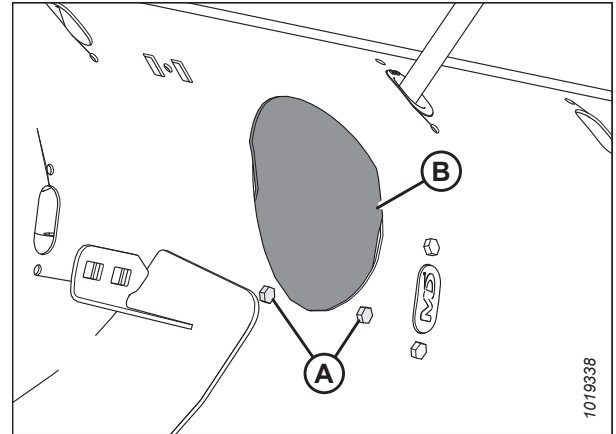


Figure 4.101: Auger Access Hole Cover

Installing Feed Auger Fingers

The feed auger has fingers that extend and retract to pull crop into the feeder house on the combine. Fingers may need to be installed onto the auger drum to change its configuration profile.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

IMPORTANT:

When installing additional fingers, ensure you install an equal number on each side of the auger.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing. Retain the parts for reinstallation.

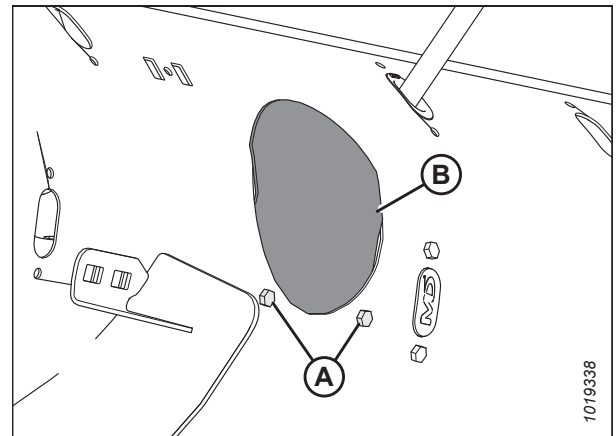


Figure 4.102: Auger Access Hole Cover

5. Remove two bolts (B), tee nuts (not shown), and plug (A).

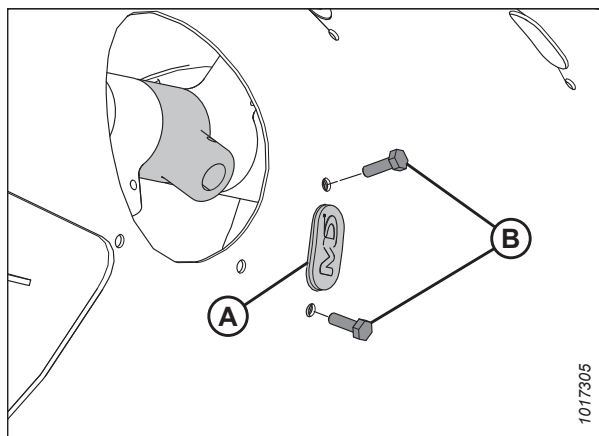


Figure 4.103: Auger Finger Hole

6. Insert guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown).

IMPORTANT:

Always install a new guide when replacing a solid finger.

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

7. Torque bolts (A) to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

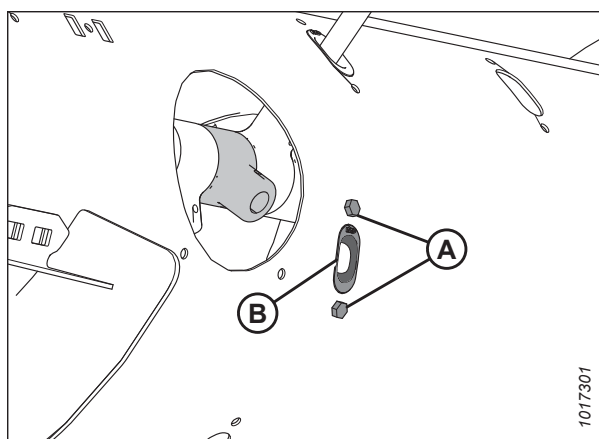


Figure 4.104: Auger Finger Hole

8. Place auger finger (A) inside the drum. Insert auger finger (A) up through the bottom of guide (B) and insert the other end into holder (C).
9. Secure the finger by inserting hairpin (D) into the holder. Ensure that the round end (S-shaped side) of the hairpin faces the chain drive side of the auger. Make sure the closed end of the hairpin points in the direction in which the auger rotates.

IMPORTANT:

Position the hairpin as described in this step to prevent the hairpin from falling out during operation. If fingers are lost, the header might not be able to feed crop into the combine properly. Fingers that fall into the drum might damage internal components.

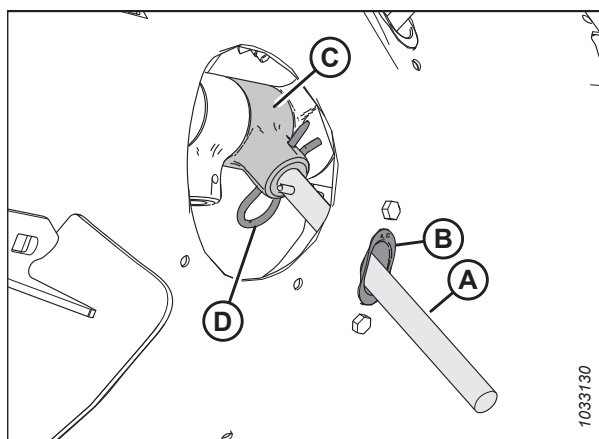


Figure 4.105: Auger Finger

10. Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque the bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

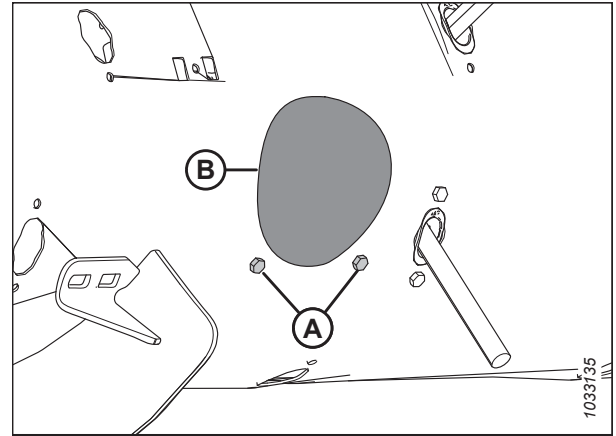


Figure 4.106: Auger Access Hole Cover

Checking Auger Finger Timing

The feed auger has fingers that extend and retract to pull crop into the feeder house on the combine. This procedure determines where the fingers are when they are fully extended from the auger.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Check that indicator (C) is set to the same position at each end of the auger.

NOTE:

There are two different auger tine extension positions: **A** and **B**. Position **A** is used for canola and position **B** is used for grains. The factory setting for the indicator is position **B**.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging the auger beyond repair, it is extremely important that both sides are at the same setting.

6. To adjust the indicator position, refer to [Adjusting Auger Finger Timing, page 538](#).
7. Disengage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 34](#).

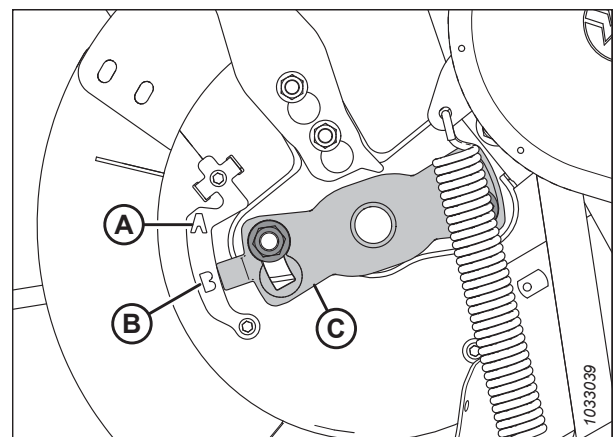


Figure 4.107: Auger Tine Timing – Left Side of Auger Shown

Adjusting Auger Finger Timing

The feed auger has fingers that extend and retract to pull crop into the feeder house on the combine. This procedure determines where the fingers are when they are fully extended from the auger.

NOTE:

The illustrations show only the left side of the auger; however, the procedure applies to both sides.

! DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

! WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

! WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33*.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Locate finger timing indicator (C) at the end of the auger. There are two auger tine extension positions: Position **A** and position **B**.
6. Loosen nuts (D) and adjust finger timing indicator (C) to the desired position.

IMPORTANT:

The timing indicator on both ends of the auger must be set at the same position; if not, the auger will be damaged beyond repair.

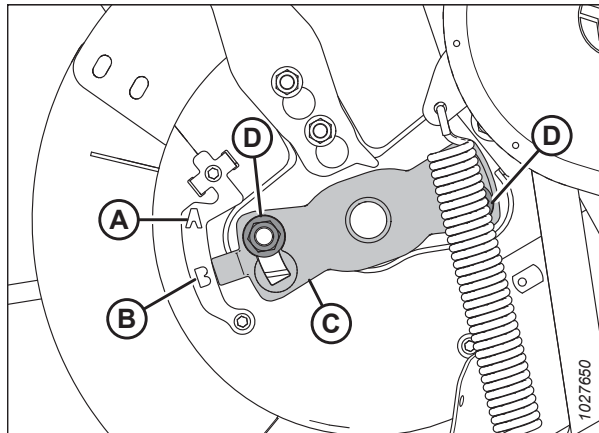


Figure 4.108: Auger Tine Timing Indicator

NOTE:

If the finger timing indicator is pointing at position **A**, it indicates that at that point the auger fingers will be fully extended. This allows the crop to be engaged and released earlier before entering the feeder house. This setting is best used for canola or bushy crops.

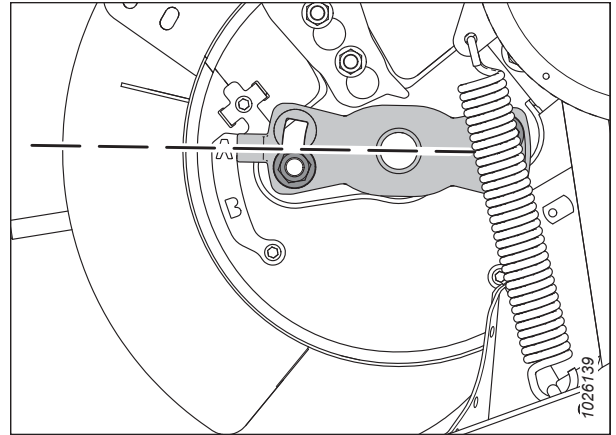


Figure 4.109: Auger Position A

NOTE:

If the indicator is pointing at position **B**, it indicates that at that point the auger fingers will be fully extended. This allows the crop to be engaged and released later before entering the feeder house. This setting is best used for grains or beans.

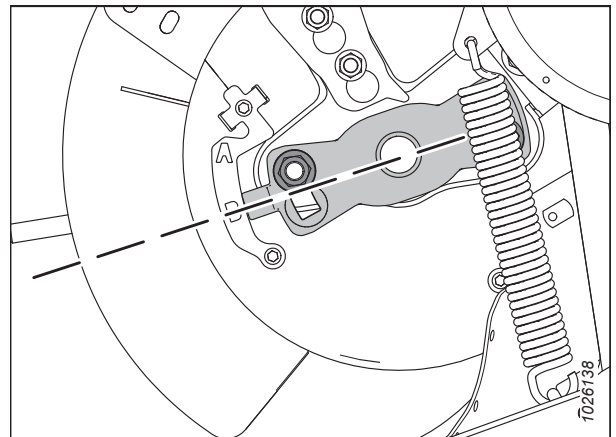


Figure 4.110: Auger Position B

7. Tighten nuts (A) once adjustment is complete. Torque nuts to 115 Nm (85 lbf·ft).
8. Disengage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 34](#).

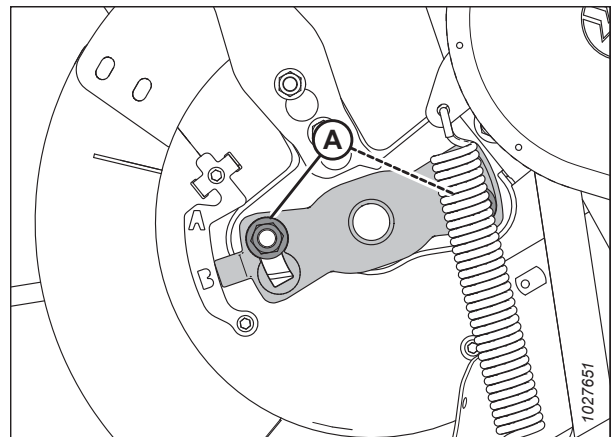


Figure 4.111: Auger Tine Timing Indicator

4.8 Knife

The knives on the cutterbar cut the crop. The knives, guards, and knifehead will require maintenance from time to time.

WARNING

Keep hands clear of the area between guards and knife at all times.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing machine or opening drive covers, refer to [4.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 475](#).

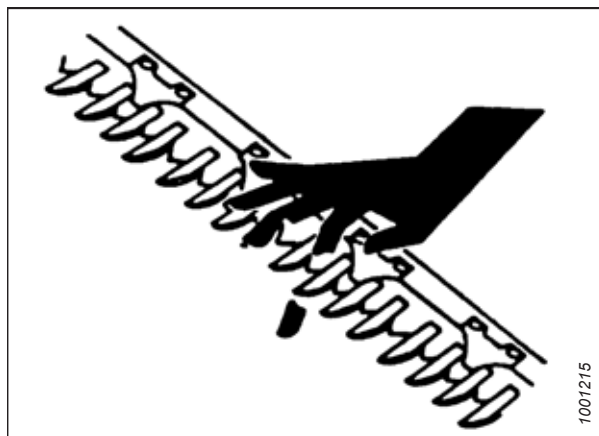


Figure 4.112: Cutterbar Hazard

4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section

Inspect the knife sections daily and ensure they are firmly bolted to the knife back and are not worn or damaged (worn and damaged sections leave behind uncut plants). Worn or damaged sections can be replaced without removing the knife from the cutterbar.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat or making adjustments to the machine. Never work on or beneath an unsupported header. If the header is fully raised, always engage the safety props. If the header is off of the ground but not raised to its full height, place blocks under the header.

WARNING

Exercise caution when working around the cutterbar. Knife sections are sharp and can cause serious injury. Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knife sections or the knife.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

4. If a hold-down is present, remove nuts (A) and hold-down (B) to access the knife section that is being replaced.

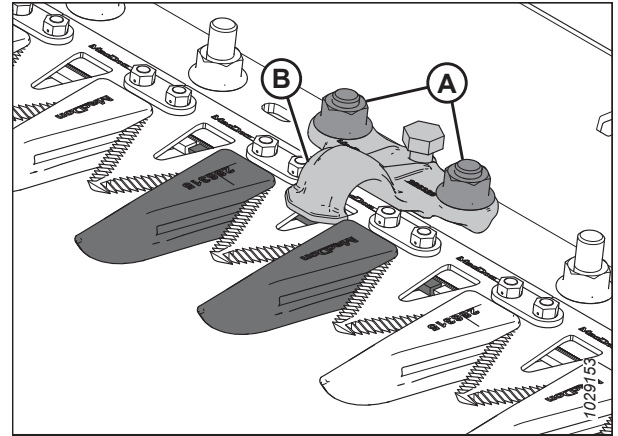


Figure 4.113: Cutterbar

5. Remove bolts and nuts (B). Retain hardware.

NOTE:

Stroke the knife as required to access the hardware.

6. For sections near the drive end, remove bars (C) and lift knife section (A) off the knife back bar.
7. Clean dirt off the knife back bar, and position the new knife section onto the knife back bar.

IMPORTANT:

Cut quality may be affected if fine and coarsely serrated knife sections are used on the same knife.

8. For sections near the drive end, reposition bars (C).
9. If a hold-down was removed earlier, install it along with bolts and nuts (B).

NOTE:

Ensure bolt heads fully engage into oblong holes on the knife back bar.

10. Torque nuts (B) to 12 Nm (9 lbf-ft).
11. If necessary, replace hold-downs that were removed. To check hold-down adjustment, refer to [Checking Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 557](#) or [Checking Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570](#).

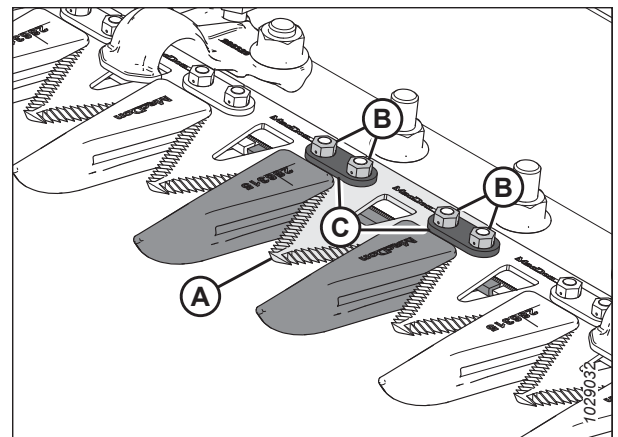


Figure 4.114: Cutterbar

4.8.2 Removing Knife

Inspect the knife daily and ensure it is not damaged. If it is damaged it will need to be removed and replaced.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

WARNING

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

NOTE:

For single knife headers, the knifehead is located on the left side of the knife. For double knife headers, there are two knifeheads and they are located both right and left sides of the knife. Verify which knife needs to be removed before beginning.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields](#), page 35.
3. Manually move the knife to the middle of its stroke range.
4. Clean the area around the knifehead.
5. Remove grease fitting (A) from the pin.

NOTE:

Removing the grease fitting will make it easier to reinstall the knifehead pin later.

6. Remove bolt and nut (B).
7. Use a screwdriver or chisel in slot (C) to release the load on the knifehead pin.
8. Use a screwdriver or chisel to pry the knifehead pin upwards in the pin groove until the knifehead pin is clear of the knifehead.
9. Push knife assembly (A) inboard until it is clear of drive arm (B).

NOTE:

Frame and endshield parts have been removed from the illustration to reveal the knifehead components.

10. Unless it is being replaced, seal knifehead bearing (C) with plastic or tape to keep out dirt and debris.
11. Pull knife drive arm (B) to the outside position to give clearance for the knife.
12. Remove knife (A).

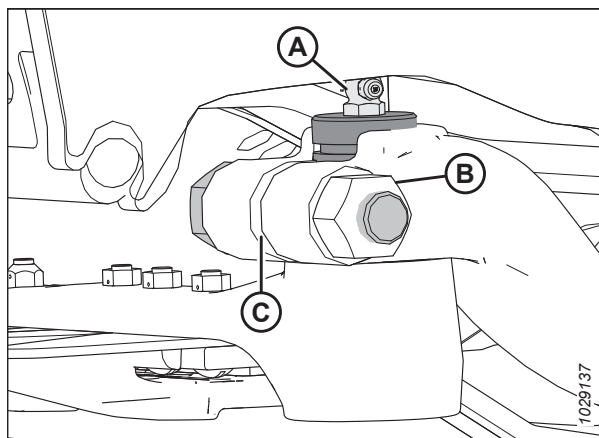


Figure 4.115: Knifehead

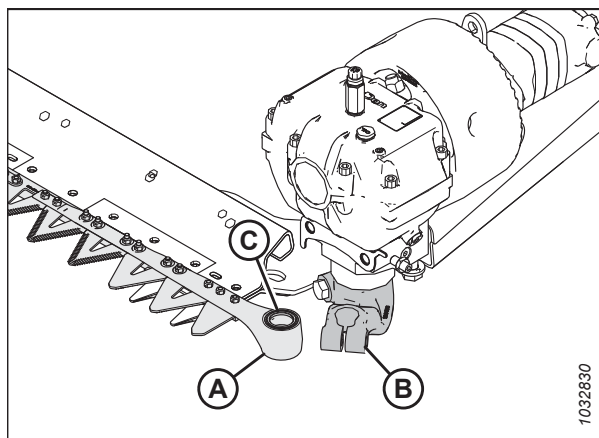


Figure 4.116: Left Knifehead

4.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing

The knifehead bearing allows the knifehead pin to rotate within the knifehead as the drive arm strokes the knife back and forth. If the bearing is worn or damaged, it will need to be replaced.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

WARNING

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Remove the knife. For instructions, refer to [4.8.2 Removing Knife, page 541](#).

NOTE:

Because the bearing is being replaced, it is not necessary to wrap the knifehead to protect the bearing.

5. Use a flat-ended tool with the same diameter as pin (A). Tap seal (B), bearing (C), plug (D), and O-ring (E) from the underside of the knifehead.

NOTE:

Seal (B) can be replaced without removing the bearing. When changing the seal, check the pin and needle bearing for wear and replace if necessary.

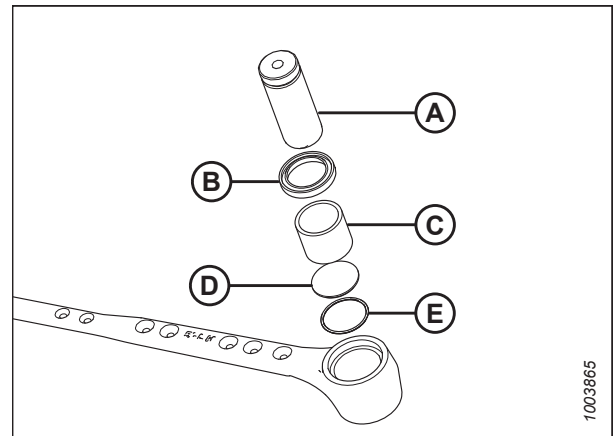


Figure 4.117: Knifehead Bearing Assembly

4.8.4 Installing Knifehead Bearing

The knifehead bearing allows the knifehead pin to rotate within the knifehead as the drive arm strokes the knife back and forth. Once the old bearing has been removed from the knifehead, a new one can be installed.

1. Place O-ring (E) and plug (D) into the knifehead.
2. Use a flat-ended tool (A) with the same approximate diameter as bearing (C), and push the bearing into the knifehead until the top of the bearing is flush with the step in the knifehead.

IMPORTANT:

Install the bearing with the stamped end (the end with the identification markings) facing up.

3. Install seal (B) into the knifehead with the lip facing outwards.

IMPORTANT:

To prevent premature knifehead or knife drive box failure, ensure there is a tight fit between the knifehead pin and the needle bearing, and between the knifehead pin and the output arm.

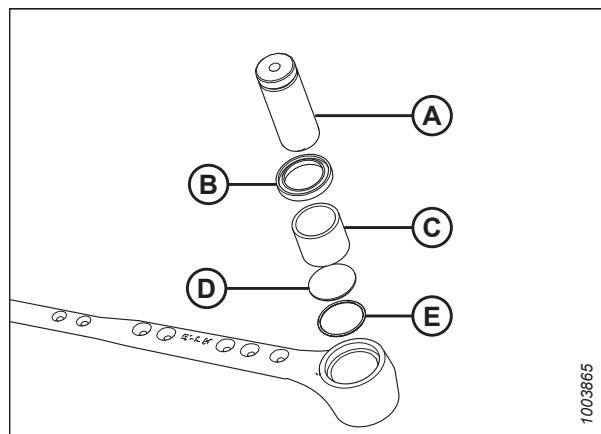


Figure 4.118: Knifehead Bearing Assembly

4. Install the knife. For instructions, refer to [4.8.5 Installing Knife, page 544](#).

4.8.5 Installing Knife

Inspect the knife daily and ensure it is not damaged. If it is damaged it will need to be removed and replaced.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.



WARNING

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Grease the knife head bearing prior to assembly spread grease around bearing evenly.
- Install knife assembly (A).

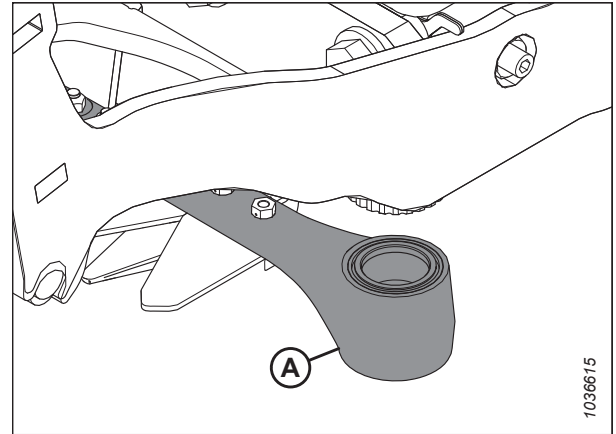


Figure 4.119: Knife Drive Box

- Install knifehead pin (A) through the drive arm and into the knifehead.
- Position knifehead pin (A), so that groove (B) is 2 mm (5/64 in.) above the drive arm.

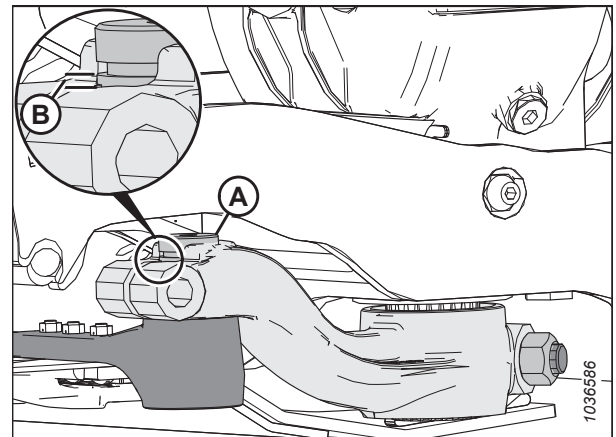


Figure 4.120: Knifehead

- Secure the knifehead pin with M16 x 85 mm hex bolt (A) and hex nut (B). Install the bolt from the inboard side of the arm. Torque the bolt to 220 Nm (162 lbf-ft).
- Rotate the flywheel attached to the knife drive box to manually stroke knife arm (A) to the inside limit of travel, and ensure there is still 0.2–1.2 mm (1/64–3/64 in.) clearance (C) between the drive arm and the knifehead.
- If no adjustment is required, proceed to Step 10, page 546. If drive arm adjustment is required, contact your MacDon Dealer.

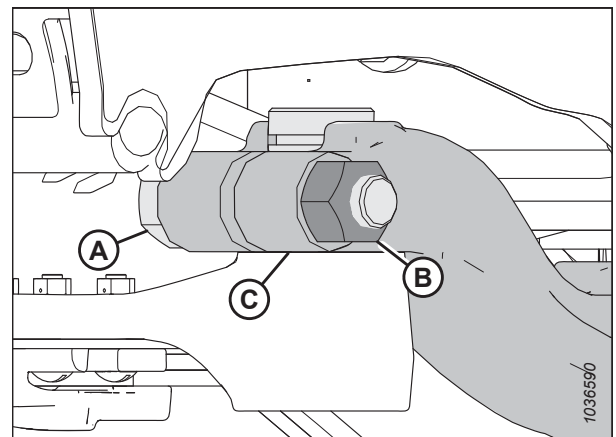


Figure 4.121: Knifehead

10. Reinstall grease fitting (A), and slowly apply grease. Apply grease until the knifehead has a **SLIGHT** downward movement, then stop.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overgrease the knifehead. Overgreasing leads to knife misalignment causing excessive heating of guards and overloading of drive systems. If overgreasing occurs, remove the grease fitting to release pressure.

NOTE:

If air is trapped in the bearing cavity, the knifehead will begin to move down before it has filled with grease.

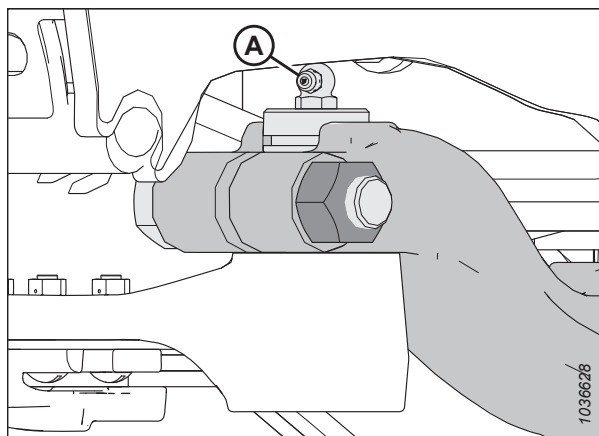


Figure 4.122: Knifehead

11. Move the knife drive arm to the mid-stroke position, and ensure the knife back bar doesn't contact the front of first guard (A).
12. If the knife back bar contacts the front of the first guard, remove bolts (B), reposition the guard forward, and reinstall the bolts. Torque bolts to 85 Nm (63 lbf-ft). If the necessary clearance (zero contact between back bar and front of first guard) is not achievable, then additional shims are required between the knife drive box and the mounting plate. Contact your MacDon Dealer.
13. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

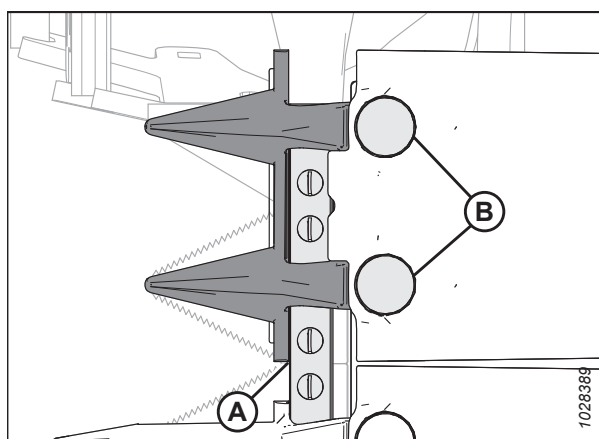


Figure 4.123: First Knife Guard – View from below Knife

4.8.6 Spare Knives

Two spare knives (A) can be stored in the header backtube at the right end. Ensure the spare knives are secured in place with latch (B) and hairpin (C).

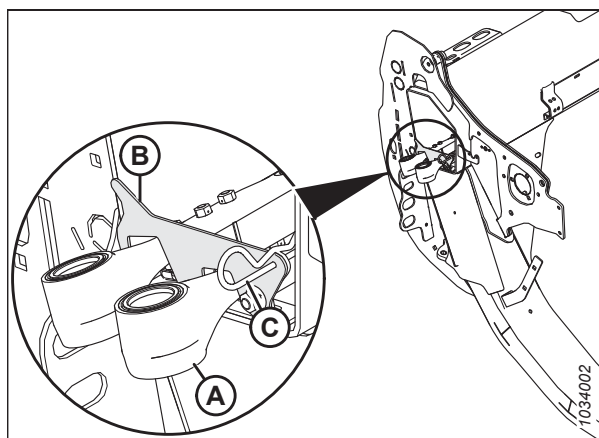


Figure 4.124: Spare Knives

4.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

The following knife guards and hold-downs are used in pointed guard configurations:

NOTE:

Pointed knife guard configurations require two short knife guards; one at each end of the cutterbar.

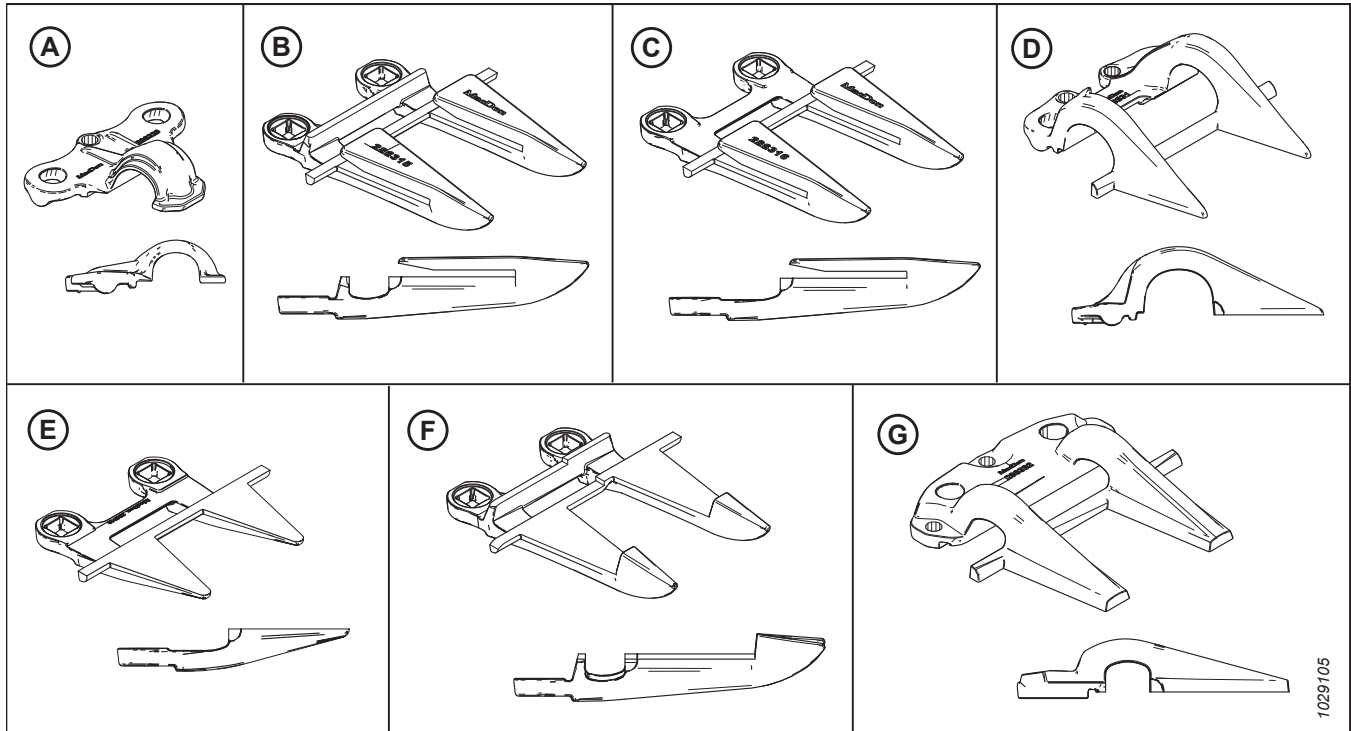


Figure 4.125: Guard and Hold-Down Types used in Pointed Knife Guard Configurations

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)

C - Pointed-End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)⁸⁶
E - PlugFree™ End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)⁸⁷

G - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)⁸⁸

B - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)

D - PlugFree™ End Hold-Down (MD #286331)

F - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)⁸⁸

Guards are configured differently on different headers. When replacing pointed guards and hold-downs, ensure you use the correct sequence for your header. The following will guide you to the different configurations:

- [Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers, page 548](#)
- [Pointed Knife Guards on FD235 Double-Knife Header, page 549](#)
- [Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header, page 550](#)
- [Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header, page 551](#)
- [Pointed Knife Guards on FD245 Double-Knife Header, page 552](#)
- [Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header, page 553](#)

86. Installed in positions 2, 3, and 4 on drive side(s). Refer to [Replacing Pointed Knife Guards, page 556](#) for reference.

87. Installed in position 1 on drive side(s). Single-knife headers use standard guard MD #286318) on the right end.

88. Double-knife headers only.

Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

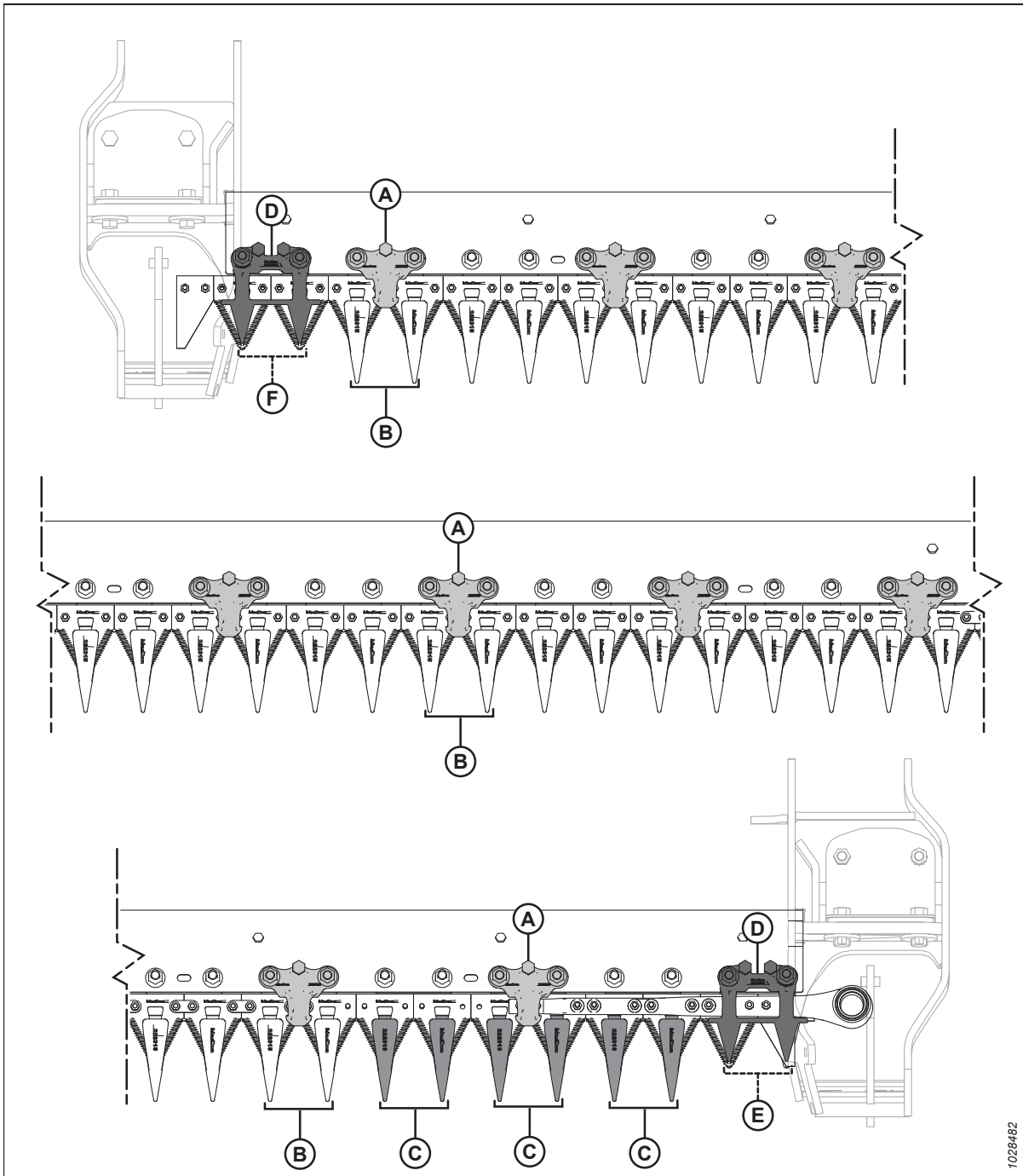


Figure 4.126: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Single-Knife Headers

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)

C - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)

E - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)

D - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)

F - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)

Pointed Knife Guards on FD235 Double-Knife Header

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

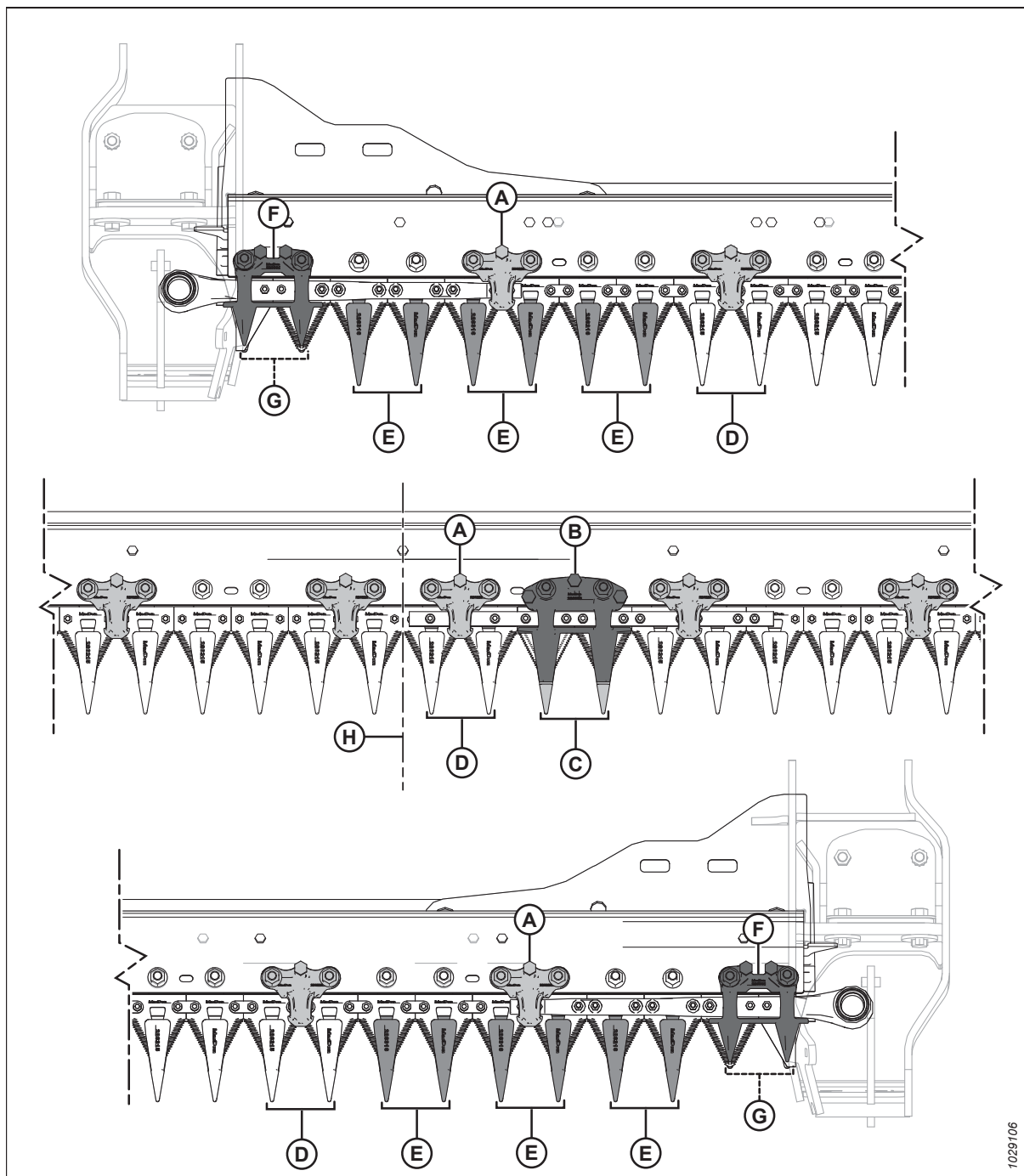


Figure 4.127: Pointed Guard and Hold-Down Locations

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)
 C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)
 E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)
 G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)
 D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)
 F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)
 H - Center of Header

Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

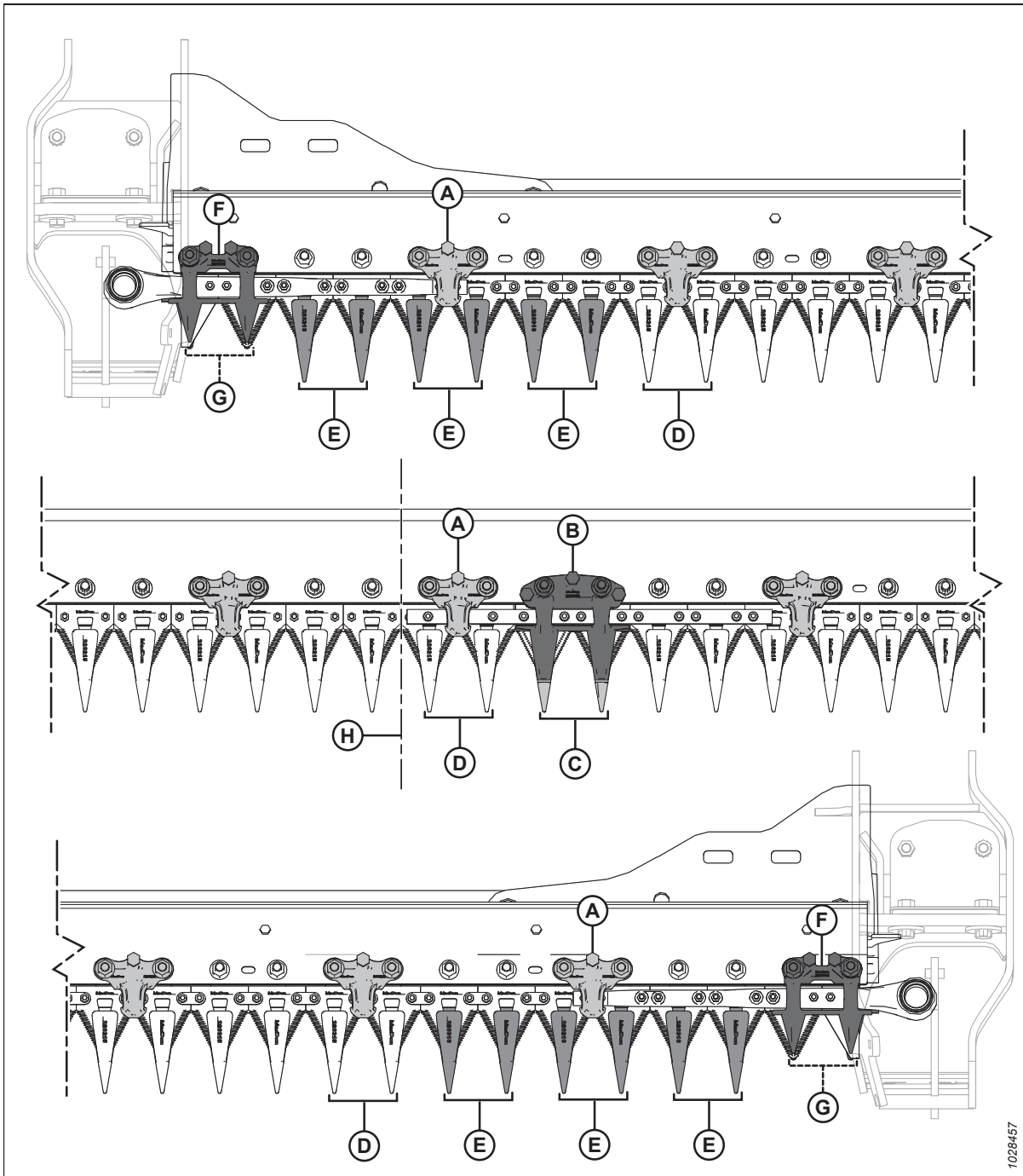


Figure 4.128: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD240 Double-Knife Header

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)

C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)

E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)

G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)

D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)

F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)

H - Center of Header

Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

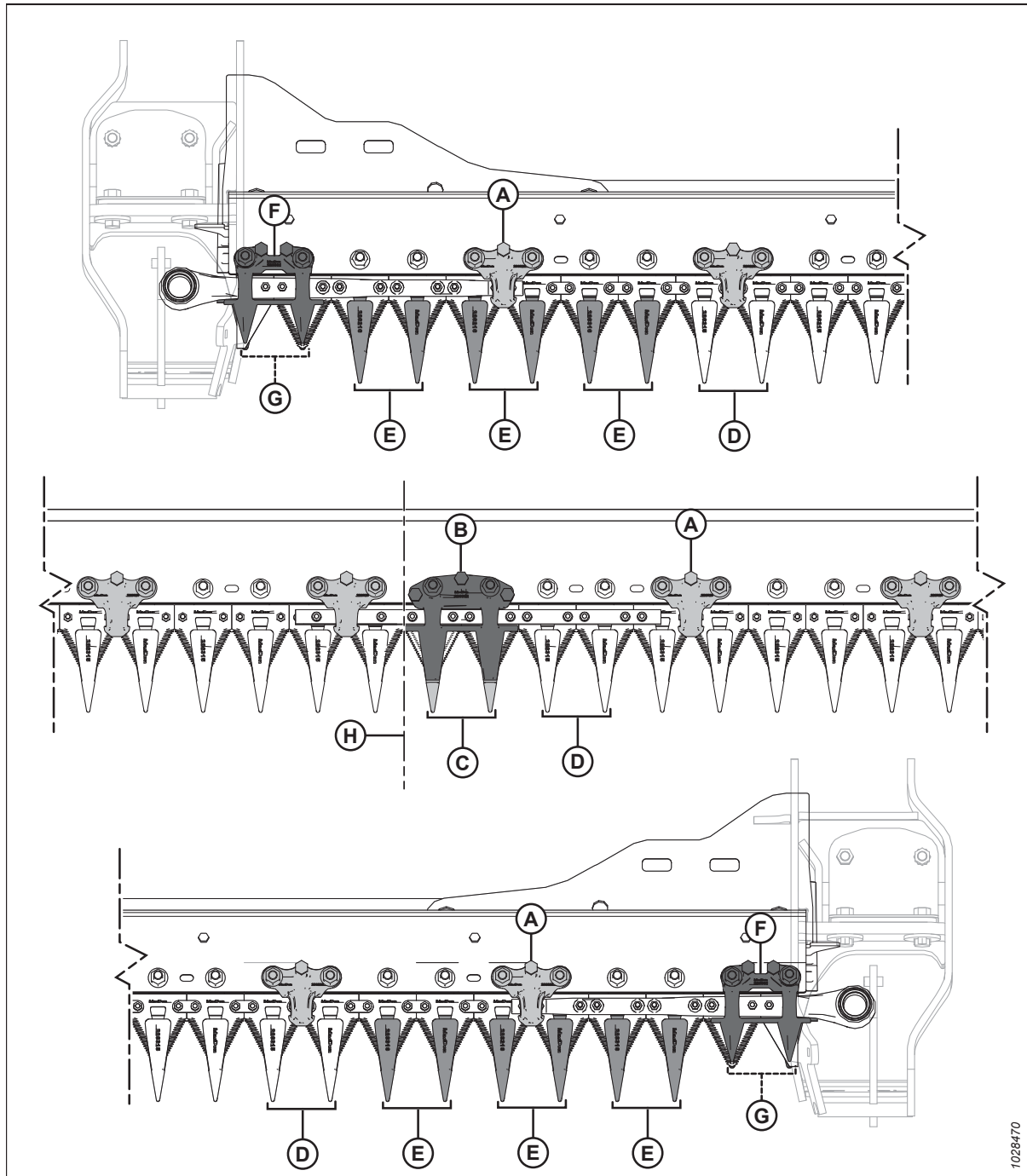


Figure 4.129: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)
 C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)
 E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)
 G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)
 D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)
 F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)
 H - Center of Header

Pointed Knife Guards on FD245 Double-Knife Header

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

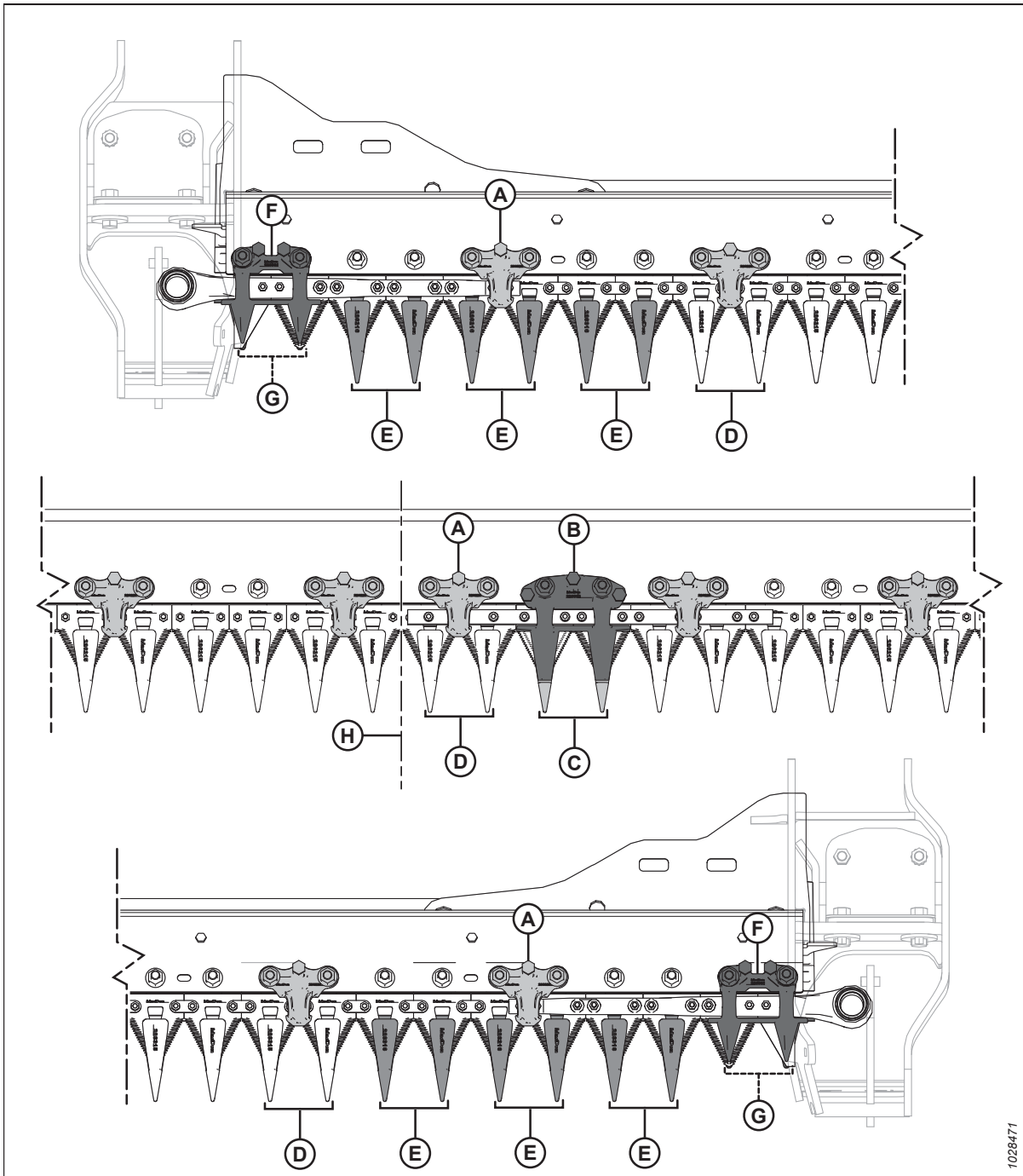


Figure 4.130: Pointed Guard and Hold-Down Locations

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)

C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)

E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)

G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)

D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)

F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)

H - Center of Header

Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header

Knife guards assist with aligning the knife bar. Hold-downs hold the sections on the knife bar down against the knife guards to ensure proper cutting.

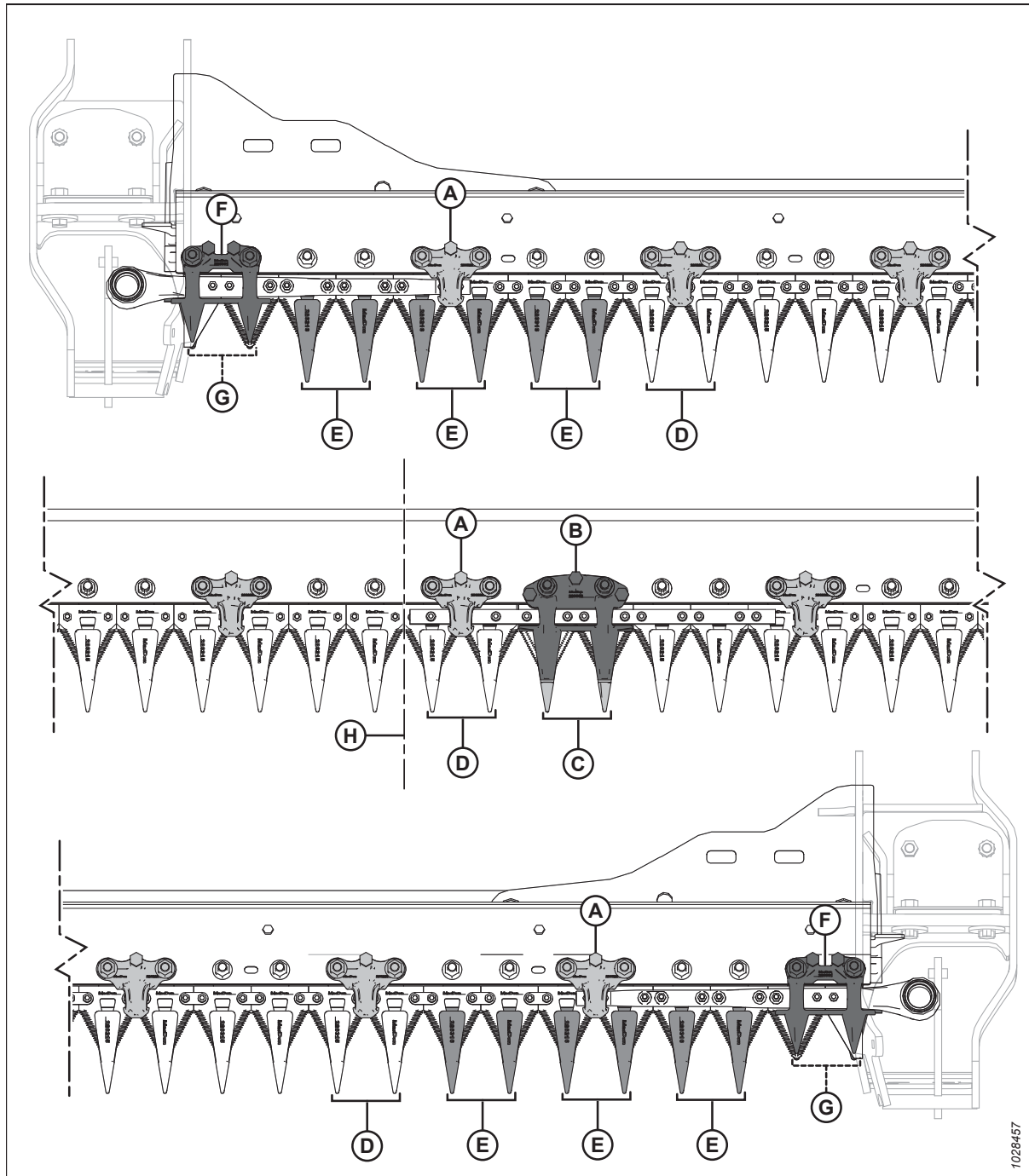


Figure 4.131: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD250 Double-Knife Header

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)
 C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)
 E - Pointed End Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)
 G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)

B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)
 D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)
 F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)
 H - Center of Header

Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar

If a knife guard or the guard bar is misaligned due to contact with a rock or similar obstruction, use the guard straightening tool (MD #286705) available from your MacDon Dealer to correct the issue.

! DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

! WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. To adjust the guard tips upwards, position tool (A) as shown, and pull up.

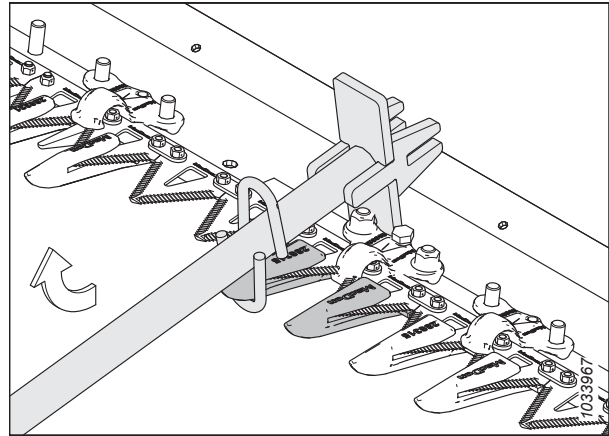


Figure 4.132: Upward Adjustment – Pointed Guard

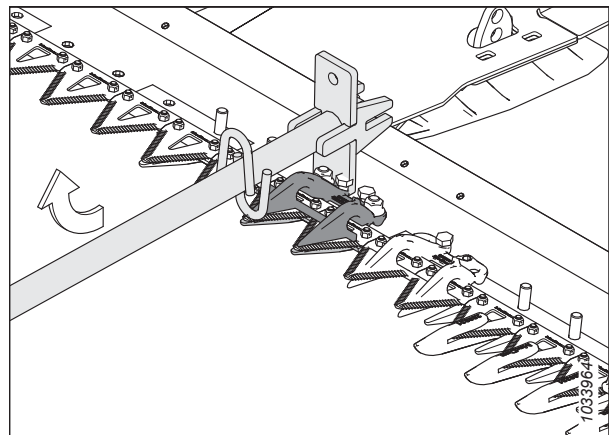


Figure 4.133: Upward Adjustment – Short Knife Guard

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. To adjust the guard tips downwards, position tool (A) as shown, and push down.

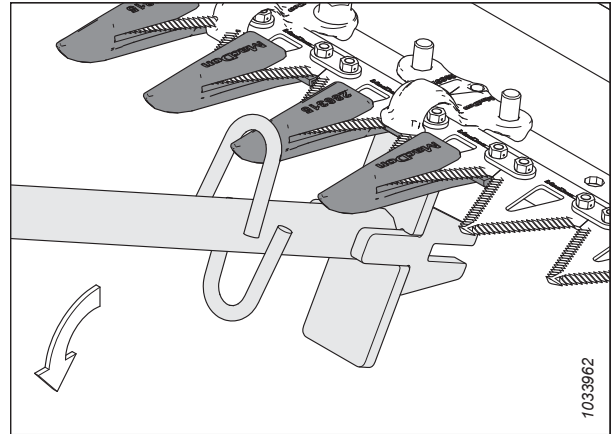


Figure 4.134: Downward Adjustment – Pointed Guard

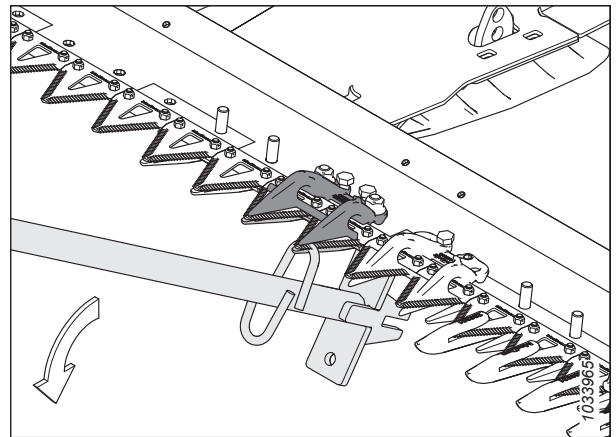


Figure 4.135: Downward Adjustment – Short Knife Guard

6. To adjust the guard bar up or down, position tool (A) as shown, and push on the tool accordingly.

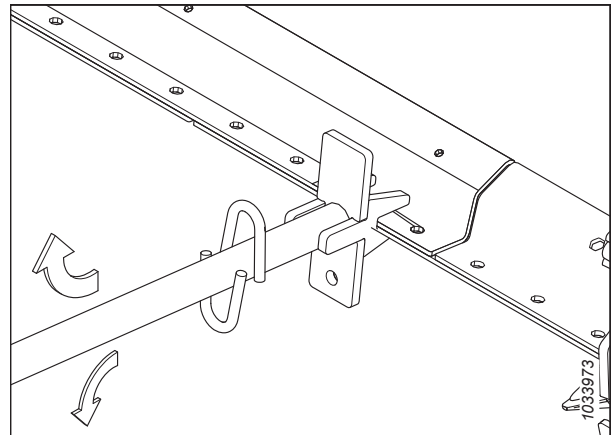


Figure 4.136: Guard Bar Adjustment – No Guards

Replacing Pointed Knife Guards

Guards become dull and need to be replaced. This procedure is for replacing standard guards and the special (drive side) guards closest to the knife drive motor.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

IMPORTANT:

When replacing pointed knife guards, ensure the hold-down sequence is correct for your header type and width. For more information, refer to [4.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 547](#).

IMPORTANT:

Single- and double-knife headers: On both ends of the header, position 1 (outboard guard) is a short knife guard. On the drive side(s) of the header, positions 2, 3, and 4 are pointed end knife guards (without wear bar). Starting at position 5, the remaining guards are pointed knife guards. Ensure that the proper replacement guards are installed at these locations.

IMPORTANT:

Double-knife headers: A pointed center knife guard installed where the two knives overlap. The pointed center knife guard has a slightly different replacement procedure. For instructions, refer to [Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 559](#).

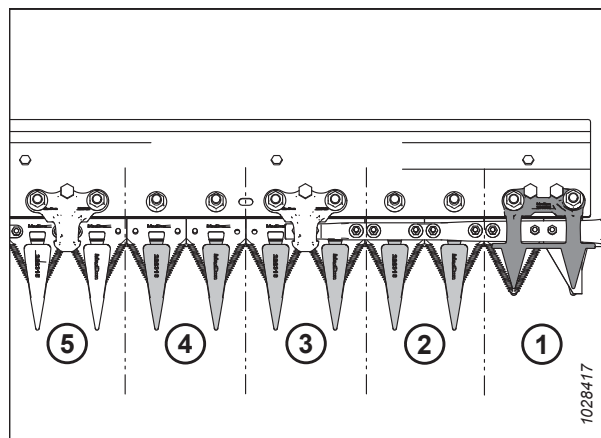


Figure 4.137: Drive Side Pointed Knife Guards

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
5. Rotate the flywheel attached to the knife drive box to manually stroke the knife until the knife sections are spaced midway between the guards.
6. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

7. Remove two nuts and bolts (B) securing pointed knife guard (A) and hold-down (C) (if applicable) to the cutterbar.
8. Remove pointed knife guard (A), hold-down (C), and the plastic wearplate. Discard the pointed knife guard.

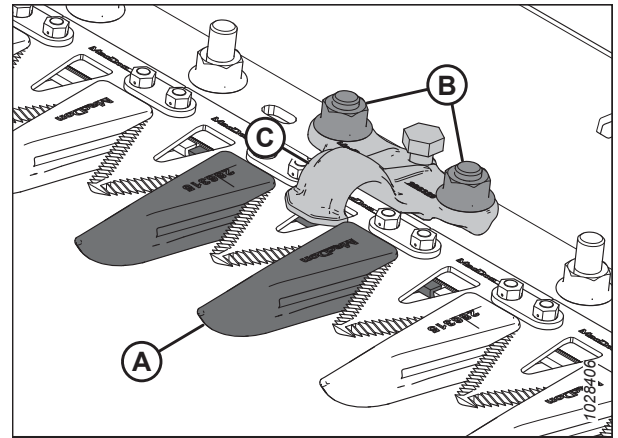


Figure 4.138: Pointed Knife Guards

9. Position plastic wearplate (A) and replacement pointed knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

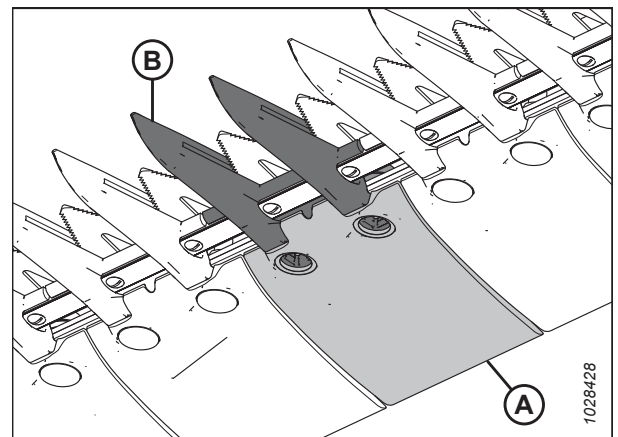


Figure 4.139: Pointed Knife Guard and Wearplate

10. Position hold-down (A) (if applicable), and loosen adjustment bolt (C) so that it is not protruding from the bottom of the hold-down.
11. Secure the pointed knife guard, wearplate, and hold-down (if applicable) with two bolts and nuts (B). Tighten nuts to 85 Nm (63 lbf-ft).
12. If there is a hold-down at this location, proceed with adjustment. Refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558](#).

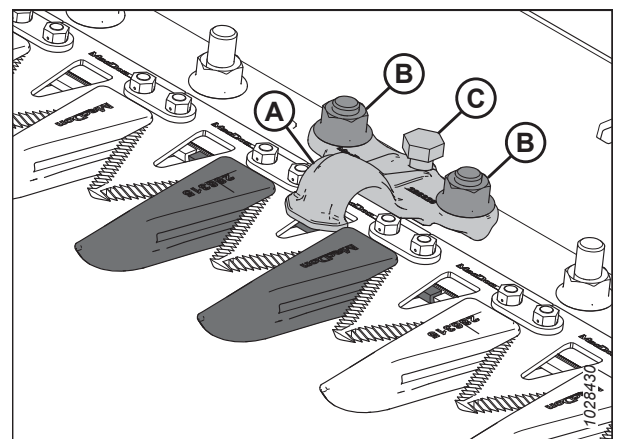


Figure 4.140: Pointed Knife Guards

Checking Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

This procedure is for standard hold-downs. To check the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 562](#).

NOTE:

Align the guards prior to adjusting the hold-down. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 554](#).



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
6. Rotate the flywheel attached to the knife drive box to manually stroke the knife to position knife section (A) under hold-down (B).
7. Push down on knife section (A) with approximately 44 N (10 lbf) of force, and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (B) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.).
8. If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558](#).
9. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

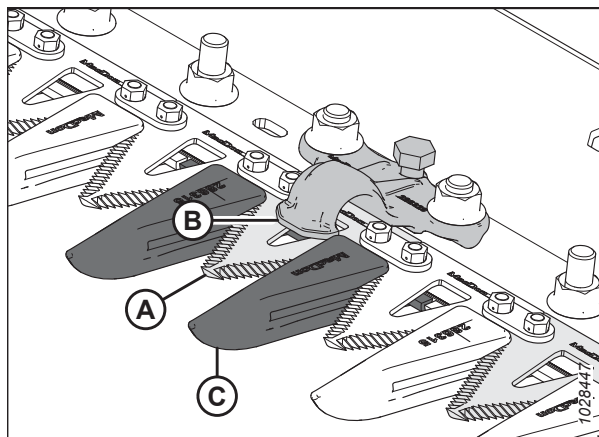


Figure 4.141: Pointed Hold-Down

Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

This procedure is for standard hold-down. To adjust the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 563](#).

NOTE:

Align guards prior to adjusting the hold-down. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 554](#).



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:
 - a. To lower the front of hold-down (A) and decrease clearance, turn adjuster bolt (B) clockwise.
 - b. To raise the front of hold-down (A) and increase clearance, turn adjuster bolt (B) counterclockwise.

NOTE:

For larger adjustments, it may be necessary to loosen nuts (C) before turning adjuster bolt (B). After adjustment, retighten nuts to 85 Nm (63 lbf-ft).

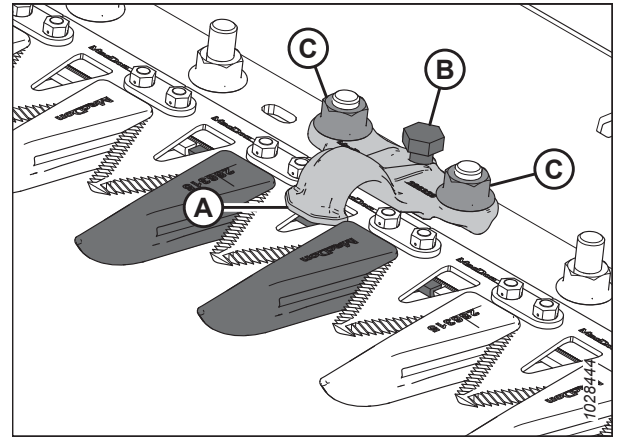


Figure 4.142: Pointed Hold-Down

5. Run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance. Readjust as necessary.

IMPORTANT:

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards.

Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife

The guard at the center of a double-knife header (where the two knives overlap) requires a slightly different replacement procedure than a pointed knife guard.

WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Remove two nuts and bolts (C) securing guard (A) and hold-down (B) to the cutterbar.
5. Remove guard (A), plastic wearplate, and hold-down (B).

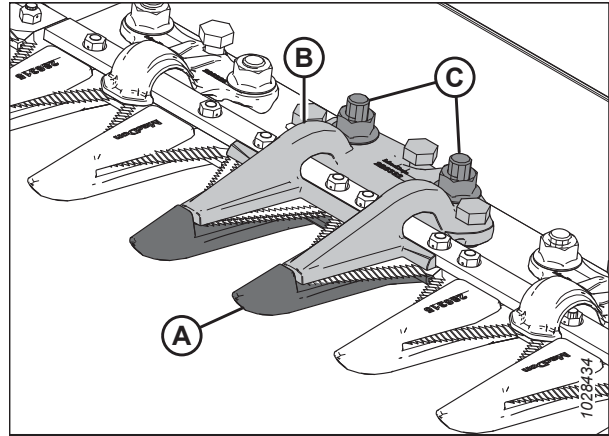


Figure 4.143: Pointed Center Knife Guard

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the replacement guard is the correct guard with offset cutting surfaces (A).

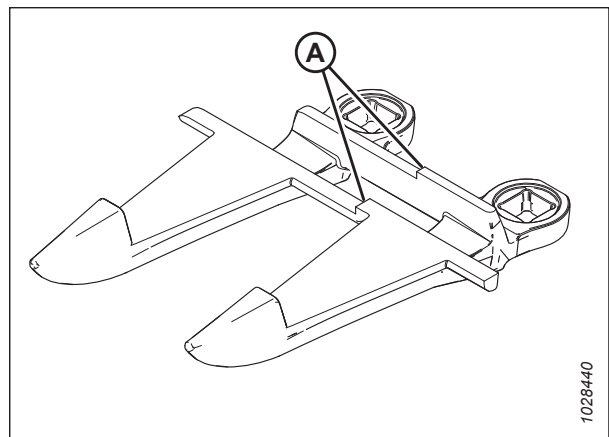


Figure 4.144: Pointed Center Knife Guard

6. Before installing the new pointed center knife guard, ensure overlap shim (A) is present under the cutterbar, and the thick end of the shim is positioned under the center guard.

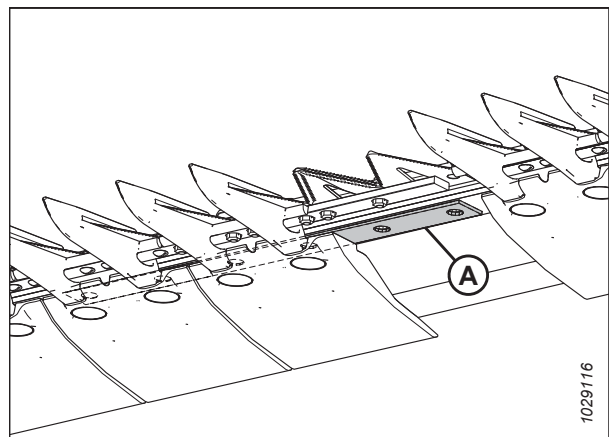


Figure 4.145: Cutterbar

7. Position plastic wearplate (A) and new guard (B) under the cutterbar.

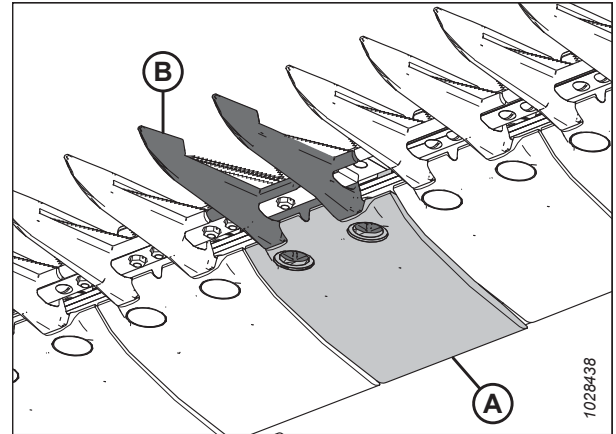


Figure 4.146: Pointed Center Knife Guard and Wearplate

8. Thread three adjustment bolts (A) so they are protruding 4 mm (5/32 in.) from the bottom of pointed center hold-down (B).
9. Position center hold-down (B) onto the cutterbar.

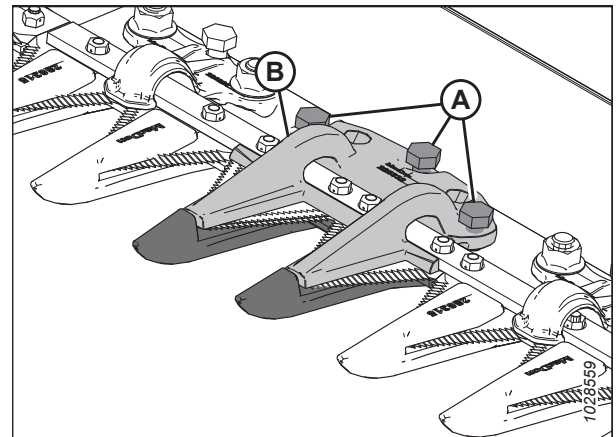


Figure 4.147: Pointed Center Knife Guard

10. Attach pointed center hold-down (A) with two bolts and nuts (B), but do **NOT** tighten at this time.

IMPORTANT:

Hold-down (A) must accommodate the two overlapping knives at the center guard location. Ensure the proper replacement guard is installed at this location.

11. Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
 - For adjustment instructions, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 563](#).
 - For clearance specifications, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 562](#).
12. Tighten nuts (B) to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).

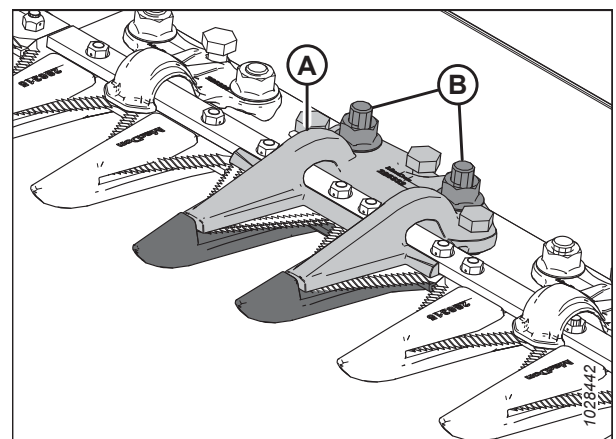


Figure 4.148: Pointed Center Knife Guard

13. Recheck the clearance.

- If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
- If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step [11, page 561](#) to Step [13, page 562](#) until the clearance is satisfactory.

Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
5. Rotate the flywheel attached to the knife drive box to manually stroke the knife fully inboard until the knife sections are under hold-down (A). Repeat for the opposite knife.
6. Push down on the knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf) of force, and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (A) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is as follows:
 - At tip (B) of hold-down: 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.)
 - At rear (C) of hold-down: 0.1–1.0 mm (0.004–0.040 in.)
7. If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 563](#).
8. If no adjustment is required, tighten nuts (D) to 85 Nm (63 lbf-ft).
9. Recheck clearance after tightening nuts, and adjust if necessary.
10. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

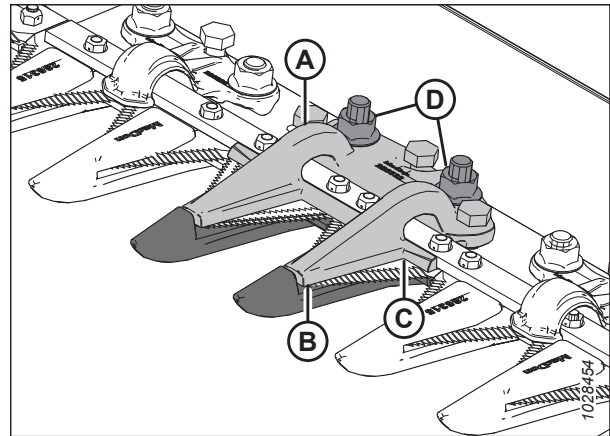


Figure 4.149: Pointed Center Hold-Down

Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Loosen mounting hardware (B).
5. Turn adjuster bolts (A) as follows:
 - To increase the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise (tighten).
 - To decrease the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise (loosen).
6. To adjust clearance at tip only, adjust using only center (rear) adjustment bolt (C).
 - To increase the clearance, turn adjuster bolt (C) counterclockwise (loosen).
 - To decrease the clearance, turn adjuster bolt (C) clockwise (tighten).
7. Tighten nuts (B) to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).
8. Recheck clearances, and make further adjustments if necessary.
9. Run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance.

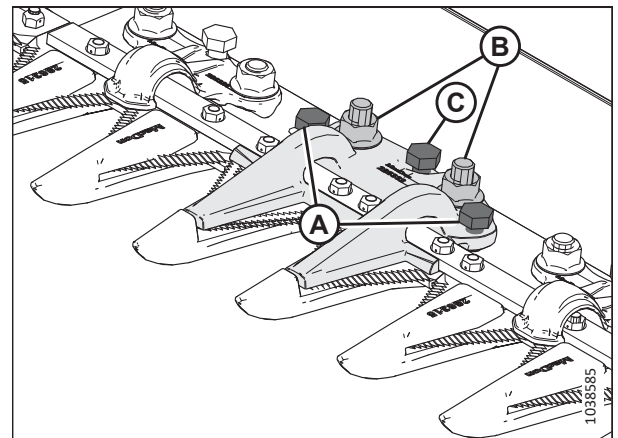


Figure 4.150: Pointed Center Hold-Down

IMPORTANT:

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards—readjust as necessary.

4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs

Short knife guards are less likely to plug the knife in tough crops such as grasses and canola.

The following knife guards and hold-downs are used in short knife guard configurations:

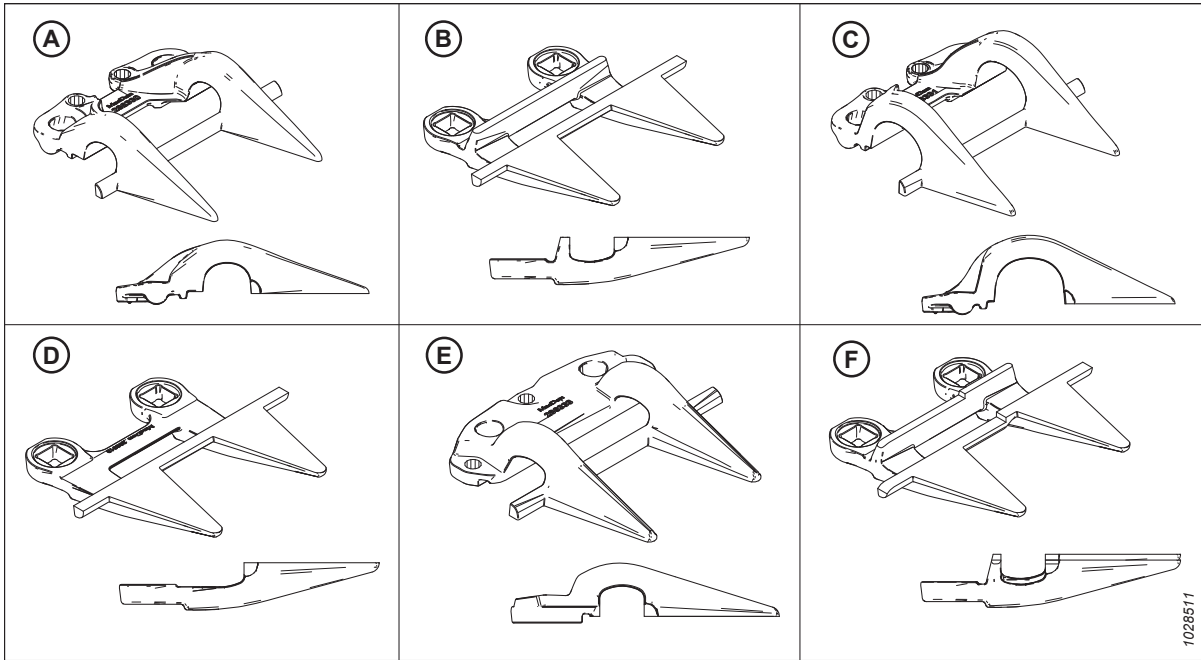


Figure 4.151: Guard and Hold-Down Types used in Short Knife Guard Configurations

A - PlugFree™ Hold-Down (MD #286330)

C - PlugFree™ End Hold-Down (MD #286331)⁸⁹

E - PlugFree™ Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)⁹¹

B - PlugFree™ Knife Guard (MD #286318)

D - PlugFree™ End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)⁹⁰

F - PlugFree™ Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)⁹¹

Guards are configured differently on different headers. When replacing short knife guards and hold-downs, ensure you use the correct sequence for your header. The following will guide you to the different configurations:

- *Short Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers, page 565*
- *Short Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Sizes Except 12.5 m (41 ft.), page 566*
- *Short Knife Guards on 12.5 m (41 ft.) Double-Knife Header, page 567*

89. Installed in positions 1–3 on drive side(s); installed in position 1 at right end of single-knife headers.

90. Installed in positions 1–4 on drive side(s). Single-knife headers use standard guard (MD #286318) on the right end.

91. Double-knife headers only.

Short Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers

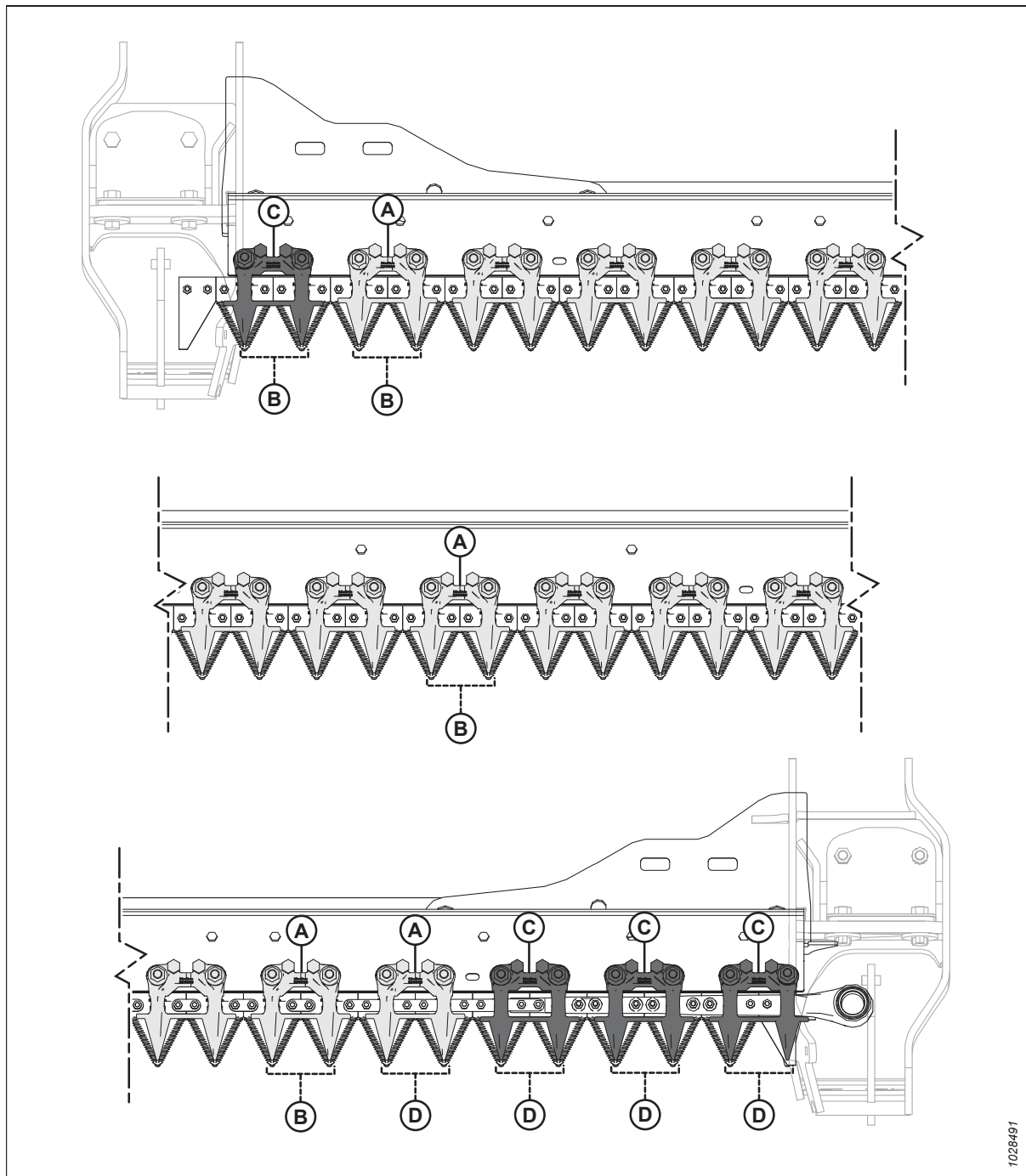


Figure 4.152: Short Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Single-Knife Headers

A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)

C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x4) (MD #286331)

B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)

D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x5) (MD #286319)

Short Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Sizes Except 12.5 m (41 ft.)

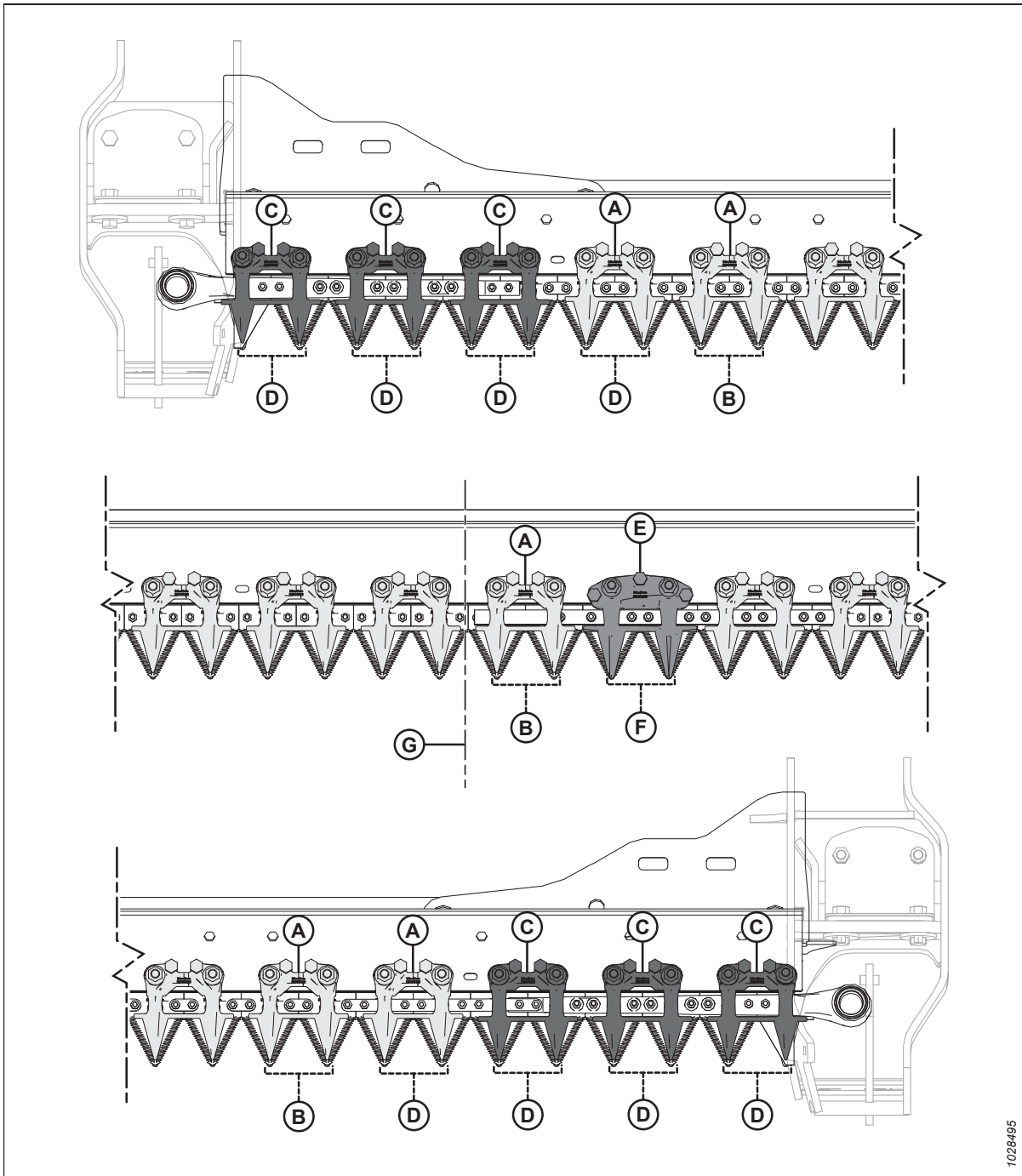


Figure 4.153: Short Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Double-Knife Headers

A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)

C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x6) (MD #286331)

E - Short Knife Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)

G - Center of Header

B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)

D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x8) (MD #286319)

F - Short Knife Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)

Short Knife Guards on 12.5 m (41 ft.) Double-Knife Header

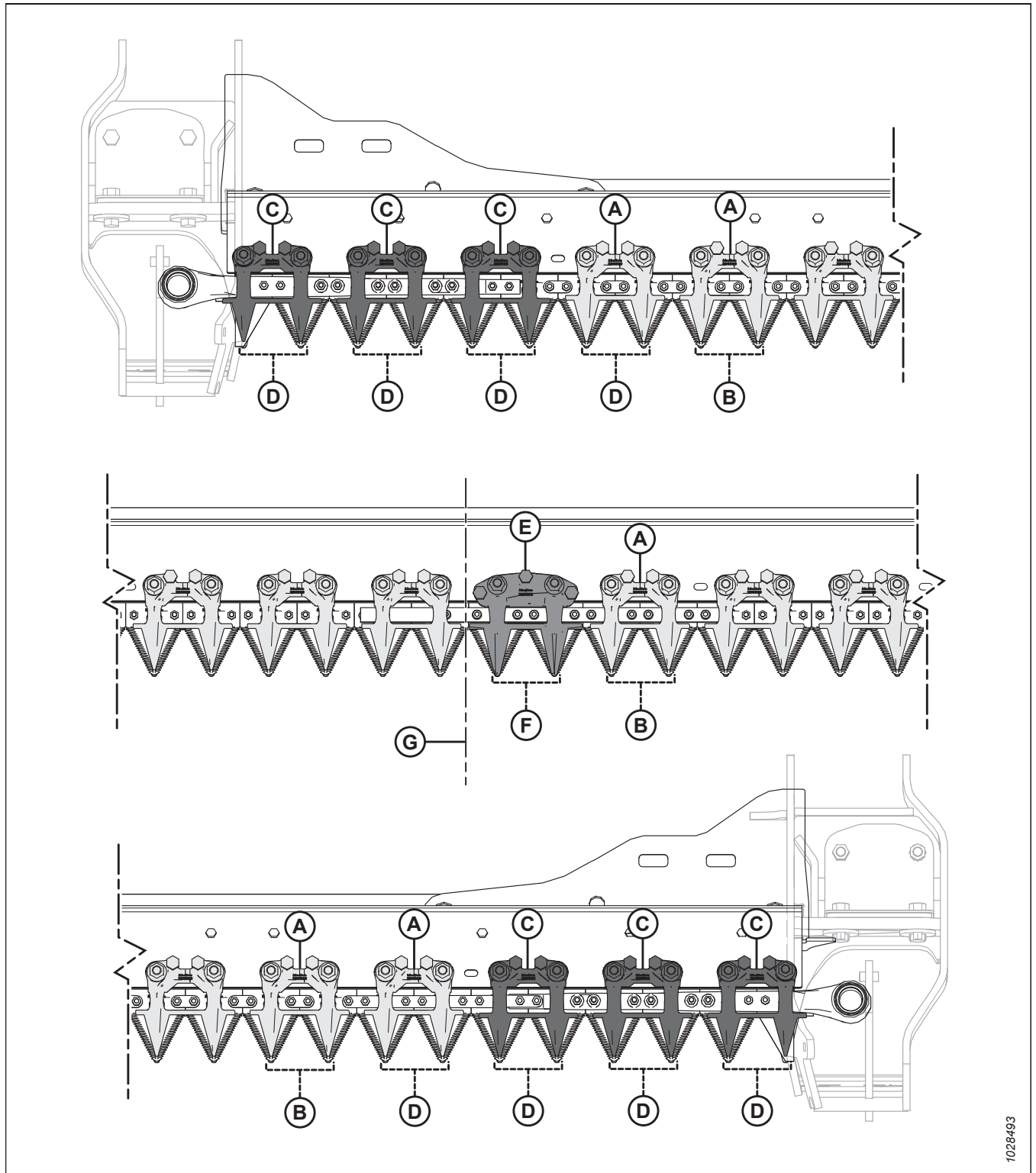


Figure 4.154: Short Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – 12.5 m (41 ft.) Double-Knife Header

A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)
 C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x6) (MD #286331)
 E - Short Knife Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)
 G - Center of Header

B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)
 D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x8) (MD #286319)
 F - Short Knife Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)

Replacing Short Knife Guards or End Knife Guards

Short knife guards or end knife guards are less likely to plug the knife in tough crops such as grasses and canola, and are factory-installed.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

IMPORTANT:

Double-knife headers have an offset center knife guard installed where the two knives overlap. The center knife guard has a slightly different replacement procedure. For instructions, refer to [Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife](#), page 571.

To replace a short knife guard or end knife guard, follow these steps:

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props](#), page 33.
4. Remove two nuts and bolts (A) securing short knife guard (B) and hold-down (C) to the cutterbar.
5. Remove short knife guard (B), hold-down (C), and the plastic wearplate.

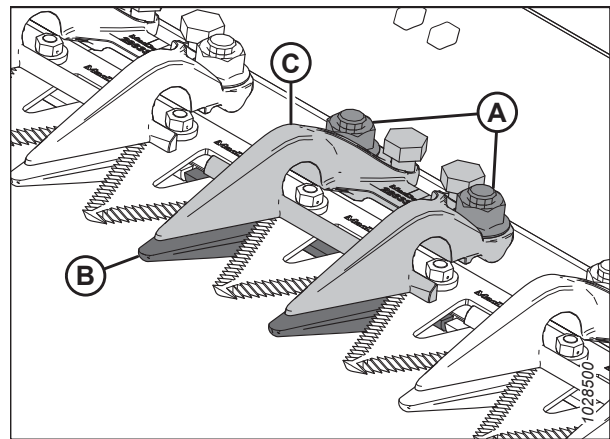


Figure 4.155: Short Knife Guards

IMPORTANT:

The first four knife guards (A) on the drive sides of the header are called end knife guards and do **NOT** have wear bars. Ensure the proper replacement knife guards are installed at these locations.

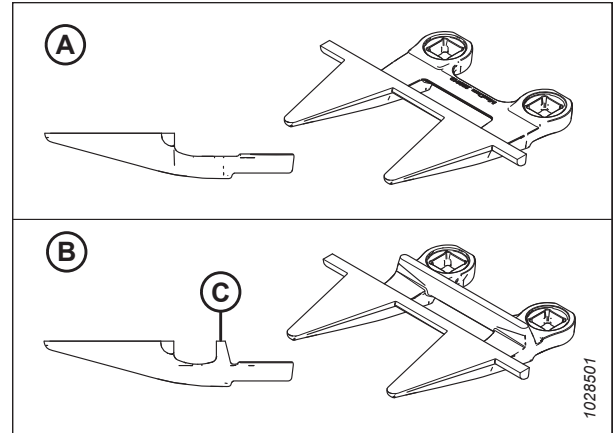


Figure 4.156: End Knife Guard and Short Knife Guards

A - End Knife Guard (MD #286319)

B - Short Knife Guard (with wear bar [C]) (MD #286318)

6. Position plastic wearplate (A) and replacement short knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

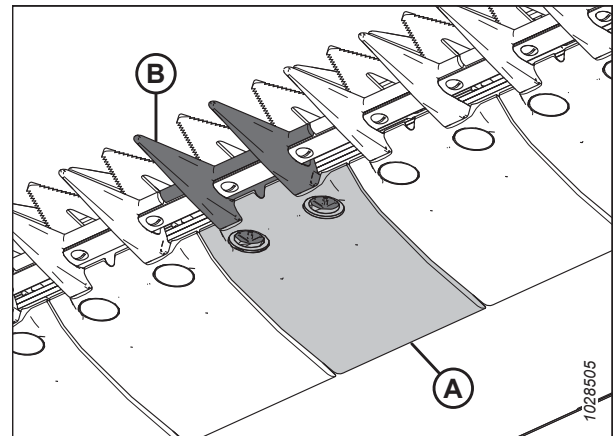


Figure 4.157: Short Knife Guard and Wearplate

7. Position hold-down (A), and loosen two adjustment bolts (B) so that they are not protruding from the bottom of the hold-down.
8. Secure the short knife guard, wearplate, and hold-down with two bolts and nuts (C), but do **NOT** tighten yet.
9. Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
 - For adjustment instructions, refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570](#).
 - For clearance specifications, refer to [Checking Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570](#).
10. Tighten nuts (C) to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).

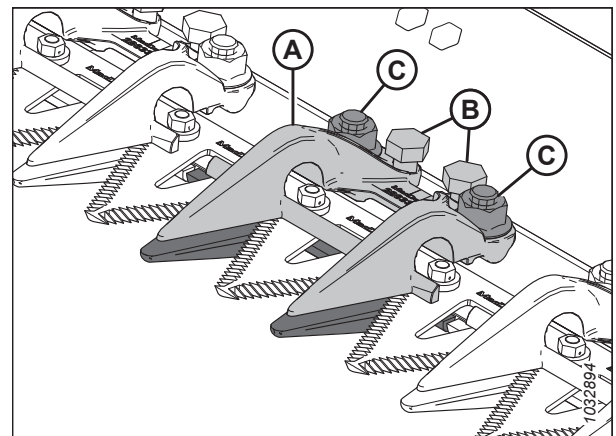


Figure 4.158: Short Knife Guard

11. Recheck the clearance.
 - If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
 - If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step 9, [page 569](#) to Step 11, [page 569](#) until the clearance is satisfactory.

Checking Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

To check the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574](#).

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Manually stroke the knife to position the section under hold-down (A).
5. Push down on knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf) of force, and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between the tip of hold-down (B) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.).
6. If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570](#).

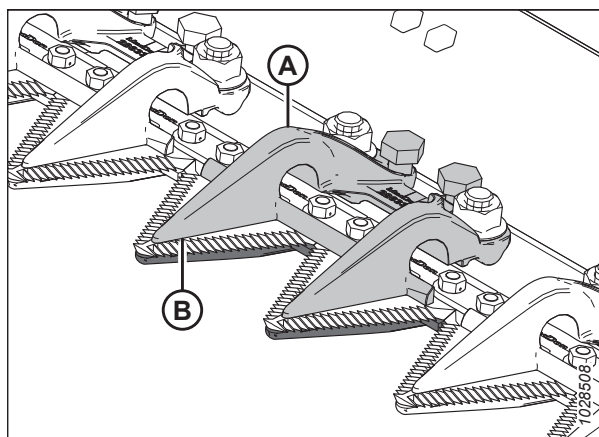


Figure 4.159: Short Knife Guards

Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

To adjust the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574](#).

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33*.
4. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:

- a. To decrease the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise.
- b. To increase the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise.

NOTE:

For larger adjustments, it may be necessary to loosen nuts (B) before turning adjuster bolts (A). After adjustment, retighten nuts to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).

- c. Recheck the first point after adjusting the second point, as adjustments to each side can influence the other.
- d. Make further adjustments as necessary.

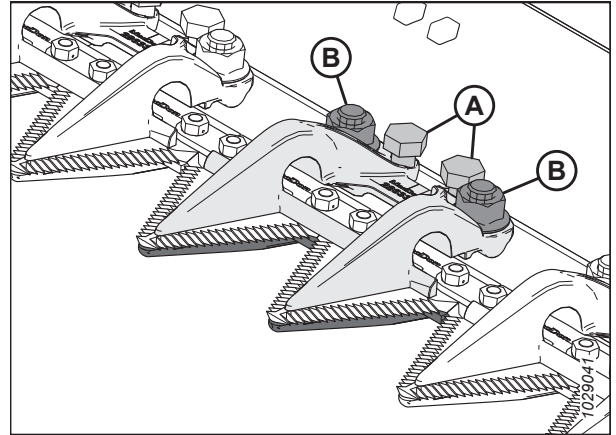


Figure 4.160: Short Knife Guard Hold-Down

5. Recheck clearances, and make further adjustments if necessary.
6. Run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance. Readjust as necessary.

IMPORTANT:

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards.

Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife

The offset guard at the center of a double-knife header (where the two knives overlap) requires a slightly different replacement procedure than a standard guard.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33*.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Remove two nuts and bolts (C) securing center knife guard (A) and hold-down (B) to the cutterbar.
5. Remove center knife guard (A), plastic wearplate, and hold-down (B).

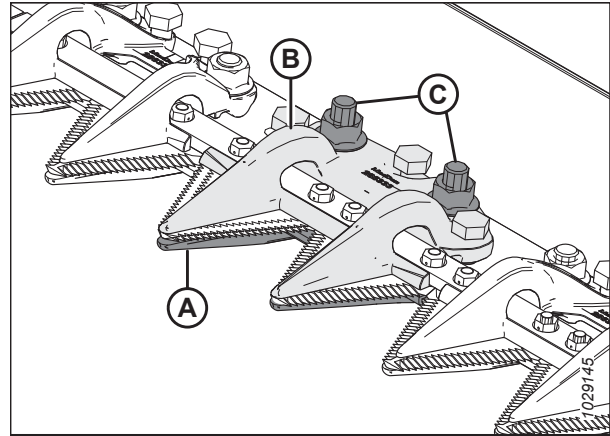


Figure 4.161: Center Knife Guard

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the replacement center knife guard is the correct guard with offset cutting surfaces (A).

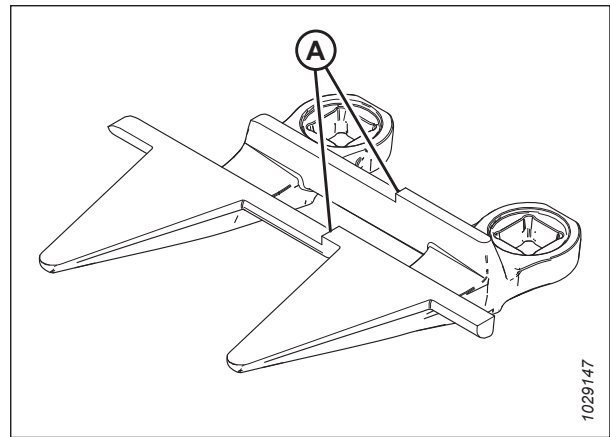


Figure 4.162: Center Knife Guard

6. Before installing the new center knife guard, ensure overlap shim (A) is present under the cutterbar, and the thick end of the shim is positioned under the center knife guard.

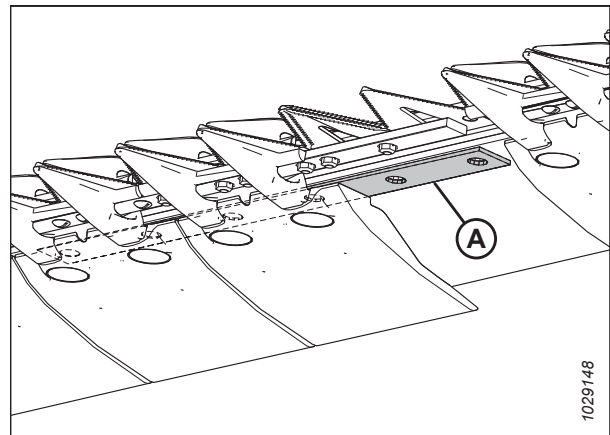


Figure 4.163: Cutterbar

7. Position plastic wearplate (A) and new center knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

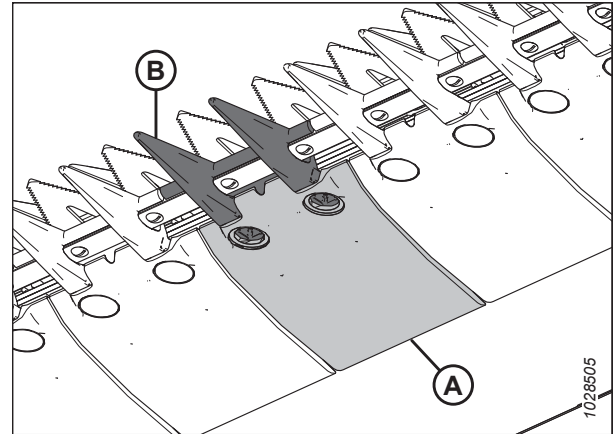


Figure 4.164: Center Knife Guard and Wearplate

8. Thread three adjustment bolts (A) so they are protruding 4 mm (5/32 in.) from the bottom of center hold-down (B).
9. Position center hold-down (B) onto the cutterbar.

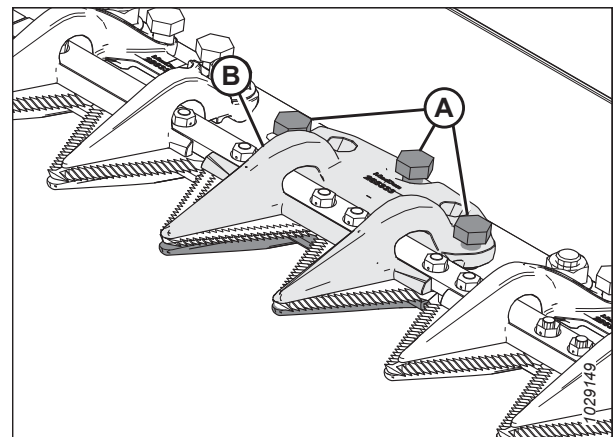


Figure 4.165: Center Knife Guard

10. Attach center hold-down (A) with two bolts and nuts (B), but do **NOT** tighten at this time.

IMPORTANT:

Hold-down (A) must accommodate the two overlapping knives at the center knife guard location. Ensure the proper replacement center knife guard is installed at this location.

11. Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
 - For adjustment instructions, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574](#).
 - For clearance specifications, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574](#).
12. Tighten nuts (B) to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).
13. Recheck the clearance.
 - If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
 - If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step 11, [page 573](#) to Step 13, [page 573](#) until the clearance is satisfactory.

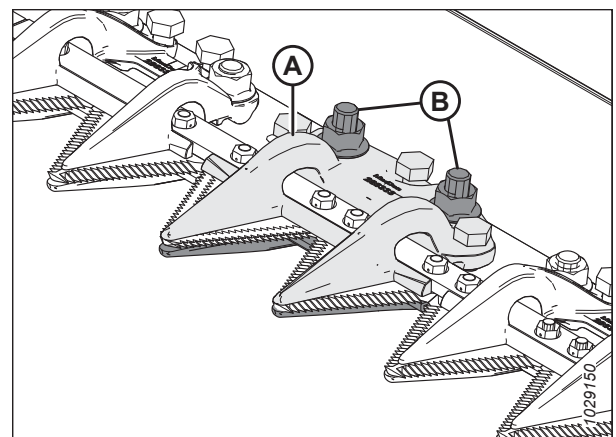


Figure 4.166: Center Knife Guard

Checking Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
4. Manually stroke both knives to their inboard end so that knife sections are under hold-down (A).
5. Push down on knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf) of force, and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (A) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is as follows:
 - At tip (B) of hold-down: 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.)
 - At rear (C) of hold-down: 0.1–1.0 mm (0.004–0.040 in.)
6. If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574](#).
7. If no adjustment is required, tighten nuts (D) to 85 Nm (63 lbf-ft).
8. Recheck clearance after tightening nuts.

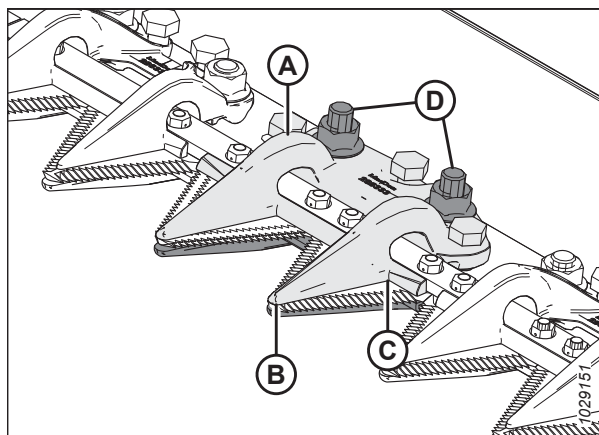


Figure 4.167: Center Knife Guard Hold-Down

Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).

4. Loosen mounting hardware (B).
5. Turn adjuster bolts (A) as follows:
 - To increase the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise (tighten).
 - To decrease the clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise (loosen).
6. To adjust the clearance at tip only, adjust using only center (rear) adjustment bolt (C).
 - To increase the clearance, turn adjuster bolt (C) counterclockwise (loosen).
 - To decrease the clearance, turn adjuster bolt (C) clockwise (tighten).
7. Tighten nuts (B) to 85 Nm (63 lbf·ft).
8. Run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance. Readjust as necessary.

IMPORTANT:

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards.

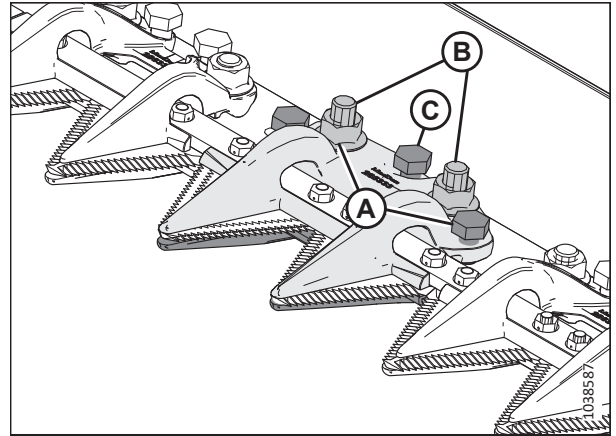


Figure 4.168: Center Hold-Down

4.8.9 Knifehead Shield

The knifehead shield attaches to the endsheet and reduces the knifehead opening to prevent cut crop from accumulating in the knifehead cutout.

IMPORTANT:

Remove the shields when using the cutterbar on the ground in muddy conditions. Mud may pack into the cavity behind the shield which could result in knife drive box failure.

Installing Knifehead Shield

The knifehead shield is primarily used in rice and fine grasses to keep crop from getting caught in the delivery opening. Not recommended in all conditions.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.



WARNING

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Retrieve the knifehead shields from the manual storage case.
6. Place knifehead shield (A) against the endsheet as shown. Align the shield so the cutout matches the profile of the knifehead and/or hold-downs.
7. Align the mounting holes and secure with two M10 x 30 hex head bolts, washers (B), and nuts.
8. Tighten bolts (B) just enough to hold knifehead shield (A) in place while allowing it to be adjusted as close to the knifehead as possible.
9. Manually rotate the knife drive box pulley to move the knife and check for areas of contact between the knifehead and knifehead shield (A). Adjust the shield to eliminate interference with the knife if necessary.
10. Tighten bolts (B).

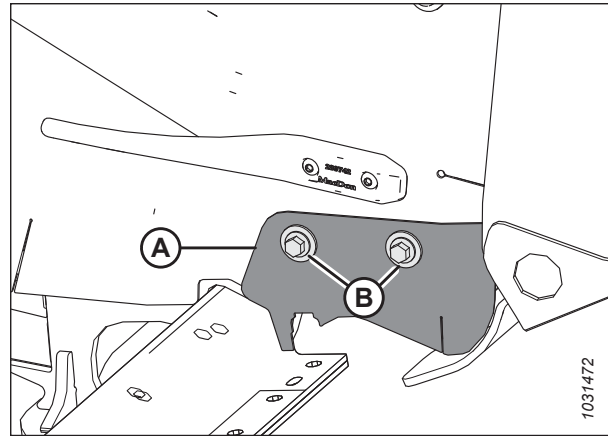


Figure 4.169: Knifehead Shield

4.9 Knife Drive System

The knife drive system transforms pumped hydraulic pressure into a mechanical motion that strokes a series of serrated knife blades at the front of the header back and forth to cut a variety of crops.

4.9.1 Knife Drive Box

Knife drive box is driven by a hydraulic motor and converts rotational motion into the reciprocating motion of the knife.

Single-knife headers have a knife drive box (A) and motor (B) on the left side; double-knife headers have a knife drive box and motor at each end.

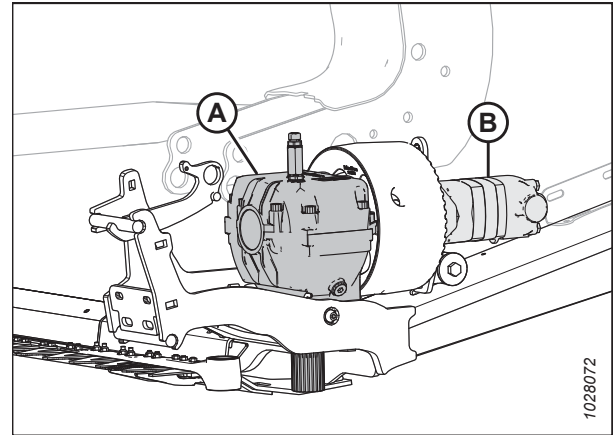


Figure 4.170: Left Side Knife Drive Box Shown – Right Side Similar

Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box

Single-knife headers have one knife drive box and double-knife headers have two knife drive boxes. To access the knife drive box(es), the endshield(s) must be fully opened.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Adjust the header angle so that the top of the knife drive box is level with the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).

- Remove oil level dipstick (A) and check the oil level. The oil level must be within range (B), that is, between the lines near the bottom of the dipstick.

NOTE:

Before checking the oil level, ensure the top of the knife drive box is horizontal and oil level dipstick (A) is screwed in.

- Reinstall oil level dipstick (A), and tighten to 23 Nm (17 lbf-ft).
- If the header is configured with a dual knife system, repeat the oil level check on the opposite side of the header.

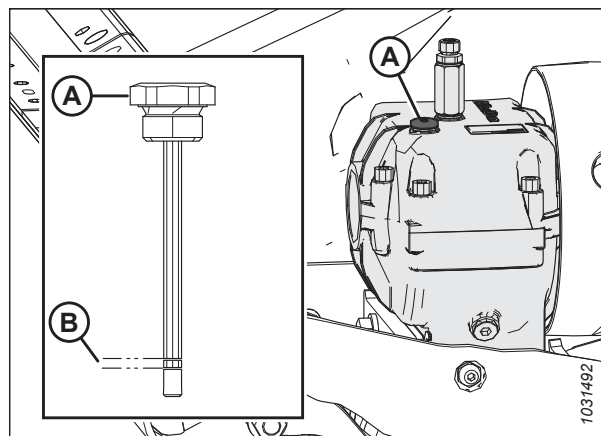


Figure 4.171: Knife Drive Box

Checking Mounting Bolts

Check the torque on the four knife drive box mounting bolts (A) and (B) after the first 10 hours of operation and every 100 hours thereafter.

- Ensure all bolts are torqued to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft). Torque side bolts (A) first, then torque bottom bolts (B).

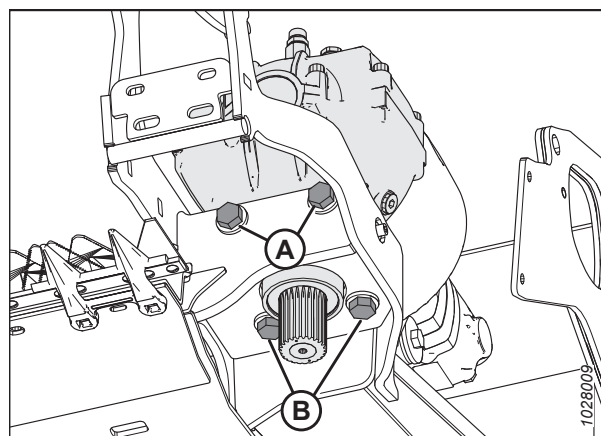


Figure 4.172: Knife Drive Box – View from Below

Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box

Change the knife drive box lubricant after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

! DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

- Raise the header fully.
- Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields](#), page 35.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Place a container large enough to hold approximately 1.5 L (0.4 US gal) under the knife drive box to collect the oil.
4. Remove dipstick (A) and drain plug (C).
5. Allow the oil to drain from the knife drive box and into the container placed below it.
6. Reinstall drain plug (C).
7. Add 1.5 L (0.4 US gal) of oil to the knife drive box. Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.

NOTE:

Check the oil level with the top of knife drive box horizontal and with oil level dipstick (A) screwed in.

8. Check that the oil level is within range (B).
9. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields](#), page 36.

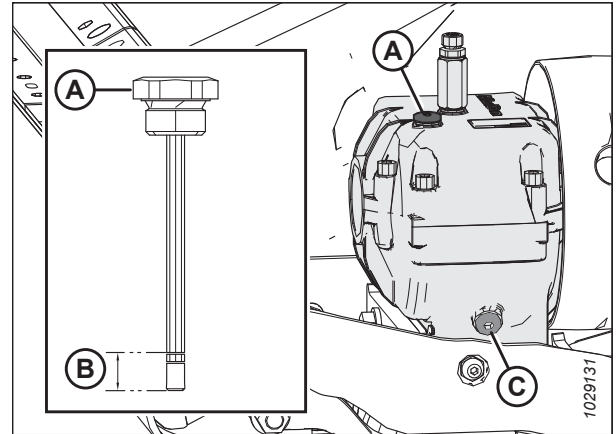


Figure 4.173: Knife Drive Box

4.10 Feed Deck

The feed deck is located on the FM200 Float Module. It consists of a motor and feed draper that conveys cut crop to the feed auger.

4.10.1 Replacing Feed Draper

Replace the feed draper if it is torn, cracked, or missing slats.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
5. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
6. To access the draper: Remove five countersunk screws (A) and retainer (B). Remove one button head screw and washer (C). Flip mid-filler (D) over. Repeat this step on the opposite side of the feed deck.

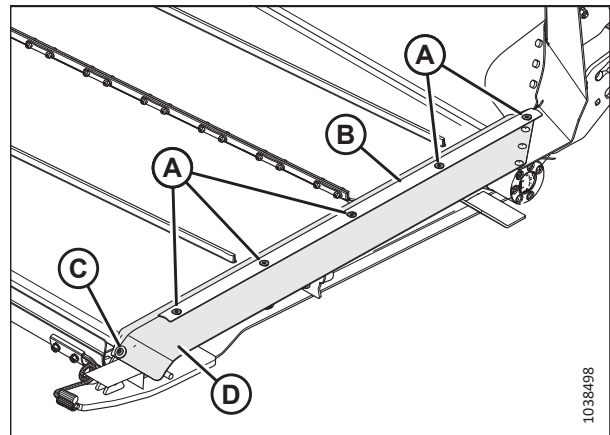


Figure 4.174: Draper Seal

7. To release the draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

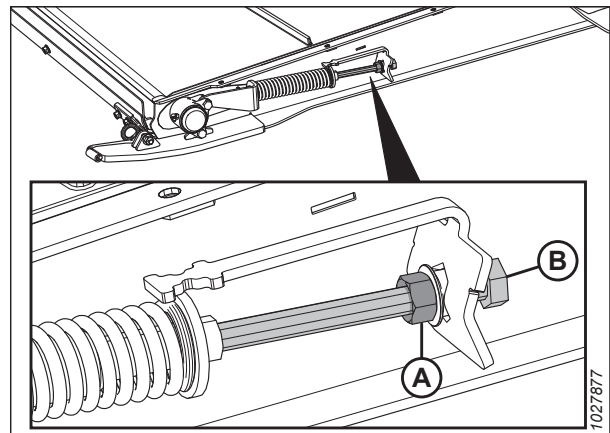


Figure 4.175: Feed Draper Tensioner

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Remove the following hardware (A) from idler roller casting (B) on both sides of the feed deck:
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
9. Move the idler roller back within the cutout in the frame to aid in draper replacement.

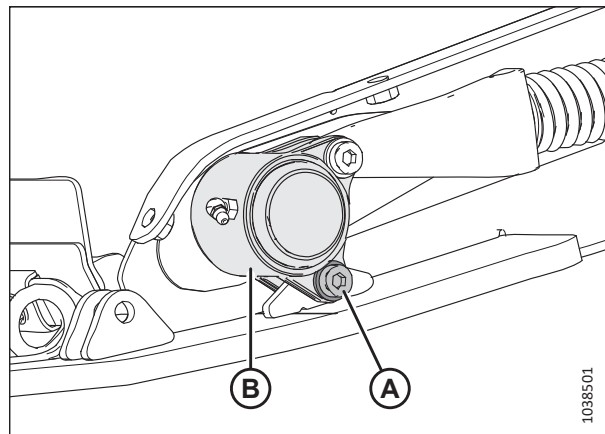


Figure 4.176: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

10. Unlatch feed deck pan handle (A) from handle latch supports (B) on both sides of the feed deck. This will drop the door down and allow access to the feed deck draper and rollers.

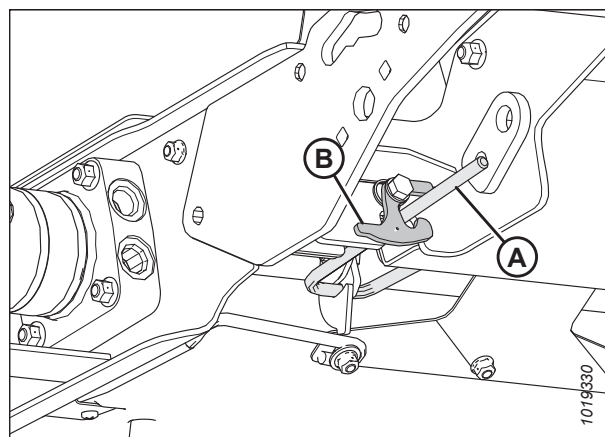


Figure 4.177: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

11. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
12. Pull the draper from the deck.

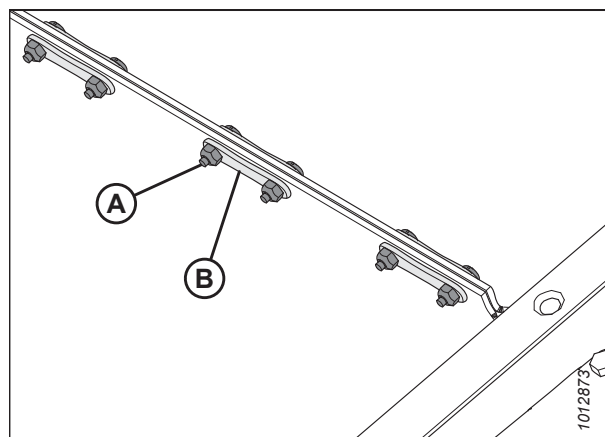


Figure 4.178: Draper Connector

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Install the new draper over drive roller (A). Make sure the draper guides fit into drive roller grooves (B).
14. Pull draper along bottom of feed deck and over idler roller (C).

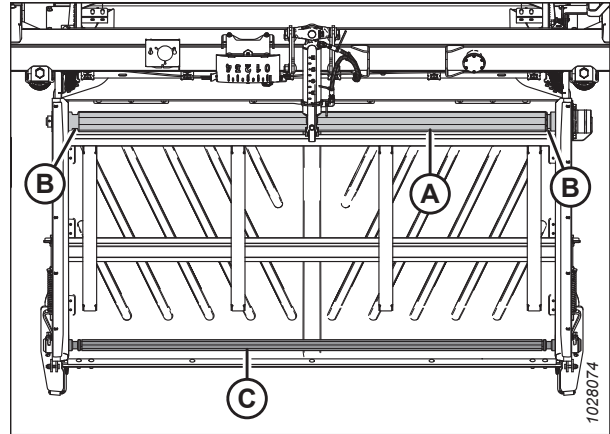


Figure 4.179: Float Module Feed Draper

15. Connect the draper joint with connector straps (B) and secure with nuts and screws (A). Ensure the screw heads face towards the rear of the deck, and tighten only until the end of the screws are flush with the nuts.

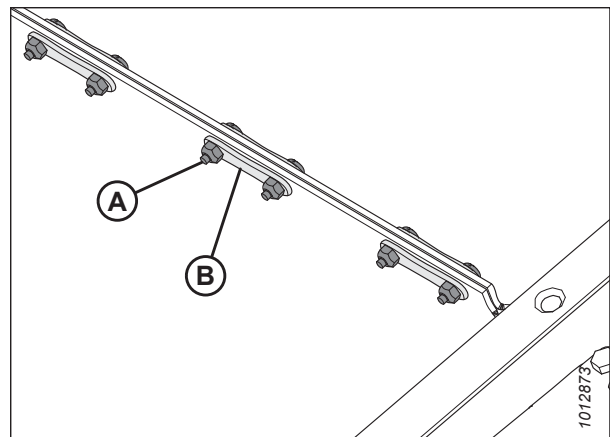


Figure 4.180: Draper Connector Straps

16. Move the idler back to the operating position. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to bolt threads and reinstall the following hardware (A) to secure idler roller casting (B) to the frame. Repeat this step on the opposite side of the feed deck:

- Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.

17. Tighten bolt (A) to 12 Nm (9 lbf-ft).

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** fully tighten bolt (A).

18. Adjust the draper tension. For instructions, refer to [4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension](#), page 583.

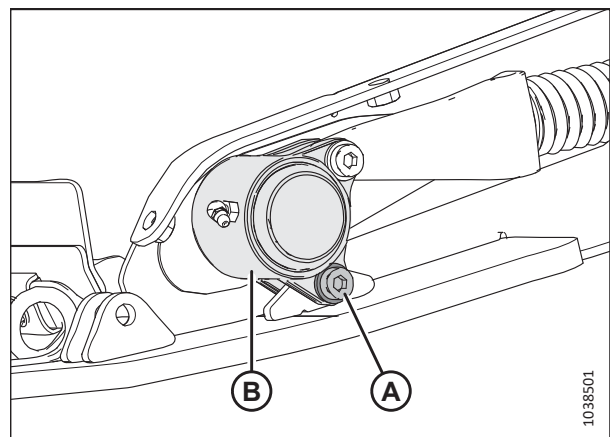


Figure 4.181: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

19. Close the feed deck by latching pan handle latch support (B) to feed deck pan handle (A) at both sides of the feed deck.

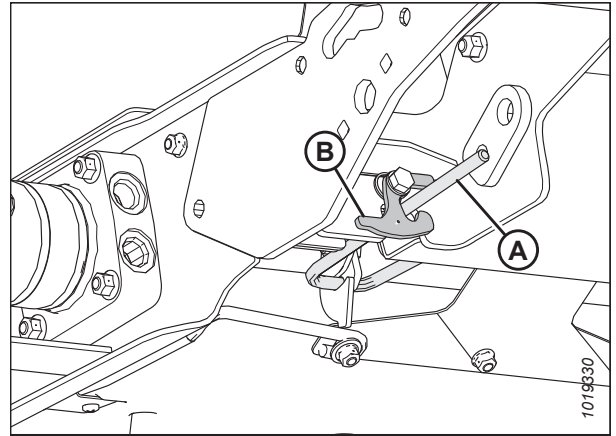


Figure 4.182: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

20. Reinstall mid-filler (D) with one button head screw and washer (C). Reinstall retainer (B) with five countersunk screws (A). Repeat this step on the opposite side of the feed deck.

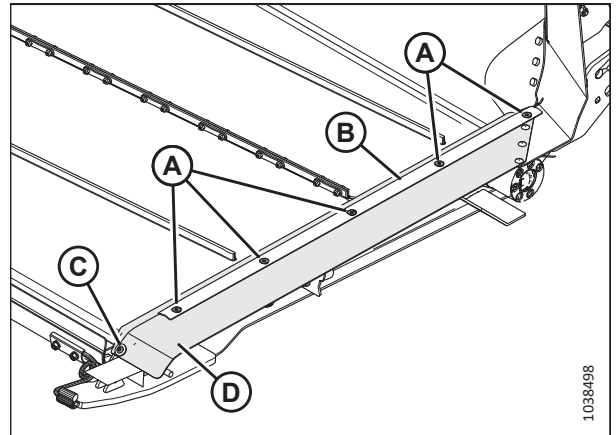


Figure 4.183: Draper Seal

4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension

Proper tension is required for the feed draper not to slip or have tracking issues.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

NOTE:

Illustrations show the left side of the float module. The right side is opposite.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine Operator's Manual.

Checking feed draper tension:

4. Ensure the draper guide (the rubber track on the underside of the draper) is properly engaged in the groove on the drive roller and the idler roller is between the guides.

5. Check the position of spring retainer disc (A). If the feed draper tracks properly and the spring retainers on both sides of the draper are correctly positioned, then no adjustment is necessary.

NOTE:

The starting position of spring retainer disc (A) is centered within the U shape on indicator (B); however, the position of the disc (A) will vary after draper tracking adjustment.

6. If adjustment is necessary, proceed to Step 7, page 584.

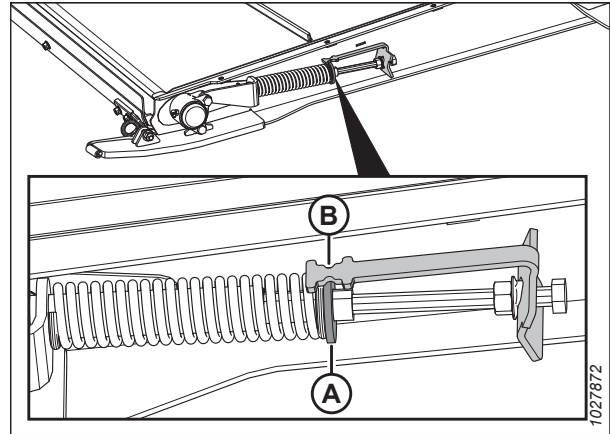


Figure 4.184: Feed Draper Tensioner

Adjusting feed draper tension:

7. Adjust the draper tension by loosening jam nut (A) and turning bolt (B) clockwise to increase draper tension or counterclockwise to decrease draper tension. Retainer disc (C) should be in the middle of indicator (D).

IMPORTANT:

For small tension adjustments, you may need to only adjust one side of the draper. For larger tension adjustments and to avoid uneven draper tracking, you may need to adjust both sides of the draper equally.

8. If the draper is not tracking properly, retainer disc (C) can be adjusted so that it is **NOT** in the middle of indicator (D), but within the following range:
 - Loosened to 3 mm (1/8 in.), retainer disc (C) will move towards the front of the deck from center of indicator (D).
 - Tightened to 6 mm (1/4 in.), retainer disc (C) will move towards the back of the deck from the center of indicator (D).
9. Tighten jam nut (A). Ensure flange nut (E) is tight against the indicator bracket.

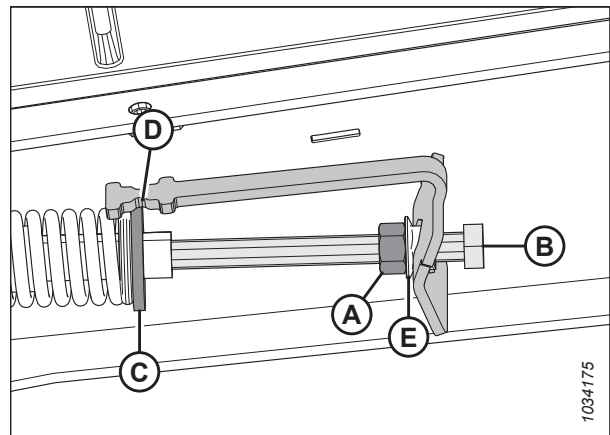


Figure 4.185: Feed Draper Tensioner – Left Side

4.10.3 Feed Draper Drive Roller

The feed draper drive roller is hydraulically driven to rotate the feed draper and convey crop toward the feeder house auger.

Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller

The feed draper drive roller needs to be removed when repairing or replacing it.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
6. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
7. To release the draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

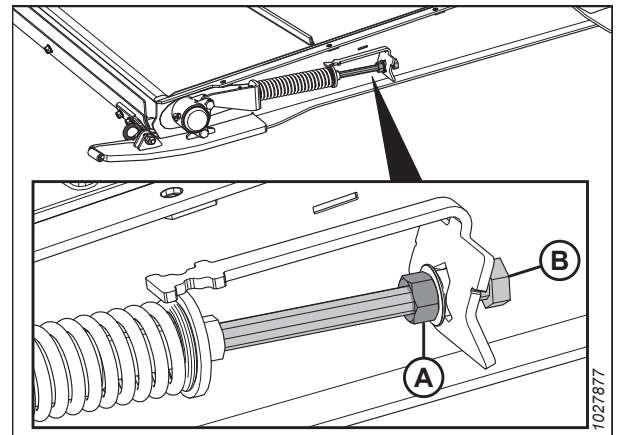


Figure 4.186: Feed Draper Tensioner

8. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
9. Lift the sides of the draper to expose the rollers.

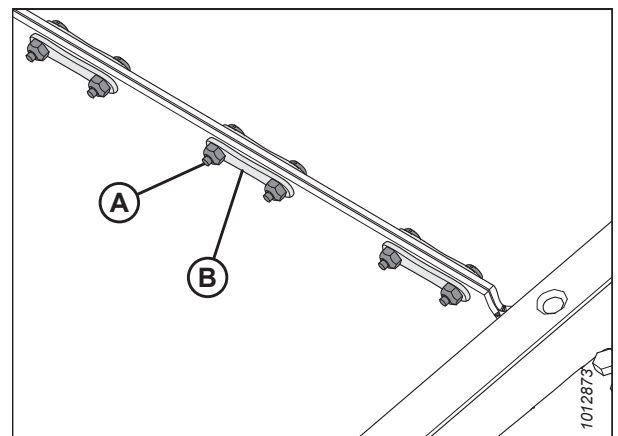


Figure 4.187: Draper Connector

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. On the right side of the deck, remove two nuts (A) and bolts from drive roller bearing housing (B).

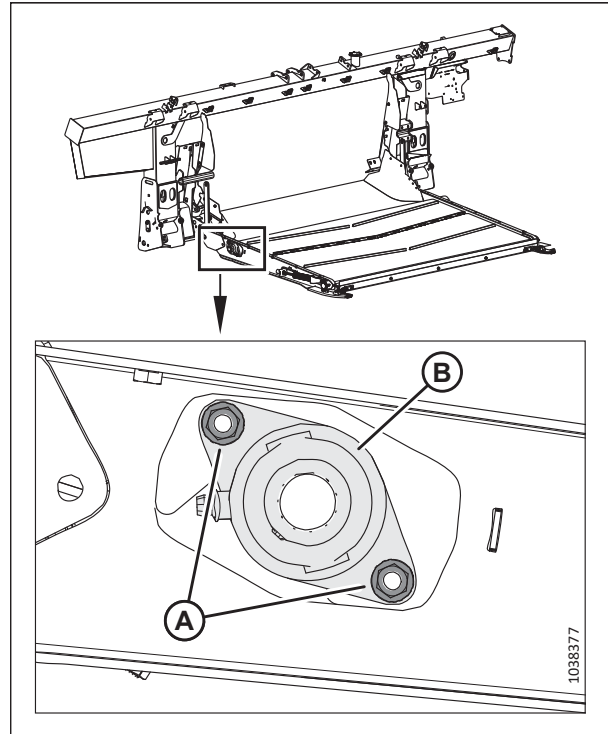


Figure 4.188: Drive Roller Bearing

11. Slide the drive roller with bearing assembly (A) to the right until the left end comes off of the motor spline.
12. Remove both covers (B).

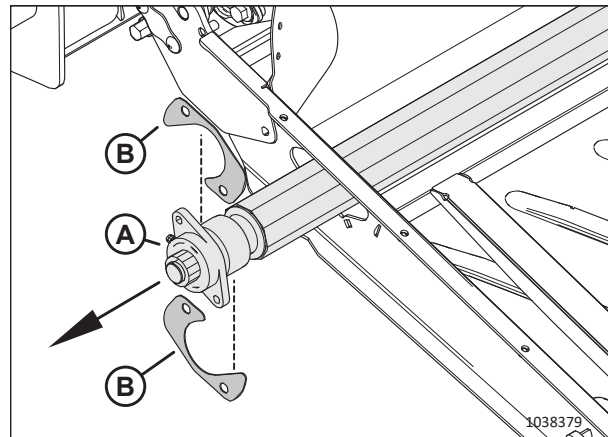


Figure 4.189: Drive Roller

13. Lift the left end out of the frame.
14. Slide assembly (A) to the left, guiding bearing housing (B) through frame opening (C).
15. Remove roller (A).

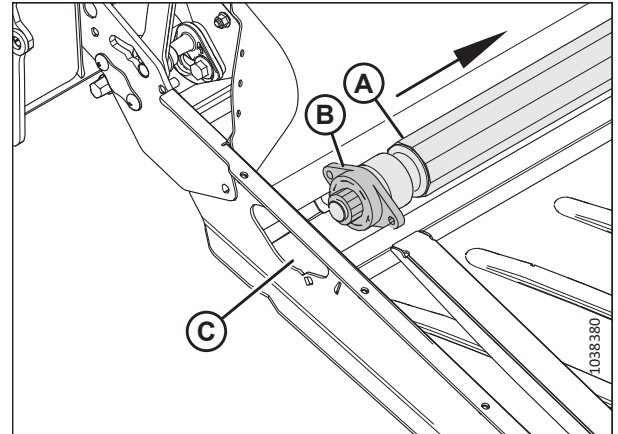


Figure 4.190: Drive Roller

Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller

The feed draper drive roller needs to be installed after it has been repaired or replaced.

1. Apply grease to the motor spline.
2. Guide bearing end (A) of the drive roller through frame opening (B).

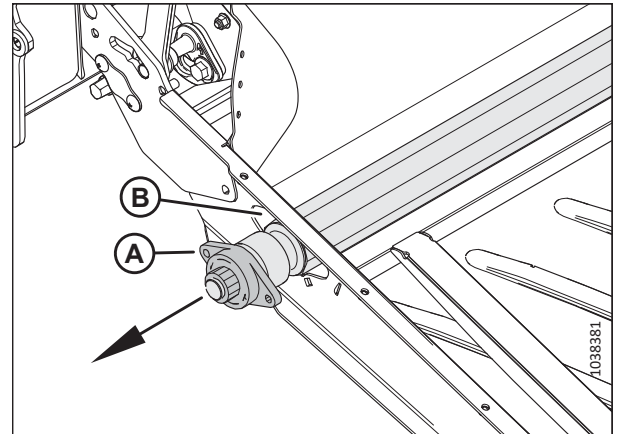


Figure 4.191: Drive Roller – Bearing End

3. Slide the left end of drive roller (A) onto spline of motor (B).

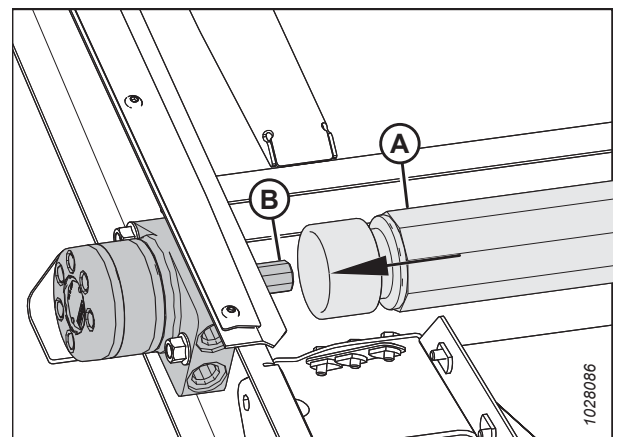


Figure 4.192: Motor

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Install two bolts (A) into the feed deck.
5. Install both covers (B) onto the two bolts.

IMPORTANT:

Position the covers in the order shown.

6. Secure the drive roller bearing housing using two nuts (D).
7. Install the feed deck draper. For instructions, refer to [4.10.1 Replacing Feed Draper, page 580](#).
8. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583](#).

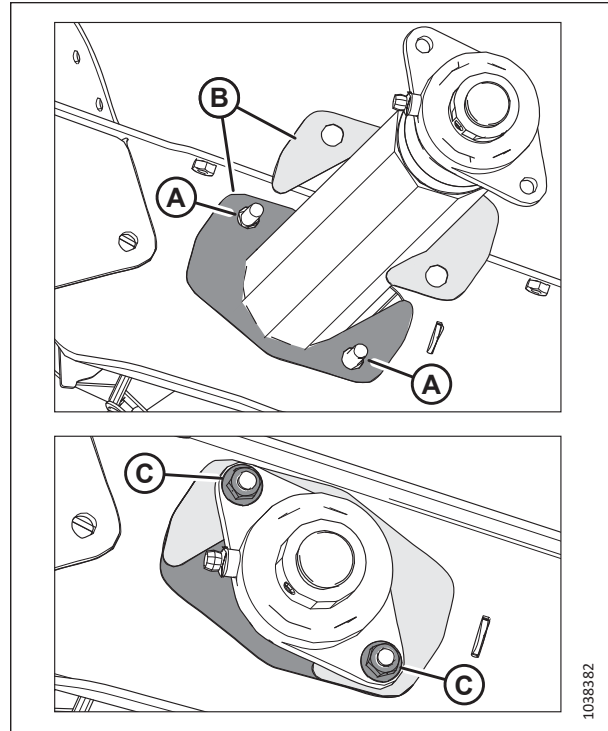


Figure 4.193: Drive Roller – Bearing End

Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

The feed draper drive roller bearing helps the roller turn. The bearing needs to be removed when replacing it.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. To release the draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

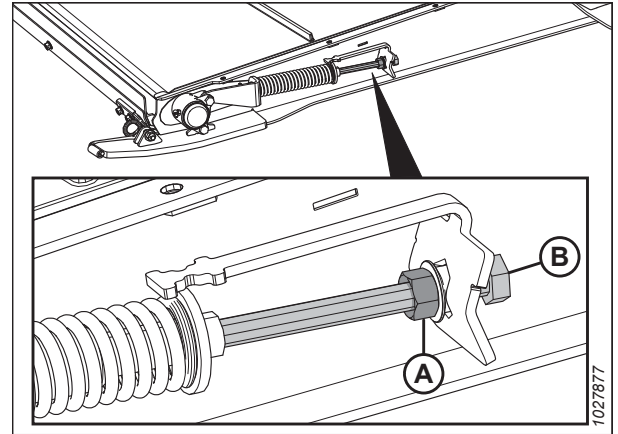


Figure 4.194: Feed Draper Tensioner

7. Loosen set screw (A) on bearing lock (B).
8. Using a hammer and punch, tap bearing lock (B) in the direction opposite to the auger rotation to release the lock.

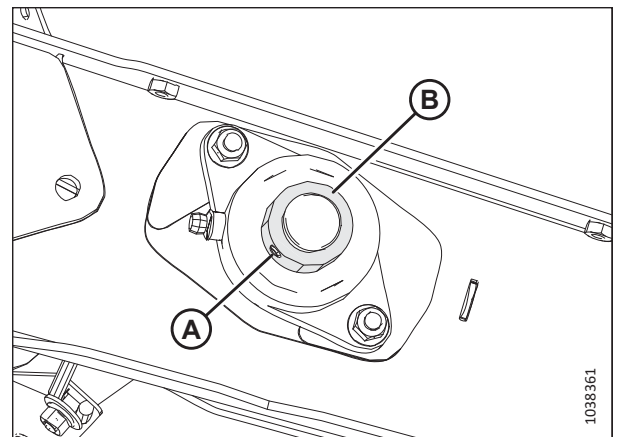


Figure 4.195: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

9. Remove two nuts (A).

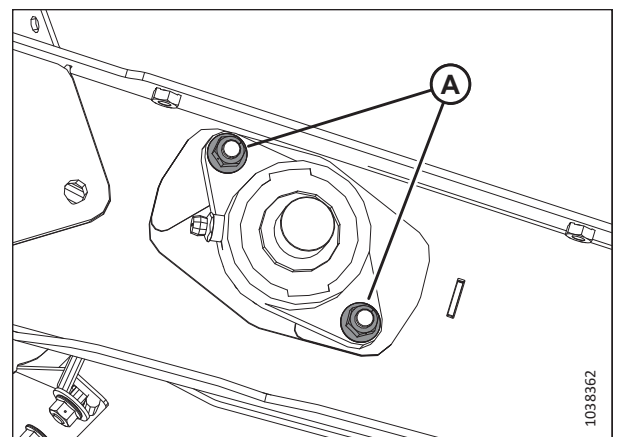


Figure 4.196: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

10. Remove bearing housing (A).

NOTE:

If the bearing is seized on the shaft, it may be easier to remove the drive roller assembly. For instructions, refer to [Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller, page 585](#).

11. Check both covers (B) for damage. If you need to replacement them, obtain kit MD #347553.

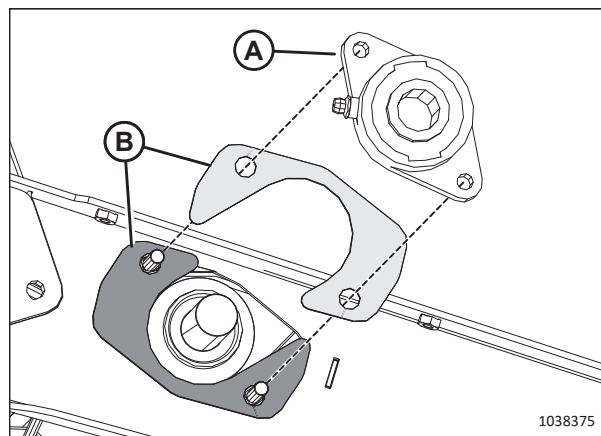


Figure 4.197: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

The bearing is held in place with bolts and a lock collar.

1. Install two bolts (A) into the feed deck.
2. Install both covers (B) onto the two bolts.

IMPORTANT:

Position the covers in the order shown.

3. Install drive roller bearing housing (C) onto the shaft.
4. Secure the housing using two nuts (D).
5. Install bearing lock collar (E) onto the shaft.
6. Using a hammer and punch, tap the bearing lock in the direction of auger rotation to lock.
7. Tighten bearing lock set screw (F).
8. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583](#).

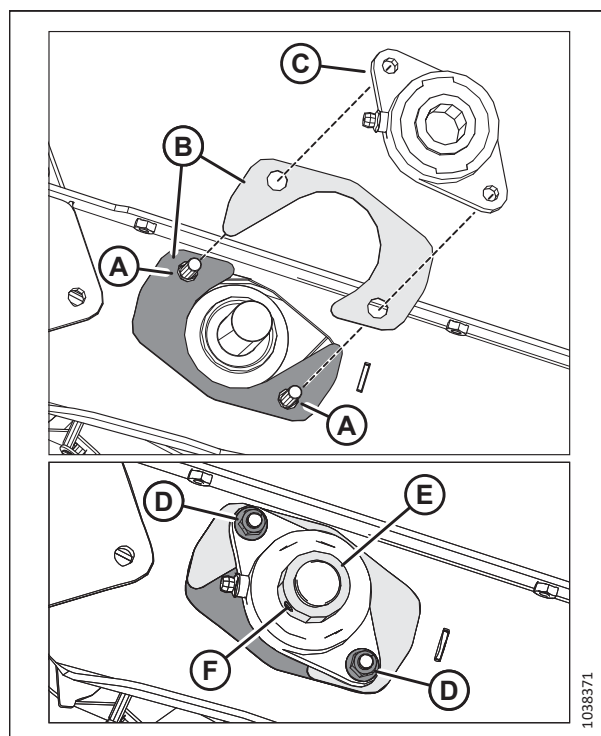


Figure 4.198: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

4.10.4 Feed Draper Idler Roller

The feed draper idler roller is driven by the friction of the feed draper being turned by the drive roller. Like the drive roller, the idler roller helps the feed draper convey crop to the auger.

Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller

The feed draper idler roller needs to be removed when being repaired or replaced.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
6. To release the draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

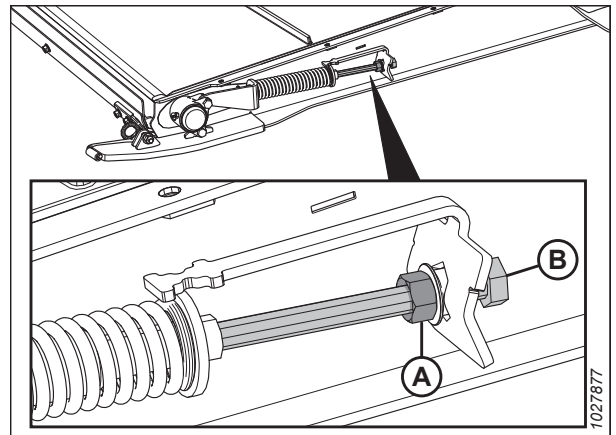


Figure 4.199: Feed Draper Tensioner

7. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
8. Separate the draper.
9. Lower the front of the feed deck.

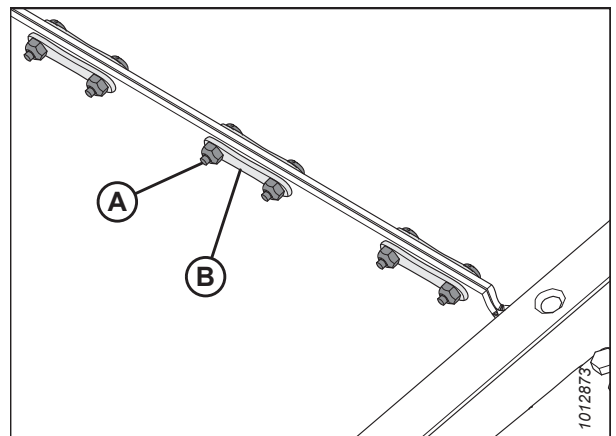


Figure 4.200: Draper Connector

10. Remove dust cap (A) and nut (B) from bearing housing (C).

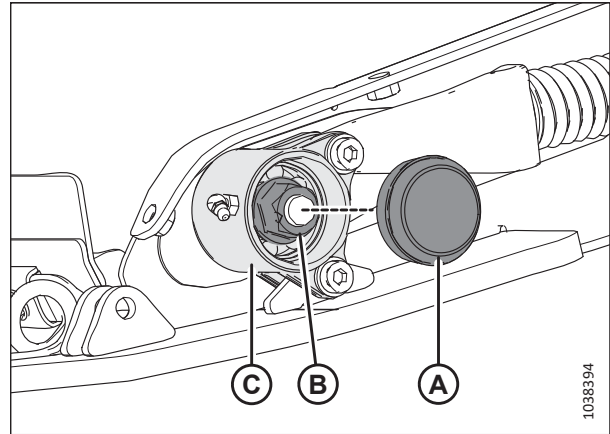


Figure 4.201: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

11. Remove the following hardware from location (A) that secures the bearing housing to the deck skid and tensioner:
- Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
12. Remove bearing housing (B) from the idler roller.
13. Repeat Step 10, page 592 to Step 12, page 592 on the opposite side of the feed deck.

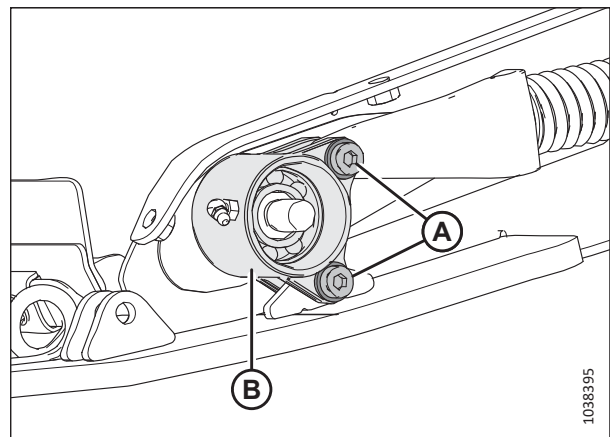


Figure 4.202: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

14. On one side of the deck frame, remove nut (A) and cover (B).

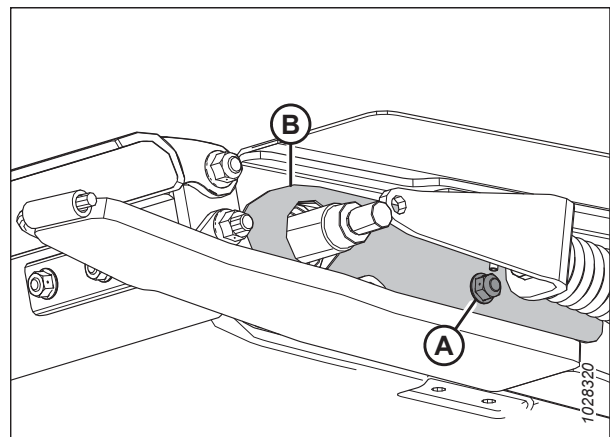


Figure 4.203: Idler Roller Cover

15. Slide idler roller (A) out through the cutout in the deck frame.

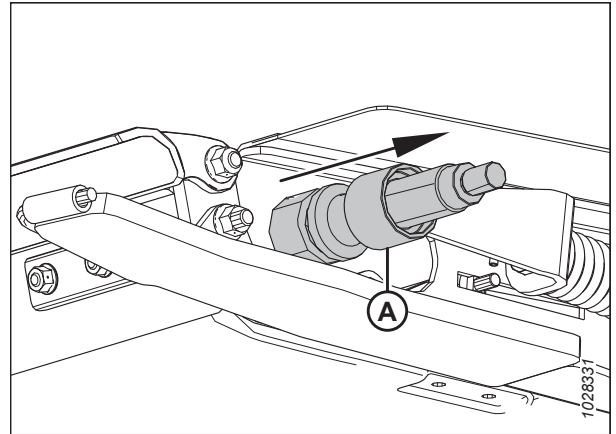


Figure 4.204: Idler Roller

Installing Feed Draper Idler Roller

The feed draper idler roller needs to be installed after it has been repaired or replaced.

1. Slide cover (A) over one end of the idler roller.
2. Brush idler roller shaft (B) with oil.
3. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (C) onto the shaft by hand to prevent seal damage.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

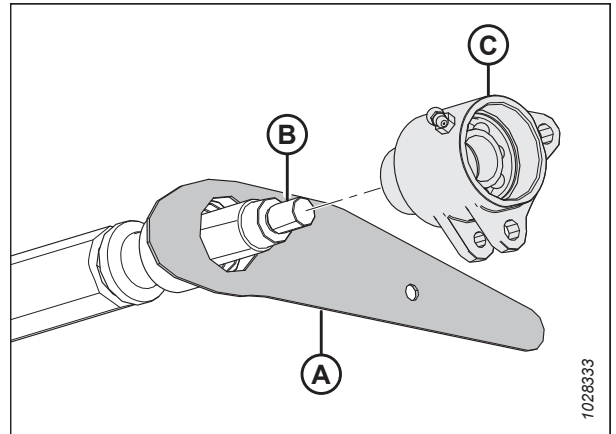


Figure 4.205: Idler Roller

4. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque it to 81 Nm (60 lbf-ft).

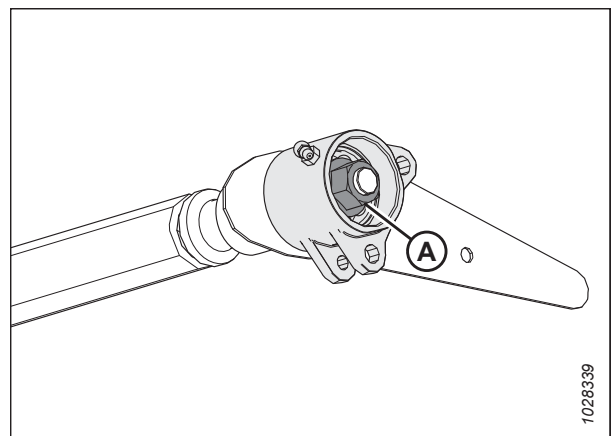


Figure 4.206: Idler Roller

5. Slide idler roller (A) through the cutout in the deck frame.

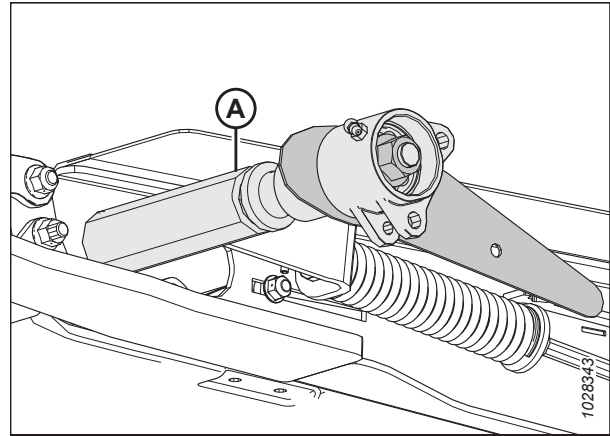


Figure 4.207: Feed Deck – Left Side

6. Install the bolt from inside of the feed deck to secure idler cover (B).
7. Install nut (B). Do **NOT** overtighten the nut. It should be snug, as it holds the idler cover in place and it must move with the idler roller.

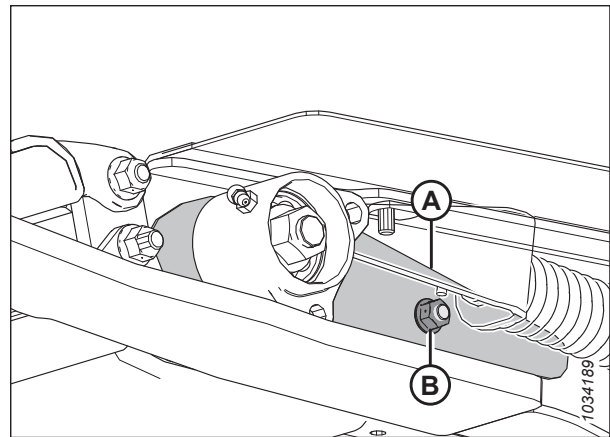


Figure 4.208: Idler Cover – Left Side

8. Slide the idler roller out through the cutout on the opposite side of the deck frame.
9. Brush idler roller shaft (A) with oil.
10. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (B) onto shaft (A) by hand to prevent seal damage.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

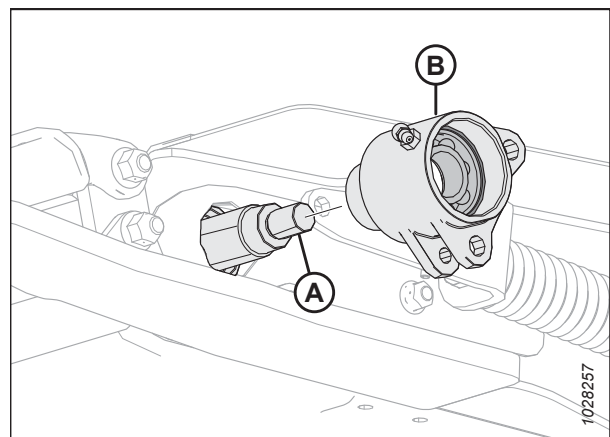


Figure 4.209: Feed Deck – Left Side

11. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque it to 81 Nm (60 lbf·ft).
12. Repeat Step 1, page 593 to Step 11, page 595 on the opposite side.

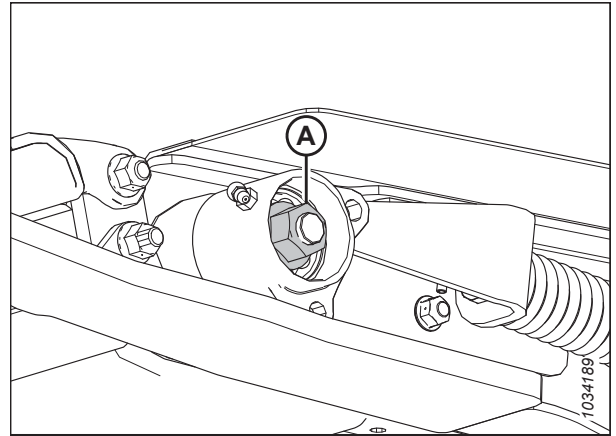


Figure 4.210: Feed Deck – Left Side

13. Rotate idler roller housing (A) until the holes in the lower tabs aligns with the hole in welded tab (B).
14. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads, and then insert the following hardware at location (C).
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
15. Align the hole in cast support (D) with the holes in the upper tab on idler roller housing (A).
16. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads, and then insert the following hardware at location (E).
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
17. Tighten bolts (C) and (E) to 12 Nm (9 lbf·ft).

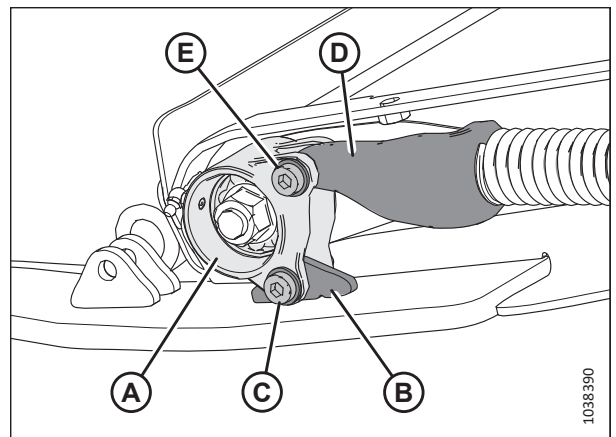


Figure 4.211: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** fully tighten bolts (C) and (E).

18. Repeat Step 13, page 595 to Step 17, page 595 on the opposite side.
19. Fill the bearing cavity with grease, and install dust cap (A) on both ends of the idler roller. Repeat this step on the opposite side.
20. Check that the grease fittings on both sides are working. Grease the feed draper idler roller bearing until grease comes out of the seal. Wipe any excess grease from area after greasing.

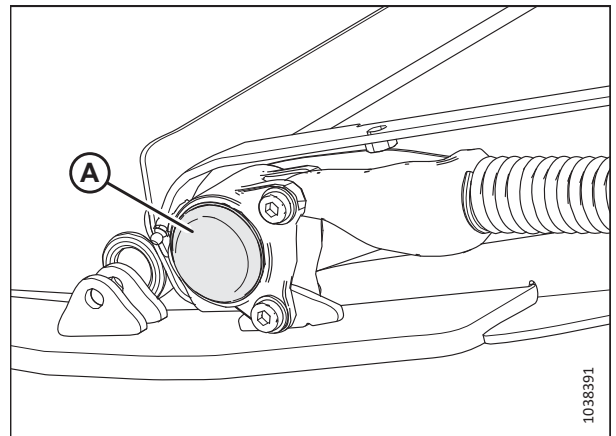


Figure 4.212: Feed Deck – Left Side

21. Close the feed draper and secure it with connector straps (B), screws (A), and nuts.
22. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583](#).

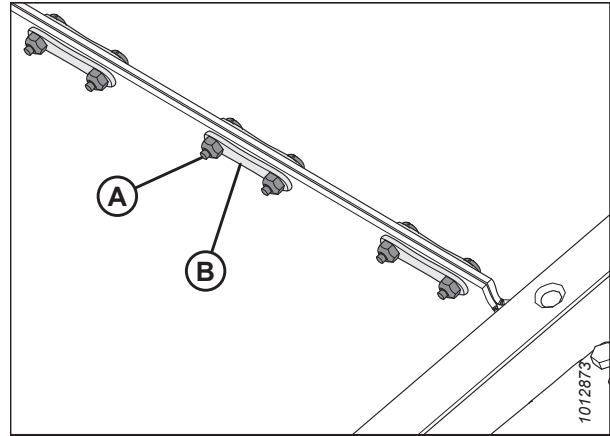


Figure 4.213: Draper Connector

Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing

The feed draper idler roller bearing helps the roller turn. The bearing needs to be removed when replacing it.

NOTE:

Procedure is the same for both sides. Left side is shown.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
6. To release the draper tension, loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

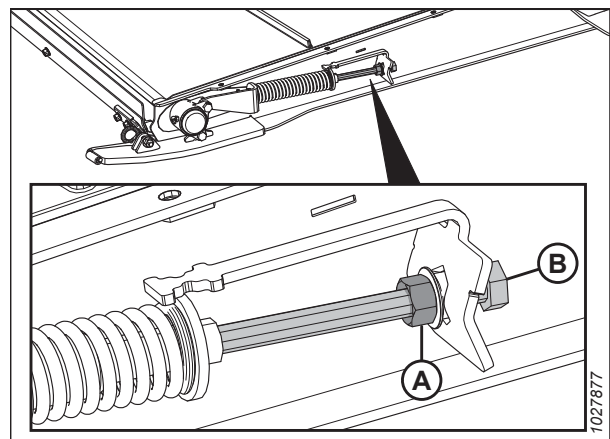


Figure 4.214: Feed Draper Tensioner

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Unlatch feed deck pan handle (A) from handle latch supports (B) on both sides of the feed deck. This will drop the door down and allow access to the feed deck draper and rollers.

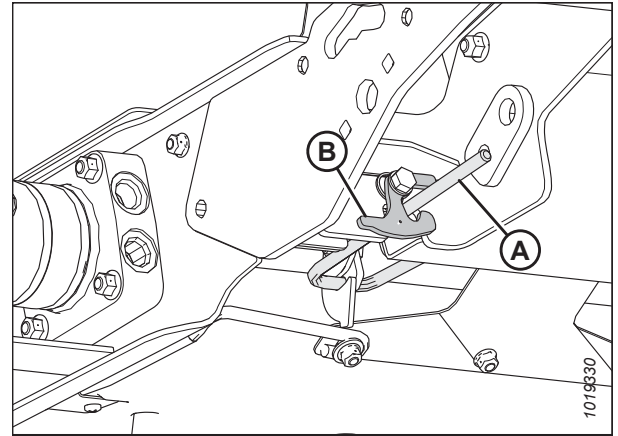


Figure 4.215: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

8. Remove the following hardware from location (A) that secures the bearing housing to the deck skid and tensioner:
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
9. Remove dust cap (B).

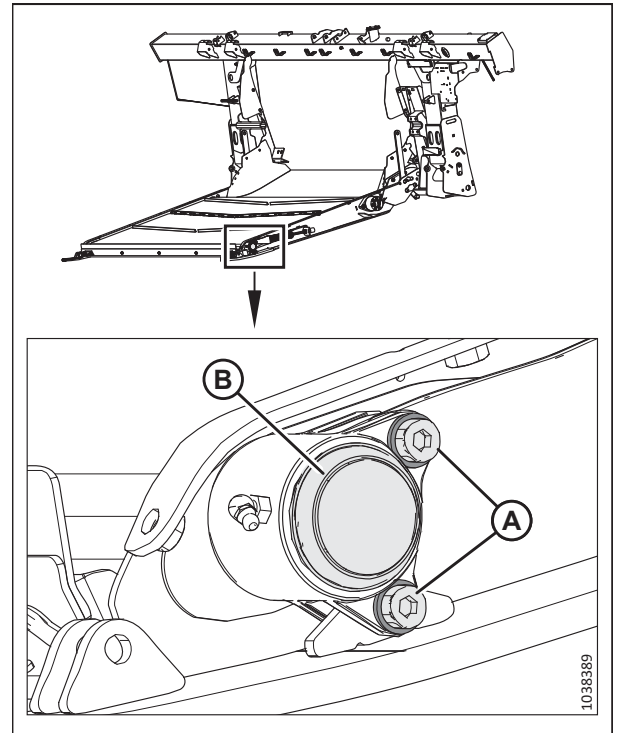


Figure 4.216: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Remove nut (A), and remove bearing housing (B) from the deck.

NOTE:

If the bearing is seized on the shaft, it may be easier to remove the idler roller assembly. For instructions, refer to [Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller, page 591](#).

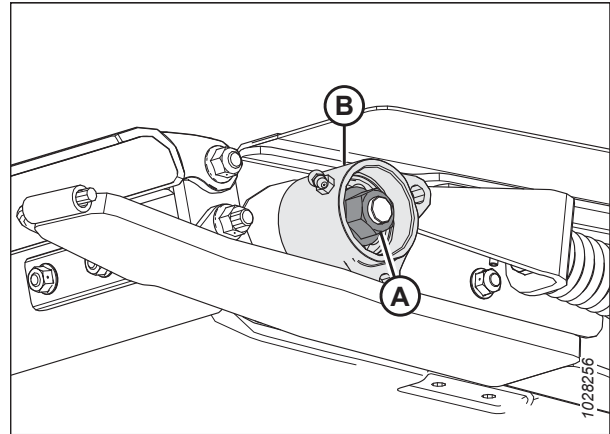


Figure 4.217: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

11. Secure housing (D), and remove internal retaining ring (A), bearing (B), and two seals (C).
12. Apply oil to the bore before assembling the parts.
13. Install seals (C) into housing (D).

NOTE:

Ensure the flat side of the seal is facing inward.

14. Pack bearing (B) with grease and install as shown.
15. Install retaining ring (A).

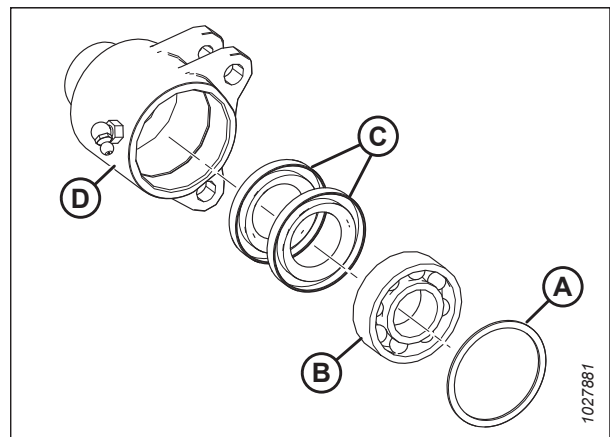


Figure 4.218: Bearing Assembly

16. Brush idler roller shaft (A) with oil.
17. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (B) onto shaft (A) by hand to prevent seal damage.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

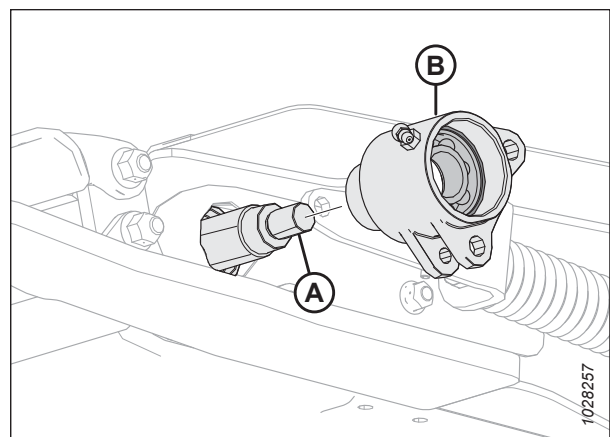


Figure 4.219: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

18. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque it to 81 Nm (60 lbf·ft).

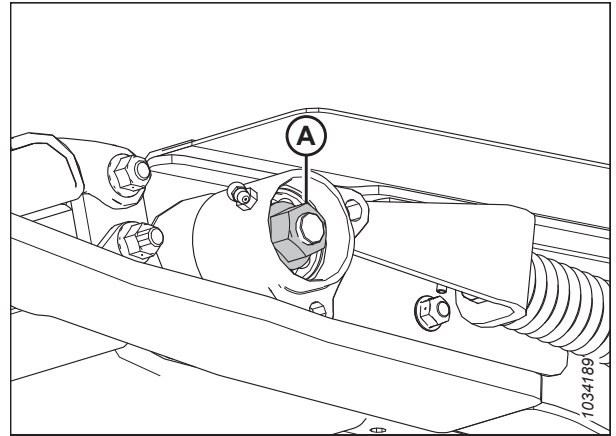


Figure 4.220: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

19. Rotate idler roller housing (A) until the holes in the lower tabs aligns with the hole in welded tab (B).
20. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads, and then insert the following hardware at location (C).
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
21. Align the hole in cast support (D) with the holes in the upper tab on idler roller housing (A).
22. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads, and then insert the following hardware at location (E).
 - Socket head bolt, washer, and nut.
23. Tighten bolts (C) and (E) to 12 Nm (9 lbf·ft).

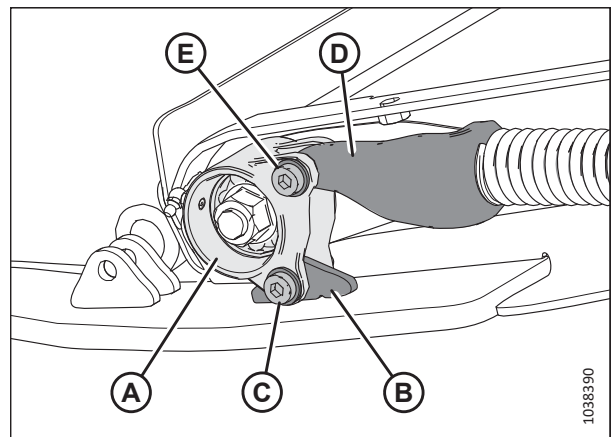


Figure 4.221: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** fully tighten bolts (C) and (E).

24. Repeat Step 8, page 597 to Step 23, page 599 on the opposite side.
25. Fill the bearing cavity with grease, and install dust cap (A) on both ends of the idler roller.
26. Check that the grease fitting is working.
27. Repeat Step 25, page 599 to Step 26, page 599 on the opposite side.
28. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to 4.10.2 *Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension*, page 583.

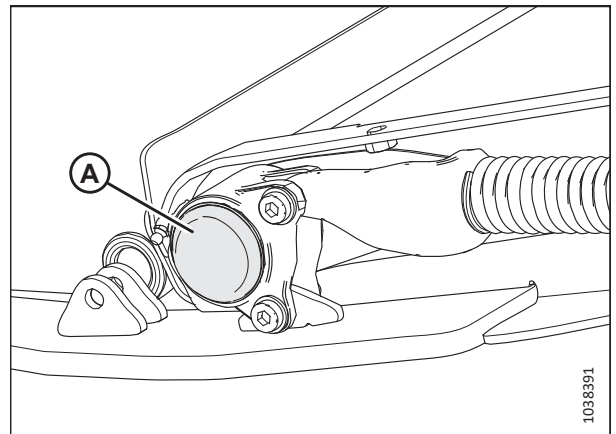


Figure 4.222: Feed Deck – Left Side

4.10.5 Lowering Feed Deck Pan

The feed deck pan protects the feed draper from items on the ground. It can be opened and closed to access the feed draper.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. On the underside of the feed deck, rotate latch (A) to unlock handle (B). Repeat on the opposite end of the feed deck.

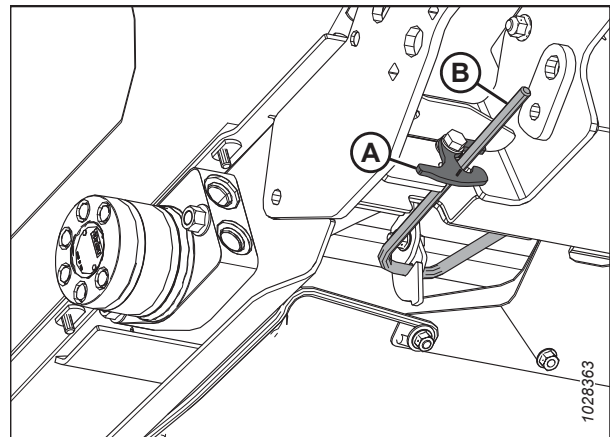


Figure 4.223: Underside of Feed Deck

5. Hold pan (A) and rotate handle (B) downward to release the pan.

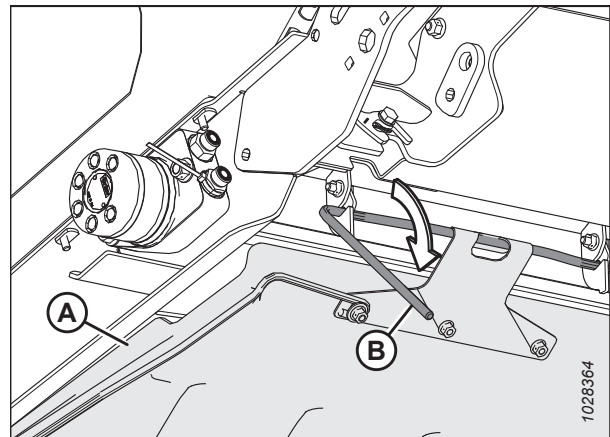


Figure 4.224: Underside of Feed Deck

6. Lower feed deck pan (A).

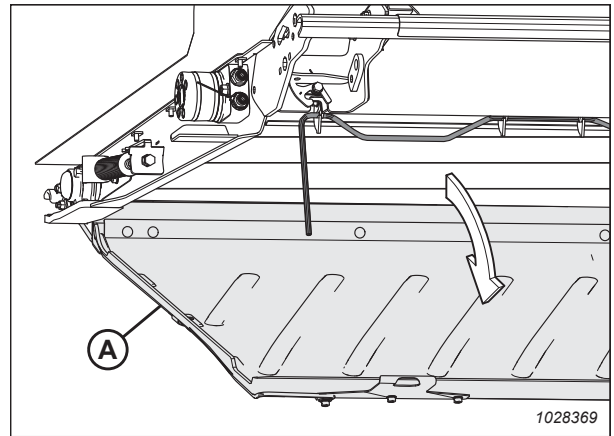


Figure 4.225: Feed Deck Pan

4.10.6 Raising Feed Deck Pan

The feed deck pan protects the feed draper from items on the ground. It can be opened and closed to access the feed draper.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise feed deck pan (A).

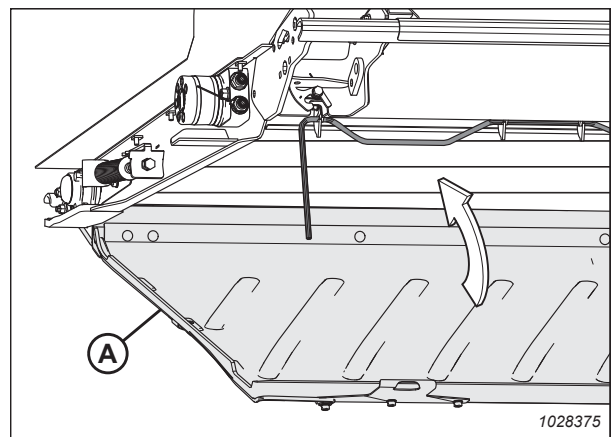


Figure 4.226: Feed Deck Pan

2. Engage lock handle (A) in three feed deck pan hooks (B).

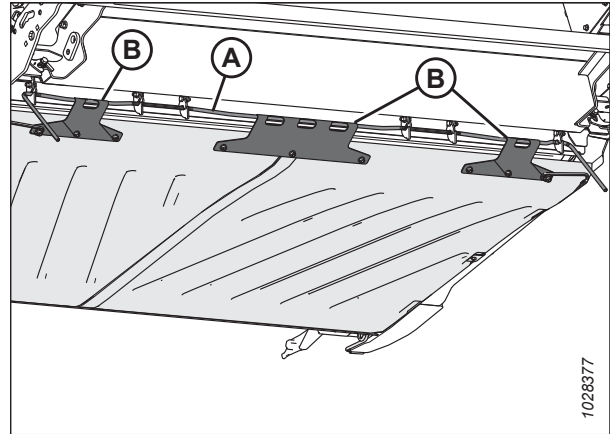


Figure 4.227: Underside of Feed Deck Pan

3. Rotate handles (A) upwards, bringing the feed deck pan into the locked position.

NOTE:

Ensure that all three deck pan hooks (B) are secured on the lock handle.

4. Hold the feed deck pan in place, and rotate latch (C) to lock handle (A).

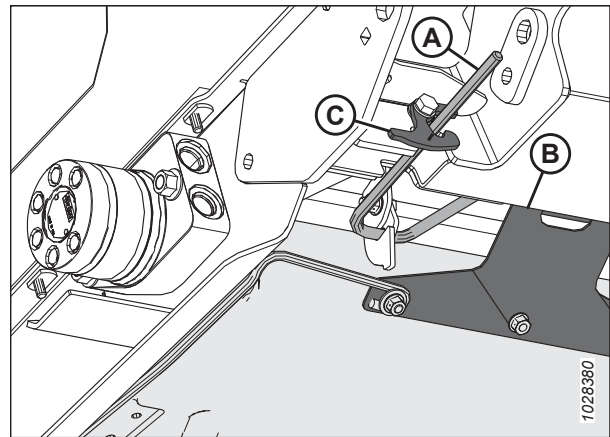


Figure 4.228: Underside of Feed Deck Pan

4.10.7 Checking Link Holder Hooks

Check the left and right link holder hooks **DAILY** to ensure they are not cracked or broken.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

1. Raise the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.

4. Before operation, ensure both link holder hooks (A) are engaged on the float module under the feed deck as shown.

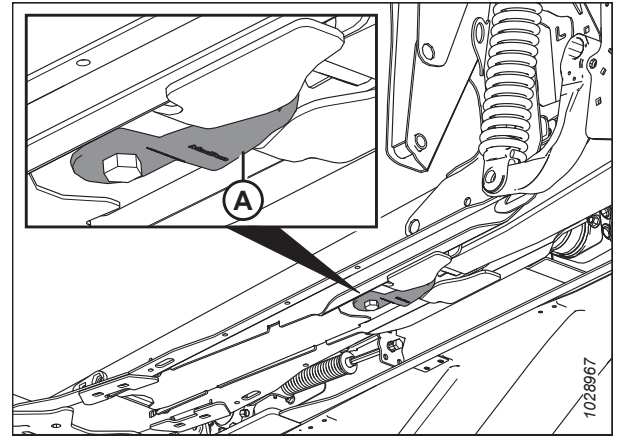


Figure 4.229: Feed Deck – View from Below

- Undamaged link holder hook (A)
- Damaged/broken link holder hook (B)
- Stretched link holder (not shown)

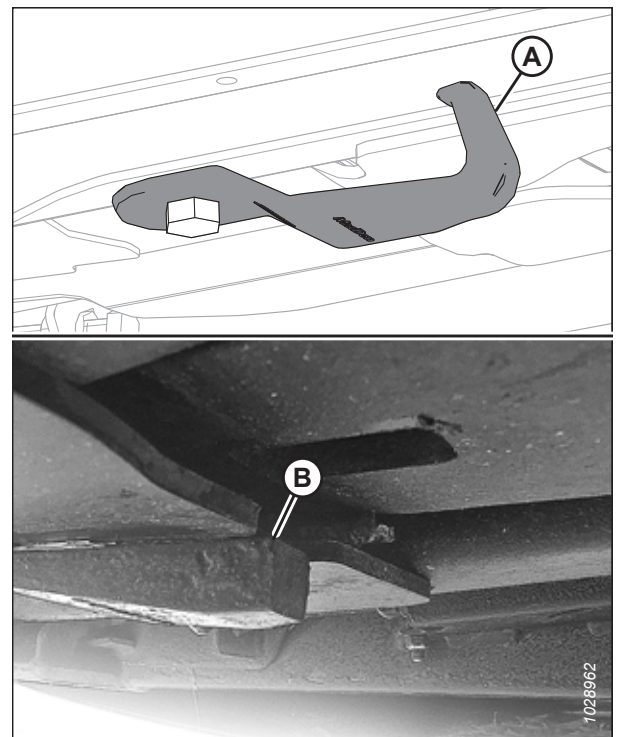


Figure 4.230: Link Holder Hooks

NOTE:

To move hook (A) to the storage position, loosen bolt (B) and rotate the hook 90°.

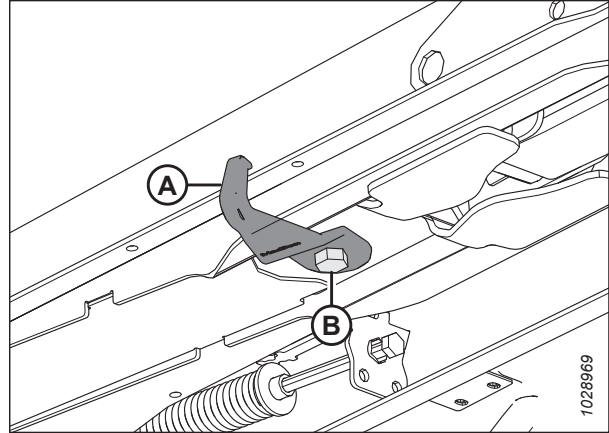


Figure 4.231: Link Holder Hook in Storage Position

4.11 Stripper Bars

Stripper bars are installed into the float module opening to improve feeding in crops such as rice. They may need to be removed, depending on the desired float module configuration.

4.11.1 Removing Stripper Bars

The stripper bars are secured to the float module frame with four bolts and nuts.

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).
2. Remove four bolts and nuts (A) securing stripper bar (B) to the float module frame, and remove the stripper bar.

NOTE:

There may only be two upper bolts on stripper bar (B).

3. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

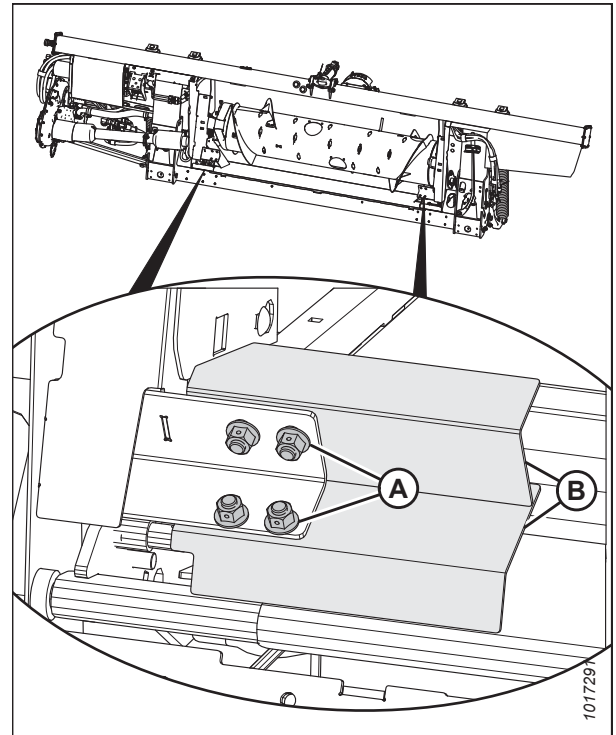


Figure 4.232: Stripper Bar

4.11.2 Installing Stripper Bars

The stripper bars are installed in the lower corners of the float module opening.

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).

2. Position stripper bar (B) as shown so the notch is at the corner of the frame.

NOTE:

It is ok to only install the upper two bolts on the stripper bars, if the lower two bolts are too difficult to install.

3. Secure stripper bar (B) to the float module with four bolts and nuts (A). Ensure the nuts are facing the combine.
4. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

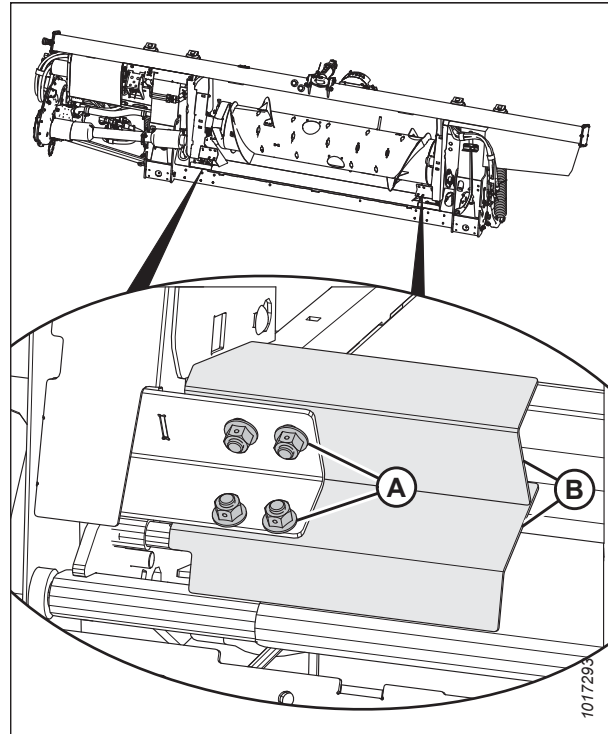


Figure 4.233: Stripper Bar

4.11.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines

Feed deflectors are used with New Holland CR combines only.

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52](#).
2. Remove two bolts and nuts (B) securing feed deflector (A) to the float module frame, and remove the feed deflector.
3. Position replacement feed deflector (A), and secure it with bolts and nuts (B) (ensure the nuts are facing the combine). Do **NOT** tighten the nuts.

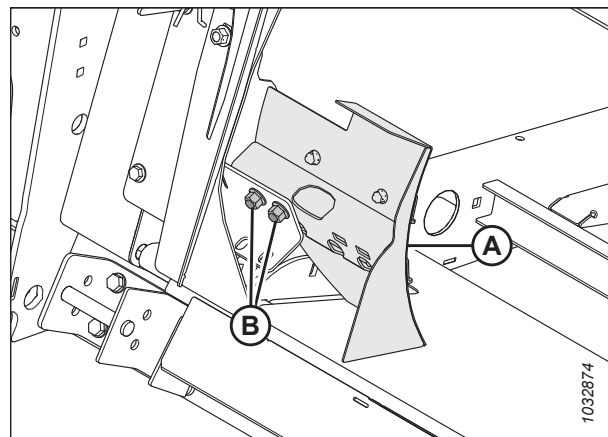


Figure 4.234: Feed Deflector

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Adjust deflector (A) so that distance (C) between the pan and the deflector is 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.).
5. Tighten nuts (B).
6. Repeat the previous steps for the opposite deflector.
7. Attach the header to the combine. For instructions, refer to Chapter [3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment](#), page 52.
8. After attaching the header to the combine, fully extend the center-link and check the gap between the deflector and pan. Maintain the 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.) gap.

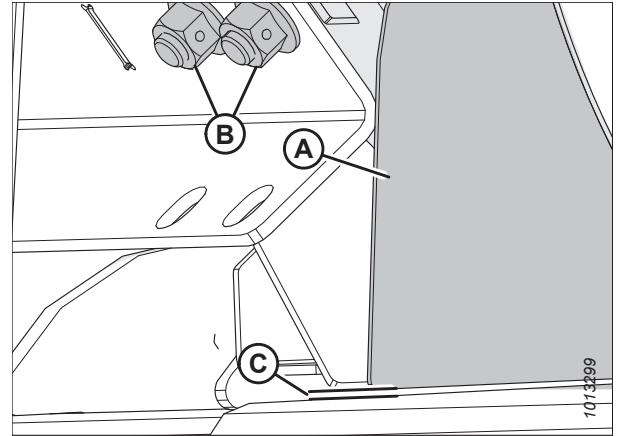


Figure 4.235: Pan and Deflector Distance

4.12 Header Side Drapers

There are two header side drapers. They convey cut crop to the float module feed draper and auger. Replace the drapers if they are torn, cracked, or missing slats.

4.12.1 Removing Side Drapers

Replace the drapers if they are torn, cracked, or missing slats.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).



WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

7. Start the engine.
8. Move the draper until the draper joint is in the work area.
9. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
10. Release the tension on the draper. For instructions, refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#).

11. Remove nuts and screws (A), and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
12. Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
13. Pull the draper from the deck.

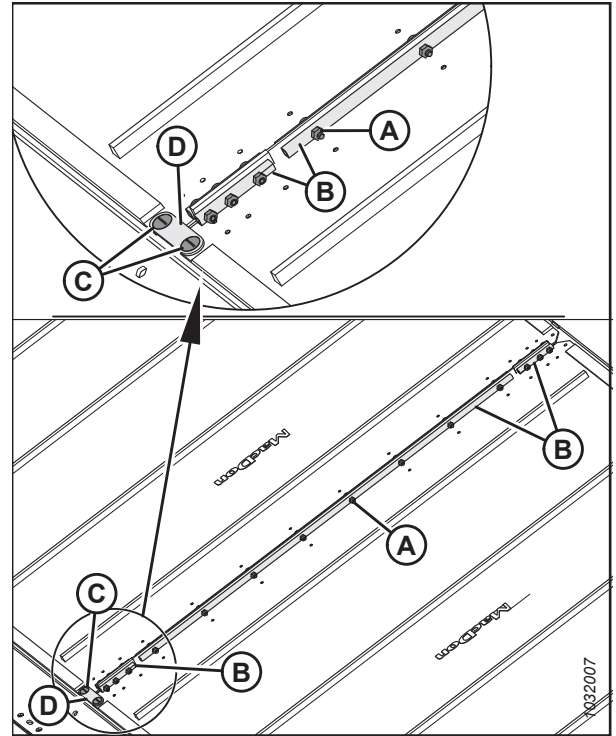


Figure 4.236: Draper Connectors

4.12.2 Installing Side Drapers

Side drapers are used to bring cut crop to the center of the header. To ensure they are installed correctly, follow the recommended installation procedure provided here.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
7. Apply talc, baby powder, or talc/graphite lubricant mix to the underside of the draper guides and to the draper surface that forms the seal with the cutterbar.
8. Insert the draper into the deck at the inboard end at the drive roller. Pull the draper into the deck while feeding it at the end.
9. Feed in the draper until it can be wrapped around the drive roller.
10. Insert the opposite end of the draper into the deck over the rollers. Pull the draper fully into the deck.

11. Attach the ends of the draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

NOTE:

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

12. Install bridge connector (D) using screws (C) and the nuts at the front end of the draper joint.

NOTE:

Hold screws (C) at a 90° angle to bridge connector (D) while tightening the nuts. Allowing the screws to rotate while tightening will cause the bridge connector to bow up.

13. Torque the nuts to 9.5 Nm (7 lbf-ft).
14. Adjust the draper tension. For instructions, refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#).
15. Operate the drapers with the engine at idle so the talc or talc/graphite lubricant makes contact and adheres to the draper seal surfaces.

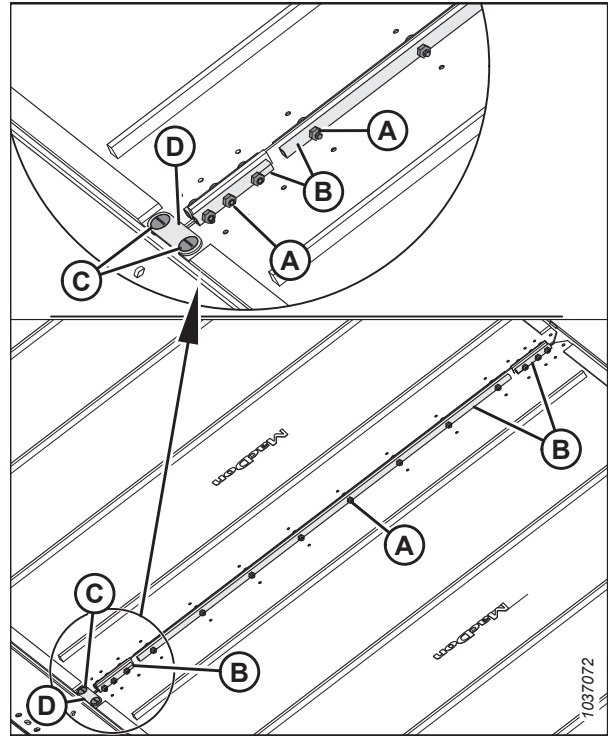


Figure 4.237: Draper Connectors

4.12.3 Adjusting Deck Height

A properly adjusted deck height will prevent material from entering into the side drapers and stalling them.

⚠ DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

New factory-installed drapers are pressure and heat checked at the factory. The gap between draper and cutterbar is set to 1–3 mm (0.04–0.12 in.).

1. Lower the header onto four blocks (A) (305–356 mm [12–14 in.]). One block at each end and one block at each hinge point.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

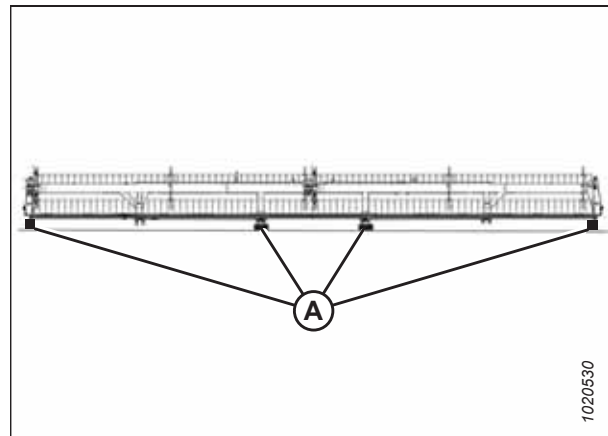


Figure 4.238: Header on Blocks

NOTE:

Take measurements at deck supports (A) with the header in the working position. Depending on the header size, there are between two and four supports per deck.

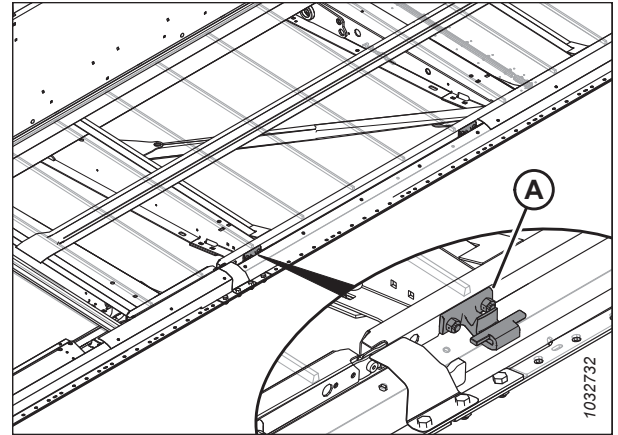


Figure 4.239: Draper Deck Supports

3. Check that clearance (A) between draper (B) and metal seal (C) is 0–2 mm (0.004–0.08 in.).
4. Loosen the draper tension. For instructions, refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#).

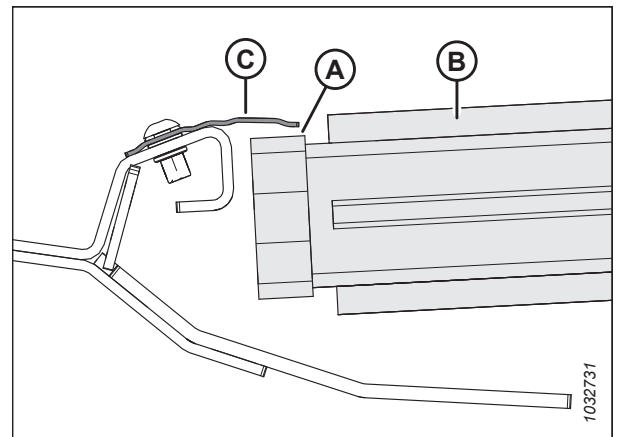


Figure 4.240: Draper Seal

5. Lift front edge of draper (A) past cutterbar (B) to expose the deck support.
6. Measure and note the thickness of the draper belt.

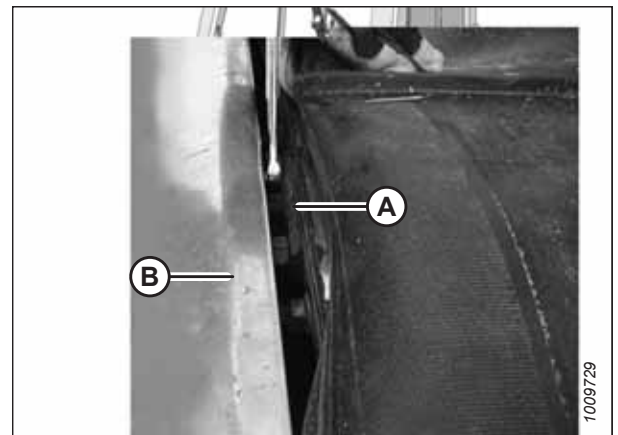


Figure 4.241: Deck Support

NOTE:

The deck is shown with the draper removed.

7. Loosen two lock nuts (A) on deck support (B) one half-turn **ONLY**.
8. Tap deck (C) with a hammer and block of wood to lower the deck relative to the deck supports. Tap deck support (B) using a punch to raise the deck relative to the deck supports.

Table 4.1 Number of Deck Supports (B)

Model	Quantity
FD225	6
FD230	8
FD235, FD240, FD241	10
FD250	14

9. Use a gauge that is the same thickness as the draper belt, plus 1 mm (0.04 in.). Slide the thickness gauge along deck (A) under the metal seal (C) in order to properly set the gap.
10. To create a seal, adjust deck (A) so that clearance (B) between metal seal (C) and deck is the same thickness as the draper belt plus 1 mm (0.04 in.).

NOTE:

When checking clearance at either roller, measure from the roller tube, **NOT** the deck.

11. Tighten deck support hardware (D).
12. Recheck gap (B) with thickness gauge. For instructions, refer to Step 9, [page 612](#).

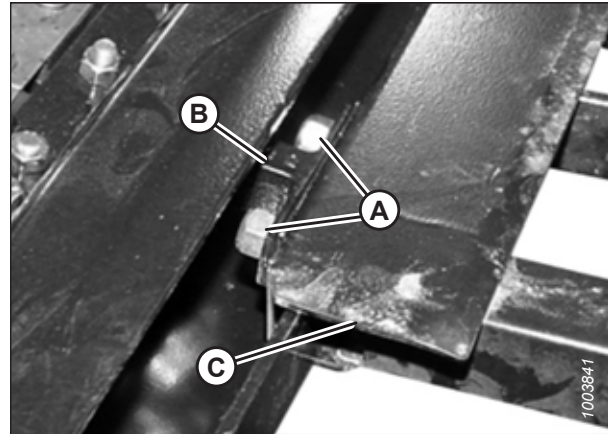


Figure 4.242: Deck Support

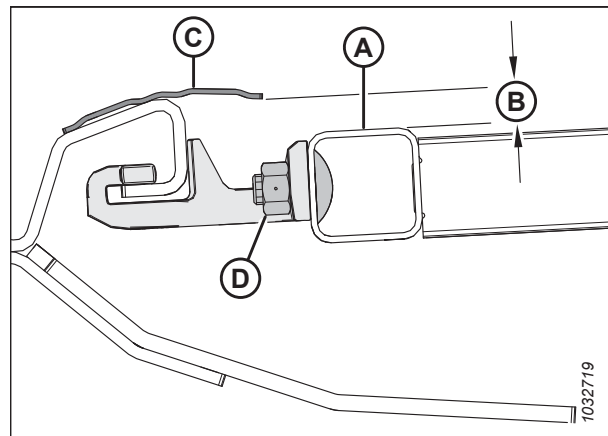


Figure 4.243: Deck Support

4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension

The drapers are tensioned at the factory and should **NOT** require adjustment. If adjustment is required, draper tension should be just enough to prevent slipping and to keep the draper from sagging below the cutterbar.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the vehicle's safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Ensure tensioner indicator (A) covers the inboard half of the window.

⚠ DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

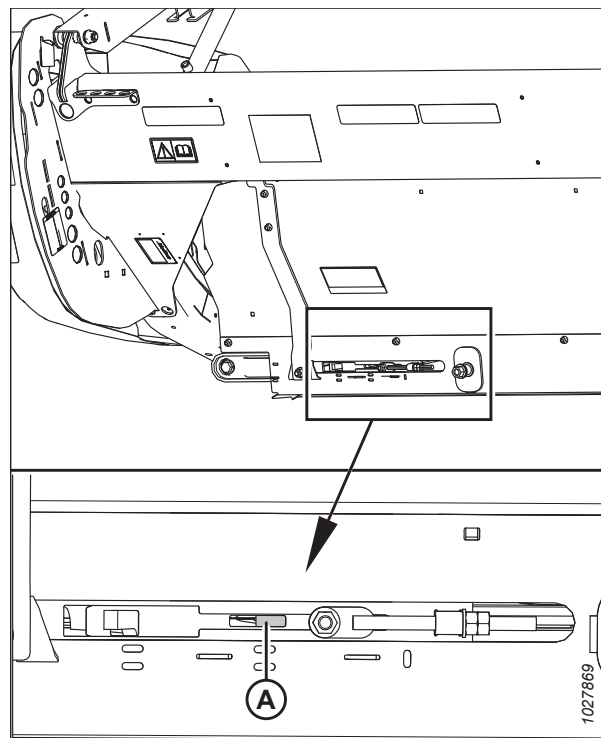


Figure 4.244: Checking Tension Adjuster – Left Side Shown, Right Side Opposite

6. Check that the draper guide (the rubber track on the underside of the draper) is properly engaged in groove (A) of the drive roller.

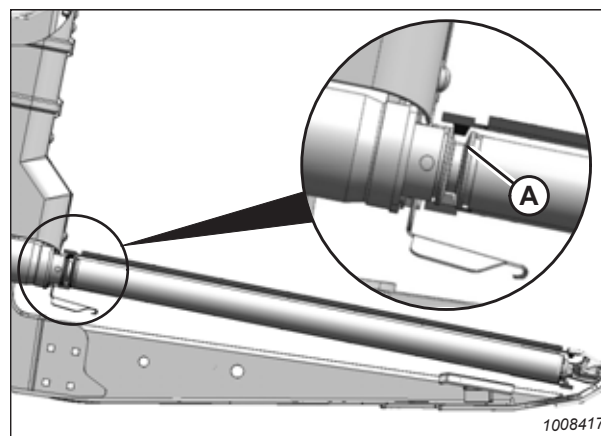


Figure 4.245: Drive Roller

7. Check that idler roller (A) is between guides (B).

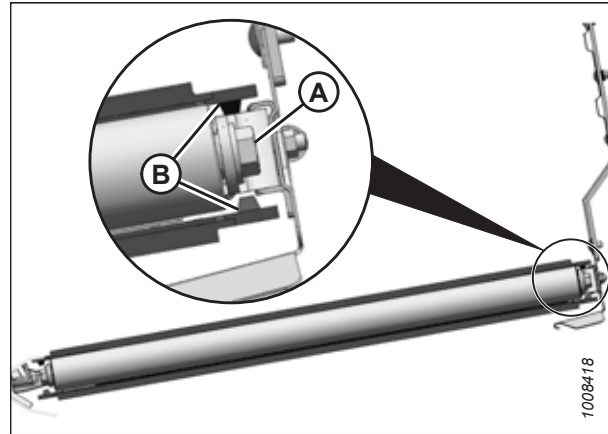


Figure 4.246: Idler Roller

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** adjust nut (C). This nut is used for draper alignment only.

8. Turn adjuster bolt (A) clockwise to tighten, and counterclockwise to loosen. Tensioner indicator (B) will move inboard to show that the draper is tightening. Tighten the adjuster bolt until the tensioner indicator covers the inboard half of the window.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid premature failure of the draper, draper rollers, and/or tightener components, do **NOT** operate the header with the tensioner indicator not visible.

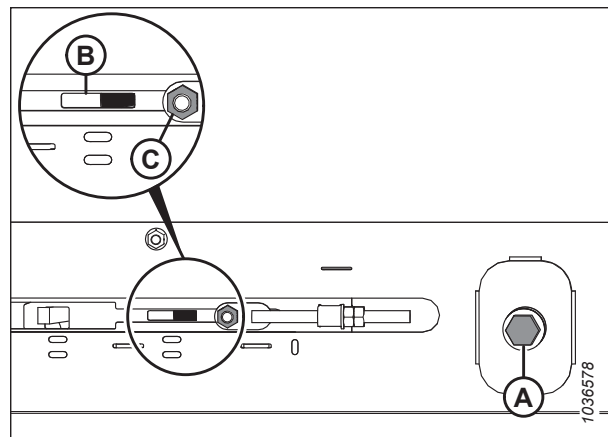


Figure 4.247: Adjusting Tensioner – Left Side Shown, Right Side Opposite

4.12.5 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking

The side draper tracking is adjusted by aligning the drive and idler draper rollers.

Draper tracking is set at the factory and will only need to be adjusted if the draper tracking is incorrect.

NOTE:

The left draper deck is shown in the illustration. The right deck is opposite.

NOTE:

Some parts were removed from the illustration for clarity.

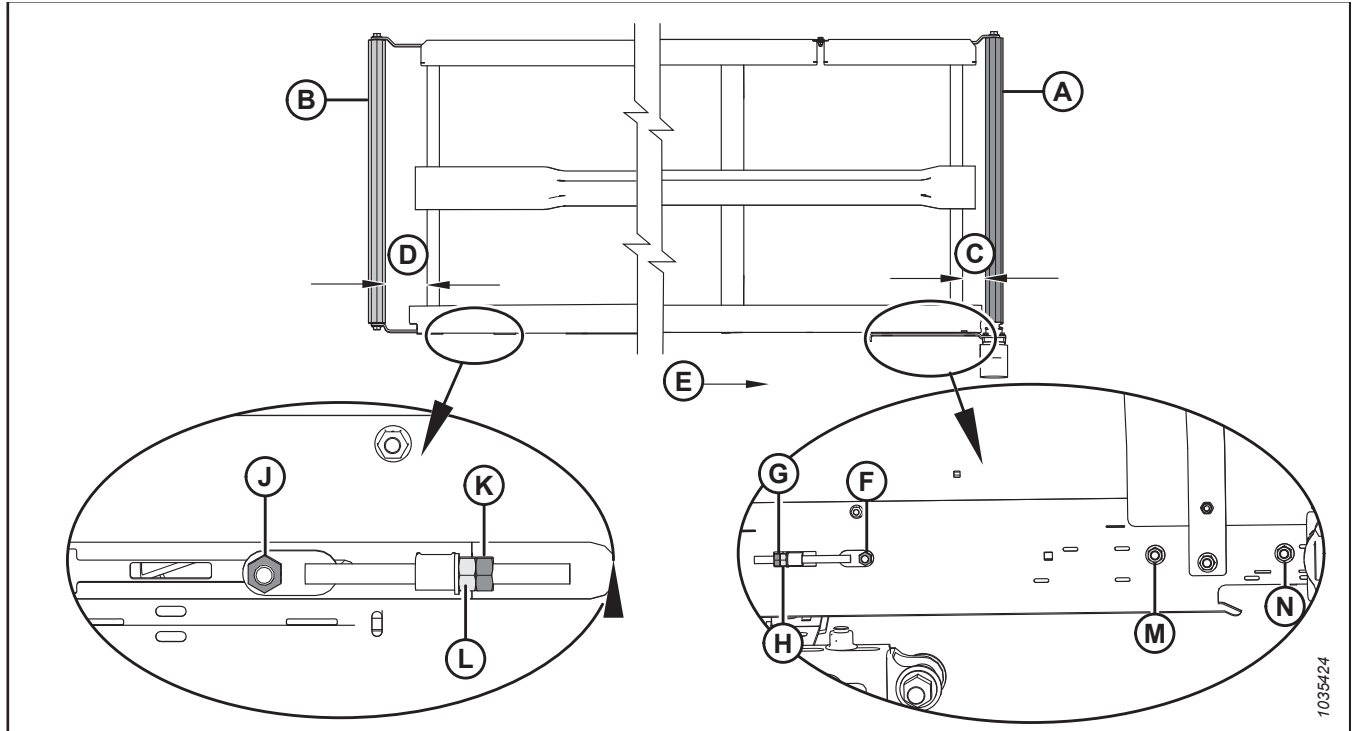


Figure 4.248: Draper Tracking Adjustments

A - Drive Roller
D - Idler Roller Adjust
G - Jam Nut for Drive Roller
K - Jam Nut for Idler Roller
N - Nut on Drive Roller Side

B - Idler Roller
E - Draper Direction
H - Adjuster Nut for Drive Roller
L - Adjuster Nut for Idler Roller

C - Drive Roller Adjust
F - Nut on Drive Roller Side
J - Nut on Idler Roller Side
M - Nut on Drive Roller Side

1. To determine which roller requires adjustment and which adjustments are necessary, refer to the following table:

Table 4.2 Draper Tracking

Tracking	Location	Adjustment	Method
Toward backsheet	Drive roller	Increase C	Tighten adjuster nut (H)
Toward Cutterbar	Drive roller	Decrease C	Loosen adjuster nut (H)
Toward backsheet	Idler roller	Increase D	Tighten adjuster nut (L)
Toward Cutterbar	Idler roller	Decrease D	Loosen adjuster nut (L)

2. Adjust drive roller (A) to change **C** (refer to Table 4.2, page 615) as follows:
 - a. Loosen nuts (F), (M), and (N), and jam nut (G).
 - b. Turn adjuster nut (H).
 - c. Tighten nuts (F), (M), and (N), and jam nut (G).
3. Adjust idler roller (B) to change **D** (refer to Table 4.2, page 615) as follows:
 - a. Loosen nut (J) and jam nut (K).
 - b. Turn adjuster nut (L).

NOTE:

If the draper does not track at the idler roller end after the idler roller adjustment, the drive roller is likely not square to the deck. Adjust the drive roller, and then readjust the idler roller.

- c. Tighten nut (J) and jam nut (K).

4.12.6 Inspecting Draper Roller Bearing

The draper rollers have non-greaseable bearings; however, the external seal should be checked every 200 hours (more frequently in sandy conditions) to achieve maximum bearing life.

Using an infrared thermometer, check for bad draper roller bearings as follows:

1. Engage the header and run the drapers for approximately 3 minutes.
2. Check the temperature of the draper roller bearings at each of roller arms (A), (B), and (C) on each deck. Ensure the temperature does not exceed 44°C (80°F) above the ambient temperature.

Replace roller bearings that exceed maximum recommended temperature. For instructions, refer to:

- [4.12.8 Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing, page 618](#)
- [4.12.11 Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing, page 623](#)

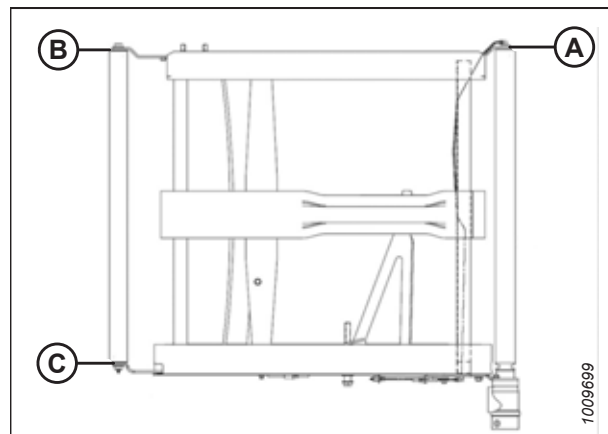


Figure 4.249: Roller Arms

4.12.7 Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller

The side draper deck has a roller on either end of the deck. One is the idler roller and one is the drive roller.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Start the engine and engage the header until the side draper connector is accessible (preferably close to the outboard end of the deck).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Lower the header onto four blocks (A) (305–356 mm [12–14 in.]). One block at each end and one block at each hinge point.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

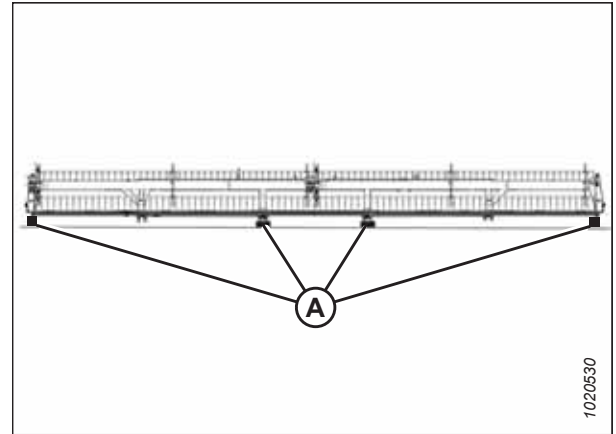


Figure 4.250: Header on Blocks

6. Loosen the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) counterclockwise until the adjuster bolt runs out of adjustment and hits a hard stop.

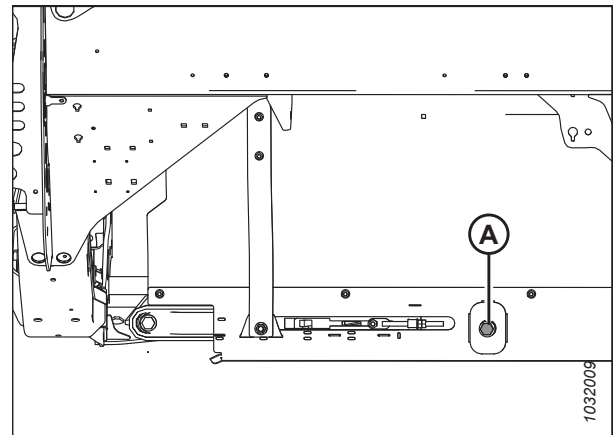


Figure 4.251: Tensioner – Left Side Shown

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
8. Remove nuts and screws (A) and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
9. Pull the draper off the idler roller.

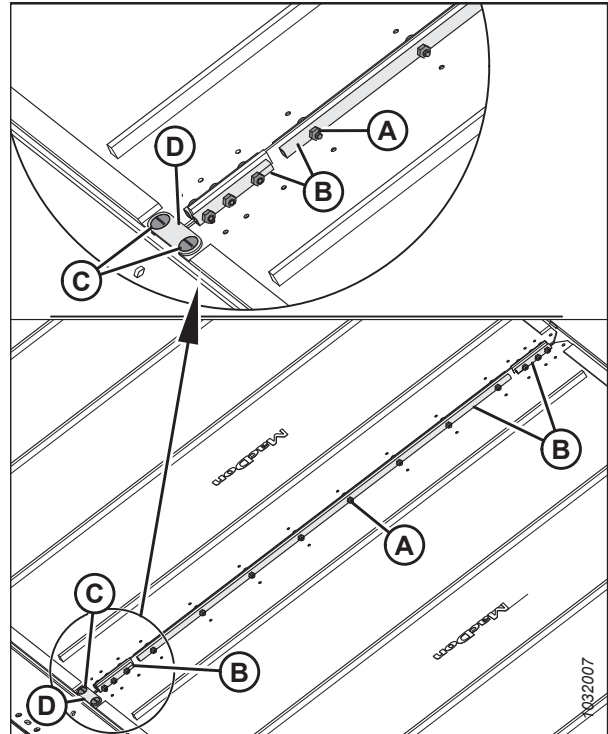


Figure 4.252: Draper Connectors

10. Remove bolt (A) and washer from the idler roller at the back of the header deck.
11. Remove bolt (B) and washer from the idler roller at the front of the header deck.
12. Spread roller arms (C) and (D), and remove the idler roller.

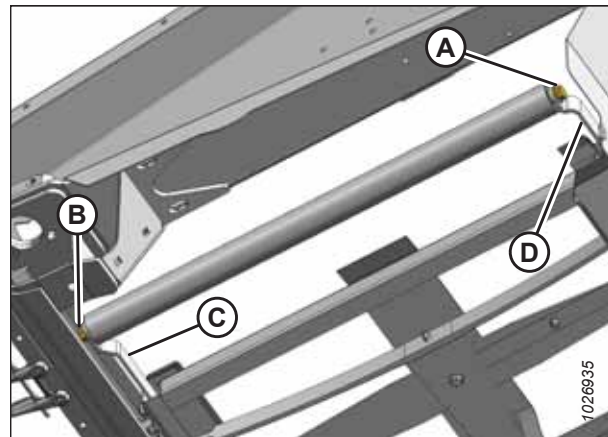


Figure 4.253: Idler Roller

4.12.8 Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing

The side draper deck idlers rollers have bearings installed to allow the roller to turn.

1. Remove draper deck idler roller. For instructions, refer to [4.12.7 Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller, page 616](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Clamp idler roller (A) in a vise with cloth wrapped around the roller to prevent damage to the roller.
3. Use a slide hammer to remove bearing assembly (B) and seal (C) from the roller.

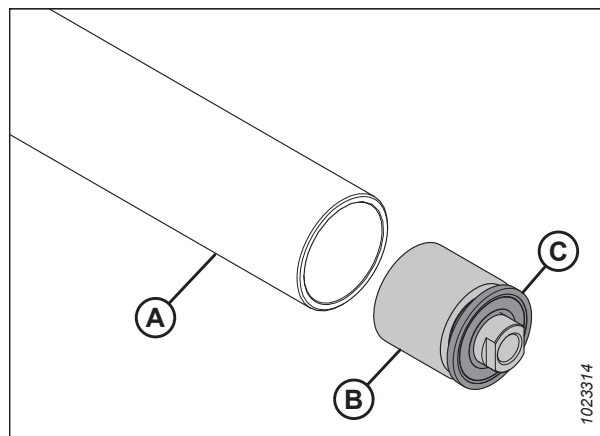


Figure 4.254: Idler Roller Bearing and Seal

IMPORTANT:

When installing the new bearing, do **NOT** place the end of the roller directly onto the ground. Bearing assembly (A) protrudes past roller tube (B), and placing the end on the ground will push the bearing farther into the tube.

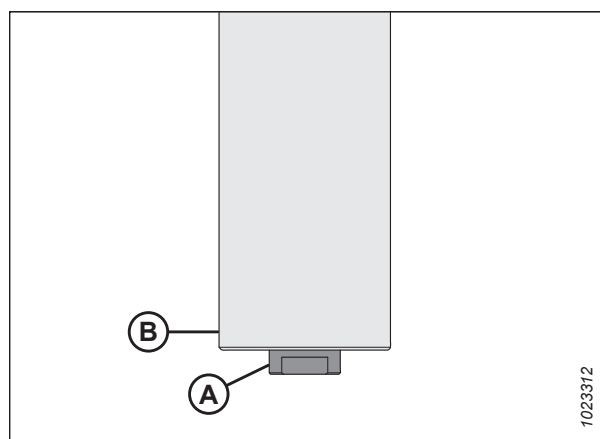


Figure 4.255: Idler Roller

4. Cut a relief (A) into a block of wood.
5. Place the end of idler roller (B) onto the block, with the protruding bearing assembly inside relief (A).

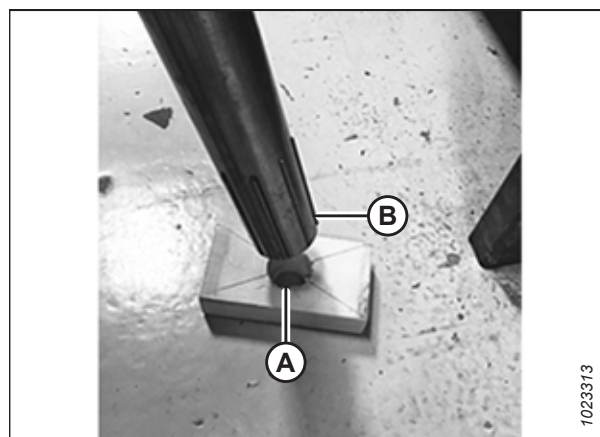


Figure 4.256: Idler Roller

6. Install new bearing assembly (C) by pressing the outer race of the bearing into the tube until it is 14–15 mm (9/16–19/32 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.

NOTE:

Before installing new seal, fill area (A) with approximately 8 pumps of grease.

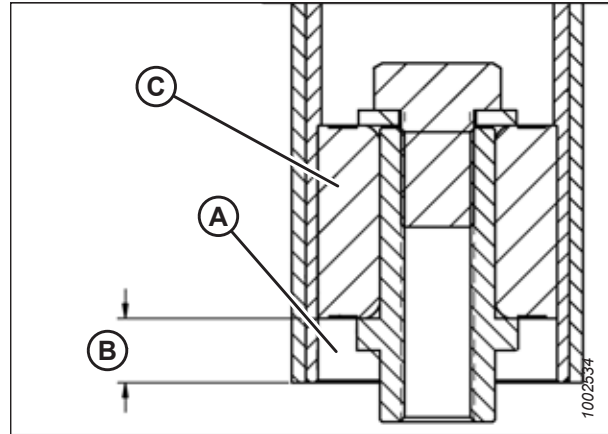


Figure 4.257: Idler Roller Bearing

7. Install new seal (A) by pressing on the inner and outer race of the seal until it is 3–4 mm (1/8–3/16 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.

NOTE:

The seal can be oriented in either direction.

8. Reinstall the idler roller. For instructions, refer to [4.12.9 Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller](#), page 620.

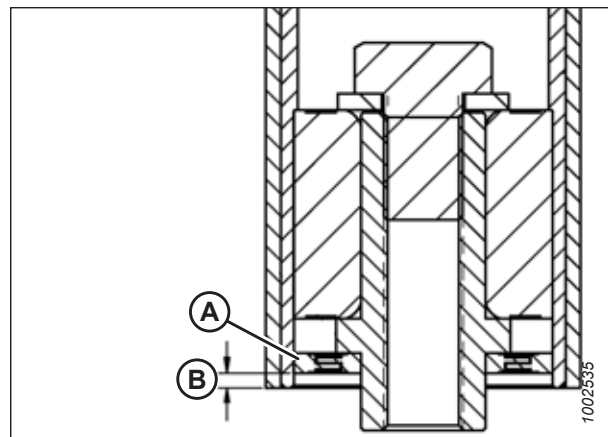


Figure 4.258: Idler Roller Bearing

4.12.9 Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller

The side draper deck has a roller on either end of the deck. One is the idler roller and one is the drive roller.

1. Install idler roller (A) between idler arms (B), and secure with two bolts (C) and washers. Tighten the bolts to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).

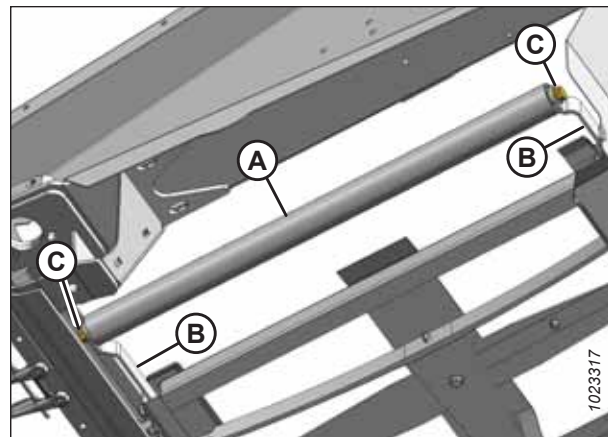


Figure 4.259: Idler Roller

2. Attach the ends of draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

NOTE:

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

3. Install bridge connector (D) using screws (C) and the nuts at the front end of the draper joint.

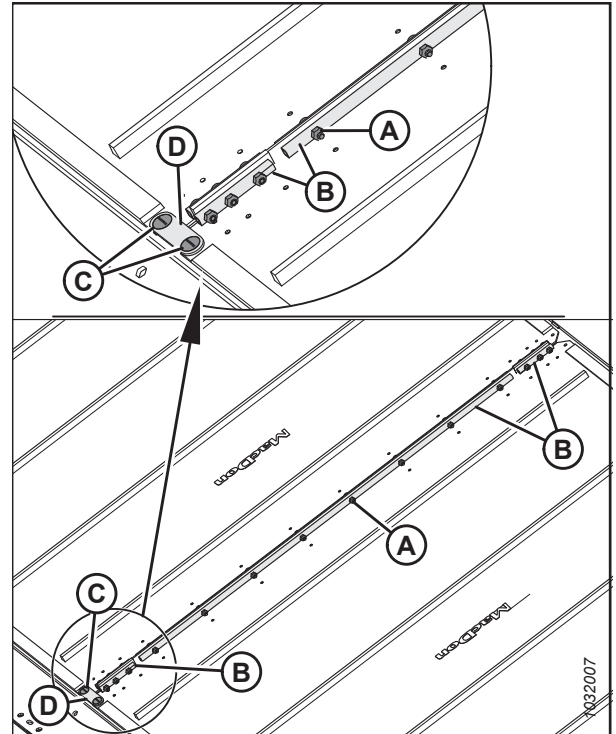


Figure 4.260: Draper Connector

4. Tighten the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) clockwise. For instructions, refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#).
5. Disengage the reel and header safety props.



WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

6. Start the engine and lower the header and the reel.
7. Run machine to verify that draper tracks correctly. Refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#) if additional adjustment is necessary.

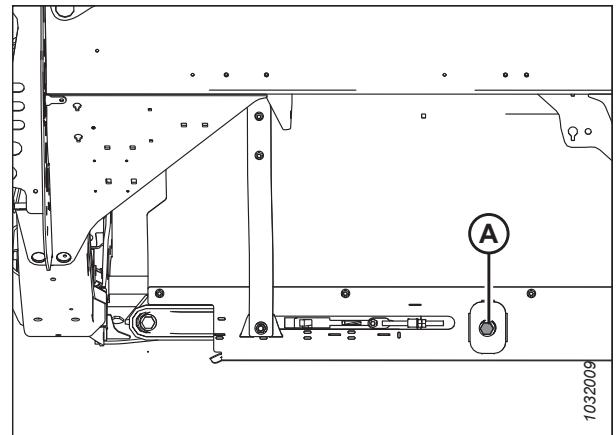


Figure 4.261: Draper Tensioner

4.12.10 Removing Side Draper Drive Roller

The side draper deck has a roller on either end of the deck. One is the idler roller and one is the drive roller.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat or making adjustments to the machine. Never work on or beneath an unsupported header. If the header is fully raised, always engage the safety props. If the header is off of the ground but not raised to its full height, place blocks under the header.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. If the draper connector is not visible, engage the header until the connector is accessible (preferably close to the outboard end of the deck).
2. Start the engine.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Raise the reel fully.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.
7. Engage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
8. Loosen the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) counterclockwise until the adjuster bolt runs out of adjustment and hits a hard stop.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** adjust nut (B). This nut is used for draper alignment only.

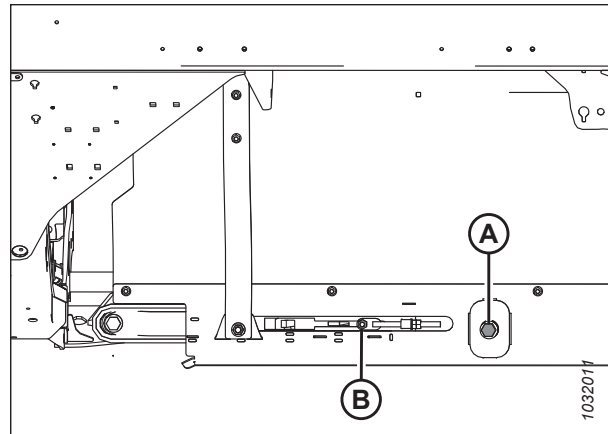


Figure 4.262: Draper Tensioner

9. Remove nuts and screws (A), and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
10. Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
11. Pull the draper off the drive roller.

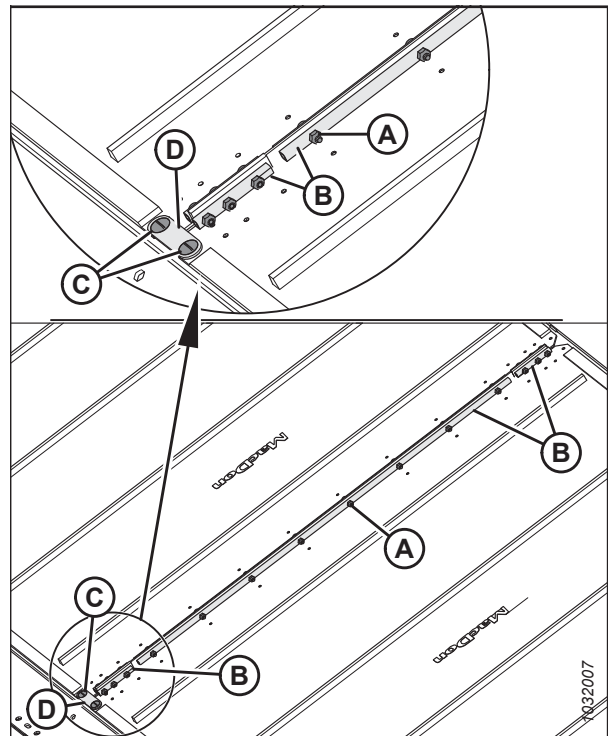


Figure 4.263: Draper Connectors

12. Align the set screws with the hole (A) in the guard. Remove the two set screws holding the motor onto the drive roller.

NOTE:

The set screws are 1/4 turn apart.

13. Loosen two bolts (B) securing the motor to the drive roller arm.

NOTE:

It may be necessary to remove plastic shield (C) to gain access to the top bolt.

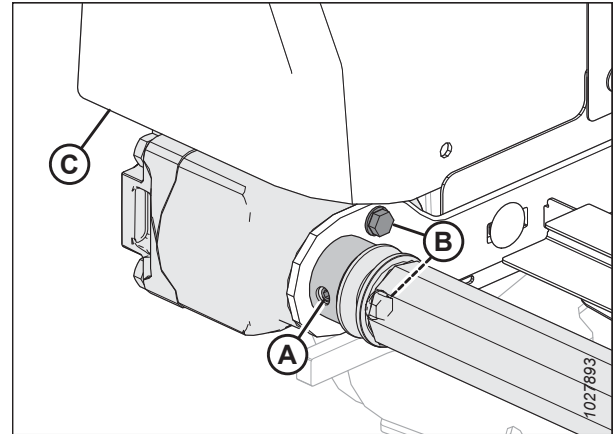


Figure 4.264: Drive Roller

NOTE:

It may be necessary to pry between the roller and bracket (A) to remove the roller from shaft.

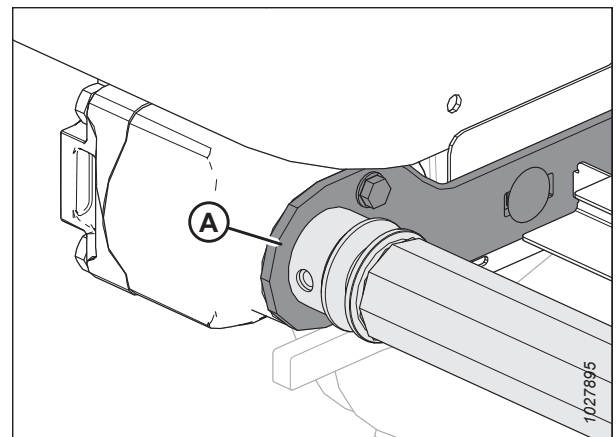


Figure 4.265: Drive Roller

14. Loosen two bolts (A) securing support arm (B).
15. Remove bolt (C) and the washer securing the opposite end of the drive roller to support arm (B).
16. Remove drive roller (D).

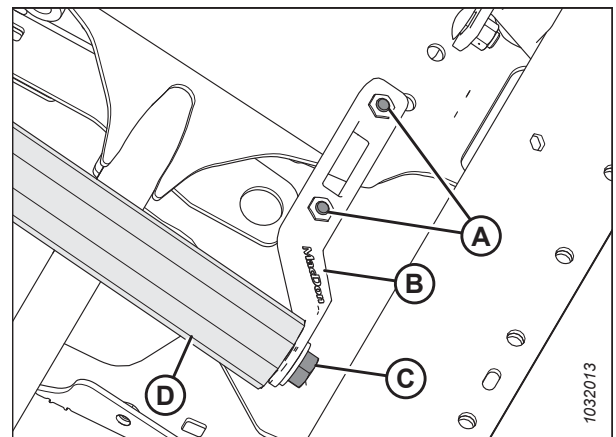


Figure 4.266: Drive Roller

4.12.11 Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing

You will need a slide hammer to remove and replace the bearing on a drive roller.

1. Remove the draper idler roller assembly. For instructions, refer to [4.12.10 Removing Side Draper Drive Roller, page 621](#).

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Remove bearing assembly (A) and seal (B) from roller tube (C) as follows:
 - a. Attach slide hammer (D) to threaded shaft (E) in the bearing assembly.
 - b. Tap out bearing assembly (A) and seal (B).
3. Clean the inside of roller tube (C), check the tube for signs of wear or damage, and replace if necessary.

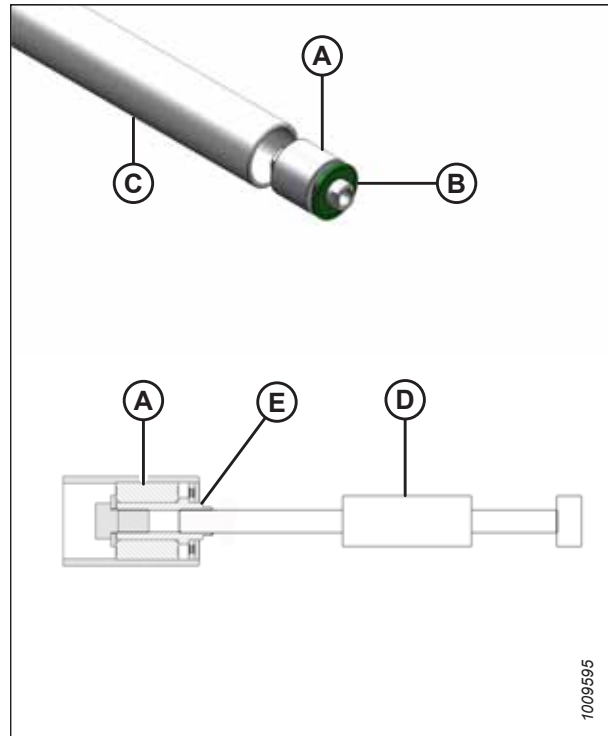


Figure 4.267: Roller Bearing

4. Install new bearing assembly (A) by pressing the outer race of the bearing into the tube until it is 14–15 mm (9/16–19/32 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.
5. Apply grease in front of bearing assembly (A). Refer to the inside back cover of this book for grease specifications.
6. Install new seal (C) at the roller opening, and install a flat washer (1.0 in. I.D. x 2.0 in. O.D.) on the seal.
7. Tap seal (C) into the roller opening with a suitably sized socket. Tap the washer and bearing assembly (A) until the seal is 3–4 mm (1/8–3/16 in.) (D) from the outside edge of the tube.

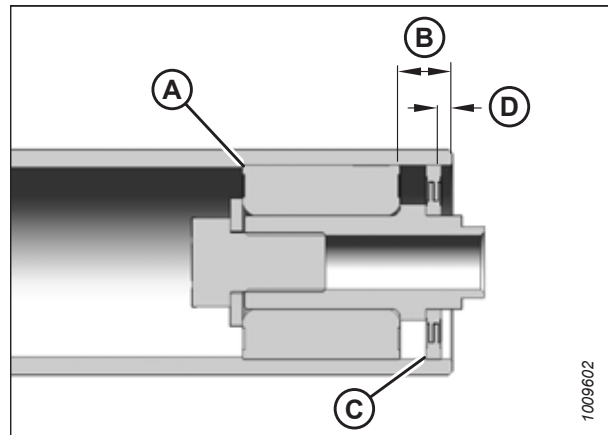


Figure 4.268: Roller Bearing

4.12.12 Installing Side Draper Drive Roller

The side draper deck has a roller on either end of the deck. One is the idler roller and one is the drive roller.

1. Position drive roller (A) between the roller support arms.
2. Secure the drive roller with washer and bolt (B).
3. Tighten bolts (C) on the support arm.
4. Torque bolt (B) to 95 Nm (70 lbf·ft).
5. Grease the motor shaft and insert it into the end of drive roller (A).

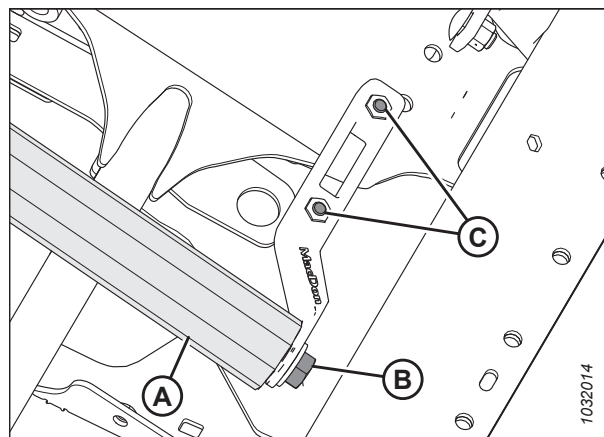


Figure 4.269: Drive Roller

6. Secure the motor to the roller support with two bolts (B). Torque the bolts to 27 Nm (20 lbf·ft).
7. Ensure the motor is all the way into the roller, and straight key is still in place when fully inserted.
8. Tighten the two set screws (not shown) through access hole (A).

NOTE:

Tighten any loosened bolts and reinstall plastic shield (C), if previously removed.

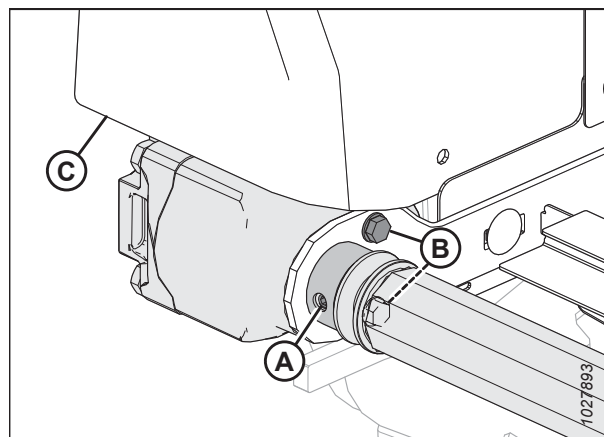


Figure 4.270: Drive Roller

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

9. Wrap the draper over the drive roller, and attach the ends of draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

NOTE:

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

10. Install bridge connector (D) using screws (C) and nuts at the front end of the draper joint.

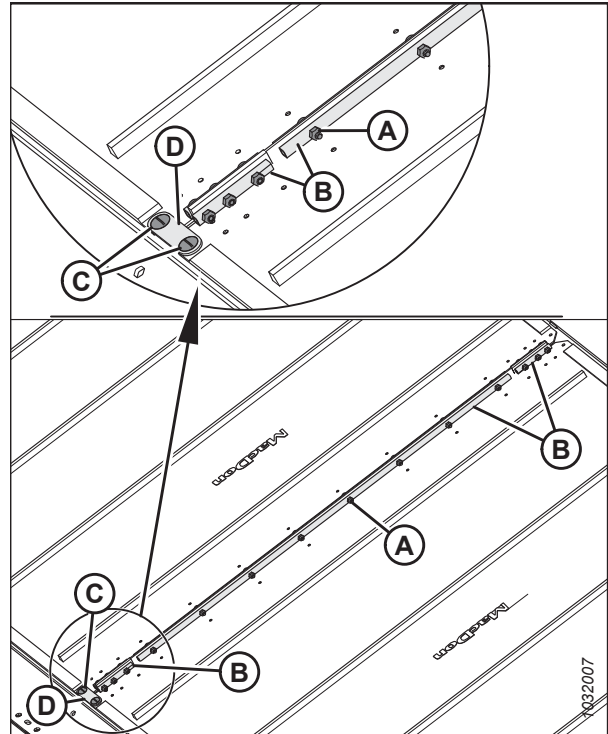


Figure 4.271: Draper Connector

11. Tighten the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) clockwise. For instructions, refer to [4.12.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 612](#).
12. Disengage the reel and header safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 34](#).



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

13. Start the engine, and lower the header and reel.
14. Run the machine to verify the draper tracks correctly. If additional adjustment is necessary, refer to [4.12.5 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking, page 614](#).

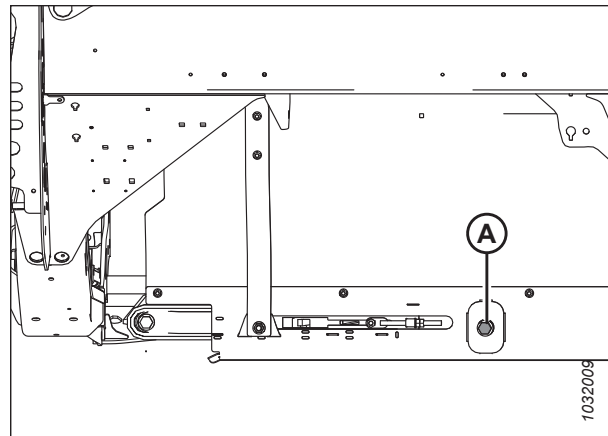


Figure 4.272: Draper Tensioner – Left Side Shown

4.13 Reel

The reel features a uniquely shaped cam, which allows the fingers to get underneath lodged crop and pick it up before it is cut.

CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing machine or opening drive covers, refer to [4.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 475](#).

4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar

The minimum clearance between the reel fingers and the cutterbar ensures that the reel fingers do not contact the cutterbar during operation. The clearance is set at the factory, but some adjustment may be necessary before operation.

1. The dimensions required for finger tip to the top of pointed guard (B), or short guard (C) to cutterbar clearance (A) is shown in the tables below.

Table 4.3 Finger to Guard Clearance – Single Reel

Header	End Panels	Beside Center Arm
FD225	20 mm (0.80 in.)	45 mm (1.77 in.)

Table 4.4 Finger to Guard Clearance – Double Reel

Header	End Panels	At Hinge Points
FD230	20 mm (0.80 in.)	45 mm (1.77 in.)
FD235 FD240 FD241	20 mm (0.80 in.)	20 mm (0.80 in.)
FD240	20 mm (0.80 in.)	20 mm (0.80 in.)

Table 4.5 Finger to Guard Clearance – Triple Reel

Header	Outer End Panels	Beside Center Arms
FD240 FD241 FD245 FD250	20 mm (0.80 in.)	20 mm (0.80 in.)

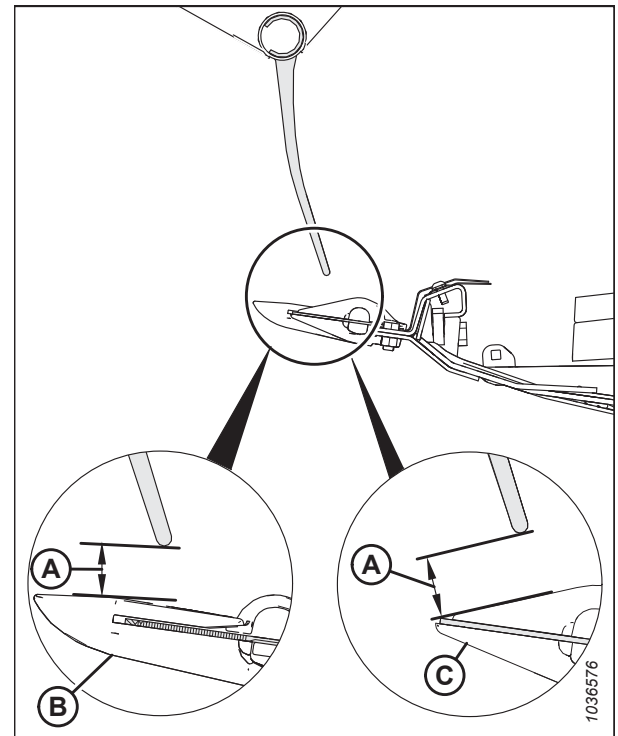


Figure 4.273: Finger Clearance

Measuring Reel Clearance

Reel clearance refers to the gap between the ends of the reel fingers and the cutterbar. Depending on the configuration of the header, reel clearance can vary across the length of the header. To determine if the reel clearance is acceptable, it must first be measured.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Park the combine on a level surface.
3. Adjust the reel fore-aft position until the number seven on fore-aft indicator (A) is hidden by sensor support (B).

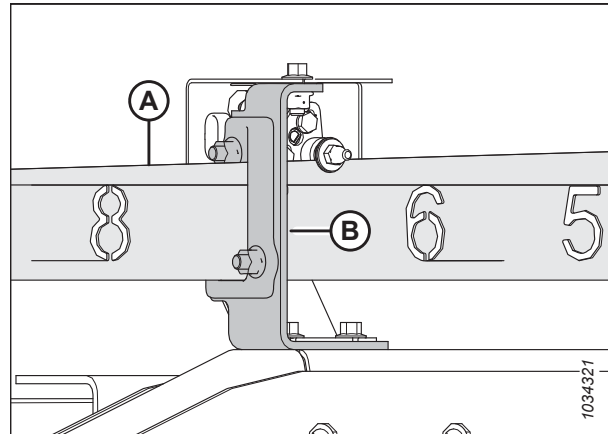


Figure 4.274: Reel Fore-Aft Position

4. **Single-reel headers:** Raise the header high enough to place two 254 mm (10 in.) high blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.

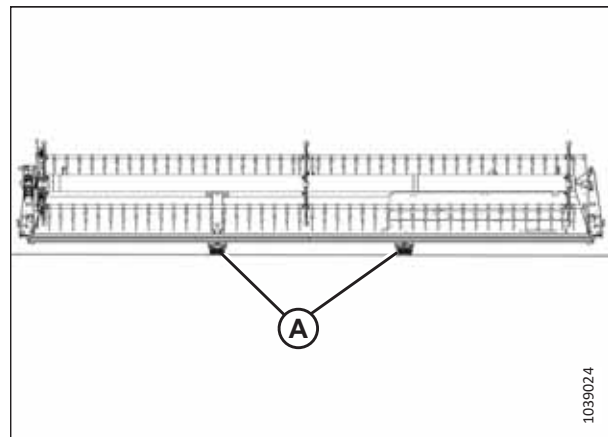


Figure 4.275: FlexDraper® Block Locations – Single Reel

5. **Double-reel headers:** Raise the header high enough to place two 254 mm (10 in.) high blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.

NOTE:

Blocks are **NOT** needed to support the wings of triple-reel headers.

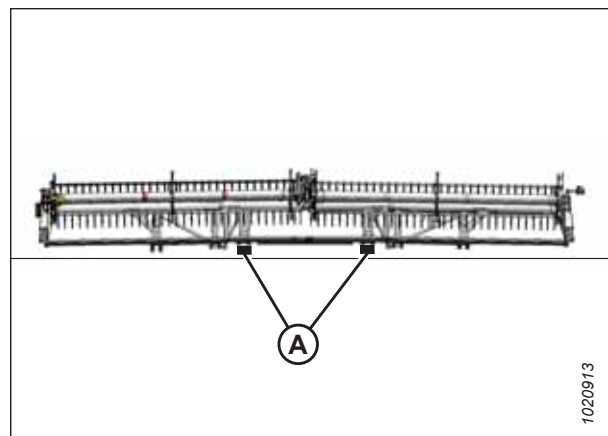


Figure 4.276: FlexDraper® Block Locations – Double Reel

6. **Single-reel and double-reel headers:** Move wing lock spring handles (A) down to the **UNLOCK** position.

NOTE:

The reel clearance of triple-reel headers must be measured while the wings are locked.

7. Lower the header fully. The wings of single-reel and double-reel headers should be in the full frown position; the wings of triple-reel headers should be level with the center deck.

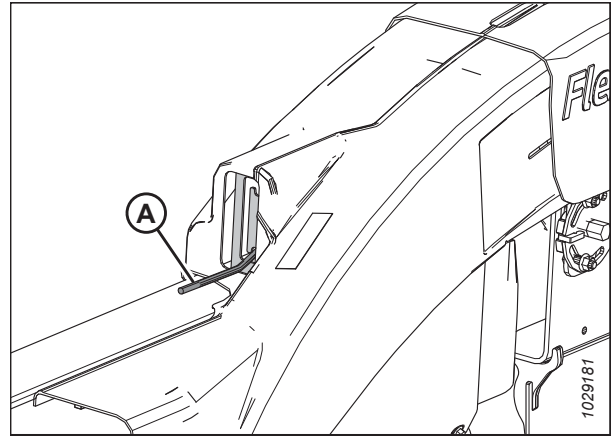


Figure 4.277: Wing Lock in UNLOCK Position

8. Rotate the reel by hand until a tine tube is directly above the cutterbar.
9. Measure and record clearance (A) between the tip of the fingers and one of the guards at the end of the reels, either pointed guard (B) or short guard (C). For the clearance specifications, refer to [4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar](#), [page 627](#).

For the measurement locations, refer to

- Single-reel headers: [Figure 4.279, page 630](#)
- Double-reel headers: [Figure 4.280, page 630](#)
- Triple-reel headers: [Figure 4.281, page 630](#)

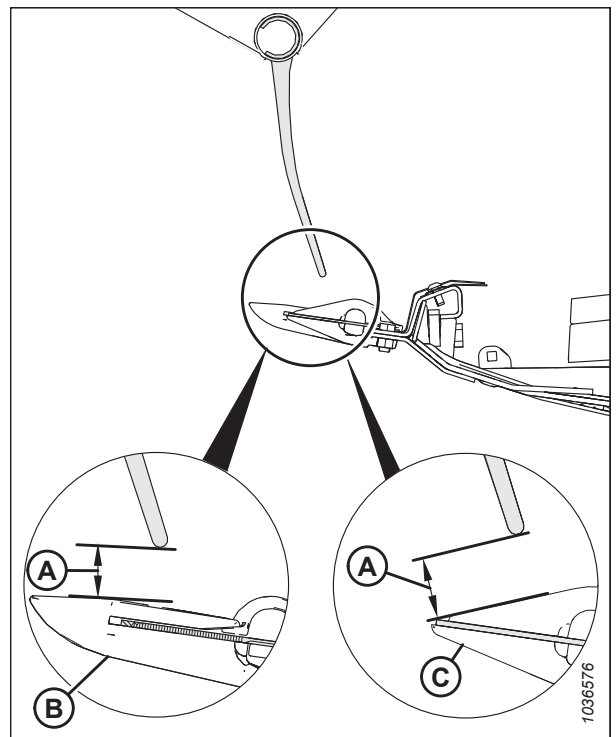


Figure 4.278: Finger Clearance

Single-reel measurement locations (A): Outer ends of the reel (two places).

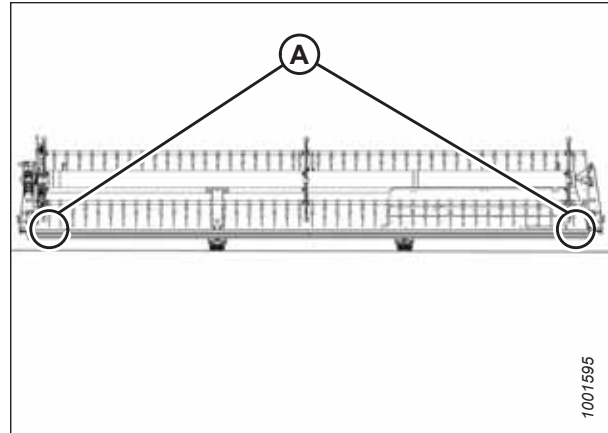


Figure 4.279: FlexDraper® Measurement Locations – Single Reel

Double-reel measurement locations (A): Outer ends of the reels and at both hinge points (four places).

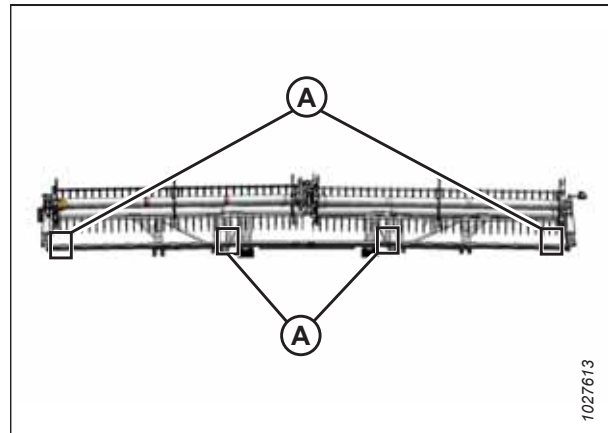


Figure 4.280: FlexDraper® Measurement Locations – Double Reel

Triple-reel measurement locations (A): Both ends of three reels (six places).

10. Adjust the reel clearance, if necessary. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Clearance between Reel and Cutterbar](#), page 631.

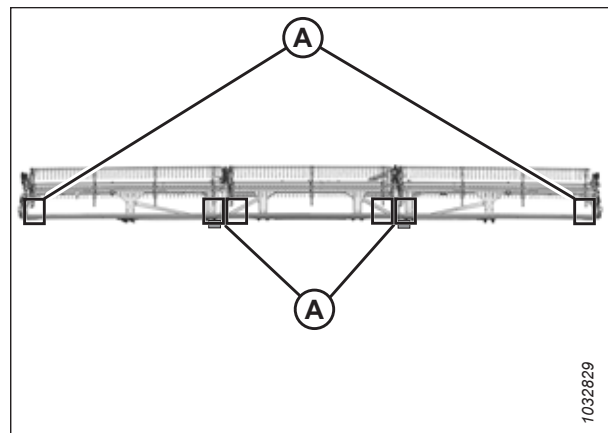


Figure 4.281: FlexDraper® Measurement Locations – Triple Reel

Adjusting Clearance between Reel and Cutterbar

Make sure there is sufficient clearance between the reel and cutterbar to prevent the knife from cutting reel finger tips off during operation.

To adjust the clearance between the reel and cutterbar, follow these steps:

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Measure the reel clearance before proceeding. For instructions, refer to [Measuring Reel Clearance, page 627](#).
2. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
3. Adjust the reel fore-aft position until the number seven on fore-aft indicator (A) is hidden by sensor support (B).

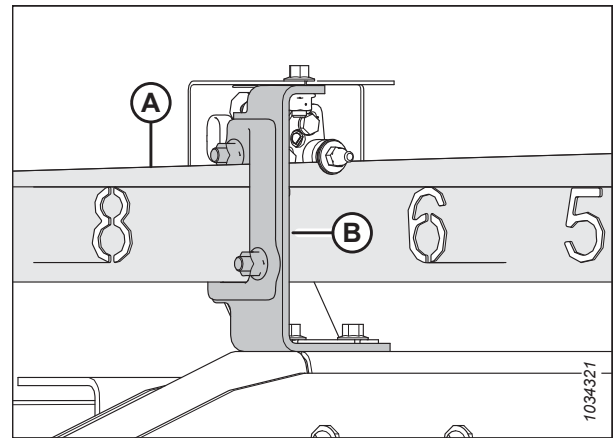


Figure 4.282: Fore-Aft Position

4. Raise the header high enough to place two 254 mm (10 in.) high blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.

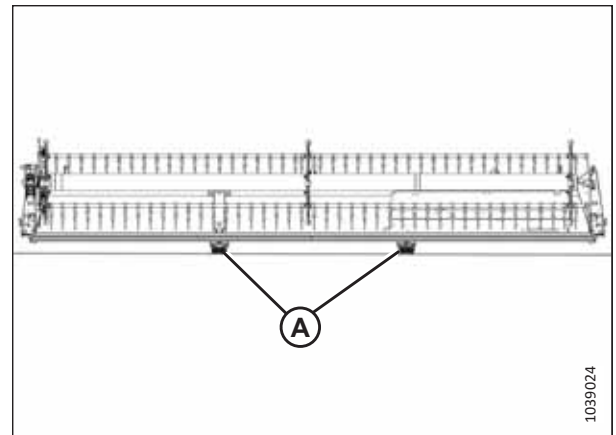


Figure 4.283: FlexDraper® Block Locations – Single Reel

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Raise the header high enough to place two 254 mm (10 in.) high blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.

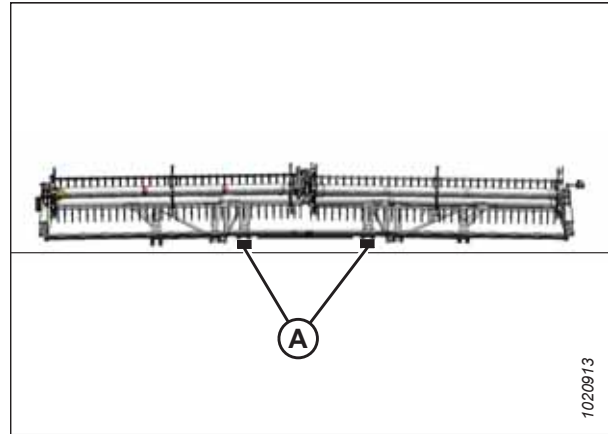


Figure 4.284: FlexDraper® Block Locations – Double Reel

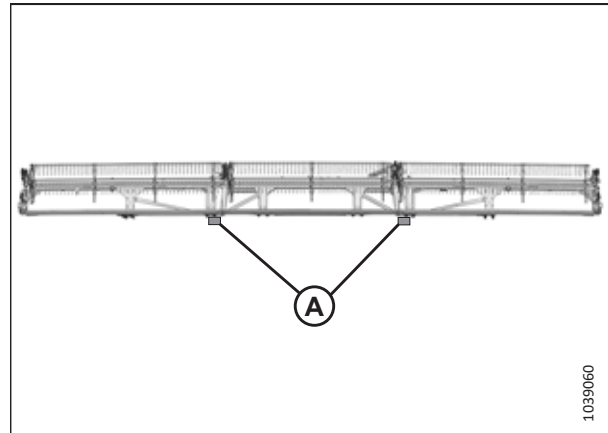


Figure 4.285: FlexDraper® Block Locations – Triple Reel

6. Lower the reel fully, and continue holding the control button down to phase the cylinders.
7. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
8. Adjust the clearance at the outboard ends of the reel as follows:
 - a. Loosen bolt (A) on the outer arm cylinder.
 - b. Adjust cylinder rod (B) as required:
 - To increase clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rod (B) out of clevis to raise the reel.
 - To decrease clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rod (B) into clevis to lower the reel.
 - c. Tighten bolt (A).
9. Repeat Step 8, page 632 at opposite side of the header.

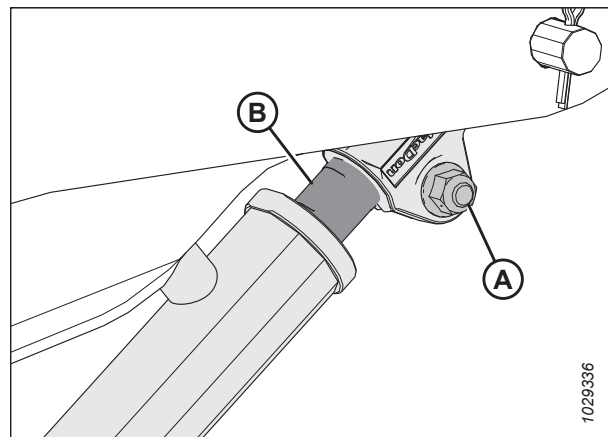


Figure 4.286: Outside Arm Cylinder

10. Loosen bolts (A) on both center arm cylinders.

11. Adjust the clearance as follows:

IMPORTANT:

Adjust both cylinder rods equally.

- To increase clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rods (D) out of clevis to raise the reel.
- To decrease clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rods (D) into clevis to lower the reel.

12. Ensure distance measurement (B) is equal on both cylinders.

NOTE:

Distance measurement (B) is from the center of mounting pins (C) to the tops of the notches in cylinder rods (D).

13. Verify that both mounting pins (C) cannot be rotated by hand. If one of the mounting pins is free to rotate, then adjust cylinder rods (D) as required until both cylinder rods take the load:

- Turn cylinder rod out of the clevis to increase the load on the cylinder rod.
- Turn cylinder rod into the clevis to decrease the load on the cylinder rod.

14. Tighten bolts (A).

15. **Triple reel:** Repeat Step 10, page 633 to Step 14, page 633 for the other center reel arm.



DANGER

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

16. Start the engine.

17. Raise the reel fully.

18. Lower the reel fully, and continue holding the control button down to phase the cylinders.

19. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

20. Check measurements again and, if necessary, repeat the adjustment procedures.

21. Move the reel back to ensure the steel end fingers do not contact the deflector shields.

22. If contact occurs, adjust the reel upward to maintain the clearance at all reel fore-aft positions. If contact cannot be avoided after adjusting the reel, trim the steel end fingers to obtain proper clearance.

23. Periodically check for evidence of contact during operation, and adjust clearance as required.

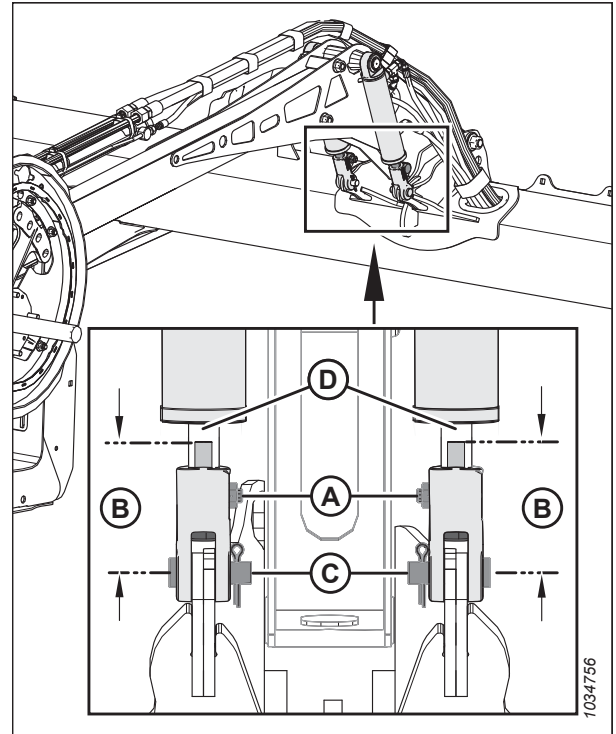


Figure 4.287: Center Arm Cylinders

4.13.2 Reel Frown

The reel must be set up to frown (providing more clearance at the center of the reel than at the ends) to compensate for reel flexing.

Adjusting Reel Frown

The reel must be set up to frown (provide more clearance at the center of the reel than at the ends) to compensate for reel flexing.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Position the reel over the cutterbar (between 4 and 5 on fore-aft position indicator [A]) to provide adequate clearance at all reel fore-aft positions. Bracket (B) is the position marker.
2. Record the measurement at each reel disc location for each reel tube.

NOTE:

Measure the frown profile before disassembling the reel for servicing so the profile can be maintained during reassembly.

3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Start with the reel disc closest to the center of the header and proceed outward towards the ends, adjusting the header profile as follows:

- a. Remove bolts (A).
- b. Loosen bolt (B) and adjust arm (C) until the desired measurement is obtained between the reel tube and cutterbar.

NOTE:

Allow the reel tubes to curve naturally and position the hardware accordingly.

- c. Reinstall bolts (A) in the aligned holes and tighten them.

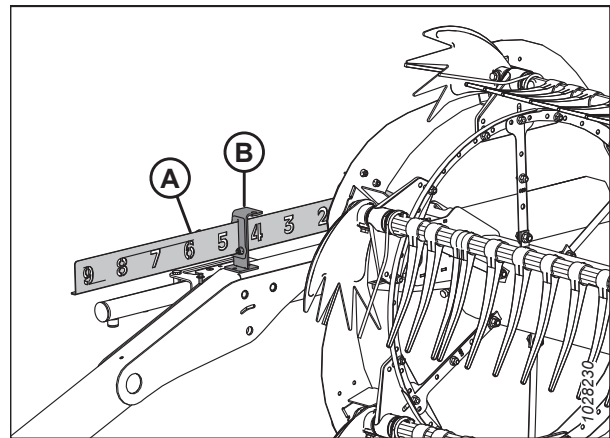


Figure 4.288: Fore-Aft Position Indicator

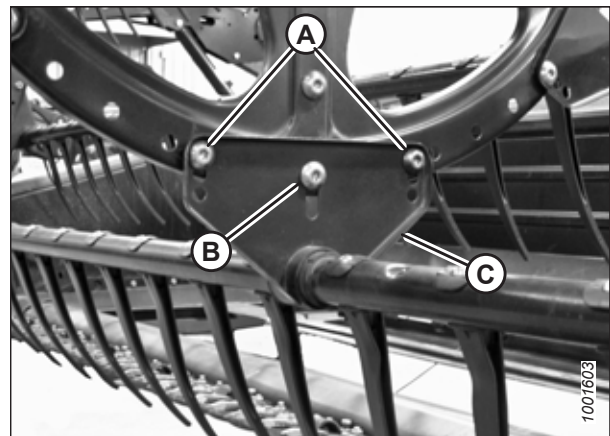


Figure 4.289: Center Reel Disc

4.13.3 Centering Reel

The reel needs to be centered on the header to avoid any contact with the end panels.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected startup of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before adjusting the machine.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Measure clearance (A) at locations (B) between the reel tine tube and the endsheet at both ends of the header. The clearances should be the same if the reel is centered.

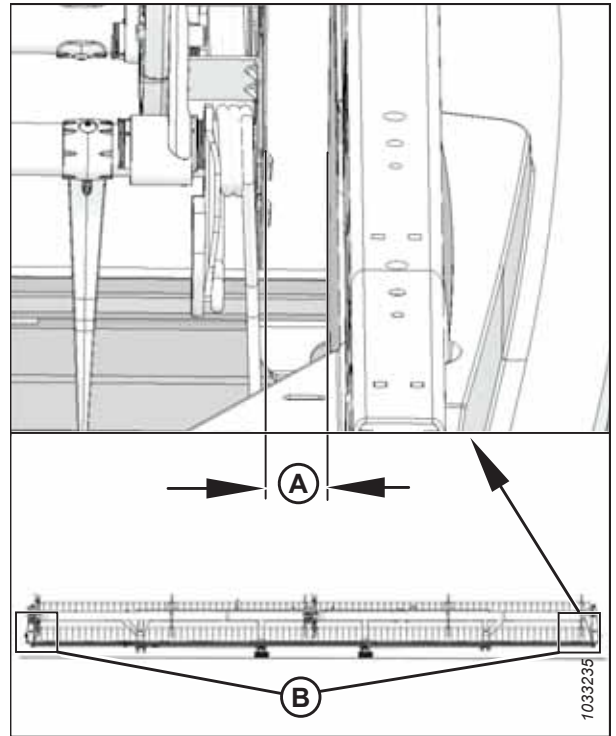


Figure 4.290: Centering Reel

6. Loosen bolt (A) on brace (B) at the center support arm.
7. Move the forward end of reel support arm (C) laterally as required to center the reel.
8. Tighten bolt (A) and torque to 457 Nm (337 lbf-ft).

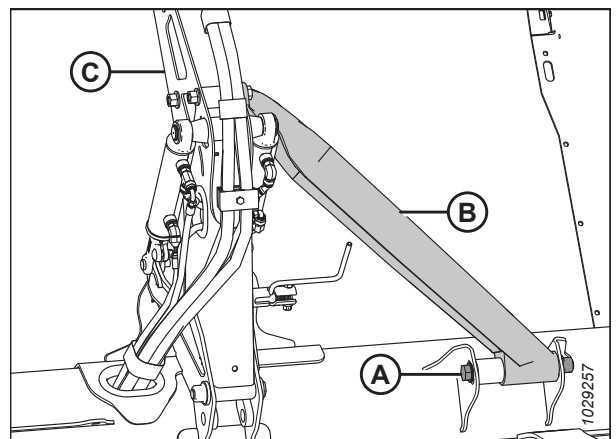


Figure 4.291: Center Support Arm

4.13.4 Reel Fingers

If a reel finger is damaged or worn, it will need to be removed so it can be replaced. Reel fingers are either steel or plastic.

IMPORTANT:

Keep the reel fingers in good condition and straighten or replace them as necessary.

Removing Steel Fingers

Damaged steel fingers will need to be cut off of the reel tine tube.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to avoid damaging it and other components.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Remove the tine tube bushings from the applicable tine tube at the center and left reel discs. For instructions, refer to [Removing Bushings from Reels, page 639](#).
6. Attach tine tube arms (B) to the reel disc at original attachment locations (A).
7. Cut the damaged finger so it can be removed from the tine tube.
8. Remove bolts from the existing fingers and slide the fingers over to replace the finger that was cut off in Step 7, [page 636](#) (remove tine tube arms [B] from the tine tubes as necessary).

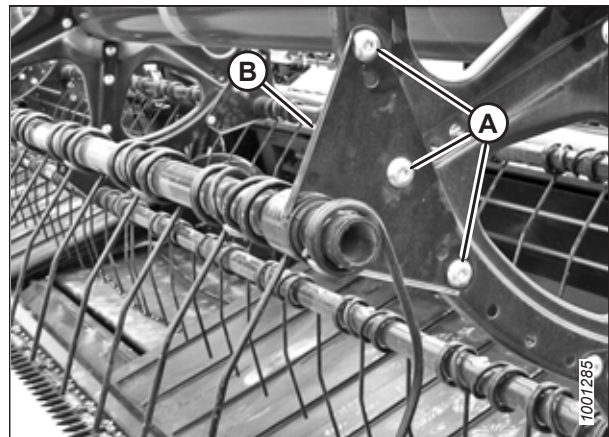


Figure 4.292: Tine Tube Arm

Installing Steel Fingers

Once the old steel finger has been removed, a new finger can be pushed onto the tine tube.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube and other components.

NOTE:

This procedure assumes a finger has been removed from the machine. For instructions about removing fingers, refer to [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#).

1. Slide the new finger and tine tube arm (A) onto the end of the tube.
2. Install the tine tube bushings. For instructions, refer to [Installing Bushings onto Reels, page 644](#).
3. Attach the fingers to the tine tube with bolts and nuts (B).

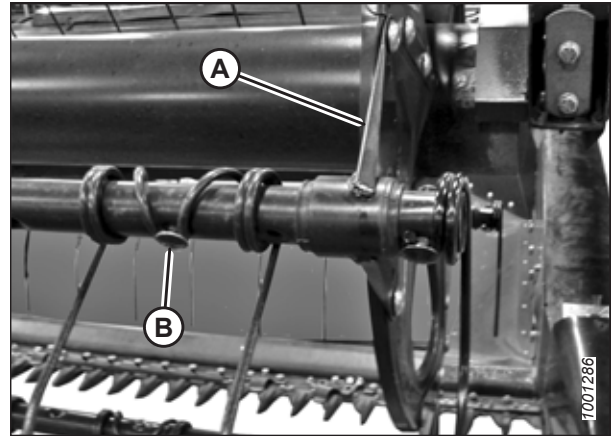


Figure 4.293: Tine Tube

Removing Plastic Fingers

Plastic reel fingers are secured to the tine tube with a single Torx® screw.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).
5. Remove screw (A) using a Torx® Plus 27 IP socket wrench.

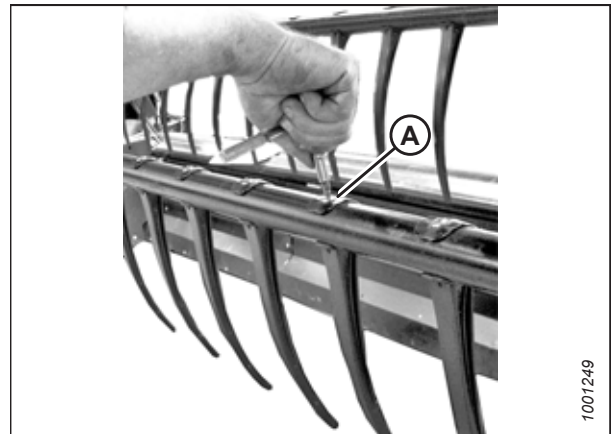


Figure 4.294: Removing Plastic Finger

6. Push the clip at the top of the finger back towards the reel tube as shown and remove the finger from the tube.



Figure 4.295: Removing Plastic Finger

Installing Plastic Fingers

Once the old plastic reel finger has been removed, the new one can be installed.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

NOTE:

This procedure assumes a finger has been removed from the machine. For information about removing fingers, refer to [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#).

1. Position the new finger on the rear of the tine tube. Engage the lug at the bottom of the finger in the lower hole in the tine tube.
2. Lift the top flange gently and rotate the finger as shown until the lug in the top of the finger engages the upper hole in the tine tube.



Figure 4.296: Installing Plastic Finger

3. Install screw (A) using a Torx® Plus 27 IP socket wrench and torque it to 8.5–9.0 Nm (75–80 lbf-in).

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** apply force to the finger prior to tightening the mounting screw. Applying force without tightening the mounting screw will break the finger or shear the locating pins.

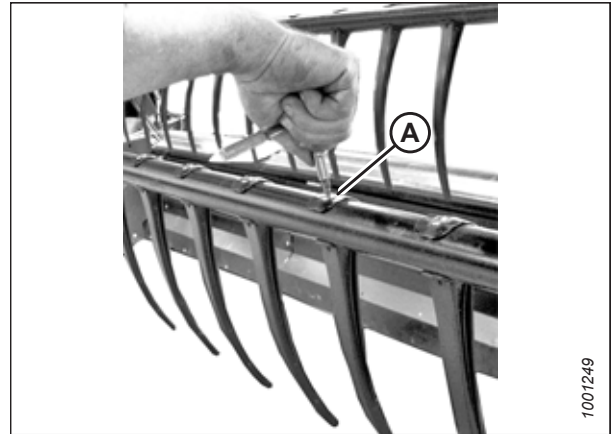


Figure 4.297: Installing Plastic Finger

4.13.5 Tine Tube Bushings

The reel tine tube rests in a tine tube bushing, which is secured to the reel disc. If a tine tube bushing is damaged or worn, it will need to be replaced.

Removing Bushings from Reels

The bushing clamps securing the tine tube to the bushing will need to be released so that the bushing halves can be removed.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube and other components.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 33](#).

NOTE:

If replacing only the cam end bushing, proceed to Step [10, page 641](#).

Center disc and tail end bushings

5. Remove the reel endshields and endshield support (C) from the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location.

NOTE:

There are no endshields on the center disc.

6. Remove bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the disc.

IMPORTANT:

Note the hole locations in the arm and disc and ensure bolts (A) are reinstalled at the original locations.

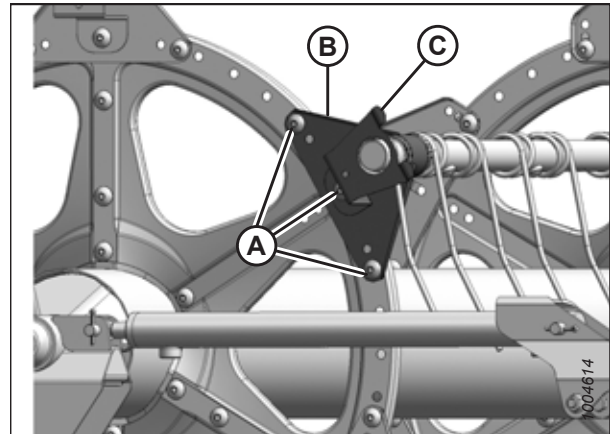


Figure 4.298: Tail End

7. Release bushing clamps (A) using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations. Pull the clamp off the tine tube.

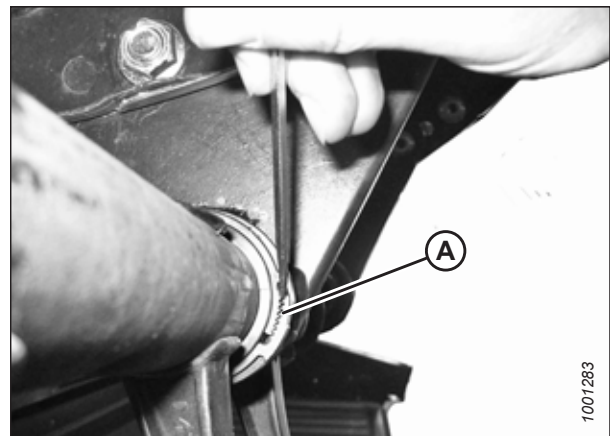


Figure 4.299: Bushing Clamp

8. Rotate tine tube arm (A) until clear of the disc and slide the arm inboard off of bushing (B).

9. Remove bushing halves (B). If required, remove the next steel or plastic finger, so the arm can slide off the bushing. Refer to the following procedures as necessary:

- [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#)
- [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)

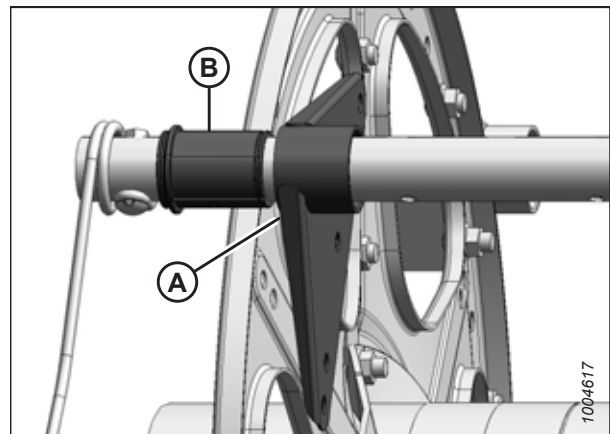


Figure 4.300: Bushing

Cam end bushings

10. Remove the endshields and endshield support (A) from the applicable tine tube location on the cam end.

NOTE:

Removing cam end bushings requires the tine tube to be moved through the disc arms to expose the bushing.

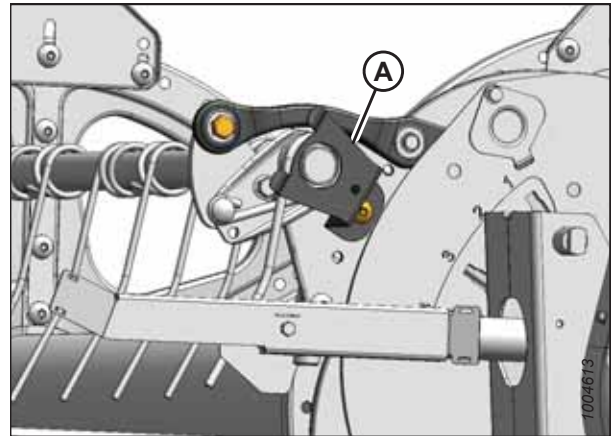


Figure 4.301: Cam End

11. Remove the reel endshields and endshield support (C) from the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location.

NOTE:

There are no endshields on the center disc.

12. Remove bolts (A) securing tine tube arms (B) to the tail and center discs.

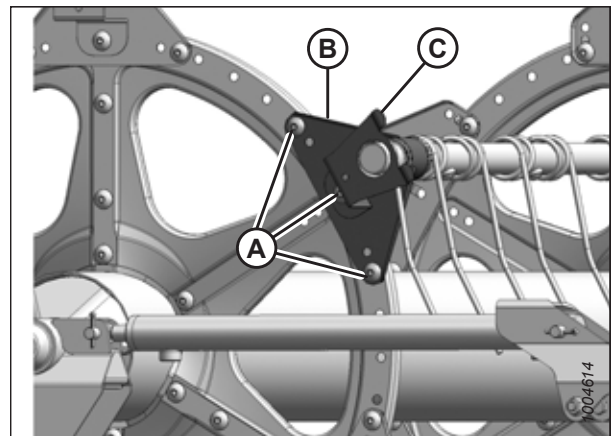


Figure 4.302: Tail End

Tine tube reinforcing kit (option)

13. Release the bushing clamps or disconnect the support channels from the tine tube support (if installed) depending on which tine tube is being moved. Three tine tubes (A) require channel disconnection and two tine tubes (B) require only bushing clamp removal.

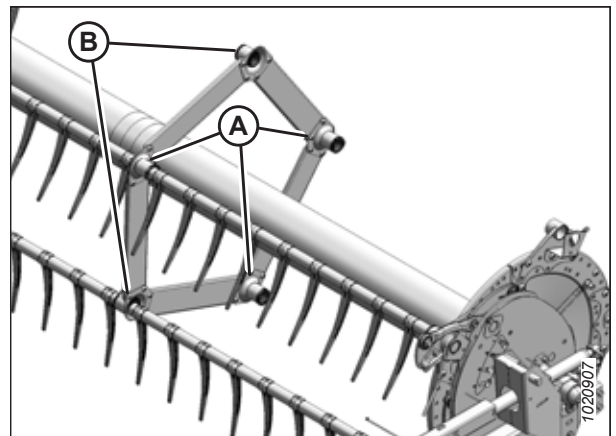


Figure 4.303: Tine Tube Supports

14. Remove bolt (A) from the cam linkage so tine tube (B) is free to rotate.

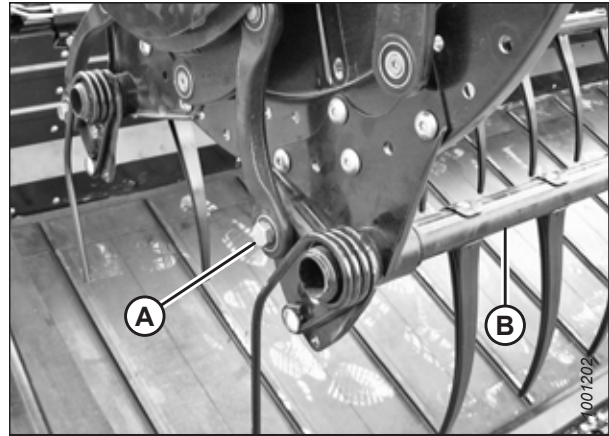


Figure 4.304: Cam End

15. Release bushing clamps (A) at the cam disc using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations. Move the clamps off the bushings.

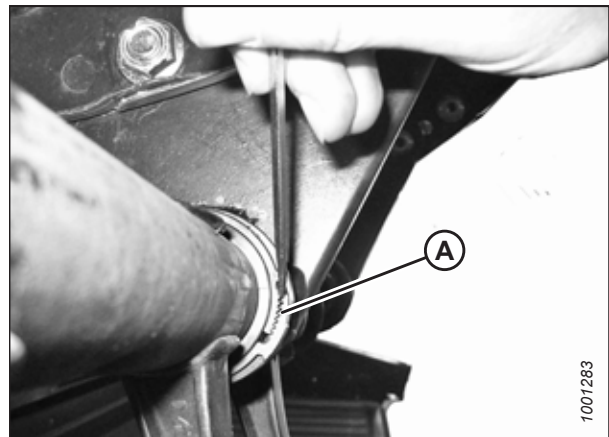


Figure 4.305: Bushing Clamp

16. Slide tine tube (A) outboard to expose bushing (B).
17. Remove bushing halves (B). If required, remove the next steel or plastic finger so the arm can slide off the bushing. Refer to the following procedures if necessary:
 - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#)
 - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)

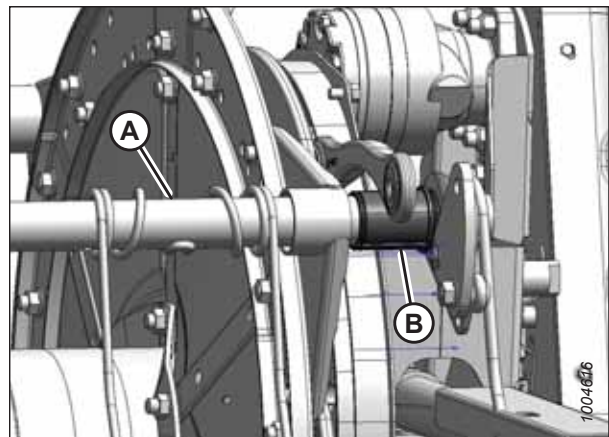


Figure 4.306: Cam End

Tine tube reinforcing kit bushings – option

18. Locate support (A) that requires a new bushing.
19. Remove four bolts (B) securing channel (C) to support (A).
20. Remove screw (E) and remove finger (D) if it is too close to the support to allow access to the bushing. For instructions, refer to [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#) or [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#).

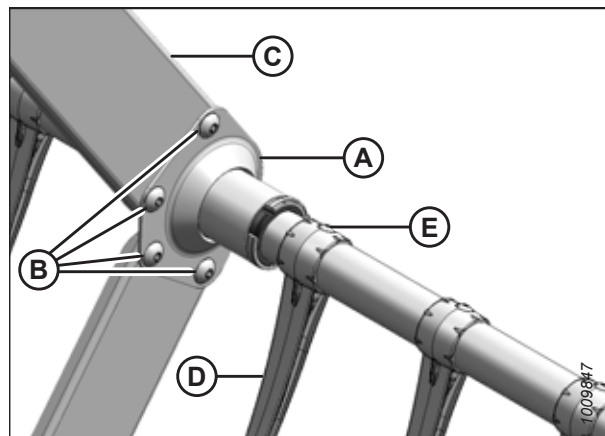


Figure 4.307: Tine Tube Support

21. Release bushing clamps (A) using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations.

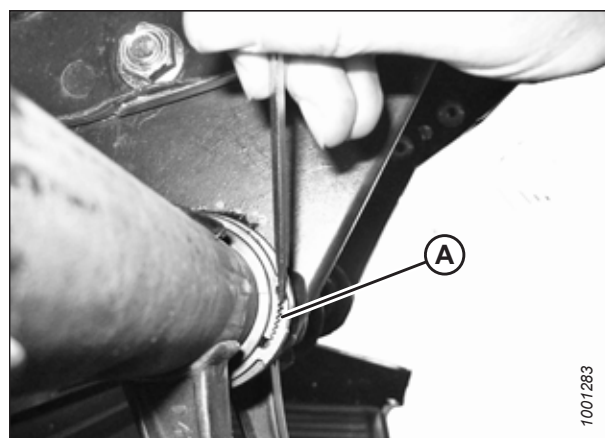


Figure 4.308: Bushing Clamp

22. Move clamps (A) off the bushings.

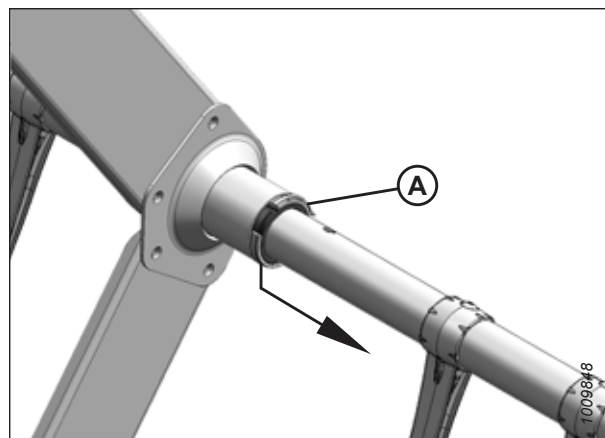


Figure 4.309: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Bushing Clamp – Option

23. On each reel, there are three right-facing supports (A). Slide the support off bushing halves (B).

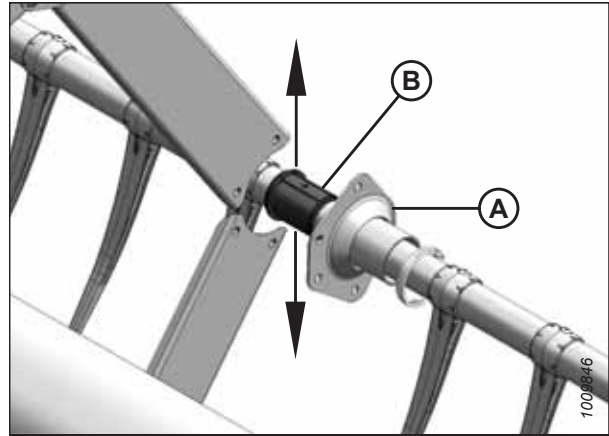


Figure 4.310: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support – Option

24. On each reel, there are two left-facing supports (A). Rotate the supports until the flanges clear the channels before moving them off bushing (B). Move the tube slightly away from the reel if necessary.
25. Remove bushing halves (B) from the tine tubes.

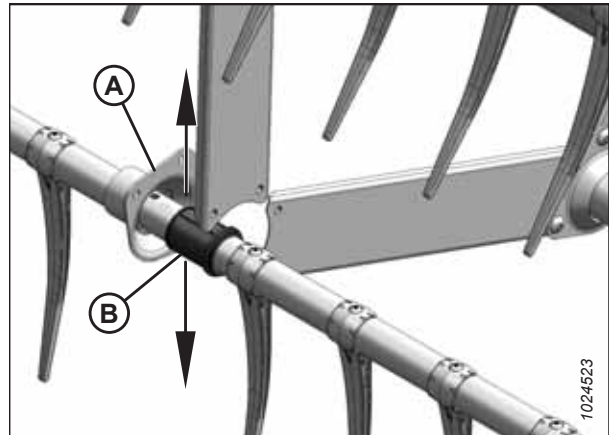


Figure 4.311: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support – Option

Installing Bushings onto Reels

Once the old tine tube bushing halves have been removed, the new ones can be installed.

NOTE:

This procedure assumes the steps for [Removing Bushings from Reels, page 639](#) have been completed.



WARNING

To prevent bodily injury from the fall of a raised reel, always engage the reel safety props before going under the raised reel for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube or other components.

1. Use a pair of modified channel lock pliers (A) to install bushing clamps (C). Secure pliers in a vise and grind a notch (B) into the end of each arm to fit the clamp as shown.

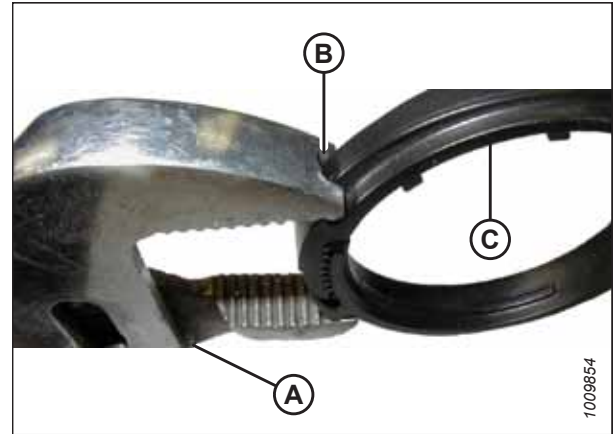


Figure 4.312: Modified Channel Lock Pliers

Cam end bushings

2. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.
3. Slide tine tube (A) towards the tail end of the reel to insert bushing (B) into the tine tube arm. If the tine tube supports are installed, ensure the bushings at those locations slide into the support.
4. Reinstall the previously removed fingers. Refer to the following procedures as necessary:
 - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#)
 - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)
5. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
6. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

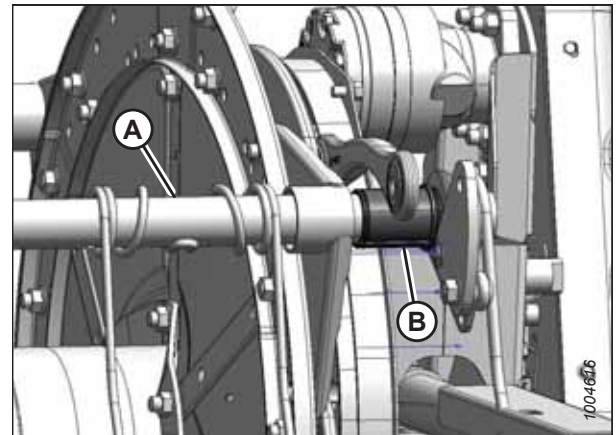


Figure 4.313: Cam End

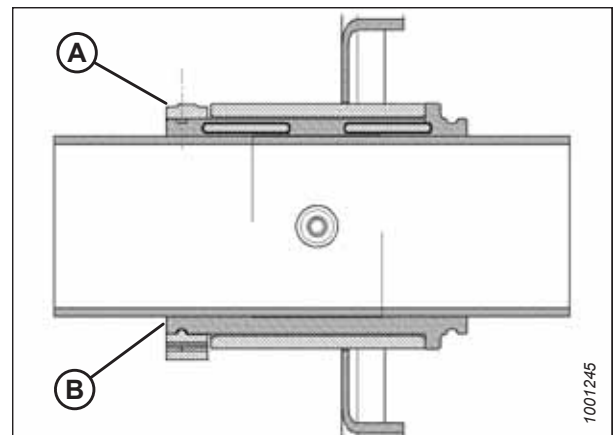


Figure 4.314: Bushing

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

IMPORTANT:

Overtightening the clamp may result in breakage.

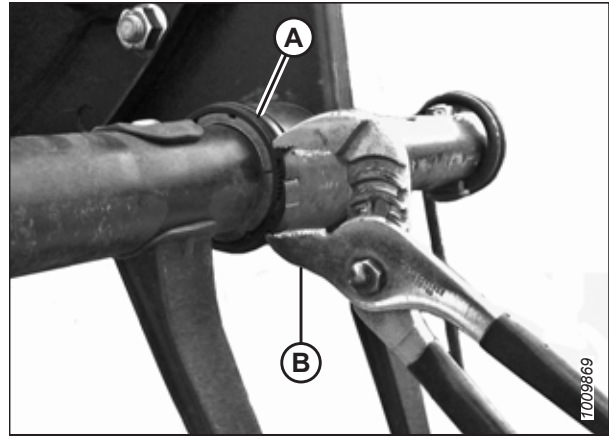


Figure 4.315: Installing Clamp

8. Line up tine tube (B) with the cam arm and install bolt (A). Torque the bolt to 165 Nm (120 lbf·ft).

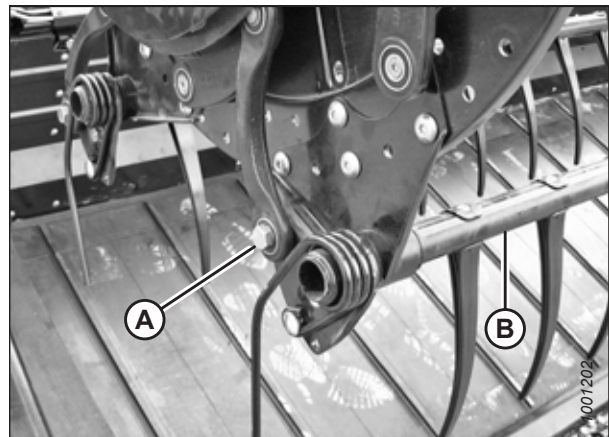


Figure 4.316: Cam End

9. Install bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the center disc.
10. Install tine tube arm (B) and endshield support (C) to the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location and secure with bolts (A).

NOTE:

There are no endshields on the center discs.

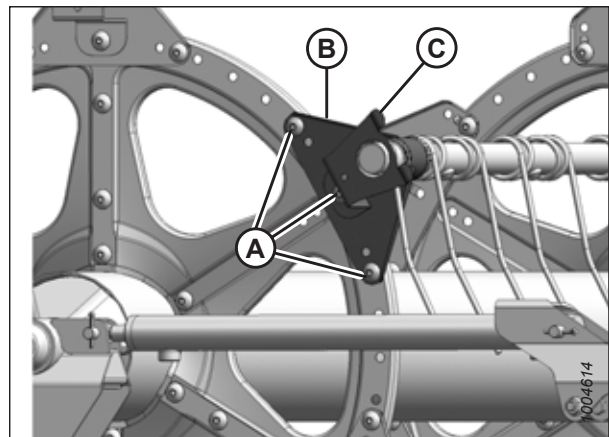


Figure 4.317: Tail End

11. Install endshield support (A) at the applicable tine tube location at the cam end.
12. Reinstall the reel endshields. For instructions, refer to [4.13.6 Reel Endshields, page 650](#).

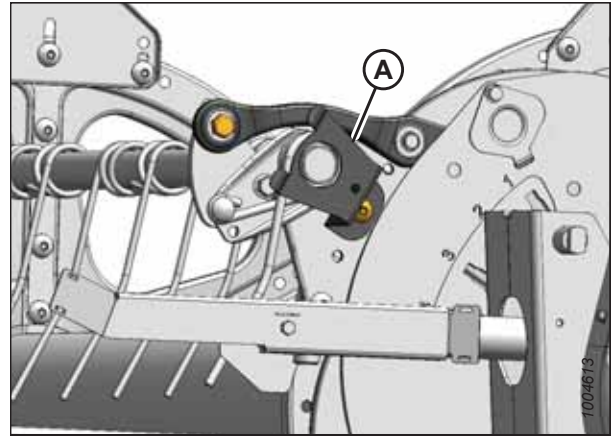


Figure 4.318: Cam End

Center disc and tail end bushings

13. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.
14. Slide tine tube (A) onto bushing (B) and position against the disc at the original location.
15. Reinstall the previously removed fingers. For instructions, refer to:
 - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 637](#)
 - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)

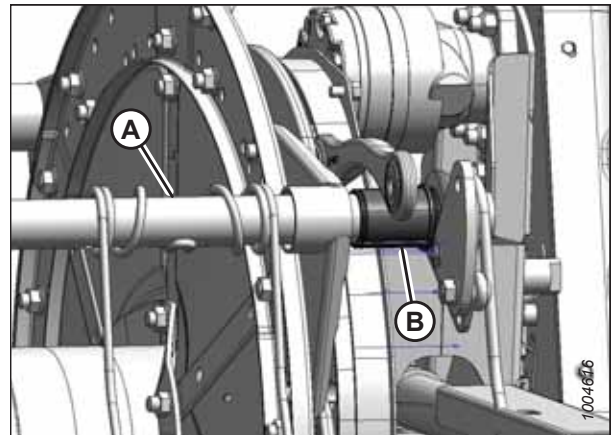


Figure 4.319: Cam End

16. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
17. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

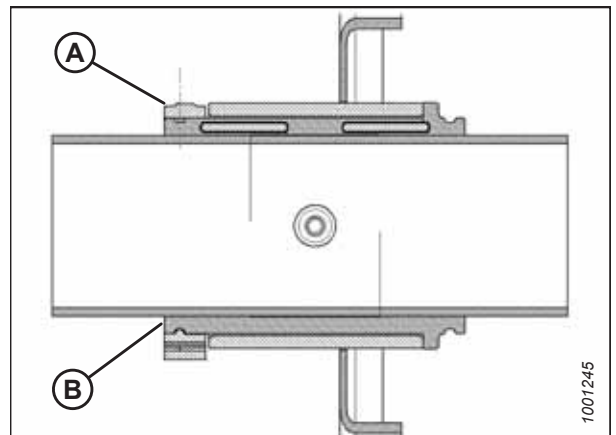


Figure 4.320: Bushing

18. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

IMPORTANT:

Overtightening the clamp may result in breakage.

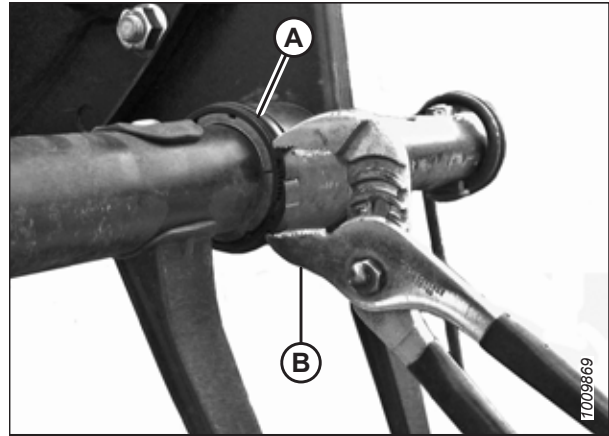


Figure 4.321: Installing Clamp

19. Install bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the center disc.
20. Install tine tube arm (B) and endshield support (C) to the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location and secure with bolts (A).

NOTE:

There are no endshields on the center discs.

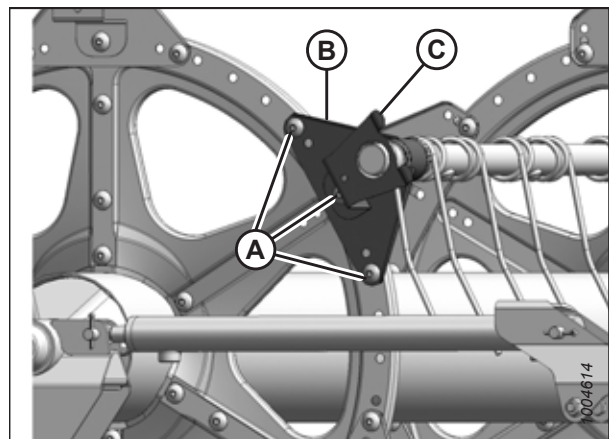


Figure 4.322: Tail End

Tine tube reinforcing kit – option

21. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.

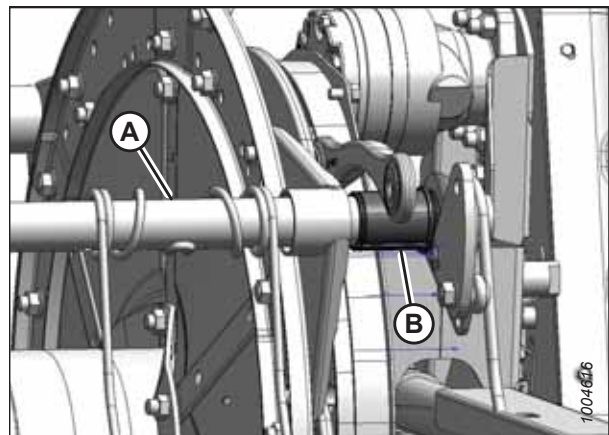


Figure 4.323: Cam End

22. On each reel, there are three right-facing supports (A). Slide the support onto bushing (B).

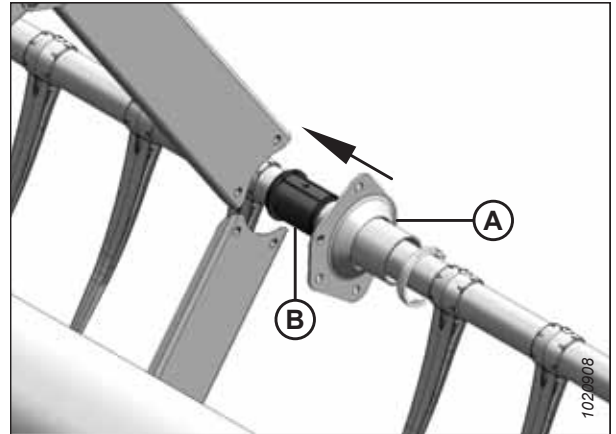


Figure 4.324: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support – Option

23. On each reel, there are two left-facing supports (A). Rotate support (A) until its flanges clear channels (C) before moving the support onto bushing (B).

NOTE:

If necessary, move tine tube (D) slightly away from the reel to allow the support flange enough room to clear the channel.

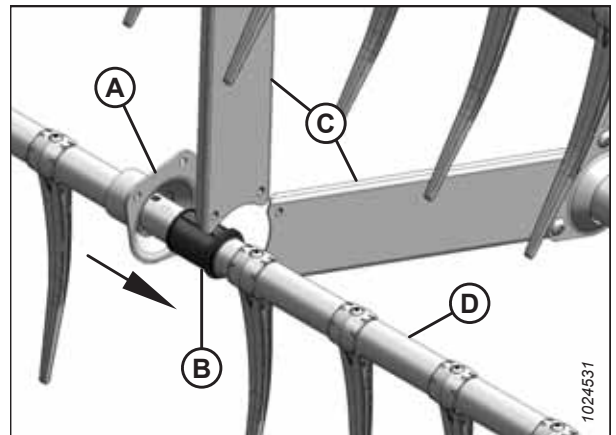


Figure 4.325: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support – Option

24. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
25. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

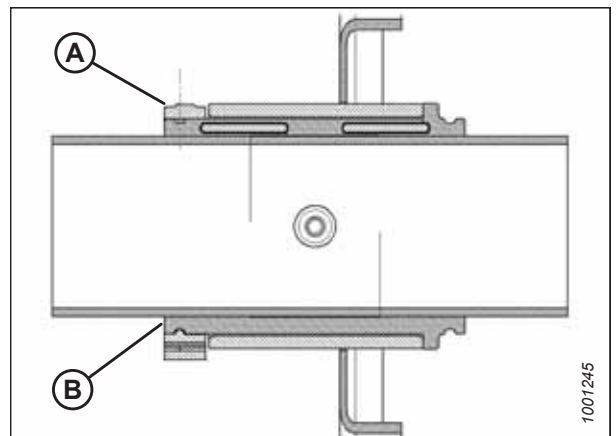


Figure 4.326: Bushing

26. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

IMPORTANT:

Overtightening the clamp may result in breakage.

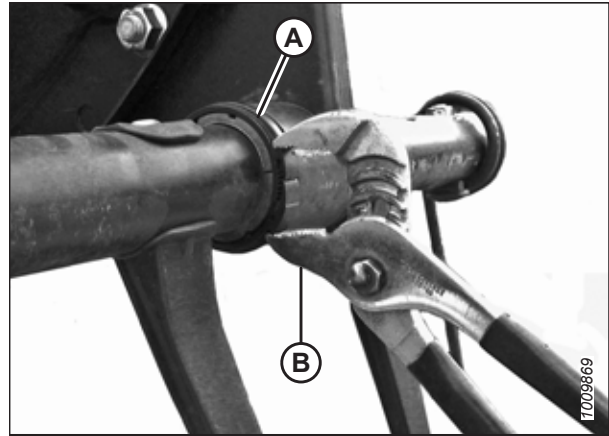


Figure 4.327: Installing Clamp

27. Reattach channels (C) to three right-facing supports (A) on each reel with screws (B) and nuts. Torque the screws to 43 Nm (32 lbf-ft).

28. Using screws (E), reinstall any fingers (D) that were previously removed. For instructions, refer to:

- [Installing Plastic Fingers, page 638](#)
- [Installing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)

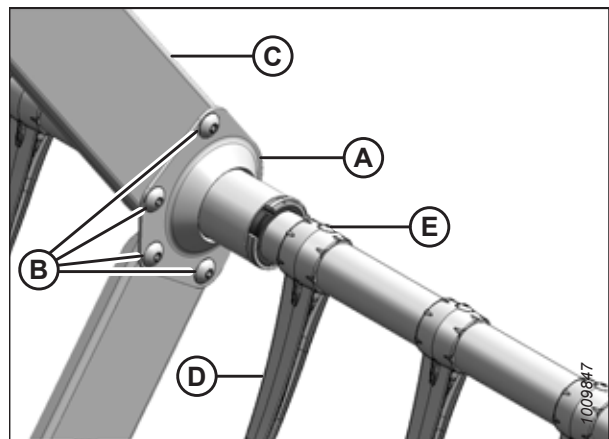


Figure 4.328: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support – Option

29. Reattach channels (C) to two left-facing supports (A) on each reel with screws (B) and nuts. Torque screws to 43 Nm (32 lbf-ft).

30. Using screws (E), reinstall any fingers (D) that were previously removed. For instructions, refer to:

- [Installing Plastic Fingers, page 638](#)
- [Installing Steel Fingers, page 636](#)

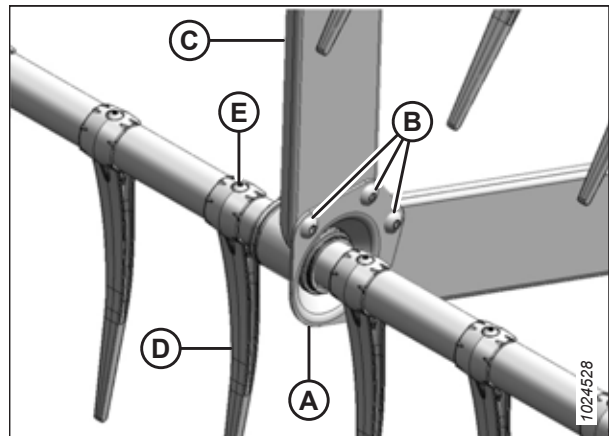


Figure 4.329: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support – Option

4.13.6 Reel Endshields

Reel endshields and supports do not require regular maintenance, but they should be checked periodically for damage and loose or missing fasteners. Slightly dented or deformed endshields and supports are repairable, but it's necessary to replace severely damaged components.

There are four kinds of endshields. Ensure you are installing the correct endshield to the proper location as shown below.

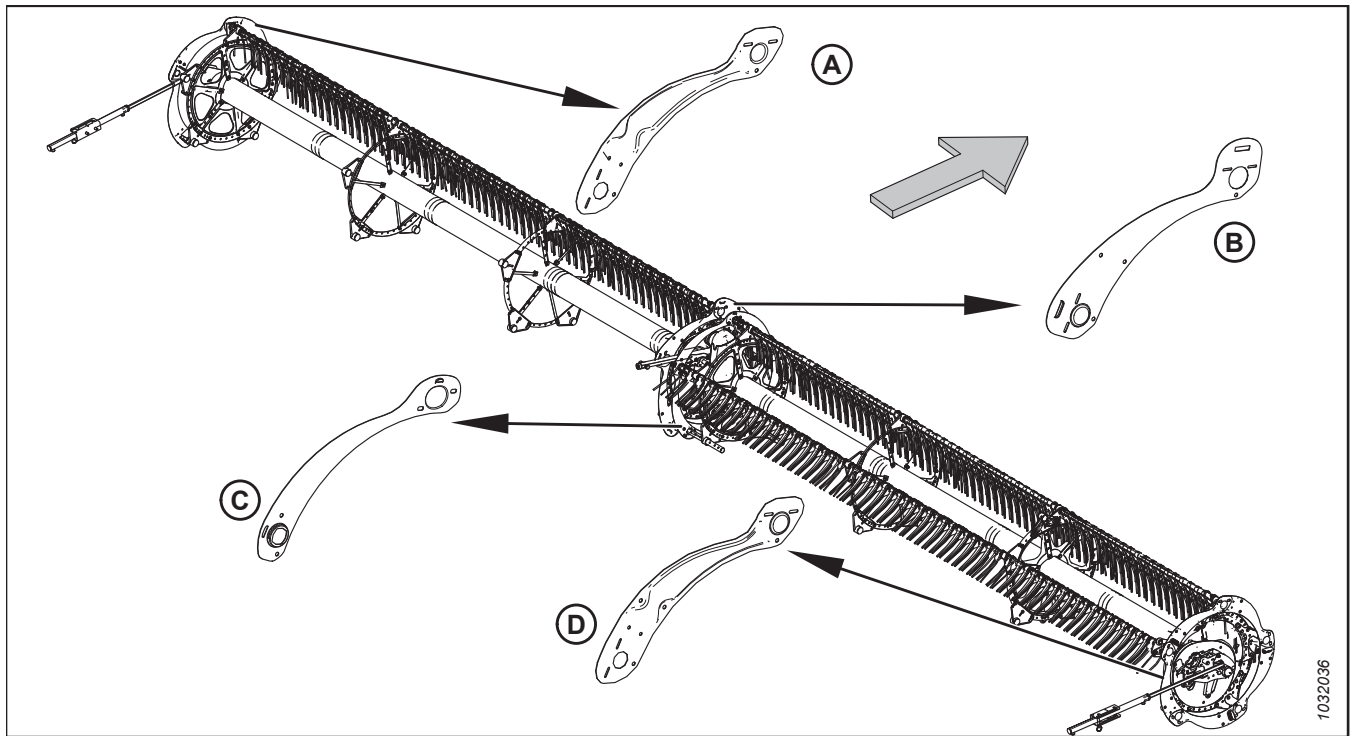


Figure 4.330: Reel Endshields

A - Tail End, Outboard (MD #311695)
C - Tail End, Inboard (MD #311795)

B - Cam End, Inboard (MD #273823)
D - Cam End, Outboard (MD #311694)

NOTE:

Arrow points to the front of machine.

Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Cam End

The procedure for replacing reel endshields is applicable to the inboard and outboard cam end. Exceptions are noted where applicable.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

Endshields are different for inboard and outboard cam end. Refer to Figure [4.330, page 651](#).

NOTE:

Arrows in the following illustrations point to the front of machine.

1. Lower the header and reel.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
4. Remove three bolts (B).

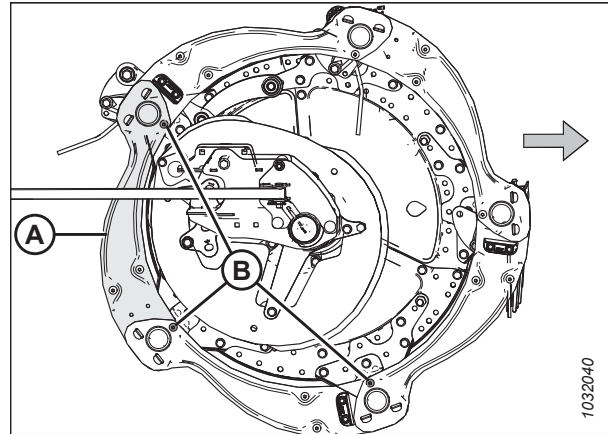


Figure 4.331: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

5. Remove two screws (A), nuts, and outboard cam deflector. Retain for reinstallation.
6. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off support (C).

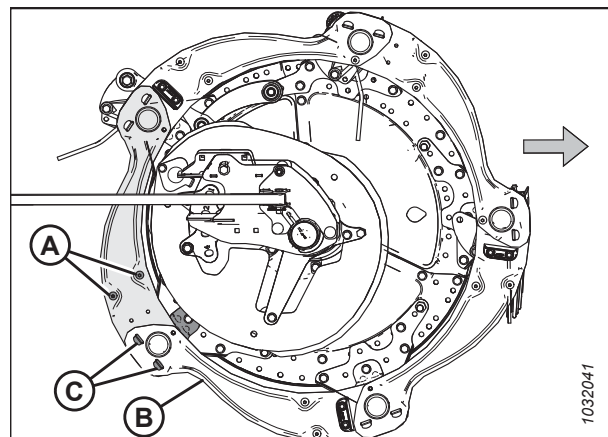


Figure 4.332: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

7. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).

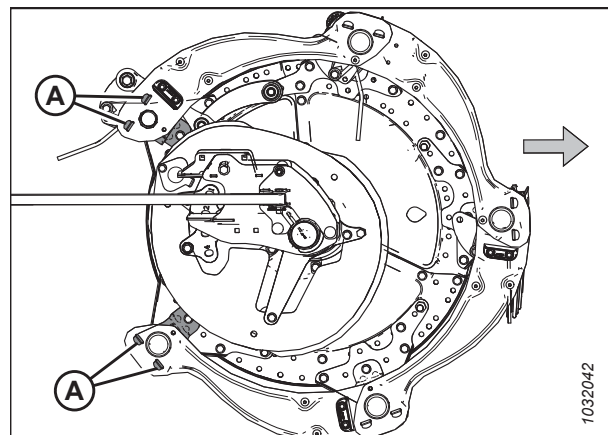


Figure 4.333: Reel Endshield Removed – Outboard Cam End

8. Slightly lift the end of existing reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
9. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
10. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (D) over existing reel endshield (E).
11. Reinstall three bolts (F).
12. Reinstall two screws (G), outboard cam deflector, and nuts (removed in Step 5, [page 652](#)) on the new reel endshield.
13. Tighten all hardware.

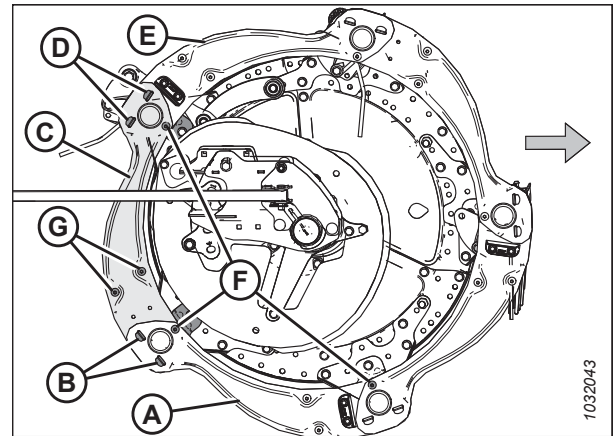


Figure 4.334: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Cam End

The procedure for replacing reel endshields is applicable to the inboard and outboard cam end.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

Endshields are different for inboard and outboard cam end. Refer to Figure [4.330, page 651](#).

NOTE:

Arrows in the following illustrations point to the front of machine.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
5. Remove three bolts (B).

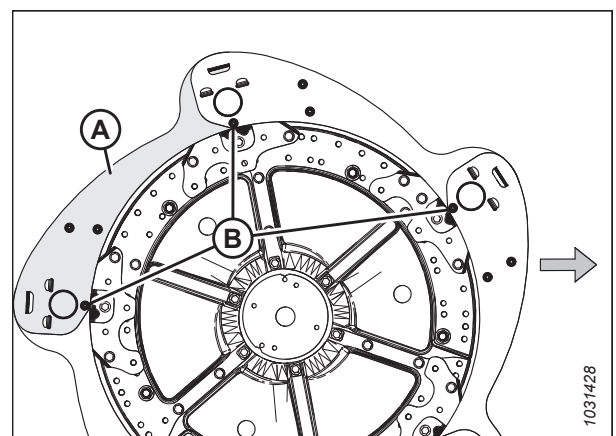


Figure 4.335: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Remove and retain two screws (A), cam deflector, and nuts from the reel endshield.
7. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off support (C).

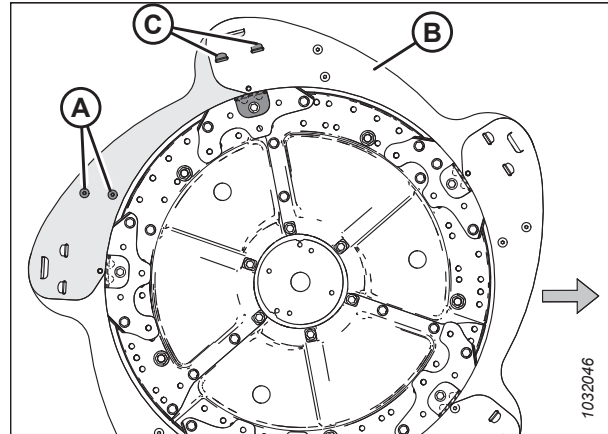


Figure 4.336: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

8. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).

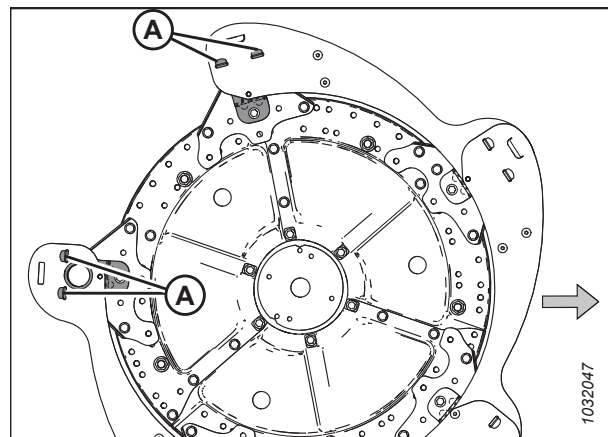


Figure 4.337: Reel Endshield Removed – Inboard Cam End

9. Slightly lift the end of existing reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
10. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
11. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (D) over existing reel endshield (E).
12. Reinstall three bolts (F).
13. Reinstall two screws (G), cam deflector, and nuts (removed in Step 6, page 654) on the new reel endshield.
14. Tighten all hardware.

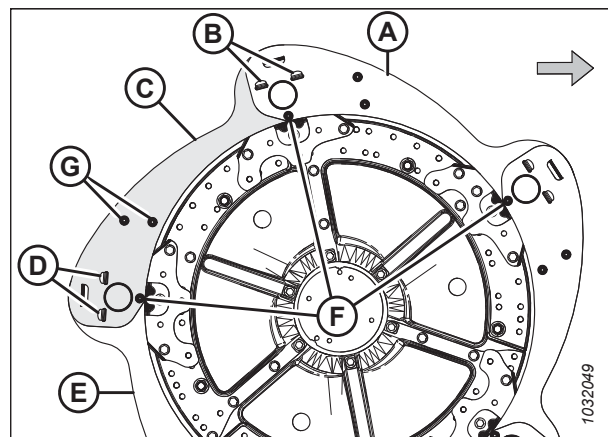


Figure 4.338: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Tail End



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield requiring replacement (A) is accessible.
5. Remove three bolts (B).

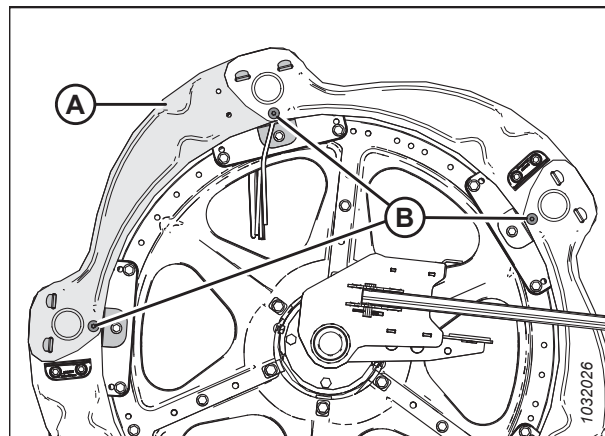


Figure 4.339: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End

6. Lift the end of reel endshield (A) off support (B).

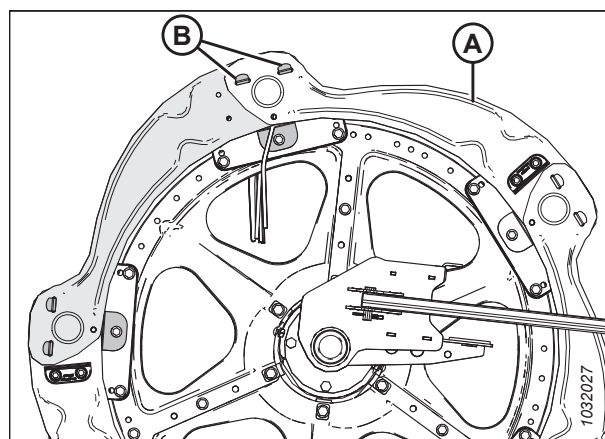


Figure 4.340: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End

7. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).
8. Remove the reel paddle, if installed on the reel endshield.

NOTE:

Reel end paddles (B) are installed alternately on the reel endshields.

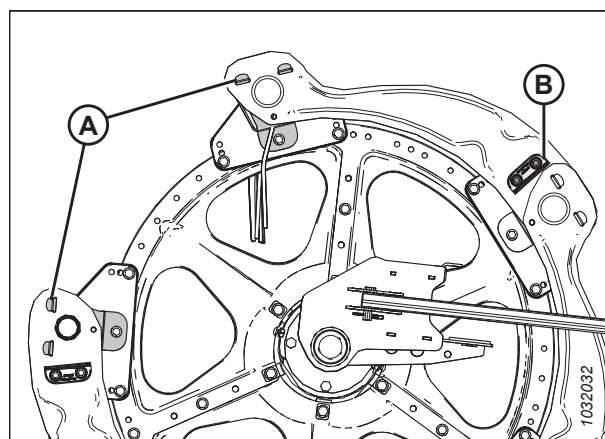


Figure 4.341: Reel Endshield Removed – Outboard Tail End

9. Slightly lift the end of reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
10. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
11. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (E) over the existing reel endshield.
12. Reinstall three bolts (D).
13. Reinstall the paddle (removed in Step 8, page 655) onto the new reel endshield if previously installed.
14. Tighten all hardware.

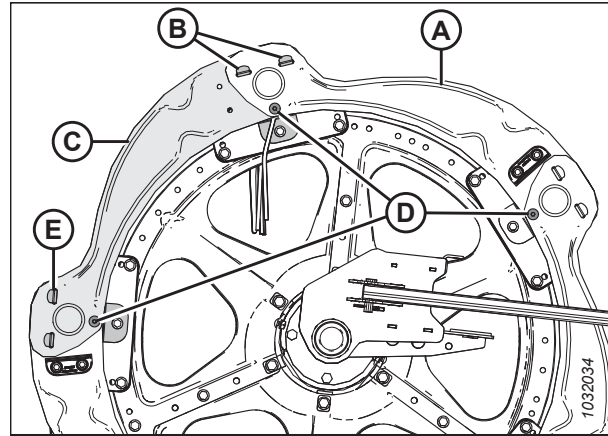


Figure 4.342: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End

Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Tail End

The reel endshields need to be replaced if they are damaged.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

IMPORTANT:

Reel endshields are different for inboard and outboard tail end of header. For illustration, refer to 4.330, page 651.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield requiring replacement (A) is accessible.
5. Remove six M10 screws (B) and nuts. Retain the hardware for reinstallation.

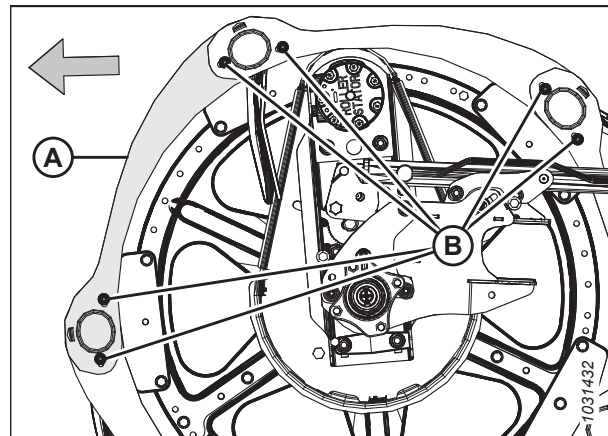


Figure 4.343: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

6. Lift other endshield (A) to disengage the tab from endshield (B).
7. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off endshield (C), and rotate endshield (B) downward.

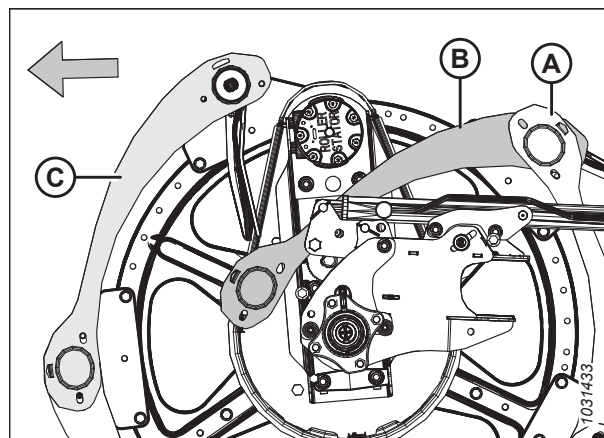


Figure 4.344: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

8. Remove M10 bolt (A), nut (B), and end finger retainer (C) from tine tube that secure the bushing and tail end finger. Retain for reassembly.
9. Slide endshield bushing (D) to remove. Retain the bushing for reassembly.
10. Remove and discard damaged reel endshield (E).

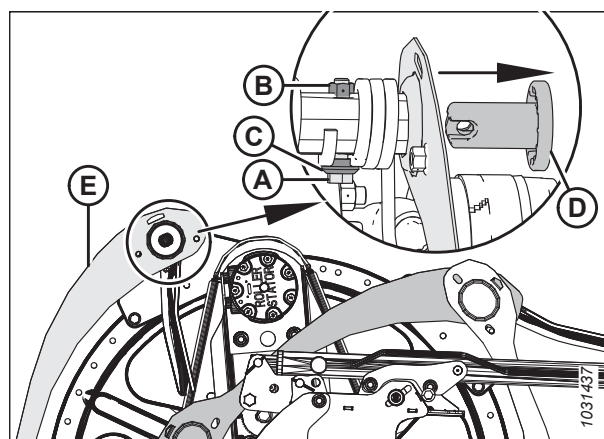


Figure 4.345: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

11. Position new reel endshield (A), and engage tab onto another endshield (B).
12. Position the other end of new endshield (A) on tine tube and secure with bushing (C).

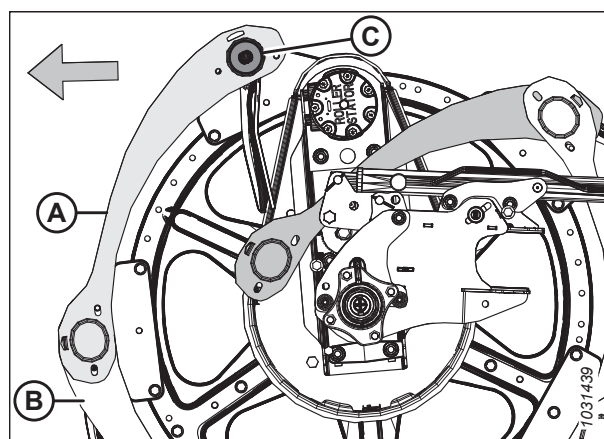


Figure 4.346: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

13. Position tail end finger (A) as shown.
14. Secure tail end finger (A) and bushing (installed in Step 12, page 657) with M10 bolt (B), end finger retainer (C), and nut (D).

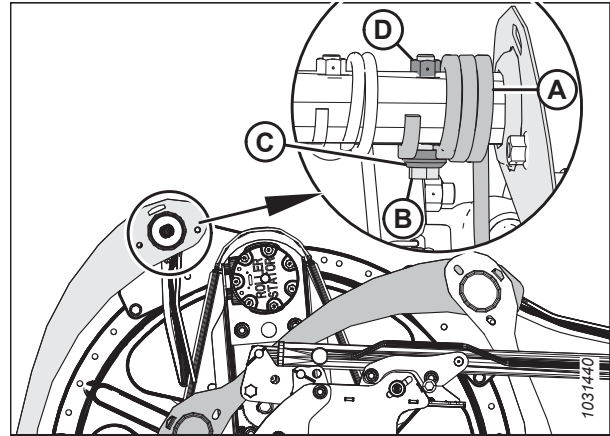


Figure 4.347: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

15. Rotate reel endshield (A) upward and engage tabs (B) on both ends.
16. Secure reel endshields using six M10 screws and nuts (C).
17. Torque nuts (C) to 35 Nm (26 lbf·ft). Do **NOT** overtighten the nuts to prevent flattening of the tube.

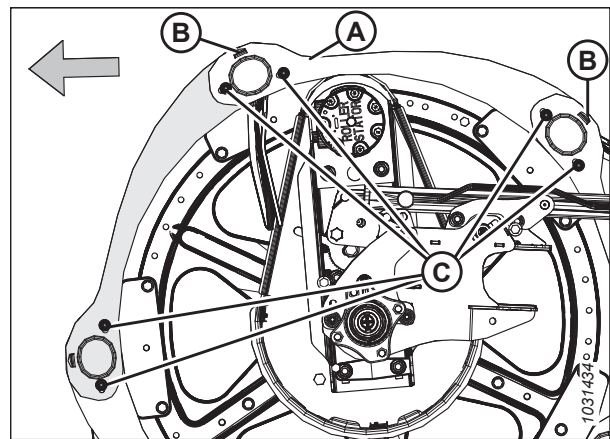


Figure 4.348: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

Replacing Reel Endshield Supports

The reel endshield supports need to be replaced if they are damaged.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

NOTE:

All illustrations shown are from the outboard cam end.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Rotate the reel manually until the reel endshield support requiring replacement is accessible.
5. Remove bolt (B) securing reel endshields to support (A).
6. Remove bolts (C) from support (A) and two adjacent supports.

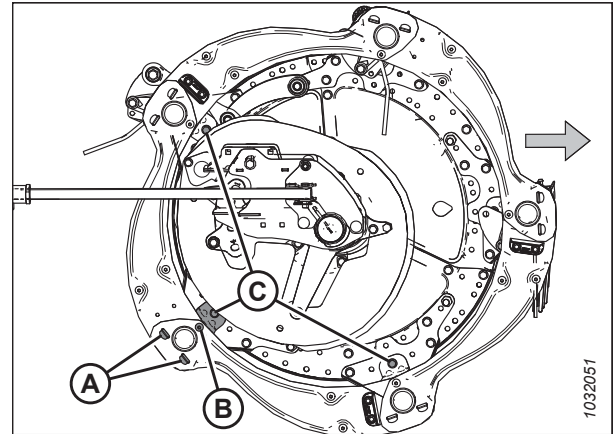


Figure 4.349: Reel Endshield Supports

7. Move reel endshields (A) and support (B) away from the tine tube, then remove the support from the endshields.
8. Insert tabs of new support (B) into the slots in reel endshields (A). Ensure the tabs engage both reel endshields.

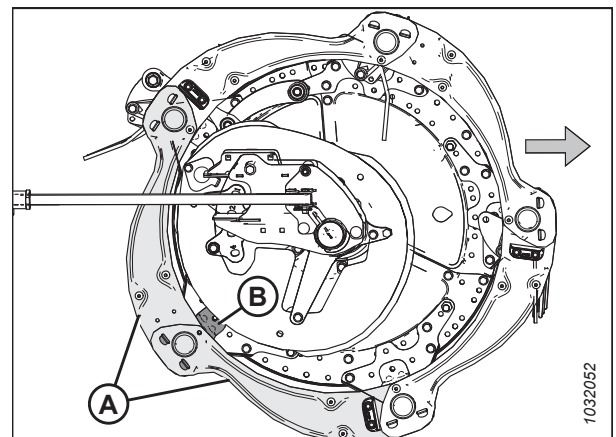


Figure 4.350: Reel Endshield Supports

9. Secure support (A) to the disc sector with bolt (B) and nut. Do **NOT** tighten.
10. Secure reel endshields (C) to support (A) with bolt (D) and nut. Do **NOT** tighten.
11. Reattach the other supports with bolts (E) and nuts.
12. Check the clearance between the tine tube and reel endshield support and adjust if necessary.
13. Torque the nuts to 27 Nm (20 lbf-ft).

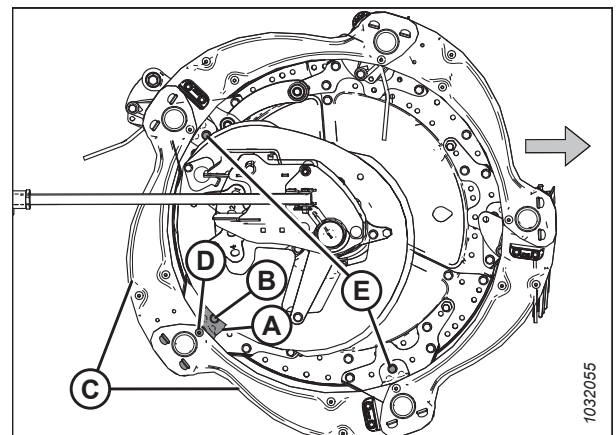


Figure 4.351: Reel Endshield Supports

4.14 Reel Drive

The hydraulically driven reel motor drives a chain that is attached to the center arm between the reels on a double-reel header, and to the left-center arm on a triple-reel header.

4.14.1 Reel Drive Chain

The reel drive chain transfers power from the hydraulically driven reel motor to the sprockets that rotate the reels.

Loosening Reel Drive Chain

The tension on the reel drive chain can be loosened to allow access to drive components.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Adjust the reel fully forward.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
6. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
7. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool (B) to the bracket on the left endsheet.
8. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin on the bracket.

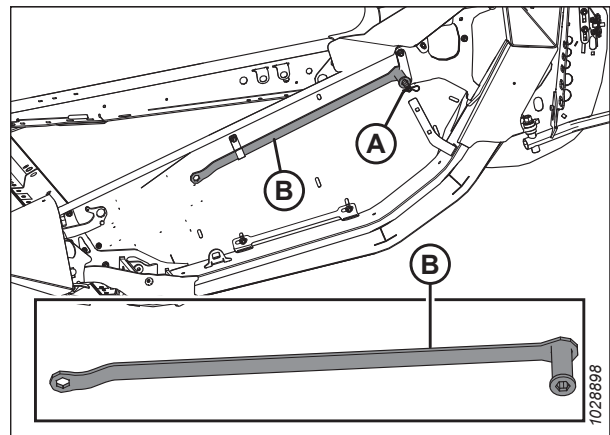


Figure 4.352: Multi-Tool Storage Location

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** loosen the motor mount, it is factory-adjusted and secured with Belleville washers. Chain tension is adjusted without loosening the drive mounting bolts.

9. Push tension retainer (A) clockwise with your thumb, and hold it in the unlocked position.
10. Place multi-tool (B) onto chain tensioner (C), and rotate the multi-tool upwards to loosen the chain tension.
11. Return the multi-tool to the storage position.

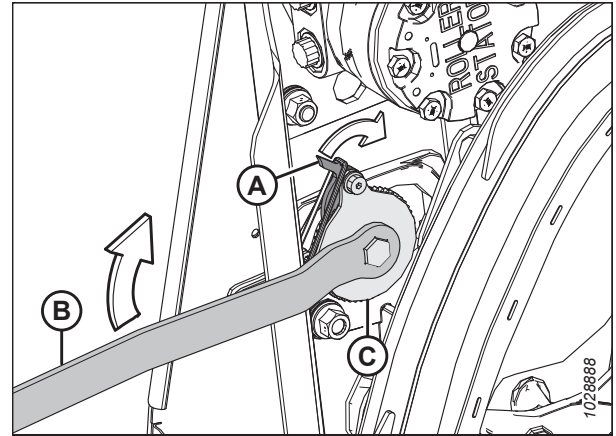


Figure 4.353: Reel Drive

Tightening Reel Drive Chain

A correctly tensioned drive chain ensures optimum power transfer while minimizing component wear.

! DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing multi-tool (B) to the bracket on the left endsheet.
4. Remove multi-tool (B), and reinstall the hairpin on the bracket.

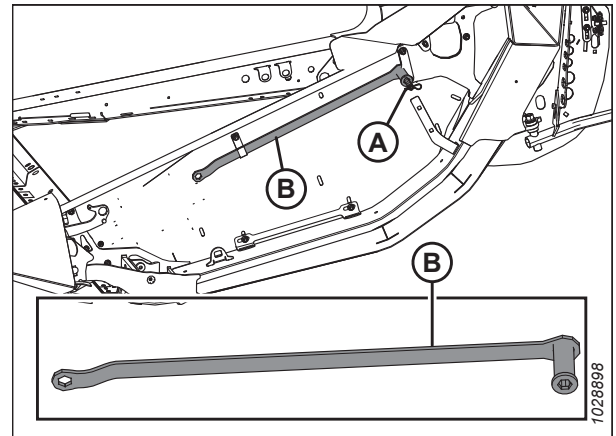


Figure 4.354: Multi-Tool Storage Location – Left Side

5. Place multi-tool (A) onto chain tensioner (B).

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** loosen the motor mount, it is factory-adjusted and secured together with Belleville washers. Chain tension is adjusted without loosening the drive mounting bolts.

6. Rotate multi-tool (A) downward until the chain is tight.

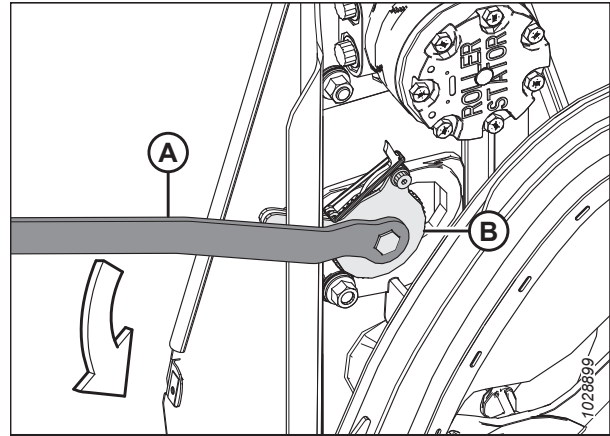


Figure 4.355: Reel Drive

7. Once the chain is tight, rotate the multi-tool upward to properly engage the teeth from the lock/latch into the tightener teeth. If the tightener will not skip a tooth before tightening, do **NOT** force the tightener to the next notch.

IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overtighten the chain. If overtightened, the chain will put excessive loads on the sprockets, causing the motor bearings and/or other components to fail prematurely.

IMPORTANT:

There should be approximately 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) of play on one side (A) of the chain, while it is tight on the other side (B). This level of tension and play in the chain is required to skip one notch on the chain tightener.

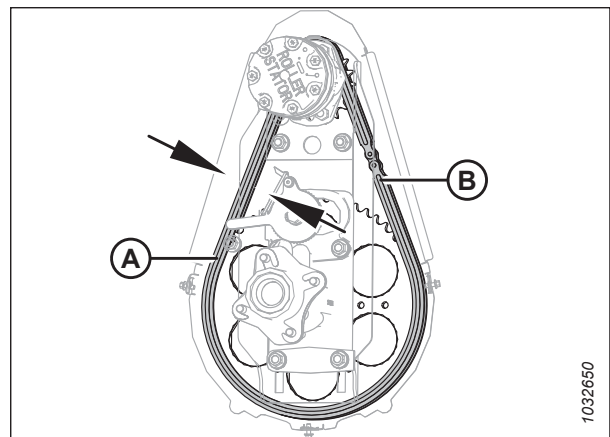


Figure 4.356: Reel Drive

8. Rotate the reel by hand to verify that the chain is still engaged properly on all teeth on lower sprocket (A). To prevent damaging components, ensure the chain does not get too tight as the reel is rotated.
9. Return the multi-tool to the storage position.
10. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 36](#).

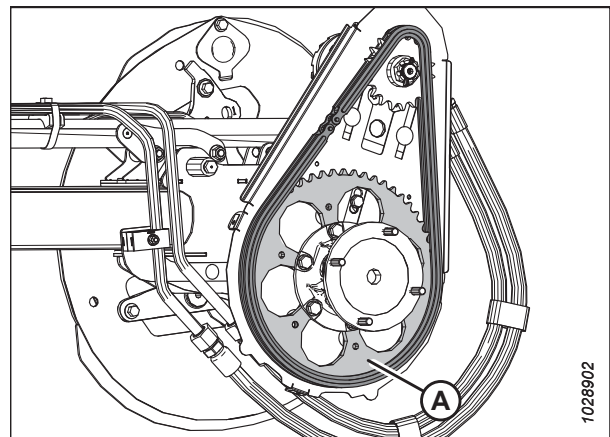


Figure 4.357: Reel Drive

4.14.2 Reel Drive Sprocket

The reel drive sprocket is attached to the reel drive motor.

For Case IH and New Holland combine models, configure the combine according to the reel sprocket size in order to optimize the auto reel to ground speed control. Refer to the combine service manual for more information.

NOTE:

A two-speed reel drive option is available. Order kit MD #311882.

Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket

The reel drive sprocket is attached to the reel drive motor. By changing the drive and driven sprockets the speed and torque of the reel can be changed.

! DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
3. Loosen reel drive chain (A). For instructions, refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 660](#).
4. Remove reel drive chain (A) from reel drive sprocket (B).

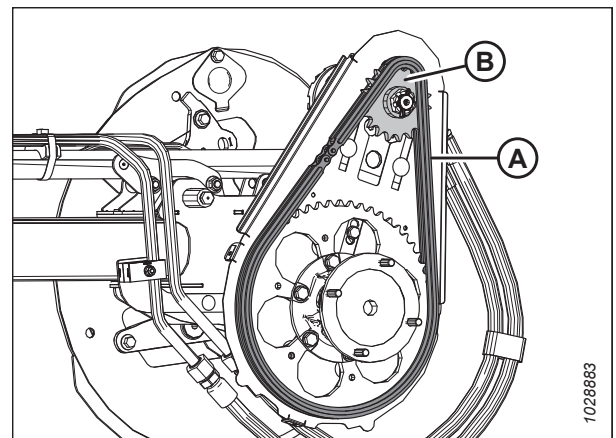


Figure 4.358: Single Sprocket

5. Remove the cotter pin and slotted nut (A) from the motor shaft.
6. Remove reel drive sprocket (B). Ensure the key remains in the shaft.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging the motor, use a puller if drive sprocket (B) does not come off by hand. Do **NOT** use a pry bar and/or hammer to remove the drive sprocket.

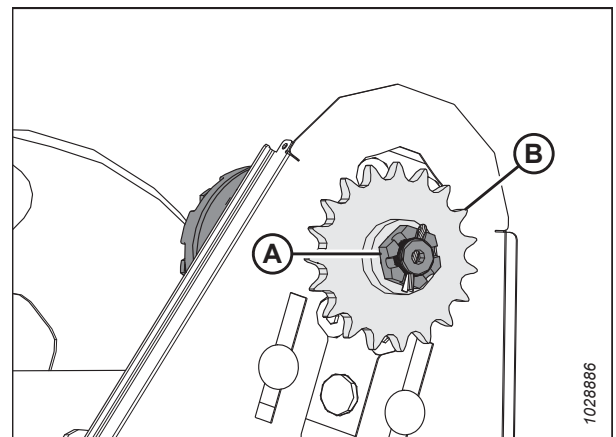


Figure 4.359: Single Sprocket

Installing Reel Drive Single Sprocket

The reel drive sprocket is attached to the reel drive motor. By changing the drive and driven sprockets the speed and torque of the reel can be changed.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Align the keyway in sprocket (B) with the key on the motor shaft, and slide the sprocket onto the shaft. Secure it with slotted nut (A).
2. Torque slotted nut (A) to 12 Nm (9 lbf·ft).
3. Install the cotter pin. If necessary, tighten slotted nut (A) to the next slot to install the cotter pin.

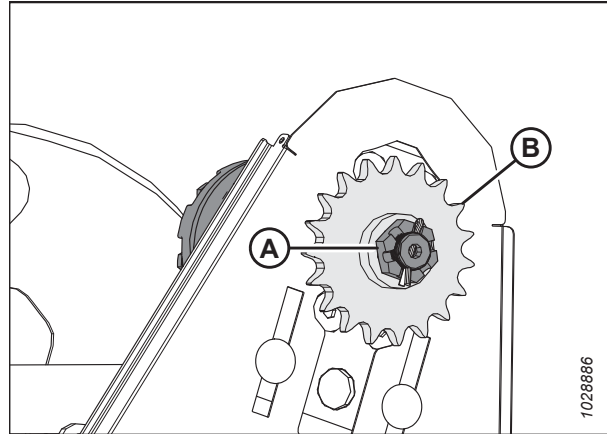


Figure 4.360: Single Sprocket

4. Install drive chain (A) onto drive sprocket (B).
5. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 661](#).
6. Reinstall the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).

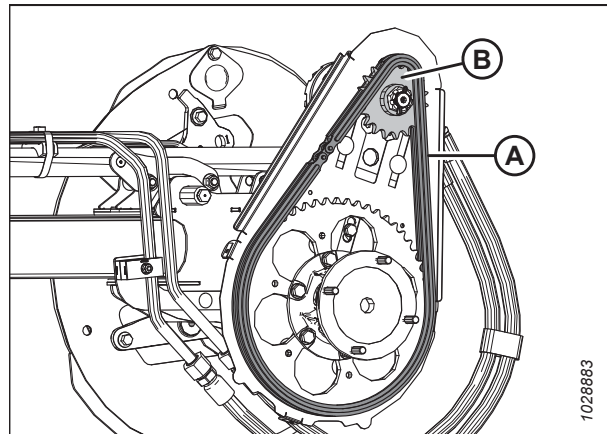


Figure 4.361: Single Sprocket

4.14.3 Changing Reel Speed Chain Position with Two Speed Kit Installed

The reel drive sprocket is attached to the reel drive motor. By changing the drive and driven sprockets the speed and torque of the reel can be changed.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 35](#).
3. Loosen the reel drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 660](#).

4. Move chain (A) from the current set of sprockets to other set (B).

NOTE:

The inner set of sprockets are for high torque applications, and the outer set of sprockets are for high speed applications.

NOTE:

- If converting from the high speed setting to the high torque setting, move the chain on the top driver sprocket first. This will allow for more chain slack to make the change on the bottom driven sprocket
- If converting from the high torque setting to the high speed setting, move the chain on the bottom driven sprocket first. This will allow for more slack to make the change on the top driver sprocket.

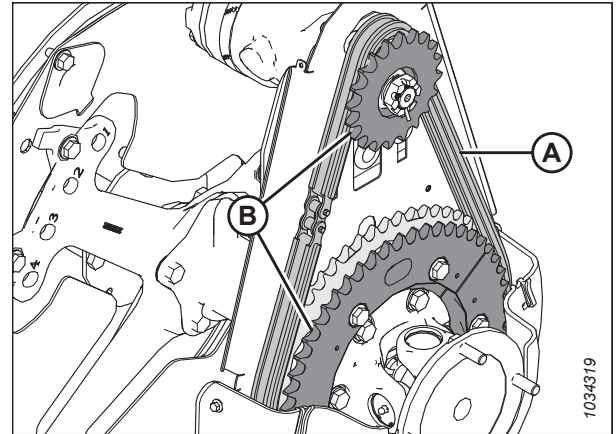


Figure 4.362: Reel Drive Sprocket

5. Tighten the reel drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 661](#).

4.14.4 Double-Reel or Triple-Reel Drive U-Joint

On headers equipped with a double-reel, the double-reel drive U-joint allows each reel to move independently.

Lubricate the U-joint according to the specifications. For instructions, refer to [4.3 Lubrication, page 482](#).

Replace the U-joint if severely worn or damaged. For instructions, refer to [Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint, page 665](#).

Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint

If the double-reel U-joint is worn or damaged, it will need to be replaced.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
3. Support the inboard end of the right reel with a front end loader and nylon slings (A) or equivalent lifting devices.

IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging or denting the center tube, support the reel as close to the end disc as possible.

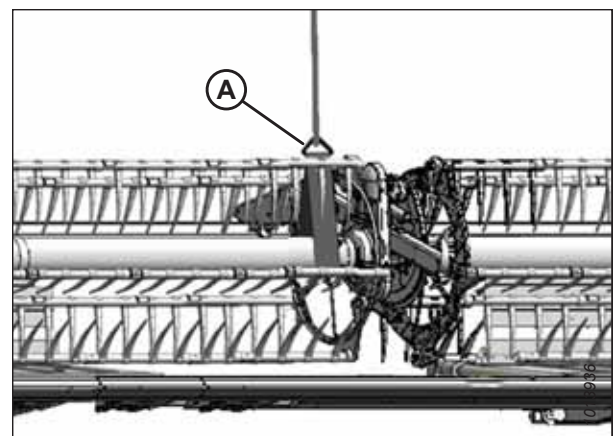


Figure 4.363: Supporting Reel

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Remove four bolts (A) securing the reel tube to U-joint flange (B), and move the reel sideways.

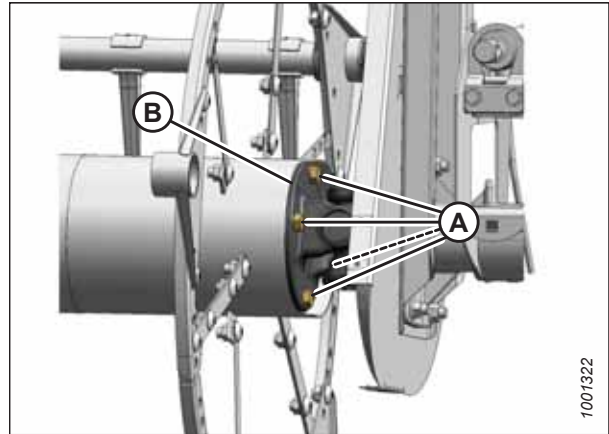


Figure 4.364: U-Joint

5. Remove six bolts (A) attaching U-joint flange (B) to driven sprocket (C).
6. Remove the U-joint.

NOTE:

It may be necessary to move the right reel sideways so that the U-joint can clear the tube.

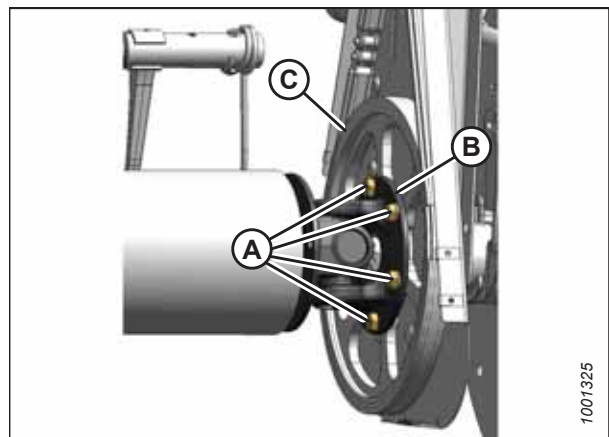


Figure 4.365: U-Joint

7. **Triple reel only:** There is a shim (A) between the reel tube and the U-joint. Make sure to retain this shim for reinstallation.

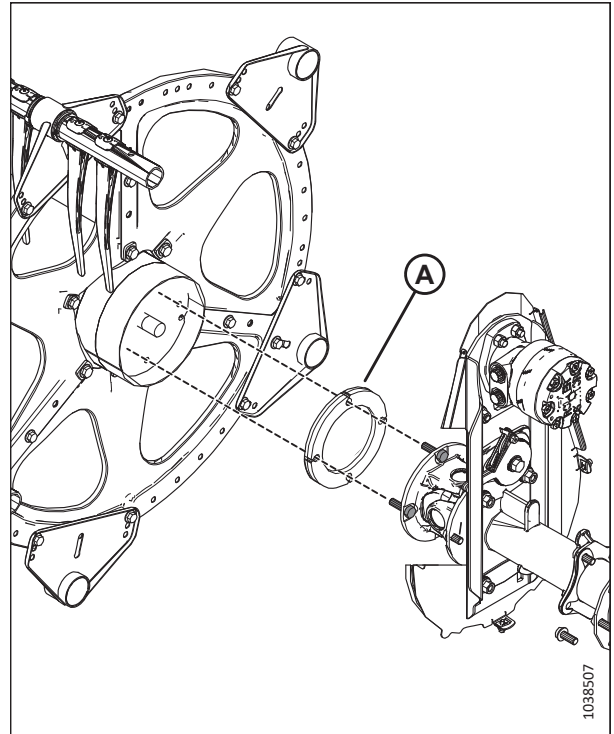


Figure 4.366: Shim – Triple Reel Only

Installing Double-Reel or Triple Reel U-Joint

Once the old U-joint has been removed, the new one can be installed.

1. Position U-joint flange (B) onto driven sprocket (C) as shown.
2. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent), and install six bolts (A). Hand-tighten the bolts; do **NOT** torque the bolts.

NOTE:

Only four bolts (A) are shown in the illustration at right.

NOTE:

It may be necessary to move the right reel sideways so that the U-joint can clear the reel tube.

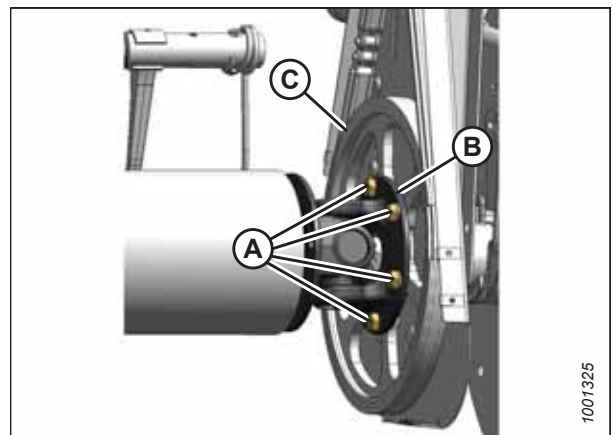


Figure 4.367: U-Joint

3. **Triple reel only:** Make sure shim (A) is placed between the reel tube and the U-joint. Align the holes in the shim with the holes in the reel tube.

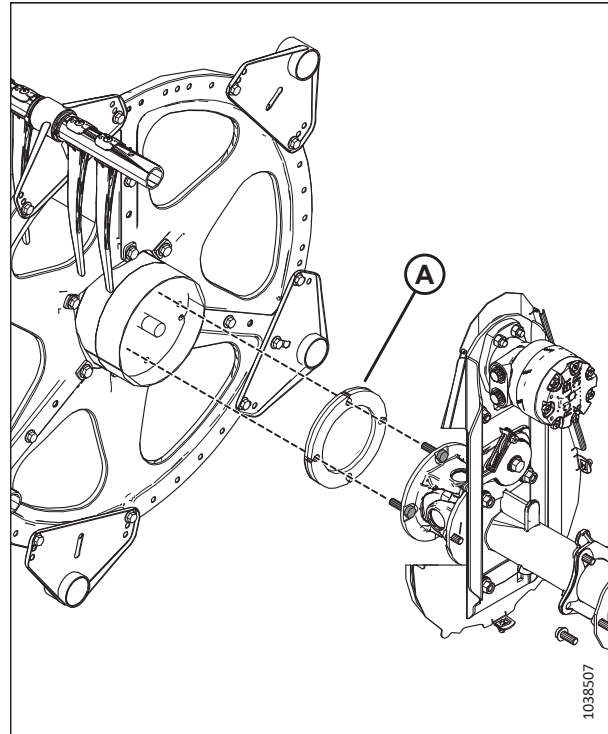


Figure 4.368: Shim – Triple Reel Only

4. Position the reel tube against the reel drive and engage the stub shaft into the U-joint pilot hole.
5. Rotate the reel until the holes in the end of the reel tube and U-joint flange (B) line up.
6. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to four 1/2 in. bolts (A) and secure in the flange.
7. Torque the ten bolts to 110 Nm (81 lbf·ft).

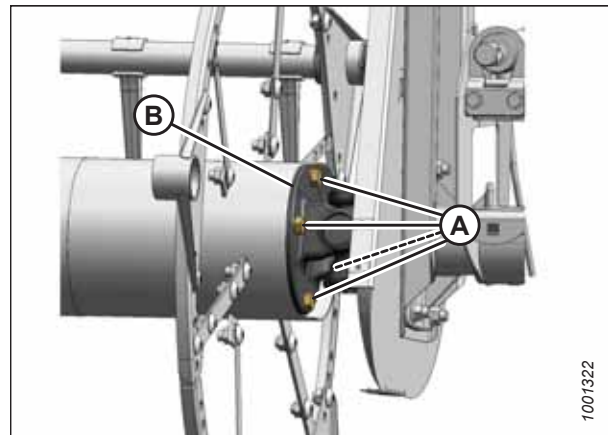


Figure 4.369: U-Joint

8. Remove sling (A) from the reel.
9. Install the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).

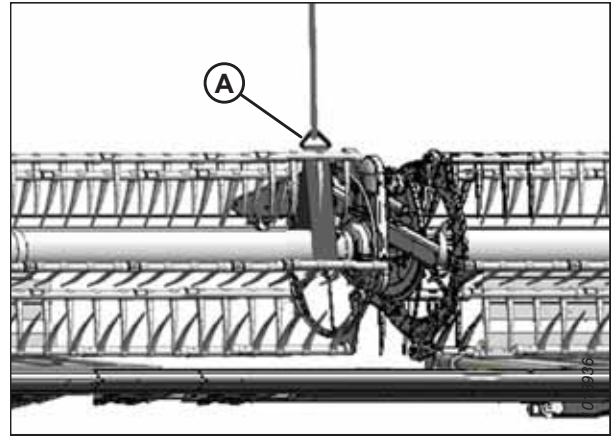


Figure 4.370: Supporting Reel

4.14.5 Reel Drive Motor

The reel drive motor is used on the reel drive system on double-reel, and triple reel draper headers. This motor does not require regular maintenance or servicing. If problems occur with the motor, remove it and have it serviced by your MacDon Dealer.

Removing Reel Drive Motor

Follow this procedure to remove the reel drive motor if it has an issue. If problems occur with the motor, remove it and have it serviced by your MacDon Dealer.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Loosen the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 660](#).
3. Remove the drive sprocket. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket, page 663](#).
4. Mark hydraulic lines (A) and their locations in motor (B) to ensure correct reinstallation.

NOTE:

Before disconnecting the hydraulic lines, clean the motor's ports and exterior surfaces.

5. Disconnect hydraulic lines (A) at motor (B). Cap or plug open ports and lines.

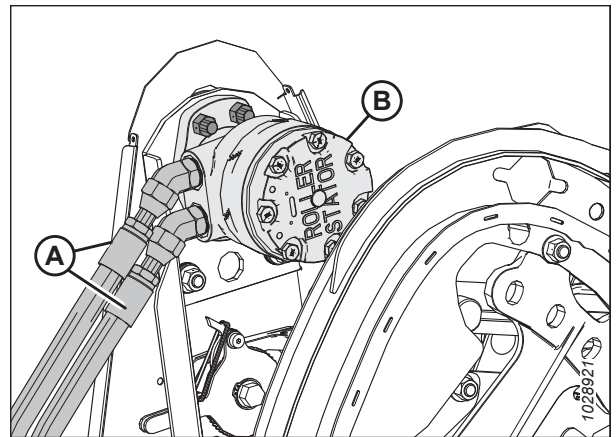


Figure 4.371: Reel Motor and Hoses

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. If countersunk screws (B) are not accessible through the openings in the chain case, loosen the mounting hardware on motor mount (A), and slide the motor mount up or down until the screws are accessible.
7. Remove four countersunk screws (B), and remove motor (C).
8. If the motor is being replaced, remove the hydraulic fittings from the old motor and install them in the new motor using the same orientations.

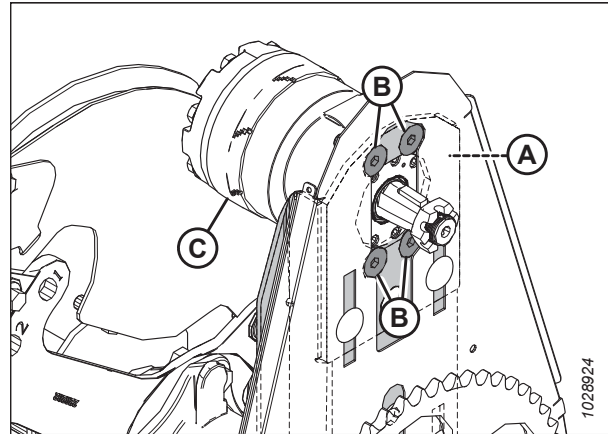


Figure 4.372: Reel Drive Motor Mounting Screws

Installing Reel Drive Motor

Follow this procedure to install the reel drive motor. If problems occur with the motor, remove it and have it serviced by your MacDon Dealer.

1. If mounting holes (B) are not accessible through the openings in the chain case, loosen the mounting hardware on motor mount (A), and slide the motor mount up or down as required.

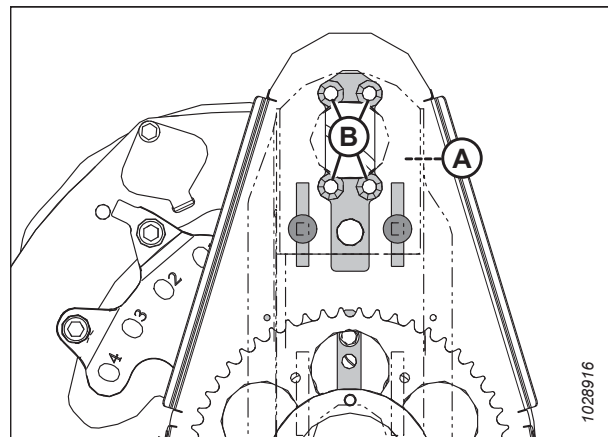


Figure 4.373: Reel Drive Motor Mounting Holes

2. Attach motor (A) to motor mount (B) with four M12 x 40 mm countersunk screws and nuts (C).
3. Torque the hardware to 95 Nm (70 lbf·ft).
4. If installing a new motor, install the hydraulic fittings (not shown) from the original motor.

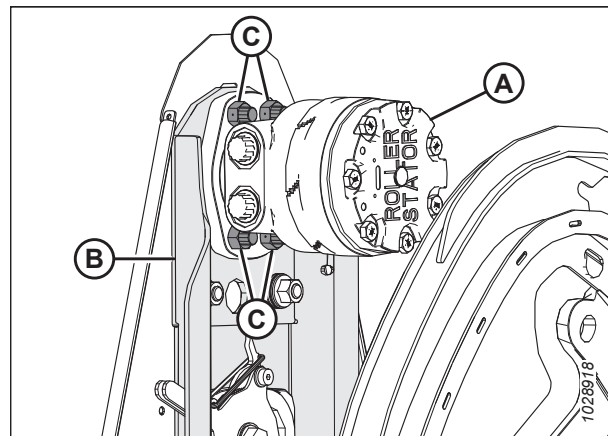


Figure 4.374: Reel Drive Motor

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Align the keyway in sprocket (B) with the key on the motor shaft, and slide the sprocket onto the shaft. Secure it with slotted nut (A).
6. Torque slotted nut (A) to 12 Nm (9 lbf-ft).
7. Install the cotter pin. If necessary, tighten slotted nut (A) to the next slot to install the cotter pin.

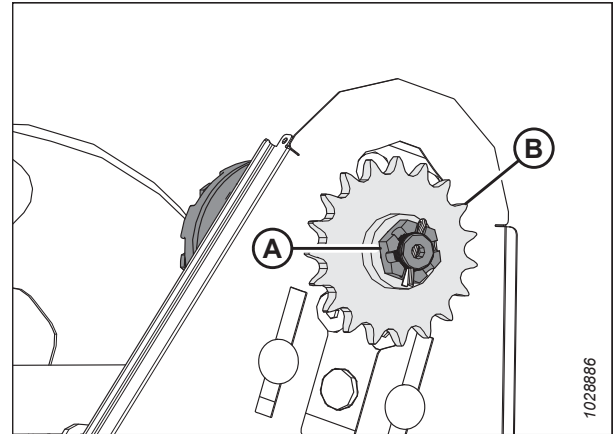


Figure 4.375: Reel Drive

8. Install drive chain (A) onto drive sprocket (B).

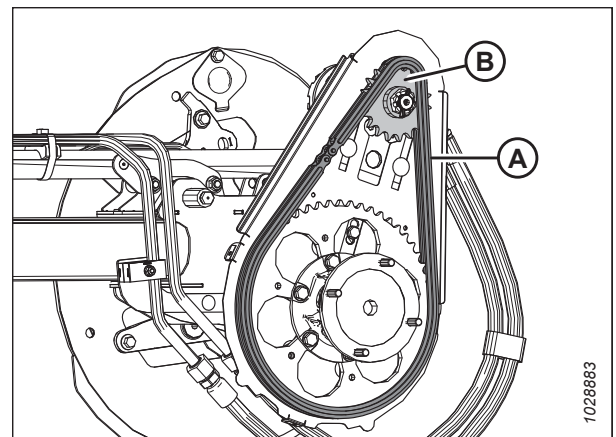


Figure 4.376: Reel Drive

9. If mounting hardware (A) was loosened for this procedure, ensure there are three stacked Belleville washers per bolt (B) before retightening.
10. Orient the Belleville washers so that the outer edge of first washer (C) is against the casting, and the outer edges of the next two washers (D) are facing each other.
11. Tighten nuts (A) until they bottom out (47–54 Nm [35–40 lbf-ft]), then back off a 3/4 turn.
12. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 661](#).

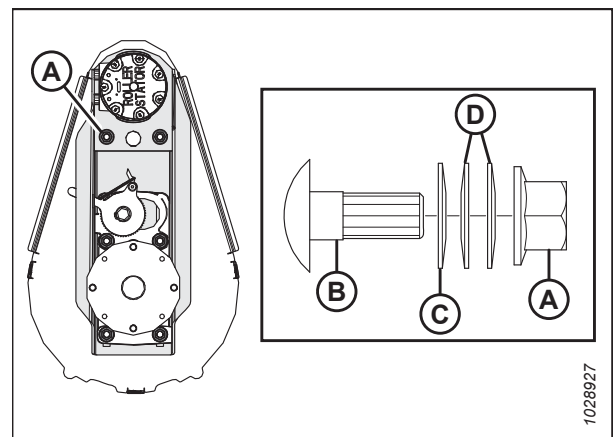


Figure 4.377: Reel Drive Motor Mount

13. Remove the caps or plugs from the ports and lines and connect hydraulic lines (A) to hydraulic fittings (B) on motor (C).

NOTE:

Ensure hydraulic lines (A) are installed in their original locations.

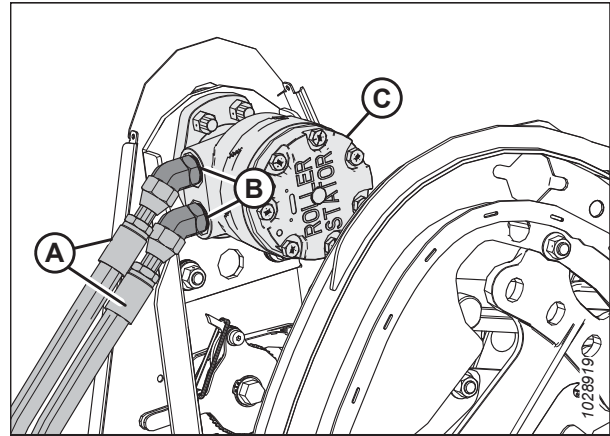


Figure 4.378: Reel Motor and Hoses

4.14.6 Replacing Drive Chain

The drive chain allows the hydraulic reel drive motor to turn the reel. It can be replaced if damaged or worn.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
3. Loosen the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 660](#).
4. Support the inboard end of the right reel with a front-end loader and nylon slings (A) or equivalent lifting devices.

IMPORTANT:

Avoid damaging or denting the center tube by supporting the reel as close to the end of the reel as possible.

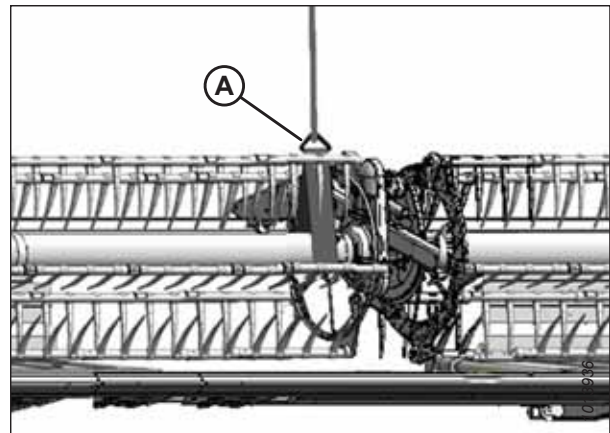


Figure 4.379: Supporting Reel

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Remove four bolts (A) securing the reel tube to U-joint flange (B).

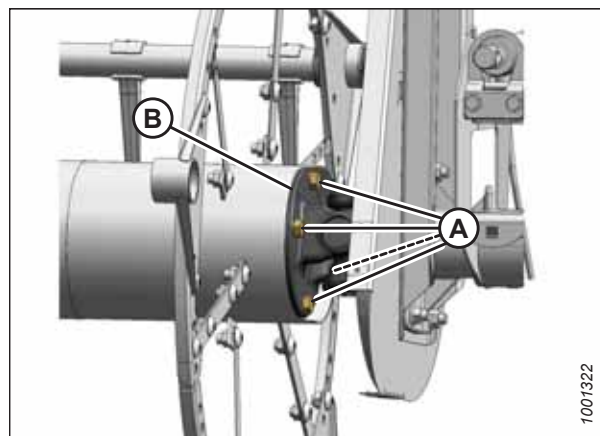


Figure 4.380: U-Joint

6. Move the right reel sideways to separate reel tube (A) from U-joint (B).
7. Remove drive chain (C).
8. Route chain (C) over U-joint (B) and position onto the sprockets.

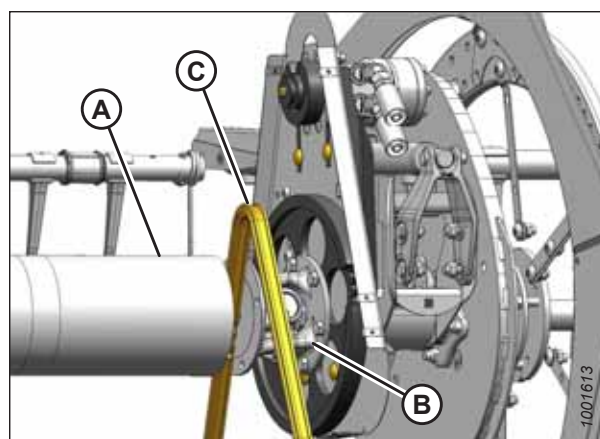


Figure 4.381: Replacing Chain

9. Position the right reel tube against the reel drive and engage the stub shaft into the U-joint pilot hole.
10. Rotate the reel until the holes in end of the reel tube and U-joint flange line up.
11. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to four 1/2 in. bolts (A) and secure them to the flange with lock washers.
12. Torque bolts (A) to 109 Nm (80 lbf·ft).

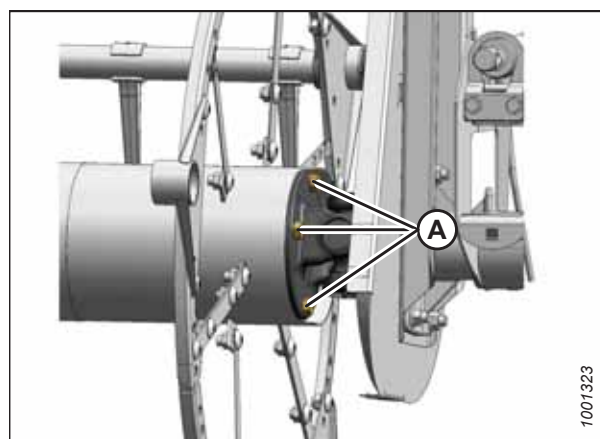


Figure 4.382: U-Joint

13. Remove temporary reel sling (A).
14. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 661](#).
15. Reinstall the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).

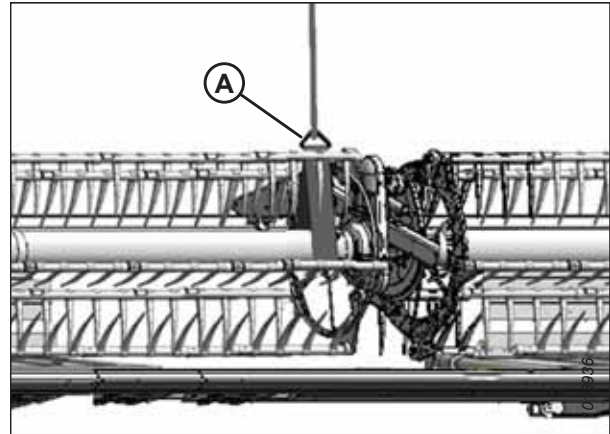


Figure 4.383: Supporting Reel

4.14.7 Reel Speed Sensor

The reel speed sensors (and the procedures for replacing them) vary with the combine model.

Refer to the following topics depending on your combine model:

- [Replacing Challenger®, Gleaner, IDEAL™, or Massey Ferguson™ Reel Speed Sensor, page 674](#)
- [Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor, page 675](#)
- [Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor, page 676](#)

Replacing Challenger®, Gleaner, IDEAL™, or Massey Ferguson™ Reel Speed Sensor

The reel speed sensor is located on the reel drive and senses how fast the reel drive sprocket is turning. If malfunctioning, it may need adjustment or replacement.



DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
3. Disconnect electrical connector (A) from the header harness.

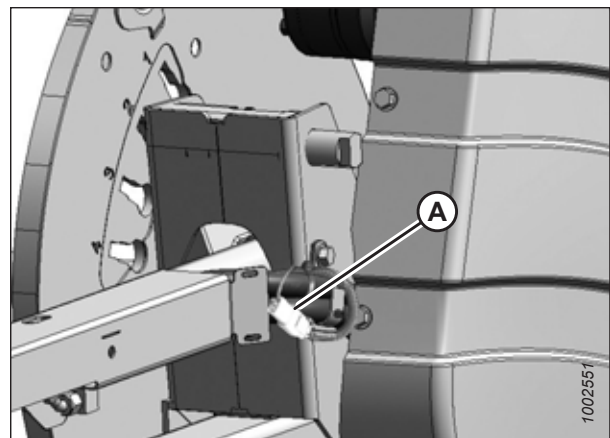


Figure 4.384: Reel Drive Assembly – Electrical Harness

4. Cut cable tie (A) securing the harness to the cover.
5. Remove two screws (B), sensor (C), and the harness. If necessary, bend cover (D) to remove the harness.
6. Feed the wire of the new sensor behind cover (D) and through the chain case.
7. Install the new sensor onto support (E) and attach it with two screws (B).
8. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (F) and sensor (C) to 3.5 mm (0.14 in.).

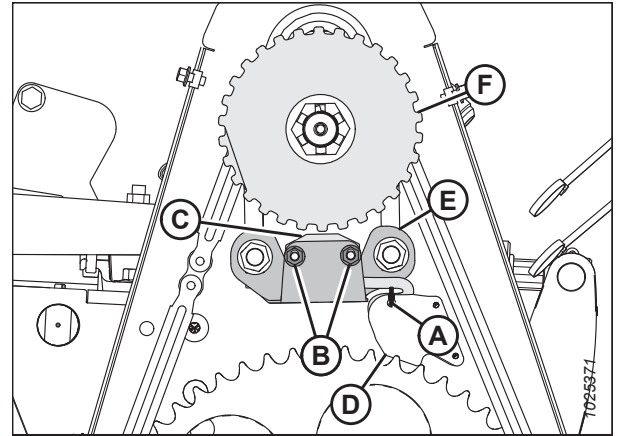


Figure 4.385: Reel Drive Assembly – Speed Sensor

9. Connect the sensor harness to header harness (A).
- IMPORTANT:**
Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.
10. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).
 11. Verify proper operation of the sensor.

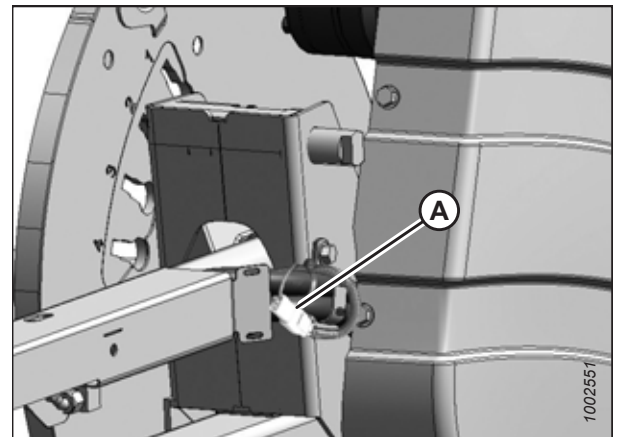


Figure 4.386: Reel Drive Assembly – Electrical Harness

Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor

The reel speed sensor is located on the reel drive and senses how fast the reel drive sprocket is turning. If the sensor is malfunctioning, it may need adjustment or replacement.

DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).

3. Disconnect electrical connector (D) from the header harness (E).
4. Remove top nut (C) and remove sensor (B).
5. Remove the top nut from the new sensor and position the sensor onto the support. Secure it with top nut (C).
6. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (A) and sensor (B) to 1 mm (0.04 in.) using nut (C).
7. Connect electrical connector (D) to header harness (E).

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

8. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).

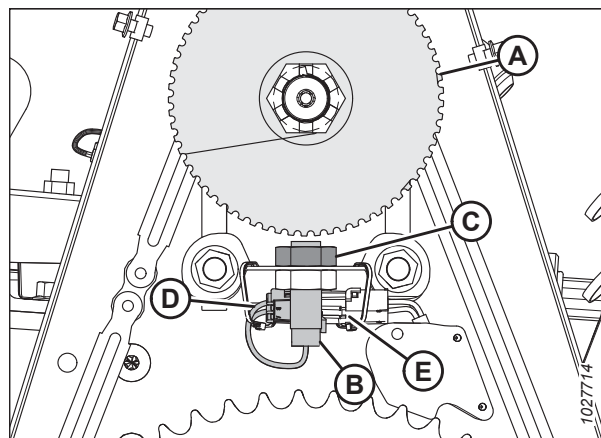


Figure 4.387: Speed Sensor

Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor

The reel speed sensor is located on the reel drive and senses how fast the reel drive sprocket is turning. If malfunctioning, it may need adjustment or replacement.

⚠ DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 41](#).
3. Disconnect the header harness connector located behind the chain case from sensor (A).
4. Remove cable ties (B).
5. Remove shield (C) and rivets (D).
6. Remove nut (E) and remove sensor (A).
7. Position new sensor (A) into support (F). Secure with nut (E).
8. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (C) and sensor (B) to 3.5 mm (0.14 in.) using nuts (A) and (D).
9. Route the harness through the knockout hole in the panel and connect it to sensor (A). Secure the harness in place with shield (C) and rivets (D).
10. Secure the harness to the sensor support with cable ties (B) as shown.

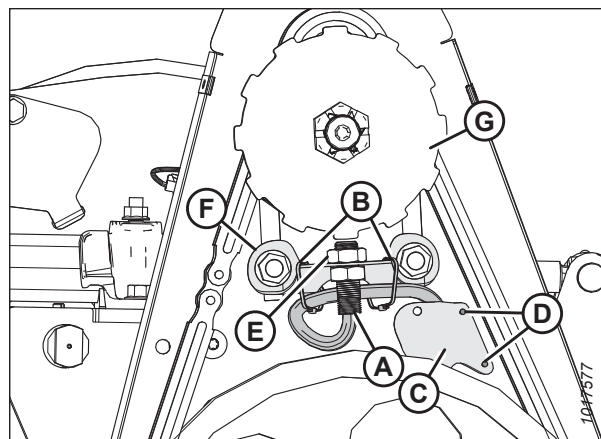


Figure 4.388: Speed Sensor

IMPORTANT:

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

11. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 43](#).

4.15 Contour Wheels – Option

The ContourMax™ Contour Wheels option allows the header to flex with the contours of the field leaving a consistent stubble height while cutting up to 46 cm (18 in.) above the ground.

4.15.1 Leveling ContourMax™ Wheel Height

The ContourMax™ wheels allow the header to mirror the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 0 mm (0 in.) and 457 mm (18 in.) from the ground surface.

DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of a raised machine, stop engine, remove key, and engage lift cylinder lock-out valves before going under machine for any reason.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

NOTE:

The header float must be set before leveling the ContourMax™. For instructions refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175](#).

NOTE:

The wing balance must be set before leveling the ContourMax™. For instructions refer to [3.9.4 Checking and Adjusting Wing Balance, page 194](#).

1. Unlock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 186](#).
2. Unlock the header float. For instructions refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Float, page 186](#).
3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Park the combine on a level surface.
5. Lower the reel fully.
6. Set ContourMax™ wheel height indicator (A) to number 2 (B).

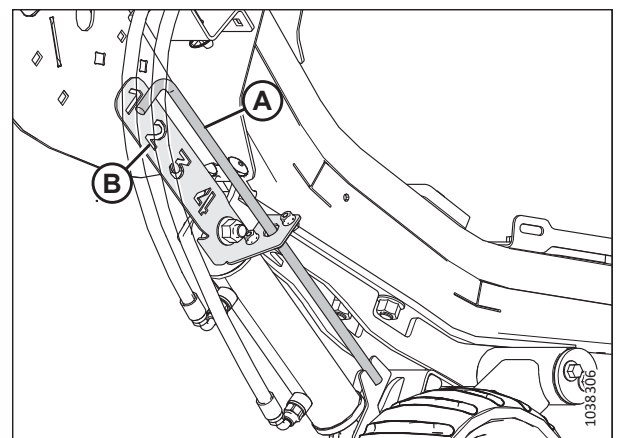


Figure 4.389: Height Indicator – Rear Left End

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Lower the header until the auto header height indicator (A) is at number 2 (B).
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

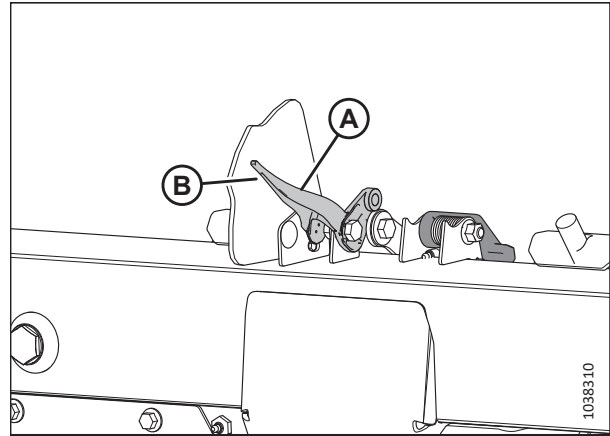


Figure 4.390: Float Setting Indicator

9. At the center of the header, measure distance (A) from the ground to the tip of the center guard and record the measurement.
10. At each end of the header, measure the distance (A) from the ground to the tip of the end guard and record both of the measurements.
 - If the difference between the end measurements and the center measurement is less than 25 mm (1 in.), no adjustment is required.
 - If the difference between the end measurements and the center measurement is greater than 25 mm (1 in.), adjustment is required. Continue to the next step.

WARNING

Ensure that all bystanders have cleared the area.

11. Start the engine.
12. Raise the header fully.
13. Engage the header's safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

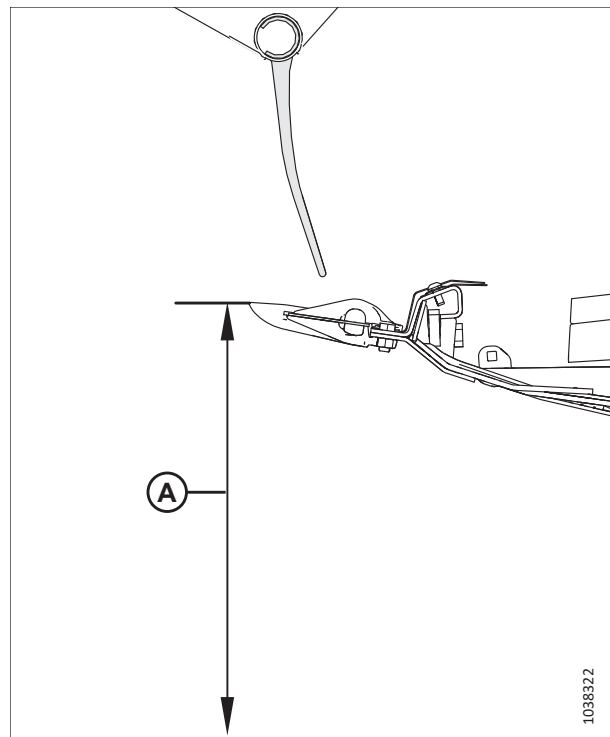


Figure 4.391: Float Setting Indicator

14. Remove pin (A).
15. Reposition adjuster plate (B) in the slot to align with a different hole. There is approximately 24 mm (1/2 in.) difference between each of the holes.
 - If the measurement is less than the measurement at the center of the header, move the adjuster plate **TOWARD** the cutterbar.
 - If the measurement is more than the measurement at the center of the header, move the adjuster plate **AWAY** from the cutterbar.
16. On the opposite end on the header, repeat Step 14, page 679 and Step 15, page 679.

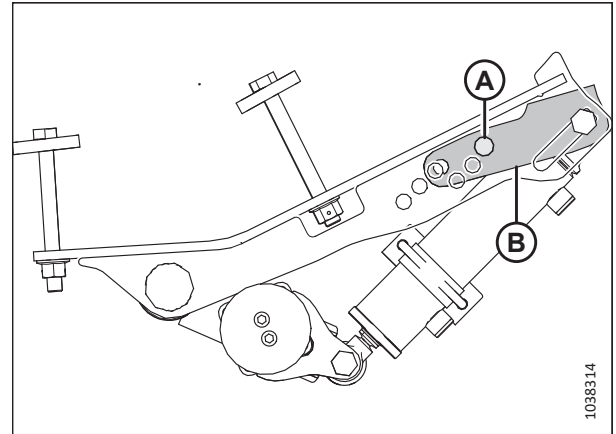


Figure 4.392: Pin Location – Left Outer Wheel

17. Disengage the header safety props. Refer to the combine operator's manual for instructions.
18. Lower the header until the auto header height indicator is at number 2.
19. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
20. Measure the guard to ground distance again. Verify that the three measurements are the same. If more adjustment is required, repeat Step 14, page 679.

4.15.2 Lubricating Contour Wheel System

Lubricating the contour wheel system will help ensure reliable operation and maximize the service life of the components.

The components of the contour wheel system require lubrication at different intervals:

- Lubricate the inner wheel assemblies every 250 hours
- Lubricate the wheel axles annually

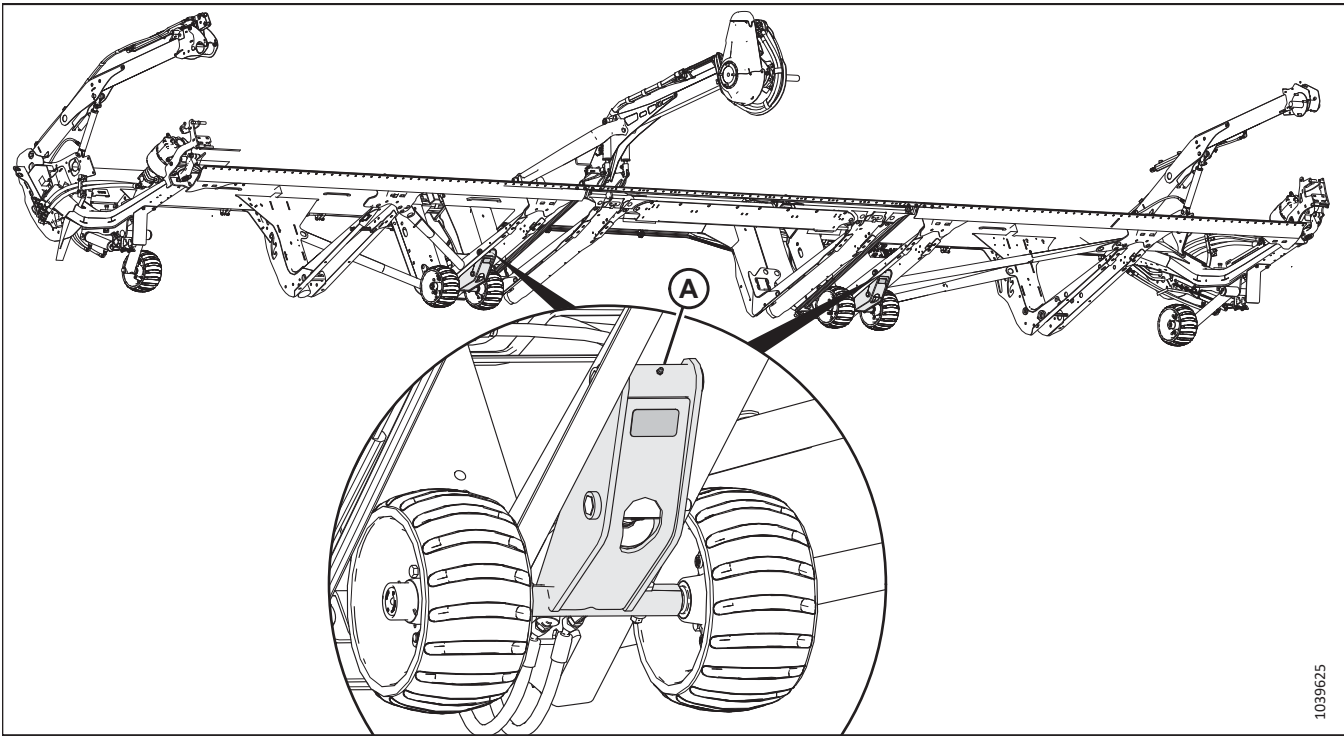


DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of raised header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under the header. If you are using a lifting device to support the header, be sure that the header is secure before proceeding.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.

Figure 4.393: Inner Contour Wheel Assemblies



A - Inner Wheel Assemblies (Two Places)

5. Apply grease to lubrication points (A) at the two inner wheel assemblies.
6. Remove rubber plug (A) from contour wheel hub. Retain the plug for reinstallation.

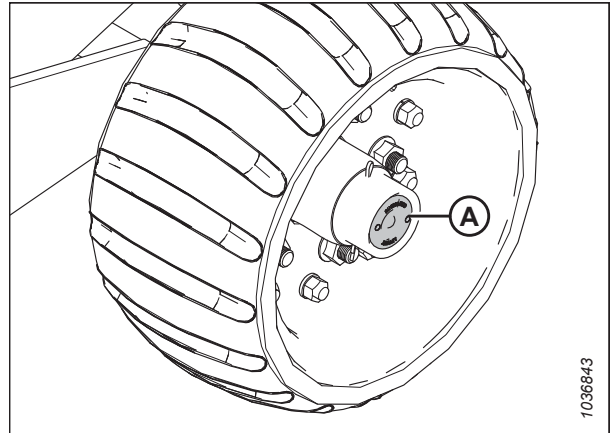


Figure 4.394: Rubber Plug on Contour Wheel Axle

7. Apply grease at lubrication point (A), and allow the excess grease to flow out the front of the axle hub.

IMPORTANT:

Grease **SLOWLY**. Rapid greasing may force rear seal to move.

8. Reinstall rubber plug (B).
9. Repeat the procedure for the remaining contour wheels.

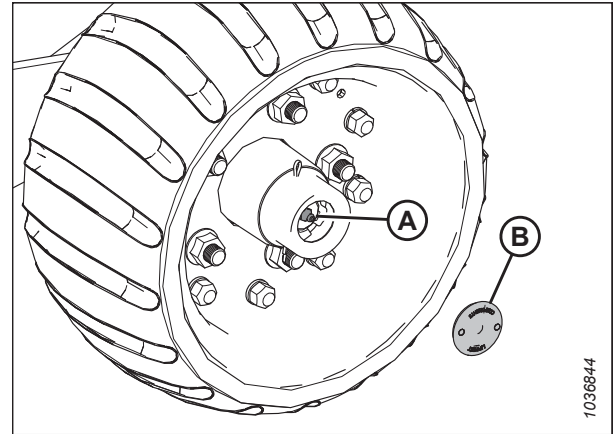


Figure 4.395: Lubrication Point on Contour Wheel Axle

4.15.3 Zeroing Mechanical Indicator

Zero the mechanical indicator to make sure it operates accurately.



DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine. If it is impossible to engage safety props and impractical to block the header, NEVER climb onto or go underneath an unsupported header.

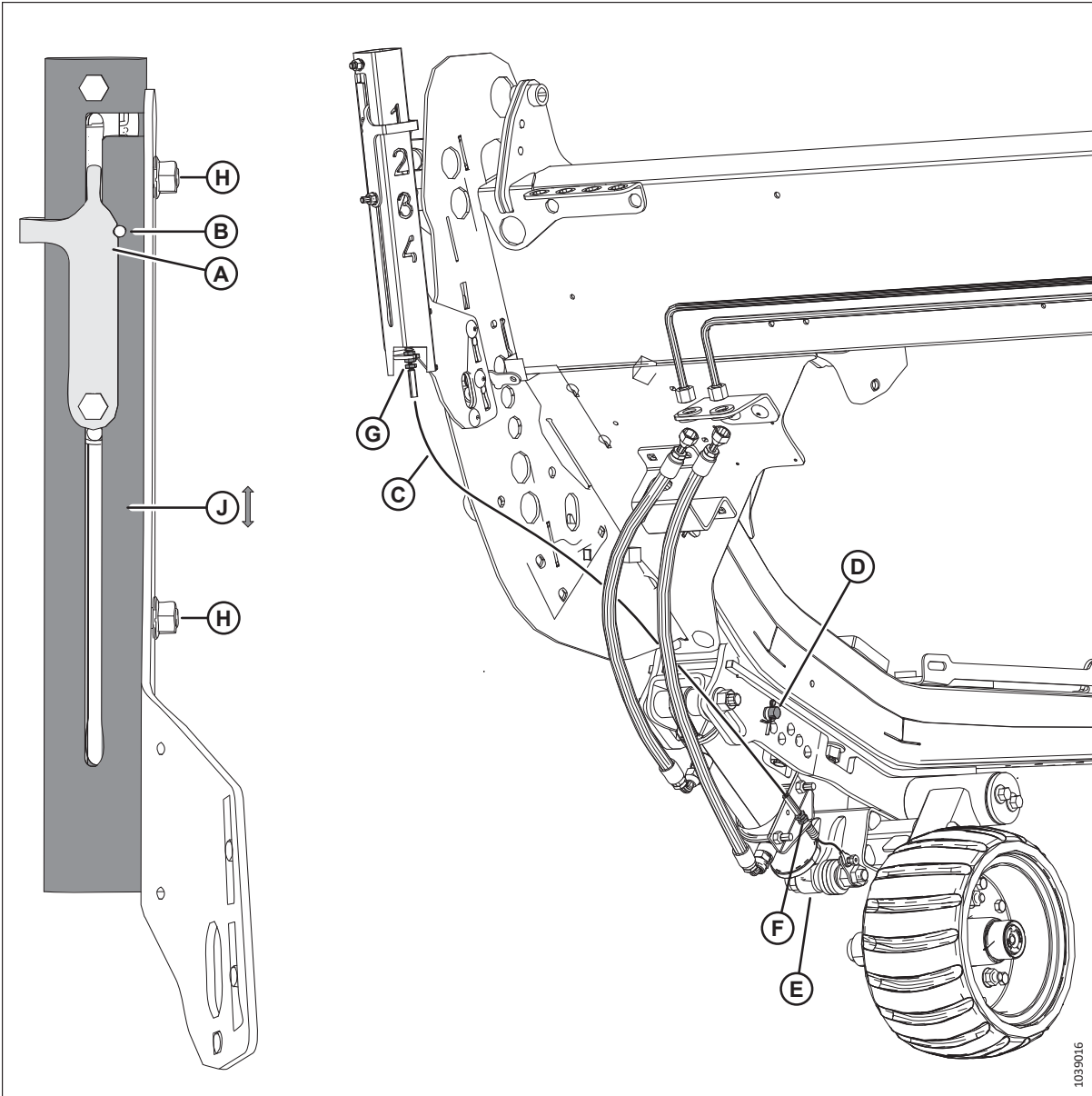


Figure 4.396: Mechanical Indicator

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. The mechanical indicator is zeroed when the notch in indicator (A) is aligned with hole (B) under the following conditions:
 - Cable (C) is tight
 - Pin is installed in hole (D)
 - Cylinder (E) is fully retracted
3. If the notch is not aligned with the hole under those conditions, adjust any or all of the following parts:
 - Loosen two nuts (H) and slide tube (J) up or down. Tighten the nuts.
 - Adjust cable jam nuts at locations (G) or (F). Tighten the cable jam nuts to 6 Nm (4 lbf·ft).

4.16 Transport System – Option

The header can be equipped with a set of transport wheels, so that the header can be towed by a combine or tractor.

Refer to *Adjusting EasyMove™ Transport Wheels*, page 164 for more information.

4.16.1 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque

The transport wheel bolt torque should be checked after one operating hour following the installation of the wheels, and every 100 operating hours thereafter.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Follow the bolt tightening sequence shown, and torque the wheel bolts to 115 Nm (85 lbf-ft).

IMPORTANT:

Whenever a wheel is removed and reinstalled, check the wheel bolt torque after 1 hour of operation and every 100 hours thereafter.

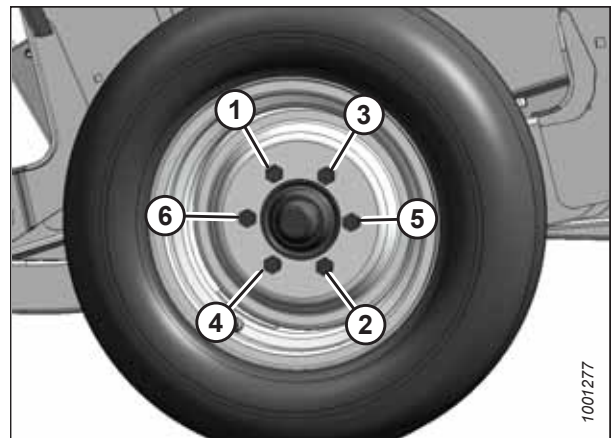


Figure 4.397: Bolt Tightening Sequence

4.16.2 Checking Transport Assembly Bolt Torque

The hardware that secures the optional transport system components to the header must be checked daily to ensure safe operation.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up of the machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before making adjustments to the machine.

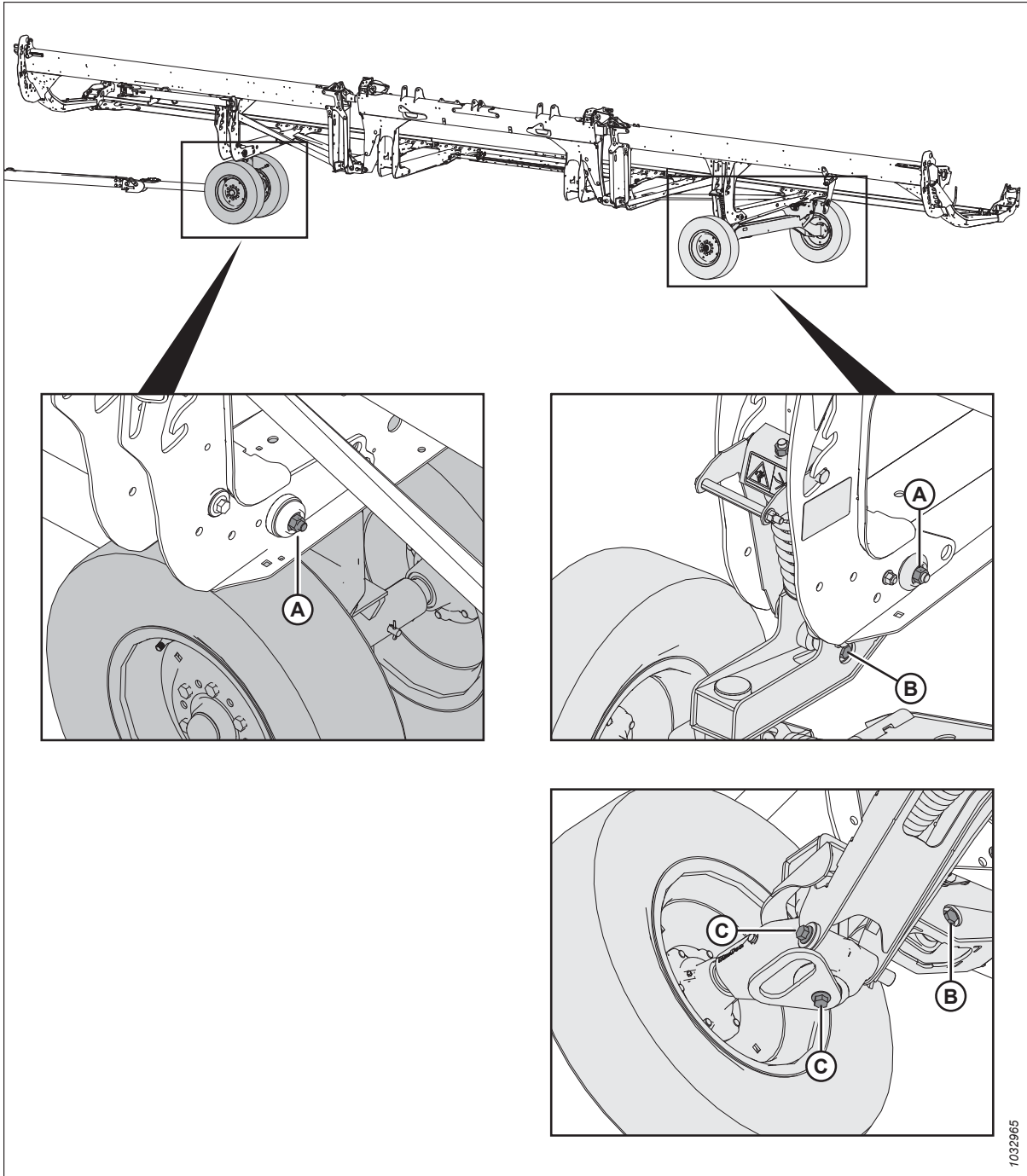


Figure 4.398: Transport Assembly Bolts

1. Check the following bolts **DAILY** to ensure bolts are torqued to specified values:
 - Bolts (A) to 234 Nm (173 lbf-ft)
 - Bolts (B) to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft)
 - Bolts (C) to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft)

4.16.3 Checking Tire Pressure

Proper tire pressure ensures tires perform properly and wear evenly.



WARNING

- A tire can explode during inflation, which could cause serious injury or death.
- Do NOT stand over tire. Use a clip-on chuck and extension hose.
- Do NOT exceed maximum inflation pressure indicated on tire label or sidewall.
- Replace tires that have defects.
- Replace wheel rims that are cracked, worn, or severely rusted.
- Never weld a wheel rim.



Figure 4.399: Inflation Warning

- Never use force on an inflated or partially inflated tire.
 - Make sure the tire is correctly seated before inflating to operating pressure.
 - If the tire is not correctly positioned on the rim or is overinflated, the tire bead can loosen on one side causing air to escape at high speed and with great force. An air leak of this nature can thrust the tire in any direction endangering anyone in the area.
 - Make sure all the air is removed from the tire before removing the tire from the rim.
 - Do NOT remove, install, or repair a tire on a rim unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job.
 - Take the tire and rim to a qualified tire repair shop.
1. Check the tire pressure. For pressure specifications, refer to Table 4.6, page 685.
 2. Make sure the tire is correctly seated on the rim before inflating.
 - a. If the tire is not correctly positioned on the rim, take the tire to a qualified tire repair shop.
 3. If inflation is required, use a clip-on chuck and an extension hose to inflate the tire to the desired pressure.

IMPORTANT:

Do NOT exceed maximum inflation pressure indicated on tire label or sidewall.

Table 4.6 Tire Inflation Pressure

Size	Load Range	Pressure
225/75 R15	E	552 kPa (80 psi)

4.16.4 Changing Tow-Bar Hitch Connection from Pintle to Clevis

The transport tow-bar includes clevis and pintle ring towing mounts.

1. Remove the hairpin from clevis pin (A) and disconnect chain (B). Store clevis pin (A) with the pintle hitch adapter.
2. Remove four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (C) from the end of the tow-bar. Retain the hardware for reinstallation.

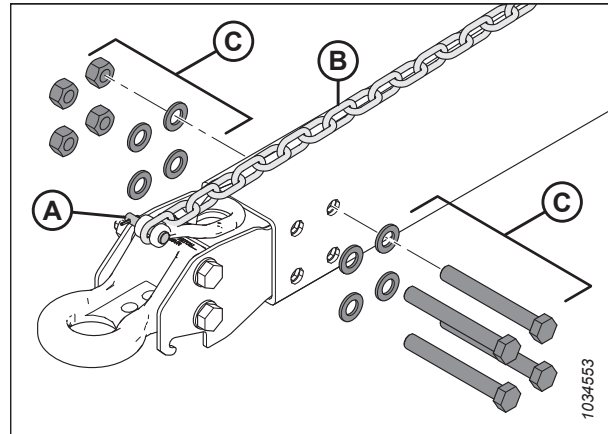


Figure 4.400: Removing Pintle Towing Adapter

3. Tape or tie 6 m (20 ft.) of pull-line to harness transport end (A).
4. Remove bolt (B) securing the harness in the P-clip. Retain the bolt.
5. From hitch end (C), gently pull the harness out through the opening in pintle (D) until you can see the pull-line, then disconnect the pull-line and set the pintle aside. Leave the pull-line inside the tow-bar.

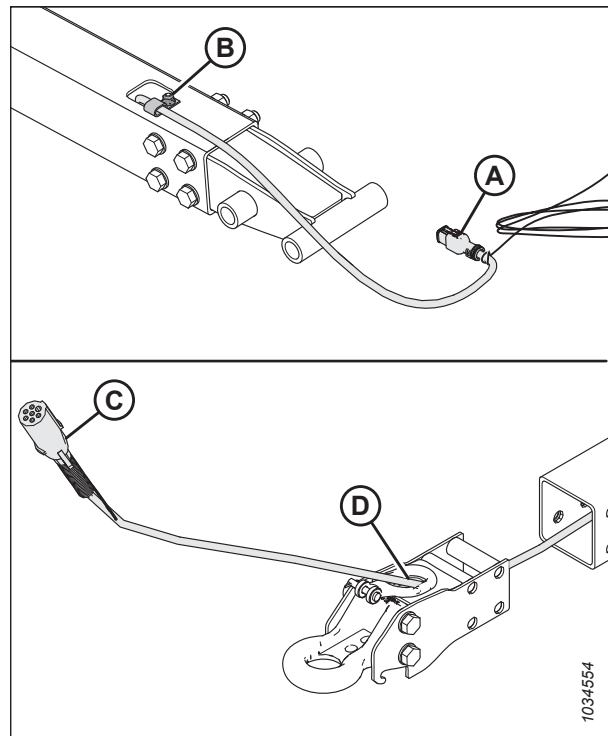


Figure 4.401: Removing Pintle Towing Adapter

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Retrieve the clevis adapter. Insert transport connector (A) of the electrical harness through opening (B) in the ring on the clevis adapter.
7. Tie or tape pull-line (C) to the harness. Using the pull-line at the transport end, gently pull the harness through the tow-bar.
8. Ensure that transport end (A) of the harness extends 48 cm (18 7/8 in.) past P-clip (D).
9. Secure the harness in the P-clip with the bolt removed in Step 6, page 687.

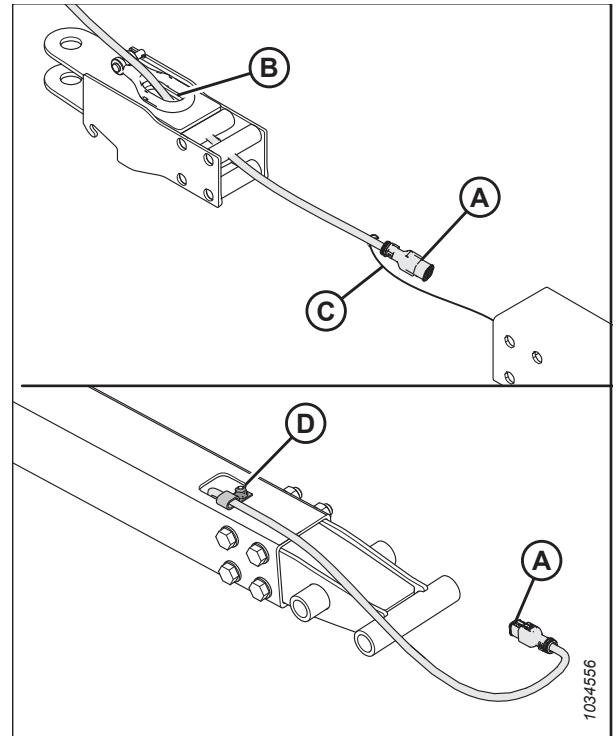


Figure 4.402: Installing Clevis Ring Adapter

10. Install four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (A) to secure the clevis adapter to the tow-bar.

NOTE:

Ensure that hardware (A) is reinstalled in the same orientation it was in before it was removed.

11. Reconnect the chain with clevis pin (B) and secure it with the cotter pin.

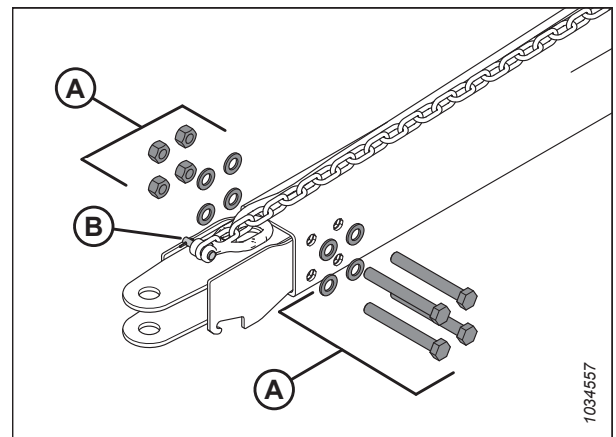


Figure 4.403: Installing Clevis Ring Adapter

12. Tighten nuts (A) in the cross pattern shown. Recheck each nut in sequence until they are torqued to 310 Nm (229 lbf-ft).

13. Insert the hitch pin into the clevis adapter. Secure the pin with the lynch pin.

NOTE:

The pins are not shown in the illustration.

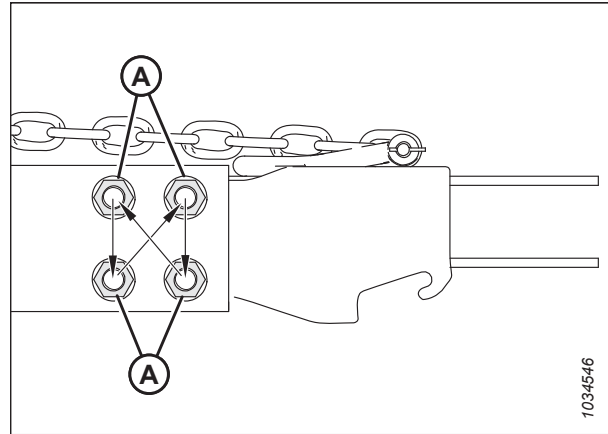


Figure 4.404: Torque Sequence

4.16.5 Changing Tow-Bar Hitch Connection from Clevis to Pintle

The transport tow-bar includes clevis and pintle ring towing mounts.

1. Remove the hairpin from clevis pin (A) and disconnect chain (B). Store clevis pin (A) with the clevis adapter.
2. Remove four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (C) from the end of the tow-bar. Retain the hardware for reinstallation.

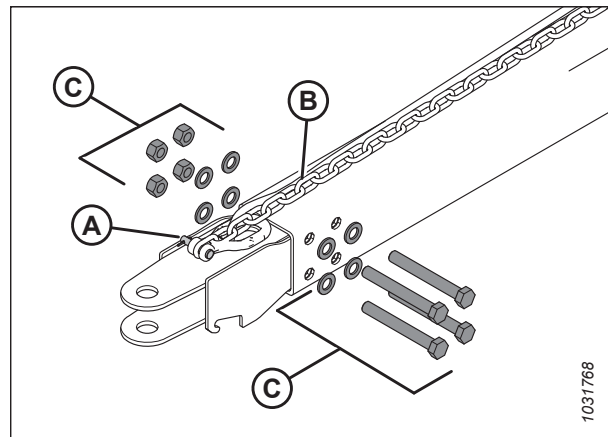


Figure 4.405: Removing Clevis Adapter

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Tape or tie 6 m (20 ft.) of pull-line to harness transport end (A).
4. Remove bolt (B) securing the harness in the P-clip. Retain the bolt for reinstallation.
5. From hitch end (C), gently pull the harness out through the opening in clevis (D) until you can see the pull-line, then disconnect the pull-line and set the clevis adapter aside. Leave the pull-line inside the tow-bar.

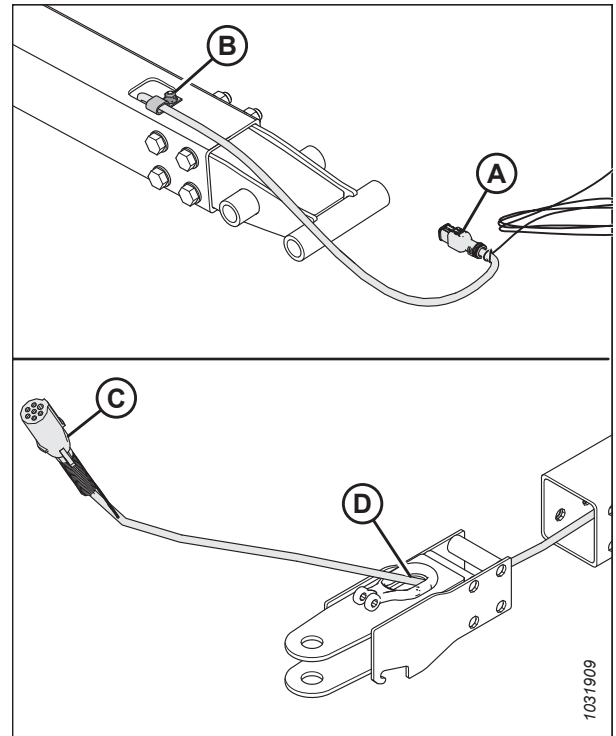


Figure 4.406: Removing Clevis Towing Adapter

6. Insert transport connector (A) of the electrical harness through opening (B) in the pintle ring adapter.
7. Tie or tape pull-line (C) to the harness. Gently pull the harness through the tow-bar with the pull line at the transport end.
8. Ensure that transport end (A) of the harness extends 48 cm (18 7/8 in.) past P-clip (D).
9. Secure the harness in the P-clip with the bolt removed in Step 4, [page 689](#).

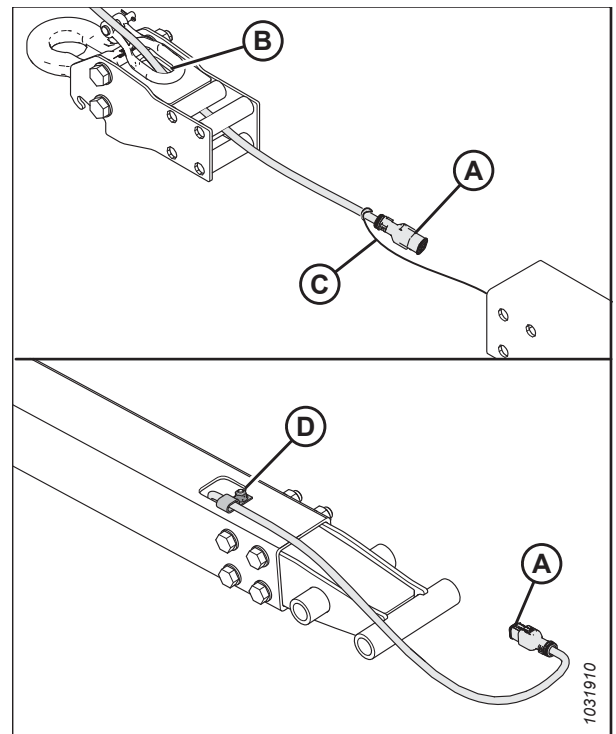


Figure 4.407: Installing Pintle Ring Adapter

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Reinstall four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (A) to secure the pintle ring adapter to the tow-bar.

NOTE:

Ensure that hardware (A) is reinstalled with the four bolt heads on the same side.

11. Reconnect the chain with clevis pin (B) and secure it with the cotter pin.

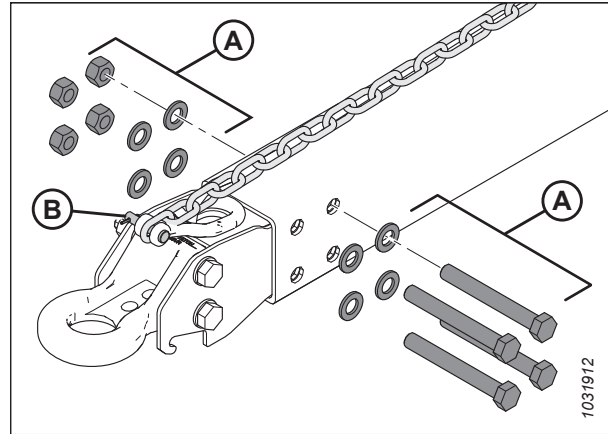


Figure 4.408: Installing Pintle Ring Adapter

12. Tighten nuts (A) in the cross pattern shown. Recheck each nut in sequence until they are torqued to 310 Nm (229 lbf·ft).

13. Insert the hitch pin into the pintle ring adapter. Secure the pin with the lynch pin.

NOTE:

The pins are not shown in the illustration.

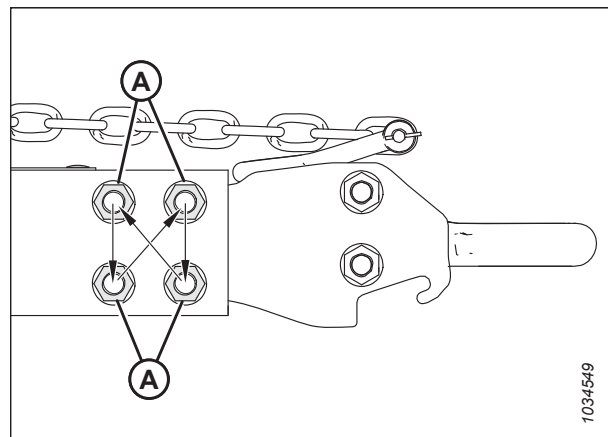


Figure 4.409: Torque Sequence

4.17 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife – Option

The optional vertical knife kit is a vertical crop cutter that is mounted to each end of the header. The vertical knife slices through tangled, shatter-prone crops such as canola to reduce seed loss.

4.17.1 Replacing Vertical Knife Sections

The VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit includes a service kit that supplies four replacement knife sections. Follow these instructions to replace a damaged knife section.

DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

CAUTION

Install vertical knife guards before attaching or removing vertical knives. Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the header 153–254 mm (6–10 in.) off of the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the safety props.
4. Open the header endshields.
5. Detach the vertical knife from the header and set aside.
6. Remove retaining pin (A) from the knife guard.
7. Remove the knife guard using handle (B).

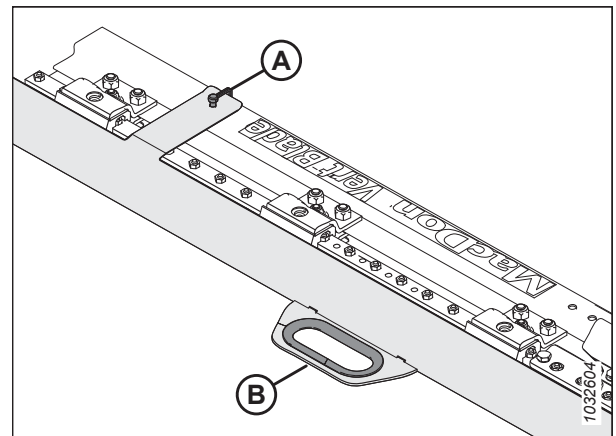


Figure 4.410: Vertical Knife Guard

8. Remove three bolts (A) securing milling bar (B) to the blade bracket and knife section assembly (C). Tilt milling bar (B) upwards and slide assembly (C) out.

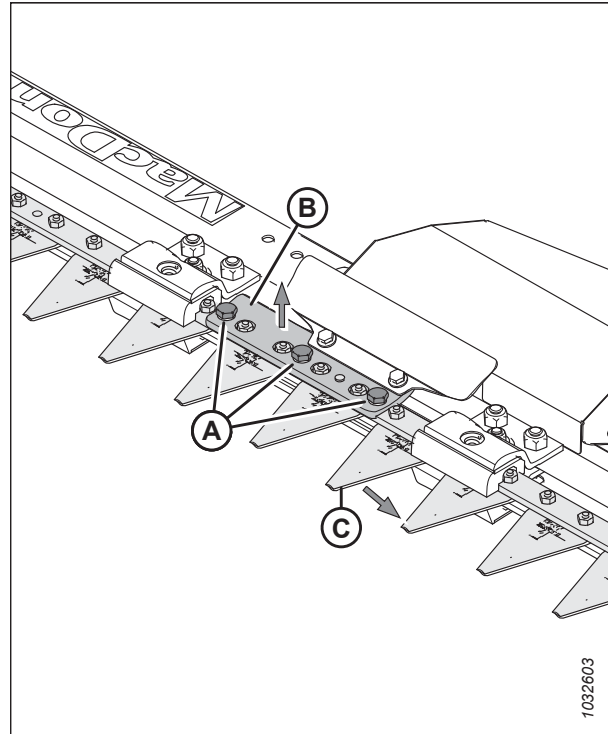


Figure 4.411: Vertical Knife – Guard Removed

NOTE:

If you cannot tilt milling bar (A) upwards enough to slide knife section assembly (B) out, remove two bolts (C) attaching hood (D) to the vertical knife assembly. Loosen two nuts (E) to loosen slide rail (F). Milling bar (A) should now be loose enough to tilt upwards.

IMPORTANT:

You should not need to loosen clip hardware (G) and clips (H) to slide the knife section assembly out. If you need to loosen this hardware, make sure to tighten the hardware properly by following Step 13, page 693 during reinstallation. Overtightening can cause the motor to overheat, melt plastic components, and burn out. Under-tightening can cause debris to plug the knives.

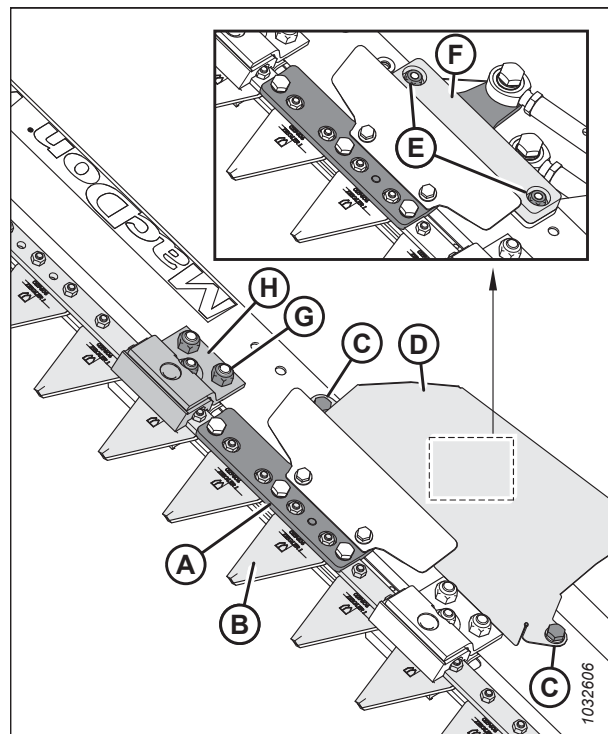


Figure 4.412: Vertical Knife – Guard Removed

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

9. Remove two screws (A) and nuts (B) securing knife section (C) to bracket (D).
10. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to two new screws (A) (MD #313790) from the kit.
11. Attach new knife section (C) (MD #313788) to bracket (D) using two screws (A) and nuts (B) (MD #313789).
12. Tighten nuts (B) to 7 Nm (5 lbf-ft).

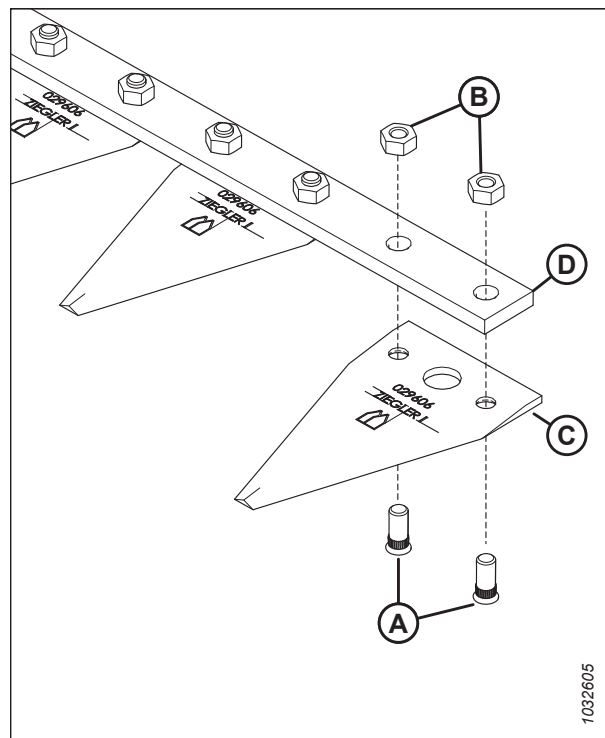


Figure 4.413: Knife Section Assembly

13. If you loosened clip hardware (A), (B), and clips (C), tighten the hardware as follows:
 - a. Tighten M8 nut (A) so that gap (D) at the tip of knife sections (E) does **NOT** exceed 3 mm (1/8 in.).
 - b. Make sure clips (C) do **NOT** clamp too tightly and restrict knife movement.
 - c. Tighten two M10 nuts (B) to 50 Nm (37 lbf·ft).
14. Reinstall remaining components and knife guard.
Installation is the reverse of removal.

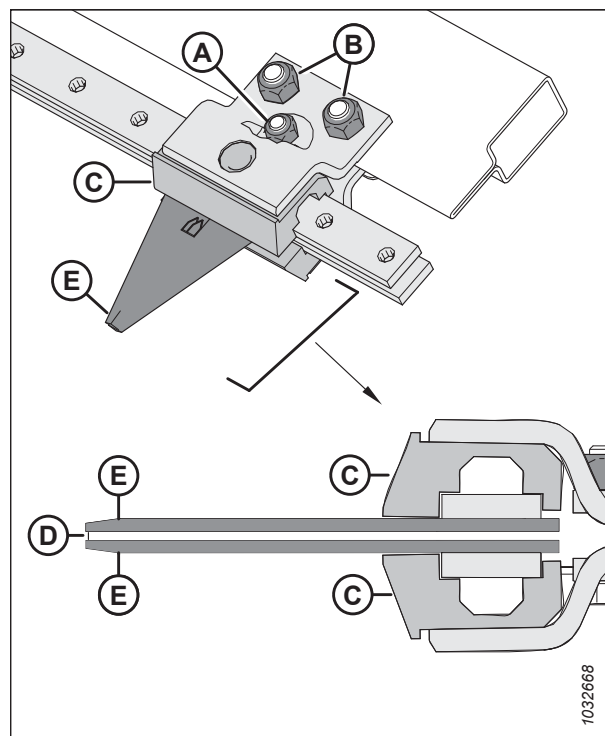


Figure 4.414: Gap Between Clip and Knife Section

4.17.2 Greasing Vertical Knife

Regular maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base.

Lubricate the vertical knife push rods (A) after initial installation, and then every 50 hours thereafter.

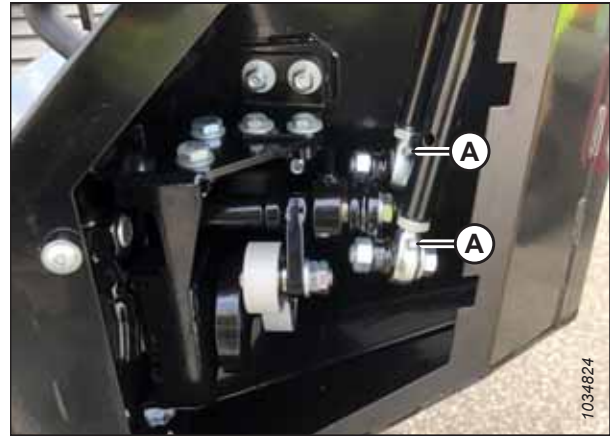


Figure 4.415: Grease Zerk on Vertical Knife Push Rods – Right Side Shown, Left Side Opposite

To lubricate the vertical knife push rods, follow these steps:

NOTE:

Some parts have been removed from the illustrations for clarity.



DANGER

To prevent bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage the safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Lower the header to the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove hex socket button head screws (A), and remove access cover (B).

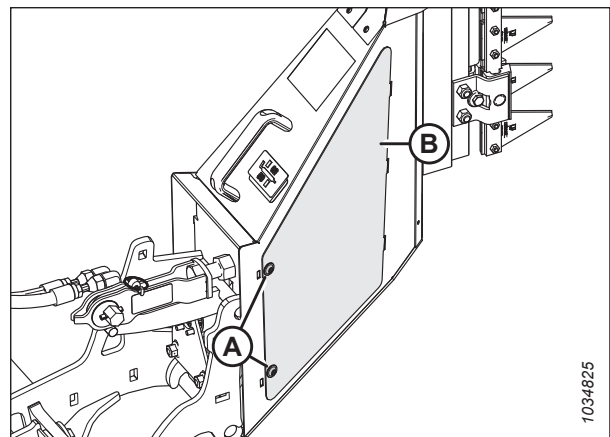


Figure 4.416: Vertical Knife Access Cover – Right Side Shown, Left Side Opposite

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Apply grease to each push rod grease zerk (A) (2 per vertical knife as shown).

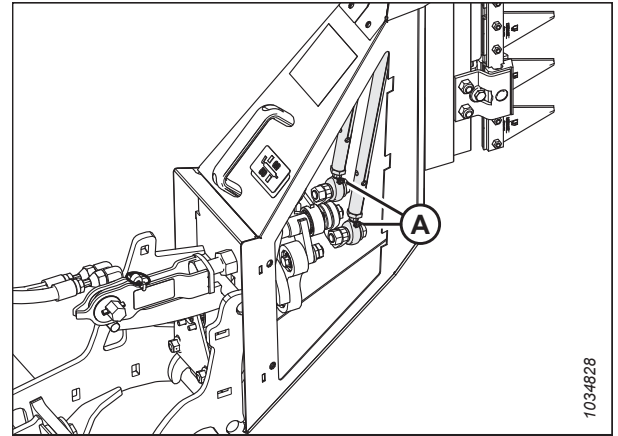


Figure 4.417: Grease Zerks on Vertical Knife Push Rods – Right Side Shown, Left Side Opposite

5. Reinstall access cover (B) and secure it with hex socket button head screws (A).
6. Repeat the greasing procedure for the opposite vertical knife.

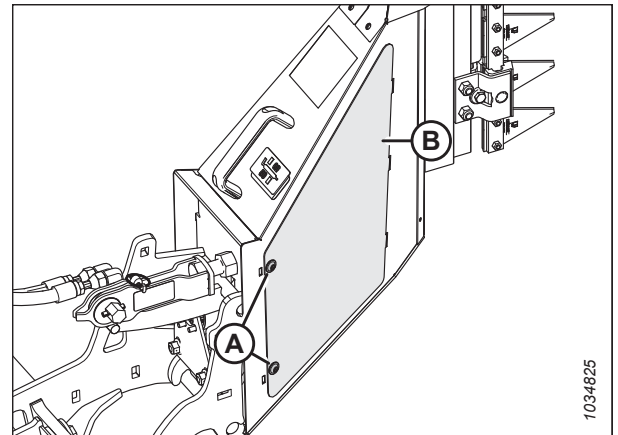


Figure 4.418: Vertical Knife Access Cover – Right Side Shown, Left Side Opposite

Chapter 5: Options and Attachments

The following options and attachments are available for use with your header. See your MacDon Dealer for availability and ordering information.

5.1 Crop Delivery Kits

Crop delivery is the process of how the crop gets from the cutterbar to the feeder house. Optional crop delivery kits can optimize header performance for specific crops or conditions.

5.1.1 Crop Lifter Kit

Crop lifters are recommended for severely lodged cereal crops where the operator wants maximum possible stubble height.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

Each kit (MD #B7022) contains 10 lifters. Order the following number of kits depending on header size:

- 7.6 m (25 ft.) – 3 kits
- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – 3 kits
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – 4 kits
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – 4 kits
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) – 4 kits
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – 5 kits
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – 5 kits

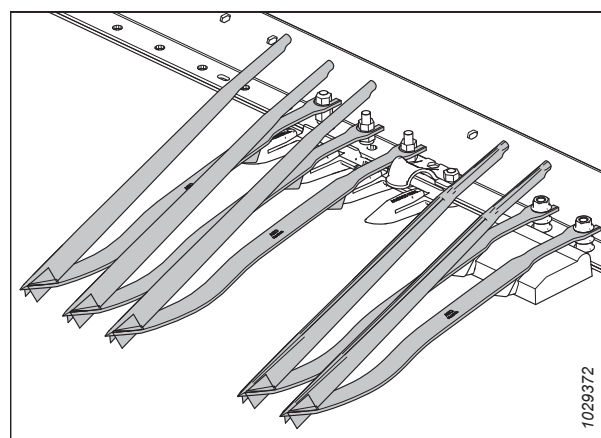


Figure 5.1: Grain Crop Lifter Kit

5.1.2 Crop Lifter Storage Rack Kit

Crop lifter racks are used to store crop lifters at the rear of the header.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7023

NOTE:

FD225 headers use one MD #B7023 kit only.

NOTE:

This kit is for one side only. Order two kits for both sides of the header.

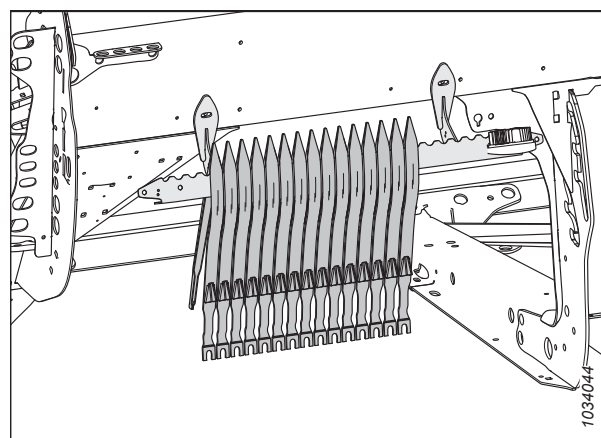


Figure 5.2: Crop Lifter Rack kit – Left Side

5.1.3 Crop Divider Storage Bracket Kit

The divider storage bracket kit is used to store the standard divider cones on the header.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7030

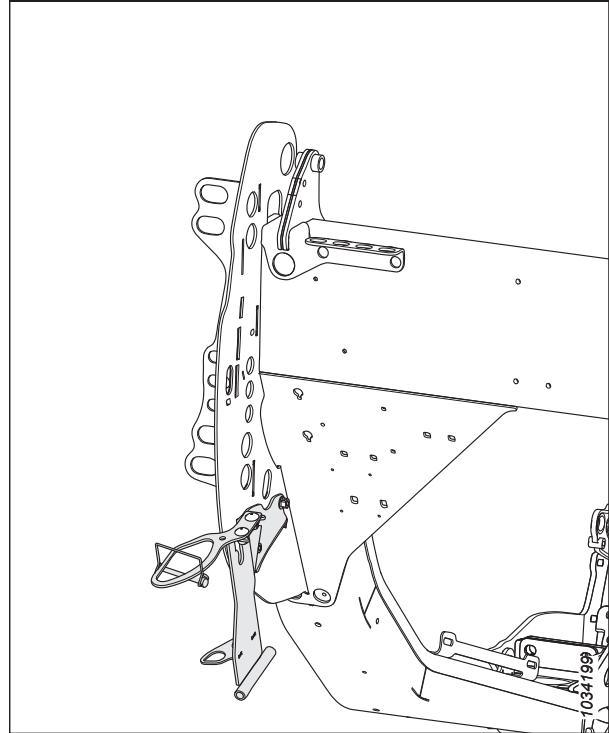


Figure 5.3: Divider Storage Bracket Kit – MD #B7030

5.1.4 Floating Crop Dividers

Floating dividers follow the ground contour and allow for improved dividing in both lodged and standing crops and reduce trampling.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7346

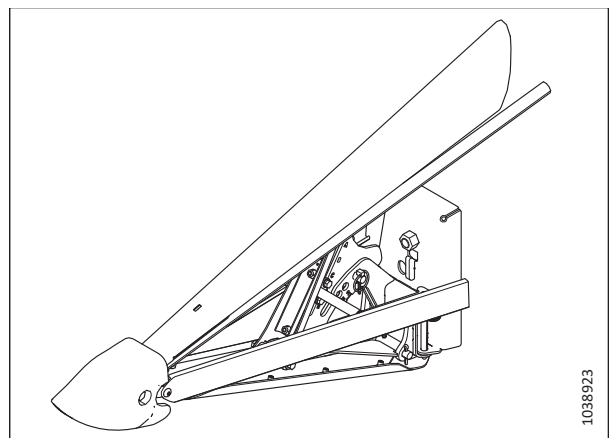


Figure 5.4: Floating Crop Divider

5.1.5 Full Length Upper Cross Auger

The upper cross auger attaches to the header in front of the backtube, and improves crop feeding into the center of the header in heavy crop conditions.

The upper cross auger (UCA) (A) is ideal for high-volume harvesting of forages, oats, canola, mustard, and other tall, bushy, hard-to-feed crops. Order the following bundles:

Base auger package

Includes auger, mounts, drive, and hydraulic completion plumbing for headers that are upper cross auger ready.

Order from the following list of kits according to your header size:

- 7.6 m (25 ft.) – MD #6413 (two piece)
- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #B6414 (two piece)
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #B6415 (two piece)
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – MD #B6417 (three piece)
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) – MD #B6416 (two piece)
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #B6418 (three piece)
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #B6419 (three piece)

Hydraulic Plumbing Package

Required only for headers without factory installed UCA hydraulics. Includes hydraulic lines to make header UCA ready, if not factory configured.

Order from the following list of kits according to your header size:

- 7.6 m (25 ft.) – MD #B7338 (two piece)
- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #B7117 (two piece)
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #B7118 (two piece)
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – MD #B7119 (three piece)
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) – MD #B7120 (two piece)
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #B7119 (three piece)
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #B7121 (three piece)

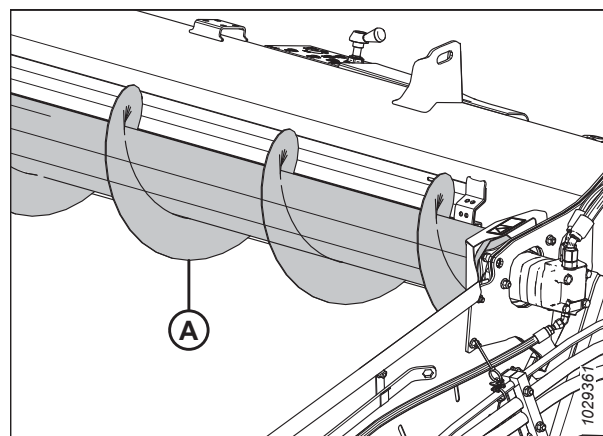


Figure 5.5: Upper Cross Auger

5.1.6 Rice Divider Rod Kit

Rice divider rods attach to the left and right crop dividers and divide tall and tangled rice crops in a similar manner to standard crop divider rods performing in standing crops.

The kit includes both left and right rods, and storage brackets.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7238

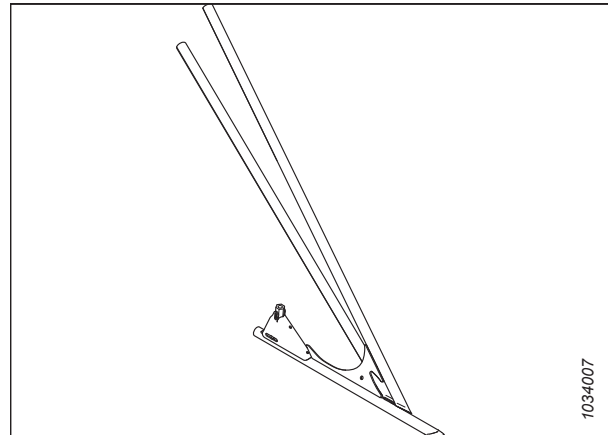


Figure 5.6: Left Rice Divider Rod Kit

5.1.7 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit

The VertiBlade™ is a vertical crop cutter that is mounted to each end of the header. It is used to cut through lodged or tangled crops.

Order the following bundles:

Base VertiBlade™

Includes knives, mounts, drive, and hydraulic completion plumbing to complete installation on power-divider ready header.

MD #B7029

Hydraulic Plumbing Package

The hydraulic plumbing packages are required only for headers without factory-installed power divider hydraulics. The package includes hydraulic lines to make the header power-divider (VertiBlade™) ready.

Order one of the following based on your header size:

- 7.6 m (25 ft.) – MD #B7339
- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #B7127
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #B7128
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – MD #B7129
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) – MD #B7130
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #B7195
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #B7131

Installation instructions are included in kits.

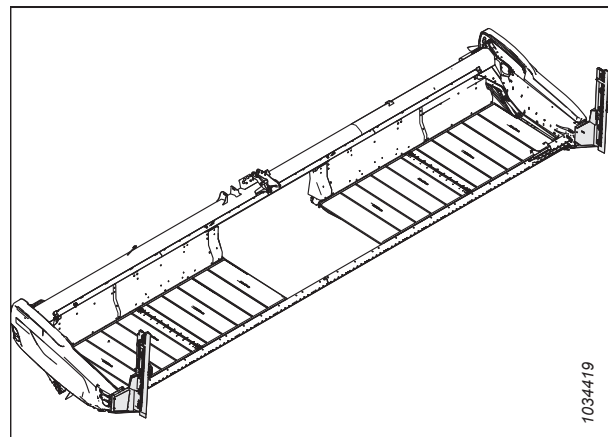


Figure 5.7: VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit

5.2 Cutterbar Kits

The cutterbar is located on the front of the header. It supports the knife and guards which is used to cut the crop.

5.2.1 Rock Retarder Kit

A rock retarder extends the height of the cutterbar lip to help prevent rocks rolling onto the draper decks.

Order bundles by header size:

- FD225, FD230, FD235, and FD241 – MD #B7122
- FD240, FD245, and FD250 – MD #B7123

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kits.

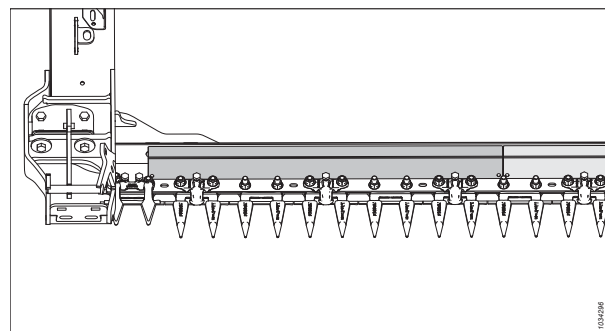


Figure 5.8: Rock Retarder Kit

5.2.2 Four-Point Knife Guard

Four-point guards provide increased knife protection in very rocky conditions, and can improve header performance with shatter-prone crops by reducing side-to-side crop motion.

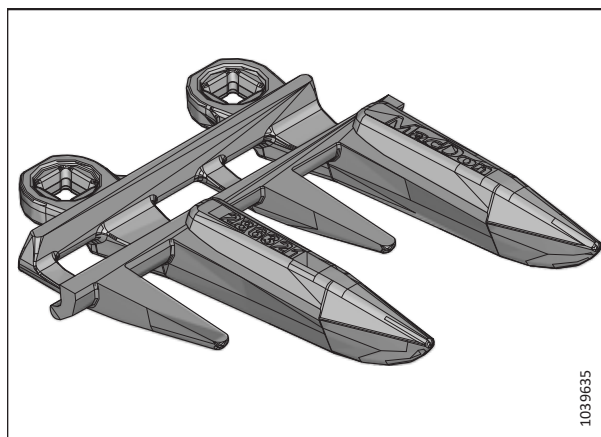


Figure 5.9: Four-Point Knife Guard

Four point guard kits are available for all FD2 Series header sizes. Refer to the Parts Catalog or contact your Dealer for part numbers.

5.3 FM200 Float Module Kits

The float module is used to attach the header to the combine. It combines the crop flow from both side drapers and also pulls crop into the combine feeder house.

5.3.1 10V Sensor Adapter Kit

This kit is for NH CR/CX Combines that use 10V sensors.

MD #B7241

This kit is for the following NH CR/CX Combines:

- All CX800/CX8000/CX900 combines
- CR9040/CR9060 combines before serial number HAJ111000
- CR9070 combines before serial number Y8G1412000

5.3.2 Crop Deflector Kits

This kit installs different sizes of crop deflectors on the float module depending on feeder house size.

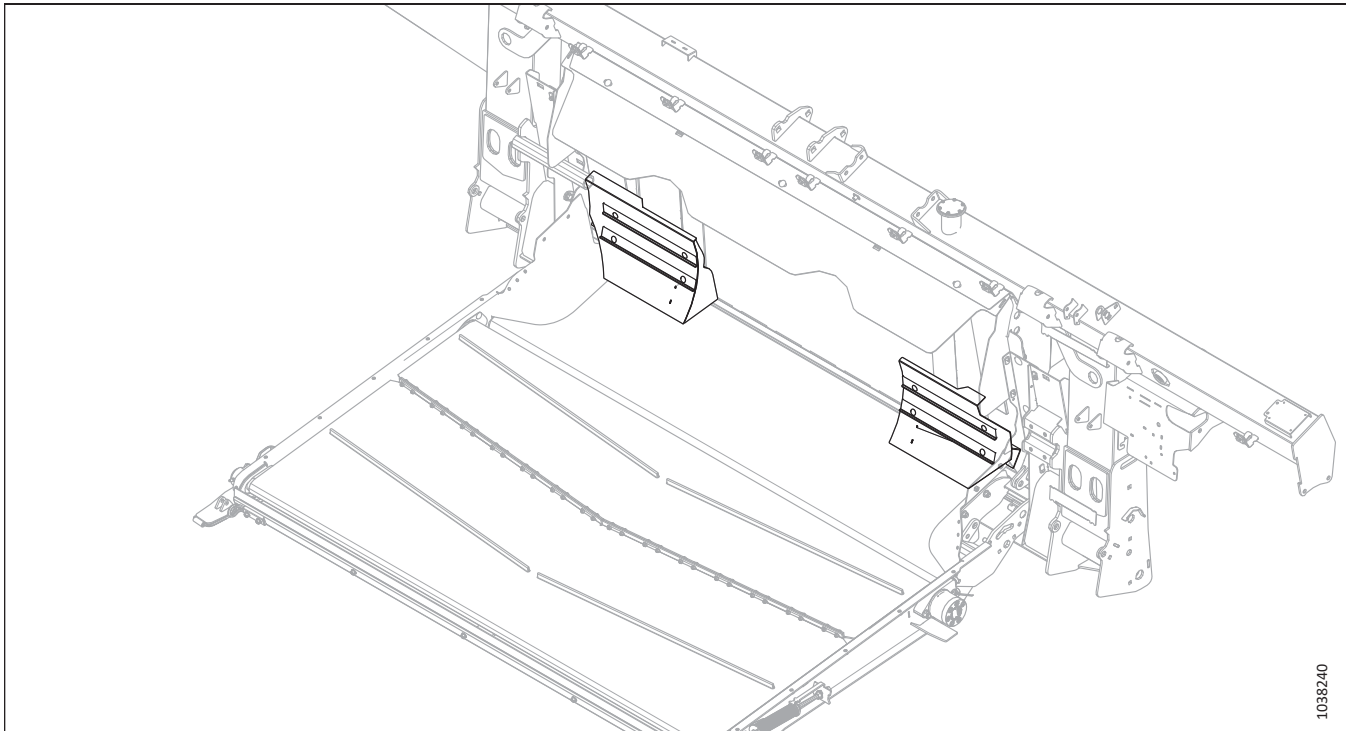


Figure 5.10: Crop Deflectors

Combine Feeder House Size	Bundle Number
Ultra Narrow	MD #B7314
Narrow	MD #B7347
Medium	MD #B7348

5.3.3 Extended Center Filler

This kit is for the float module. It is a longer filler plate to seal the area behind the transition pan.

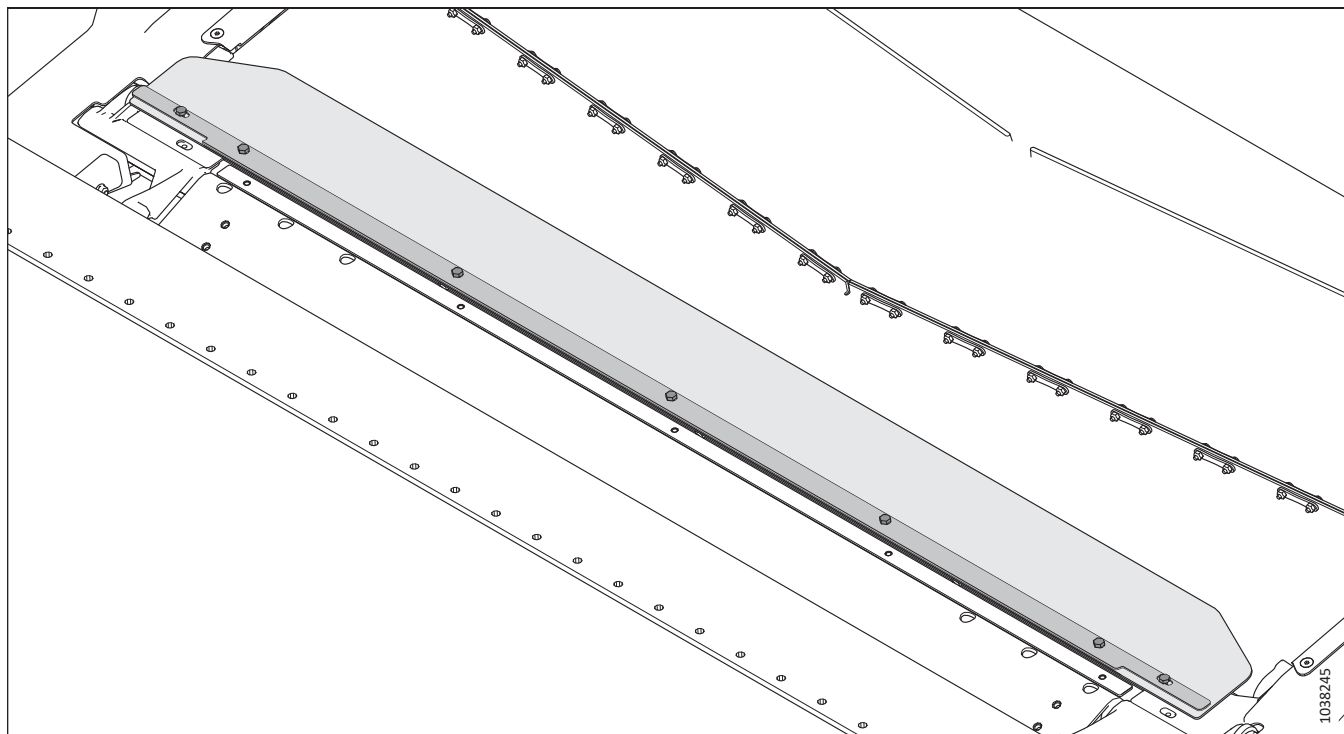


Figure 5.11: Extended Center Filler

MD #B6450

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

5.3.4 Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit

The flighting extension kit may allow better feeding of crop in green/wet straw conditions (for example, rice and green cereals).

Refer to [3.8.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 132](#) for a list of flighting combinations.

MD #B6400

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

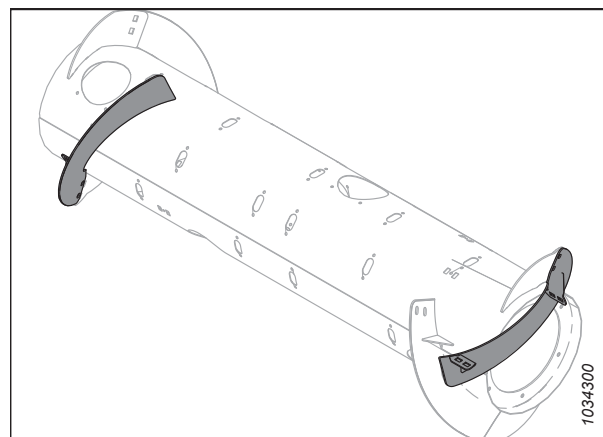


Figure 5.12: Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit

5.3.5 Full Interface Filler Kit

The Full Interface Filler Kit provides additional sealing between float module and header.

NOTE:

This kit is only available for European-configured headers.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7031

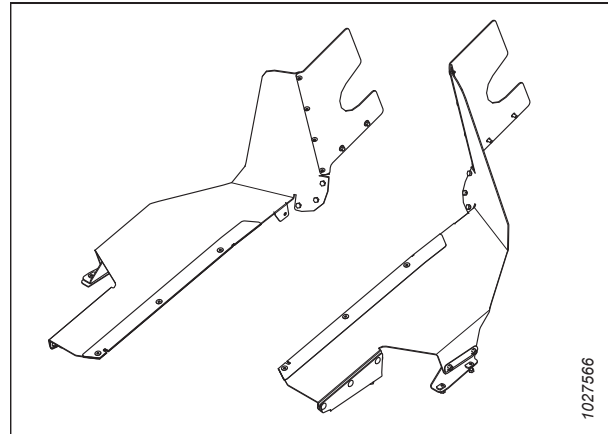


Figure 5.13: Full Interface Filler Kit

5.3.6 Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit

The hydraulic reservoir fill extension kit extends the breather cap position. This allows the float module to operate on steep hillsides while maintaining oil supply to the suction side of the pump.

This kit is recommended when operating on hills exceeding 5°.

MD #B6057

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kits.

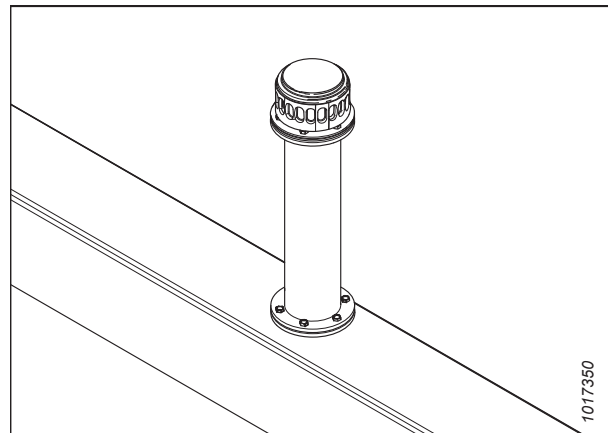


Figure 5.14: Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit

5.3.7 Lateral Tilt Plug Kit

This kit allows the combine lateral tilt to work with Auto Header Height Control (AHHC).

MD #B7196

Not recommended for slopes over 10% grade.

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kits.



Figure 5.15: Lateral Tilt Plug

5.3.8 Stripper Bar Kit

Stripper bars improve feeding in certain crops such as rice. They are **NOT** recommended in cereal crops.

Select the stripper bar kit based on combine feeder house width. For information, refer to Table 5.1, page 705.

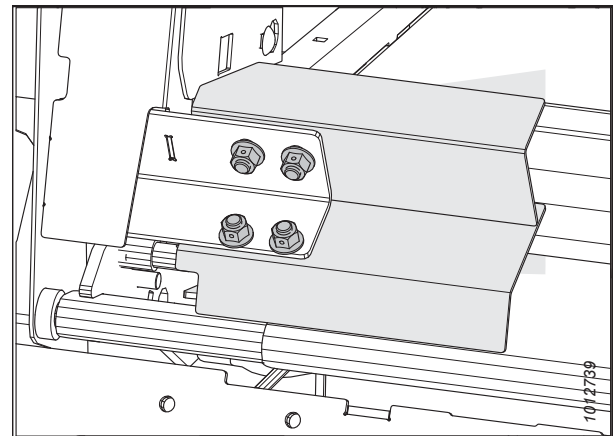


Figure 5.16: Stripper Bar Kit

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kits.

Table 5.1 Stripper Bar Configurations and Recommendations

Bundle (MD #)	Stripper Bar Length	Opening Width Float Module	Recommended Feeder House Width
B6042	265 mm (10 1/2 in.)	1317 mm (52 in.)	1250–1350 mm (49–65 in.)
B6043	265 mm (10 1/2 in.) (with cutout)	1317 mm (52 in.)	For John Deere S Series only
B6044	325 mm (13 in.)	1197 mm (47 in.)	For specialty crops only
B6045	365 mm (14 1/2 in.)	1117 mm (44 in.)	1100 mm (43 1/2 in.) and below
B6046	403 mm (16 in.)	1041 mm (41 in.)	For specialty crops only
B6213	515 mm (20 in.)	817 mm (32 in.)	For specialty crops only

5.4 Header Kits

Header options add features or enhancements to the header frame rather than a specific system or function.

5.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit

The ContourMax™ provides flex and auto header height control (AHHC) for stubble heights of 25–457 mm (1–18 in.) (standard header provides 0–152 mm [0–6 in.])

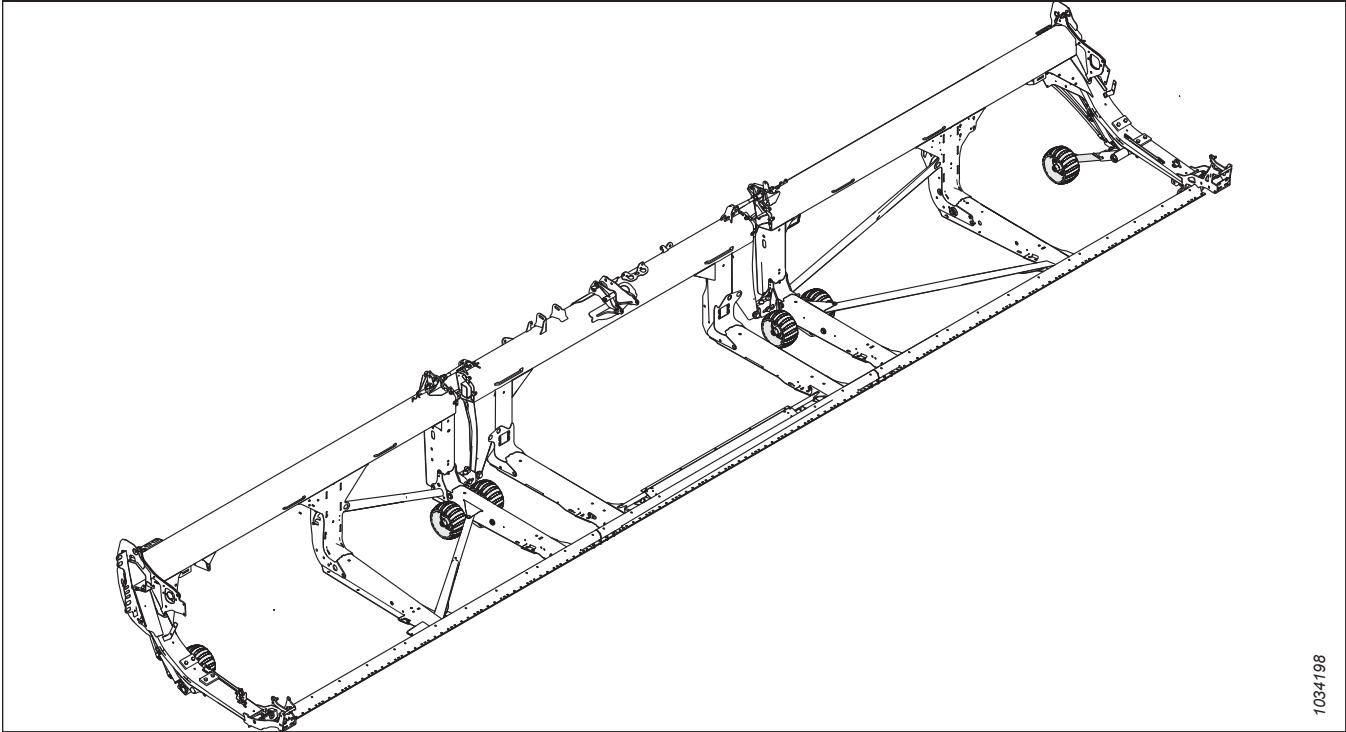


Figure 5.17: ContourMax™ Contour Wheels

The kit consists of four wheel sets and hydraulic height adjustment from inside the combine cab. Installation instructions are included in the kit. Order the following bundles:

Base ContourMax™ Package: Includes wheels, mounts, cylinders, control valve, and hydraulic plumbing to complete installation on ContourMax™ ready header.

MD #B7335

Hydraulic Plumbing Package: Includes hydraulic lines to make the header ContourMax™ ready if it is not factory configured. Order from the following list of ContourMax™ Contour Wheel hydraulic plumbing packages according to your header model:

- FD225 – MD #B7340
- FD230 – MD #B7082
- FD235 – MD #B7083
- FD240 – MD #B7113
- FD241 – MD #B7114
- FD245 – MD #B7193
- FD250 – MD #B7116

ContourMax™ Height Sensing⁹²: Includes mechanical indicator bundle and sensing bundle.

MD #C2101

5.4.2 ContourMax™ Foot Switch Kit

The ContourMax™ foot switch allows you to change the position of the ContourMax™ without taking your hand off the multifunction handle.

This option is available for John Deere and AGCO (Challenger®, Fendt, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson®) combines.

MD #B7040

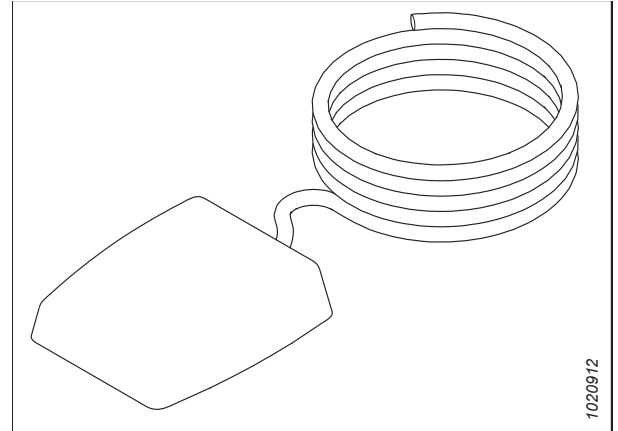


Figure 5.18: ContourMax™ Foot Switch

92. Only compatible with John Deere X9 configured headers.

5.4.3 EasyMove™ Transport System

The EasyMove™ Transport System makes it faster than ever to move your header from field to field. When operating in the field, the wheels can also be used as stabilizer wheels.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

In order to complete the installation of this kit, order one of the following according to header size:

- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #C2048
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #C2048
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – MD #C2050
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) – MD #C2050
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #C2050
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #C2050

MD #C2048 consists of

- Stabilizer Wheels / Slow Speed Transport Base Kit – MD #B6288
- Wheels and Tires – MD #B6275
- Short Tow Pole – MD #B7391

MD #C2050 consists of

- Stabilizer Wheels / Slow Speed Transport Base Kit – MD #B6288
- Wheels and Tires – White Rims – MD #B6275
- Long Tow Pole – MD #B7392

NOTE:

The EasyMove™ Transport System is not compatible with FD225 headers.

5.4.4 Inboard Steel End Finger Kit

Optional fingers to be used in difficult crops, lodged canola, and forage, where the angled plastic finger yields and distorts from heavy crop loads.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #311972

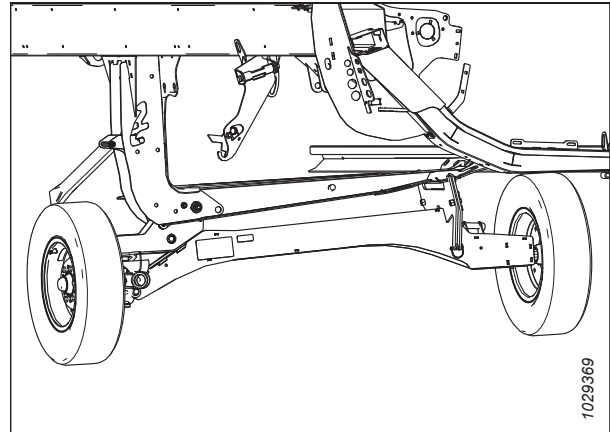


Figure 5.19: EasyMove™ Transport System

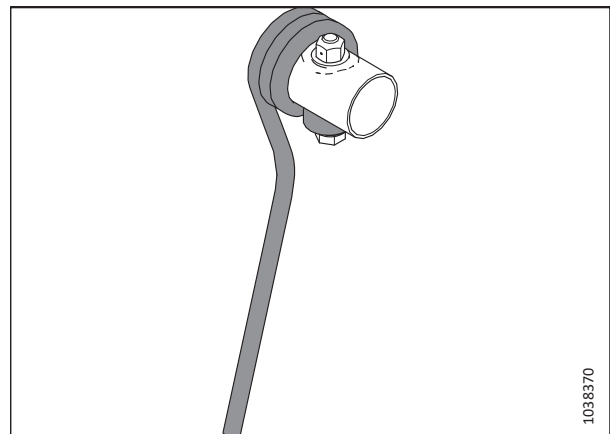


Figure 5.20: Inboard Steel End Finger

5.4.5 Outboard Steel End Finger Kit

Optional fingers to be used in difficult crops such as lodged canola, and forage, where the angled plastic finger yields and distorts from heavy crop loads.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #311959

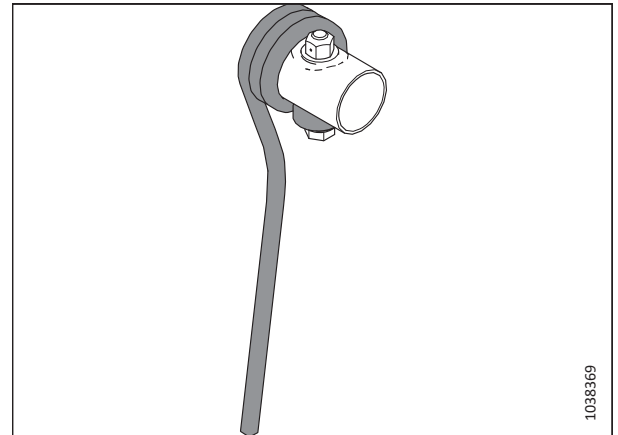


Figure 5.21: Outboard Steel End Finger

5.4.6 Side Hill Stabilizer Kit

The side hill stabilizer kit is recommended for cutting on side hills with a grade steeper than 5°.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7028

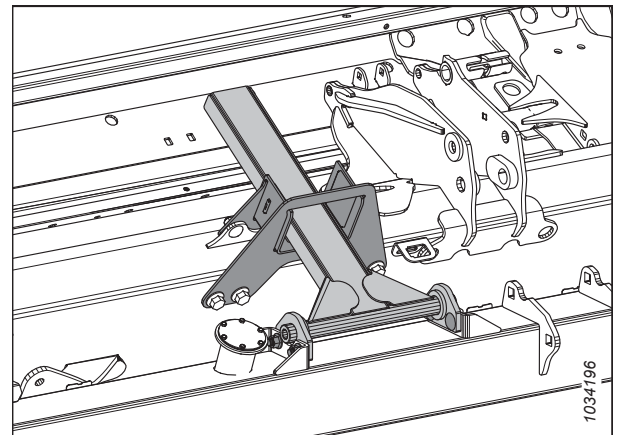


Figure 5.22: Side Hill Stabilizer Kit

5.4.7 Stabilizer Wheel Kit

The stabilizer wheel kit stabilizes the headers lateral movement when cutting at heights higher than possible with the standard skid shoes.

Installation and adjustment instructions are included in the kit.

MD #C2051

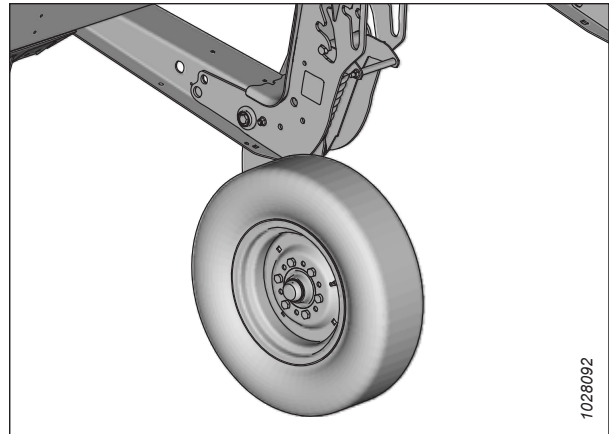


Figure 5.23: Stabilizer Wheel Kit

5.4.8 Steel Skid Shoes Kit

The steel skid shoes kit provides extended wear skid shoes for use in rocky, abrasive conditions.

IMPORTANT:

Not recommended for wet mud or conditions that are prone to sparking.

The kit contains two skid shoes. For full replacement of standard skid shoes, order three bundles (six shoes total).

MD #B6801

NOTE:

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

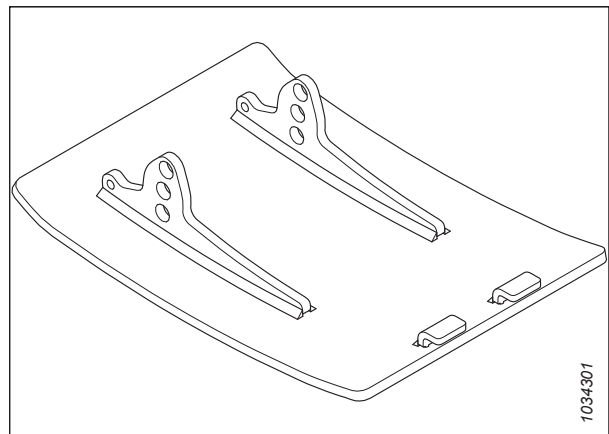


Figure 5.24: Steel Skid Shoes Kit

5.4.9 Stubble Light Kit

Stubble lights are used in low light conditions and allow you to see the stubble cut behind the header. The Stubble Light kit is available for MacDon FD225, FD230, FD235, FD240, FD241, and FD245 headers. This kit is currently compatible with John Deere combines only.

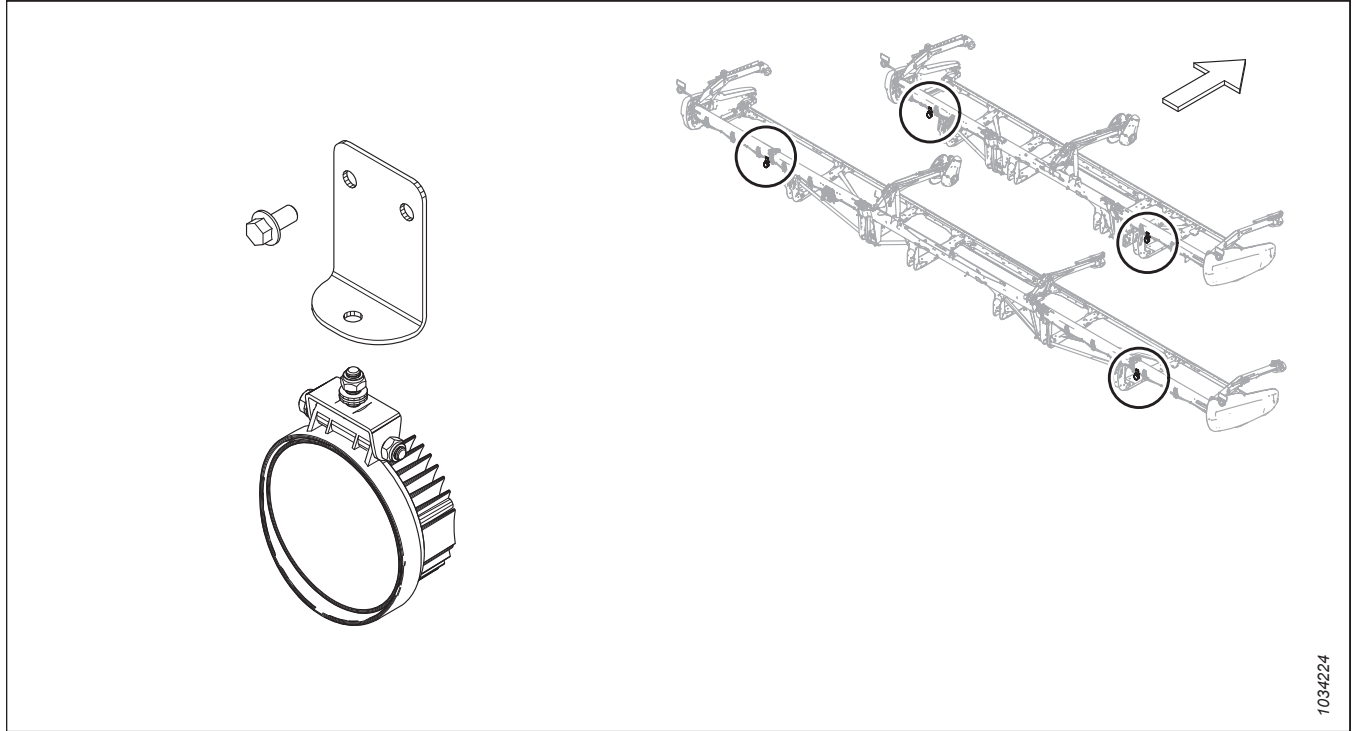


Figure 5.25: Stubble Light Kit

Installation instructions are included with the kit.

MD #B7027

5.4.10 Sunflower Attachment

This kit allows the FD2 Series FlexDraper® (with pointed guards only), to be converted to a sunflower header.

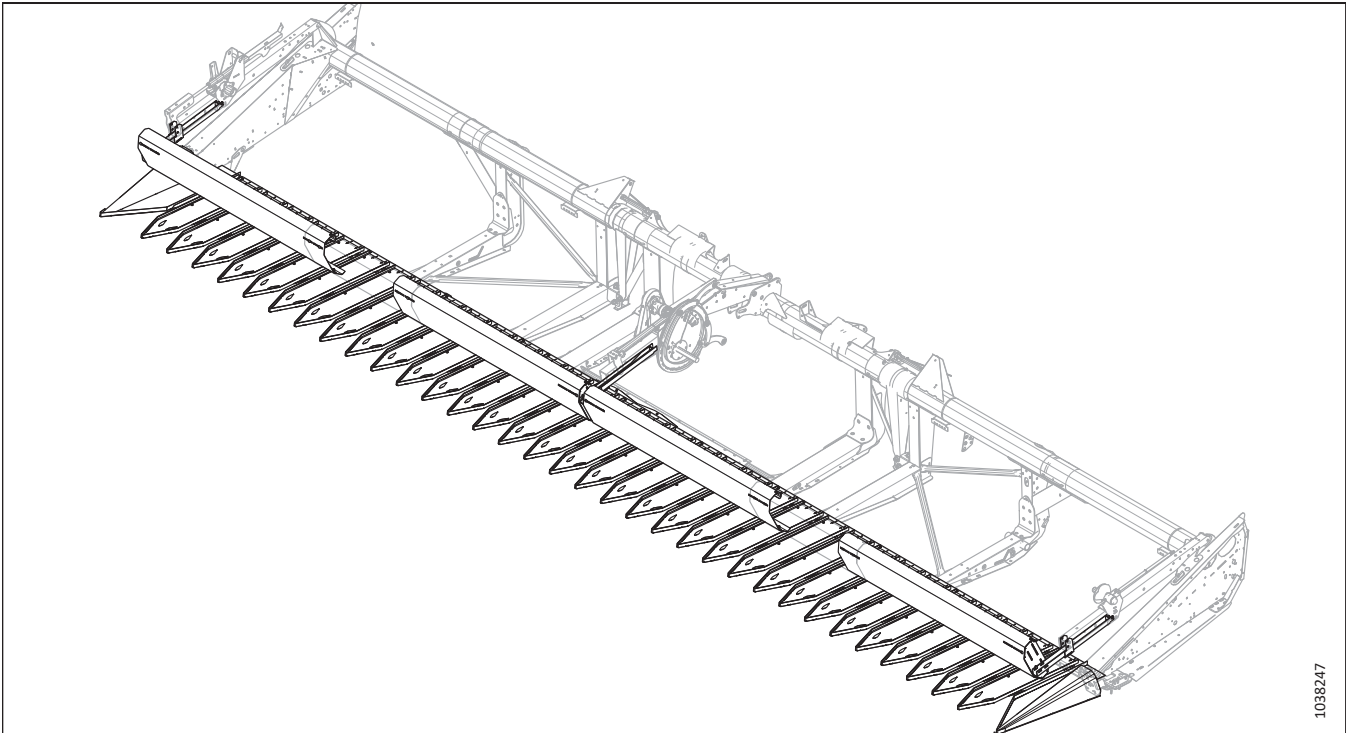


Figure 5.26: Sunflower Attachment

Order the Sunflower Attachment Kit according to header size:

- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #C2086
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #C2087
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) triple reel – MD #C2169
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) double reel – MD #C2088
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) double reel – MD #C2088
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #C2089
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #C2170

The collector contains: Base Kit, Pan, and Deflectors

Base Kit – contains common brackets, end dividers, cutterbar pan supports, lean bar components, and hardware MD #B7302

Pan Kit – contains five pans per kit (two spares). Order the number of kits depending on headers size MD #B7303

- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – The base kit contains enough pans for 9.1 m (30 ft.) headers. No additional pan kits are required.
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – 1 kit
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) – 2 kits
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – 3 kits
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – 4 kits

OPTIONS AND ATTACHMENTS

Deflectors – contains lean bar panels and additional cutterbar pan supports:

- 9.1 m (30 ft.) – MD #B7304
- 10.6 m (35 ft.) – MD #B7305
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) triple reel – MD #B7395
- 12.1 m (40 ft.) double reel – MD #B7306
- 12.5 m (41 ft.) double reel – MD #B7306
- 13.7 m (45 ft.) – MD #B7307
- 15.2 m (50 ft.) – MD #B7396

Chapter 6: Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting tables are provided to help you diagnose and solve any problems you may have with the header.

6.1 Crop Loss at Cutterbar

Use the following tables to determine the cause of crop loss at the cutterbar and the recommended solution.

Table 6.1 Troubleshooting – Crop Loss at Cutterbar

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom: Does not pick up downed crop		
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutterbar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.9.1 Cutting off Ground, page 163 3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Header angle too low	Increase header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Reel too high	Lower reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Reel too far back	Move reel forward	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Ground speed too fast for reel speed	Increase reel speed or reduce ground speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206 3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Reel fingers not lifting crop sufficiently	Increase finger pitch aggressiveness	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel fingers not lifting crop sufficiently	Install crop lifters	MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Heads shattering or breaking off		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Reel too low	Raise reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Ground speed too fast	Reduce ground speed	3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Crop too ripe	Operate at night when humidity is higher	—
Symptom: Material accumulating in the gap between the cut-out in endsheet and the knifehead		
Crop heads leaning away from knifehead hole in endsheet	Add knifehead shields (except in damp or sticky soils)	4.8.9 Knifehead Shield, page 575
Symptom: Strips of uncut material		
Guards plugged with debris	Install short knife guards	4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Broken knife sections	Replace broken sections	4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 540
Symptom: Excessive bouncing at normal field speed		
Float set too light	Adjust header float	3.9.3 Header Float, page 175
Symptom: Divider rod running down standing crop		
Divider rods too long	Remove divider rod	3.9.14 Crop Dividers, page 236
Symptom: Crop not being cut at ends		

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.1 Troubleshooting – Crop Loss at Cutterbar (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Reel not frowning or not centered in header	Adjust reel horizontal position or reel frown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217 • 4.13.2 Reel Frown, page 634
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down so that the knife works freely but still keeps sections from lifting off of the guards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558 or • Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570
Knife sections or guards are worn or broken	Replace all worn and broken cutting parts	4.8 Knife, page 540
Header is not level	Level the header	3.11 Leveling Header, page 449
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust reel position and/or finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217 • 3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Divider runs down thick crop at ends preventing proper feeding due to material bridging the guards	Replace 3–4 end guards with short knife guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564 • MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Bushy or tangled crop flows over the divider rod, and builds up on the endsheets		
Divider rods providing insufficient separation	Install long divider rods	3.9.14 Crop Dividers, page 236
Symptom: Cut grain falling ahead of the cutterbar		
Ground speed too slow	Increase ground speed	3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Reel speed too slow	Increase reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Reel too high	Lower reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutterbar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.9.1 Cutting off Ground, page 163 • 3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Reel too far forward	Move reel back on arms	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Cutting at speeds over 10 km/h (6 mph) with 10-tooth reel drive sprocket	Replace with 19-tooth reel drive sprocket	4.14.2 Reel Drive Sprocket, page 662
Worn or broken knife components	Replace components	4.8 Knife, page 540

6.2 Cutting Action and Knife Components

Use the following tables to determine the cause of the cutting action and knife component problems and the recommended repair procedure.

Table 6.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom: Ragged or uneven cutting of crop		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558</i> • <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570</i>
Knife sections or guards are worn or broken	Replace all worn and broken cutting parts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 559</i> • <i>Replacing Pointed Knife Guards, page 556</i> • <i>Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 571</i> • <i>Replacing Short Knife Guards or End Knife Guards, page 568</i> • <i>4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 540</i>
Knife is not operating at recommended speed	Feeder house speed set too low or knife speed not adjusted to proper range	<i>Checking Knife Speed, page 211</i>
Ground speed too fast for reel speed	Reduce ground speed or increase reel speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206</i> • <i>3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208</i>
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust reel position/finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217</i> • <i>3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230</i>
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutting height	<i>3.9.1 Cutting off Ground, page 163</i> or <i>3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172</i>
Header angle too flat	Steepen header angle	<i>3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198</i>
Cutting edge of guards not close enough or parallel to knife sections	Align guards	<i>Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 554</i>
Tangled/tough-to-cut crop	Install short knife guards	MacDon Dealer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558</i> or <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570</i>
Reel too far back	Move the reel forward	<i>3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217</i>
Symptom: Knife plugging		

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Reel too high or too far forward	Lower the reel or move reel rearward	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212 3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Ground speed too high	Decrease the ground speed	3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Improper knife hold-down adjustment	Adjust the hold-down	Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558 or Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570
Dull or broken knife section	Replace knife section	4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 540
Bent or broken guards	Align or replace the guards	Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 554
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust the reel position/finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217 3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Steel pick-up fingers contacting knife	Increase the reel clearance to cutterbar or adjust “frown”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4.13.2 Reel Frown, page 634
Float too heavy	Adjust the springs for lighter float	Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175
Mud or dirt build-up on cutterbar	Raise the cutterbar by lowering skid shoes	3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Mud or dirt build-up on cutterbar	Flatten the header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Knife is not operating at recommended speed	Check the engine speed of combine or header knife speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Combine operator’s manual Checking Knife Speed, page 211
Symptom: Excessive header vibration		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558 or Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570
Excessive knife wear	Replace knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4.8.2 Removing Knife, page 541 4.8.5 Installing Knife, page 544
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558 Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 563 Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570 Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 574
Excessive knife wear	Replace knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4.8.2 Removing Knife, page 541 4.8.5 Installing Knife, page 544

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Loose or worn knifehead pin or drive arm	Tighten or replace parts	4.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 540
Symptom: Excessive vibration of float module and header		
Incorrect knife speed	Adjust knife speed	Checking Knife Speed, page 211
Bent cutterbar	Straighten the cutterbar	MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Excessive breakage of knife sections or guards		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 558 or • Adjusting Hold-Down – Short Knife Guards, page 570
Cutterbar operating too low in stony conditions	Raise cutterbar using skid shoes	3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Float is set too heavy	Adjust float springs for lighter float	Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175
Bent or broken guard	Straighten or replace the guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 547 or • 4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Header angle too steep	Flatten the header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Symptom: Knife back breakage		
Bent or broken guard	Straighten or replace the guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 547 or • 4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Worn knifehead pin	Replace the knifehead pin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing, page 543 and • 4.8.4 Installing Knifehead Bearing, page 544
Dull knife	Replace the knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.8.2 Removing Knife, page 541 and • 4.8.5 Installing Knife, page 544
Knife speed too fast	Lower the knife speed	Consult your MacDon Dealer
Loose knife section hardware	Check/tighten all of the knife hardware	—

6.3 Reel Delivery

Use the following tables to determine the cause of reel delivery problems and the recommended repair procedure.

Table 6.3 Troubleshooting – Reel Delivery

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom – Reel not releasing material in normal standing crop		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Reel too low	Raise the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Reel tines too aggressive	Reduce the cam setting	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too far back	Move the reel forward	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom – Reel not releasing material in lodged and standing crop (reel fully lowered)		
Reel tines too aggressive for standing crop	Reduce the cam setting (one or two) or move reel forward	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Symptom – Wrapping on reel end		
Reel tines too aggressive	Reduce the cam setting	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too low	Raise the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Reel not centered in header	Center the reel in the header	4.13.3 Centering Reel, page 634
Symptom – Reel releases crop too quickly		
Reel tines not aggressive enough	Increase the cam setting to match reel delivery to the reel fore-aft position	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too far forward	Move the reel back to match the reel cam setting	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom – Reel will not lift		
Reel lift couplers are incompatible or defective	Change the quick coupler	MacDon dealer
Symptom – Reel will not turn		
Quick couplers not properly connected	Connect the couplers	3.6 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 52
Reel drive chain disconnected or broken	Connect/replace the chain	4.14.6 Replacing Drive Chain, page 672
Symptom – Reel motion uneven under no load		
Excessive slack in reel drive chain	Tighten the chain	Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 661
Symptom – Reel motion is uneven or stalls in heavy crops		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Reel fingers not aggressive enough	Move to a more aggressive finger pitch notch	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too low	Raise the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Relief valve on combine (not on combine float module) has low relief pressure setting	Increase the relief pressure to the manufacturer's recommendations	Combine operator's manual
Low oil reservoir level on combine	Fill to the proper level	Combine operator's manual
NOTE: Sometimes there is more than one reservoir		

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.3 Troubleshooting – Reel Delivery (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Relief valve malfunction	Replace the relief valve	Combine operator's manual
Cutting tough crops with standard torque (19-tooth) reel drive sprocket	Replace the sprocket with an appropriate high torque sprocket to match the combine reel circuit pressure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.14.2 Reel Drive Sprocket, page 662 • Install Two Speed Kit (MD #311882)
Symptom – Plastic fingers cut at tip		
Insufficient reel to cutterbar clearance	Increase the clearance	4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627
Symptom – Plastic fingers bent rearward at tip		
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Raise the header	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Decrease the header tilt	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Move the reel aft	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom – Plastic fingers bent forward at tip		
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Raise the header	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Decrease the header tilt	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Move the reel aft	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom – Plastic fingers bent close to tine tube		
Excessive plugging at cutterbar with wads of crop accumulating at cutterbar while maintaining reel operation	Correct the plugging/cutting issues	3.12 Unplugging Cutterbar, page 452
Excessive plugging at cutterbar with wads of crop accumulating at cutterbar while maintaining reel operation	Stop the reel before plugging becomes excessive	3.12 Unplugging Cutterbar, page 452

6.4 Troubleshooting Header and Drapers

Use the following tables to determine the header and draper problems and the recommended repair procedure.

Table 6.4 Troubleshooting – Header and Drapers

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom: Insufficient header lift		
Low relief pressure	Increase the relief pressure	Combine Dealer
Symptom: Insufficient side draper speed		
Speed control set too low	Increase the speed control setting	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208
Combine header drive too slow	Adjust to the correct speed for the combine model	Combine operator's manual
Symptom: Insufficient feed draper speed		
Relief pressure too low	Test the feed draper hydraulic system	See your MacDon Dealer
Combine header drive too slow	Adjust to the correct speed for the combine model	Combine operator's manual
Symptom: Feed draper will not move		
Drapers are loose	Tighten the drapers	4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583
Drive or idler roller wrapped with material	Loosen the draper and clean the rollers	4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583
Slat or connector bar jammed by frame or material	Loosen the draper and clear the obstruction	4.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 583
Roller bearing seized	Replace the roller bearing	Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing, page 596
Low hydraulic oil	Fill the combine hydraulic oil reservoir to the full level	Combine operator's manual
Incorrect relief setting at flow control valve	Adjust the relief setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • • MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Side Draper stalling		
Material not feeding evenly off knife	Lower the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Material not feeding evenly off knife	Install short knife guards	4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Symptom: Hesitation in the flow of bulky crop		
Header angle too low	Increase the header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Material overload on drapers	Increase the side draper speed	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208
Material overload on drapers	Install an upper cross auger	5.1.5 Full Length Upper Cross Auger, page 699
Material overload on drapers	Add flighting extensions	MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Drapers back-feed		
Drapers running too slow in heavy crop	Increase the draper speed	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208
Symptom: Crop is thrown across the opening and under opposite side draper		
Drapers running too fast in light crop	Reduce the draper speed	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.4 Troubleshooting – Header and Drapers (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom: Material accumulating on the end deflectors and releasing in bunches		
End deflectors too wide	For headers with manual deck shift only, trim the deflector or replace with a narrow deflector (MD #172381)	<i>3.12 Unplugging Cutterbar, page 452</i>

6.5 Cutting Edible Beans

Use the following tables to determine the cause of any cutting edible bean problems and the recommended solutions.

Table 6.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Symptom: Plants being stripped and complete or partial plants left behind		
Header off ground	Lower the header to ground and run it on the skid shoes and/or the cutterbar	3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Float set too light—rides on high spots and does not lower soon enough	Set the float to 335–338 N (75–85 lbf). Increase or decrease as necessary to prevent the header from bouncing excessively or plowing into soft ground	3.9.3 Header Float, page 175
Reel too high with cylinders fully retracted	Adjust the reel height	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Finger pitch not aggressive enough	Adjust the finger pitch	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too far aft	Move the reel forward until the fingertips skim the soil surface with the header on the ground and the header angle properly adjusted	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Header angle too shallow	Adjust the header angle	Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 200
Header angle too shallow	Increase the header angle by fully retracting lift cylinders (if cutting on ground)	Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 200
Reel too slow	Adjust the reel speed to be marginally faster than ground speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Ground speed too fast	Lower the ground speed	3.9.7 Ground Speed, page 208
Skid shoes too low	Raise the skid shoes to the highest setting	3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Ground too wet – allow soil to dry	—
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Float too heavy	Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 175
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Manually clean the bottom of the cutterbar when excessive accumulation occurs	—
Header not level	Level the header	3.11 Leveling Header, page 449
Worn or damaged knife sections	Replace the sections or replace the knife	4.8 Knife, page 540
Parts of vines get caught in pointed guard tip. (Occurs more in row-cropped beans that are hilled from cultivating.)	Install the short knife guard conversion kit	4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Pushing of crop debris on the ground	Install the short knife guards	4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Knife speed too low	Increase the feeder house speed or check that the knife speed is set within the recommended range	3.9.9 Knife Speed Information, page 210 or Checking Knife Speed, page 211
Symptom: Excessive losses at dividers		
Divider rod running down crop and shattering the pods	Remove the divider rod	3.9.14 Crop Dividers, page 236
Vines and plants build up on the endsheet	Install the divider rod	3.9.14 Crop Dividers, page 236
Symptom: Plant vines pinched between top of draper and cutterbar		
Cutterbar fills with debris when draper to cutterbar gap is properly adjusted	Raise the header fully at each end of the field (or as required) and shift decks back and forth to help clean out the cutterbar	—
Shifting the decks with the header raised does not clean out the cutterbar debris.	Manually remove the debris from the cutterbar cavity to prevent damaging the drapers	—
Symptom: Crop accumulating at guards and not moving rearward onto the drapers		
Reel finger pitch not aggressive enough	Increase the finger aggressiveness (cam position)	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Reel too high	Lower the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Minimum reel clearance to cutterbar setting too high	Adjust the minimum reel height with cylinders fully retracted	4.13.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 627
Reel too far forward	Reposition the reel	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom: Crop wrapping around reel		
Reel too low	Raise the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Symptom: Reel shattering pods		
Reel too far forward	Reposition the reel	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Reel speed too high	Reduce the reel speed	3.9.6 Reel Speed, page 206
Bean pods too dry	Cut at night when heavy dew is present and pods have softened	—
Reel finger pitch not aggressive enough	Increase the finger aggressiveness (cam position)	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230
Symptom: Cutterbar guards breaking		
Float insufficient (float setting too heavy)	Increase the float (adjust to lighter float setting)	3.9.3 Header Float, page 175
Excessive number of rocks in field	Consider installing optional short knife guards Note: With the installation of short knife guards, you are trading guard damage for section damage (although changing sections with short knife guards is easier)	MacDon Dealer
Symptom: Cutterbar pushing too much debris and dirt		

TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 6.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans (continued)

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Header too heavy	Readjust the float to make the header lighter	3.9.3 Header Float, page 175
Header angle too steep	Decrease the header angle	3.9.5 Header Angle, page 198
Guards plug with debris or and soil	Install the short knife guard	4.8.8 Short Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 564
Insufficient support for the header	Install the center skid shoes	3.9.2 Cutting on Ground, page 172
Symptom: Crop wrapping around reel ends		
Uncut crop interfering on reel ends	Add reel endshields	Header parts catalog
Symptom: Cutterbar fills up with dirt		
Excessive gap between the draper and the cutterbar	Raise the header fully at each end of field (or as required) and shift the decks back and forth to help clean out the cutterbar	—
Symptom: Reel occasionally carries over plants in the same location		
Steel fingers bent and hooking plants from drapers	Straighten the fingers (steel)	—
Dirt accumulation on end of fingers preventing plants from falling off fingers onto drapers	Raise the reel	3.9.10 Reel Height, page 212
Dirt accumulation on end of fingers preventing plants from falling off fingers onto drapers	Adjust the reel fore-aft position to move the fingers out of the ground	3.9.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 217
Symptom: Cutterbar pushing soil		
Tire tracks or row crop ridges	Cut at an angle to crop rows or ridges	—
Rolling terrain along length of field	Cut at 90° to the rolling terrain (provided knife floats across without digging in)	—
Symptom: Reel carries over an excessive amount of plants or wads		
Excessive accumulation of crop on drapers (up to reel center tube)	Increase the draper speed	3.9.8 Side Draper Speed, page 208
Finger pitch too slow	Increase the finger pitch	3.9.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 230

Chapter 7: Reference

The procedures and information in this chapter can be referred to as needed.

7.1 Torque Specifications

The following tables provide torque values for various bolts, cap screws, and hydraulic fittings. Refer to these values only when no other torque value has been specified in a given procedure.

- Tighten all bolts to the torque values specified in the charts below, unless you are directed otherwise in this manual.
- Replace removed hardware with hardware of the same strength and grade.
- Refer to the torque value tables as a guide when periodically checking the tightness of bolts.
- Understand the torque categories for bolts and cap screws by reading the markings on their heads.

Jam nuts

Jam nuts require less torque than nuts used for other purposes. When applying torque to finished jam nuts, multiply the torque applied to regular nuts by 0.65 to obtain the modified torque value.

Self-tapping screws

Refer to the standard torque values when installing the self-tapping screws. Do **NOT** install the self-tapping screws on structural or otherwise critical joints.

7.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications

Specifications are provided for the appropriate final torque values to secure various sizes of metric bolts.

NOTE:

The torque values provided in the following metric bolt torque tables apply to hardware installed dry; that is, hardware with no grease, oil, or threadlocker on the threads or heads. Do **NOT** add grease, oil, or threadlocker to bolts or cap screws unless you are directed to do so in this manual.

Table 7.1 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Free Spinning Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.4	1.6	*13	*14
3.5-0.6	2.2	2.5	*20	*22
4-0.7	3.3	3.7	*29	*32
5-0.8	6.7	7.4	*59	*66
6-1.0	11.4	12.6	*101	*112
8-1.25	28	30	20	23
10-1.5	55	60	40	45
12-1.75	95	105	70	78
14-2.0	152	168	113	124
16-2.0	236	261	175	193
20-2.5	460	509	341	377
24-3.0	796	879	589	651

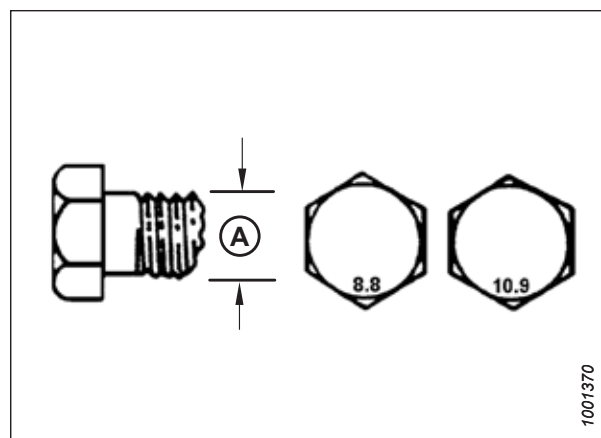


Figure 7.1: Bolt Grades

REFERENCE

Table 7.2 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Distorted Thread Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1	1.1	*9	*10
3.5-0.6	1.5	1.7	*14	*15
4-0.7	2.3	2.5	*20	*22
5-0.8	4.5	5	*40	*45
6-1.0	7.7	8.6	*69	*76
8-1.25	18.8	20.8	*167	*185
10-1.5	37	41	28	30
12-1.75	65	72	48	53
14-2.0	104	115	77	85
16-2.0	161	178	119	132
20-2.5	314	347	233	257
24-3.0	543	600	402	444

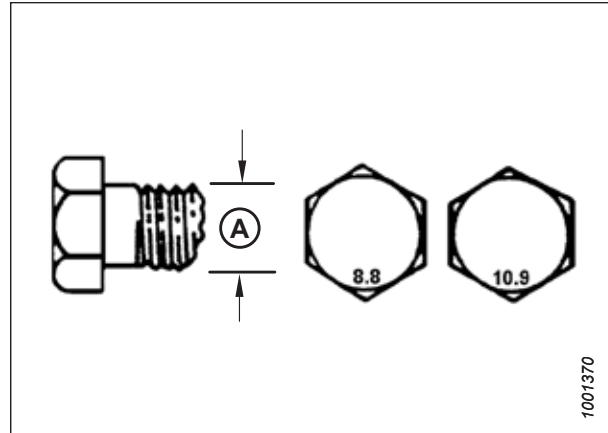


Figure 7.2: Bolt Grades

Table 7.3 Metric Class 10.9 Bolts and Class 10 Free Spinning Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.8	2	*18	*19
3.5-0.6	2.8	3.1	*27	*30
4-0.7	4.2	4.6	*41	*45
5-0.8	8.4	9.3	*82	*91
6-1.0	14.3	15.8	*140	*154
8-1.25	38	42	28	31
10-1.5	75	83	56	62
12-1.75	132	145	97	108
14-2.0	210	232	156	172
16-2.0	326	360	242	267
20-2.5	637	704	472	521
24-3.0	1101	1217	815	901

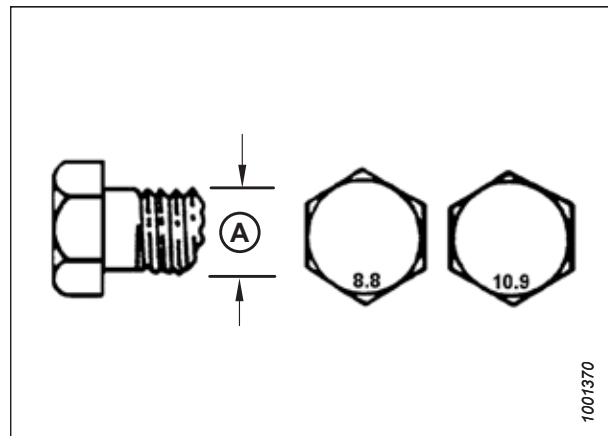
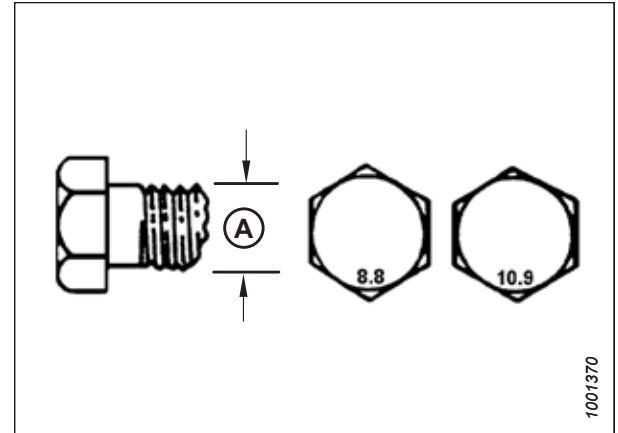


Figure 7.3: Bolt Grades

Table 7.4 Metric Class 10.9 Bolts and Class 10 Distorted Thread Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.3	1.5	*12	*13
3.5-0.6	2.1	2.3	*19	*21
4-0.7	3.1	3.4	*28	*31
5-0.8	6.3	7	*56	*62
6-1.0	10.7	11.8	*95	*105
8-1.25	26	29	19	21
10-1.5	51	57	38	42
12-1.75	90	99	66	73
14-2.0	143	158	106	117
16-2.0	222	246	165	182
20-2.5	434	480	322	356
24-3.0	750	829	556	614

**Figure 7.4: Bolt Grades**

7.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications – Cast Aluminum

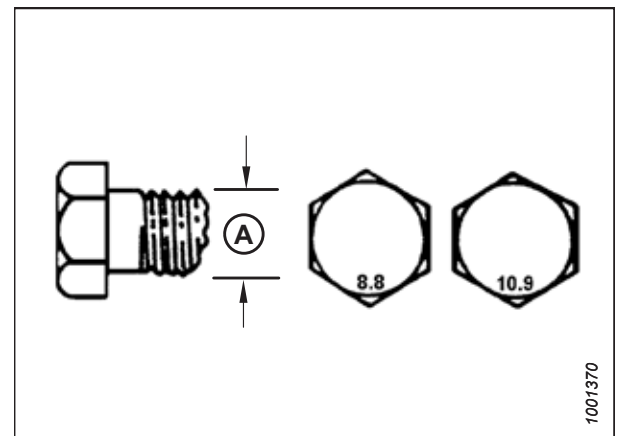
Specifications are provided for the appropriate final torque values for various sizes of metric bolts in cast aluminum.

NOTE:

The torque values provided in the following metric bolt torque tables apply to hardware installed dry; that is, hardware with no grease, oil, or threadlocker on the threads or heads. Do **NOT** add grease, oil, or threadlocker to bolts or cap screws unless you are directed to do so in this manual.

Table 7.5 Metric Bolt Bolting into Cast Aluminum

Nominal Size (A)	Bolt Torque			
	8.8 (Cast Aluminum)		10.9 (Cast Aluminum)	
	Nm	lbf-ft	Nm	lbf-ft
M3	–	–	–	1
M4	–	–	4	2.6
M5	–	–	8	5.5
M6	9	6	12	9
M8	20	14	28	20
M10	40	28	55	40
M12	70	52	100	73
M14	–	–	–	–
M16	–	–	–	–

**Figure 7.5: Bolt Grades**

7.1.3 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable

The standard torque values are provided for adjustable hydraulic fittings. If a procedure specifies a different torque value for the same type and size of fitting found in this topic, refer to the value specified in the procedure instead.

1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or defects.
2. Back off lock nut (C) as far as possible. Ensure that washer (D) is loose and is pushed toward lock nut (C) as far as possible.
3. Ensure that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on the threads. Adjust O-ring (A) if necessary.
4. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (A).

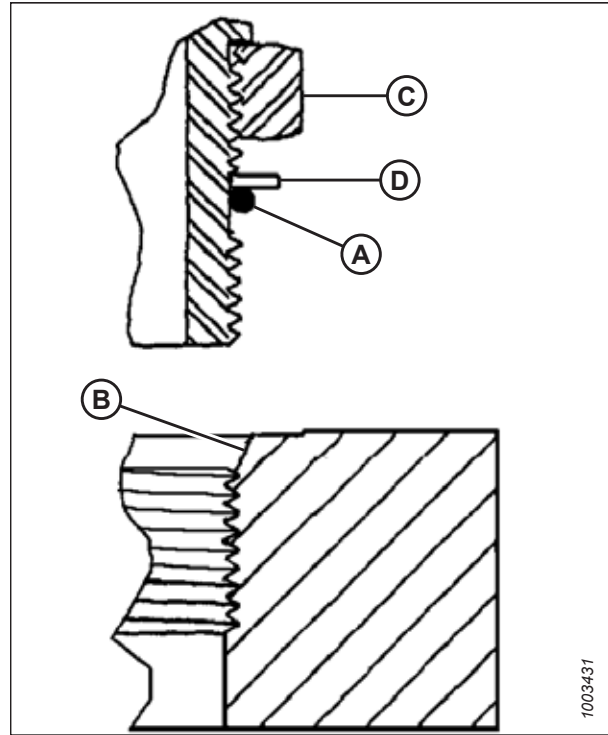


Figure 7.6: Hydraulic Fitting

5. Install fitting (B) into the port until backup washer (D) and O-ring (A) contact part face (E).
6. Position the angle fittings by unscrewing no more than one turn.
7. Turn lock nut (C) down to washer (D) and tighten it to the torque value indicated in the table. Use two wrenches, one on fitting (B) and the other on lock nut (C).
8. Verify the final condition of the fitting.

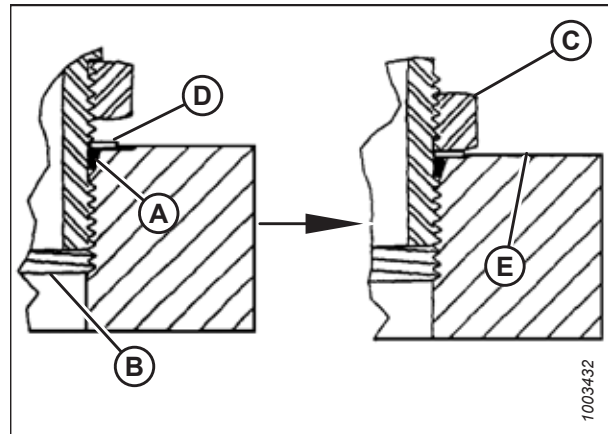


Figure 7.7: Hydraulic Fitting

Table 7.6 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value ⁹³	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-2	5/16–24	6–7	*53–62
-3	3/8–24	12–13	*106–115

93. Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

Table 7.6 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable (continued)

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value ⁹⁴	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-4	7/16–20	19–21	14–15
-5	1/2–20	21–33	15–24
-6	9/16–18	26–29	19–21
-8	3/4–16	46–50	34–37
-10	7/8–14	75–82	55–60
-12	1 1/16–12	120–132	88–97
-14	1 3/8–12	153–168	113–124
-16	1 5/16–12	176–193	130–142
-20	1 5/8–12	221–243	163–179
-24	1 7/8–12	270–298	199–220
-32	2 1/2–12	332–365	245–269

7.1.4 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable

The standard torque values are provided for non-adjustable hydraulic fittings. If a procedure specifies a different torque value for the same type and size of fitting found in this topic, refer to the value specified in the procedure instead.

Torque values are shown in the table below.

1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or defects.
2. Ensure that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on the threads. Adjust O-ring (A) if necessary.
3. Apply hydraulic system oil to the O-ring.
4. Install fitting (C) into the port until the fitting is hand-tight.
5. Torque fitting (C) according to values in Table 7.7, page 731.
6. Verify the final condition of the fitting.

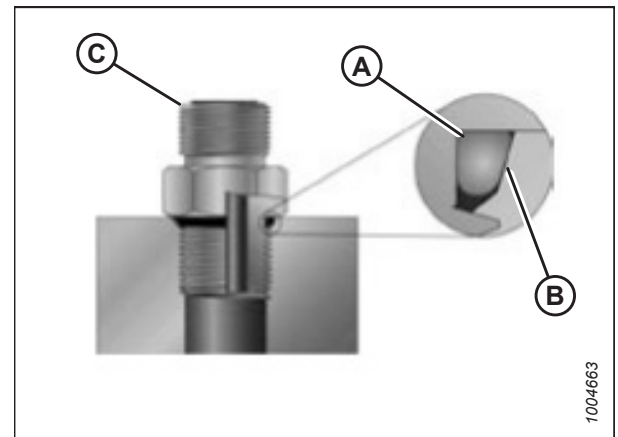


Figure 7.8: Hydraulic Fitting

Table 7.7 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value ⁹⁴	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-2	5/16–24	6–7	*53–62
-3	3/8–24	12–13	*106–115
-4	7/16–20	19–21	14–15
-5	1/2–20	21–33	15–24
-6	9/16–18	26–29	19–21

94. Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

Table 7.7 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable (continued)

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value ⁹⁵	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-8	3/4-16	46-50	34-37
-10	7/8-14	75-82	55-60
-12	1 1/16-12	120-132	88-97
-14	1 3/8-12	153-168	113-124
-16	1 5/16-12	176-193	130-142
-20	1 5/8-12	221-243	163-179
-24	1 7/8-12	270-298	199-220
-32	2 1/2-12	332-365	245-269

7.1.5 O-Ring Face Seal Hydraulic Fittings

The standard torque values are provided for O-ring face seal hydraulic fittings. If a procedure specifies a different torque value for the same type and size of fitting found in this topic, refer to the value specified in the procedure instead.

Torque values are shown in the Table [7.8, page 733](#)

1. Ensure that the sealing surfaces and the fitting threads are free of burrs, nicks, scratches, and any foreign material.



Figure 7.9: Hydraulic Fitting

2. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (B).
3. Align the tube or hose assembly so that the flat face of sleeve (A) or (C) comes into full contact with O-ring (B).
4. Thread tube or hose nut (D) until it is hand-tight. The nut should turn freely until it bottoms out.
5. Torque the fittings according to values in Table [7.8, page 733](#).

NOTE:

If applicable, hold the hex flange on fitting body (E) to prevent the rotation of the fitting body and the hose when tightening fitting nut (D).

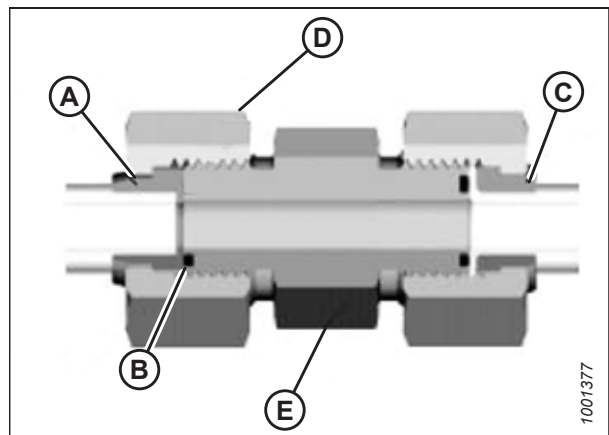


Figure 7.10: Hydraulic Fitting

95. Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

REFERENCE

6. Use three wrenches when assembling unions or joining two hoses together.
7. Verify the final condition of the fitting.

Table 7.8 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Tube O.D. (in.)	Torque Value ⁹⁶	
			Nm	lbf-ft
-3	Note ⁹⁷	3/16	–	–
-4	9/16	1/4	25–28	18–21
-5	Note ⁹⁷	5/16	–	–
-6	11/16	3/8	40–44	29–32
-8	13/16	1/2	55–61	41–45
-10	1	5/8	80–88	59–65
-12	1 3/16	3/4	115–127	85–94
-14	Note ⁹⁷	7/8	–	–
-16	1 7/16	1	150–165	111–122
-20	1 11/16	1 1/4	205–226	151–167
-24	1–2	1 1/2	315–347	232–256
-32	2 1/2	2	510–561	376–414

7.1.6 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings

The standard torque values are provided for tapered pipe thread fittings. If a procedure specifies a different torque value for the same type and size of fitting found in this topic, refer to the value specified in the procedure instead.

Assemble pipe fittings as follows:

1. Ensure that the fitting and the port threads are free of burrs, nicks, scratches, and any other form of contamination.
2. Apply paste-type pipe thread sealant to the external pipe threads.
3. Thread the fitting into the port until it is hand-tight.
4. Torque the connector to the appropriate torque angle. The turns from finger tight (TFFT) and flats from finger tight (FFFT) values are shown in Table 7.9, page 734. Ensure that the tube end of a shaped connector (typically a 45° or 90° elbow) is aligned to receive the incoming tube or hose assembly. Always finish the alignment of the fitting in the direction of tightening. Never loosen the threaded connectors to achieve alignment.
5. Clean all residue and any excess thread conditioner with an appropriate cleaner.
6. Inspect the final condition of the fitting. Pay special attention to the possibility of cracks in the port opening.
7. Mark the final position of the fitting. If a fitting leaks, disassemble the fitting and check it for damage.

NOTE:

The failure of fittings due to over-torquing may not be evident until the fittings are disassembled and inspected.

96. Torque values and angles shown are based on lubricated connection as in reassembly.

97. O-ring face seal type end not defined for this tube size.

REFERENCE

Table 7.9 Hydraulic Fitting Pipe Thread

Tapered Pipe Thread Size	Recommended TFFT	Recommended FFFT
1/8-27	2-3	12-18
1/4-18	2-3	12-18
3/8-18	2-3	12-18
1/2-14	2-3	12-18
3/4-14	1.5-2.5	12-18
1-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
1 1/4-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
1 1/2-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
2-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15

7.2 Conversion Chart

Both SI units (including metric) and US customary units (sometimes referred to as standard units) of measurement are used in this manual. A list of those units along with their abbreviations and conversion factors is provided here for your reference.

Table 7.10 Conversion Chart

Quantity	SI Units (Metric)		Factor	US Customary Units (Standard)	
	Unit Name	Abbreviation		Unit Name	Abbreviation
Area	hectare	ha	$\times 2.4710 =$	acre	acres
Flow	liters per minute	L/min	$\times 0.2642 =$	US gallons per minute	gpm
Force	Newton	N	$\times 0.2248 =$	pound force	lbf
Length	millimeter	mm	$\times 0.0394 =$	inch	in.
Length	meter	m	$\times 3.2808 =$	foot	ft.
Power	kilowatt	kW	$\times 1.341 =$	horsepower	hp
Pressure	kilopascal	kPa	$\times 0.145 =$	pounds per square inch	psi
Pressure	megapascal	MPa	$\times 145.038 =$	pounds per square inch	psi
Pressure	bar (Non-SI)	bar	$\times 14.5038 =$	pounds per square inch	psi
Torque	Newton meter	Nm	$\times 0.7376 =$	pound feet or foot pounds	lbf-ft
Torque	Newton meter	Nm	$\times 8.8507 =$	pound inches or inch pounds	lbf-in
Temperature	degrees Celsius	°C	$(^{\circ}\text{C} \times 1.8) + 32 =$	degrees Fahrenheit	°F
Velocity	meters per minute	m/min	$\times 3.2808 =$	feet per minute	ft/min
Velocity	meters per second	m/s	$\times 3.2808 =$	feet per second	ft/s
Velocity	kilometers per hour	km/h	$\times 0.6214 =$	miles per hour	mph
Volume	liter	L	$\times 0.2642 =$	US gallon	US gal
Volume	milliliter	mL	$\times 0.0338 =$	ounce	oz.
Volume	cubic centimeter	cm ³ or cc	$\times 0.061 =$	cubic inch	in. ³
Weight	kilogram	kg	$\times 2.2046 =$	pound	lb.

Index

10V sensor adapter kit 702

A

AGCO combines

Challenger

attaching header to combine 52

detaching combine from header..... 56

Gleaner

attaching header to combine 52

detaching combine from header..... 56

IDEAL™ Series 76

attaching header to combine 76

detaching combine from header..... 78

Massey Ferguson

attaching header to combine 52

detaching combine from header..... 56

AHHC, *See* auto header height control

API

definition 21

ASTM

definition 21

augers 517

auger drive sprockets

adjusting auger drive chain tension..... 530

auger position 159

auger to pan clearance..... 517

drive chains

adjusting chain tension 530

checking chain tension..... 521

checking tension..... 519

installing 527

lubricating 495

removing..... 523

feed auger configurations 132

medium configuration 141

narrow configuration..... 138

ultra narrow configuration 134

ultra wide configuration..... 146

wide configuration 143

fingers..... 533

adjusting finger timing 538

checking finger timing 537

installing 158, 535

removing..... 155, 533

flighting..... 148, 532

installing 150, 153

optional feed auger flighting..... 703

removing..... 148

tension springs

checking and adjusting..... 161

tines, *See* fingers

auto header height control

Case IH 120 series 274

Case IH 120 series combines 272

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 285

calibrating

auto header height control..... 276

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 272

Case IH 130 series combines 262, 265

Case IH 140 series combines 262

Case IH 230 series combines 272

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 285

calibrating

auto header height control..... 276

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 272

Case IH 230, 240, 250 series..... 274

Case IH 240 series combines 272

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 285

calibrating

auto header height control..... 276

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 272

Case IH 250 series combines 272

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 285

calibrating

auto header height control..... 276

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 272

Case IH 5130/6130/7130 combines

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 269

calibrating

auto header height control..... 268

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 262

setting up header on combine display 265

Case IH 5140/6140/7140 combines

adjusting

preset cutting height..... 269

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 262

setting up header on combine display 265

Case IH 7010 combines

sensor output voltage

checking voltage range from the cab..... 272

Case IH combines

checking reel height sensor voltage..... 284

Case IH combines with version 28.00 software

INDEX

calibrating auto header height control.....	280	float height sensor	
Challenger 6 series combines	287	replacing	260
adjusting		Gleaner R62/R72 series combines	
header height	292	calibrating	
raise/lower rate	293	maximum stubble height	426
sensitivity.....	294	Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 series combines	
calibrating		sensor output voltage	
auto header height control.....	290	checking voltage range from the cab.....	325
engaging auto header height control	290	Gleaner R65/R75 series combines	325
sensor output voltage		adjusting ground pressure	332
checking voltage range from the cab.....	287	adjusting raise/lower rate	331
Challenger 7 series combines	287	adjusting sensitivity.....	332
calibrating		calibrating	
maximum stubble height	426	maximum stubble height	426
sensor output voltage		calibrating auto header height control.....	329
checking voltage range from the cab.....	287	engaging auto header height control.....	328
CLAAS 500 series combines.....	295	troubleshooting alarms and faults.....	333
adjusting		turning the accumulator off.....	331
auto reel speed	302	Gleaner S series combines	325
cutting height manually	298	Gleaner S series combines (pre-2016)	
preset cutting height.....	297	adjusting ground pressure	332
sensitivity.....	299	adjusting raise/lower rate	331
calibrating		adjusting sensitivity.....	332
auto header height control.....	295	calibrating auto header height control.....	329
maximum stubble height	426	engaging auto header height control.....	328
cutting height.....	297	sensor output voltage	
CLAAS 5000/6000/7000/8000 series combines	315	checking voltage range from the cab.....	325
adjusting auto reel speed	321	troubleshooting alarms and faults.....	333
setting cut and reel height.....	319	turning the accumulator off.....	331
setup	315	Gleaner S9 series combines	335
CLAAS 600 series combines.....	304	calibrating	
adjusting		auto header height control.....	343
auto reel speed	309	calibrating reel	340
cutting height	307	operating	347
reel height	313	reviewing header in-field settings	349
sensitivity.....	307	setting automatic header controls	341
calibrating		setting minimum reel speed	340
auto header height control.....	304	setting up the header	335
reel fore-aft.....	310	John Deere 50 series combines	
reel height	310	calibrating	
CLAAS 700 series combines.....	304	maximum stubble height	426
adjusting		John Deere 70 series combines.....	364
auto reel speed	309	sensor output voltage	
cutting height	307	checking voltage range from the cab.....	364
reel height	313	John Deere S series combines.....	371
sensitivity.....	307	adjusting	
calibrating		preset cutting height.....	380
auto header height control.....	304	sensitivity.....	379
maximum stubble height	426	adjusting raise/lower rate manually	374
reel fore-aft.....	310	calibrating	
reel height	310	reel height and reel fore-aft	388
CLAAS 7000/8000 series combines		calibrating auto header height control.....	376
calibrating	317	calibrating feeder house fore-aft tilt.....	382
setting the sensitivity	320	checking reel height sensor voltage.....	385
definition.....	21	sensor output voltage	

INDEX

checking voltage range from the cab.....	371	reviewing header in-field settings	363
John Deere T series combines	371	setting automatic header controls	357
adjusting		setting minimum reel speed	356
preset cutting height.....	380	setting up the header	351
sensitivity.....	379	John Deere 70 series combines	
adjusting raise/lower rate manually	374	adjusting	
calibrating		raise/lower rate manually	368
reel height and reel fore-aft	388	sensitivity.....	370
calibrating auto header height control	376	calibrating	
calibrating feeder house fore-aft tilt.....	382	AHHC	368
checking reel height sensor voltage.....	385	feeder house speed	368
sensor output voltage		John Deere S7 series combines	390
checking voltage range from the cab.....	371	calibrating	
New Holland 2015 CR series combines.....	430	feeder house	397
calibrating auto header height control	438	header.....	400
calibrating reel height and reel for-aft	440	sensor output voltage	
engaging auto header height control	433	checking voltage range from cab	394
sensor output voltage		setting up header	390
checking voltage range from the cab.....	431	John Deere X9 series combines.....	402
setting preset cutting height	443	cutting off ground	414
setting up reel speed	436	cutting on ground	416
New Holland combines		header controller	
10 V adapter	262	checking error codes	417
checking reel height sensor voltage.....	442	checking software version	419
New Holland CR series combines		using	412
setting maximum work height.....	445		
New Holland CR/CX series combines.....	421		
adjusting			
header lower rate.....	428		
header raise rate	427		
preset cutting height.....	429		
sensitivity.....	428		
calibrating			
auto header height control.....	424		
configuring			
header tilt	446		
header type.....	446		
reel fore-aft.....	446		
engaging auto header height control	424		
sensor output voltage			
checking voltage range from the cab.....	421		
quick reference.....	265, 274		
CLAAS 5000, 6000, 7000, and 8000 series	315		
Gleaner S9 combines.....	327		
IDEAL™ combines	350		
New Holland CR.....	423		
sensor operation.....	255		
sensor output voltage	257		
combine requirements	257		
manually checking voltage limits	257		
auto header height control (AHHC)			
IDEAL™ Series combines.....	350		
calibrating reel	356		
calibrating the header	359		
operating	361		

B

bearings

feed draper

installing drive roller bearing..... 590

removing drive roller bearing..... 588

idler roller bearings

replacing 618 |

knifehead bearings

installing 544 |

removing..... 543 |

side draper

inspecting draper roller bearing..... 616 |

replacing drive roller bearing 623 |

bolts

definition..... 21 |

break-in inspections..... 478 |

break-in periods 49 |

C

cams

adjusting reel cam 232 |

reel cam settings..... 230 |

Case IH combines

attaching combine to header 61 |

detaching combine from header 64 |

center-links

INDEX

definition	21
CGVW	
definition	21
chains	
auger drive chain	
adjusting chain tension	530
checking auger drive chain tension	519, 521
installing	527
lubricating	495
removing	523
completion gearbox drive chain	
adjusting chain tension	515
main gearbox drive chain	
adjusting chain tension	514
reel drive chain	
adjusting chain tension	660
replacing	672
tightening	661
CLAAS combines	
attaching combine to header	68
detaching combine from header	72
reel speed sensors	
replacing	676
combines	
attaching header to combine	
Case IH	61
CLAAS	68
IDEAL™ Series	76
John Deere	81
New Holland CR/CX	89
Rostselmash	98
detaching combine from header	
Case IH	64
CLAAS	72
John Deere	85
New Holland CR/CX	93
detaching header from combine	
Rostselmash	101
detaching header to combine	
IDEAL™ Series	78
transporting header	454
on combine	454
towing the header	454–455
attaching to towing vehicle	455
component identification	
FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header	27
float module – FM200	28
conversion chart	735
CR feeder deflectors	98
crop deflectors	702
crop delivery	
options	697
crop divider rods	251
removing	251
crop divider storage bracket kit	698

crop dividers	236
adjusting	244
floating	
adjusting	129
installing on header	241
removing from header	239
installing on header	238
removing from header	236
crop lifter kit	697
crop lifter rack kit	697
cutterbars	
options	701
unplugging	452
cutting	
off the ground	163
adjusting stabilizer wheels	164
adjusting transport wheels	164
on ground level	172

D

daily start-up checks	48
decks	
side drapers	
adjusting deck height	610
definition of terms	21
divider rods	251
removing	251
DK	
definition	21
DKD	
definition	21
DR	
definition	21
draper roller bearings	
inspecting	616
drapers	
adjusting side draper speed	209
float module	
adjusting draper tension	583
checking draper tension	583
feed deck	580
replacing feed draper	580
side draper decks	
drive rollers	
installing	625
removing	621
idler rollers	
installing	620
removing	616
replacing bearing	618
side draper speed	208
side drapers	
adjusting tracking	614
installing	609

INDEX

removing.....	608
drive roller bearings	
installing feed draper drive roller	590
removing feed draper drive roller	588
side draper drive roller	
replacing drive roller bearing	623
drive rollers	
feed draper.....	585
installing	587
removing.....	585
side draper	
installing	625
removing.....	621
drivelines	
driveline guards	
installing	512
removing.....	510
installing driveline	507
removing driveline from combine to float module.....	505
drives	
header drive.....	505

E

EasyMove™ Slow Speed Transport System	
changing tow-bar hitch connection from clevis to pintle	688
EasyMove™ transport wheels	
adjusting	164
electrical system	
maintaining electrical system	504
replacing light bulbs	504
sensors	
AHHC sensors.....	255
reel height sensor	
replacing.....	216
reel speed sensor	
replacing on CLAAS	676
replacing on John Deere	675
equipment servicing — end of season	479
equipment servicing — preseason	479
extended center filler.....	703

F

FD2 Series	
definition.....	21
feed auger configurations	132
medium configuration.....	141
narrow configuration	138
ultra narrow configuration.....	134
ultra wide configuration	146
wide configuration	143

feed auger fighting.....	703
feed deck	
checking link holder hooks.....	602
feed deck pan	
lowering feed deck pan	600
raising feed deck pan	601
feed deflectors.....	98
float module	
installing on New Holland CR combines	606
feed drapers	
adjusting draper tension.....	583
adjusting speed	210
checking draper tension	583
drive roller bearing	
installing	590
drive rollers.....	585
installing	587
removing.....	585
idler roller.....	591
installing idler roller.....	593
removing drive roller bearing	588
removing idler roller	591
replacing feed draper.....	580
replacing idler roller bearing	596
FFFT	
definition.....	21
finger tight	
definition.....	21
fingers	
auger fingers	533
adjusting finger timing	538
checking finger timing	537
installing	158, 535
removing.....	155, 533
plastic reel fingers	
installing	638
removing.....	637
steel reel fingers	
installing	636
removing.....	636
flex float system	
flex frown limiter	
disable	192
enable	193
flex modes	
operating in flex mode	189
fighting	148, 532
installing.....	150, 153
removing	148
float.....	175
header float	
changing float spring configuration	180
checking and adjusting.....	175
header float locks.....	186
wing float locks	

INDEX

lock/unlock.....	186
locked.....	191
unlocked	189
float modules	702
attaching float module to header.....	109
auger drive	
adjusting auger drive chain tension.....	530
augers.....	517
auger fingers.....	533
checking finger timing	537
installing	158, 535
removing	155, 533
auger to pan clearance	517
fingers	
adjusting finger timing.....	538
optional feed auger flighting.....	703
detaching from combine and header	104
feed auger configurations	132
feed deck.....	580
checking link holder hooks	602
feed deck pan	
lowering.....	600
raising.....	601
feed deflectors	
replacing on New Holland CR combines	606
feed draper	
adjusting draper tension	583
checking draper tension.....	583
drive roller.....	585
installing	587
removing	585
drive roller bearing	
installing	590
idler roller	591
installing idler roller	593
removing drive roller bearing.....	588
removing idler roller.....	591
replacing feed draper	580
replacing idler roller bearing.....	596
flighting.....	148, 532
setup	132
stripper bars.....	605
installing	605
kits.....	162
removing.....	605
unplugging.....	453
floating crop dividers	698
FM200 component identification	28
FM200 Float Module	
definition.....	21
FSI	
definition.....	21
full interface filler kit.....	704

G

gearboxes	
completion	
adding oil	499
adjusting chain tension	515
changing oil	499
checking oil level	498
lubricating	498
main	
adding oil	497
adjusting chain tension	514
changing oil	497
checking oil level	496
lubricating	496
glossary	21
greasing	
every 10 hours.....	482
every 100 hours.....	488
every 25 hours.....	483
every 250 hours.....	490
every 50 hours.....	484
every 500 hours.....	492
greasing procedure.....	493
maintenance schedule/records.....	476
ground speeds	208
guards	
adjusting knife guards	554
replacing center knife guards	571
replacing end knife guards.....	568
replacing pointed center knife guards.....	559
replacing pointed knife guards.....	556
replacing short knife guards	568
GVW	
definition.....	21

H

hard joint	
definition.....	21
HDS	
definition.....	21
header angles	
adjustment range.....	198
header drapers, <i>See</i> side drapers	
adjusting side draper tension	612
header drives.....	505
completion gearbox drive chain.....	515
driveline guards	
installing	512
removing.....	510
main gearbox drive chain	514
header endshields	35
adjusting	37
checking	37

INDEX

1

INDEX

configurations	547
replacing center knife guards	571
replacing end knife guards	568
replacing pointed center knife guards	559
replacing pointed knife guards	556
replacing short knife guards	568
short knife guards	
configurations	564
knife guards and hold-down	
double-knife	
FD245 pointed guard configuration	552
knifehead bearings	
installing	544
removing	543
knifehead shields	575
installing	575
knives	540
installing knife	544
removing knife	541
replacing knife sections	540
spare knife location	546
troubleshooting	717

L

lateral tilt plug	705
light bulbs – replacing	504
lubrication	482
lubrication and servicing	482
auger drive chains	495
greasing procedure	493
header drive completion gearbox	
changing oil	499
checking oil level	498
lubricating gearbox	498
header drive main gearbox	
changing oil	497
checking oil level	496
lubricating gearbox	496
reel drive chain	494

M

maintenance and servicing	475
contourMax™	
lubricating	679
electrical system	504
end of season servicing	479
preparing for servicing	475
preseason servicing	479
requirements	476
safety	5
schedule	476
service intervals	482

storage	474
maintenance requirements	
servicing	
break-in inspections	478
maintenance schedule/records	476
MDS	
definition	21
metric bolts	
torque specifications	727
model numbers	
records	xii
motors	
reel drive motor	
installing	670
removing	669
reel drive motors	669

N

n/a	
definition	21
New Holland combines	
10 V adapter	262
New Holland CR/CX combines	
attaching combine to header	89
detaching combine from header	93
NPT	
definition	21
nut	
definition	21

O

oils	
changing knife drive box oil	578
header drive completion gearbox	
adding oil	499
header drive main gearbox	
adding oil	497
operating modes	
flex mode	189
rigid mode	191
operating variables	
headers	163
operations	31
optimizing headers	
straight combining canola	126
options	697
contourMax™	677
adjusting wheels with CLAAS integration kit	167
adjusting wheels with foot switch	165
foot switch (AGCO and John Deere only	
headers)	707
leveling wheel height	170, 677

INDEX

P

INDEX

FD241 pointed knife guard configuration	551
FD250 pointed knife guard configuration	553
single knife	
pointed knife guard configuration	548
PR15 pick-up reels	
fore-aft position	
repositioning cylinders	
double reel	225
product overview	21

R

recommended settings	
header	115
reel	127
reel clearance	
adjusting	631
measuring	627
reel drive chains	
loosening	660
replacing	672
tightening	661
reel drive motors	669
installing	670
removing	669
reel drive system	660
reel drives	
double-reel U-joint	665
installing	667
removing	665
triple-reel U-joint	
removing	665, 667
reel endshields	650
replacing endshield supports	658
replacing endshields at inboard cam end	653
replacing endshields at outboard cam end	651
replacing inboard tail end	656
replacing outboard tail end	654
reel fingers	635
installing plastic fingers	638
installing steel fingers	636
removing plastic fingers	637
removing steel fingers	636
reel fore-aft positions, <i>See</i> pick-up reels	
adjusting	218
reel fore-aft sensor	
CLAAS 7000/8000 series combines	
calibrating	323
reel frown	634
reel height sensor	
CLAAS 7000/8000 series combines	
calibrating	323
reel safety props	33
disengaging	34
engaging	33

reel speeds	206
reel system	
recommended reel settings	127
reels	
checking and adjusting fore-aft position sensor	228
clearance to cutterbar	627
reel drive system	660
reel drives	
adjusting chain tension	660
reel endshields	
replacing endshields at outboard cam end	651
replacing reel speed sensors	
AGCO combines	674
Challenger® combines	674
Gleaner combines	674
IDEAL™ Series combines	674
Massey Ferguson® combines	674
rice divider rod kit	700
rice divider rods	252
rigid modes	
operating in rigid mode	191
rock retarder kit	701
Rostselmash combines	
attaching combine to header	98
detaching combine to header	101
rpm	
definition	21

S

SAE	
definition	21
safety	1
daily start-up checks	48
general safety	3
header safety props	32
hydraulic safety	6
maintenance safety	5
operational safety	32
reel safety props	33
safety alert symbols	1
safety sign decals	7
installing decals	7
interpreting decals	13
locations	8
signal words	2
screws	
definition	21
SDD	
definition	21
sensors	
AHHC sensors	255
checking and adjusting reel fore-aft position	228
checking and adjusting reel height sensor	213
reel height sensor	

INDEX

replacing	216	installing dual sprocket (optional)	664
reel speed sensor		installing single sprocket	664
replacing on AGCO combines	674	removing single sprocket.....	663
replacing on Challenger® combines	674	tightening reel drive chain	661
replacing on CLAAS	676	stabilizer wheel Kit	710
replacing on Gleaner combines	674	stabilizer wheels	
replacing on IDEAL™ Series combines.....	674	adjusting	164
replacing on John Deere.....	675	start-up	
replacing on Massey Ferguson® combines	674	daily checks.....	48
serial numbers		storing the header	474
locations.....	xii	straight combining canola	
records.....	xii	optimizing headers	126
service intervals		stripper bars	162, 705
lubrication	482	float module	
servicing, <i>See</i> maintenance and servicing		installing	605
short knife guards and hold-down		removing.....	605
double knife		sunflower attachment	712
short knife guard configuration – 12.5 m (41 ft.).....	567		
short knife guard configuration – all except 12.5 m (41 ft.).....	566		
short knife guards and hold-downs			
single knife			
short knife guard configuration	565		
shutting down procedures	50		
side draper systems			
inspecting draper roller bearing	616		
replacing drive roller bearing.....	623		
SKD			
definition.....	21		
skid shoes, <i>See</i> cutting on the ground			
adjusting inner skid shoes.....	173		
adjusting outer skid shoes	174		
soft joints			
definition.....	21		
spare knives	546		
specifications			
FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and float module			
specifications.....	23		
FD2 series FlexDraper® header dimensions	26		
torque specifications	727		
speeds			
adjusting side draper speed	209		
feed draper speed	210		
ground speed	208		
knife speed			
checking knife speed	211		
knife speed data	210		
reel speed.....	206		
side draper speed.....	208		
sprockets	41, 43, 662		
adjusting reel drive chain.....	660		
loosening reel drive chain	660		
optional reel drive sprocket	206		
reel drive			

T

tension	
definition.....	21
TFFT	
definition.....	21
tine tube bushings	
installing.....	644
removing.....	639
tire inflation/pressures	685
torque	
definition.....	21
torque angles	
definition.....	21
torque specifications.....	727
metric bolt specifications.....	727
cast aluminum.....	729
O-ring boss (ORB) hydraulic fittings – adjustable.....	730
O-ring boss (ORB) hydraulic fittings – non-adjustable	731
O-ring face seal (ORFS) fittings.....	732
tapered pipe thread fittings	733
transport bolts.....	683
torque-tension	
definition.....	21
tow-bar	
storing	470
tow-bars	
attaching	471
removing.....	457
storing	460
towing the header	454–455
attaching to towing vehicle	455
converting from field to transport	465
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to transport position.....	466
rear (right) wheels to transport position	468

INDEX

converting from transport to field	456
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to field position	461
rear (right) wheels to field position	463
removing tow-bar	457
removing tow-bar from storage	470
storing tow-bar	460
moving left outboard wheel from transport to working position	456
transport assembly bolts	683
transport systems	683
converting from field to transport	465
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to transport position	466
rear (right) wheels to transport position	468
converting from transport to field	456
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to field position	461
rear (right) wheels to field position	463
removing tow-bar	457
removing tow-bar from storage	470
storing tow-bar	460
moving left outboard wheel from transport to working position	456
tire inflation/pressures	685
transporting header	454
on combine	454
towing the header	454
attaching to towing vehicle	455
wheel bolt torques	683
troubleshooting	715
crop loss at cutterbar	715
cutting action and knife components	717
cutting edible beans	724
header and drapers	722
reel delivery	720

U

U-joints	
double-reel U-joint	665
installing	667
removing	665
triple-reel U-joint	
removing	665, 667
UCA	
definition	21
unplugging	
cutterbar	452
float module	453
upper cross augers	233, 699
adjusting position	233

V

vertical knife kits	700
---------------------------	-----

W

washers	
definition	21
wheels and tires	
stabilizer wheel Kit (option)	710
tire inflation/pressures	685
wheel bolt torques	683
wing balance	
checking and adjusting wing balance	194
wobble boxes, See knife drive system, knife drive box	
WOT	
definition	21

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Ensure your machine operates at top efficiency by using clean fluids and lubricants only.

- Use clean containers to handle all fluids and lubricants.
- Store fluids and lubricants in an area protected from dust, moisture, and other contaminants.

Table: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Lubricant	Specification	Description	Use	Capacities
Grease	SAE multi-purpose	High temperature extreme pressure (EP) performance with 1% max. molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base	As required unless otherwise specified	—
		High temperature extreme pressure (EP) performance with 10% max. molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base	Driveline slip-joints	—
Gear lubricant	SAE 85W-140	API service class GL-5	Knife drive box	1.5 liters (1.3 quarts)
			Main gearbox	2.75 liters (2.9 quarts)
			Completion gearbox	2.25 liters (2.4 quarts)
Hydraulic oil	Single grade trans-hydraulic oil. Viscosity at 60.1 cSt @ 40°C (104°F) Viscosity at 9.5 cSt @ 100°C (212°F) Recommended brands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Petro-Canada Duratran • John Deere Hy-Gard J20C • Case Hy-Tran Ultratracton • AGCO Power Fluid 821 XL 	Lubricant trans / hydraulic oil	Header drive systems reservoir	95 liters (25.1 US gallons)
Chain oil	Chain oil with a viscosity of 100–150 sCt at 40°C (104°F) or mineral oil SAE 20W-50 that has no detergents or solvents	Chain oil is formulated to provide good wear protection and resistance to foaming. It protects the chain and drive sprockets against wear.	Reel drive chain	—

